

Д. Спілка

С. Спілка

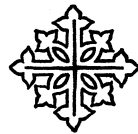
STYLISTIC

OR

A CRITICAL ANTHOLOGY

COVERING THE WHOLE FIELD

OF LATIN LITERATURE



BY

S. M. STEPHENSON

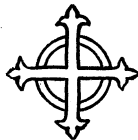
USUS LOQUENDI

SEU

ECLOGAE EMENDATISSIMAE

EX SCRIPTIS TEMPORUM OMNIUM

LATINIS



AUCTORE

S. M. STEPHENSON

NIHIL OBSTAT.

RAYMUNDUS F. STOLL, S. T. D.

Censor Librorum.

CINCINNATIS VIGESIMO SEXTO CALENDAS MCMXXXIX.

IMPRIMATUR.

✠ JOHANNES T. McNICHOLAS

Archiepiscopus Cincinnatensis.

CINCINNATIS VIGESIMO SEXTO CALENDAS MCMXXXIX.

COPYRIGHT 1939 BY S. M. STEPHENSON

AB AUCTORE OMNE JUS LEGE RESERVATUM MCMXXXIX.

MOTTO

Neque statim legenti persuasum sit omnia, quae
optimi auctores scripserint, esse omnino perfecta.

*Nor must a reader at once be persuaded, that all
that is written by the best authors, is perfect in every
way. QUINTILIAN, X. 1, 24.*

Poetica non semper potest uti propriis verbis.

*Poetry cannot always avail itself of proper words.
QUINTILIAN, X. 1, 29.*

Multa vocabula renascuntur cadentque, si voluerit
usus, penes quem est arbitrium, jus et norma loquendi.

*Many words will revive and fall out, if custom
will it so, in the power of which is the judgment, the
right and the standard of language. HORACE, Art of
Poetry.*

REMARKS

I. This *STYLISTIC* is an inseparable part of the *PRACTICAL GRAMMAR* which includes also *LATIN SCHOOL CONVERSATIONS* with a *MODERN VOCABULARY*. All the references are made to the *Practical Grammar and Colloquies*.

II. In this *STYLISTIC* the normalization of text, based on Classical Latinity, is arbitrary, but very important in order to keep the students' minds free from imperfect impressions: for, as Quintilian says, they assimilate the defects of an author, as did Dante and Murätus (Page 367, 380), rather than his classical beauty and strength.

III, The normalized text is suggested for the *HIGH SCHOOL*, while the analytic study of the normalization furnishes advanced work for *COLLEGE STUDENTS*. Once well versed in this art, they will be able to make a critical study of any Latin text. To lighten the students' work, a vocabulary is supplied for the text.

IV. Such a *Stylistic* is especially helpful in individual study, because the substituted parts explain the original text at once: thus the burden of tiresome notes and circumlocutions will be avoided. To insure a perfect understanding of the Latin text an English (not always classical, but rather literal) translation which adheres to the original text as closely as possible, has been added.

In *SEMINARIES* where Latin conversation is introduced, or for direct method in teaching, such a work as this is indispensable in order to avoid an unstable, queer, or narrow training, because this *STYLISTIC* displays the Latin styles of all ages in the light of Classical Latinity, and develops the *Sprachgefuehl* (*usum loquendi*), the supreme rule of a language.

CARTHAGENA, OHIO, August 15, 1939

THE AUTHOR

CORRIGENDA

Abbreviations: O(iginal text), N(ormalized text), V(ocabulary), T(ranslation),
l(ine).

*Please insert the corrections before using the book; if any errors are discovered
the author will appreciate being informed about them.*

Velis inferre emendationes antequam libro utaris, et si alia menda inveneris, auctor
de iis edoctus gaudebit.

Page		
6	Andronicus	285-205 B. C., Course 8
8		Fragments, N 12. Cum socios nostros ...
9	Naeivius	Book One
18	Plautus	N 81. TYNDARUS: Cur ego te invito ...
24	Ennius	Andromache, N last sentence: Quo applicem,
25		N first sentence: cui nec arae ... et disjectae?
		Telamon, T 1 2: the shameless ..., or whom need
26		His Bust, O 1 3: Nemo me ... funera fletu
		N 1 3: Nemo me ... funus meum fletu
		1 4: faxit! Cur? Volito ... per os
		De Effigie, T 1 4: No one ..., nor attend my fu-
		1 5: neral with weeping! Why? Because I
		V after faxit drop, Be it so!
		Africanus, N 1 1: Hic est depositus ... hostium
		V depono: to put down, bury
		T 1 1: Here is buried he whom ... citizens
41	Pacuvius	His On Epitaph, N 1 3: Hic sunt deposita ... ossa.
48	Catullus	N 1 1: O Colonia ... cupis longo et
		1 2: festivare ..., ne prae columnis ...
		V 1 2: delecto, 57, 3
		V 1 7: columna, 94
		8, 1 4: over, 59, B
49		N 12, 1 4: eam diligentius ... oculorum esse custodiendam,
		N 17, 1 1: et hanc ... ut libet:
		V 12, 1 10: nubo, 125 b
		V 17, 1 4: comes, 59, A
		T 12, 1 2: sleeping ... that, as the
		1 3: girl more delicate
		1 4: than a charming lamb, had married him in her freshest bloom, must be guarded more care-
		1 5: fully than the apple of the eye,
53	Caesar	N last line: quae expeditius, propterea ... fines Helveti-
65	Publilius	O and N 12, 1 3: gens fasciis cruralibus ... subornatus
133	Horatius	V above studious insert, cui, 75
136		N 3, 1 2: non dii, quos ... iterum.
143	Livius	N 7, 1 9: sunt; maxime omnes conficiebant vigiliae per
167	Petronius	O and N 12, 1 3: gens fasciis crutalibus ... subornatus
263	Ambrosius	Foot note, meter: ◡ — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ ◡
340	A. De S. Vic.	Foot note: with pair and cross rhymes
344	Innocentius	Foot note, meter: — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ ◡
356	Carmina B.	Foot note, catalectic meter: — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ ◡

SELECTIONS

FROM THE WHOLE OF LATIN LITERATURE

The numbers before the authors' works suggest the order in which they can be studied with ease and success. (Cf. Page XII). Titles *in Italics* denote *POEMS*.

P A G A N A U T H O R S

B E F O R E C H R I S T

Chron. order		Study order		Page
1	-753	Romulus	108	One of His Laws 1
2	-450	Roman Senate	108	Table One of the XII Tables 1
3	-280	Scipios'	4	Tomb Inscriptions 3
4	-258	Duilius'	4	Columna Rostrata 5
5	-204	Andronicus	8	<i>Fragments of Odyssey. Tragedies</i> 6
6	-204	Naevius	11	<i>Fragments of Seven Books of Punic War</i> 9
7	-184	Plautus	37	<i>Captives (Act III, Scene V.)</i> 13
8	-169	Ennius	31	<i>Fragments of 18 Books of Annals and Tragedies</i> 20
9	-159	Terence	77	<i>Andria (Act V, Scene IV.)</i> 27
10	-149	Cato	41	<i>De re Rustica (On Husbandry)</i> 34
11	-132	Pacuvius	91	<i>Fragments of Tragedies</i> 40
12	-94	Accius	91	<i>Fragments of Tragedies</i> 42
13	-55	Lucretius	102	<i>De Natura Rerum (On Evolution)</i> 44
14	-54	Catullus	101	<i>Poems</i> 48
15	-44	Caesar	98	War with the Gauls 51
16	-43	Pub(li)lius	20	<i>Saws and Sayings</i> 60
17	-43	Cicero	58	Old Age 65
			79	Friendship 71
			86	Pro Archia 78
18	-34	Sallust	97	War with Jugurtha 86
19	-28	Varro	93	Latin Lexicon and Grammar 89
20	-24	Nepos	67	Timoleon (Biograph) 92
21	-19	Vergil	44	<i>Aeneid</i> 94
			83	<i>Georgics</i> 115
22	-19	Tibullus	48	<i>Country Life</i> 121
23	-15	Propertius	33	<i>Praise of Peace</i> 126
24	-8	Horace	54	<i>Art of Poetry and Odes</i> 129 and 135

A F T E R C H R I S T

25	-17	Livy	99	Roman History 148
26	-18	Ovid	50	<i>Death of Lucretia</i> 145
27	-31	Paterculus	46	Roman History 148
28	-35?	Valerius Maximus	43	Remarkable Deeds and Saws 150
29	-40?	Phaedrus	29	<i>Aesop's Fables</i> 152
30	-50?	Curtius	73	History of Alexander the Great 156
31	-60	Petronius	62	Satiricon (Novel) 161
32	-65	Seneca	104	Epistle to Lucilius. Anger 170
33	-70	Pliny the Elder	70	Natural History (Paper) 177
34	-104	Martial	81	<i>Epigrams</i> 180
35	-115	Pliny the Younger	35	Letters 182
36	-118	Quintilian	69	Institutions 187
37	-118	Tacitus	112	Annals 190
			114	Agricola 197

C O N T E N T S

38	-120	Juvenal	100	Satire	204
39	-150?	Junianus	96	History after Trogus	206
40	-160?	Suetonius	94	Divine Julius	208
41	-180	Gellius	111	Nights in Attica	211

C H R I S T I A N A U T H O R S

				Page				
42	60-400	Bible (Vulgate)	7	Creation	213			
			28	Original Sin	215			
			17	Kings	218			
			30	Tobias	220			
			51	<i>Psalm</i> 138	223			
			14	Proverbs	225			
			25	Wisdom	228			
			32	Prophets. Machabees	231, 233			
			21	Parables. Crucifixion	235, 240			
			34	Acts. Epistle	241, 242			
			38	Apocalypse	245			
			43	-220	Minutius	45	Debate (Octavius)	248
			44	-230	Tertullianus	47	To the Martyrs	250
45	-258	† Cyprian	90	On Patience	253			
46	-325	Lactantius	74	Divine Institutions	255			
47	-366	S. Hilary	49	You Are the Salt of the Earth	257			
48	-397	S. Ambrose	78	Hexameron. The Murder of S. John	259, 260			
			15	<i>Morning Song</i>	263			
49	-420	S. Jerome	92	We Have Left All (Commentary)	265			
50	-430	S. Augustine	63	Commentary. Confessions	267, 269			
51	-461	S. Leo the Great	80	Fasting is the Food of Angels	269			
52	-524	Boëthius	84	Consolation of Philosophy	272			
53	-543	S. Benedict	36	Rules (Regulae)	277			
54	-569	Venantius Fortunatus	12	<i>Vexilla Regis Prodeunt (Hymn)</i>	279			
55	-583	Cassiodorus	64	Copyists and Spelling	281			
56	-593	S. Gregory of Tours	65	History of the Franks	284			
57	-604	S. Gregory the Great	66	Homilies	287			
58	-636	S. Isidore	106	The Story of Glass (Encyclopedia)	289			
59	-735	S. Bede	68	Full Faith. History of the English Nation	292, 294			
60	-790	Paul the Deacon	39	History of the Longobards (Rosamunda)	295			
61	IX. C.	Anonymous (Fortunatus)	2	<i>Ave Maris Stella (Hymn)</i>	297			
62			-804	Alcuin	40	Letter to Charlemagne	299	
63	-856	Hrabanus Maurus	23	<i>Veni Creator Spiritus (Hymn)</i>	302			
64	-862	Lupus	75	Classical Letters	304			
65	-892	Anonymous	24	<i>Watch Song of Modena, Italy</i>	307			
66	-915	Reginus de Pruem	42	Charlemagne as a Monk	309			
67	-985	Hrothsvitha (a Nun)	55	Dulcitus (Tragedy)	312			
68	-995	Richer	59	History of the Kings of the Franks	317			
69	-1003	Gerbert (Sylvester II)	115	Classical Letters	320			
70	-1027	Fulbert of Chartres	19	<i>Cambridge Song (John, the Abbot)</i>	324			
71	-1050	John the Monk	52	Book of Miracles	328			
72	-1070	A Benedictine Abbess	3	<i>Jesu Dulcis Memoria (Hymn)</i>	329			
73	-1076	Adam of Bremen	53	The Norsemen Discover America	331			
74	-1143	William of Malmesbury	95	The History of the Kings of England	334			
75	-1153	S. Bernard of Clairvaux	85	Homily (There Was Sent)	336			
76	XII. C.	Bernard of Cluny	9	<i>Omni Die Dic Mariae (Hymn)</i>	338			

C O N T E N T S

77	-1182	Adam of S. Victor	5	<i>Heri Mundus Exultavit (Hymn)</i>	340
78	-1190	William of Tyre	71	History of the Crusades	342
79	-1216	Innocent III	1	<i>Veni Sancte Spiritus (Hymn)</i>	344
80	-1220	Girald of Barri	61	Ecclesiastical Gems (Stories)	346
81	-1240	Caesar of Heisterbach	57	Dialogus Miraculorum (Stories)	348
82	-1255	Thomas of Celano	6	<i>Dies Irae (Hymn)</i>	350
83	-1274	St. Bonaventure	72	Legend of S. Francis	352
84	-1274	S. Thomas Aquinas	16	<i>Pange Lingua (Hymn)</i>	354
85	XIII. C.	Wandering Students	10	<i>Carmina Burana</i>	356
86	- ? -	Anonymous ^o Scholars	22	Witticisms	360
87	-1300	John of Alta Silva	56	Seven Wise Men (Story)	362
88	-1306	Jacopone da Todi	18	<i>Stabat Mater Dolorosa (Hymn)</i>	365
89	-1321	Dante	87	On Monarchy	367
90	-1374	Petrarch	89	Letter to Cicero	368
91	-1464	Aeneas Sylvius (Pius II)	77	Commentaries	371
92	-1500	Marullus	110	<i>Hymn to Eternity</i>	373
93	-1536	Erasmus	107	Colloquies	375
94	-1586	Muretus	88	Plea for Greek and Latin	380
95	-1621	S. Bellarmine	105	Uprightness of the Fathers of the Church	382
96	-1668	Jacob Balde	109	<i>Gaudium Bonae Mentis (Ode)</i>	384
97	XVII. C.	Anonymous	13	<i>Creator Alme Siderum (Hymn)</i>	386
98	XVIII. C.	Anonymous	27	<i>Ecquis Binas Columbinas (Hymn)</i>	387
99	-1846	Aernouth (in America)	60	Following of the Sacred Heart	389
100	-1850	Hohenlohe	26	<i>Ad Quem Diu Suspiravi (Hymn)</i>	392
101	-1878	Pius IX	113	Bull of the Immaculate Conception	393
102	-1903	Leo XIII	103	<i>Holy Family (Hymn)</i>	395
103	-1925	Pius XI	82	Encyclical Letter on Christ the King	397
104	-1925	Anonymous	22	<i>King of Kings (Hymn)</i>	399

S E L E C T I O N S

IN THE PRACTICAL ORDER

To be studied according as the students advance. *Titles in italics denote POEMS.*

		F R E S H M E N		
Study order		Chron. order		Page
1	<i>Veni Sancte Spiritus</i>	79	Innocent III, d. 1216 A. D.	344
2	<i>Ave Maris Stella</i>	61	Anonymous (Fortunatus), IX. C.	297
3	<i>Jeſus Dulcis Memoria</i>	72	280, 260, 258 B. C.	3, 5
4	Inscriptions (Scipios, Duilius)	3-4	A Benedictine Abbess, 1070 A. D.	329
5	<i>Heri Mundus Exsultavit</i>	77	Adam of St. Victor, d. 1182 A. D.	340
6	<i>Dies Irae</i>	82	Thomas of Celano, d. 1255 A. D.	350
7	Creation	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	213
8	<i>Fragm. of Odyssey and Tragedies</i>	5	Andronicus, d. 204 B. C.	6
9	<i>Omni Die Dic Marię</i>	76	Bernard of Cluny, XII. C.	338
10	<i>Carmina Burana</i>	85	Wandering Students, XIII. C.	356
11	<i>Seven Books of Punic War</i>	6	Nævius, d. 204 B. C.	9
12	<i>Vexilla Regis Prodeunt</i>	54	Venantius Fortunatus, d. 569 A. D.	279
13	<i>Creator Alme Siderum.</i>	97	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	225
14	Proverbs	42	Anonymous, XVII. C.	386
15	<i>Aeterne Rerum Conditor</i>	48	S. Ambrose, d. 397 A. D.	263
16	<i>Pange Lingua</i>	84	S. Thomas Aquinas, d. 1274 A. D.	354
17	Kings	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	218
18	<i>Stabat Mater Dolorosa</i>	88	Jacopone da Todi, d. 1306	365
19	<i>Cambridge Song</i>	70	Fulbert of Chartres, d. 1027 A. D.	324
20	<i>Saws and Sayings</i>	16	Publilius, d. 43 B. C.	60
21	Parables; Crucifixion	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	235, 240
22	<i>King of Kings</i>	104	Anonymous, 1925 A. D.	399
22	Witticisms	86	Anonymous ^{oud} Scholars	360

S O P H O M O R E S

23	<i>Veni Creator Spiritus</i>	63	Hrabanus Maurus, 856 A. D.	302
24	<i>Watch Song</i>	65	Anonymous (in Modena Italy), 892 A. D.	307
25	Wisdom	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	228
26	<i>Ad Quem Diu Suspiravi</i>	100	Hohenlohe, 1850 A. D.	392
27	<i>Ecquis Binas Columbinas</i>	98	Anonymous, XVIII. C.	387
28	Original Sin	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	215
29	<i>Aesop's Fables</i>	29	Phaedrus, d. 40 A. D.	152
30	Tobias	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	220
31	<i>Annals and Tragedies</i>	8	Ennius, 169 B. C.	20
32	Prophets; Machabees	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	231, 233
33	<i>Praise of Peace</i>	23	Propertius, d. 15 B. C.	126
34	Acts; Epistle	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	241, 242
35	Letters	35	Pliny the Younger, d. 115 A. D.	182
36	Regulae	53	S. Benedict, d. 543 A. D.	277
37	<i>Captives (Act III. Scene V)</i>	7	Plautus, d. 184 B. C.	13
38	Apocalypse	42	Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	245
39	Rosamunda (History of the Longobards) ...	60	Paul the Deacon, d. 790 A. D.	295
40	Letter to Charlemagne	62	Alcuin, d. 804 A. D.	299
41	<i>De Re Rustica</i>	10	Cato, d. 149 B. C.	34

C O N T E N T S

42 Charlemagne as a Monk	66 Reginus de Pruem, d. 915 A. D.	309
43 Remarkable Deeds and Saws	28 Valerius Maximus, d. 35 A. D.	150
44 <i>Aeneid</i>	21 Vergil, d. 19 B. C.	94
45 Octavius (Debate)	43 Minutius, d. 220 A. D.	248
46 Roman History	27 Paterculus, d. 31 A. D.	148
47 To the Martyrs	44 Tertullian, d. 230 A. D.	250
48 <i>Country Life</i>	22 Tibullus, d. 19 B. C.	121
49 You are the Salt of the Earth	47 S. Hilary, d. 366 A. D.	257
50 <i>Death of Lucretia</i>	26 Ovid, d. 18 A. D.	145
51 <i>Psalm 138</i>	42 Vulgate, 60-400 A. D.	223
52 Book of Miracles	71 John the Monk, d. 1050 A. D.	328

J U N I O R S

53 The Norsemen Discover America	73 Adam of Bremen, d. 1076 A. D.	331
54 <i>Art of Poetry; Odes</i>	24 Horace, d. 8 B. C.	129, 135
55 Dulcitus (Tragedy)	67 Hrothsvitha, d. 985 A. D.	312
56 Seven Wise Men	87 John of Alta Silva, d. 1300 A. D.	362
57 Dialogus Miraculorum	81 Caesar of Heisterbach, d. 1240 A. D.	348
58 Old Age	17 Cicero, d. 43 B. C.	65
59 History of the Kings of the Franks	68 Richer, d. 995 A. D.	317
60 Following of the Sacred Heart	99 Aernouth in America, d. 1864 A. D.	389
61 Ecclesiastical Gems	80 Girald of Barri, d. 1220 A. D.	346
62 Satiricon (Novel)	31 Petronius, d. 60 A. D.	161
63 You are the Salt of the Earth; Confessions....	50 S. Augustine, d. 430 A. D.	267, 269
64 Copyists and Spelling	55 Cassiodorus, d. 583 A. D.	281
65 Attalus (History of the Franks)	56 S. Gregory of Tours, d. 593 A. D.	284
66 Homilies	57 S. Gregory the Great, d. 604 A. D.	287
67 Timoleon (History)	20 Nepos, d. 24 B. C.	92
68 Full of Faith. History of the English Nation	59 S. Bede, d. 735 A. D.	292, 294
69 Institutions	36 Quintilian, d. 118 A. D.	187
70 Paper (Natural History)	33 Pliny the Elder, d. 79 A. D.	177
71 History of the Crusades	78 William of Tyre, d. 1183 A. D.	342
72 Legend of S. Francis	83 S. Bonaventure, d. 1274 A. D.	352
73 History of Alexander the Great	30 Curtius, d. 50, A. D.	156
74 Divine Institutions	46 Lactantius, d. 325 A. D.	255
75 Classical Letters	64 Lupus, d. 862 A. D.	304
76 <i>Andria (Act V. Scene IV)</i>	9 Terence, d. 159 B. C.	27
77 <i>Comentaries</i>	91 Aeneas Sylvius, d. 1464 A. D.	371
78 Hexameron. Murder of St. John	48 S. Ambrose, d. 397 A. D.	259, 260
79 Friendship	17 Cicero, d. 43 B. C.	71
80 Fasting is the Food of Angels	51 S. Leo the Great, d. 461 A. D.	269
81 <i>Epigrams</i>	34 Martial, d. 104 A. D.	180
82 Encyclical Letter	103 Pius XI, 1925	397

S E N I O R S

83 <i>Georgics</i>	21 Vergil, d. 19 B. C.	115
84 Consolation of Philosophy	52 Boëthius, d. 524 A. D.	272
85 There was Sent (Homily)	75 S. Bernard of Clairvaux, d. 1153 A. D.	336
86 Pro Archia	17 Cicero, d. 43 B. C.	78
87 On Monarchy	89 Dante, d. 1321 A. D.	367
88 Plea for Greek and Latin	94 Muretus, d. 1586 A. D.	380
89 Letter to Cicero	90 Petrarch, d. 1374 A. D.	368
90 On Patience	45 S. Cyprian, d. 258 A. D.	253

C O N T E N T S

91	<i>Fragments of Tragedies</i>	11	Pacuvius, d. 132. Accius, d. 94 B.C.	40
92	We Have Left All (Commentary)	49	S. Jerome, d. 420 A. D.	265
93	Latin Lexicon and Grammar	19	Varro, d. 28 B. C.	90
94	Divine Julius	40	Suetonius, d. 160 A. D.	208
95	History of the Kings of England	74	William of Malmesbury, 1143 A. D.	334
96	History after Trogus	39	Junianus, d. 150 A. D.	206
97	War with Jugurtha	18	Sallust, d. 34 B. C.	86
98	War with the Gauls	15	Caesar, d. 44 B. C.	51
99	Roman History (Book 22)	25	Livy, d. 17 A. D.	138
100	<i>Satire</i>	38	Juvenal, d. 120 A. D.	204
101	<i>Poems</i>	14	Catullus, d. 54 B. C.	48
102	<i>De Natura Rerum (Evolution)</i>	13	Lucretius, d. 55 B. C.	44
103	<i>Holy Family</i>	102	Leo XIII, d. 1903 A. D.	395
104	Epistle to Lucilius. Anger	32	Seneca, d. 65 A. D.	170, 173
105	Uprightness of the Fathers	95	S. Bellarmine, d. 1621 A. D.	382
106	The Story of Glass	58	S. Isidore, d. 636 A. D.	289
107	Colloquies	93	Erasmus, d. 1536 A. D.	375
108	Laws	1-2	Romulus, 753. Senate, 450 B. C.	1
109	<i>Joy of a Good Conscience</i>	96	Balde, d. 1668 A. D.	384
110	<i>Hymn to Eternity</i>	92	Marullus, d. 1500 A. D.	373
111	Nights in Attica	41	Gellius, d. 180 A. D.	211
112	Annals	37	Tacitus, d. 118 A. D.	190
113	Bull on the Immaculate Conception	101	Pius IX, d. 1878 A. D.	393
114	<i>Agricola</i>	37	Tacitus, d. 118 A. D.	197
115	Classical Letter	69	Gerbert (Sylvester II), d. 1003 A. D.	320

PART ONE

P A G A N A U T H O R S

1 — 41

IN CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER

PARS PRIMA

SCRIPTORES ETHNICI

I. — XLI.

TEMPORIS ORDINE.

IN EACH SELECTION

THE LEFT IS THE ORIGINAL AND THE RIGHT IS THE NORMALIZED TEXT.

1. ONE OF THE LAWS OF ROMULUS

753 B.C.

WITH

archaisms and elements of the neighboring languages and mistakes of illiterate engravers and copyists. See the PREFACE of the GRAMMAR.

Si nurus plorassit, sacra divis parentum estod.

Course 108

WITHOUT

archaisms and elements of the neighboring languages and mistakes of illiterate engravers and copyists. See the PREFACE of the STYLISTIC.

Si nurus ploraverit, (occidendo) sacra diis parentum esto.

2. TABLE ONE OF THE LAW OF THE XII TABLES

450 B.C.

Course 108

1. Si in jus vocat, ito. Ni it, antestamino; igitur em capito.

2. Si calvitur pedemve struit, manum endo jacio.

1. Si quis in jus te vocat, ito. Si, quem tu vocaveris, non it, antestator, ac aurem antestati capito.

2. Si reus cavillatur atque resistit, manus ei injicitor.

EX LEGIBUS ROMULI.

VOCABULARY*

nurus, 4: daughter-in-law
ploro, 1: to weep
[plorassit, arch. for:] ploraverit, 109, a3
occido, 3, -cidi, -cisum: to kill, 88; 117, e
div(in) us, 3 (fr. deus, 2, god): 49, t
dii, diis, arch. yet preferred to dei, deis in pl., 78

TRANSLATION**

If a daughter-in-law weeps, she shall be sacrificed (by killing) to the gods of her parents.

sacer, 3: sacred, consecrated, sacrificed
[estod, with Oscan suffix for:] esto, 10, III; 41, 1c.

TABULA PRIMA LEGIS DUODECIM TABULARUM.

1. jus, juris, n: right, court, 22, e
vocat, colloquial, better vocaverit, 109, a3
ito, 108, b (fr. eo, 4: to go, 42, 3)
antestor, 1, obsolete: to call or present a witness,
ni, nisi; si non: if not, unless, 109, d (108, b
[antestamino, an Umbrian form of the legal imperative, 10, III; 34, b]

2. [calvo, calvor, 3; calvio, 4, obs. forms of:]
cavillor, 1: to trick, satirize, make objection
[struo, 3, struxi, structum: construct, erect]
[pedem struere, obs. for:] resisto, 3, restiti, -: to resist
[endo, Greek; into, obs. for:] in, 50, c

1. If someone summons you to court, go. If you summon someone, and he does not come, call a witness, and touch the earlap of your witness.

quem tu vocaveris, 33, c; 120, c2
auris, -is, f: ear. (To touch the earlap, as the seat of the deep memory, was a legal habit. Pliny.)

2. If the culprit makes objections or resists, hand shall be laid on him.

injicio, 3, -jeci, -ctum: to throw in, lay on, 40; 79; 108, b

*Numbers after NOUNS and VERBS denote the declension or conjugation, (regular principal parts in the first conjugation: -avi, -atum; in the fourth: -i(v)i, -itum); after ADJECTIVES they indicate the endings; other numbers refer to the sections of the GRAMMAR, but numbers preceded by "COLL." to the CONVERSATIONS. Words in brackets [] are not properly used.

**Words in parentheses () are only for the sake of clearness.

3. Si morbus aevitasve vicium escit, jumentum dato: si nolet, arceram ne sternito.

4. Assiduo vindex assiduus esto: proletario jam civi qui volet vindex esto?

5. Nexi mancipique cum Populo Romano idem forti, sanatique supra infraque jus esto.

6. Rem ubi pagunt, orato.

7. Ni pacunt, in comitio aut in foro ante meridiem causam conciunto. Com peroranto ambo praesentes.

8. Post meridiem praesenti litem addicito.

3. Si morbus vel aetas erit impedimentum, vehiculum, qui eum in jus vocaverit, ei dato: si tamen venire noluerit, ne arcera sternitor.

4. Vindex in cives esto assiduus, a proletario autem quis vellet vindicare quidquam?

5. Nexi mancipiique jus Populo Romano ac sociis fidelibus et ad fidem redeuntibus supra infraque idem esto.

6. Si litigantes rem pangunt, pactum comprobantes oranto.

7. Sin autem, ambo in comitio aut in foro ante meridiem argumenta exponunto praesentesque peroranto.

8. Post meridiem iudex alterutro etiam solo praesente litem addicito.

LEX XII TABULARUM.

VOCABULARY

3. morbus, 2: *sickness*
[aevitas, obs. for:] aetas, -tatis, f: *age, old age*
[escit, arch. for:] erit; here better fuerit, 109, a3
[vicium, 2: *fault, vice*]
[jumentum, 2: *beast of burden*]
vocaverit, 120, c2; noluerit, 109, a3 (drance
impedimentum, 2 (fr. impedio, 4, to hinder): hin-

4. vindex, -dixi, m (fr. vindico, 1, to claim, avenge): *revenger, judge*
assiduus, 3: *constant, severe* (tarian, 90
proletarius, 3: *one who has only children, prole-*

5. nexum, 2 (fr. necto, 3, nex(u)i, nexum, to bind): *lien, debt*
mancipium, 2: *purchase*
[fortis, 2: *brave, courageous, strong*]
[sano, 1: *to heal, cure, restore*]
socius, 2: *companion, ally*

6. [ubi: *when, as soon as*, 120, c]
litigo, 1: *to quarrel, sue, be litigant*
[pago, 3, obs.: *to agree, stipulate*] (a1
pango, 3, pepigi, pactum: *to fix, arrange, settle*, 109,
comprobo, 1: *to approve firmly, confirm*, 36, a

7. sin, si non: *if not*
comitium, 2: *meeting place at the forum, comitium*
ante meridiem: *A.M., before noon*
[causa, 1: *cause, reason, case*]
[conci(e)o, 2, -civi, -cĭtum: *to summon, excite*]
[com, arch. for:] cum: *when, while*, 120, c
peroro, 1: *to plead or explain a case*, 108, b

8. post meridiem: *P.M., in the afternoon*
alteruter, 3: *one or either of the two*, 30, k
solus, 3: *alone*, 30, k
addico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: *to award, judge*, 108, b

TRANSLATION

3. If sickness is a hindrance, he who summons anyone, shall send a carriage for him: if he still won't come, no wagon shall be fitted out.

sterno, 3, stravi, stratum: *to spread*, 108, b
vehiculum, 2 (fr. veho, 3, to carry): *carriage*
arcera, 1: *covered wagon*

4. Let the judge be severe towards the citizens: but who would claim anything from a proletarian?

5. The law of debt and purchase in all respects shall be the same for the Roman People as for the faithful and the returned allies.

fides, 5: *faith, alliance*
supra infraque: *within and beyond, in all respects*

6. If the litigants settle their case, let them speak confirming their agreement.

oro, 1: *to plead, speak, pray*

7. If not, in the comitium or in the forum, before noon, both shall bring forth their evidences and both present shall plead their case.

argumentum, 2 (fr. arguo, 3, to convict): *evidence, proof*

8. In the afternoon the judge shall pass judgment, even if only one of the two is present.

lis, litis, f: *quarrel, suit, case of suit*, 22, d

2. LAW OF THE XII TABLES

450 B.C.

Course 108

9. Si ambo praesentes, sol occasus suprema tempestas esto.

9. Si ambo praesentes sunt, solis occasus supremum tempus esto.

10. Vades ----- subvades -----
(Cf. Wordsworth, 1874)

10. Vades sicut et subvades, si quando necessarii, adsunto.

LEX XII TABULARUM.

VOCABULARY

9. sol, -is, m: sun; solis occasus, 4: sunset
[tempestas, -tatis, f: weather]
tempus, -poris, n: time, season
supremus, 3: highest, latest, 27, f

10. vas, vadis, m: bail
sicut et: as well as, just as
subvas, -adis, m: guarantor of bail
adesse: to be present, 41, 1c, 108, b
quando: when; si quando: whenever

TRANSLATION

9. If both are present, sunset shall be the latest time (granted for pleading).

10. Bails as well as guarantors of bail, whenever needed, shall be present.

necessarius, 3: necessary, needed, unavoidable

3. EPITAPHS or INSCRIPTIONS ON TOMBS

280 B.C.

Course 4

WITH

*mistakes of illiterate and foreign engravers.***

-----O CN. F. SCIPIO.

CORNELIUS LUCIUS SCIPIO BARBATUS
* GNAIVOD PATRE PROGNOTUS FORTIS
VIR SAPIENSQUE * QUOJUS FORMA VIR-
TUTEI PARISUMA FUIT * CONSOL CEN-

WITHOUT

mistakes of illiterate and foreign engravers.

LUCIUS CORNELIUS GNAEI FILIUS SCIPIO.

Cornelius Lucius Scipio Barbatus Gnaeo patre prognatus, fortis vir sapiensque, cuius forma virtuti parissima fuit, qui consul,

EPITAPHIA.

VOCABULARY

(280 B.C.) Lucius and all the other Roman names, ending in -us, are of the 2nd decl.; Scipio, -onis of the 3rd decl. For their etymon see 49, C
filius, 2: son, 21, b
(prog)nascor, 3, -natum: to be born, 91
fortis, 2: strong, brave, powerful
vir, 2: man, husband
sapiens, -ntis, : wise, prudent
-que: and, 13, b
qui, 3: who, which, 30, g
forma, 1: form, appearance
virtus, -tutis, f: virtue, excellence

TRANSLATION

(280 B.C.) LUCIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO, SON OF GNAEUS.

Lucius Cornelius Scipio Barbatus, a powerful and prudent man, born of Gnaeus, his father, whose appearance was very much like his virtue, (and) who was consul,

par, -is: like, similar, mate, pair, 78
sum, esse, fui: to be, 41, 1
consul, -is, m: consul

** At a glance, these mistakes manifest an inconsistent and alien spelling of foreign (APUD VOS FUIT) and illiterate engravers, which are lacking in the contemporary fragments of the Roman authors, Andronicus, and Naevius. Cf. STYLISTIC. page 6-12

* Saturnian verse, discovered 1785; its meter: $\underline{\cup} \parallel \text{---} (\cup) | \text{---} (\cup) | \text{---} \cup \parallel \text{---} (\cup) | \text{---} (\cup) | \text{---} \cup$ which in any part can be varied with this: $\cup \parallel \cup \cup \text{---} | \cup \cup \text{---} | \cup \cup \text{---} \parallel \cup \cup \text{---} | \cup \cup \text{---} | \cup \cup \text{---}$

3. EPITAPHS

280 B.C.

SOR AIDILIS QUEI FUIT APUD VOS * TAURASIA CISAUNA SAMNIO CEPIT * SUBIGIT OMNE LOUCANAM OPSIDESQUE ABDOUCIT. (*Corp. Inscr. Lat.* 29)

Course 4

censor et aedilis fuit apud vos, Taurasiam, Cisaunam in Samnio cepit: subegit totam Lucaniam obsidesque duxit.

260 B.C.

L. CORNELIO L. F. SCIPIO AIDILES COSOL CESOR.

HONC OINO PLOIRUME CONSENTIONT R-----* DUONORO OPTUMO FUISE VIRO-----* LUCIOM SCIPIONE. FILIOS BARBATI * CONSOL CENSOR AIDILIS HIC FUET A----- * HEC CEPIT CORSICA ALERIAQUE URBE * DEDET TEMPESTATEBUS AIDE MERETO.

(*Corp. Inscr. Lat.* 30)

LUCIUS CORNELIUS LUCII FILIUS SCIPIO AEDILIS CONSUL ET CENSOR.

Hunc unum plurimi consentiunt Romae bonorum optimum fuisse virum (*virorum*) Lucium Scipionem. Filius Barbati hic, Consul, censor et aedilis fuit apud vos: hic cepit in Corsica Aleriam urbem, deditque, merito Tempestatibus aedem.

EPITAPHIA.

VOCABULARY

(280 B.C.)

censor, -is, m: *censor, assessor*
 aedilis, -is, m: *superintendent of public goods*
 apud: *at; with pronouns: at one's home or city or country*
 vos (*fr. ego, I*): *we, us, 30, a*
 Taurasia, 1, Cisauna, 1, Samnium, 2, Lucania, 1, : *regions in Italy*
 capio, 3, cepi, captum: *to catch, seize, capture, 40*

(260 B.C.)

hic, 3: *this, 30, f*
 unus, 3: *one, alone, 30, k*
 plurimus, 3: *most, 27, e*
 consentio, 4, -nsi, -nsum: *to agree, 57, 4*
 Roma, 1: *Rome, 21, c*
 bonus, 3: *good; optimus, 3: best, 27, e*
 Corsica, 1: *an island in the Mediterranean sea*
 Aleria, 1: *a city in Corsica*
 urbs, -bis, f: *city*
 do, 1, dedi, datum: *to give*
 merito (*fr. meritum, 2, merit*): *deservedly, for merit*
 tempestatas, -tatis, f: *weather, storm*

TRANSLATION

censor and edile in your country, captured Taurasia, Cisaunam in Samnium: he subdued all Lucania, and took hostages.

subigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to work through, subdue [omnis, 2: all, every]; totus, 3: whole*
 obses, -sidis, c: *bail, hostage*

(260 B.C.) LUCIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO, EDILE, CONSUL AND CENSOR, SON OF LUCIUS.

Most (people) in Rome agree, that this Lucius Scipio alone was the best among good men. This son of Barbatus was consul, censor and edile in your country. He conquered the city of Aleria in Corsica, and out of gratitude built a temple to the gods of storm.

Tempestatas, -tum, f: *the gods of weather or storm*
 aedes, -dis, f: *temple; in pl.: houses*

*Saturnian verses. See footnote on page three.

4. DUILIUS' COLUMN DECORATED WITH SHIP PROWS

259 B.C.

Course 4

WITH

*mistakes of illiterate and foreign engravers. ****

1. LECIONE^s* ----- maXIMOSQUE MA-
CISTRATOS ----- CASTREIS EXFOCIONT.

MACELam ----- pUCNANDOD** CEPET
----- rEM NAVEBOS MARID CONSOL PR-
MOS C-----, cLASES NAVALES PRIMOS
ORNAVET -----.

2. CUMQUE EIS NAVEBOUS CLASEIS
POENICAS OMNis item maxUMAS COPIAS
CARTACINIENSIS PRAESENTED Hanibaled
DICTATORED OLorOM IN ALTOD MARID
PUCNandod vicet.

3. viQUE NAVEis cepet CUM SOCIEIS SEP-
TEResmom unam ----- TRIRESMOSQUE NA-
VEIS Xxx -----.

WITHOUT

mistakes of illiterate and foreign engravers.

1. Legiones ----- maximique magistratus ----
-- castris effugiunt.

Macellam ----- pugnando cepit ----- Rem in
mari navibus consul primus g(essit), classes nava-
les primus ornavit -----.

2. Eisque navibus, classes Punicas omnes, item
maximas copias Carthaginienses praesente Hanni-
bale dictatore eorum in alto mari pugnando vicit.

3. Vique naves cepit cum sociis septiremem unam
----- triremesque naves XXX; -----.

COLUMNA ROSTRATA DUILII CONSULIS.

VOCABULARY

1. legio, -nis, f: *legion*
maximus, 3: *highest*, 27, e
magistratus, 4: *magistrate*
castrum, 2: *castle; in pl.: camp*
effugio, 3, -fugi, -fugitulum: *to escape*, 40
Macella, 1: *a town in Sicily*
pugno, 1: *to fight, battle*, 117, e; 88
res, 5: *thing, matter, affair*
navis, -is, f: *ship, vessel, boat*, 93, a
in: *in, on, to*, 50, c
mare, -ris, n: *sea*, 22, f

2. is, 3: *that, this, he*, 30, f
Punicus, 3: *Punic*
item: *also, as well as*
copia, 1: *plenty, chance; in pl.: troops*
Carthaginiensis, 2: *Carthaginian*
praesens, -ntis: *present*, 26, c; 114, a
Hannibal, -is: *Hannibal*
dictator, -is, m: *commander, dictator*
altus, 3: *deep, high, open*

3. vis, f: *force, power, strength, violence*
cum: *together with*, 50, b
socius, 2: *companion, ally*
unus, 3: *one*, 30, k (oars)
septiremis, -is, f: *septireme (a ship of 7 banks of*
triemis, is, f: *trireme (a ship of three banks of*

TRANSLATION

1. *The legions ---- and the highest magistrates*
----- escape from their camp.
He captured ---- Macella in battle ---- (As)
consul, for the first time he waged war on sea ----
He was the first to build a fleet.

primus, 3: *first*, 27, g; 56
gero, 3, gessi, gestum: *to carry, bear, wage*
classis, -is, f: *class, fleet, navy*
orno, 1: *to equip, fit out, adorn*

2. *And with these vessels on the open sea he de-*
feated in battle all the Punic fleets, as well as the
great Carthaginian troops, in the presence of Han-
nibal, their commander.

[olorom for illorum]
is, 3: *that, he*, 30, f; 30, b1
vinco, 3, vīci, victum: *to conquer, defeat*

3. *And by military force, with his allies he cap-*
tured the (following) vessels: one septireme ----
thirty triemes -----.

oars)
XXX, triginta, *indecl. : thirty*, 29, a

* The small letters of reconstruction are missing in the column.

** D's in abl. singular are of the foreign engraver's native language.

*** The cruder mistakes of a later or the same date, show a ruder state of a foreign engraver, but not that of a classical language; in which we find words, as: Lucius, patre prognatus, cepit obsides, pugnando, classes navales, praeda.

aurum CAPTUM NUMEI MMMDCC ----- Aurum captum nummorum MMMDCC -----
 NAVALIS PRAEDAE POPULUM donavit ----- Navalis praeda populum donavit -----
 (Corp. Inscr. Lat. 195)

COLUMNA ROSTRATA.

VOCABULARY

MMMDCC, tria milia septingenti, 3: *three thousand seven hundred, 29, a, i*
 aurum, 2: *gold*
 nummus, 2: *coin, 67, b*
 aurum nummorum MMMDCC: aurum nummorum
 trium milium septingentorum
 dono, 1: *to donate, present, 82*

TRANSLATION

Gold to the value of three thousand seven hundred coins was seized.
He presented the people with naval booty -----
 praeda, 1: *booty, prey, plunder*

THE PIONEER OF LATIN LITERATURE

285-205 B.C.

5. LIVIUS ANDRONICUS

Course 8

A Greek slave from Tarentum, then teacher in Rome

ODYSSEY TRANSLATED

*The First Text-Book of Roman Pupils for Two Centuries.**Only a few fragments**In Saturnian verses, with archaisms.**In classical prose.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Virum mihi Camena insece versutum. I, 1 | 1. Virum mihi Musa prosequere versutum. |
| 2. Mea puer, quid verbi ex ore tuo audio? I, 64 | 2. Mea puella, quod verbum ex ore tuo audio? |
| 3. ---- in Pylum adveniens aut ibi ommentans, ----
II, 317 | 3. Aut Pylum adveniens aut ibi obmanens, ----- |
| 4. Tuncque remos jussit religare struppis. II, 422 | 4. Tuncque remos jussit religari struppis. |

EX ODYSSEA.

VOCABULARY

1. Musa, 1: *in Etruscan, Camena, 1: Muse*
 mihi, (*fr. ego, I; 30, a*): *for my sake, I beg, 75*
 [insequo, or insecō, 3, -sexi, -sectum, obs: *to follow, relate*]

2. [puer, 2: *boy; puer(a), 1, obs. form of*] puella, 1: *girl*
 [quis, quid or] qui, quae, quod: *who, what, which?*
 verbum, 2: *verb, word, 67, c'* (30, h
 ex: *out of, from, 50, b*

3. Pylus, 2, f: *Pylus, a city in Greece, 21, a*
 [in: *in, to, at, 50, c*]
 aut - aut: *either - or*
 advenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to arrive at, 36, a*
 ibi: *there, 51, f*

4. tunc: *then, at that time*
 remus, 2: *oar, paddle*
 jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: *to order, 57, b*
 religo, 1: *to tie, untie*

TRANSLATION

1. *Muse, I beg, assist the crafty man.*
 prosequor, 3, -secutum: *to follow, assist, 31, c; 108, a*
 versutus, 3: *cunning, sly, crafty*

2. *My girl, what is the word I hear from your lips?*

ōs, ōris, n: *mouth, lips, 23, Id*
 tuus, 3: *thy, your, 30, e*
 audio, 4: *to hear, perceive*

3. *Either arriving at Pylus, or waiting there, -----*

[ommento, 1, obs, for:] obmaneo, 2, -mansi, -mansum: *to wait for, stay over, 36, a*

4. *Then he ordered the oars to be tied with straps.*

struppis, 2: *strap, rope, 93, a*

5. LIVIUS ANDRONICUS

285-204 B.C.

Course 8

FRAGMENTS

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>5. Partim errant; nequimont Graeciam redire. IV, 495</p> <p>6. Utrum genua amplectens virginem oraret. VI, 142</p> <p>7. Ibi manens sedeto, donicum videbis</p> <p>8. Me carpento <i>vehentem</i> domum venisse. VI, 295-6</p> <p>9. ---- puerarum manibus confectum pulcerime. VII, 235</p> <p>10. Inferus an superus tibi fert deus funera, Ulixes? XI, 135</p> <p>11. Topper facit homines veris ---- sueris. X, 432</p> | <p>5. Passim errant; nequeunt in Graeciam redire.</p> <p>6. ----, utrum genua amplectens virginem oraret.</p> <p>7. Ibi manens sede, donec videbis</p> <p>8. me carpento <i>vectum</i> domum venisse.</p> <p>9. <i>Opus</i> puellarum manibus confectum pulcherrime.</p> <p>10. Inferus an superus deus fert tibi funera, Ulixes?</p> <p>11. <i>Tantopere</i> homines facit verres <i>vel</i> sues.</p> |
|--|---|

E FRAGMENTIS.

VOCABULARY

5. [partim: *partly*, 28, *c*
 passim: *up and down, far and wide*, 28, *c*
 erro, 1: *to err, stray*
 Graecia, 1 (*fr. Graecus*, 3, *Greek*): *Greece*, 49, *u*
 nequeo, 4: *not to be able*, 42, *g*
6. utrum: *whether*, 51, *d*; 132
 genu, 4, *n*: *knee*
 amplector, 3, -plexum: *to embrace*, 31, *c*
 virgo, -ginis, *f*: *virgin, girl*
7. maneo, 2, mansi, mansum: *to wait for, stay*, 36, *a*
 sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: *to sit, be seated*, 108, *a*
 [donicum, *obs. for.*] donec: *till, as long as*
8. carpentum, 2: *two wheeled carriage, car*
 veho, 3, vexi, vectum: *to carry*, 36, *b*
 domum: *homeward, home*, 21, *f*
9. opus, operis, *n*: *work, labor*
 manus, 4, *f*: *hand*, 24, *b*; 93, *a*
 conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to accomplish, consume*, 40; 36, *b*
10. inferus, 3: *which is low, lower*, 27, *f*
 an: *or*, 51, *c*
 superus, 3: *which is above, upper*, 27, *f*
 deus: *god*, 20, *b*
 fero, 3, ferre, tuli, latum: *to bring*, 43, 8
 tu: *thou, you*, 30, *a*
11. (topper, *obs. for.*) tantopere: *so much, so greatly*
 homo, -minis, *m*: *man*
 facio, 3, feci, factum: *to make, build*, 40
 verres, -rris, *m*: *boar*

TRANSLATION

5. *They wander far and wide; they cannot return to Greece.*
- redeo, 4, īvi, itum: *to return, go back*, 42, 3
6. ----, *whether to ask the girl, (while) embracing her knees.*
- oro, 1: *to ask, pray*
7. *Staying there, be seated, till you see*
- video, 2, vidi, visum: *to see*, 57, 4
8. *me returned, carried home on a car.*
- venio, 4, veni, ventum: *to come, return*, 57, 4
9. *A work beautifully executed by maidens' hands.*
- pulcher, -chra, -chrum: *beautiful*, 27, *b*; 28, *a*
10. *Does a god (of) the lower or upper (world) bring you misfortune, Ulysses?*
- funus, -neris, *n*: *funeral, ruin, misfortune*, 23, III
 Ulixes, -xis: *Ulysses, the king of Ithaca*
11. *So fully she (Circe) transforms men to boars or sows.*
- sus, suis, *f*: *sow*

FRAGMENTS

12. Cum socios nostros mandisset impius Cyclops-- XX, 19
 12. Cum sociis nostros mandisset impius cyclops.
13. At celer hasta volans perrumpit pectora ferro. XXII, 82
 13. At celeris hasta volans ferro perrumpit pectus.
14. Carnis vinumque, quod libabant, anclabatur -- XXIII, 304
 14. Caro vinumque, quod libabant, hauriebatur.

From his TRAGEDY translations
 Aegisthus

15. Tum autem lascivum Nerei simum pecus 15. Tum autem lascivum Nerei simum pectus
 16. Ludens ad cantum classem lustratur. 5-6 16. Ludens ad cantum Classem lustrat.

Andromeda

17. Confluges rivi conventu campum totum inhumigabant. 15 17. Fluxus rivi totum campum late irrigabant.

E FRAGMENTIS.

VOCABULARY

12. cum: *when*, 125, *a*
 socius, 2: *companion, partner*
 noster, -tra, -trum: *our*, 30, *e*
 mando, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to chew, eat*
 impius, 3: *godless, impious*

13. at: *but, and*
 celer, -ris, -re: *swift, quick, rapid*
 hasta, 1: *spear, pike, javelin*
 ferrum, 2: *iron, point*, 93, *a*
 volo, 1: *to fly*, 36, *a*

14. caro, -rnis, f: *flesh, meat*
 vinum, 2: *wine*; -que: *and*, 13, *b*
 qui, quae, quod: *who, which*, 30, *g*
 [ancto, 1, *archaic for:*] haurio, 4: *to draw up or out, exhaust*

15. tum: *then, at that time*
 autem: *but and*, 119, *b*
 lascivus, 3: *playful, frolicsome*
 Nereus, 2: *Nereus (a sea god)*
 simus, 3: *bent, curled*

16. ludo, 3, lusi, lusum: *to play*, 36, *a*
 ad: *at, to*, 50, *a*
 cantus, 4, m: *song*

17. (confluges, *arch.*) fluxus, 4, m: *a flowing/*
 rivus, 2: *brook, stream*
 [conventus, 4: *assembly, congress*]
 campus, 2: *meadow, field*
 totus, 3: *whole, entire*, 30, *k*

TRANSLATION

12. *When impious Cyclops had eaten our companions, -----*

Cyclops, -pis, m: *Cyclops (one eyed giant)*

13. *And with its point the swift spear pierces his breast.*

perrumpo, 3, -rrupi, -rruptum: *to break through*
 pectus, -toris, n: *breast, heart*

14. *The meat and wine, which they were sacrificing, were drawn out -----.*

libo, 1: *to sacrifice, offer, consecrate*

Ex Aegistho.

15-16. *And then, gamboling to a song, the playful curled cattle of Nereus encircled the fleet.*

pecus, -coris, n: *cattle*, 23, III

classis, is, f: *class, any division, fleet*
 lustro, 1: *to observe, pass through*, 31, *a*

Ex Andromeda.

17. *The waters of the brook irrigated the meadow all around.*

late, (fr. *latus*, 3, *wide*): *all around*, 28, *a*
 (inhumigo, 1, *arch. for:*) irriigo, 1: *to irrigate, water*

5. LIVIUS ANDRONICUS

285-204 B.C.

Course 8

Andromeda

18. Quem ego nefrendem alui lacteam immulgens 18. Quem ego infantem lactans tenera alui cura. --
opem. 37 (F. H. Bothe, 1823-4)

Ex Andromacha.

VOCABULARY

18. (nefrens, -ndis, arch. for:) infans, -ntis, c. (fari nesciens): *baby*
 alo, 3, alui, alitum: *to nurse, nourish*
 lacto, 1: *to give suck to*; lacteo, 2, -, -: *to suck*, 36, a
 tener, -ra, -rum, *tender*
 [lacteus, 3: *milky*]

TRANSLATION

18. *Whom as a baby, I nursed, suckling (him) with tender care.*
 cura, 1: *care, anxiety, cure*, 88
 [immulgeo, 2, -lsi, -lsum: *to milk into*]
 [(ops), opis, f: *help, in pl.: wealth*, 22, a]

6. GNAEUS NAEVIUS

269-204 B.C.

Course 11

A Campanian Ally.

PUNIC WAR (7 BOOKS)

Only Fragments

(Notice the classical perfection of Scipios' and Andronicus' time,
 in the third century before Christ.)

In Saturnian verses, with archaisms

In classical prose

~~Book Two~~ One

----- Amborum uxores
 Noctu Troiad exhibant capitibus opertis
 Flentes ambae abeuntes lacrimis cum multis.
 Eorum sectam sequuntur multi mortales.

5. ----- multi alii e Troia
 Strenui viri -----,
 Ubi foras cum auro illuc exibant.

----- Amborum uxores capitibus
 opertis nocte Troia exhibant, abeuntes flentesque
 lacrimis multis.
 Eorum catervam sequuntur multi mortales.

5. ----- multi alii Troia strenui viri,
 ----- ubi foras cum auro illuc exibant.

BELLUM PUNICUM.

E Libro Primo.

VOCABULARY

ambo, -bae, -bo: *both*, 29, h
 uxor, -is, f: *wife*, 16
 caput, -pitis, n: *head*, 23, III; 88
 operio, 4, -rui, -rtum: *to cover*
 [noctu, obs.] nox, noctis, f: *night*, 22, d; 95
 [Troiad, foreign abl.]; Troia, 1: *Troy*, 21, b
 exeo, 4, exivi, exitum: *to go out*, 42, 3
 abeo, 4, abivi, abitum: *to go away*, 42, 3e, 36, a
 fleo, 2, -evi, -tum: *to weep*, 36, a
 [cum: *together with*, 50, b]

5. alius, 3: *other*, 30, k
 strenuus, 3: *brisk, active*
 vir, viri, 2, m: *man, male person*
 ubi: *where, when*
 foras: *out, forth*; foris: *outside*
 aurum, 2: *gold*

TRANSLATION

*The wives of both, their heads covered, left
 Troy by night, departing and shedding abundant
 tears. Many men follow(ed) their company.*

lacrima, 1: *tear*, 88
 multus, 3: *much many*, 27, e
 [secta, 1: *party, sect*]; caterva, 1: *crowd; troop*
 sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow*, 31, c; 101
 mortalis, 2 (fr. mors, mortis, death): *mortal, man*,
 49, r

5. ----- *when many other active men from Troy
 went out to the place with gold.*

illuc: *thither, to that place*, 51, f

FRAGMENTS

Senex fretus pietate ---- allocutus summi Deum Senex fretus pietate allocutus est fratrem summi
regis fratrem Neptunum regnatorem Marum ----- regis deum Neptunum regnatorem marium -----

11. Ferunt pulcras crateras, aureas lepistas.
Blande et docte *percontat* Aeneas, quo pacto
Troiam urbem reliquerit -----

11. Ferunt pulchras crateras, aureas lepistas.
Blande et docte *enarrat* Aeneas, quo pacto
Urbem reliquerit Troiam -----

Book Two

14. Jamque ejus mentem fortuna fecerat quietem.
Manusque susum ad caelum sustulit suas rex.

14. Jamque ejus mentem fortuna fecerat quietam.
Manusque sursum ad caelum sustulit rex suas.

16. Prima incedit Cereris Proserpina *puer*.
Dein pollens sagittis, inclutus arcitenens
Sanctus, Delphis prognatus Pythius Apollo.

16. Prima incedit Proserpina Cereris *filia*
Dein pollens sagittis, inclutus arcitenens sanctus,
Delphis prognatus Pythius Apollo.

E FRAGMENTIS.

VOCABULARY

senex, -nis: *old*, 26, a; 27, j
fretus, 3: *trusting*, (with the abl.)
pietas, -tatis, f (fr. pius, 3, *pious*): *piety, faith*, 49, u
alloquor, 3, -locutum: *to address*, 31, c
frater, -tris: *brother*, 22, b (preme, 27, f
summus, 3 (fr. superus, 3, *upper*): *highest, su-*
rex, regis, m (fr. rego, 3, *to rule*): *king*, 49, i
Neptunus, 2: *Neptune, the god of the sea, brother*

11. fero, 3, ferre, tuli, latum: *to bring*, 43, 8
pulcher, -chra, -chrum: *beautiful* 11, c; 27, b
cratera, 1: *bowl, pitcher*
aureus, 3 (fr. aurum, 2, *gold*): *golden*, 40, s
lepista, 1: *goblet, cup*

blandus, 3: *kind, pleasant*, 28, a
doctus, 3 (fr. doceo, 2, -cui, -ctum, *to teach*):
learned, skilful, 28, a
[percontor, 1: *to inquire*, 31, c]
enarro, 1: *to relate, report*

14. jamque: *and already, now*
is, ea, id: *that, he, she, it*, 30, f
mens, -ntis, f: *mind*, 22, c
fortuna, 1: *fortune, good luck*
[quies, -etis, f: *repose*]
quietus, 3: *quiet(ed)*
manus, 4, f: *hand*, 24, b
[susu(m), arch. for:] sursum: *upwards*, 51, f

16. primus, 3: *first*, 29, b
incedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to walk*
Ceres, -eris, *goddess of agriculture, daughter of*
Saturn, sister of Jupiter, mother of Proserpina, 1:
(Proserpine), *the queen of the underworld*
[puer, puera, arch. for puella: *girl*]
filia, 1: *daughter*, 19, 6
dein(de) : *then, afterwards*
polleo, 2, -, -: *to be powerful*
sagittal: *arrow*, 84 or 93, a
inclutus, 3, of Greek orig.: *renowned, famous*

Page ten

TRANSLATION

*The old man trusting in faith, addressed the su-
preme king's brother, the god Neptune, the ruler of
the seas -----*

of Jupiter
regnator, -is, m (fr. regno, 1, *to rule*): *ruler*, 49, d
mare, -ris, n: *sea*, 22, f; 23, III

11. *They bring fine pitchers and golden goblets.
Pleasantly and skilfully Aeneas relates, under what
circumstances he abandoned the city of Troy.*

Aeneas, 1: *Aeneas*, 19, c
qui, 3: *who, what?* 30, k
pactum, 2 (fr. paciscor, 3, *pactum, to agree*): *treaty,*
condition, 88
urbs, -bis, f: *city*, 22, c; 23, II
relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: *to abandon, leave*, 132

E Libro Secundo.

14. *His good fortune has now quieted his mind.
And the king lifted up his hands to heaven.*

tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatus: *to raise, lift up*
suus, 3: *his, her, its, own*, 30, e
ad: *to*, 50, a
Caelum, 2, n: *heaven*; caeli, -orum, m: *heavens*

16. *First there comes Proserpine, the daughter
of Ceres, then the famous archer, mighty in shoot-
ing, holy and born in Delphi, the Pythian Apollo.*

arcitenens, -ntis, arcum tenens: *bow holder*, 11, a
sanctus, 3: *holy, saint*
Delphi, -phorum, m: *Delphi, the oracle place of*
Apollo, -llinis, the god of archery, poetry, music,
prophesying and the sun, 91
prognatus, 3: *born, sprung from*
Pythius, 3 (of Pytho, *the country where Delphi*
lay): *Pythian*

6. GNAEUS NAEVIUS

269-204 B.C.

Course 11

FRAGMENTS

Book Four

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>19. Transit Melitam Romanus exercitus; insulam integram
Urit, populatur, vastat; rem hostium concinnat.</p> | <p>19. Transit Melitam Romanus exercitus; insulam integram
urit, populatur, vastat; rem hostium concinnat.</p> |
|--|--|

TRAGEDIES

Andromache

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>21. Quod tu, mi gnate, quaeso, ut in pectus tuum Demittas, tamquam in fiscinam vindemitor.</p> | <p>21. Quod tu, mi nate, quaeso, in pectus tuum demittas, tamquam vindemiator in fiscinam.</p> |
|---|--|

Hector

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>23. Laetus sum laudari me abs te, pater, a laudato viro.</p> | <p>23. Laetus sum laudari me abs te, pater, a laudato viro.</p> |
|---|---|

Lycurgus

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>24. Vos, qui regalis corporis custodias Agitatis, ite actutum in frondiferos lucos. Dic, quo pacto eum potiti ----; pugna, an dolis?</p> | <p>24. Vos, qui regalis corporis custodias agitis, ite actutum in frondiferos lucos. Dic: quo pacto potiti eo estis; pugna-ne an dolo?</p> |
|---|--|

FRAGMENTA

E Libro Quarto.

VOCABULARY

19. transeo, 4, -īvi, itum: to go, pass over, 42, 3; Melita, 1: Malta (61, a) Romanus, 3 (fr. Roma, 1, Rome): Roman, 49, t exercitus, 4: army insula, 1: island integer, -gra, -grum: whole, entire uro, 3, ussi, ustum: to burn, 101 populor, 1: to destroy, plunder, 101

TRANSLATION

19. The Roman army passes through Malta; it burns, destroys and lays waste the whole island; and settles the case for its enemies.
vasto, 1: to lay waste, devastate, 101 res, 5: thing, matter, case hostis, is, m: enemy, 23, I concinno, 1: to arrange, settle, 101

Ex Andromeda.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>21. qui, 3: who which, that, 30, g; 30, b 4-5 tu: thou, you, 30, a meus, 3: my, mine, 30, e; 20, b gnatus, (arch. form for:) natus (fr. nascor, 3, natum, to be born): son; nata: daughter quaeso, quaesumus: I (or) we beg, please, 47 pectus, -toris, n: breast, heart in: in, on, into, 50, c</p> | <p>21. I ask you, my son, put that into your heart, as a vintager into his basket. (down, 106 demitto, 3, -misi, -missum: to send or let or put tamquam: as, like vindemiator, -is, m (fr. vindemio, 1, to gather the vintage): vintager, 49, d fiscina, 1: (small) basket</p> |
|--|--|

Ex Hectore.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>23. laetus, 3: glad, joyful, 57, 4 laudo, 1: to praise, 35, a; 57, 4; 36, b ego: I, 30, a a, before consonants; ab, before vowels and h; (abs, before c, q, t): by, 50, b; 93</p> | <p>23. I am glad, father, to be praised by you, (who are) a man, (also having been) praised.</p> |
|--|--|

E Lycurgo.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>24. regalis, 2 (fr. rex, regis, king): royal, 49, r corpus, -poris, n: body custodia, 1: guard [agito, 1: to agitate]: ago, 3, egi, actum: to act (as) eo, 4, -īvi, -itum: to go, 42, 3 actutum, confestim, illico: right away frondifer, 3 (fr. frons, -ndis, f: foliage and fero, to lucus, 2: grove, forest (bring): leafy, 49, A dico, 3, dixi, dictum: to say, 34, c</p> | <p>24. You, who act as the royal body-guard, go without delay into the leafy groves. Tell us, by what means you overcame him; by (open) fight or by fraud?
potior, 4, itum: to take possession, overcome, 93, b pugna, 1: fight, battle, 93, a -ne - an: or, either - or, 51, e dolus, 2: fraud, deceit, guile, 88</p> |
|--|--|

FRAGMENTS

From One of His Tragedies

27. Male parta male dilabuntur.

27. Male parta male dilabuntur.

COMEDIES

Ludus

28. *Cedo, qui* vestram rempublicam tantam am-
sistis tam cito?
Proveniebant oratores novi, stulti, adolescentuli.

28. *Dic: quomodo* tantam rempublicam vestram
tam cito amisistis?
Proveniebant oratores novi, stulti, adolescentuli.

Gymnasticus

30. *Edepol*, Cupido, cum tam pausillus sis, nimis
multum vales.

30. *Me deus Pollux (ita adjuvet)*, Cupido, cum
tam pusillus sis, nimis *tamen* vales.

HIS OWN EPITAPH

Immortales mortales si foret fas flere,
Flerent divae Camenae Naevium poëtam:

Si fas esset immortales deflere mortales,
Deflerent divae Musae Naevium poëtam:

FRAGMENTA.

E Quadam Ejus Tragedia.

VOCABULARY

27. male (*fr.* malus, 3, bad): badly, 28, a
pario, 3, peperit, partum: to bring forth, acquire, 40.
dilabor, 3, -lapsum: to glide apart, be lost, 31, c

TRANSLATION

27. Ill gotten goods don't stay.

E Ludo.

28. [*cedo, arch.: here with it! out with it! let us
hear*]
[*qui, arch. abl. of qui?3: where with? how?*]
quo modo or quomodo: how, 88
tantus, 3: such a great
res-publica, 5, 1: republic
vester, -tra, -trum: your, yours, 30, e
tam: so, such
cito (*fr.* citus, 3, quick): quickly, soon, 28, a
amitto, 3, amisi, amissum: to lose
provenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to come forth or up,

28. *Say: how have you lost such a great republic
so quickly?*
*There grew up new public speakers, foolish and
inexperienced.*

grow
orator, -is (*fr.* oro, 1, to speak, pray): speaker, 49, d
novus, 3: new
stultus, 3: foolish, silly
adolescentulus, 3 (*fr.* adolescens, -ntis, young):
very young, 49, p

E Gymnastico.

30. Pollux, -ūcis, a god, Leda's son, famous for
his skill in boxing, 52, d
ita: so; (*adjuvo*, 1, -juvi, -jutum: to help)
Cupido, -dinis, m: Cupid, the god of love, the son
of Venus, -neris, f, the goddess of lust
cum - tamen: although - yet, nevertheless, 125, c

30. *By my faith, Cupid, though you are so tiny,
you are nevertheless exceedingly powerful.*

pusillus, 3: tiny
nimis: overmuch, exceedingly
valeo, 2, -lui, -itum: to be healthy, strong

Ejus Epitaphium.

si: if, 109, c
fas, *indecl.:* allowed, lawful, 16, c
[forem or futurum essem, 135, c]
immortales, 2: immortal (109, c
[fleo: to weep]: defleo, 2, -evi, -etum: to bewail,

*If it were proper for immortals to bewail mor-
tals, the divine Muses would bewail Naevius, the*

poëta, 1: poet

6. GNAEUS NAEVIUS

269-204 B.C.

Course 11

HIS OWN EPITAPH

Itaque, postquam est Orci traditus thesauro,
Obliti sunt Romae loquier lingua Latina.

Nam, postquam traditus erat thesauro Orci,
Obliti sunt Romae lingua loqui Latina.

Ejus Epitaphium.

VOCABULARY

[itaque: *therefore*]; nam: *because, for*
postquam: *after*, 119, c
Orcus, 2: *the underworld*
trado, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to hand over, deliver*
thesaurus, 3: *treasury*
lingua, 1: *language*, 93, a
obliviscor, 3, -litum: *to forget*, 31, c

TRANSLATION

poet: for after he was consigned to the treasury of the underworld, people forgot how to speak Latin in Rome.

(*inf.*)
loquor, 3, locutum: *to speak*, 31, c; [loquier, *arch.*
Latinus, 3: *Latin*

7. MARCUS ACCIUS PLAUTUS

254-184 B.C.

Course 37

A native Roman of low origin, without any education

Cicero:

Duplex omnino est jocandi genus: unum illiberale, petulans, flagitiosum, obscenum, quo genere Plautus noster est refertus: *There are two kinds of jesting: one immodest, dissolute, profligate, obscene, with which our Plautus is replete.* I. Off.

Quintilian:

In comoedia maxime claudicamus, licet Varro dixerit Musas Plautino sermone esse locuturas, si Latine loqui vellent: *It is in comedy, above all, that we are deficient, though Varro says, that if the Muses spoke Latin, they would speak in Plautus' words.* Inst. Or. X, 1.

St. Jerome:

Haec est Plautina elegantia, hic lepos et Musarum, ut dicunt, eloquio comparandus: *Such is the elegance of Plautus, such is his wit, that they say it is to be compared with the eloquence of the Muses.* Ep. ad Pammachium.

J. Scaliger:

Plautum emendatum dare non cujusvis est: et cujus est, ejus magna laus est: *To correct Plautus is not the capacity of any one: but whose it is, is worthy of praise.*

CAPTIVES

Act III, scene V, an exceptionally modest scene from the plays of Plautus, which are usually immodest, and often obscene.

PERSONS: HEGIO, a rich Athenian slave-dealer; TYNDARUS, a captive, purchased together with PHILOCRATES, his rich Elysian landlord; ARISTOPHONTES, a captive.

The original metrical text

Corrected regardless of prosody

1. HEGIO: Injicite huic, manicas mastigiae.

1. HEGIO: Injicite huic manicas nefario.

CAPTIVI.

VOCABULARY

1. injicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: *to cast or put in or on*, 79
hic, haec, hoc: *this*, 30, f
manica, 1: *manacle, handcuff*

TRANSLATION

1. HEGIO: *Put manacles on this criminal.*

(*wicked, criminal*
[mastigia, 1, *Greek, the same as:*] nefarius, 3:

7. MARCUS ACCIUS PLAUTUS

254-184 B.C.

Course 37

CAPTIVES

TYNDARUS: *Quid hoc negotiū? Quid ego deliqui?*

HEGIO: *Rogas?*

Sator sartorque scelerum, et messor maxime.

4. TYNDARUS: *Non occatorem dicere audebas prius?*

Nam semper occant priusquam sarriunt rustici.

HEGIO: *At ut confidenter mihi contra astitit!*

7. TYNDARUS: *Decet innocentem servum atque innoxium*

Confidentem esse suum apud herum potissimum.

HEGIO: *Astringite isti sultis vehementer manus.*

10. TYNDARUS: *Tuus sum; tuas quidem vel praecidi jube.*

Sed quid negotiū est? Quamobrem succenses mihi?

TYNDARUS: *Quod negotium est hoc? Quid ego deliqui?*

HEGIO: *At tu interrogas?*

Sator sarritorque scelerum, et messor maxime.

4. TYNDARUS: *Non occatorem dicere ausus es prius?*

Nam semper prius occant, quam sarriunt rustici.

HEGIO: *En, quam confidenter mihi obloquitur!*

7. TYNDARUS: *Decet innocentem servum atque innoxium*

confidentem esse potissime apud herum suum.

HEGIO: *Astringite ei manus vehementer.*

10. TYNDARUS: *Tuae sunt; tuas quidem vel praecidi jubeas.*

Sed quid hoc? Quamobrem es succensus mihi?

CAPTIVI.

VOCABULARY

qui, quae, quod?; quis, quid?: *who, what?* 30, *h*
negotium, 2: *business, matter*, 67, *c'*
delinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: *to fail in duty, commit a fault or crime*

at: *yet, but, still*

[rogo, 1: *to ask for, beg*]

interrogo, 1: *to inquire, question, ask*

sator, -is, m (fr. sero, 3, sevi, satum, to sow):
sower, 49, *d* (patch): *tailor*

[sartor, -is, m (fr. sarcio, 4, sarsi, sartum, to mend,

4. occator, -is m (fr. occo, 1, to harrow): *harrower*, 49, *d*

audeo, 2, -, ausum: *to dare, venture*, 31, *d*; 35, *f*
priusquam: *before*, 127, *a*

rusticus, 2 (fr. rus, ruris, n, farm): *peasant, farmer*, 40, *t*

en: *behold*, 52; [at: *but*]

7. decet, -cuit, -: *it behooves, becomes, fits*, 48, *d*
innocens, -ntis (fr. noceo, 2, to harm): *innocent*,
servus, 2: *servant, slave* (49, A1

atque, *joins a greater thing: and*

innoxius, 3: *harmless*

potissime, (fr. (potis, 2), potior, 2, potissimus, 3,
able): *chiefly, especially*

apud: *at, with*, 50, *a*

herus, 2: *master, lord* (bind, tie

astringo, 3, -nxi, -rictum: *to tighten, compress*,

10. tuus, 3: *thy, thine, your, yours*, 30, *e*

quidem: *indeed, even*

vel, as adv.: *if you wish, even*

praecido, 3, -cīdi, -cīsum: *to cut off*

jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: *to order*, 57, *b*; 103

quam ob rem, qua re, qua de causa, cur: *why?*

TRANSLATION

TYNDARUS: *What's the matter? What wrong have I done?*

HEGIO: *Do you ask yet? You the greatest sower, hoer and harvester of crimes.*

sarritor, -is, m (fr. sarrio, 4, sarrui or sarrivi, ritum, to hoe): *hoer*, 49, *d*

scelus, -leris, n: *crime, infamy*

messor, -is, m (fr. meto, 3, messui, messum, to reap): *reaper, harvester*

4. TYNDARUS: *Did you not dare say harrow-cr first, for farmers always harrow before they hoe.*

HEGIO: *See, how confidently he makes remarks!*

confido, 3, -, fisum: *to trust, confide*, 31, *d*

obloquor, 3, -locutum: *to gainsay, interrupt*, 79

[asto, 1, astiti, -: *to stand by*]

7. TYNDARUS: *It behooves an innocent and harmless servant to be confident, above all, with his master.*

HEGIO: *Tie his hands very tight.*

is, 3: *that, he*; [iste, 3: *this (not present)*] 30, *b*; 74

[sultis, arch. for si vultis: *if you wish, as you like, if it pleases*]

vehemens, -ntis: *furious, powerful, violent*, 28, *a*

10. TYNDARUS: *They are yours; you may even order them to be cut off. But what's the matter? Why are you enraged against me?*

[succenseo, 2, -nsui, -nsum, arch.: *to be enraged*]

succendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to kindle, set fire to, enrage*, 79

7. MARCUS ACCIUS PLAUTUS

254-184 B.C.

Course 37

CAPTIVES

HEGIO: Quia me meamque rem, quod in uno te fuit

Tuis scelestis, falsidicis fallaciis
Delaceravisti *deartuavistique* opes.

49. TYNDARUS: At herum meum servavi, quem servatum gaudeo,

Cui me custodem addiderat herus *major meus*.
Scd male-ne id arbitrare factum? HEGIO: Pessu-
me.

52. TYNDARUS: At ego ajo, recte, qui *abs te seorsum* sentio.

Nam *cogitato*, si quis hoc *gnato* tuo
Tuus servus *faxit*, qualem *haberes* gratiam?
Emitteres-ne, nec-ne, eum servum manu?
Esset-ne apud te is servus acceptissimus?
Responde! HEGIO: Opinor. TYNDARUS: Cur
ergo iratus es mihi?

HEGIO: Quia me meamque rem, quod in uno te fuit

tuis scelestis, falsidicis fallaciis
dilaceravisti dissipavistique opes *meas*.

49. TYNDARUS: At herum meum servavi, quem servatum gaudeo,

cui me custodem addiderat herus *pater ejus*.
Male-ne id *arbitraris* factum?
HEGIO: *Quinimmo*, pessime.

52. TYNDARUS: At ego ajo, recte, qui *secus ac tu* sentio.

Nam *considera*, si quis *tuorum servorum*
nato tuo hoc *fecerit*, qualem *exhibeas ei* gratiam?
An emittas manu eum servum, nec-ne?
Sit-ne apud te is servus acceptissimus? Responde.
HEGIO: Opinor *eum esse*.
TYNDARUS: Cur ergo iratus es mihi?

CAPTIVI.

VOCABULARY

quia, quoniam: *because*
scelestus, 3: *wicked, accursed, infamous*
falsidicus, 3: *lying, false*
fallacia, 1 (*fr.* fallax, -acis, *deceitful*): *deceit, trick*,
49, u; 93, a

dilacero, 1: *to tear to pieces, harm*
[*deartuo*, 1, *obs.*: *to cut into parts*]

49. servo, 1: *to save, keep*
gaudeo, 2, -, gavisum: *to be glad*, 31, d; 57, 4
custos, -odis, m: *watchman, guardian*
addo, 3, addidi, additum: *to add, appoint*
mālus, 3: *bad*, 28, a; 27, e; -ne, an, *quest. part.* 51, c
arbitror, 1: *to think, be of opinion*
facio, 3, feci, factum: *to make, do*, 40

52. ajo: *to say*, 44, 9
rectus, 3: *right, proper, just*, 28, a
[*seorsum*: *apart from, far*]; *secus*: *otherwise*
ac: *and; than*, 87
sentio, 4, sensi, sensum: *to feel*
considero, 1: *to consider, think over*
[*cogito*, 1: *to think*]
natus, 2 (*fr.* nascor, 3, natum, *to be born*): *son*
faxit, *well used arch. form of fecerit* (*fr.* facio, 3,
to make), 135, a
qualis, 2: *of what sort or kind, what?*

manu emitto, 3, emisi, emissum: *to let free, give freedom*, 103, a
exhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to do, grant, afford*, 132
nec-ne: *or not*, 51, e
acceptus, 3 (*fr.* accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum, *to ac-*

TRANSLATION

HEGIO: *Because by your wicked, lying tricks, you have harmed me and my goods, and damaged the wealth which was confided to you alone.*

dissipo, 1: *disperse, squander, waste*
(ops), opis, f: *power, help; pl. wealth*, 22, a

49. TYNDARUS: *But I saved my master, and I am glad, that he is saved; (for) my landlord, his father, appointed me as his guardian. And do you think that was done badly?*
HEGIO: *By all means, very badly!*

quinimmo: *even, but rather, at any rate*

52. TYNDARUS: *But, I, who think otherwise than you, I say (it was) right.*

For think over well, if one of your slaves had done this for your son, what gratitude would you show to him?

Would you give freedom to this slave or not? Would not that slave be very acceptable to you? Answer me.

HEGIO: *I think he would.*

TYNDARUS: *Then why are you angry with me?*

cept): *welcome*

respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: *to answer*, 80, o
opinor, 1: *to believe, think, suppose*, 31, c; 57, 4
irascor, 3, iratum: *to be angry with*, 80, f

7. MARCUS ACCIUS PLAUTUS

254-184 B.C.

Course 37

CAPTIVES

58. HEGIO: Quia illi fuisti quam mihi fidelior.
TYNDARUS: Quid? Tu una nocte *postulavisti* et die

Recens captum hominem *nuperum* et novitium
Te perdocere, ut melius consulerem tibi
Quam illi, quicum una a puero aetatem *exegeram*?

63. HEGIO: Ergo ab eo petito gratiam istam.
Ducite.

Ubi ponderosas, crassas capiat compedes.
Inde ibis porro in latomias *lapidarias*.
Ibi, *quom* alii octonos lapides effodint,
Nisi *cotidianus* sesqui opus confeceris,
Sexcentoplago nomen indetur tibi.

58. HEGIO: Quia illi fidelior fuisti quam mihi.
TYNDARUS: Quid? Tu una nocte et die *voluisti me*

recenter captum hominem, *adhuc* novitium
induci, ut melius consulerem tibi
quam illi, quocum a pueritia aetatem una *transegeram*?

63. HEGIO: Ergo ab eo petito gratiam istam.
Ducite,

ubi ponderosas, crassas capiat compedes.
Inde ibis porro in latomias *meas*.
Ibi, *dum* alii octonos lapides effodiunt,
nisi *quotidie* sesqui opus confeceris,
sexcentoplago nomen indetur tibi.

CAPTIVI.

VOCABULARY

58. ille, 3: *that, he (not present)*, 30, f; 30, b2
fidelis, 2: *faithful*, 78
quam: *than*
nox, noctis, f: *night*, 22, d; 95
[postulo, 1: *to demand, beg, entreat*]
volo, velle, volui, -, : *to wish*, 42, 4; 57, 4b
recens, -ntis: *fresh, recent*, 28, a
[nuperus, 3 (*fr. nuper, not long ago*): *of not long ago*]
adhuc: *thus far, till now, still*
novitius, 2 (*fr. novus, 3, new*): *freshman, novice*, 49, t
[perdoceo, 2, -cui, -ctum: *to teach*]
induco, 3, -duxi, -ctum: *to bring to, induce*, 35, e
consulo, 3, -lui, -lūtum: *to take care of, consult*, 81

63. peto, 3, petivi, petitum: *to attack, aim at, ask*, 108, b
duco, 3, duxi, ductum: *to draw, attract, lead*
ubi: *where*, 51, f; ibi: *there*, 51, f
ponderosus, 3 (*fr. pondus, -deris, n, weight*): *heavy*, 49, t
crassus, 3: *thick, solid*
capio, 3, cepi, captum: *to take, seize*, 40; 120, c1
compes, -pedis, f: *fetter, foot, shackle*, 23, 1c
inde: *thence, from there*, 51, f; ibis: 108, c
porro: *then, further more*
latomiae, -arum, *Greek, for lapicidinae, -arum: stone quarry*
[lapidarius, 3: *of stone*]
[quom, *arch. for cum: when*]; dum: *while, till*, 120, cA
octoni, -nae, -na: *eight each*, 29, c

TRANSLATION

58. HEGIO: *Because you were more faithful to him than to me.*
TYNDARUS: *What! Did you wish, that in a day and a night, I, the recently purchased slave, still a novice, could be induced to take better care of you than of him, with whom I had passed my life from childhood?*

[quicum, *arch. for:*] quicum: *with whom*, 50, b
pueritia, 1 (*fr. puer, 2, boy*): *childhood*, 49, u
aetas, -tatis, f: *age, life*
una: *together, with, together with*
[exigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to drive out, exact, demand*]
transigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to complete, pass*

63. HEGIO: *Then ask the (mentioned) favor of him. Take him where he will get heavy and strong fetters; then from there you will go to my stone quarry.*
There, while the rest cut out eight stones each, your name will be "six hundred lashes," unless you accomplish half as much more every day.

lapis, -idis, m: *stone*, 23, 1
effodio, 3, effodi, effosum: *to dig or cut out*, 40
nisi: *unless, if not*, 109, d
quotidie: *every day; (quotidianus, 3: daily)*
sesqui, *indecl.:* *one half more*
conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to accomplish*, 40; 109, a3
sexcentoplagus, 2: *(one who gets) six hundred stripes*, 74
indo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to put in or on*, 79

7. MARCUS ACCIUS PLAUTUS

254-184 B.C.

Course 37

CAPTIVES

69. ARISTOPHONTES: Per deos atque homines ego te obtestor, Hegio,
Ne tu istunc hominem perdis. HEGIO: Curabitur.

Nam noctu nervo vinctus custodibitur;
Interdius sub terra lapides eximet.
Diu ego hunc cruciabo; non uno *absolvam* die

74. ARISTOPHONTES: Certum-ne est tibi istuc? HEGIO: Non moriri certius't.
Abducite *istum* actutum ad Hippolytum fabrum;
Jubete huic crassas compedes impingier.
Inde extra portam ad meum libertum Cordalum
In lapicidinas facite deductus fiet:
Atque hunc ita me velle dicite curarier,
Ne qui deterius huic sit, quam cui pessime est.

69. ARISTOPHONTES: Per deos atque homines ego te obtestor, Hegio,
ne perdas hunc hominem.

HEGIO: *Minime; modo* curabitur.
nam nocte nervo vinctus custodietur;
interdiu sub terra lapides eximet.
Diu ego hunc cruciabo; non uno *perimam* die.

74. ARISTOPHONTES: Certe-ne ita facies? HEGIO: Non est certius mori.
Abducite *hunc* actutum ad Hippolytum fabrum;
jubete huic crassas impingi compedes.
Deinde curate, ut ad libertum meum Cordalum
extra portam in lapicidinas deducatur:
et dicite *ei* ita me velle hunc curari,
ne quo *melius* sit huic, quam cui pessime est.

CAPTIVI.

VOCABULARY

69. per deos: *by the gods*, 52, d
obtestor, 1: *to adjure, implore*, 31, c
perdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to lose, destroy*, 124, a
[ist(h)ic, ist(h)aec, ist(h)oc, arch. for:] *hic, haec, hoc: this*, 30, f
minime: *by no means; modo: just*, 27, e; 28, a
curo, 1: *to take care of, cure*
[noctu, arch. for:] nocte: *by night*, 95
nervus, 2: *sinew, strap*, 88
vincio, 4, vinxī, vinctum: *to bind, tie*
custodio, 4: *to guard, watch, keep*
[interdius, arch. for:] interdiu: *by day, in the day-time*
sub: *under*, 50, c
eximo, 3, -emi, -emptum: *to take out*
74. certus, 3: *sure, certain, safe*, 28, a
morior, 3, mortuum: *to die*, 31, c; 40; 117, a
abduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to lead or take away*, 108, a
actutum, sine mora, illico: *immediately, right away*
(faber ferrarius: *blacksmith*; f. lignarius: *joiner, cabinet maker*; f. tignarius: *carpenter*; f. carpentarius: *cartwright, wheeler*)
impingo, 3, -pegi, -pactum: *to bind to, put on; impingier, arch. inf.* 35, e; 57, 4b
[inde: *thence, from there*]; deinde: *then, afterwards*
libertus, 2 (*fr. libero*, 1, *to free*): *freedman*, 49, b
extra: *outside*, 50, a
porta, 1: *gate*
[deductus, 4, *noun from*:] deduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to lead or draw away*, 124, a
[fio, fieri, factum: *to become*, 43, 7]
[atque: *and, (joins greater things)*]

TRANSLATION

69. ARISTOPHONTES: *By heaven and earth, Hegio, I implore you, do not kill this man!*
HEGIO: *By no means, he will only be corrected. For during the night, he will be kept tied up with a strap, and during the day he will hew out stones, underground.*
I shall torture him a long time; I shall not kill him in a single day.
diu: *for a long time*
crucio, 1: *to torture, torment*
[absolvo, 3, -vi, -lutum: *to loose, absolve, accomplish*]
perimo, 3, -emi, -emptum: *to annihilate, kill*
74. ARISTOPHONTES: *Will you really do that?*
HEGIO: *As sure as death. Take him away at once to Hippolyte, the blacksmith, and have strong fetters put on him.*
Then see to it, that he is led to Cordalus, my freedman, in the quarry, outside the city gate.
And tell him that I wish him to be so punished, that in no way will he have it better than he who has it worst.
ita: *so, thus*
volo, velle, volui, -, : *to wish, be willing*, 42, 4; 57, 4b; 35, e
[qui, arch. for quo]; ne (ali)quo (modo): *lest any way*, 30, i; 88
melius (*fr. bonus*, 3); pessime (*fr. malus*, 3), 27, e; 28, d

CAPTIVES

81. TYNDARUS: Cur ergo te invito me esse sal-
vum postulem,
Periculum vitae meae tuo *stat* periculo?
Post mortem in morte nihil est, quod metuam, mali:
Etsi pervivo usque ad summam aetatem, tamen
Breve spatium *est* perferendi, quae minitas mihi.
Vale atque salve! Etsi, aliter ut *dicam*, meres.
Tu Aristophontes, de me *ut* meruisti, ita vale!
Nam mihi *propter* te hoc obtigit. HEGIO: Abducite.

89. TYNDARUS: At unum hoc *quaeso*: si huc
rebitet Philocrates,
Ut mihi ejus facias conveniendi copiam.
HEGIO: Periistis, nisi hunc *jam* e conspectu abdu-
citis.
TYNDARUS: Vis *haec* quidem *hercle* est et trahi
et trudi simul.

81. TYNDARUS: Cur ergo te invito salvum me
esse postulem,
cum periculum vitae meae tuo *instet* periculo?
Post mortem in morte nihil est, quod metuam, mali:
etsi *pervivero* usque ad summam aetatem, *attamen*
breve spatium *erit* perferendi, quae minaris mihi.
Vale atque salve! Etsi, ut aliter *loquar*, meres.
Tu *vero* Aristophontes, *prout* de me meruisti, ita
vale!
Nam *per* te hoc mihi obtigit.
HEGIO: Abducite.

89. TYNDARUS: At hoc unum *te rogo*: si huc
redierit Philocrates,
ejus mihi facias copiam conveniendi.
HEGIO: Peribitis, nisi hunc e conspectu *meo* ab-
duxeritis.
TYNDARUS: *Hoc* quidem et tradi et trudi si-
mul, *me Hercules*, vis est.

CAPTIVI.

VOCABULARY

81. *invitus*, 3: *unwilling*, 115
salvus, 3: *saved*
postulo, 1: *to request, entreat, demand*, 106; 57, 4b'
periculum, 3: *danger, peril*
[*sto*, 1, *steti*, *statum*: *to stand*]
insto, 1, -*stiti*, -*stitum*: *to stand in or on, or close*, 79
metuo, 3, *metui*, -, : *to fear*, 131, a
pervivo, 3, -*vixi*, -*victum*: *to live through or over*,
109, a3
summus, 3: *highest*, 27, f
tamen; *attamen*, *more emph.*: *even, yet*
brevis, 2: *short*
spatium, 2: *space, time, extent*
perfero, 3, -*tuli*, -*latum*: *to suffer, endure*, 43, 8;
117, c
[*minito*, *arch. for minitor*, 1, *frequ. of*] *minor*, 1:
to threaten, menace, 49, j; 80, i
vale: *fare well*; *salve*: *hail*, 47
etsi: *though*
aliter: *otherwise*, 28, e
89. [*quaeso*, *used in inserted sentences*: *I beg*,
47]; *rogo*, 1, 60
[*rebito*, 3, *obs.*: *to return*]
redeo, 4, -*ivi*, -*itum*: *to return*, 42, 3; 109, a3
copia, 1: *plenty, chance*; *pl. troops, forces*
convenio, 4, -*veni*, -*ventum*: *to come together, meet*,
61, a; 117, c
pereo, 4, -*ivi*, *itum*: *to perish*, 42, 3; 109, a3
conspetus, 4, (*fr. conspicio*, 3, -*spexi*, -*spectum*, *to*
look): *sight, view*, 90
quidem: *indeed, even*
traho, 3, *traxi*, *tractum*: *to pull, draw, drag*, 117, a

TRANSLATION

81. TYNDARUS: *Why should I ask to be saved*
against your will, as the danger of my life stands
close to your peril?
After death there is in death no evil I should fear.
And even if I live to a ripe old age, it will be just
a short time to endure what you threatened me with.
Fare well and hail, although you deserve that I
speak differently.
And you, Aristophontes, may you fare according
as you have merited of me, because through you
this has befallen me.
HEGIO: *Take him away!*

Aristophontes, -*tis*, m, *Greek name: murderer of*
aristocrats
mereor, 2, *meritum or mereo*, 2, -*ru*, -*ritum*: *to*
earn, deserve
obtingo, 3, -*tigi*, -, (*fr. tango*, 3, *tetigi*, *tactum*, *to*
touch): *to happen, befall*, 79
89. TYNDARUS: *But I beg only this: if Phi-*
locrates returns, grant me the chance of meeting
him.
HEGIO: *You will be done for, unless you take*
him out of my sight.
TYNDARUS: *By Hercules, to be pulled and*
pushed at the same time, is violence indeed.

trudo, 3, *trusi*, *trusum*: *to push*, 117, a
me Hercules: *by Hercules*, 52, d
vis, 3, f: *force, power, violence*, 22, g

7. MARCUS ACCIUS PLAUTUS

254-184 B.C.

Course 37

CAPTIVES

93. HEGIO: Illic est abductus recta in *phylacam*,
ut dignus est.

Ego illis captivis aliis documentum dabo,
Ne tale quisquam facinus incipere audeat.
Nunc certum est nulli post haec quicquam credere.

106. Sequere hac: reducam te, ubi fuisti.

Neminis

Misereri certum est, quia mei miseret neminem.

ARISTOPHONTES: Exauspicavi ex vinculis:
nunc intellego

Redauspicandum esse in catenas denuo.
(*J. Operarius*, 1679)

93. HEGIO: Ille abductus est recte in *carcerem*,
prout meruit.

Documentum ego aliis captivis omnibus dabo,
ne quisquam tale facinus incipere audeat.
Nunc certum est nulli post haec quidquam esse cre-
dendum.

106. (*Ideoque, Aristophontes*,) sequere hac: re-
ducam te, ubi fuisti. *Nullius*

esse miserendum certum est, quia et mei miseret
neminem.

ARISTOPHONTES: Exauspicatus ex vinculis
nunc intelligo

redauspicandum mihi esse in catenas denuo.

CAPTIVI.

VOCABULARY

93. [illic: *there, at that place*]
[recta (via): *straight*, 96, a]
[phylaca, 1, *Greek for:*] carcer, -is, m: *prison, jail*
ut, uti, prouti: *as, as well as*
[dignus, 3: *worthy*]
documentum, 2 (*fr. doceo*, 2, -cui, -ctum, *to teach*):
example, warning, proof, 49, e
captivus, 2 (*fr. capio*, 3, cepi, captum, *to seize*):
captive, 49, t
quisquam, 2: *any one, anything*, 30, i
facinus, -noris, n: *crime, villainy*

106. (*ideoque: therefore*)
sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow*, 31, c; 108, a
hac (via): *this way*, 96, a
reduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to lead or take back*
nemo, [neminis]: *none; for its gen. and pl. nul-*
lus, 3, is used
miseret, -ruit, *impers.*; misereor, 2, -rtum: *to take*
pity on, 62, 111, b
exauspicor, 1: *to get out under or by good auspices*,
31, c
redauspicor, 1: *to go back for auspices*, 111, b
vinculum, 2 (*fr. vincio*, 4, vinxi, vinctum, *to tie*):

TRANSLATION

93. HEGIO: *He has been rightly put to prison,*
as he deserved. I shall give a warning to all the
other captives, lest any one dare to begin a like vil-
lany.
Now, after this it is certain, that no one is to be
trusted in anything.

incipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to begin*, 40
nullus: *no one*, 30, k
credo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to believe, trust in*, 35, g;
Coll., 37,3; 111, b

106. (*Therefore, you Aristophontes*,) *follow me,*
this way: I shall take you back, where you were.
It is not safe to take pity on any one, since no
one takes pity on me.
ARISTOPHONTES: *Being set free from bonds*
under favorable auspices, I see now that I must go
back into my chains again, for new auspices.

band, bond, fetter
catena, 1: *chain*
denuo: *anew, again*

8. QUINTUS ENNIUS

Oscan soldier from Calabria. Notice his classical language of a hundred years before Cicero.

FRAGMENTS OF ANNALS, 18 BOOKS

In hexameters with archaisms*

Romulus (B. 1)

*In classical prose***

... Remus auspicio se devovet atque secundam
Solutus avem servat. At Romulus pulcher in alto
Quaerit Aventino, servat genus altivolantum.
Certabant urbem Romam Remoram-*ne* vocarent.
Omnibus cura viris, uter esset *induperator*.

O pater, o genitor, o sanguen dīs oriundum,
Tu produxisti nos intra luminis oras.

*

Oracle for Pyrrhus (B. 6)

Ajo te, Aeacida, Romanos vincere posse.

... Remus auspicio se devovet atque secundam
solutus avem *observat*. Id Romulus pulcher in alto
quaerit Aventino *observans* genus altivolantum.
Certabant, *an* urbem Romam *vel* Remoram vocarent.
Omnibus cura *erat* viris, uter esset *imperator*.

O pater, o genitor, o sanguis dīs oriundus,
tu produxisti nos intra luminis oras.

Ajo te, Aeacide, Romanos vincere posse.

E FRAGMENTIS.

Romulus.

VOCABULARY

Remus, 2, brother of legendary Romulus, 2, the
founder of Rome
auspicious, 2 (fr. *auspicio*, 1, to take auspices): *aug-
ury*, 49, f; 73
se: *himself*, 30, d
devoveo, 2, -vovi, -votum: to devote, 101
secundus, 3: *second, favorable*
solutus, 3: *alone*, 30, k
avis, is, f: *bird*
[servo, 1: to keep, save]; *observo*, 1: to watch, re-
gard, 101
[at, ast: *but*]
pulcher, -chra, -chrum: *beautiful, noble, glorious*
altus, 3: *high, deep*
quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: to seek, ask
Aventinus, 2: *Aventine, one of the seven hills of
Rome*
genus, generis, n: *birth, stock, sex, kind, gender*
altivolans, -ntis (fr. *volo*, 1, to fly, and *altus*, 3):
high-flying, 26, a
certo, 1: to contend, vie with, dispute
urbs, -bis, f: *city*, 22, c
Roma, 1: *Rome*; Remora, 1: *Remore*
voco, 1: to call, name, 59, B; 132
omnis, 2: *all, whole, every*, 74
cura, 1: *care, anxiety, solicitude, concern*
vir, 2: *man, male person, husband*

TRANSLATION

*Remus devotes himself to augury and alone
looks for a favorable bird.*

*Watching the genus of high-flying (birds), glori-
ous Romulus seeks (augury) on the high Aventine.*

*They contend, whether they should call the city
Rome or Remore.*

*It was of concern to all, which of the two would
be the ruler.*

*O father, o progenitor, o divine offspring of the
gods, thou hast led us forth into the land of light.*

uter, ultra, utrum: *which of the two, which*, 30, k
[induperator, arch.]; *imperator* (fr. *impero*, 1, to
rule): *emperor, ruler*, 49, d
pater, -tris, m: *father*, 22, b
genitor, -is, m (fr. *gigno*, 3, *genui*, *genitum*, to
beget): *begetter*, 49, d
[sanguen, -guinis, n, obs. for:] *sanguinis*, -uinis,
m: *blood, progeny*, 23, I
oriundus, 3 (fr. *orior*, 4, *ortum*, to rise): *arising or
springing from, born of*, 49, h; 91
produco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to lead forth, bring up
nos (fr. *ego*, I, 30, a): *we, us*
intra: *within, into*, 50, a
lumen, -minis, n: *light*
ora, 1: *edge, coast, land*

Oraculum Pyrrho Datum.

ajo, to say, 44, 9
Aeacides, 1: son of Aeacus, Pyrrhus, the king of
Epirus, 19, c
tu: *thou, you*, 30, a
Romanus, 3 (fr. *Roma*, 1, *Rome*): *Roman*, 49, z
pugna, 1, (fr. *pugno*, 1, to fight): *battle*
vinco, 3, vici, victum: to conquer, defeat, 58, Coll.

*I say, o Aeacides, that you are able to defeat the
Romans, or: that the Romans are able to defeat
you.*

37, 4
possum, posse, potui, -, : to be able, I can, 41, 2;
35, f

FRAGMENTS

Pyrrhus' Epigram in Jove's Temple of Tarentum (B. 6)

Qui antehac invicti fuerunt, pater optime Olympi, Qui antehac invicti fuerunt, pater optime Olympi,
Hos *et* ego in pugna vici victusque sum ab *ĩ*sdem. hos ego in pugna vici victusque sum ab *ĩ*sdem.

Praise of Manius Curius (B. 6)

Quem nemo ferro potuit superare nec auro. Quem nemo ferro potuit superare nec auro.

Friend of Geminus Servilius (B. 7)

Prudenter qui dicta loqu^{ive} tacere^{ve} possit, Hunc, qui dicta *et* loqui *et* tacere prudenter pos-
Hunc inter pugnas compellat Servilius sic. sit,
inter pugnam Servilius sic compellat:

Hannibal's War (B. 8)

Pellitur e medio sapientia, vi geritur res. Pellitur e medio sapientia, vi geritur res.
Spernitur orator bonus, horridus miles amatur. Spernitur orator bonus, horridus miles amatur.

E FRAGMENTIS.

Pyrrhi Epigramma in Jovis Templo Tarenti.

VOCABULARY

qui, 3: *who, which*, 30, *g*
antehac: *formerly*
invictus, 3 (*fr. vinco*, 3, *to defeat*): *undefeated*,
49, *A1*
optimus, 3, *best*, 27, *e*
Olympus, 2: *Mount Olympus, the residence of the*
hic, haec, hoc: *this*, 30, *f*; 30, *b2*

TRANSLATION

O mighty father of Olympus, I conquered in battle those who until now were undefeated, and they conquered me.

pugna, 1 (*fr. pugno*, 1, *to fight*): *battle*, 49, *a*
[*ĩ*sdem, *arch. for.:*] *ĩ*sdem (*fr. ĩdem*, 3): *the same*,
30, *f*; 93

Manii Curii Laus.

nemo, [-minis], *c*: *no one; in gen. sing. and pl. replaced by nullus*, 3: *none*, 30, *k*
ferrum, 2: *iron, sword*, 93, *a*
supero, 1: *to overcome, surpass*
aurum, 2: *gold*, 93, *a*

Whom no one could overcome, neither by sword, nor gold.

nec, neque: *and not (either)*

Amicus Gemini Servilii.

prudens, -ntis: *wise, foreseeing*, 28, *a*
dictum, 2 (*fr. dico*, 3, *dixi*, *dictum*, *to say*): *word, saying*, 26, *f*
loquor, 3, locutum: *to speak*, 31, *c*
[-ve: *and (enclitic for the relative and interrogative pronouns)*, 13, *b*]
taceo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to be silent, not to say*

Him who can wisely speak or withhold his words, Servilius addresses thus in the thick of the fight.

possit, 120, *c3*
inter: *between, among*, 50, *a*
compello, 1: *to address, accost*

Bellum Hannibalis.

pello, 3, pepuli, pulsum: *to drive or chase away, expel*, 101
e, ex: *from*, 50, *b*
medium, 2: *middle, midst*
sapientia, 1 (*fr. sapiens, -ntis, wise*): *wisdom*, 49, *u*
vis, *f*: *force, power, violence*, 22, *g*; 88
gero, 3, gessi, gestum: *to carry, bear, wage, treat*, 101
res, 5: *thing, affair*
sperno, 3, spre^{vi}, spre^{tum}: *to reject, spurn, despise*, 101

Wisdom is driven from their midst; the affair is treated with violence.

The brave speaker is spurned, and the terrible soldier is preferred.

orator, -is, *m* (*fr. oro*, 1, *to speak, pray*): *speaker*, 49, *d*
horridus, 3 (*fr. horreo*, 2, *to shiver*): *terrible, ghastly*, 49, *t*
amo, 1: *to love, like, prefer*, 101

FRAGMENTS

Hannibal's War (B. 8)

Haut doctis dictis certantes, sed maledictis
 Miscent inter sese inimicitiam agitantes.
 Non ex jure manu consertum, sed magis ferro
 Rem repetunt, regnumque petunt, vadunt solida vi.

Haud doctis dictis certant, sed inimicitiam
 inter se miscent maledictis agitantes.
 Non ex jure manu conserta, sed magis ferro
 rem repetunt, regnumque petunt et vadunt vi sola.

Hannibal (B. 9)

----- Mortalem summum fortuna repente
 Reddidit, e summo regno ut famul infimus esset.

----- Fortuna repente reddidit, ut mortalis
 summus
 e summo cadens regno infimus famulus esset.

Historical Events (B. 17)

Concurrunt veluti venti, cum spiritus austri
 Imbricator aquiloque suo cum flamine contra

Concurrunt veluti venti, cum spiritus austri
 aquiloque imbrifer flatu contrario

E FRAGMENTIS.

Bellum Hannibalis.

VOCABULARY

[haut, arch. for:] haud: not, (emphatic)
 doceo, 2, -cui, -ctum: to teach; doctus, 3: learned,
 wise
 maledictum, 2, (fr. maledico, 3, -dixi, -dictum, to
 curse): 88
 misceo, 2, -scui, -istum or -ixtum: to mix, mingle,
 101 (30, d
 [sese, intensive form of] se: himself, themselves,
 inimicitia, 1: enmity, 49, A, 1
 agito, 1 (fr. ago, 3, egi, actum, to act): to agitate,
 vex, harass, 49, j; 36, a
 jus, juris, n: right, justice, 22, e
 manus, 4, f: hand, 24, b; 88
 consero, 3, -rui, -rtum: to connect, engage, 36, b

TRANSLATION

They do not debate with wise words, but spread
 enmities among themselves and deal with curses.

They ask for satisfaction not from justice, with
 shaking of hands, but rather from the sword; they
 attack a kingdom and proceed only by violence.

sed: but, however

magis: rather

(101

repeto, 3, -petivi, -petitum: to ask, attack again,

regnum, 2 (fr. rego, 3, to rule): kingdom, reign

peto, 3, -tivi, -itum: to go, ask, attack, 101

vado, 3, vasi, vasum: to go, walk, rush

[solidus, 3: dense, firm, solid]

solus, 3: alone, only, 30, k; 88

Hannibal.

mortalis, 2, (fr. mors, -rtis, f, death): mortal, 49, r
 summus, 3: highest, supreme, 27, f
 fortuna, 1: fortune
 repente: suddenly
 reddo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to give back, make, bring
 about; ut, 124, b
 cado, 3, cecidi, casum: to fall, 36, a

Fortune suddenly brought it about, that fallen
 from his highest rule, a supreme mortal became
 the lowest servant.

infimus, 3: lowest, 27, f

[famul, arch. for:] famulus, 2: servant

Res Gestae.

concurro, 3, cucurri, cursum: to run together, run,
 101
 velut(i): as, like
 ventus, 2: wind, gale
 cum: when, 126, a
 spiritus, 4 (fr. spiro, 1, to breathe): breath, 49, a
 auster, -tri, 2: south-wind
 [imbricator, obs. for:] imbrifer, -a, -um (fr. imber,

They run like the gales, when the breath of the
 south-wind and the rain-bearing north-wind con-

shower and fero, bring): rain-bearing, 49, A
 aquilo, -nis, m: north-wind

[flamen, -minis, n, obs. for:] flatus, 4 (fr. flo, 1, to
 blow): blowing, blast, 49, a; 88

[contra: against]; contrarius, 3: opposite, contrary

FRAGMENTS

Historical Events (B. 17)

Indu mari magno fluctus extollere certant.

fluctus *in* mari magno extollere certant.

The Fight of Cajus Aelius, the Tribune (B. 18)

Undique conveniunt velut imber tela tribuno:

Configunt parmam; tinnit astilibus umbo
Aerato sonitu galeae: *sed* nec *pote* quisquam
Undique nitendo corpus *discerpere* ferro.

Semper obundantes hastas frangitque quatitque:
Totum sudor *habet* corpus; multumque laborat,
Nec respirandi fit copia; praepete ferro
Histri tela manu jacentes sollicitabant.

Undique conveniunt velut imber tela tribuno:

feriunt parmam; tinnit *hastilibus* umbo
galeaque sonitu aereo: nec *tamen* undique
nitendo quisquam *potest* corpus *caedere* ferro.

Frangit quatitque semper obundantes hastas:
totum sudore *madet* corpus; multumque laborat,
nec respirandi fit copia: *Istri* manu tela
jacentes praepeti eum ferro sollicitabant.

E FRAGMENTIS.

Res Gestae.

VOCABULARY

fluctus, 4 (*fr.* fluo, 3, fluxi, fluctum, to flow): *flowing, wave*, 49, a; 88
[*indu*, from the Greek endo, arch. for:] in: *in, on*, 50, c
mare, -ris, n: *sea*, 22, f

TRANSLATION

tend to stir up the waves on the great sea with their contrary blast.

magnus, 3: *great, big*, 27, e (35, g)
extollo, 3, extuli, elatum: *to lift, raise up*, 49, A2;

Pugna Caji Aelii Tribuni.

undique: *from everywhere*
convenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to come together*, 101
imber, -bris, m: *shower*
telum, 2: *dart, spear, javelin*
tribunus, 2: *tribune, colonel*, 79
ferio, 4: *to strike, knock, beat, hit*, 101
[configo, 3, -fixi, -fictum: *to fasten or nail to, pierce*]
parma, 1: (*little round*) *shield*
tinnio, 4: *to tinkle*, 101
hastile, -lis, n (*fr.* hasta, 1, spear): *shaft of a spear*, 49, r; 22, f; 93, a
umbo, -nis, m: *shield-boss*
galea, 1: *helmet*
[aeratus, 3: *covered with brass*, 49, 1]
sonitus, 4 (*fr.* sono, 1, -nui, -nitum, to sound): *sound*, 49, a; 88
aereus, 3 (*fr.* aes, aeris, n, brass): *brazen*
nec quisquam, 2: *no one*, 30, i
[pote or potis, indecl. obs.: *able*]
tamen: *yet*, 119, b
nitor, 3, nisum or nixum: *to strive, endeavor*, 30, i; 117, e
[discerpo, 3, -cerpsi, rptum: *to pluck to pieces*]
corpus, -poris, n: *body*
caedo, 3, cecidi, caesum: *to cut, injure*, 35, f
semper: *always*
obundo, 1: *to stream up, rush*
frango, 3, fregi, fractum: *to break*, 101

Like a shower, the darts fly at the tribune from everywhere: they hit his shield; his shield-boss tinkles with the shafts of the spears, and his helmet with a brazen sound: yet attempting from every side, no one is able to wound his body with the sword.

He breaks and strikes the spears rushing in from all sides: sweat covers his whole body; he labors much, nor is there a chance of relief: throwing by hand their javelins the Istrians harassed him with a quick attack.

quatio, 3, quassi, quassum: *to shake, strike, beat*, 40; 101
totus, 3: *whole, entire*, 30, k
sudor, -is, m (*fr.* sudo, 1, to sweat): *sweat*, 49, a; 88
madeo, 2, -dui, -: *to be wet or full*; 101
multus, 3: *much*, 28, d
laboro, 1: *to work, toil, labor*
respiro, 1: *to take breath or relief*, 117, c
fio, fieri, factum: *to become*, 43, 7; 101
copia, 1: *plenty, abundance, chance*
praepes, -petis: *rapidly flying, swift*, 26, d; 93, a
Istri, -rorum: *Istrians*
jacio, 3, jeci, jactum: *to throw*, 40; 36, a
is: *that, he*, 30, b
sollicito, 1: *to stir, disturb, solicit, annoy*, 32, b

FRAGMENTS

About Himself (B 18)

Nos sumus Romani, qui fuimus ante Rudini.-
Sicut fortis equus, spatio qui saepe supremo
Vicit Olympia, nunc senio confectus quiescit.

Nos sumus Romani, qui fuimus ante Rudini.-
Sicut fortis equus, qui supremo saepe vicit
Olympia spatio, nunc senio confectus quiescit.

On the Roman Domain

Moribus antiquis res stat Romana virisque.

Moribus antiquis virisque res stat Romana.

FRAGMENTS OF HIS TRAGEDIES

Andromache (the Wife of Hector)

Quid petam praesidi aut exsequar? Quove nunc
Auxilio exili aut fugae freta sim?

Arce et urbe orba sum. Quo accedam? Quo ap-
plicem?

Quod praesidium petam aut exsequar? Quove nunc
exili aut fugae auxilio sim freta?

Arce et urbe orba sum. Quo accedam? Quo ap-
plicem,

E FRAGMENTIS.

De Se Ipso.

VOCABULARY

nos, (fr. ego: I, 30, a): we (plural of majesty)
ante(a): before, previously
Rudinus, 3 (fr. Rudiae, -arum, a town in Cala-
bria): Rudian, 49, z
ut, sicut, sicuti: as, like
fortis, 2: brave, strong
equus, 2: horse
spatium, 2: space, distance, lap, 95
supremus, 3: highest, supreme, last, 27, f
saepe: often
Olympia, -orum, n (fr. Olympia, 1, the town of the

TRANSLATION

I am a Roman, who was previously a Rudian.-
He, like the brave horse, which in the last lap
often won the Olympic games, now rests broken
with old age.

Olympic games): Olympic games
senium, 2 (fr. senex, -nis, old): old age, 49, f; 88
conficio, 3, feci, -fectum: to accomplish, consume,
destroy, 36, b
quiesco, 3, -ievi, -ietum: to rest, repose

Res Romana.

mos, moris, m: habit, custom; pl.: morals, 93, a
antiquus, 3: ancient
res, 5: thing, affair, history, state, world
sto, 1, steti, statum: to stand, rest upon

Upon ancient customs and men rests the Roman
state.

E FRAGMENTIS TRAGEDIARUM

Andromacha (Uxor Hectoris).

qui, 3: which? what? 30, h
praesidium, 2: (fr. praesideo, 2, to sit before,
guard): protection, shelter, 49, f; 67, c'
exsequor, 3, -secutum: to pursue, obtain, find, 31, c;
104

-ve: and, (enclitic for the relative and interroga-
tive pronouns), 13, b

nunc: now
auxilium, 2: help, assistance, refuge
exilium, 2: exile; exili, praesidi, arch. genitives
fuga, 1 (fr. fugio, 3, to flee): flight, 49, a
fretus, 3: strengthened, trusting in, (with ablative)

What shelter shall I seek or find? What refuge
in exile or in flight shall I fall back upon?

I am deprived of my stronghold and town. Where
shall I go? Where shall I apply,

arx, arcis, f: stronghold, fortress, 90
urbs, urbis, f: city, town, 22, c
orbis, 3: bereft, deprived, 90
accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go to, 104
quo?: whither? where? 51, f
applico, 1: to apply to, 104

8. QUINTUS ENNIUS

239-169 B.C.

Course 31

FRAGMENTS OF HIS TRAGEDIES

Andromache (the Wife of Hector)

Cui nec arae patriae domi stant: fractae et disjectae jacent.

Fana flamma deflagrata; tosti alti stant parietes
Deformati atque abiete crispa -----

Cui nec arae patriae domi stant, *sed* fractae jacent et disjectae?

Fana deflagrata *sunt* flamma; tosti stant parietes
alti deformatique abietibus adustis -----

Telamon (Uncle of Achilles)

Sed superstitiosi vates impudentesque arioli
Aut inertes aut insani, aut quibus egestas imperat,
Qui sibi semitam non sapiunt, *alteri* monstrant viam,
Quibus divitias pollicentur, ab eis drachumam ipsi petunt.

Sed superstitiosi vates impudentesque harioli,
aut inertes aut insani, aut quibus egestas imperat,
qui sibi semitam non sapiunt, *aliis* monstrant viam,
et ab eis petunt drachmam, quibus ipsi divitias pollicentur.

E FRAGMENTIS TRAGEDARIUM

Andromacha (Uxor Hectoris).

VOCABULARY

ara, 1: altar
patrius, 3 (fr. patria, 1, native land): native
domi: at home, 21, f
jaceo, 2, -cui, -citurum: to lie, be
disjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to cast asunder, scatter, 40; 36, b
fanum, 2: grove, holy grove
flamma, 1: flame, blaze, fire, 93, a
deflagro, 1: to burn, be burned, consumed by fire
torreo, 2, -rrui, tostum: to burn, parch, 36, b
paries, -etis, m: wall

TRANSLATION

I, whose native
altars no longer stand at home, but lie broken and scattered about?
The holy groves are consumed by flames; the high walls stand scorched (and) deformed with the singed fir-trees -----
deformo, 1: to deform, 36, b
abies, -etis, f: fir-tree, 93, a
[crispus, 3: curly]
aduro, 3, -ussi, -usum: to burn, singe, 36, b

Telamo (Patruus Achillis).

superstitiosus, 3 (fr. superstitio, -nis, f, superstition): superstitious, 49, t
vates, -tis, m: soothsayer, fortune-teller
impudens, -ntis: shameless, impudent
hariolus, 2: soothsayer
aut - aut: either - or, or - or
iners, -rtis: simple, inactive, lazy, 49, A1
insanus, 3: insane, mad, 49, A1
egestas, -tatis, f (fr. egeo, 2, to be in need): need, extreme poverty, 49, u
impero, 1: to command, rule
sapio, 3, -pui, -, to taste, be wise, 40
[alter, 3: the other]; alius, 3: another, 30, k

However, the superstitious fortune-tellers and the shameless soothsayers, lazy, mad, or who need commands, men who do not know their own way, point out the way for others and ask a dime from those to whom they promise riches.
monstro, 1: to show, point out
via, 1: way, road
divitiae, -arum (fr. dives, -vitis, rich): riches, 49, u
polliceor, 2, -llicitum: to offer, promise
[drachuma, 1, obs. for:] drachma, 1: dime
ipse, 3: he, himself, 30, c

EPIGRAMS

*In distichs (Cf. 139)**In prose (Cf. 13, I, II)**His Bust*

Aspicite, o cives, senis Enni imaginis formam.
 Hic vestrum panxit maxima facta patrum.
 Nemo me lacrumis decoret nec funera fletu.
 Faxit! Cur? Volito vivus per ora virum.

Aspicite, o cives, formam imaginis senis Enni.
 Hic patrum panxit maxima facta vestrorum.
 Nemo me lacrimis honoret nec funera fletu
 faxit! Cur? Volito enim semper vivus per ora
 virorum.

Africanus

Hic est ille situs, cui nemo civis nec hostis
 Quirit pro factis reddere operae pretium.

Hic est ^{de}positus, cui nemo civium vel hostium
 valuit pro factis reddere operae pretium.

On Himself

A sole oriente supra Maeotis paludes
 Nemo est, qui factis me aequiparare queat.

A sole exorienti supra Maeotis paludes
 nemo est, qui factis me aequiparare queat.

EX EPIGRAMMATIS.

De Effigie Sua.

VOCABULARY

aspicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum: to look at, regard, behold, 108, a
 civis, is, c: citizen
 imago, -ginis, f: image, portrait, figure
 forma, 1: form, beauty
 senex, -nis: old, 26, a
 pango, 3, (panxi, panctum), pepigi, pactum: to fasten, undertake, register
 factum, 2 (fr. facio, 3, feci, factum, to make, do): deed, action, fact, 26, f
 pater, -tris: father, 22, b
 [lacruma, 1, arch. for:] lacrima, 1: tear, 93, a
 [decoro, 1: to decorate]
 honoro, 1 (fr. honor, -is, m, honor): to honor, 49, 1; 106
 funus, -neris, n: funeral

TRANSLATION

Behold, citizens, the beauty of the bust of old Ennius. He recorded the mighty deeds of your fathers.

No one shall honor me with tears, nor ^{attend} my funeral with weeping! Be it so! Why? Because I flutter about ever living on the lips of men.

fletus, 4 (fr. fleo, 2, flevi, fletum, to weep): weeping, 49, a; 88

faxit, used arch. form of fecerit (fr. facio): be it cur?: why? (so, 106)

enim: because, for, 120, a
 semper: always, ever

vivus, 3: alive, 56

volito, 1 (fr. volo, 1, to fly): flutter, 49, j

os, oris, n: mouth, lips, 23, I d

De Africano.

hic: here, 51, f
 [ille, 3: that, 30, b; f]
 [sino, 3, sii, situm: to allow, let, situate]
 depono, 3, posui, positum: to put, place, lay.
 [queo: to be able, 42, 3g] ^{down, bury}
 vel: or
 hostis, is, m: enemy, 23 I
 valeo, 2, -lui, -litum: to be healthy or able, 35, f

Here is ^{buried} laid he, whom none of his fellow citizens or his enemies was able to repay the price of his deeds.

reddo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to give back, render, pay
 opera, 1: effort, service, labor
 pretium, 2: price

De Se Ipso.

a, ab, (abs, before c, q, t): from, 50, b
 sol, -is, m: sun
 exorior, 4, -ortum: to rise, 26, c; 31, c
 supra: over, above, 50, a
 palus, -ludis, f: lake, swamp, 23, II
 Maeotis, is, f: Azove sea in Asia

From the sun, rising over the lake of Maeotis, there is none to equal me in deeds:

aequiparo, 1: to equal
 quisquam, 2: any one, 30, i

EPIGRAM

On Himself

Si fas *endo* plagas caelestum ascendere cuiquam est Si cuiquam fas est ascendere *ad* caelestium plagas,
Mi soli caeli maxima porta patet. maxima caeli porta *mihi soli* patet.

(F. H. Bothe, 1823-4)

EPIGRAMMA.

De Se Ipso.

VOCABULARY

fas, *indecl.*: right, allowed, 16, c
 ascendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to ascend
 plaga, 1: blow, stroke; region, land
 caelestis, 2 (*fr.* caelum, 2, sky): celestial, 26, a
 porta, 1: gate
 solus, 3: alone, only, 30, k

TRANSLATION

if any one is
 allowed to ascend to the land of the gods, the great-
 est gate lies open to me alone.

pateo, 2, -tui, -: to be open(ed), lie open

9. PUBLIUS TERENTIUS AFER

195-159 B.C.

Course 77

A young African slave, afterwards a playwright

THE GIRL OF ANDROS

Act V, Scene IV

Paramount in arrangement, not in language, yet a hundred years before Cicero we encounter classical forms in his colloquial speech; thus *dii* for (*di*); *juvenes*, *aures acc. pl.* for (*juven(e)is*, *aur(e)is*); *sis* for (*sies*); *is* for (*ille*), etc.

PERSONS: CRITO, a citizen of Andros; CHREMES, a rich Athenian citizen, the father of the lost PASIBULA (GLYCERIUM), who lives ignorant of her origin; SIMON, a citizen, friend of Chremes, father of PAMPHILUS, the secret spouse of GLYCERIUM.

The original metrical* text with archaisms

In classical prose**

1. CRITO: *Mitte orare. Una harum quaevis causa me, ut faciam, monet Vel tu, vel quod verum est, vel quod ipsi cupio Glycerio.*

1. CRITO: *Permitte me loqui, Pamphile, nam quaevis harum causarum, scilicet tua, Glycerii, vel ipsius veritatis monet, ut sic faciam.*

ANDRIA.

VOCABULARY

1. [*mitte*, *obs.*: let, don't mind]
 [*mitto*, 3: to send]; *permitto*, 3, -misi, -missum: to permit, let, allow, 108, a
Pamphilus, 2, m, Greek name: All-loving
 [*oro*, 1: to beg, pray]; *loquor*, 3, *locutum*: to speak, 31, c
quivis, 3: each, any, 30, i; 67, c

TRANSLATION

1. CRITO: *Let me speak, Pamphilus, for any of these reasons, namely, yours, Glycerium's, or that of truth itself bids me to do so.*

scilicet: namely, i.e.
Glycerium, 2, f, Greek name: Sweety
moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: to warn, suggest

* Cf. 139. ** Cf. 13, I, II.

THE GIRL OF ANDROS

3. CHREMES: Andrium *ego* Critonem video?
Et certe is est. Salvus sis Crito.
Quid tu Athenas insolens? CRITO: Evenit.
Sed hiccine est Simo?
5. CHREMES: Hic est. SIMO: Me-ne quaeris?
Eho, tu Glycerium *hinc* civem esse ais?
6. CRITO: Tu negas? SIMO: *Ita-ne* huc paratus advenis?
CRITO: *Quare?* SIMO: *Rogas?*
- Tu-ne* impune haec facias? *Tu-ne* hic homines adolescentulos,
Imperitos rerum, eductos libere in fraudem illicis?
Sollicitando et pollicitando eorum animos lactas?
- CRITO: San'n' es?
3. CHREMES: Andrium-*ne* Critonem video?
Certe is est. Salveto Crito.
Ad quid Athenas insolens *venisti?*
CRITO: *Casu* evenit. *At* hiccine est Simo?
5. CHREMES: *En* hic est.
SIMO: Me-ne quaeris? *Et tu-ne* es, qui Glycerium civem esse *dicis?*
6. CRITO: *Fortasse* tu negas?
SIMO: *An* praeparatus ad comprobandum hoc advenis?
CRITO: *Quae* quaestio!
SIMO: *At* tu interrogas?
An censes hoc impune fieri, quod homines adolescentes,
rerum imperitos libereque educatos in fraudem illicias,
atque sollicitando et pollicitando eorum animum foveas, ----
CRITO: *Sanus-ne* es Simo?

ANDRIA.

VOCABULARY

3. Andrius, 3: of Andros, (an island of Greece), 49, z
salve: How are you? 47; 108, b
insolens, -ntis: unusual, 56
casu: by chance (fr. cado, 3, cecidi, casum: to fall), 49, a
evenit, 4, eveni, eventum: to happen, befall, 48, b
5. en: lo, see; [eho, heus: hey, ho there, hello], 52, a
quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: to look for, seek
6. fors, forte, fortasse: perhaps, maybe
nego, 1: to deny, say no
comprobo, 1: to prove, 35, g
[rogo, 1: to ask for]; interrogo, 1: to question, interrogate
censeo, 2, -sui, -sum: to think, estimate, 57, 4
impune, adv. (fr. impunis, 2, unpunished): unpunished, 28, c
[adolescentulus, 3, dimin. of:] adolescens, -ntis: young, 49, p
imperitus, 3: inexperienced, 66, b
educio, 1: to educate
fraus, -udis, f: deceit, fraud
illicio, 3, -lexi, lectum: to entice, 131, b
sollicito, 1: to stir, instigate, 117, e

TRANSLATION

3. CHREMES: Is it Crito, the Andrian, I see? Sure enough, it is he. How are you, Crito? What brings you to Athens so contrary to your custom?
CRITO: It (just) happened by chance. But is not Simon here?
- cine, emph. interrog. encl. after pronouns, 30, b 3
5. CHREMES: Here he is.
SIMON: Are you looking for me? Are you the man who says Glycerium is a citizen?
6. CRITO: Do you perhaps deny it?
SIMON: Do you come prepared to prove it?
CRITO: What a question!
SIMON: And still you ask? Do you expect to go unpunished, trapping inexperienced, liberally educated young people, alluring their mind with solicitations and promises, -----
CRITO: Are you sane, Simon?
- pollicitor, 1, frequ. of polliceor, 2, -licitum: to offer, promise, 49, j; 117, e
[lacto, 1: to give suck to]; foveo, 2, fovi, fotum: to warm, cherish
sanus, 3: sane, healthy

9. PUBLIUS TERENTIUS AFER

195-159 B.C.

Course 77

THE GIRL OF ANDROS

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>10. SIMO: <i>Ac meretricios amores nuptiis conglutinas?</i>
 PAMPHILUS: Perii: metuo, ut subsistet hospes.

 CHREMES: Si, Simo, hunc noris satis, Non ita arbitrere. Bonus hic est vir.
 SIMO: Hic vir sit bonus?
 Ita-ne attemperate venit hodie in ipsis nuptiis, Ut veniret antehac nunquam? Est vero huic credendum, Chreme?

 15. PAMPHILUS: Ni patrem metuam, habeo pro illa re illum, quod moneam probe.
 SIMO: Sycophanta! CRITO: Hem! CHREMES: Sic, Crito, est hic. Mitte. CRITO: Videat, qui siet;

 Si mihi pergat, quae volt dicere, ea, quae non volt audiet.</p> | <p>10. SIMO: ----- <i>atque contemptibiles amores nuptiis coagmentes?</i>
 PAMPHILUS: Perii: metuo, ut subsistat hospes.
 CHREMES: Simo, si noveris hunc satis, non ita arbitreris. Bonus est hic vir.
 SIMO: Hic vir sit bonus?
 Ita-ne attemperate venit in ipsis nuptiis hodie, qui antehac nunquam venerit? An credendum est huic, Chremes?

 15. PAMPHILUS: Ni patrem metuerem, quo illum de hac re proba monerem, facile haberem.
 SIMO: Deceptor hic est!
 CRITO: Quid?
 CHREMES: Sine, Crito, talis est hic.
 CRITO: Videat, qualis sit;
 si enim ita pergat loqui mecum, quae non vult, audiet.</p> |
|---|--|

ANDRIA.

VOCABULARY

10. [meretricius, 3 (fr. meretrix, -cis, harlot): of a harlot, 49, t]
 contemptibilis, 2 (fr. contemno, 3, -mpsi, -mptum): despicable, 49, i
 nuptiae, -arum (fr. nubo, 3, nupsi, nuptum, to marry): marriage, matrimony, 93, a
 [conglutino, 1: to glue together]
 coagmento, 1: to fix, join together, 131, b
 pereo, 4, -ivi, -itum: to perish, be done for, 100
 subsisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum: to withstand, stay, 123
 hospes, pitis, c: guest
 arbitrator, 1: to judge, think, 109, b
 attempero, 1: to fit, adjust, 36, b; 28, a
 hodie, (fr. hoc die): today; qui, 129
 antehac: before now, formerly
15. metuo, 3, -ui, -: to fear, 109, c, d
 [probe: well, rightly, fitly, properly]
 probus, 3: good, upright, honest, fair
 moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: to admonish, advise, 120, c2
 pater, the third person in the sentence, and another third person is ille, 30, b2
 [sycophanta, 1 (Greek): sycophant, deceiver]
 [hem, obs.: ah, just see]
 sino, 3, si(v)i, situm: to place, allow, let
 talis, 2 - qualis, 2: of such a kind, - of which kind
 pergo, 3, perrexi, -rrectum: to proceed with, continue, go to, 109, a1

TRANSLATION

10. SIMON: ---- and joining up despicable loves in matrimony?
 PAMPHILUS: I am done for! I am afraid that our guest will not stay.
 CHREMES: Simon, if you knew this (gentleman) well enough, you would not judge (him) so (harshly). He is an upright man.
 SIMON: He a gentleman! Does he then come, just today, at the time of the wedding, so prepared, he who never had come before?
 Can he be trusted, Chremes?
- credendum, 111, b; Coll. 37, 3
 Chremes, -metis or -mis: Chremes
15. PAMPHILUS: If I did not fear my father, I would easily have the means of advising this man about the fair situation. (He came as the heir of the deceased Chryses, the cohabitant girl friend of Glycerium, to take over his inheritance.)
 SIMON: He is an impostor.
 CRITO: What!
 CHREMES: Do not mind him. He is like that.
 CRITO: Let him beware how he acts; for if he keeps on talking like this to me, he will hear what he does not want to.

THE GIRL OF ANDROS

18. Ego isthaec moveo aut curo? Non tu tuum malum aequo animo feras?
Nam ego, quae dico, vera an falsa audieris, jam sciri potest.

20. Atticus quidam olim navi fracta ad Andrum ejectus est,
Et isthaec una parva virgo. Tum ille egens forte applicat
Primum ad Chrysidis patrem se. SIMO: Fabulam inceptat. CHREMES: Sine.

23. CRITO: Ita-ne vero obturbat? CHREMES: Perge. CRITO: Tum is mihi cognatus fuit, Qui eum recepit. Ibi ego audivi ex illo sese esse Atticum.
Is ibi mortuus est. CHREMES: Ejus nomen? CRITO: Nomen tam cito mihi -----

18. An ista ego promoveo aut curo? Non-ne cuique suum malum aequo animo est ferendum?
Nam, quae ego dicturus sum, vera an falsa fuerint, jam sciri potest.

20. Atticus quidam olim nave fracta Andrum ejectus est,
et una ista tunc parvula virgo. Tum ille egens forte se applicavit ad Chrysidis patrem.
SIMO: Fabulam incipit.
CHREMES: Sine, quaeso.

23. CRITO: Ita-ne me hic obturbabit?
CHREMES: Modo perge narrare.
CRITO: Quive mihi cognatus eum recepit. Ibi ex illo ipso audivi eum Atticum esse.
Brevi ibi post mortuus est.
CHREMES: Et quod nomen ejus fuit?
CRITO: Nomen tam cito mihi in mentem----

ANDRIA.

VOCABULARY

18. promoveo, 2, -movi, -motum: to promote
curo, 1: care for, cure
quisque suum malum ferat or cuique suum malum est ferendum, 30, e"; 76
aequus, 3: equal, even, right, fair
jam: already, so indeed

20. Atticus, 3: of Attica, 1, the most celebrated country of Greece
quidam, 3: a certain, 30, i
olim: in times past, once upon a time
frango, 3, fregi, fractum: to break, wreck, 114, b
Andros, 2, f: the island of Andros, 21, a
ejicio, 3, ejeti, ejection: to throw or cast out
una: together; una cum: together with
parvulus, 3 (fr. parvus, 3, small): very little, 49, p
egeo, 2, egui, -: to be in need, destitute
forte: by chance, as it chanced
[incepto, 1, frequ. form of] incipio, 3, -cepi, -cep-

23. [vero: but indeed, but in fact, 119, b]
obturbo, 1: to disturb
pergo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: to go on, continue, proceed, 35, f
-ve, instead of -que, with qui, 3: and
cognatus, 3 (fr. nascor, 3, natum, to be born): relative, cognate, 79
brevi (tempore): shortly, 95

TRANSLATION

18. Am I sponsoring this (affair) or have I (any) care (in it)? Is it not up to each one to bear his own trouble with equanimity?
Now, whether what I am about to say, is false or true, can be ascertained equally well.

20. A certain man of Attica (was) in time shipwrecked and cast on the island of Andros, and with him this (woman) at that time a little (girl). Then as it chanced, he addressed himself in time of need to the father of Chryses.

SIMON: He is starting a tale.

CHREMES: Let (him speak), I beg you.

tum: to begin, start, 49, j; 40
Chryses, -sidis, f, daughter of Glycerium's foster-father: Golden, Charming

23. CRITO: And will this man disturb me thus?
CHREMES: Just keep on relating.
CRITO: Then this relative of mine received him. There I heard from himself, that he was from Attica. Shortly after he died there.
CHREMES: What was his name?
CRITO: His name (does not come) very fast to my mind ----

9. PUBLIUS TERENTIUS AFER

195-159 B.C.

Course 77

THE GIRL OF ANDROS

Phania. CHREMES: *Hem, perii.* CRITO: *Verum, Hercle, opinor Phanium.*

Hoc certo scio Rhamnusium se *ajebat* esse. CHREMES: O Jupiter!

28. CRITO: *Eadem haec, Chreme, multi alii in Andro audivere.* CHREMES: *Utinam id siet,*

Quod spero. *Eho, dic mihi, quid is eam tum,* Crito, *Suam-ne ajebat esse?* CRITO: Non. CHREMES:

Cujam igitur? CRITO: *Fratris filiam.*

31. CHREMES: *Certe mea est.* CRITO: *Quid ais?* SIMO: *Quid tu? Quid ais?* PAMPHILUS: *Arrige aures, Pamphile.*

SIMO: *Qui credis?* CHREMES: *Phania ille frater meus fuit.* SIMO: *Noram et scio.*

Phania, *ni fallor----*

CHREMES: *O dii immortales!*

CRITO: *Me Hercules, recte opinor fuisse Phanium. Hocque certe scio, quod Rhamnusium se esse dixerit.*

CHREMES: O Juppiter!

28. CRITO: *Eadem haec, Chremes, tunc multi alii quoque audierunt Andri.*

CHREMES: *Utinam id sit,*

quod spero. *Dic modo, o Crito carissime; suam-ne esse is filiam ajebat?*

CRITO: Non.

CHREMES: *Ergo cujam?*

CRITO: *Fratris filiam.*

31. CHREMES: *O dii, certe mea filia est.*

CRITO: *Quid dicis?*

SIMO: *Quid? Numquid tu pater istius?*

PAMPHILUS: *Arrige aures, Pamphile.*

SIMO: *Num haec tu credis?*

CHREMES: *Inconcussus! Phania enim ille frater meus fuit.*

SIMO: *Hoc scio et bene eum noveram.*

ANDRIA.

VOCABULARY

fallo, 3, *fefelli, falsum: to fail, deceive; fallor: to be mistaken, 109, a, d*

Hercules, -lis: *Hercules; hercle, slang, 52, d*

hoc scio, quod dixerit, 131, c

Rhamnusius, 3: *of Rhamnus, -nuntis, f, a village of Attica, 49, 2*

28. *Andri, as above Andrum are locative cases, 21, a, c*

utinam: *would that, 105*

spero, 1: *to hope*

[*eho: hello, 52, f*]

[*igitur,*] ergo: *therefore, then, 119, b*

cujus, -a, -um: *whose?*

31. *o dii: heavens!*

[*ajo: to say, (used regularly to introduce others' opinions, as above, 44, 9)*

numquid, *emph. (form of num,) question particle, 51, b*

arrigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: *to erect, lift up, 108, a*

auris, is, f: *ear*

inconcussus, 3 (*fr. inconcutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum, to shatter, agitate*): *unshaken, firm, 40; 49, A,*

novi, nosse, notum: *to know, 45, 14 (1; 56*

TRANSLATION

Phania, if I am not mistaken ----.

CHREMES: *O heavens!*

CRITO: *Yes, by Jove, (now) I remember well; it was Phania. This also I am sure of, that he said he was a Rhamnusian.*

CHREMES: *Great Jupiter!*

28. CRITO: *These very things, Chremes, many other people in Andros then heard.*

CHREMES: *Would that it were, as I hope! Say, my dear Crito; did he say that she was his own daughter?*

CRITO: *No.*

CHREMES: *Whose then?*

CRITO: *His brother's.*

31. CHREMES: *Heavens! Surely she is my daughter.*

CRITO: *What do you say?*

SIMO: *What? You do not mean you are her father?*

PAMPHILUS: *Prick up your ears, Pamphilus!*

SIMO: (*Chremes,*) *you don't believe that, do you?*

CHREMES: *Most assuredly I do, for Phania was my brother.*

SIMO: *I know that and I knew him well.*

THE GIRL OF ANDROS

33. CHREMES: Is hinc bellum fugiens meque in Asiam *persequens profiscitur*.
Tum illam hic relinquere est veritus. Post illa nunc primum audio,

Quid illo est factum. PAMPHILUS: Vix sum apud me: ita animus *commotus* est metu, Spe, gaudio, mirando hoc *tanto* tam repentino bono.

37. SIMO: *Nae istam multimodis* tuam inveniri gaudeo. PAMPHILUS: Credo, pater.

CHREMES: At mihi unus scrupulus *etiam* restat, qui me *male* habet. PAMPHILUS: *Dignus* es cum tua *religione* odio: nodum in scirpo quaeris.

CRITO: Quid illud est?

40. CHREMES: Nomen non convenit. CRITO: Fuit, *Hercle*, aliud *huic* parvae. CHREMES: Quod, Crito?

33. CHREMES: Is hinc bellum fugiens, meque in Asiam *secuturus*, cum illam hic relinquere veritus *esset*, una cum ea *profectus* est. Post haec nunc primum audio, quid *eis* factum sit.

PAMPHILUS: Vix sum apud me: ita metu, spe, gaudio, et hoc *tantopere* mirando, tamque repentino bono *conturbatus* est animus *meus*.

37. SIMO: *Profecto*, *Chremes*, tuam *miro modo* inveniri *filiam vel maxime* gaudeo.

PAMPHILUS: O pater, credo *te lepidissimum*.

CHREMES: At mihi unus scrupulus, qui *non parum* me *angit*, *adhuc* restat.

PAMPHILUS: *Odiosus* es tua *anxia cura*, nam nodum quaeris in scirpo.

CRITO: Quid illud est?

40. CHREMES: Nomen non convenit.

CRITO: *Me Hercules*, aliud *nomen tunc* parvulae fuit. CHREMES: Quod, o bone Crito?

ANDRIA.

VOCABULARY

33. hinc: *from, here, hence*
fugio, 3, fugi, fugitulum: *to flee*
[persequor, 3, -secutum: *to pursue*]
vereor, 2, veritum: *to fear, revere*, 125, b
quid factum sit, 132
apud se esse: *to control oneself*
tantopere: *so greatly, such, so*
tam: *so far, to such a degree*
miror, 1: *to admire, wonder*, 111, b
[commoveo, 2, -movi, -motum: *to move, affect*]

37. [nae, Greek for:] profecto: *indeed, truly, really*
[multimodis, obs.: *in many ways*]
lepidus, 3: *pleasant, charming, elegant, pretty*
scrupulus, 2: *little stone, doubt, scruple*
parum, adv.: *little*, 28, d; 63
ango, 3, anxi, -: *to press together, distress*
resto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to rest, remain*
odiosus, 3 (fr. odium, 2, hatred): *hateful*, 49, c
anxius, 3 (fr. ango): *causing anxiety or anguish*, 88
scirpus, 2: *bulrush*

40. convenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to meet, agree*

TRANSLATION

33. CHREMES: *Dodging the war here and being about to follow me to Asia, he set out with her, as he feared to leave her behind. Since then this is the first (time) I hear what happened to them.*

PAMPHILUS: *I can hardly control myself. My mind is so upset by fear, hope, joy, and good fortune (which is) so marvelous and so unexpected.*

repentinus, 3: *sudden*, 93, a
conturbo, 1: *to disturb*

37. SIMON: *Indeed, I rejoice exceedingly, Chremes, that you have marvelously found your daughter.*

PAMPHILUS: *I see, father, you are a very fine gentleman.*

CHREMES: *But there still remains one uncertainty, which pains me much.*

PAMPHILUS: *You are hateful with your scruples; you are splitting hairs.*

CRITO: *What is it?*

nodus, 2: *knot*

40. CHREMES: *The name does not agree.*

CRITO: *By my faith, there was another name for her as a child.*

CHREMES: *What was it, my dear Crito?*

9. PUBLIUS TERENTIUS AFER

195-159 B.C.

Course 77

THE GIRL OF ANDROS

Numquid meministi? CRITO: Id quaero. PAMPHILUS: *Ego-ne* hujus memoriam patiar meae

Voluptati obstare, cum egomet possim in hac re *medicari* mihi?

Non patiar. *Heus*, Chreme, quod quaeris, Pasibula.

CRITO: Ipsa est! CHREMES: Ea est.

PAMPHILUS: Ex ipsa *millies* audivi. SIMO: *Omneis* nos gaudere, Chreme,

Te *credo* credere. CHREMES: Ita me dii ament,

credo. PAMPHILUS: Quid restat, pater?

46. SIMO: Jam *dudum* res *reduxit me ipsa* in gratiam. PAMPHILUS: O lepidum patrem!

De uxore, *ita ut possedi, nihil* mutas, Chreme?

CHREMES: Causa optuma est,

Nisi *quid* pater aliud ait. PAMPHILUS: Nempe.

An fortasse meministi?

CRITO: *Recte* id in memoria quaero.

PAMPHILUS: *An tardam* hujus memoriam *ultra* patiar meae obstare *felicitati*, cum mederi egomet possim hac in re mihi?

Non patior. Chremes, *nomen*, quod quaeris, Pasibula est.

CRITO: Ipsa est! *Pasibula nomen ei fuit*.

CHREMES: Ea est! *Ita eam vocabam*.

PAMPHILUS: Ex ipsa *milies* audivi.

SIMO: *Omnes* nos de hoc gaudemus ex toto *corde*, Chremes, *opinorque* te mihi credere.

CHREMES: Ita me dii ament, *ut* credo.

PAMPHILUS: Quid *igitur* restat, pater?

46. SIMO: Jam res *tua* *redux est mihi* in gratiam.

PAMPHILUS: O lepidum patrem!

Sicque de uxore, *quam possideo, num velles* quid mutare, Chremes?

CHREMES: Causa *haec mihi nunc* optima est, nisi pater *aliter decernat*.

PAMPHILUS: *Paternum* nempe *decertum* erit:

ANDRIA.

VOCABULARY

memini, meminisse: to remember, 45, 13

ultra: further

tardus, 3: slow, late

patior, 3, passum: to suffer, bear, let, 40; 104

[voluptas, -tatis, f: pleasure, delight]

felicitas, -tatis, f, (fr. felix, -icis, happy): happiness, 49, a

obsto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: to stand against, resist, hinder, 79

[medicor, 1: to act as physician]

medeor, 2, -, : to heal, cure, help, 80, h; 125, b

Pasibula, 1, Greek name, compound of "all" and "counsel": Prudentia, in Latin

milies: a thousand times, 29, d

46. [jam dudum: now for a long time]

redux, -ucis (fr. reduco, 3, to lead back): returning, returned, 49, i

possideo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: to possess

nempe: namely, as follows, (often not translated)

decretum, 2 (fr. decerno, 3, decrevi, decretum; to decide): decree, decision, 26, f

TRANSLATION

Maybe you remember?

CRITO: I am just searching for it in my memory.

PAMPHILUS: Shall I let his slow memory retard my happiness, when I can help myself?

No, I don't. Chremes, Pasibula is the name you are looking for.

CRITO: That is it! Pasibula was her name.

CHREMES: That's it! I called her so.

PAMPHILUS: From her I heard it a thousand times.

SIMO: All of us rejoice, Chremes, over this with all our hearts. I hope you believe me?

CHREMES: So may the gods help me, I do.

PAMPHILUS: Now then, father, what remains to be done?

46. SIMON: Well, your affair is turning out in my favor.

PAMPHILUS: O charming father! And you, Chremes, do you want to change anything about the wife I got?

CHREMES: The matter is now at its best, unless your father will decide otherwise.

PAMPHILUS: Well, the paternal decision will be:

THE GIRL OF ANDROS

SIMO: Scilicet. CHREMES: Dos, Pamphile, est
 Decem talenta. PAMPHILUS: Accipio. CHREMES: Propero ad filiam. *Eho mecum*, Crito.
 (Ex Recensione Heinsiana, 1635)

SIMO: *Cordis scilicet tui desiderio omnes nos conformari.*
 CHREMES: *Ex mea parte*, Pamphile, dos est decem talenta.
 PAMPHILUS: *Laetantissimus*, Chremes, accipio.
 CHREMES: *Nunc vero*, Crito, propere duc me ad filiam.

ANDRIA.

VOCABULARY

scilicet: *viz.*, to wit, that is to say, of course, (sometimes untranslatable)
 dos, dotis, f: dowry, 22, d; 23, Ia
 talentum, 2: 100 pounds of gold, talent
 laetor, 1: to rejoice, be joyful, 56
 [propero, 1: to hasten]
 properus, 3: quick, hasty, bustling, 28, a

TRANSLATION

SIMON: *That we all comply with your heart's desire.*
 CHREMES: *On my part*, Pamphilus, the dowry will be ten talents.
 PAMPHILUS: *I accept it*, Chremes, full of joy.
 CHREMES: *But now*, Crito, lead me quickly to my daughter.

THE FATHER OF LATIN PROSE

10. MARCUS PORCIUS CATO

ON HUSBANDRY

Excerpts

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of the copyists.

1. Mercatorem strenuum studiosumque rei quaerendae existimo, at ex agricolis et viri fortissimi et milites strenuissimi gignuntur; maximeque pius quaestus stabilissimusque consequitur, minimeque invidiosus: minimeque male cogitantes sunt, qui in eo studio occupati sunt.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of the copyists.

1. Mercatorem strenuum studiosumque divitiarum quaerendarum existimo, dum ex agricolis et viri fortissimi et milites strenuissimi gignuntur; maximeque pius quaestus stabilissimusque ex agri cultura consequitur, minimeque invidiosus: minimeque male cogitantes sunt, qui eo studio occupantur.

DE RE RUSTICA.

Eclogae.

VOCABULARY

1. mercator, -is, m (fr. mercor, 1, to buy): merchant, 49, d
 strenuus, 3: brisk, active, vigorous
 studiosus, 3 (fr. studium, 2, zeal): zealous, eager, 49, t; 66, b
 divitiae, -arum: (fr. dives, -vitis, rich): wealth, riches, 49, u
 quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: to seek, strive to get, existimo, 1: to consider, think, hold (118)
 agricola, 1, m (fr. ager, field, and colo, 3, to cultivate): farmer, 49, A
 gigno, 3, genui, genitum: to beget, bear, bring forth
 pius, 3: upright, gentle, pious

TRANSLATION

1. *I think a merchant is strenuous and eager to acquire wealth, while from farmers arise both the most steadfast men and the most persistent soldiers. The most stable and least envied profit results from farming; and those engaged in this pursuit think least evilly.*
 quaestus, 4 (fr. quaero, 3, to seek): profit, pay, 49, a
 stabilis, 2 (fr. sto, 1, to stand): firm, steadfast, 49, i
 consequor, 3, -secutum: to follow, result
 invidiosus, 3 (fr. invidia, 1, envy): envious, causing hate or ill-feeling, 49, t
 occupo, 1: to occupy, engage; studio, 93, a

10. MARCUS PORCIUS CATO

234-149 B.C.

Course 41

ON HUSBANDRY

2. Praedium quum parare cogitabis, sic in animo habeto, ut ne cupide emas, neve opera tua parcas visere, et ne satis habeas semel circumire.

De domino bono colono bonoque aedificatore melius emetur.

Ad villam cum venies, videto vasa torcula et dolia multa-ne sient. Ubi non erunt, scito pro ratione fructuum esse.

3. Praedium quod primum siet, si me rogabis, sic dicam: De omnibus agris optimoque loco jugera agri centum; vinea est prima, si vino bono vel multo est; secundo loco hortus irriguus; tertio salictum; quarto oletum; quinto pratium; sexto campus frumentarius;

2. Praedium comparaturus in mente habeto, ne cupide emas, neque operae tuae parcas id visendo, neque vero satis habeas semel circumire.

A bono colono bonoque aedificatore melius emes.

Ad villam venalem cum veneris, videto, multa-ne sint vasa torcula et dolia. Ubi non fuerint, scito inopia frugum deesse.

3. Quod praedium sit optimum, si me rogaveris, hoc dicam: Primo de omnibus agris in optimoque loco jugera sint centum; vinea est bona, si vino bono vel multo est; secundo non desit hortus irriguus; tertio adsit salictum; quarto olivetum; quinto pra-

DE RE RUSTICA.

VOCABULARY

2. praedium, 2: landed estate
[quum, arch. for cum: when]
[paro, 1: to prepare]; comparo, 1: to purchase, compare, 111, a
mens, -ntis, f: mind
[animus, 2: feeling, disposition]
cupidus, 3 (fr. cupido, desire, longing): eager, wishful, 49, t; 28, a
emo, 3, emi, emptum: to buy, purchase
opera, 1: pains, effort, service
parco, 3, peperci (parsi), parcitum (parsum): to spare, 80, j; 124, a
viso, 3, visi, visum (fr. video, to see): to look at carefully, 49, j; 117, e
sat or satis, indecl.: enough
circu(m)eo, 4, -ivi, -itum: to go round, 42, 3; 57, 3
[dominus, 2: lord, master, ruler, the head of a household, Mr., gentleman]
colonus, 2: farmer, colonist
aedificator, -is (fr. aedifico, 1, to build): builder, 49, d

3. rogo, 1: to ask, 109, a3
primo, secundo: firstly, secondly, 28, a; 29, b
jugerum, 2: acre
centum, indecl.: hundred, 29, a
vinea, 1 (fr. vinum, 2, wine, 86): vineyard
hortus, 2: garden
irriguus, 3 (fr. irriigo, 1, to irrigate): fit for irrigation, 49, t
salictum, 2 (fr. salix, -icis, f, willow): grove of willows, 49, o
quartus, 3; quintus, 3; sextus, 3: fourth, fifth, sixth, 29, b; 28, a

TRANSLATION

2. When about to buy a landed estate, keep in mind not to purchase hastily, nor to be sparing of effort in investigating, nor let it be enough for you to go around once.

You will make a better purchase from a good farmer and a good builder.

Arriving at a farm house for sale, see whether there are many winepressing vessels and casks. Where there are none, you must know they are missing for want of fruit.

venalis, 2 (fr. veneo, 4, veni(v)i, venitum or venum ire, to go to sale or to be sold): on sale, 49, r
[venies, colloquial]; veneris, 32, f; 126, a
vas, -is, n. pl. vasa, -orum: vase, vessel
torculus, 3 (fr. torqueo, 2, to twist): of wine press
dolium, 2: cask; fuerint, 32, f
inopia, 1: need, 94
[fructus, 4: proceeds, profit, fruit]
frux, -ugis, f: fruit, crop

3. If you ask me what landed estate is very good, I shall reply this: First, let there be a hundred acres of all fields in the best place; a vineyard is good if it is fit for fine wine or for much wine; secondly, let there be a garden that can be irrigated; thirdly, let there be a grove of willows; fourthly, an olive grove; fifthly, a meadow;

[oletum, arch. for:] olivetum, 2 (fr. oliva, 1, olive): olive grove, 49, o
pratium, 2: meadow
[campus, 2: field, meadow]

ON HUSBANDRY

septimo silva caedua; octavo arbustum; nono glandaria silva. (C.I.)

4. Paterfamilias, ubi ad villam venit, ubi larem familiarem salutavit, fundum eodem die, si potest, circumeat: si non eo die at postridie. (C.II.)

5. Prima adulescentia patrem familiae agrum conserere studioso oportet; aedificare diu cogitare oportet; conserere cogitare non oportet, sed facere oportet.

Ubi aetas accessit ad annos XXXVI, tum aedificare oportet, si agrum consitum habeas.

Torcularia bona habere oportet, ut opus bene effici possit. (C.III.)

tum; sexto area frumentaria; septimo silva caedua; octavo arbustum; nono glandaria silva.

4. Paterfamilias, ubi ad villam venerit et larem familiarem salutaverit, fundum eodem die, si potest, circumeat: si non eodem die, attamen postridie.

5. Prima adolescentia oportet patremfamilias sine mora fundum studioso conserere, quod non cogitatu sed factu indiget, ast de aedificando diu cogitandum est.

Ubi aetas tua accessit ad annum trigesimum sextum, tunc aedificare te oportet, si fundum consitum habeas.

Torcularia bona sint oportet, ut opus iis bene effici possit.

DE RE RUSTICA.

VOCABULARY

frumentarius, 3 (fr. frumentum, grain): of crops, 49, m

area, 1: open place, court-yard

septimus, 3; octavus, 3; nonus, 3: seventh, eighth, ninth, 29, b; 28, a

silva, 1: forest (49, t)

caeduus, 3 (fr. caedo, 3, to cut): fit to be cut down, arbustum, 2 (fr. arbor, -is, f, tree): plantation, nurs-

4. paterfamilias, 1, well used arch. form: landlord, the head of a household, 19, c

ubi: as soon as

venerit, 32, f

lar, -is, m: tutelary deity, 23, III a

saluto, 1: to greet, bless, worship, 32, f

fundus, 2: bottom, estate, farm

5. adolescentia, 1 (fr. adolesco, 3, to grow): youth, 49, u

oportet, 2, -tuit: it is needful, 48, d; Coll. 48, 9, 14 mora, 1: delay, pause

consero, 3, -sevi, -situm: to sow, plant, cover

indigeo, 2, -gui, -: to want, need, 83; 116, b

diu: for a long time

aetas, -atis, f: age

accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to approach, 120, c 3

trigesimus sextus, 3: thirty-sixth, 29, b

habeas, 109, b

torcular, -is, n (fr. torculum, 2, press): wine or oil-press, or equipment, 22, f; 49, r

oportet sit, abridged from oportet, ut sit

TRANSLATION

sixthly, a threshing floor for crops; seventhly, a forest for wood; eighthly, a nursery; ninthly, an acorn forest.

ery, 49, o
glandaria, 1 (fr. glans, -ndis, f, acorn): of acorn, 49, m

4. As soon as the land-owner has arrived at his country-seat and worshipped the household deity, if possible, let him walk around his estate, if not on the same day, at least on the next.

postridie: on the next day

5. In early youth a land-owner must without delay carefully plant his estate (with trees and vines), as there is need of acting, not of thinking; yet (you) must think long about building (a farm house).

When you have reached your thirty-sixth year, then you must build, if you have your property well planted (with trees and vines).

The equipment of the wine-press must be in good condition in order to be able to work with it efficiently.

[efficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to effect, produce]
conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to make well, complete

10. MARCUS PORCIUS CATO

234-149 B.C.

Course 41

ON HUSBANDRY

6. *Bubilia bona, bonas praesepeis Faliscas, clatratas; clatros interesse oportet pede.*

Villam urbanam pro copia aedificato.

Ruri si recte habitaveris, libentius et saepius eo venies, fundus melior erit, fructi plus capies.

(C. IV.)

7. Haec erunt villici officia. Disciplina bona utatur. Feriae servantur. Alieno manum absteineat. Sua servet diligenter. Litibus familiae supersedeat. Ne plus censeat sapere se, quam dominum. Cui jussus siet, auscultet. Injussu domini credat nemini. Parasitum ne quem habeat. Primus cubitu surgat; postremus cubitum eat.

(C.V.)

6. *Bovilia bona, praesaepia vero integra, Falisca clatratague esse oportet, et clatros ipsos pede distare.*

Villam urbanam pro copia aedificato.

Ruri si recte habitaveris, libentius et saepius eo venies, fundus melior erit, et plus fructus capies.

7. Haec erunt villici officia: Disciplina utatur bona. Ferias servet. Alieno manum absteineat. Sua conservet diligenter. Litibus familiae supersedeat. Ne plus censeat se sapere, quam dominum. Cui jussus sit, auscultet. Injussu domini credat nemini. Parasitum ne quem habeat. Primus de cubitu surgat; postremus cubitum eat.

DE RE RUSTICA.

VOCABULARY

6. [bubile, arch. for:] bovine, -lis, n, (fr. bos, bovis, m, ox): *ox-stall*, 22, f
 praesaepe, -pis, n; praesaepium, 2: *manger*
 integer, -gra, -grum: *whole, unharmed, undamaged*
 Faliscus, 3: *Faliscan (from Etruria)*
 clatro, 1: *to grate*
 clatri, or clatra, -orum: *trellis, grating*
 [intersum: *to be between*]; disto, 1, distiti, -, : *to be apart or separate*, 85
 pes, pedis, m: *foot*, 85
 copia, 1: *plenty, chance, power, opportunity*
 recte, (fr. rectus, 3, *straight*): *rightly, properly, duly, well*, 28, a
 urbanus, 3 (fr. urbs, -bis, f, *city*): *urban, in the city*, 49, t
 rus, ruris, n: *country*, 21, f

7. villicus, 2 (fr. villa, 1, *farmhouse*): *steward*
 officium, 2: *office, duty*
 utor, 3, usum: *to use*, 93, b; 106
 feria, 1: *feast, holiday*
 servo, 1: *to keep, save*, 106
 alienus, 3: *of another, foreign*, 26, f; 90
 abstineo, 2, -nui, -tentum: *to abstain*, 106
 conservo, 1: *to preserve*, 106
 diligens, -ntis (fr. diligo, 3, *to love*): *careful*, 28, a
 lis, litis, f: *quarrel*, 22, d
 supersedeo, sedi, -sessum: *to sit upon, refrain*, 79; 106
 censeo, 2, -sui, -sum: *to estimate, think*, 106
 sapio, 3, -pui, -: *to have taste or prudence*, 40
 jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: *to order*, 57, b; Coll. 48, 5, 15; sit, 120, c3
 ausculto, 1: *to listen, obey*, 80, l; 106

TRANSLATION

6. *Ox-stalls (must be) good; undamaged and Faliscan grated mangers are necessary (with) grating a foot apart.*

According to your means also build a house in your city.

If you have a comfortable lodging on (your) farm, you will often go there with pleasure, your estate will improve, and you will get a bigger crop.

habito, 1: *to lodge, have lodging*, 109, a3

libens, -ntis (fr. libet, -buit, *it pleases*, 48, d): *willing, with pleasure*, 28, a

saepius: *more often*, 28, f

eo, illuc: *thither, there*, 51, f

[fructus, 2, arch. for:] fructus, 4; 67, b

7. *Your husbandman's duty shall be as follows: He must maintain good discipline, observe the feasts, keep his hands off other's goods, preserve his own carefully, settle the quarrels of his dependents, not think himself wiser than his lord, listen to whom he is ordered to listen, lend to no one without his lord's order, have no parasite, be the first to rise and the last to retire.*

injussu: *without order*, 49, A1; 116, b

credo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to trust, lend, believe*, 106

parasitus, 2 or parasita, 1: *toady, parasite*

cubitus, 4 (fr. cubo, 3, -bui, -bitum, *to lie down*): *lying down, bed*, 116, a

postremus, 3: *the last*, 27, f

surgo, 3, surrexi, surrectum: *to rise, stand (up)*, 106

ON HUSBANDRY

8. Familiae cibaria: Qui opus facient, per hiemem tritici modios *IV*, per aestatem modios *IV S*.

(C. *LVI*.)

9. Vinum familiae. Ubi vindemia facta erit, loram bibant menses *III*.

Mense quarto heminas *in dies*, id est *in mense* congios *II S*.

(C. *LVII*.)

10. Pulmentarium familiae oleae caducae quam plurimum condito.

Ubi oleae comesae erunt. halecem et acetum dato.

(C. *LVIII*.)

11. Vestimenta familiae tunicam *P. III S*, saga alternis annis.

Quoties *cuique* tunicam aut sagum *dabis*, *prius veterem* accipito, unde centones fiant.

Sculponeas alternis annis dare oportet. (C. *LIX*.)

8. Familiae cibaria *sic dispertias*: Qui opus facient, per hiemem tritici modios *quattuor*, per aestatem modios *quattuor et semis pro mense accipiunto*.

9. Vinum familiae *sic fiet*: Ubi vindemia facta erit, loram bibant menses tres.

A mense quarto singuli heminam per diem, i.e. per mensem congios *duos et semis habebunt*.

10. Pulmentarium familiae quam plurimum olearum caducarum condito.

Ubi oleae comesae erunt, halecem et acetum dato.

11. *Pro vestimento familiae tunicam singulis pedum trium et semis*, saga *autem* alternis dato annis.

Quotiescumque tunicam aut sagum *dederis*, vetera accipito, unde centones fiant.

Sculponeas *vero* alternis annis dare *te* oportet.

DE RE RUSTICA.

VOCABULARY

8. cibaria, -orum: *food, fodder*
dispertio, 4: *to divide, distribute*, 108, *b*
hiem(p)s, -mis, f: *winter*
modius, 2: *bushel (of two and a half gallons)*
quattuor: *four*, 29, *a*
aestas, -tatis, f: *summer*

9. vindemia, 1 (fr. vinum, 2, wine, and demo, 3, subtract): *vintage*; facta erit, 32, *f*
lora, 1: *after-wine*
bibō, 3, bibi, bibitum: *to drink*, 106
mensis, is, m: *month*, 23, *I*; 64
hemina, 1: *about half a pint*
congius, 2 (VI sectarii or XII heminae): *about six pints*

10. pulmentarium, 2: *relish, anything eaten with*
quam: *as*, 27, *k* (bread)
caducus, 3 (fr. cado, 3, to fall): *fallen*, 67, *b*
condio, 4: *to season, preserve, pickle*, 108, *6*
halex, -ecis, m, or alec, -is, n: *sauce made of fish*
comedo, 3, -edi, -esum: *to eat up, eat*, 32, *f*

11. vestimentum, 2 (fr. vestio, 4, to clothe): *clothing*
tunica, 1: *tunic* (ing)
singuli, -ae, -a: *single, each one*, 29, *c*
sagum, 2: *short mantle, plaid, cloak*
alternus, 3: *alternate, interchanged*, 95
quotiescumque: *as often as*; dederis, 32, *f*
vetus, -teris: *old*, 26, *a*
accipio, 3, -cepi, ceptum: *to get, receive*, 40; 108, *b*
cento, -onis, m: *rug woven of rags, patchwork*

TRANSLATION

8. *Distribute the food for the household thus: Those, who will do the work, must get four bushels of wheat throughout the winter, four and a half, during the summer, for a month.*

semis, indecl.: *half*, 16, *c*

9. *The wine for the family will be thus: As soon as the vintage is completed, they will drink after-wine, for three months.*

From the fourth month on, each will receive half a pint a day, i.e., fifteen pints a month.

10. *As relish for the household you must preserve fallen olives, as many as possible.*

When the olives have been eaten, give out pickled fish and vinegar.

acetum, 2: *vinegar*

11. *For clothing of the household, give each one a tunic of three and a half feet, but a cloak, every second year.*

As often as you give tunics or cloaks, get back the old ones, from which rags may be made.

You must give out wooden shoes every other year.

sculponeae, -arum (fr. sculpo, 3, to carve): *wooden shoes*; sculponeas dare te oportet or dari oportet

ON HUSBANDRY

12. *Bubus* cibaria annua in juga singula lupini modios CXX, aut glandis modios CCXL, faeni pondo DXXXV, fabae modios XX, viciae modios XXX.

(C.LX.)

13. Priusquam messim facies, priusquam porcum feminam immolabis Jano, struem commoveto sic: Jane pater, te hac strue commovenda bonas preces precor, uti sis volens propitius mihi, liberisque meis, domo familiaeque meae.

Postea Cereri exta et vinum dato. (C.CXXXIV.)

14. Agrum lustrare sic oportet. Impera suovetaurilia circumagi.

Item cultro facito struem et ferctum uti adsiet. Inde obmoveto. Ejusque rei ergo macte hisce suovetaurilibus immolandis esto. (C.CXL.)

12. *Bovibus* cibaria annua in juga singula lupini modios centum viginti, aut glandis modios ducentos quadraginta, faeni pondo quingenta viginti quinque, fabae modios viginti, viciae vero modios triginta computato.

13. Priusquam messem facias, immolando porcam Jano struem moveto sic: Jane pater, struem hanc commovendo piis te precibus precor, ut velis sis propitius mihi, liberisque meis, domui familiaeque meae.

Postea Cereri exta et vinum dato.

14. Agrum lustrare sic te oportet. Impera suovetaurilia agris circumagi.

Item cultro struem facito et cures ut fertum adsiet. Deinde obmovendo dic: Mars pater, mactus hisce suovetaurilibus immolatis esto.

DE RE RUSTICA.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

12. annuus, 3 (fr. annus, 2, year): annual, 49, t
jugum, 2: yoke
lupinus or -num, 2: lupine, 67, b
viginti, indecl.: twenty, 29, a
ducenti, 3: two hundred; quingenti, 3: five hundred, 29, a
quadraginta, indecl.: forty, 29, a
faenum, 2: hay, 67, b
faba, 1: bean, 67, b

13. priusquam: before, 127
messis, is, f (fr. meto, 3, messui, messum, to reap):
porcus, 2 or porca, 1: pig (harvest)
immolo, 1: to sacrifice, 117, e
Janus, 2: the god of the year
moveo, 2; commoveo, 2, -movi, -motum: to move, shake, 108, b; 117, e
strues, -uis, f (fr. struo, 3, to pile up): a heap (of wood)
(prex), precis, f (fr. precor, to entreat): prayer, 49, i; 88
volo, velle, volui, -, : to be willing, 42, 4; 103

14. lustrum, 1: examine, purify
impero, 1: to order, command, 108, a; 57, b
suovetaurilia, -ium, n: purificatory sacrifice of sus, -uis, c, pig; ovis, is, f, sheep, and taurus, 2, bull, 49, r
circumago, 3, -egi, -actum: to drive around, 79
item: likewise, in like manner
culter, -tri, m: knife, 93, a
[ferctum, arch. for:] fertum, 2: sacrificial cake
[inde: thence]; deinde: then, afterwards

12. As annual food for the oxen, reckon on one hundred and twenty bushels of lupine, or two hundred and forty of acorn, for each yoke; five hundred and twenty five pounds of hay, twenty bushels of beans, and thirty of vetch.

vicia, 1: vetch, (a kind of wild pea), 67, b
triginta, indecl.: thirty, 29, a
computo, 1: to reckon, calculate, count, 108, b

13. Before you start harvesting, in sacrificing a pig to Janus, shake the heap of wood thus: In shaking this heap, I beg you, Father Janus, by pious prayers, that you may be propitious to me, to my children, to my house and my household.

Afterwards sacrifice the entrails and wine to Ceres.

propitius, 3: favorable, gracious
domus, 4: house, 24, c; 78
liberi, -rorum: children, 78

Ceres, -reris, f: Ceres, the goddess of agriculture
exta, -orum, n: entrails

14. You have to cleanse your fields thus: Order the pig, sheep and bull to be driven around the fields.

Then make a heap of wood likewise with a knife, and see to it that the sacrificial cake be there, then while shaking (the pile) say: Father Mars, be honored by the immolation of this purificatory sacrifice.

(sacrifice)
mact(at)us, 3 (fr. macto, 1): to be honored with a
immolatis, 110, b; 93, a

ON HUSBANDRY

15. Luxum si quod *est*, hac cantione sanum fiet. Incipe cantare: IN ALIO S. F. MOTAS VAETA, DARIES DARDARIES, ASTATARIES DISSU-NAPITER, usque dum coëant.

Vel hoc modo: HUAT HANAT HUAT: ISTA PISTA SISTA; DOMIABO DAMNAUSTRAM ET LUXATO.* (C.CLX.)

15. Luxum si quod *fuerit*, hac cantione sanum fiet. *Modo incipe cantare: IN ALIUM SIT FRAC-TURA MOTA ISTA. PER DIES TER, AST VESPERE BIS, DIC AUTEM CONFIDENTER, donec coëat.*

Vel hoc modo: HABEAT, COEAT, VALEAT: ISTAM PARTEM SISTAM: DOMABO DAMNA VESTRA ET LUXATUM.*

DE RE RUSTICA.

VOCABULARY

15. luxus, 3: *dislocated*, 26, f
si quod or si aliquod, 30, i
cantio, -nis, f (*fr. cano*, 3, *cecini*, cantum, *to sing*):
incantation, 49, a; 93, a
modo: *only, alone, just, but*
canto, 1: *to sing (an incantation)*, 49, j
sanus, 3: *sane, cured*
fractura, 1 (*fr. frango*, 3, *fregi*, fractum, *to break*):
fracture, 49, a
confido, 3, -fisum: *to trust*, 31, d; 36, a; 28, a
vesper, -is, m: *evening star, evening*, 95
coëo, 4: *to go together, join*, 42, 3; 120, c2
valeo, 2, -lui, -litum: *to be strong, healthy*, 106
sisto, 3, steti or stiti, statum: *to stop, settle*, 32, c

TRANSLATION

15. *If there is a sprain, it will be cured by this incantation; just start chanting: THIS SPRAIN SHALL BE MOVED TO ANOTHER. THREE TIMES A DAY, BUT TWICE IN THE EVENING, AND SAY CONFIDENTLY, till it joins again.*

Or in this manner: IT SHALL GET, JOIN, BE HEALTHY: I SHALL STOP: I SHALL TAME YOUR HARM AND SPRAIN.

domo, 1: *to tame*
damnum, 2: *harm, damage*
luxo, 1: *to sprain, to put out of joint*, 36, b; 26, f

* *The words of incantation used to be slurred so as to be unintelligible, in order to make an impression of mysterious power; therefore their reconstruction is uncertain.*

11. MARCUS PACUVIUS

220-132 B.C.

Course 91

Tragedian of Brundisium

FRAGMENTS

(*Notice the exact classical use of the sequence of tenses, and of the subjunctive, a hundred years before Cicero.*)

*The metrical * original text with archaisms*

*In classical prose***

Fortunam insanam esse et caecam et brutam per-

Fortunam insanam et caecam et brutam esse per-

E FRAGMENTIS.

VOCABULARY

Fortuna, 1: *Fortune, the goddess of chance*
insanus, 3: *insane, mad*
caecus, 3: *blind*
brutus, 3: *dull, insensible*

TRANSLATION

Philosophers hold Fortune to be insane, blind, and

perhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to propose, say, hold*, 57, 4

* Cf. 139

** Cf. 13, I, II

Page forty

11. MARCUS PACUVIUS

220-132 B.C.

Course 91

FRAGMENTS

hibent philosophi,
Saxoque instare *in* globoso praedicant volubili,
Quia, quo id saxum impulerit fors, eo cadere fortunam autumant.
Sunt *autem alii* philosophi, qui *contra* fortunam negant
Esse ullam, sed temeritate res regi omnis *autumant*.

hibent philosophi,
saxoque instare globoso praedicant *atque* volubili,
quia, quo saxum fors impulerit, eo cadere fortunam autumant.
At sunt philosophi, qui fortunam negant esse ullam,
sed omnes res regi temeritate *censent*.

HIS OWN EPITAPH

Adulescens, *tam* etsi properas, te hoc saxum rogat,
Ut *sese* aspicias, deinde, quod scriptum est, legas.
Hic sunt poëtae Pacuvi Marci *sita*
Ossa. Hoc volebam, nescius ne esses. Vale.
(F.H. Bothe, 1823-4)

Adolescens etsi *adeo* properas, hoc saxum te rogat,
ut aspicias, deinde, quod scriptum est, legas.
Hic sunt ^{ds}*posita* poëtae Marci Pacuvii ossa.
Hujus, volebam, nescius ne esses. Vale.

E FRAGMENTIS.

VOCABULARY

philosophus, 2, *Greek word: philosopher*, 49, *A*
saxum, 2: *rock, stone*, 79
insto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to stand in or upon*, 79
globosus, 3 (*fr. globus*, 2, *globe*): *spherical*
praedico, 1: *to say before, teach, preach*, 57, 4
volubilis, 2 (*fr. volvo*, 3, *to roll*): *voluble, rolling*, 49, *i*
impello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: *to impel*, 133, *a*
fors, -rtis, *f: chance, hazard*
quo - eo: *whither - thither, the way - on which*, 51, *f*
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: *to fall*
autumo, 1: *to assert, say, guess*, 57, 4
at: however, and yet; [contra, adv.: on the con-

TRANSLATION

insensible; and teach that she stands upon a rolling and spherical stone, for they say, Fortune goes the way on which hazard impels the stone.
Yet there are some philosophers, who deny that there is any Fortune, but they say that all things are directed by chance.

trary, 50, *a]*
nego, 1: *to deny*, 57, 4
temeritas, -tatis, *f: chance, rashness*, 93, *a*
omnis, *arch. acc. pl.*

Ipsius Elogium.

[*tam, for adj. and adv.*], *adeo*, *tantopere*, *for verbs: so*
propero, 1: *to hasten*
aspicio, 3, -spexi, -pectum: *to look at*, 40; 124, *a*
deinde: afterwards, then
[*sino*, 3, *sivi or sii, situm: to let, plant, situate*]
pono, 3, *posui, positum: to lay down, place, lay*, 50, *c*
ös, össis, n: bone
nescius, 3 (*fr. nescio*, 4, *not to know*): *ignorant of,*

Young man, though you are hastening so, this stone is asking you to look at it, and then to read what is written: Here have been laid the bones of Marcus Pacuvius, the poet. I only wished you not to be ignorant of this. Farewell.

66, *b; 49, t*
vale: good bye, 47

Tragedian of Pisaurum

FRAGMENTS

(The harsh language of Accius is not characteristic of his age, but only of his style. See 11, b.)

Brutus

The metrical** original text with archaisms

TARQUINIUS:

Quom jam quieti corpus nocturno impetu
Dedi sopore placans artus languidos
Visum est in somnis pastorem ad me appellere
Pecus lanigerum eximia pulchritudine,
5. Duos consanguineos arietes inde eligi
Praeclarioremque alterum immolare me;
Deinde ejus germanum cornibus conitier
In me arietare eoque ictu me ad casum dari;
Exin prostratum terra, graviter saucium
10. Resupinum in caelo contueri maximum ac

In classical prose***

TARQUINIUS:

Cum sopore artus placaturus languidos
corpus tempore nocturno quieti dedissem,
visum est in somnio lanigerum eximia pulchritudine
pecus ad me a pastore appelli,
5. duosque coeducatos arietes a me inde eligi
ac praeclariorem alterum immolari,
ab altero autem me cornibus peti
ab eoque me ictu ad terram dejici;
dein me in terram prostratum, graviter saucium
10. et resupinum in caelo contueri maximum

E FRAGMENTIS.

Brutus.

VOCABULARY

[quom, quum, arch. for:] cum: when, 125, a
sopor, -is, m (fr. sopio, 4, to put to sleep): deep
sleep, sleep, 49, a; 88
artus, 4: joint, limb
placo, 1: to appease, calm, 111, a
languidus, 3: faint, languid
[impetus, 4: attack]
nocturnus, 3: nocturnal, 95
quies, -etis, f: rest, repose, 23, Ic
[somnus, 2: sleep, slumber]; somnium, 2: dream
laniger, 3 (fr. lana, 1, wool, and gero, 3, to bear):
woolbearing, 49, A
eximius, 3, (fr. eximo, 3, to take out): exceptional
5. coeducato, 1: to raise up together, 36, b
[consanguineus, 3: brother, sister, cousin]
inde: thence, from there, 51, f
aries, -etis, m: ram
eligo, 3, elegi, electum: to select, 58
praeclarus, 3: bright, excellent
alter - alter: the one - and the other, 30, k; 93
immolo, 1: to sacrifice, Coll. 37, 4
[germanus, 3: own brother, own sister]
cornu, 4: horn, 93, a
ictus, 4 (fr. icio, ici, ictum, to strike): blow, stroke,
49, a; 93, a
[connitor, 3, nisum: to strive]
10. resupinus, 3: lying on one's back
contueor, 2, -tutum: to look at attentively, see, 57, 4
[mirificus, 3: causing wonder]
[facinus, -noris, n: crime, villainy]

TRANSLATION

TARQUINIUS: When at night I had set my body
to rest, in order to refresh my weary limbs with
sleep, it seemed to me in my dream, that a shepherd
drove towards me a woolbearing flock of exceptional
beauty, and that

pecus, -coris, n: cattle, herd, flock
pulchritudo, -dinis, f (fr. pulcher, 3, beautiful):
beauty, 11, b'; 49, u; 86
pastor, -is, m (fr. pasco, 3, pavi, pastum, to feed
cattle): pastor, 49, d; 93
appello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: to drive to, 58; Coll. 37, 4

5. from there I selected two rams of one brood,
and sacrificed the more beautiful, while the other
assailed me with its horns and by a push threw me
on the ground; seriously wounded so knocked down

[arietor, 1: to butt like a ram]
dejicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to throw down, Coll. 37, 4
[casus, 4 (fr. cado, 3, cecidi, casum, to fall): fall,
case, 49, a]
[exinde, inde, (exin, arch.): thence, from there]
prosterno, 3 -stravi, -stratum: to strew or cast down,
36, b
saucius, 3: wounded

10. and lying on my back, I saw in the sky a great

portentum, 2: portent

* Cf. 11, c; ** Cf. 139; *** Cf. 13, I, II.

FRAGMENTS

Brutus

Mirificium facinus, dextrorsum orbem flammeum
Radiatum solis liquier cursu novo.

CONJECTOR:

Rex, quae in vita usurpant homines, cogitant, curant, vident,

Quaeque agunt vigilantes agitantque, ea si cui in somno accidunt,

15. Minu' mirum est; sed in re tanta haud temere improvisa offerunt.

Proinde vide, ne, quem tu esse hebetem deputas aequae ac pecus,

Is sapientia munitum pectus egregie gerat,
Teque regno expellat: nam id quod de sole ostentum est tibi

Populo commutationem rerum portendit fore

mirumque portentum, quod cursu nempe novo dextrorsum occideret flammeus solis radiatusque orbis.

CONJECTOR:

Rex, quae in vita usurpant, cogitant, curant, videntque homines

et quaecumque agunt vigiles, nimirum, si eadem eis in somno accidunt;

15. signo autem tanto haud temere improvisa offeruntur.

Proinde vide, ne, quem tu hebetem deputas esse aequae ac pecus,

is sapientia munitum pectus egregius gerens te regno expellat: nam quod de sole tibi ostentum est,

populo commutationem rerum portendit fore

E FRAGMENTIS.

Brutus.

VOCABULARY

nempe: viz., namely, i.e.

cursus, 4 (fr. curro, 3, cucurri, cursum, to run): running, course, march, 88

dextrorsum, dextra: to the right, 96, a

occido, 3, -cidi, -casum: to fall down, set, 131, b

[liquor, 3, -, arch. for liqueo, 2, liqui, -, : to be fluid or clear, melt]

conjector, -is (fr. coniecto, 1, to throw together, guess at): interpreter

usurpo, 1: to use often, 49, d

[quisque, 3: everybody, everything, 30, i]

quicumque, 3: anybody, anything, 30, i

vigil, -is: waking, awake

[vigilo, 1: to keep awake]

[agito, 1 (frequ. form of ago, 3): to drive about, to (stir up)]

15. temere: by chance, accidentally

offero, 3, obtuli, oblatum: to offer, present, 49, A2
improvisus, 3 (fr. provideo, 2, -visi, -visum, to foresee): unforeseen, 49, A1

hebes, -etis: blunt, dull, stupid, 59, B

proinde: therefore

aeque (fr. aequus, 3: equal): in like manner, equally, justly

deputo, 1: to prune, think, 59, B; 120, d

munio, 4: to strengthen, 36, b

ac: and; in comparison of positive grade: as, like

egregius, 3: excellent, distinguishable, admirable, 56

pectus, -toris, n: breast, heart, soul

expello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: to expel, 124, a

TRANSLATION

portent, namely, the radiant and flaming disk of the sun setting in a new course on the right.

flammeus, 3 (fr. flamma, 1, flame): flaming, 49, s
radio, 1: to gleam, beam, 36, b

sol, -is, m: sun

orbis, is, m: circle, disk

INTERPRETER: King, no wonder, if those things, which men use, think about, care for, and see, and which they do waking, may happen in their dreams:

[minu' mirum, obs. for:] nimirum i.e., non est mirum: no wonder, of course

accido, 3, accidi, -, : to happen, 109, b

15. but in such a great portent, unexpected things present themselves, not accidentally at all.

Therefore, see to it, lest he, — bearing an excellent heart, strengthened with wisdom, whom you think stupid just like a beast, — expel you from your reign: for what is shown by the sun, predicts an impending change to the people in public affairs.

gero, 3, gessi, gestum: to bear, manage, have

commutatio, -nis, f (fr. commuto, 1, to alter entirely): change, 49, a; 57, 4

ostendo, 3, -tendi, -ntum or -nsum: to show

portendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: to indicate, predict, presage

12. LUCIUS ACCIUS (ATTIUS)

170-94 B.C.

Course 91

FRAGMENTS

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>20. Perpropinquam. Haec bene verruncent populo.
Nam quod ad dexteram
Coepit cursum ab laeva signum praepotens pulcher-
rime
Auguratum est rem Romanam publicam summam
fore. (F. H. Bothe, 1823-4)</p> | <p>20. perpropinquam. Utinam bene haec populo ver-
runcent. Nam quod a laeva sol
ad dexteram coepit cursum, signo hoc portentoso
pulcherrime
auguratum est rem Romanam publicam fore sum-
mam.</p> |
|--|--|

E FRAGMENTIS.

VOCABULARY

20. perpropinquus, 3: *very near, impending*, 49, A1
verrunco, 1: *to turn out (used only in prayers)* 105, a
dexter, -(e)ra, -(e)rum: *right*, 96, a
laevus, 3: *left*, 96, a
coepi, -isse, coeptum: *to start, begin*, 45, 12
portentosus, 3 (fr. portentum, 2, and this fr. por-
tendo, 3): *portentous*, 49, t; 93, a
[praepotens, -ntis: *very powerful*]

TRANSLATION

Would that these turn out well for the people. For, since the sun started its course from the left to the right, it has been foretold by this portentous sign, that the Roman empire will be supreme.

res publica Romana: *Roman Empire*
auguro(r), 1: *to foretell, forebode*, 57, 4
superus, 3: *high*, 27, f

13. TITUS LUCRETIUS CARUS

95-55 B.C.

Course 102

*A difficult atheist poet.**

ON THE NATURE OF THINGS (SIX BOOKS)

(Confer HYMN TO ETERNITY by Marullus, 1500 A.D.)

*In hexameter ** with archaisms*

*In classical prose ****

Nil igitur mors est ad nos neque pertinet hilum,
Quandoquidem natura animi mortalis habetur.

Nihil igitur est mors, neque ad nos pertinet quidquam,
etsi natura hominis mortalis habetur.

3. Et velut anteacto nil tempore sensimus aegri,

3. Et sicut anteacto tempore Punis undique ad con-

DE NATURA RERUM.

VOCABULARY

[nil, colloquial for;] nihil, 2, n: *acc. with prep. ni-*
hilum: *nothing, nought*
(hilum, 2: *fibre, trifle; ne(c) hilum or nihil(um),*
like ne(c) mirum i.e. nimirum)
pertineo, 2, -nui, -: *to reach, to belong*
[quandoquidem, arch. for:] quamquam, etsi: *al-*
3. [velut: *even as, just as though*]
sicut, sicuti: *as, as for example*
anteactus, 3 (fr. ago, 3, egi, actum, to act): *former,*
past, 36, b
Puni, -orum: *Carthaginians*, 114, a

TRANSLATION

Therefore, death is nothing at all, nor does it concern us, though our human nature is mortal.

though, 120, c
quisquam, 2: *any one, any*, 30, i

3. *And as in times past we did not feel bad at all, when the Carthaginians came from everywhere to*
undique: *from everywhere*
[aeger, -gra, -grum: *sick, ill*]

* In his madness which is conspicuous in his last books, he committed suicide, after the example of his Greek master Democritus.

** Cf. 139; *** Cf. 13, I, II.

13. TITUS LUCRETIVS CARVS

95-55 B.C.

Course 102

ON THE NATURE OF THINGS (SIX BOOKS)

Ad conflagrandum venientibus undique *Poenis*
Omnia cum belli trepido concussa tumultu
Horrida contremuere sub altis aetheris oris
In dubioque fuere, utrorum ad regna cadendum
Omnibus humanis esset terraque marique:

9. *Sic ubi non erimus, cum corporis atque animai*

Discidium fuerit, quibus e sumus uniter apti,

Scilicet haud nobis quicquam, qui non erimus tum,
Accidere omnino poterit sensumque movere;
Non, si terra mari miscebitur et mare coelo.

14. Et si *jam* nostro sentit de corpore postquam
Distracta'st animi natura animaeque potestas,
Nil tamen est ad nos, qui *comptu* conjugioque

Corporis atque animae consistimus uniter apti.

fligendum venientibus *nihil mali* sensimus,
cum omnia trepido belli tumultu concussa sub altis
aetheris oris horride contremuerunt,
omnesque *homines* in dubio fuerunt, utrorum ad re-
gnum terra marique cadendi essent:

9. *simili modo cum non erimus, scilicet cum separa-
tio erit*

*corporis et animae, e quibus in unum sumus con-
iuncti,*

nobis, qui *jam tunc* non erimus, haud quidquam,
poterit omnino accidere, sensumque movere;
utique non, etsi miscebitur terra mari et mare caelo
ipso.

14. Et, si *quid accidet*, postquam *e* corpore nostro
abstracta erit mentis animaeque *vita*,
hoc tamen nihil est ad nos, qui *arcta conjunctione*
nunc

corporis atque animae consistimus apte uniti.

DE NATURA RERUM.

VOCABULARY

confligo, 3, -flixi, -flictum: to fight, 35, g
trepidus, 3 (fr. trepido, 1, to be in alarm): alarmed,
disturbed, 49, t
tumultus, 4: confusion, uproar, bustle, 88
concutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: to shake, disturb, 40
aether, -is, m, Greek: upper air, sky
ora, 1: edge, border, region, country
horridus, 3 (fr. horreo, 2, -rui, -, to bristle, shud-
der): dreadful, 28, a; 49, t

9. [animai, Greek ending for animae]
[discidium, 2 (fr. discindo, 3, -scidi, -scissum, to
tear apart): tearing away, dissension, 49, f]
separatio, -nis, f, (fr. separo, 1, to sever): separa-
tion, 49, a
[uni(en)ter, (fr. unio, 4, to unite), but never used]
[aptus, 3, fitted out, appropriate, fitting]
conjungo, 3, -junxi, -iunctum: to join together

14. [distract(a e)st, fr. distraho, 3, -traxi, -ctum,
to pull apart]
abstraho, 3: to draw away, 32, f
[comptus, 4: head-dress, tie]
arctus, 3: narrow, tight, 88
[conjugium, 2 (fr. conjungo, 3, to join together):
marriage, 49, f]

TRANSLATION

fight, when in the terrible bustle of war all things
overtaken, quaked horribly under the wide spaces of
the sky, when all men were doubtful to which em-
pire of the two they would be allotted on earth and
sea:

contremo, 3, -mui, -: to tremble, quake, 126, a
uter, utra, utrum: which of two, 30, k
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: to fall, 111, c; 132

9. similarly, when we shall not be, i.e., when there
will be a separation of soul and body, of which we
were made into one whole, to us who will not be at
that time nothing will happen, nothing will affect us;
certainly not, even if the earth will mingle with the
sea and the sea with the sky itself.

14. And, even if anything happens, after the life
of mind and soul has been separated from our bod-
ies, this will not concern us, who now by a close con-
nection consist of body and soul fittingly united.

consisto, 3, -stiti, -: to stop, consist

ON THE NATURE OF THINGS (SIX BOOKS)

18. Nec si materiem nostram collegerit aetas

Post obitum rursumque redegerit, ut sita nunc est,

Atque iterum nobis fuerint data lumina vitae,
Pertineat quicquam tamen ad nos id quod factum,Interrupta semel cum sit *repetentia* nostri.

23. Et nunc nil ad nos de nobis attinet, ante

Qui fuimus, neque jam de illis nos adficit angor.

25. Nam cum respicias immensi temporis omne
Praeteritum spatium, tum motus materiai
Multimodis quam sint, facile hoc adcredere possis,
Semina saepe in eodem, ut nunc sunt ordine posita
Haec eadem, quibus e nunc nos sumus, ante fuisse.

18. Etsi nostram materiam post obitum nostrum iterum collegerit

magna natura rursumque redegerit ita, ut sita nunc est,

atque iterum inditum fuerit nobis lumen vitae,
nec tunc quidquam hujus facti, interrupta semel cum sit

nostrae mentis conscientia, ad nos pertinebit omnino.

23. Nec nunc quidquam ad nos de nobis attinet, qui fuerimus ante;

neque de illis rebus ullatenus nunc sumus affecti.

25. Nam cum respicias, quam multis modis per omne praeteritum spatium immensi temporis sint variata materiae elementa, facile cognoscere potes easdem has atomos, e quibus nunc sumus, in eodem, ut nunc sunt ordine, et antea saepe fuisse.

DE NATURA RERUM.

VOCABULARY

18. [materies, 5, obs. for] materia, 1: matter, material, stuff
obitus, 4 (fr. oboeo, 4, -ivi, -itum, to go against, die): death, 49, a
iterum: again
rursum (fr. reversum, backwards): once more, again
redigo, 3, -egi, -actum: to render, compose, 109, a3
indo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to put in, render, 109, a3
conscientia, 1 (fr. scio, 4, to know): consciousness, 49, u23. ullotenus: any way, 50, b'
fuerimus, 132
afficio, (for adficio), 3, affeci, affectum: to affect, 49, A2
[angor, -is (fr. ango, 3, anxi, anctum, to distress): anguish, trouble, 49, a]25. respicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum: to retrospect, comprehend, 40, 125, b
immensus, 3 (fr. metior, 4, mensum, to measure): countless, 49, A1
spatium, 2: space
praetereo, 4, -ivi, -itum: to pass, go by, 42, 3
[motus, 4 (fr. moveo, 2, movi, motum, to move): motion, 49, a]
vario, 1: to vary, 132
elementum, 2: element
[adcredo, arch. for accredo, 3, obs.: to believe]

TRANSLATION

18. Well, even if great nature collects our material again after our death, and composes it, as it consists now, and if the light of life is given back to us again, then nothing of this event will concern us at all, since the consciousness of our minds had been once interrupted.

(gaining)
[repetentia, 1, obs. (fr. repeto, 3, to ask back): re-omnino: altogether, entirely]

23. Nor does it pertain to us in any way, what we were formerly, nor are we in the least touched by those things.

25. For as you comprehend in how many ways, through the entire course of immeasurable time gone by, the elements of matter were varied, you can easily realize that these materials of which we now consist, were formerly existing in the same order as they are now.

[semen, -minis, n: seed]
atomus, 2, f; Greek: atom, molecule, 20, d
e quibus nunc sumus, 133, b

13. TITUS LUCRETIUS CARUS

95-55 B.C.

Course 102

ON THE NATURE OF THINGS (SIX BOOKS)

30. Nec memori tamen *id* quimus reprehendere mente;

Inter enim jecta'st vitae pausa, vageque
Deerrarunt passim motus ab sensibus omnes.

33. Debet enim, misere si forte aegreque futurum'st,

*Ipsa quoque esse in eo tum tempore, cui male possit
Accidere: id quoniam mors eximit, esseque probet
Illum, cui possint incommoda conciliari.*

37. Scire licet nobis nil esse in morte timendum,
Nec miserum fieri, qui non est, posse; neque hilum
Differre an-ne ullo fuerit jam tempore natus,

Mortalem vitam mors cum immortalis ademit.
(Lib. III, 830-69)

30. Nec memori tamen mente *haec satis* possumus
comprehendere,

*quia vitae interjecta est pausa, qua omnes
motus materiae a sensibus nostris sunt abstracti.*

33. *Necesse autem est, si forte misera aegraque sit
vita,*

*esse etiam eo tempore, quando alicui malum possit
accidere: mors tamen eximit esseque prohibet
eum, qui incommodis possit superari vitae.*

37. *Adeoque nos scire decet nihil esse in morte timendum,
nec fieri posse miserum, si quis non sit; neque aliquid*

*mutabit, quo tempore fuerit aliquis natus,
cum mortalem vitam peremit mors immortalis.*

DE NATURA RERUM.

VOCABULARY

30. memor, -is: *mindful, remembering*
[queo, 4: *to be able*, 42, 3g]
[reprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to blame*]
comprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to comprehend*
[vagus, 3: *vague*]
[deerro, 1: *to lose one's way*]

33. [debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to owe*]
si sit, 135, a
[tum: *at that time*]
[quoniam: *for the reason that*]
eximo, 3, -emi, -emptum: *to take out or away*
[probo, 1: *to prove*]
prohibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to forbid*
incommodus, 3: *inconvenient, troublesome*, 26, f;
49, A1

37. si quis non sit, 30, i; 135, a
[differo, 3, distuli, dilatam: *to differ*, 43, 8; 49, 2]
muto, 1: *to change, matter*; quo fuerit, 132
[adimo, 3, -emi, -emptum: *to take away*]
perimo, 3, -emi, -emptum: *to destroy*

TRANSLATION

30. *Nor can we comprehend this sufficiently with
our remembering mind, because a pause is thrown
into our life, by which all variations of matter are
drawn away from our senses.*

[passim: *here and there, far and wide*]

33. *There is, however, a need to exist also at that
time when evil can befall a man, even if perchance
life is going to be miserable and painful: yet death
takes him away, and forbids him to exist, who can
be overwhelmed by the discomforts of life.*

[concilio, 1: *to bring together, gain*]
supero, 1: *to surpass, overcome*

37. *Notwithstanding, it is fitting to know that in
death there is nothing to be feared; nor can a man
be miserable, if he does not exist; nor does it matter,
in what time one was born, since immortal death
destroys mortal life.*

A lewd poet with no feeling except sensualism

POEMS

*In hexameter **

O Colonia, quae cupis ponte ludere longo,
Et salire paratum habes, sed vereris inepta
Crura ponticuli assulis stantis in rediuis
Ne supinus eat cavaque in palude recumbat,
5. Sic tibi bonus ex tua pons libidine fiat.
In quo vel Salisubsili sacra suscipiantur:
Munus hoc mihi maximi da, Colonia, risus.
8. Quendam municipem meum de tuo volo ponte
Ire praecipitem in lutum per caput pedesque
Verum totius ut lacus putidaeque paludis
Lividissima maximeque est profunda vorago.

*In prose ***

O Colonia, quae ponte delectari cupis longo, et
festivare parata, ast vereris, ne^{prae} columnis trito stipite
nixis eversus vastam in paludem procumbat,
5. sit tibi deliciis pons supportans vel Salios sacra
peragendo transilientes, mihi que permittite esse vo-
luptuoso risui grandi.
8. Quendam enim municipum de tuo velim ponte
praecipitem dare in lutum per caput pedesque, ast
ubi totius putidae paludis sordidissima vorago est
vel profundissima.

E POEMATIBUS.

VOCABULARY

colonia, 1: colony
delecto, 1: to delight, 35, g, 57, 3
[salio, 4, -lui, -litum: to leap, jump]
festivo, 1: to celebrate, 35, g
vereor, 2, -ritum: to fear, 123
[ineptus, 3: unsuitable, silly]
columna, 1: pillar, column, 78, 94
[crus, cruris, n: shin (bone), leg]
[ponticulus, 2 (fr. pons, -ntis, m, bridge): little
bridge, 49, p]
[assula, 1 (fr. assis, or asser, -is, m, board, plank):
shaving, chip, 93, a]
tero, 3, trivi, tritum: to rub, wear
stipes, -pitis, m: log, trunk, post, 88
5. delicias, -arum: pleasure, delight, 77
[Salisubsilis, arch. for:] Salius, 2: Mars' dancing
priest
supporto, 1: to support, bear
sacer, -cra, -crum: sacred, holy, 26, f
[suscipio, 3: to take on]
perago, 3, -egi, -actum: to perform, 117, e; 88
transilio, 4, -lui, or -livi, -litum: to leap across or
[munus, -eris, n: gift, office] (over
grandis, 2: great
8. municeps, -cipis, (fr. munus & capio): country-
man, citizen, 49, A
praeceps, -cipis, (fr. prae & capio): rash, headlong,
over, 59, B; velim, 103, a
[verum: but, less emphatic than:] ast: but
lutum, 2: mud, mire
putidus, 3 (fr. puteo, 2, -ui, -, to stink): stinking,
putrid, 49, t
sordidus, 3 (fr. sordes, -dis, f, dirt, filth): dirty,
filthy, 49, t
[lacus, 4: lake]

TRANSLATION

O Colony, ready to celebrate, thou who desirest
to rejoice on account of thy long bridge, but (art)
afraid, lest it turn (procumbat) over (eversus) into
the vast swamp on account of its pillars, supported
by worn-out posts,

[redivivus, 3: alive again]
[supinus, 3: lying on one's back]
nitor, 3, nixum: to rest, lean
palus, -udis, f: lake, swamp
[recumbo, 3: to lie down]
[cavus, 3: hollow]
procumbo, 3, -ubui, -ubitum: to fall prostrate, 123

5. let the bridge, bearing even Mars' dancing
priests performing their sacred rites, be a pleasure
to thee, and let it afford me (thereby) a most hearty
laugh.

risus, 4 (fr. rideo, 2, risi, risum, to laugh): laugh,
49, a; 77
voluptuosus, 3 (fr. voluptas, tatis, f, lust): delight-
ful, hearty, 49, t

8. For I should like to throw down, head over
heels, one of thy citizens, from thy bridge, into the
mire, but where the dirtiest hole of thy entire, putrid
swamp is deepest.

[lividus, 3 (fr. livor, -is, m, bluish color): bluish,
blue, 49, t]
vorago, -ginis, f (fr. voro, 1, devour, suck in): pit,
whirlpool, chasm, 49, b
vel profundissima, 27, k

* Cf. 139

** Cf. 13, I, II

POEMS

Et *supinum* animum in gravi derelinquere coeno, mula soleam ferream in tenaci limo, sic derelinquere
 Ferream ut soleam tenaci in voragine mula. eum immersum in gravissimo coeno.

One of His Epigrams

Nil nimium studeo, Caesar, tibi velle placere, Nil nimium studeo, Caesar, tibi velle placere,
 Nec scire, utrum sis albus an ater homo. Nec scire, utrum sis albus an ater homo.

Drinking Song

Minister vetuli puer Falerni
 Inger mi calices amariores,
 Ut lex Postumiae jubet magistrae,
 Ebrioso acino ebriosioris.
 At vos, quo libet, hinc abite, lymphae,
 Vini pernicies, et ad severos
 Migrate: hic merus est Thyonianus.

Jussu Postumiae
 dominae affer puer acerrimi
 Falerni veteris amphoras
 maxime inebriantes:
 Et vos aquae pernicies vini, quo
 libet, abite hinc, et ad sobrios migrate:
 hic enim merus praesto adest Bacchus.

E POEMATIBUS.

VOCABULARY

mulus, 2 or mula, 1: mule
 solea, 1: sole, sandal, horse-shoe
 ferreus, 3 (fr. ferrum, 2, iron): of iron, 49, s
 tenax, -acis: gripping, sticky, tenacious
 limus, 2: slime, mud, mire

TRANSLATION

(fellow) and leave him plunged into the thickest
 mire, as the mule leaves its shoe in the heavy mud.

immergo, 3, -mersi, -mersum: to plunge
 coenum, 2: dirt, filth

Ex Epigrammatis.

nil or nihil, 2 (in the acc. as adverb): nothing, 28, d;
 nimius, 3: too much, too great (Coll. 39, 1
 utrum - an: whether - or, 51, d; 132
 albus, 3: white, pale, bright

I am not trying overmuch, Caesar, to please thee,
 nor to know whether thou art a good or a bad man.

ater, atra, atrum: black, dark, malicious

Canticum Lyaeum.

[Vetulus, 3: oldish]
 vetus, -teris: old, 26, a
 [magistra, 1: teacher]
 domina, 1: mistress
 jussum, 2 (fr. jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum, to order): or-
 affero, 3, attuli, allatum: to bring (der, 94; 116, b
 [ingero, 3, -gessi, -gestum: to carry]
 acer, acris, acre: sharp, strong
 [amarus, 3: bitter]
 amphora, 1: wine jug
 [calix, -icis, m: goblet, chalice]
 inebrio, 1: to intoxicate
 [ebriosus, 3: drink-loving]
 Falernum, 2: Falernian wine
 [acinus, 2: berry]

At the command of your mistress Postumia, boy,
 bring the most inebriating jugs of the strongest old
 Falernian; and you, waters, the ruination of wine,
 go away whithersoever you will, for the true Bac-
 chus is here present.

quo: where, whither, 51, f

hinc: hence, 51, f

migro, 1: to depart

merus, 3: pure, unmixed, mere

sobrius, 3: sober, reasonable

[severus, 3: grave, strict, severe]

[Thyonianus, 2 (fr. Thyone, -es: mother of Bacchus,
 19, c): Bacchus]

Statesman, General and Writer

WAR WITH THE GAULS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in tres partes, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.

2. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. (C.1.)

3. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus regni cupiditate inductus conjurationem fecit nobilitatis et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent, perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Gallia tota est divisa in tres partes, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, alteram Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur, (inter quos numerantur et Helvetii).

2. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis vero Matrona et Sequana dividit.

3. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is Marco Messala et Marco Pisone consulibus regnandi cupiditate inductus conjuravit cum nobilibus et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent, affirmans totius Galliae imperio potiri perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent.

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

1. Gallia, 1: Gaul
[omnis, 2: all, every]
totus, 3: whole, entire, 30, k
divido, 3, -visi, -visum: to divide, 36, b
tres: three, 29, a
pars, -rtis, f: part, 22, c
incolo, 3, -lui, -: to inhabit
Belga, 1, c: Belgian
[alius, 3: another]
Aquitanus, 2: Aquitanian
alter, 3: the other, second, 30, k
tertius, 3: third, 29, b
lingua, 1: language, 88
2. institutum, 2: institution, custom, 85; 26, b
differo, 3, distuli, dilatatum: to differ
flumen, -minis, n: river
Garumna, 1, c: Garonne, a river in Gaul, 16, a
Matrona, 1, m: the river Marne, 16, a
Sequana, 1, m: the river Seine, 16, a
3. longe: by far, 27, k
nobilis, 2: noble
dives, -vitis: rich
Orgetorix, -igis: a Helvetian
Messala et Pisone consulibus, 115
[regnum, 2: reign, kingdom]
regno, 1: to reign, 66, a
induco, 3, -duxi, -ctum: to lead in
conjuro, 1: to conspire
civitas, -atis, f: state
finis, -is, f: boundary
persuadeo, 2, -si, -asum: to persuade, 80, o
copia, 1: plenty, chance, supply; in pl: troops, wealth
affirmo, 1: to strengthen, assert, state, 57, 4

TRANSLATION

1. Entire Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgians inhabit, the other, the Aquitanians, the third, those who in their language are called Celts, in ours, Gauls, (under the latter are reckoned the Helvetians.)

Celta, 1, c: Celt
appello, 1: to call, 59, A
Gallus, 2: Gaul
inter: among, 50, a
numero, 1: to count, reckon
Helvetius, 2: Helvetian

2. All these differ among themselves in language, customs and laws. The river Garonne divides the Gauls from the Aquitanians, the Marne and Seine from the Belgians.

3. Among the Helvetians Orgetorix was by far the most renowned and the wealthiest. In the time of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso, the consuls, led by the desire of reigning, he conspired with the nobility and persuaded the citizens to go out from their own borders, with all their wealth, stating that it would be very easy to gain the ruling power over the whole of Gaul, since they surpassed all in strength.

imperium, 2: empire, 49, f
potior, 4: to get, obtain, 93, b
perfacilis, 2: very easy, 28, e; 49, A (125, b
praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: to stand before, excel, 79;

WAR WITH THE GAULS

4. Pro multitudine *autem* hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos *se* fines *habere* arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant. (C.2)

5. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare, jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare.

Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt. (C.3)

6. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati *sunt*, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos

4. Pro multitudine *enim* hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos *sibi* fines *esse* arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem *ducenta (et) quadraginta* milia passuum, in latitudinem *centum octoginta* patebant.

5. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare, jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, *et* cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare.

Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt.

6. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati *essent*, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

4. multitudo, -dinis, f: *multitude*, 49, u
fortitudo, f: *bravery*, 49, u
angustus, 3: *narrow*
arbitror, 1: *to deem*, 58
longitudo, f: *length*
CCXL: *two hundred and forty*, 29, a
latitudo, f: *width*
CLXXX: *one hundred and eighty*, 29, a
se habere *or* sibi esse, 58; *Coll.* 37, 4

5. adduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to lead to, induce*
auctoritas, -atis, f: *authority, influence*, 93, a
permovéo, 2, -movi, -motum: *to stir up, excite*
constituo, 3, -stitui, -stutum: *to establish, determine*
proficiscor, 3, -fectum: *to set out, depart*, 117, b
pertineo, 2, nui, -: *to belong to*, 120, c2
comparo, 1: *to bring together, prepare*, 57, 3
jumentum, 2: *beast of burden*
carrus, 2: *wagon*
quam maximus, 3: *the greatest possible*, 27, k
coëmo, 3, -ëmi, -emptum: *to buy up*, 57, 3
sementis, -is, f: *sowing*
frumentum, 2: *grain*
suppeto, 3, -peti(v)i, -petitum: *to be enough*, 124, a
proximus, 3: *the nearest*, 27, g
amicitia, 1: *friendship*

6. ubi: *where, when, as soon as*, 120, c6
jam: *now, already*
paro, 1: *to prepare*
arbitror, 1: *to think, deem*, 120, c6
oppidum, 2: *town*

Page fifty two

TRANSLATION

4. *For they were of the opinion that their territory was (too) narrow for the multitude of their people, for their warlike propensities, and for their bravery, (as) their territory extended 240 miles in length and 180 in width.*

passus, 4: *step, pace (of five feet)*
mille passus: *thousand paces (of five feet)*, a mile
pateo, 2, -tui, -: *to lie open, be extended*

5. *Animated by these things and aroused by the authority of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare what was required for the expedition: to buy up the greatest possible number of beasts of burden and wagons, to make sowings as great as possible, in order that the supply of grain might be enough, and to establish peace and friendship with the nearest states.*

They deemed two years' time to be enough for themselves for the preparation of those things.

confirmo, 1: *to confirm*
conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to accomplish, destroy*,
biennium, 2: *two years' time* (118)
satis: *enough*
duco, 3, duxi, ductum: *to lead, esteem*, 57, 4

6. *When now they judged that they were prepared for this undertaking, they set fire to all their towns, about twelve in number, to their villages, about*

vicos, 2: village

15. CAJUS JULIUS CAESAR

100-44 B.C.

Course 98

WAR WITH THE GAULS

ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. (C.5)

7. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus *itineribus* domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos angustum et difficile inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons *autem* altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent:

alterum per provinciam *nostram* multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum

quadringentos *et* reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentumque omne praeterquam quod secum portaturi essent, comburunt, ut domum redeundi spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; *ac* trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent.

7. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos angustum et difficile inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, qua vix singuli carri ducerentur; *praeterea* mons altissimus *ita* impendebat, ut facile perpauci *transitum* prohibere possent:

alterum per provinciam *Romanam* multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helveti-

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

quadringenti, 3: *four hundred*, 29, a
reliquus, 3: *all the remaining, the others, the rest*
aedificium, 2: *building*, 49, f
privatus, 3: *private*
incendo, 3, -cendi, -nsum: *to set fire to*, 101
-que, ac: *and, then, besides*
praeterquam quod: *besides that which*, 120, c
porto, 1: *to carry*, 120, c, 1
combuo, 3, -buri, -bustum: *to burn up*, 101
redeo, 4: *to return*, 42, 3; 117, c
domum: *homewards*; domo: *from home*; domi: *at home*, 21, f
spes, 5: *hope*
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatus: *to raise, take away*, 114, b
paratus, 3 (*fr. paro*, 1, *to prepare*): *prepared, ready*,
periculum, 2: *danger* (27, a)

7. omnino: *in-, at- all, altogether*
duo, 3: *two*, 29, h
iter, -tineris, n: *road*, 23, Ib
angustus, 3: *narrow*
difficilis, 2: *difficult*
mons, -ntis, m: *mount*, 23, IIb
Jura, 1: *Jura (a mount)*
Rhodanus, 2: *Rhone (a river)*
vix: *scarcely*
singuli, 3: *one by one, single*, 29, c
carrus, 2: *wagon*
praeterea: *moreover, besides*
ita: *so*, 124, b
altus, 3: *high, deep*, 27, a

provincia, 1: *province*
expeditus, 3: *disentangled, easy*
propterea quod: *for the reason that*

TRANSLATION

four hundred, and to all their other private buildings; they burned up likewise all their grain, except that which they were about to carry with them, in order to be more ready to undergo all dangers, the hope of returning having been taken away; moreover they ordered each to bring from home for himself ground provisions for three months.

subeo, 4: *to undergo*, 42, 3; 118
mensis, -is, m: *month*, 22, a; 23, I
mōlo, 3, -lui, litum: *to grind*
cibarium, 2: *food, provision*
quisque, 2: *every one, each*, 30, i
effero, 3, extuli, elatum: *to bring out*, 43, 8; 49, A2
jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: *to order*, 57, b

7. *There were in all two roads, by which they were able to depart from their homes: one through the Sequans, narrow and difficult, between Mount Jura and the river Rhone, by which way the wagons could scarcely be driven one by one; moreover, a very high mountain was overhanging so that a very few could easily stop the transit:*

facilis, 2: *easy*, 28, f
impendeo, 2, -, -: *to overhang*, 124, b
perpaucus, 3: *very few*, 49, A1
transitus, 4 (*fr. transeo*, 4, *to pass over*): *transit*, 49, a
prohibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to forbid, prohibit*, 124, b

the other through the Roman province, much more easy and more open, for the reason that the Rhone

WAR WITH THE GAULS

et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transitur.

8. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet.

Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur.

Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant.

Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus. (C.6.)

9. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit; pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindi.

orum et Allobrogum, qui nuper per Romanos pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullus in locis vado transitur.

8. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvetiorum finibus est Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet.

Allobrogibus qui nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, se vel persuasuros existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur.

Omnibus rebus ad proficiscendum comparatis diem dicunt, qua ad ripam Rhodani omnes convenirent.

Is dies erat dies quintus (ante) Calendas Apriles Lucio Pisone et Aulo Gabinio consulibus.

9. Caesari cum nuntiatum esset eos conari, ut per provinciam Romanam iter facerent, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et Genavam pervenit; pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindi.

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

Allobröx, -ögis: *Allobrog*
 nuper: *not long ago*
 paco, 1: *to pacify*, 30, *k*
 fluo, 3, -uxi, -uctum: *to flow*
 nonnullus, 3: *some*, 30, *k* (a book, 96
 locus, 2: *place*, *pl*: *loca*, -orum, *except the places in*

8. extremus, 3: *the outermost*, 27, *f*
 proximus, 3: *next*, 27, *g*
 Genava, 1: *Geneva*, 21, *a*
 pons, -ntis, *m*: *bridge*, 22, *c*; 23, *Iib*
 pertineo, 2, -nui, -, *to reach*, *belong*
 nondum: *not yet*; viderentur, 133, *a*
 animus, 2: *mind*, *feeling*
 existimo, 1: *to consider*, *deem*
 vis, -is, *f*: *violence*, 22, *g*
 cogo, 3, coëgi, coactum: *to force*
 patior, 3, passum: *to suffer*
 proficiscor, 3, -fectum: *to set out*, *depart*, 117, *b*
 dies, 5: *day*, 25, *a*; dicunt, 101
 ripa, 1: *bank*
 convenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to assemble*, 130
 Calendae, -arum, *f*: *the first day of a month*, 97

9. nuntio, 1: *to relate*, 125, *a*
 conor, 1: *to endeavor*, *Coll.* 37, 3
 maturo, 1: *to ripen*, *hasten*, 101
 urbs, -bis, *f*: *the city (of Rome)*
 ulterior, 2 (*fr. ultra*, *beyond*): *farther*, 27, *g*
 contendo, 3, -di, -ntum: *to strive*, *rush*, 101
 pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to arrive*, 101
 rescindo, 3, -cidi, -cissum: *to tear off*, *cut down*

TRANSLATION

flowed, and in some places was even crossed by fords between the borders of the Helvetians and the Allobroges, who not long ago were subdued by the Romans.

vadum, 2: *a shallow, ford*

8. The outermost town of the Allobroges and the nearest to the borders of the Helvetians was Geneva. From that town a bridge reached to the Helvetians.

They thought they would either persuade the Allobroges, who did not seem as yet to have a friendly attitude towards the Roman people, or they would force them by violence to allow them to go through their borders.

All things being prepared for their departure, they appointed a day, on which all should assemble at the bank of the Rhone.

This day was the fifth day before the Calends of April (March 28), in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius.

Aprilis, 2: *of April*, *April*, 22, *f*

9. When it had been related to Caesar that they would endeavor to make a journey through the Roman province, he hastened to depart from Rome, and set out into farther Gaul by journeys, as great as he could, and arrived at Geneva; he ordered the bridge, which was at Geneva, to be cut down.

WAR WITH THE GAULS

Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, qui dicerent sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere.

Caesar, *quod* memoria tenebat L. Cassium consullem occisum exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, legatis respondit diem *se* ad deliberandum *sumpturum*, si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur. (C.7)

10. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat *cum* legatis, venit et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat *se* more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare. (C. 8)

Dumnorix gratia et largitione a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur. (C. 9)

Caesari renunciatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere. (C. 10)

Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti essent, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, qui dicerent sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere.

Caesar, *quia* memoria tenebat *Lucium* Cassium consullem occisum exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, legatis respondit diem *sibi* *sumendum* ad deliberandum, *et eis* si quid vellent, ad Idus *Apriles esse revertendum*.

10. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat legatis, veniret et legati ad eum reverterentur, negat *a se* more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dari.

Dumnorix gratia et largitione a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire paterentur.

Caesari nuntiatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere.

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

ubi: *where, when*
 adventus, 4 (*fr. advenio, 4, to arrive*): *arrival*
 certus, 3: *certain, 27, a*
 fio, fieri, factum: *to become, happen, 43, 7; 120, c 6*
 legatus, 2: *legate, ambassador*
 mitto, 3, misi, missum: *to send, 101; qui dicerent, 130*
 sine: *without, 50, b*
 ullus, 3: *any, 30, k*
 maleficio, 2: *mischievous, harm, 49, f*
 memoria, 1: *memory*
 teneo, 2, -nui, -ntum: *to keep, hold*
 occido, 3, -cisi, -cisum: *to kill, slay, 57, 4*
 exercitus, 4: *army*
 pello, 3, pepuli, pulsum: *to chase, drive, rout*
 jugum, 2: *yoke*
 respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: *to answer, 80, o; 57, 4*

10. constituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to establish, appoint, 120, d*
 veniret, reverterentur, 120, c6
 nego, 1: *to deny, refuse*
 exemplum, 2: *example, 88*
 mos, -oris, m: *custom, use; in pl.: morals, 88*
 do, 1, dedi, datum: *to give, 58; Coll. 37, 4*
 gratia, 1: *pleasantness, favor, 88*
 largitio, -nis, f: *lavishing, 88*
 impetro, 1: *to obtain, 101*
 Santōnus, 2, *in pl. and Santōnes, -num: Santon*

TRANSLATION

When the Helvetians became certain of his arrival, they sent the noblest as delegates to him to say that they intended to pass through the province without doing any harm.

Because Caesar kept in memory that Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain and his army routed by the Helvetians, and sent under the yoke, he answered the legates that he should take time to deliberate, and if they would want anything, they should return on the Ides of April.

sumo, 3, sumpsi, sumptum: *to take, 58; Coll. 37, 4*
 delibero, 1: *to consider, decide, 35, g*
 reverto, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to give back; in pass.: to return (intrans.), 57, 4*

10. *When the day came which he had appointed to the legates, and the legates returned to him, he said that, according to the use and wont of the Roman people, he would not be able to grant a journey through the province to anyone.*

By his pleasantness and lavishness, Dumnorix obtained (his request) from the Sequans that they should permit the Helvetians to pass through their borders.

It was announced to Caesar that the Helvetians intended to pass through the land of the Sequans and the Aeduans into the borders of the Santons.

WAR WITH THE GAULS

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur.

Aedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: *Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitute abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint.*

Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non expectandum sibi statuit, *dum* omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis *in* Santonos Helvetii pervenirent. (C. 11)

12. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios flumen Ararim traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen reliquam esse, e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat.

Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur.

Aedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt auxilium rogatum *quaerentes, ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu Romani exercitus eorum agri vastandi, liberi in servitute abducendi, oppida expugnanda non essent.*

Quibus rebus adductus Caesar statuit sibi non expectandum, *donec* omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis *ad* Santones Helvetii pervenirent.

12. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus esset tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios *per* flumen Ararem traduxisse *et* quartam fere partem citra flumen reliquam esse, e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat.

Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

11. angustia, 1 (*fr.* angustus, narrow): *defile, distress, 47, u*
 traduco, 3, -dixi, -ctum: *to lead-, draw over*
 populor, 1: *to lay waste*
 auxilium, 2: *help, aid*
 defendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to defend, 125, b*
 rogo, 1: *to ask for, 116, a*
 queror, 3, questum: *to complain, 57, 4 ; 61*
 mereo(r), 2, -rui, -ritum: *to deserve, merit, 36, d*
 p(a)ene: *almost*
 conspectus, 4 (*fr.* conspicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum, *to view*): *sight, 49, a*
 exercitus, 4 (*fr.* exerceo, 2, -cui, -citur, *to exercise*): *army, 49, a*
 ager, -gri, 2: *field, land*
 vasto, 1: *to lay waste, 111; 124, b*
 liberi, -erorum: *children, 30, e"3*
 abduco, 3: *to lead away, 111; 124, b*
 servitus, -utis, f (*fr.* servus, 2, *slave*): *slavery, 49, u*
 expugno, 1: *to capture, conquer, 111; 124, b*
 [debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to owe, 102, 7; Coll. 37, 3]*
 statuo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to set, resolve, decide, 57, b'*

12. explorator, -is (*fr.* exploro, 1): *to scout, 49, d*
 Arar, -is, m: *the Saone river*
 fere: *almost, nearly*
 citra; *on this side, within, 50, a*
 castrum, 2: *castle; pl.: camp*
 nondum: *not yet*
 transeo, 4: *to pass over, 42, 3*
 impedio, 4: *to hinder, encumber*
 inopinans, -ntis: *unexpected, unaware*

TRANSLATION

11. *The Helvetians had already led their troops through the defiles and borders of the Sequans and had come into the borders of the Aeduans, and were laying waste their land.*

As the Aeduans were not able to defend themselves and their goods against them, they sent legates to Caesar to ask for aid, complaining that at all times they had so deserved of the Roman people that their lands ought not to be laid waste, their children led into slavery, their towns taken by storm, almost in sight of the Roman army.

Induced by these things, Caesar decided not to wait till the Helvetians would arrive at the Santons, after they had already consumed all the fortunes of his allies.

expecto, 1: *to await. Coll. 37, 3*
 [dum: *while*]; donec: *until, 125, c2*
 fortuna, 1: *fortune*
 socius, 2: *companion, ally*
 consumo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: *to consume, 114, b ; 49, d*

12. *When Caesar learned through his scouts that the Helvetians had already led three parts of their forces over the Saone river and that nearly a fourth part remained on this side of the river, having set out from his camp, he came upon that part, which had not yet crossed the river.*

Having attacked them, encumbered and unaware,

aggredior, 3, -gressum: *to approach, attack*

WAR WITH THE GAULS

partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. (C. 12)

13. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit.

Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus XX aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat.

14. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesari constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvisum unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui

partem eorum concidit; reliqui se fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt.

13. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit.

Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecissent, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt. Cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat.

14. Is Caesari exposuit, si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, ea via Helvetios esse ituros atque ibi futuros, ubi eos Caesar constitueret atque esse vellet; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminiscendum ei esse et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum; quod vero improviso unum pagum superasset, cum ii, qui flu-

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

concido, 3, -cidi, -cīsum: to cut up, slay
fuga, 1 (fr. fugio, 3, to flee): flight, 49, a
mando, 1: to commit, entrust, take to, 32, d; 80, n
silva, 1: forest, woods

13. proelium, 2: battle, 114, b
consequor, 3, -secutum: to follow, reach
curo, 1: to care; (this is the Latin factitive verb:
pontem aedificari curavit: he had a bridge built)
repentinus, 3: sudden, 88
aeger, -gra, -um: sick, painful
commoveo, 2, -movi, -motum: to move, shake
conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to accomplish, 40; 133, a
intelligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: to understand, 125, a
legatio, -nis, f (fr. lego, 1, to send a legate) embassy, 49, a
Divico, -nis: Divico
princeps, -cipis: leader, chief, 26, d
Cassianus, 3: of Cassius, Cassian, 49, z,

14. [ita without ut, is used for dir. disc.]
expono, 3, -posui, -situm: to put out, expose, 57, 4
eo, 4, ivi, itum: to go, 135, b; 42, 3
sin or si autem: but if
volo, velle, volui: to wish, 42, 4; 33, b
persequor, 3, -secutum: to pursue, 135, a
persevero, 1: to persist, continue, 135, b
reminiscor, 3, -: to remember, 133; 135, b
vetus, -teris: old, 26, a
incommodus, 3: disagreeable, 26, f; 72
pristinus, 3: former; vero: but, and, 119, b
virtus, -utis, f: virtue, valor, 72
improvisus: unexpectedly, 28, a

TRANSLATION

he slew a great part of them; the rest took to flight and hid in the nearest woods.

abdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to put away, hide

13. After this battle, that he might be able to reach the other forces of the Helvetians, he had a bridge built across the Saone and thus he led over his army.

The Helvetians, alarmed by his sudden arrival, sent legates to him, because they realized that the crossing of the river, which they had hardly (been able to) accomplish in twenty days, he had completed in one day. The chief of the embassy was Divico, who had been the leader of the Helvetians in the Cassian war.

dux, -ucis (fr. duco, 3, to lead): leader, 49, i

14. He pointed out to Caesar that if the Roman people made peace with the Helvetians, they would go by that route, and would be there, where Caesar would appoint and wish them to be; but if he would keep on pursuing in war, he should remember both the old misfortune of the Roman people and the former valor of the Helvetians; moreover, (as for the fact) that he had unexpectedly overcome a can-

[improvisus, 3: unexpected]
pagus, 2: village, canton, canton's people
[adorior, 4, -ortum: to attack]
supero, 1: to surpass, overcome, 131, a

WAR WITH THE GAULS

flumen transiissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, *ne ob eam rem suae magnopere virtuti tribueret, aut ipsos despiceret. Se ita a patribus majoribusque didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.* (C. 13)

15. His Caesar *ita* respondit: *Eo* sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab *iis* sibi dentur, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: *Ita* Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit. (C. 14)

men transiissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, eam rem *non esse* magnopere virtuti *ejus* tribuendam, aut *se* despiciendos; *se* ita a patribus majoribusque didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur; *quare non esse ab eo* committendum, ut is locus, ubi constitierant, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

15. His Caesar respondit *eo* sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverant, memoria teneret atque eo gravius ferret, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent; cum ea ita essent, tamen, si obsides ab *Helvetiis* ei darentur, *se* cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit *ita* Helvetios a majoribus institutos esse, ut obsides non dare, *sed* accipere consuescerent; ejusque rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit.

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

transiissent, cf. 120, d
tribuo, 3, -bui, -utum: to allot, give, 133
despicio, 3, -pexi, -ctum: to despise, 133
majores, -rum (fr. magnus, 27, e): ancestors
disco, 3, didici, -: to learn, 133
magis: rather
contendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: to strive, contend, 124, a
insidiae, -arum: snare, 88
nitor, 3, nisum or nixum: to lean, endeavor, 124, a
committo, 3, -misi, -missum: to admit, 133
consisto, 3, -stiti, -: to stop, halt, 120, d
calamitas, -atis, f: damage, misfortune
internecio, -nis, f (fr. neco, 1, to kill): extermination, 49, a

15. minor, 2: less, 27, e
dubitatio, 1 (fr. dubito, 1, to doubt): doubt, 49, a; 67, c
commemoro, 1: to recollect, remind, relate, 120, d
teneo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to hold, 131, b
gravis, 2: heavy, 28, a
fero, 3, tuli, latum: to carry, bear, 43, a; 131, b
eo - quo, with comp.: the - the
meritum, 2 (fr. mereo, 2, -ui, -ritum, to deserve): merit, 88
accido, 3, cidi, -: to happen, 120, c2
obses, obsidis, c: hostage
essent, 99; darentur, 135, b
instituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: to arrange, instruct, 133
[uti: as]
accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to take, receive, get, 35, f
consuesco, 3, -suevi, -suetum: to be accustomed, 124,

TRANSLATION

ton's people, when those, who had crossed the river, were not able to bring aid to their friends, this thing was not to be ascribed very greatly to his valor, nor were they to be despised; that they had learned from their fathers and ancestors to contend rather by valor than to strive by deceit or snares; that therefore he ought not to act in such a manner that the place where they had halted, might take its name from a calamity of the Roman people or go down in memory of the extermination of their army.

capio, 3, cepi, captum: to seize, get, take, 40; 124, b
prodo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to put forth, betray, give

15. Caesar replied that he hesitated the less, because he kept in mind the facts, which the Helvetian envoys had recalled, and that he bore them the more painfully, the less they happened due to the deserts of the Roman people; that as matters stood thus, if hostages should be given to him by the Helvetians, he would make peace with them. Divico answered, that the Helvetians had been so instructed by their ancestors that they were accustomed not to give, but to receive hostages; that the Roman people were the witness of this thing. After this answer he left.

b; 102, b
testis, is, c: witness
responsum, 2 (fr. respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum, to answer): answer, 114, c
discedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go away, leave

WAR WITH THE GAULS

16. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. (C. 15)

Ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedissee milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit.

Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T. Labienum legatum pro praetore cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. (C. 21)

Prima luce Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. (Deinde) cohortatus suos proelium commisit. (C. 22, 25)

17. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfringerunt. Ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est.

16. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem praemittit, qui viderent, quas in partes hostes iter facerent.

Ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedissee milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit.

Renuntiatum est facilem esse. Tertia vigilia Titum Labienum legatum pro praetore cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognovissent summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quidve ejus consilium esset, ostendit.

Prima luce Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. (Deinde) cohortatus suos proelium commisit.

17. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfringerunt. Ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est.

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

16. posterus, 3: following, next, 95
idem: the same, 30, f
equitatus, 4 (fr. equito, 1, to ride on horseback): cavalry
praemitto, 3, -misi, -missum: to send forward, 101
video, 2, visi, visum: to see, 99; facerent, 132
consido, 3, -sedi, -sessum: to sit down, encamp, 35, b
octo: eight, 29, a; 64
natura, 1: nature
qualis, 2: of which sort, what, 132
circuitus, 4 (fr. circueo, 4, go around): circuit
ascensus, 4 (fr. ascendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum, to mount): ascent
cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: to become acquainted with, 130
renuntio, 1: to report
(facilem) esse: it was (easy), 35, a
vigilia, 1: night spent in watching, watch, 95
praetor, -is: chief magistrate, judge, praetor
legatus, 2: legate, first rank after a chief
legio, -nis, f (fr. lego, 3, collect, read): legion, 49, b
cognovissent, 120, c 5
summus, 3: supreme, 27, f
collis, m: hill
consilium, 2: counsel, plan, 67, c'

17. miles, -litis: soldier
superior, 2: higher, 27, f
pilum, 2: pestle, javelin, 93, a
phalanx, -ngis, f, Greek: phalanx
perfringo, 3, -fregi, -fractum: to break through
anceps, -cipitis: two-headed, uncertain, 88
acer, -cris, -e: sharp, energetic, 28, a

TRANSLATION

16. On the next day they moved their camp from that place. Caesar did the same and sent all the cavalry to see into what direction the enemy would make their journey.

Informed by his scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of the mountain, eight thousand paces from his camp, he sent men to find out what the nature of the mountain was and what kind of an ascent there was around it.

It was reported that it was easy. At the third watch he ordered Titus Labienus, the praetorian legate, to mount the top of the mountain with two legions and with those leaders who knew the way; he showed what his plan was.

At dawn Caesar secretly led his forces to the nearest hill, drew up the line of battle. Then, having encouraged his men, he began the battle.

ostendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to show, 101
lux, lucis, f: light; prima lux: dawn, 95
subduco, 3, -duxi, -ctum: to lead away secretly, 101
acies, 5: edge, line, army
instruo, 3, -struxi, -ctum: to set up, build, arrange, 101
cohortor, 1: to encourage
committo, 3, -misi, -missum: to begin, commit, entrust

17. The soldiers, by casting their javelins from the higher place, easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy. They fought a doubtful battle for a long time and fiercely.

diu: for a long time
pugno, 1: to fight, 48, e

WAR WITH THE GAULS

Hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum *sit*, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque *nostri* potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est.

Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditioe ad Caesarem miserunt. Caesar obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit.

Helvetios in fines *suos*, unde erant profecti, reverti jussit, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. (C. 25, 26, 27, 28)

Hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum *esset*, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Cum diu esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque *Romani* potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est.

Helvetii omnium rerum inopiae adducti legatos de deditioe ad Caesarem miserunt. Caesar obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit.

Helvetios in fines *eorum*, unde erant profecti, reverti jussit, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

DE BELLO GALLICO.

VOCABULARY

septimus, 3: *seventh*, 29, b
 vesper, 2 or 3: *evening star, evening*
 impedimentum, 2: *hindrance, baggage*
 potior, 4, -titum: *to get (possession of), obtain*, 99, b
 inopia, 1: *need*, 79
 deditio, -nis, f (fr. *dedo*, 3, *dedidi*, *deditum*, *to surrender, devote*): *surrender*, 49, a
 arma, -orum: *weapons*
 servus, 2: *slave*
 perfugio, 3, -fugi, -gitum: *to flee away*, 120, c6
 posco, 3, *poposci*, -, : *to demand, require*
 revento, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to return*
 bonitas, -tatis, f (fr. *bonus*, *good*): *goodness, excellence*
 Germanus, 2: *German* (lence, 49, u)
 finitimus, 3: *neighboring, adjacent*

TRANSLATION

In this whole battle, when they were fighting from seven o'clock to evening, none could see an enemy turned away. After they had fought for a long time, the Romans captured their baggage and camp. There a daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons were taken.

The Helvetians reduced to the need of all things, sent legates to Caesar about a surrender. Caesar demanded hostages, arms, and the slaves who had fled to them.

He ordered the Helvetians to return into their borders, whence they had set out, lest on account of the fertility of their lands, the Germans should cross into the borders of the Helvetians and be neighbors to the province of Gaul and to the Allobrogs.

16. PUBLILIUS SYRUS

? - 43 B.C.

Course 20

A slave from Antioch, then mimeographer

*SAWS AND SAYINGS, 700 EXTANT **

In iambs or trochees.

1. Amici vitia si feras, facias tua.

*In prose.***

1. Amici vitia si feras, facias tua.

EX SEPTINGENTIS SENTENTIIS.

VOCABULARY

1. *amicus*, 2: *friend*
 fero, 3, *tuli*, *latum*: *to carry, bear, put up with*, 43, 8
 vitium, 2: *fault, defect, vice*
 facias, 109, b; 59, B

TRANSLATION

1. *If you put up with the faults of your friend, you make (them) your own.*

**In every age since the time of Publilius it has been customary for Latin pupils to memorize his sentences.*

*** An italic letter at the beginning of words indicates change in the word-order.*

16. PUBLILIUS SYRUS

?- 43 B.C.

Course 20

SAWS AND SAYINGS

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>2. Amicum laedere <i>nequidem</i> jocolo licet.</p> <p>3. An dives, omnes quaerimus; nemo, an bonus.</p> <p>4. Beneficium accipere libertatem est vendere.</p> <p>5. Cogit rogando, cum rogat potentior.</p> <p>6. Comes facundus in via pro vehiculo est.</p> <p>7. Deliberandum est saepe; statuendum est semel.</p> <p>8. Discipulus est prioris posterior dies.</p> <p>9. Effugere cupiditatem regnum est vincere.</p> <p>10. Etiam capillus unus habet umbram suam.</p> <p>11. Ex vitio alterius sapiens emendat suum.</p> | <p>2. Amicum laedere <i>ne</i> joculo <i>quidem</i> licet.</p> <p>3. An dives, omnes quaerimus; nemo, an bonus.</p> <p>4. Beneficium accipere libertatem est vendere.</p> <p>5. Cogit rogando, cum rogat potentior.</p> <p>6. Comes facundus in via pro vehiculo est.</p> <p>7. Deliberandum est saepe; statuendum est semel.</p> <p>8. Discipulus est prioris posterior dies.</p> <p>9. Effugere cupiditatem regnum est vincere.</p> <p>10. Etiam capillus unus habet umbram suam.</p> <p>11. Ex vitio alterius sapiens emendat suum.</p> |
|--|--|

EX SEPTINGENTIS SENTENTIIS.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>2. laedo, 3, laedi, laesum: <i>to hurt, injure, offend</i>
ne - quidem: <i>not even</i>
joculus, 2 (fr. jocus, 2, <i>joke, in pl. joca, -orum</i>):
<i>little joke, 49, p; 88</i></p> <p>3. an: <i>whether, 51, c; 132</i>
dives, -vitis: <i>rich, 26, d</i>
quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: <i>to inquire</i>
nemo, (-minis), m, f, <i>used only in sing.: no one, nobody; pl. and gen. sing from nullus, 3</i></p> <p>4. beneficium, 2: <i>benefit, gift</i>
accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: <i>to accept, 40</i>
libertas, -tatis, f: <i>liberty, 23, II</i>
vendo, 3, -didi, -ditum: <i>to sell, 117, a</i></p> <p>5. cogo, 3, coëgi, coactum: <i>to force, compel</i>
cum: <i>when, 126, d</i>
rogo, 1: <i>to ask, 117, e; 88</i></p> <p>6. comes, -mitis, c: <i>companion</i>
facundus, 3: <i>talkative</i>
vehiculum, 2: <i>vehicle, carriage</i>
pro: <i>for, (as), 50, b</i></p> <p>7. delibero, 1: <i>to deliberate, 111, c</i>
saepe: <i>often</i>
statuo, 3, -ui, -utum: <i>to decide, 111, c</i></p> <p>8. discipulus, 2: <i>disciple, pupil</i>
prior, 2: <i>former, foregoing, 27, g</i>
posterior, 2: <i>latter, 27, f</i>
dies, 5, m, f: <i>day, 25, a</i></p> <p>9. effugio, 3, -fugi, -fugitum: <i>to escape, 40, 61;</i>
cupiditas, -tatis, f: <i>cupidity (117, a)</i>
vinco, 3, vici, victum: <i>to conquer, 117, a</i></p> <p>10. capillus, 2: <i>hair</i>
umbra, 1: <i>shadow</i></p> <p>11. sapiens, -ntis (fr. sapio, 3, -pui, -, <i>to be wise</i>):
alter, -a, -um: <i>other, 30, k (wise)</i>
emendo, 1: <i>to correct</i></p> | <p>2. <i>You must not hurt your friend even by a light joke.</i></p> <p>licet, 2, -cuit, -citur: <i>it is allowed, 48, d</i></p> <p>3. <i>All of us inquire whether a man (is) rich; none whether he (is) good.</i></p> <p>4. <i>To accept a gift means to sell (one's) independence.</i></p> <p>5. <i>The request of a powerful man is a command.</i></p> <p>potens, -ntis: <i>powerful, 27, a</i></p> <p>6. <i>A talkative companion on a journey is a carriage.</i></p> <p>via, 1: <i>way, road, march, journey</i></p> <p>7. <i>You should deliberate often; decide but once.</i></p> <p>semel: <i>once</i></p> <p>8. <i>The following day is the pupil of the foregoing one.</i></p> <p>9. <i>To escape cupidity is to conquer a kingdom.</i></p> <p>regnum, 2: <i>kingdom</i></p> <p>10. <i>Even a single hair has its own shadow.</i></p> <p>11. <i>From another's fault a wise man corrects his own.</i></p> |
|--|--|

SAWS AND SAYINGS

- | | |
|---|--|
| 12. Ferrum, dum <i>in igne</i> candet, cudendum est tibi. | 12. Ferrum, dum igne candet, cudendum est tibi. |
| 13. Fortuna, nimium quem fovet, stultum facit. | 13. Fortuna, quem nimium fovet, stultum facit. |
| 14. Geminat delictum, quem delicti non pudet. | 14. Geminat delictum, quem delicti non pudet. |
| 15. Generosus equus haud curat latratum canum. | 15. Generosus equus haud curat latratum canum. |
| 16. Habet suum venenum blanda oratio. | 16. Habet suum venenum blanda oratio. |
| 17. Heredis fletus sub <i>persona</i> risus est. | 17. Heredis fletus risus est sub <i>persona</i> . |
| 18. Homines nihil agendo consuescunt agere male. | 18. Homines nihil agendo consuescunt agere male. |
| 19. Ignoscito saepe alteri, nunquam tibi. | 19. Ignoscito saepe alteri, nunquam tibi. |
| 20. Imperium magnum habere vis? Tibi <i>impera</i> . | 20. Imperium magnum habere vis? <i>Impera tibi</i> . |
| 21. Inferior ascit, quidquid peccat superior. | 21. Inferior ascit, quidquid peccat superior. |

EX SEPTINGENTIS SENTENTIIS.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

- | | |
|---|--|
| 12. ferrum, 2: <i>iron</i>
ignis, -is, m: <i>fire</i>
candeo, 2, -dui, -: <i>to be shining, glow with heat, be hot</i> | 12. <i>Strike the iron, while it is hot.</i> |
| 13. fortuna, 1: <i>fortune</i>
nimius, 3: <i>overmuch</i> ; nimium, <i>adv. Coll. 39, 1</i>
stultus, 3: <i>fool, silly, simpleton, 59, B</i>
foveo, 2, fovi, fotum: <i>to warm, cherish</i> | cudo, 3, cudi, cusum: <i>to beat, pound, coin, 111, c</i>
13. <i>Fortune makes a silly man of him whom it favors overmuch.</i> |
| 14. gemo, 1: <i>to double</i>
delictum, 2: <i>fault, delinquency</i>
pudet, puduit: <i>to be ashamed, 62</i> | 14. <i>He who is not ashamed of his fault doubles it.</i> |
| 15. generosus, 3: <i>noble, well-bred</i>
latratus, 4 (<i>fr. latro, 1, to bark</i>): <i>a barking, 49, a</i>
equus, 2: <i>horse</i>
curo, 1: <i>to care for</i> | 15. <i>A well-bred steed does not care for barking dogs.</i> |
| 16. habeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: <i>to have</i>
venenum, 2: <i>poison, venom</i>
blandus, 3: <i>kind, flattering</i>
oratio, -onis, f (<i>fr. oro, 1, to speak, pray</i>): <i>speech, prayer, 49, b</i> | canis, -is, c: <i>dog, 22, b</i>
16. <i>Flattering speech has its own poison.</i> |
| 17. heres, -edis, c: <i>heir</i>
sub: <i>under, 50, c</i>
fletus, 4 (<i>fr. fleo, 2, -evi, -etum, to weep</i>): <i>weeping, (49, a)</i>
persona, 1: <i>person, mask</i> | 17. <i>An heir's weeping is a disguised smile.</i>
risus, 4 (<i>fr. rideo, 2, risi, risum, to laugh</i>): <i>laughter, smile, 49, a</i> |
| 18. homo, -minis, m: <i>man</i>
ago, 3, egi, actum: <i>to do, act, 117, e</i>
nil or nihil, 2, (<i>its acc. with preposition is nihilum</i>),
n.: <i>nothing</i> | 18. <i>Men by doing nothing are accustomed to do evil.</i> |
| 19. ignosco, 3, -ovi, -otum: <i>not to take notice of, forgive, 108, b</i>
saepe: <i>often</i> | consuesco, 3, -suevi, -suetum: <i>to be accustomed to</i>
19. <i>Often forgive another, never yourself.</i> |
| 20. imperium, 2 (<i>fr. impero, 1, to order, rule</i>):
<i>empire, 49, f</i>
volo, velle, volui, -: <i>to wish, will, 42, 4; 57, 3</i> | nunquam: <i>never</i>
20. <i>If you wish to have a great empire, command yourself.</i> |
| 21. inferior, 2: <i>inferior, 27, f</i>
superior, 2: <i>superior, 27, f</i>
ascio (<i>ad-cieo</i>), 4: <i>to summon, adapt, pick up</i>
quisquis, 2: <i>who or what -ever, 30, i</i> | 21. <i>An inferior picks up the faults of his superior.</i>
pecco, 1: <i>to sin, do wrong</i> |

SAWS AND SAYINGS

- | | |
|---|--|
| 22. Injuriarum remedium est oblivio. | 22. Injuriarum remedium est oblivio. |
| 23. Iratus cum ad se rediit, sibi tum irascitur. | 23. Iratus cum ad se rediit, sibi tunc irascitur. |
| 24. Is minimo eget mortalis, qui minimum cupit. | 24. Is minimo eget mortalis, qui minimum cupit. |
| 25. Non pote non sapere, qui stultum se intelligit. | 25. Non ϕ potest non sapere, qui stultum se intelligit. |
| 26. Magister usus omnium est rerum optimus. | 26. Usus est magister omnium rerum optimus. |
| 27. Magnarum aquarum transiliri fons potest. | 27. Magnarum fons aquarum transiliri potest. |
| 28. Male habebit medicus, nemo si male habet. | 28. Male habebit medicus, si nemo male habet. |
| 29. Male vixit, quisquis emori nescit bene. | 29. Quisquis male vixit, qui emori nescit bene. |
| 30. Malus est vocandus, qui sua causa bonus. | 30. Malus est vocandus, qui amore sui est bonus. |
| 31. Mortem timere quam mori est crudelius. | 31. Mortem timere crudelius est quam mori. |
| 32. Mores dicentis suadent plus quam oratio. | 32. Mores dicentis plus suadent quam oratio. |

EX SEPTINGENTIS SENTENTIIS.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

- | | |
|---|---|
| 22. injuria, 1: <i>injury</i>
remedium, 2: <i>remedy</i>
oblivio, -onis, f (fr. obliviscor, 3, to forget): <i>forgetting</i> , 49, b | 22. To forget is the remedy of injuries. |
| 23. irascor, 3, iratum: <i>to be angry</i> , 80, f
ad se redire: <i>to recollect oneself</i>
[tum: <i>at that time</i>]
tunc: <i>then</i> | 23. When an angry man has become aware of his anger, then he is angry with himself. |
| 24. minimus, 3: <i>least</i> , 27, e
egeo, 2, egui, -: <i>to stand in need</i> , 83
mortalis, 2 (fr. mors, -rtis, death): <i>mortal</i> , 49, r | 24. The mortal who desires least, lacks least. |
| 25. possum, posse, potui, -: <i>I can, to be able</i> , 41, 2;
[potis, 2, arch.: <i>possible, able, capable</i>] (35, f)
intelligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: <i>to understand, know</i> , 57, B or 57, 4 | 25. He who knows he is silly, cannot lack wisdom. |
| 26. usus, 4 (fr. utor, 3, usum, to use): <i>use, practice</i>
magister, -tri, m: <i>master, teacher</i> (tice, 49, a)
optimus, 3: <i>best</i> , 27, e
omnis, 2: <i>all, every</i> | 26. Practice is the best teacher of all things. |
| 27. fons, -ntis, m: <i>source, fountain</i> , 23, II, b
transilio, 4, -lui or -livi, -litum: <i>to jump over</i> | 27. The source of great waters can be jumped over. |
| 28. male habeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: <i>to feel unwell, be ill</i>
medicus, 2 (fr. medico, 1, to cure): <i>physician</i> , 49, a | 28. When nobody is ill, the physician is unwell. |
| 29. vivo, 3, vixi, victum: <i>to live</i>
emrior, 3, -mortuum: <i>to die</i> , 40
bene: <i>well</i>
male: <i>badly</i> , 28, d | 29. He who cannot die well, has lived badly. |
| 30. voco, 1: <i>to call</i> , 111; 59, B
[sua causa: <i>in his own behalf</i> , 94]
amore sui: <i>by selfishness</i> , 94; 66, a | 30. Wicked must he be who is good by self-love. |
| 31. timeo, 2, -mui, -: <i>to fear</i> , 117, a
quam: <i>than</i> , 87
crudelis, 2: <i>cruel</i> , 27, a | 31. To fear death is more cruel than to die. |
| 32. mos, moris, m: <i>custom, manner; pl. morals</i> ,
dico, 3, dixi, dictum: <i>to say, speak</i> (conduct
suadeo, 2, suasi, suasum: <i>to persuade</i>
plus, -uris: <i>more</i> , 26, b; 28, d | 32. The morality of a speaker persuades more than his speech. |

SAWS AND SAYINGS

- | | |
|--|--|
| 33. Multa ignoscendo fit potens potentior. | 33. Multa ignoscendo fit potens potentior. |
| 34. Nemo tam pauper vixit, quam natus est. | 34. Nemo tam pauper vixit, quam natus est. |
| 35. Nihil est, quod caute simul agas et celeriter. | 35. Nihil est, quod caute simul agas et celeriter. |
| 36. Nimum altercando veritas amittitur. | 36. Nimum altercando veritas amittitur. |
| 37. Nisi ignorantes ars osores non habet. | 37. Nisi ignorantes ars osores non habet. |
| 38. Non <i>corrigit</i> , sed <i>laedit</i> , qui invitum docet. | 38. Non <i>servit</i> , sed <i>laedit</i> , qui invitum docet. |
| 39. Non <i>falx mittenda in messem est alienam tibi</i> . | 39. <i>In messem alienam falx non est mittenda tibi</i> . |
| 40. Nullum sine teste suo locum putaveris. | 40. Nullum locum sine teste suo putaveris. |
| 41. Perpetuo vincit, qui utitur clementia. | 41. Perpetuo vincit, qui utitur clementia. |
| 42. Plerumque similem ducit ad similem Deus. | 42. Plerumque similem ducit ad similem Deus. |
| 43. Puras Deus non aspiciet <i>plenas manus</i> . | 43. Puras, non <i>plenas manus aspiciet Deus</i> . |

EX SEPTINGENTIS SENTENTIIS.

VOCABULARY

33. fio, fieri, factum: *to become*, 43, 7
ignoscendo, 117, c
34. pauper, -is: *poor*, 26, d
nascor, 3, natum: *to be born*
35. cautus, 3: *cautious, careful*, 28, a
simul: *at once, at the same time*
celer, -eris, -ere: *swift, quick, rapid*, 28, a
36. altercor, 1: *to dispute, quarrel*, 117, e
veritas, -tatis, f (fr. verus, 3, true): *truth*, 49, u
amitto, 3, amisi, amissum: *to lose*
37. ni, nisi: *unless, except*
ars, -rtis, f: *art*
osor, -is, m: (fr. odi, odisse, *to hate*): *detractor, disparager*, 45, 15; 49, d
38. [corrigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: *to correct*]
servio, 4: *to serve, assist*
invitus, 3: *unwilling*, 49, A1
doceo, 2, -cui, -ctum: *to teach, advise*
39. falx, -lcis, f: *scythe*, 22, c
alienus, 3: *stranger, of another*
mitto, 3, misi, missum: *to send, put*, 111, b
messis, -is, f (fr. meto, 3, messui, messum, *to reap*): *harvest*, 49, a
40. nullus, 3: *no one, none*, 30, k
sine: *without*, 50, b
testis, -is, c: *witness*, 30, e"
41. perpetuo (fr. perpetuus, 3: *uninterrupted*): *always*, 28, a
utor, 3, usum: *to use, avail oneself of*, 93, b
clementia, 1 (fr. clemens, -ntis, *mild*): *mildness, clemency*, 49, u
42. plerumque: *mostly*, Coll. 39, 1
similis, 2: *similar, like*
duco, 3, duxi, ductum: *to lead, draw*
43. purus, 3: *pure, clean*
plenus, 3: *full, filled*
aspicio, -spexi, -spectum: *to regard, look at*, 40

TRANSLATION

33. *By forgiving much, the mighty becomes mightier.*
34. *No one lived as poor as he was born.*
35. *There is nothing that you can do at once carefully and hurriedly.*
36. *By disputing too much, the truth will be lost.*
37. *None but the ignorant disparage art.*
38. *He does not assist, but offends, who advises a man against his will.*
39. *You must not put your scythe to your neighbor's harvest.*
40. *Do not think any place without its witness.*
- puto, 1: *to think*, 106
41. *He who avails himself of clemency always conquers.*
42. *God generally joins like to like.*
43. *God regards clean hands, not full ones.*
- manus, 4, f: *hand*, 24, b

16. PUBLILIUS SYRUS

? - 43 B.C.

Course 20

SAWS AND SAYINGS

- | | |
|---|---|
| 44. Quam timidum est, qui paupertatem timet. | 44. Quam timidum est, qui paupertatem timet. |
| 45. Qui se ipsum laudat, cito derisorem invenit. | 45. Qui se ipsum laudat, cito derisorem invenit. |
| 46. Tam deest avaro, quod habet, quam quod non habet. | 46. Tam deest avaro, quod habet, quam quod non habet. |
| 47. Velut postrema est ordinanda omnis dies. | 47. Velut postremus est ordinandus omnis dies. |
| 48. Virum improbum ne habueris comitem in via. | 48. Virum improbum ne habueris comitem in via. |

(F. H. Bothe, 1823-24)

EX SEPTINGENTIS SENTENTIIS.

VOCABULARY

44. quam, before an adjective: how, what a
timidus, 3 (fr. timeo, 3, to fear): fearful, timid,
fainthearted, 49, t
paupertas, -tatis, f (fr. pauper, -eris, poor): poverty, 49, u
45. laudo, 1: to praise
ipse, 3: he, 30, b3, c, d
derisor, -is, m (fr. derideo, 2, -risi, -risum, to mock):
mocker, 49, d
46. avarus, 3: covetous, stingy
desum, intr.: to lack, 41, 1; 79
tam - quam: both - and, as well as
47. velut: as, as if, as though
postremus, 3: last, 27, f
ordino, 1: to settle, ordain, 111, b
48. vir, 2: man, husband
improbus, 3: wicked, immoral, 49, A

TRANSLATION

44. What a coward is he who dreads poverty!
45. He who praises himself soon finds a mocker.
- cito (fr. citus, 3, quick): quickly, 28, a
invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to find
46. A stingy man lacks both what he has and what he lacks.
47. Every day must be settled as the last.
- dies, 5: day, 25, a
48. You must not have a bad man for your companion on a journey.

17. MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

106-43 B.C.

Course 58

Lawyer, Statesman and The Most Distinguished Latin Writer

ON OLD AGE

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. "O Tite, si quid ego adjuvero curamve levasso, quae nunc te coquit et versat in pectore fixa, ecquid erit praemi?"

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. "O Tite, si quid ego adjuvero curamque levasso, quae nunc te coquit et versat in pectore fixa, ecquid erit praemi?"

CATO MAJOR SEU DE SENECTUTE LIBER

Ad Titum Pomponium Atticum.

VOCABULARY

1. adjuvo, 1, -juvi, -jutum: to help
[adjuvero, levasso, arch.], 32, f; 109, a3
levo, 1: to raise, alleviate
coquo, 3, coxi, coctum: to cook, bake, burn
verso, 1 (fr. verito, 3, -rti, -rsum, to turn): to turn
often, 49, j
figo, 3, fixi, fictum: to fix, fasten, 36, b

TRANSLATION

1. "Titus, if I can help you and alleviate your anxiety, which, fixed in your heart, troubles and worries you, what will be my reward?"
- ecquis, 2: who, what, 30, h
[praemi, arch. for:] praemii (fr. praemium, 2, reward, 67, c

ON OLD AGE

2. Licet enim mihi versibus iisdem affari te, Attice, quibus affatur Flaminium "ille vir haud magna cum re, sed plenus fidei," quamquam certo scio non ut Flaminium "sollicitari te, Tite, sic, noctesque diesque"; novi enim moderationem animi tui et aequitatem; teque non cognomen solum Athenis deportasse, sed humanitatem et prudentiam intellego.

3. Et tamen te suspicor iisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, interdum gravius moveri, quarum consolatio et major est et in aliud tempus differenda. Nunc autem visum est mihi de senectute aliquid ad te conscribere.

4. Hoc enim onere, quod mihi commune tecum est, aut jam urgentis aut certe adventantis senectutis et te et me etiam ipsum levare volo, etsi te quidem id modice ac sapienter, sicut omnia, et ferre et laturum esse certo scio.

2. Licet enim mihi versibus Ennii iisdem affari te, Attice, quibus affatur Flaminium pastor "haud magna cum re, sed plenus fidei;" quamquam certo scio "te, Tite," non sicut Flaminium "sollicitari noctesque diesque;" novi enim moderationem animi tui et aequitatem; teque non cognomen solum, sed etiam humanitatem et prudentiam Athenis deportasse intellego.

3. Et tamen te suspicor iisdem rebus, sicut me ipsum, interdum gravius moveri, quarum consolatio et major sit et in aliud tempus differenda. Nunc autem visum est mihi de senectute aliquid ad te conscribere.

4. Hoc enim aut jam urgentis aut certe adventantis senectutis onere, quod mihi commune tecum est, et te et me etiam ipsum levare volo, etsi te quidem id modice ac sapienter, sicut omnia, et ferre et laturum esse certe scio.

DE SENECTUTE.

VOCABULARY

2. versus, 4: *verse*
 affor, 1: *to accost, address*, 44, 11
 [certo, arch. for:] certe (fr. certus, 3, *sure*): *certainly*, 28, a
 diesque noctesque, arch. acc. of duration, but well used to show one's acquaintance with Cicero,
 nosse, novi, notum: *to know*, 45, 14 (64, a
 sollicito, 1: *to stir, urge, trouble*
 moderatio, (fr. modero, 1, *to moderate*): *temper*, 49, a
 aequitas, -tatis, f (fr. aequus, 3, *level, just, fair*): *evenness, justice*, 49, u
 cognomen, -minis, n: *surname*
 humanitas, -tatis, f (fr. humanus, 3, *humane*): *humanity, culture*, 49, u
 prudentia, 1 (fr. prudens, -ntis, *wise*): *wisdom*, 49, u

3. suspicor, 1: *to suspect*, 57, 4
 interdum: *sometimes, now and then*
 moveo, 2, movi, motum: *to move, affect*, 93, a
 consolatio, -nis, f (fr. consolor, 1, *to console*): *consolation*, 49, b
 sit, 133, a (8; 47, A2
 differo, distuli, dilatam: *to differ, put off, delay*, 43,
 visum est, idiom: *it seemed good*
 senectus, -tutis, f (fr. senex, *old*): *old age*, 49, u

4. onus, -neris, n: *burden, freight, load*, 90
 urgeo, 2, ursi, -: *to urge*, 36, a
 advento, 1 (fr. advenio, 4, *to arrive*): *approach*, 49, j; 36, a
 quidem: *at any rate*
 modicus, 3: *moderate, temperate*, 28, a

TRANSLATION

2. For I may address to you, Atticus, the same words of Ennius, with which the shepherd ("of no great wealth, but full of confidence") addressed Flaminium, although I know, "Titus," for certain, "that you are not" as Flaminium, "troubled day and night." For I know the temper and evenness of your mind, and I realize that you derived from Athens not only your surname, but your culture and wisdom as well.

Athenae, -arum, f: *Athens*, 21, d
 deporto, 1: *to carry away, banish, bring home*, 57, 4
 [intellego, arch. for:] intellego, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to understand*

3. Nevertheless, I suspect that you are sometimes, like me, too strongly affected by the same matter, the consolation of which is both important and to be delayed for another time. But now it seems (good) to me to write something to you about old age.

(pose
 conscribo, 3, -scripsi, -ptum: *to write together, com-*

4. For I wish to relieve both you and myself of the burden of old age common to both of us; either (it is) now pressing or surely approaching, though I certainly know that you, at any rate, bear it as (you do) all (other) things, and will bear it with an even temper and wisdom.

ON OLD AGE

5. Sed mihi, cum de senectute vellem aliquid scribere, tu occurrebas dignus eo munere, quo uterque nostrum communiter uteretur.

6. Mihi quidem ita jucunda hujus libri confectio fuit, ut non modo omnis absterserit senectutis molestias, sed effecerit mollem etiam et jucundam senectutem.

7. Nunquam igitur satis digne laudari philosophia poterit, cui *qui* pareat, omne tempus aetatis sine molestia possit degere.

8. Sed de ceteris et diximus multa et dicemus; hunc librum ad te de senectute misimus. Omnem autem sermonem tribuimus non Tithono, ut Aristo Cius, (parum enim esset auctoritatis in fabula,) sed M. Catoni seni, quo majorem auctoritatem haberet oratio; apud quem Laelium et Scipionem facimus admirantis, quod is tam facile senectutem ferat, eisque eum respondentem.

5. Sed mihi, cum de senectute vellem aliquid scribere, tu occurrebas dignus eo munere, quo uterque nostrum communiter uteretur.

6. Mihi quidem ita jucunda hujus libri confectio fuit, ut non modo omnes abstergeret senectutis molestias, sed etiam mollem et jucundam efficeret senectutem (*ita, ut nunc me quasi juvenem esse sentiam.*)

7. Nunquam igitur satis digne laudari philosophia poterit, cui *si quis* pareat, omne tempus aetatis sine molestia potest degere.

8. De ceteris et diximus multa et dicemus; *nunc autem* hunc librum ad te de senectute mittimus. In quo tamen omnem sermonem tribuimus non Tithono, ut Aristo Cius, (parum enim esset auctoritatis in fabula,) sed Marco Catoni seni, quo majorem auctoritatem habeat oratio; apud quem Laelium et Scipionem fecimus admirantes, quod is tam facile senectutem ferat, eisque eum respondentem.

DE SENECTUTE.

VOCABULARY

5. occurro, 3, -curri, -cursum: *to occur, meet*
dignus, 3: *worthy, 89, a*
munus, -neris, n: *office, duty, gift, 89, a*
uterque, 3: *both, each of the two, 30, k; 67, c*
communis, 2: *common, 28, a*

6. confectio, -nis, f (*fr. conficio, 3*): *composition, 49, b; fuit, 99, b*
[omnis: *arch. acc. pl.*]
abstergo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: *to wipe off, 100*
molestia, 1 (*fr. molestus, 3, burdensome*): *irksomeness, 49, u*

efficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to effect, render, 100; 40; Coll. 45, 5*

7. igitur: *therefore, 119, b*
sat or satis, *indecl.: enough*
pareo, 2, -rui, -ritum: *to appear, obey, 80, l*
si (ali)quis, 30, i
dego, 3, -gi, -: *to pass time, live*
potest, *implies possibility, 109, b*

8. ceteri, -ae, -a: *the others*
tamen: *for all that*
tribuo, 3, -bui, -butum: *to allot, bestow, assign, 100*
Tithonus, 2, *Aurora's husband, changed into a grass-*
Aristo, -nis: *a philosopher of Chios* (*hopper*)
C(h)ius, 3: *of the island Chios, Chian*
esset, 103, b; fabula, 1: *tale*
parum, *adv. and noun, indecl.: little, trifle, 67, b*
quo or ut eo: *in order that by it, 130*
admiror, 1: *to admire; [admirantis, arch. acc. pl.]*
fecimus, 100; quod is ferat, *instead of ab eo ferri,*
cf. 131, b; this neglect of the acc. w. inf. is very
frequent in the medieval style.

TRANSLATION

5. But now as I wish to write something on old age, you occurred to me as worthy of that duty, of which each of us might equally avail himself. ^{94f}

6. Well, the composition of this book was so enjoyable to me that it has not only wiped out all the annoyances of old age, but has rendered old age easy and pleasant (as to feel young myself). ²⁶

7. Never, therefore, can philosophy be praised worthily enough, by which if someone abides, he is able to pass every period of this life without irksomeness.

8. About (many) other topics we have spoken much, and we shall speak again; for this time, however, we send this book written on old age to you. All its discourses, for all that, we have not assigned to Tithonus, as Aristo, the Chian, did, (for there would be little authority in a tale), but to Marcus Cato, the old man, in order that in this manner the discussion might have a greater weight; at his house we arranged that Scipio and Laelius (might) admire him, (who) so easily bore old age, and that he (might) answer them.

ON OLD AGE

9. Qui si eruditius videbitur disputare, quam consuevit *ipse* in suis libris, attribuito litteris Graecis, quarum constat eum perstudiosum fuisse in senectute.

Sed quid opus est plura? Jam enim ipsius Catonis sermo explicabit nostram omnem de senectute sententiam.

10. SCIPIO: Saepe-numero admirari soleo cum hoc C. Laelio cum ceterarum rerum tuam excellentem, M. Cato, perfectamque sapientiam, tum vel maxime, quod nunquam tibi senectutem gravem esse senserim, quae plerisque senibus sic odiosa est, ut onus se Aetna gravius dicant sustinere.

11. CATO: Rem haud sane difficilem, Scipio et Laeli, admirari videmini. Quibus enim nihil est in ipsis opis ad bene beateque vivendum, eis omnis aetas gravis est; qui autem omnia bona a se ipsi petunt, eis nihil malum potest videri, quod naturae necessitas afferat.

12. Quo in genere est in primis senectus, quam, ut adipiscantur, omnes optant; eandem accusant adept-

9. Qui si eruditius videbitur disputare, quam in libris suis consuevit, attribuito litteris Graecis, quarum constat eum in senectute perstudiosum fuisse.

Sed quid opus est plura? Jam enim ipsius Catonis sermo explicabit nostram omnem de senectute sententiam.

10. SCIPIO: Saepe admirari soleo cum Laelio et multarum rerum tuam excellentem, Marce Cato, perfectamque sapientiam, et vel maxime, quod nunquam tibi senectutem gravem esse senserim, quae plerisque senibus sic odiosa est, ut onus Aetna gravius a se sustineri dicant.

11. CATO: Rem haud sane difficilem, Scipio et Laeli, admirari videmini. Quibus enim nihil est in ipsis opis ad bene beateque vivendum, eis omnis aetas gravis est; qui autem omnia bona a se ipsis petunt, eis nihil potest malum videri, quod naturae necessitas afferat.

12. Quo in genere est imprimis senectus, quam, ut adipiscantur, omnes optant; eandem accusant adept-

DE SENECTUTE.

VOCABULARY

9. eruditus, 3 (fr. erudio, 4, to instruct): learned, erudite, 28, a
consuesco, 3, -suevi, -suetum: to be accustomed to
constat: it is well known, 48, b
opus, indecl.: a need, needed, 83

10. [saepe-numero, arch. for:] saepe: often
soleo, 2, solitum: to be accustomed, 31, d; 35, f
excello, 3, -lui, -lsum: to excel
perficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to accomplish, 40
plerique, 3: very many, the majority, 78
odiosus, 3 (fr. odium, 2, hatred): hateful, 49, t
Aetna, 1: the volcano of Sicily, 87
sustineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to hold up, sustain, bear,
Coll. 37, 4

11. haud, emphatical neg. part.: not
haud sane: not at all
difficilis, 2: difficult
(ops), opis, f: might, power, resource
gravis, 2: heavy, difficult
necessitas, -tatis, f: want, need; afferat, 120, c2

12. in primis or imprimis: especially
adipiscor, 3, adeptum: to come up, obtain
accuso, 1: to accuse, blame, find fault with, 57, 4

TRANSLATION

9. If he appears to discuss in a more learned manner than he is wont in his books, you must attribute to Greek literature, to which, as is well known, he was very much devoted in his old age.

But what more do we need? For now the words of Cato himself will express all our thoughts on old age.

10. SCIPIO: Together with Laelius, I am wont to admire often both your eminent and perfect knowledge of many things, O Marcus Cato, and above all that I never noticed old age to be burdensome to you, which to most old men is so hateful, that they say they are bearing a burden heavier than Aetna.

11. CATO: You, Scipio and Laelius, seem to admire something not at all difficult: for to those who have no mental riches in themselves to live right and well, every age is difficult, but to those who seek all good of themselves, nothing which the law of nature brings along, seems evil.

12. In this class, first of all is old age which all men desire to reach, and yet having reached it, they find fault with it:

106-43 B.C.

ON OLD AGE

tam: tanta est stultitiae inconstantia atque perversitas. Obrepere aiunt eam citius, quam putassent.

13. Primum quis coëgit eos falsum putare? *Qui* enim citius adolescentiae senectus, quam pueritiae adolescentia obrepit?

Deinde *qui* minus gravis esset eis senectus, si octingentesimum annum agerent, *quam si* octogesimum?

Praeterita enim aetas quamvis longa, cum effluisset, nulla consolatio permulcere posset stultam senectutem.

14. Quocirca si sapientiam *meam* admirari soletis, (quae utinam digna *esset* opinione vestra nostroque cognomine!) in hoc sumus sapientes, quod *naturam optimam* ducem tamquam *deum* sequimur eique paremus; *a qua non veri simile* est, cum ceterae partes aetatis bene descriptas sint, extremum actum tamquam ab inerti poëta *esse* neglectum.

tam: tanta est stultitiae inconstantia atque perversitas. Obrepere aiunt eam citius, quam putaverint.

13. Primum quis coëgit eos falsum putare? *Quo* enim citius adolescentiae senectus, quam pueritiae adolescentia obrepit?

Deinde *quo* minus gravis esset eis senectus, si octingentesimum annum agerent *magis, quam* octogesimum?

Praeterita enim aetas *inops*, quamvis longa, cum effluerit, nulla consolatione permulcere potest stultam senectutem.

14. Quocirca si sapientiam *nostram* admirari soletis, (quae utinam digna *sit* opinione vestra nostroque cognomine!) in hoc sumus sapientes, quod *conscientiam nostram* ducem tamquam *numen* sequimur eique paremus; *ideoque non est justum rerum naturae, ut*, cum ceterae partes aetatis bene descriptae sunt, extremum actus tamquam ab inerti poëta *sit* neglectus.

DE SENECTUTE.

VOCABULARY

stultitia, 1: *folly, silliness, stupidity*, 49, *u*
perversitas, -tatis, *f*: *perversity*, 49, *u*
obrepeo, 3, -repsi, -ptum: *to creep, steal on*
aiunt, 44, 9, *indic. pres. primary tense*, 99

13. primum, *as adv. firstly*, *Coll.* 39, 1
cogo, 3, coëgi, coactum: *to force*, 35, *g*
falsus, 3: *false*, 26, *f*
quī, *arch. abl. sing. for quō fr. quis*, 30, *h*
adolescentia, 1: *youth*, 79
pueritia, 1: *boyhood*
octogesimus, 3: *eightieth*, 29, *b*; *si*, 109, *c*
octingentesimus, 3: *eight hundredth*, 29, *b*
inops, -opis: *poor, barren*
annum ago, 3, egi, actum: *to live*, 109, *c*
effluo, 3, effluxi, effluxum: *to flow away*, 49, *A2*;
125, *b*

14. quocirca: *therefore*
utinam: *would that*, 105, *a*
conscientia, 1: *conscience*
dux, ducis, *m (fr. duco, 3, to lead)*: *guide*, 49, *i*
numen, -minis, *n*: *divine will, divinity*
sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow*, 131, *a*
ideoque: *hence*, 119, *a*
extremus, 3: *outermost*, 27, *f*
iners, -rtis: *idle, indolent*, 93
negligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to neglect*, 124, *a*

TRANSLATION

so great is the inconstancy and perversity of their folly. They say it steals on (them) more quickly than they thought.

13. *First of all, who forced them to think falsely? For, how does old age steal more quickly upon youth, than youth upon boyhood?*

Then, how would old age be less burdensome to them, if they lived eight hundred years rather than eighty years?

For, when a past barren life, however long, has flowed away, it is not able to soothe a foolish old age with any consolation.

permulceo, 2, -mulsi, -mulsum: *to stroke, charm, soothe*

14. *Therefore, if you are wont to admire our wisdom, (and I wish it may be worthy of your esteem and our surname), in this we are wise, that we follow our conscience, the best guide, as an inspiration; (Habemus leges scriptas in cordibus nostris. S. Paul) and that we obey it: hence, it is unjust to great nature, that while the other parts of life have been well described, its last act should be neglected, as though by a lazy poet.*

ON OLD AGE

15. *Sed tamen* necesse fuit esse aliquid extremum et tamquam in arborum bacis terraeque fructibus maturitate tempestiva quasi vietum et caducum, quod ferendum est molliter sapienti.

Quid est enim aliud Gigantum modo bellare cum diis, nisi naturae repugnare?

16. LAELIUS: Atqui, Cato, gratissimum nobis, (ut etiam pro Scipione polliceor,) feceris, si, (quoniam speramus volumus quidem certe senes fieri,) multo ante a te didicerimus, quibus facillime rationibus ingravescentem aetatem ferre possimus.

17. CATO: Faciam vero, Laeli, praesertim si utriusque vestrum, ut dicis, gratum futurum est.

LAELIUS: Volumus sane, nisi molestum est, Cato, tamquam longam aliquam viam confeceris, quam nobis quoque ingrediendum sit, istuc, quo pervenisti videre quale sit.

15. *Nam* necesse fuit esse aliquid extremum et tamquam in arborum bacis terraeque fructibus maturitate tempestiva quasi vietum et caducum, quod ferendum est molliter sapienti.

Quid est enim aliud Gigantum modo bellare cum diis (*in culpis versatis*), nisi naturae corruptae repugnare?

16. LAELIUS: Atqui, Cato, *facies* gratissimum nobis, (*dico "nobis"*, ut etiam pro Scipione loquar, quoniam speramus volumusque certe senes fieri,) si, multo ante a te didicerimus, quibus facillime rationibus ingravescentem aetatem ferre possimus.

17. CATO: Faciam vero, Laeli, praesertim si utriusque vestrum, ut dicis, gratum erit.

LAELIUS: Volumus sane videre, Cato, quale sit istud, quo pervenisti, nisi molestum sit tibi, qui tamquam longam aliquam viam confeceris, quae nobis quoque ingredienda est.

DE SENECTUTE.

VOCABULARY

15. arbor, -is, f: tree
 bac(c)a, 1: berry
 maturitas, -tatis, f (fr. matorus, 3, ripe): maturity, 49, u
 tempestivus, 3 (fr. tempus, -oris, n, time): opportune, fit, timely, 49, t
 vietus, 3: shrunken, withered
 caducus, 3: falling off; ferendum est, 133, b
 mollis, 2: soft, tender, pleasant
 gigas, -antis, m: giant; Gigantes: the sons of Terra
 bello, 1: to wage war, 117, a

16. atqui: nevertheless, indeed, but now
 gratus, 3: charming, pleasant, welcome, 26, f
 [polliceor, 2, -llicitum: to offer, promise], 124, a
 didicerimus, 109, a 3
 [quidem: indeed, even, for certain]
 quibus rationibus: how
 ingravesco, 3: to become heavy or troublesome
 possimus, 132

17. vero: really, indeed, well, but, and, 119, b
 praesertim: especially, chiefly, 28, c
 sane (fr. sanus, 3, sober): certainly, of course, 28, a
 [istuc. arch for istud fr.:] ista, 3: this, that, 30, f
 pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to arrive, 120, d
 tamquam: as if, like, as, so to say; confeceris, 120, c4
 ingredior, 3, -gressum: to enter, 40; 118; 120, d

* Jove is adultery personified; Venus, lust; Apollo, pride; Mars, avarice.

TRANSLATION

15. For anyhow, it has been necessary that there be something final, and something falling off and withering, just as (it happens) with the berries of trees and fruits of the earth, at the proper ripeness, and that it should be taken calmly by a wise man.

For, what else is it to war with gods (versed in vices*), after the manner of Giants, than to fight against our corrupted nature. (Nititur in vetitum cupimusque negata. Horace.)

repugno, 1: to oppose, withstand, 117, a

16. LAELIUS: At any rate, Cato, you will do us a very great favor, (I say "to us" in order to speak also on Scipio's behalf, in as much as we certainly hope and wish to become old men), if we learn before long from you how we may most easily be able to bear approaching old age.

17. CATO: Well, I shall do it, Laelius, especially, as you say, if it will be pleasing to each of you.

LAELIUS: Of course, we wish to see of what nature it is where you have arrived, unless it is burdensome to you, Cato, who have completed, so to say, a long journey, which we also are to enter upon.

17. MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

106-43 B.C.

Course 79

ON FRIENDSHIP

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Q. Mucius augur multa narrare de C. Laelio socero suo *memoriter* et jucunde solebat nec dubitare illum in omni sermone appellare sapientem.

Ego *autem* a patre ita eram deductus ad Scaevolam sumpta virili toga, ut, *quoad* possem et liceret, a senis latere nunquam discederem; itaque multa ab eo prudenter disputata, multa etiam breviter et commode dicta memoriae mandabam fierique studebam ejus prudentia doctor.

2. Quo mortuo me ad pontificem Scaevolam contuli, quem unum nostrae civitatis et ingenio et justitia praestantissimum audeo dicere. Sed de hoc alias; nunc redeo ad augurem.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. *Quintus* Mucius *Scaevola* augur multa narrare de *Cajo* Laelio socero suo *amanter* et jucunde solebat nec dubitare, *quin* illum in omni sermone appellaret sapientem.

Quo tempore ego sumpta virili toga ita a patre eram deductus ad *augurem* Scaevolam, ut, *quantum* possem et liceret, a senis latere nunquam discederem; itaque multa ab eo prudenter disputata, multa etiam breviter et commode dicta memoriae mandabam fierique studebam ejus prudentia doctor.

2. Quo mortuo me ad pontificem Scaevolam contuli, quem unum nostrae civitatis et ingenio et justitia praestantissimum audeo dicere. Sed de hoc alias; nunc redeo ad augurem.

LAELIUS SEU DE AMICITIA

Ad Titum Pomponium Atticum.

VOCABULARY

1. augur, -is, m: *soothsayer, augur*, 23, III a
narro, 1: *to relate, tell*
socer, -eri: *father-in-law*
[*memoriter*: *by heart*]
amanter (*fr. amo*, 1, *to love*): *lovingly*, 28, a
jucundus, 3: *joyful*, 28, a
soleo, 2, -litum: *to be accustomed*, 31, d
appello, 1: *to appeal, call*, 59, A
sermo, -nis, m: *speech, discourse*
sapiens, -ntis (*fr. sapiō*, 3, -ui, -, *to taste*): *wise*
deduco, 3, -duxi, -ctum: *to lead or bring down*
sumo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: *to take (on), get*, 114, b
virilis, 2 (*fr. vir*, 2, *man*): *manly*, 49, r
toga, 1: *citizen-cloak*
[*quoad*: *as long as*; *quoad, i.e., quo(d attinet) ad*:
as to, concerning]
quantum: *as far as*, *Coll.* 39, 1
nunquam: *never*
licet, licuit, licitum: *it is allowed*, 48, d; 120, c2
senex, -nis: *old*, 22, b; 26, a
latus, -teris, n: *side, flank*

2. morior, 3, mortuum: *to die*, 40; 114, b, c
pontifex, -ficus, m: *pontiff, high priest*, 49, A, 1
se conferre: *to betake oneself*, 43, 8
ingenium, 2: *nature, character, talent*, 84
praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to stand before, excel*, 36, a
audeo, 2, ausum: *to dare*, 31, d
alias: *at another time, otherwise*

TRANSLATION

1. *Quintus Mucius Scaevola, the augur, used to relate with love and joy many things about his father-in-law, Cajus Laelius, and never hesitated in any one of his discourses to call him wise.*

At that time, after having got my manly toga, my father entrusted me to Scaevola, the augur, so that, as far as I could, and as it was permitted, I never left this old man's side; I thus committed to memory many things discussed prudently by him, and also his apt and concise sayings, and I strove to become more and more informed by his wisdom.

discedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to depart, go away*, 90;
itaque: *therefore, thus* (124, b)
prudens, -tis: *prudent, wise*
disputo, 1: *to discuss, debate*
brevis, 2: *short, concise*
commodus, 3: *fit, agreeable*
mando, 1: *to order, commit*, 80, n
studeo, 2, -dui, -, : *to strive*, 35, e
doctus, 3: *instructed, learned*, 27, a

2. *After his death I betook myself to Scaevola, the pontiff, who was, I dare say, the most distinguished man in our city, both for talent and justice. But about this, at another time; I now return to the augur.*

ON FRIENDSHIP

3. Cum saepe multa, tum, memini domi in hemicyclo sedentem, ut solebat, cum et ego essem una et pauci admodum familiares, in eum sermonem illum incidere, qui tum fere multis erat in ore.

4. Meministi enim profecto, Attice, et eo magis, quod P. Sulpicio utebare multum, cum is tribunus plebis capitali odio a Q. Pompeio, qui tum erat consul, dissideret, quocum conjunctissime et amantissime vixerat, quanta esset hominum vel admiratio vel querela.

5. Itaque tum Scaevola, cum in eam ipsam mentionem incidisset, exposuit nobis sermonem Laeli de amicitia habita ab illo secum et cum altero genero C. Fannio Marci filio, paucis diebus post mortem Africani.

3. Cum saepe multa *disseruerit*, tum, cum et ego *fuero* una et pauci admodum familiares, memini eum domi, ut solebat, in hemicyclo sedentem *in illum* incidisse sermonem, qui tunc fere multis *esset* in ore.

4. Quanta enim *fuero* hominum vel admiratio vel querela, meministi profecto, Attice, et eo magis, quod *Publio* Sulpicio utebaris multum, cum is tribunus plebis capitali odio a *Quinto* Pompeio, qui tunc erat consul, dissideret, quocum conjunctissime et amantissime *vixisset*.

5. Itaque tunc Scaevola, cum in eam ipsam mentionem *hujus odii* incidisset, exposuit nobis sermonem *Laelii* de amicitia *habitum* ab illo secum et cum altero genero *Cajo* Fannio Marci filio paucis diebus post mortem Africani.

DE AMICITIA.

VOCABULARY

3. dissero, 3, -serui, -sertum: to treat of, discuss, tum - cum: at that time - when (125, a) tunc: then, at that time; [tum: as well as, but also] una: together, simultaneously memini, -nisse: to remember, mention, 45; 72, 3; 100 domi: at home, 21, f hemicyclium, 2, Greek: semicircular settee or bench sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: to sit fere: almost, nearly incido, 3, -cidi, -, : to fall in or upon, 35, b

4. quantus, 3: how great meministi, 45; 100 profecto: indeed, truly eo magis: the more so, 87 utor, 3, usum: to use, be familiar with, 93, b; utebare, arch. form admiratio, -nis, f (fr. admiror, 1, to wonder): surprise, 99, a querela, 1 (fr. queror, 3, to complain): complaint, 49a multus, 3: much, many, 28, d; Coll. 39, 1 capitalis, 2 (fr. caput, -pitis, n. head): dangerous, deadly, mortal, 49, r odium, 2 (fr. odio, 4, to hate): hatred, 49, f; 88 erat, 120, d

5. mentio, -nis, f (fr. memini): mention; incidisset, 125, a expono, 3, -posui, -positum: to put or set out, lay before sermonem habere: to deliver a speech (fore) secum: with himself, 50, b gener, -eri, m: son-in-law paucus, 3: a few, little, 27, e mors, -rtis, f (fr. morior, 3, to die): death

Page seventy two

TRANSLATION

3. At that time, when he often discussed many topics, and when I was also present together with a few of his intimate friends, I remember him while sitting on his hemicyclium, as was his custom at home, to take up a subject which was at that time the talk of almost all the people.

ōs, ōris, n: mouth
in ore esse: to be the talk, 133, a

4. For, how great the surprise and the regret of men was, you remember well, Atticus, and the more so, that you were on very intimate terms with Publius Sulpicius, when he, as tribune of the people, was estranged by a mortal hatred from Quintus Pompey, who was at that time consul, with whom he had lived on terms of closest union and affection.

dissideo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: to disagree, dissent, 90; 125, a quocum: with whom, 50, b conjugo, 3, -junxi, -junctum: to join or unite together, 28, a vivo, 3, vixi, victum: to live, 120, c3

5. And so, when Scaevola fell upon the mention of that hatred, he laid before us the discussion on friendship, delivered to himself and Cajus Fannius, the other son-in-law, the son of Marcus, by Laelius, a few days after the death of Africanus.

(85) dies, 5, m (when appointed, feminine): day, 25, a; Africanus, 2, his full name: Scipio Africanus Major

ON FRIENDSHIP

6. Ejus disputationis sententias memoriae mandavi, quas hoc libro exposui arbitrato meo; *quasi enim ipsos induxi loquentes, ne "inquam" et "inquit" saepius interponerentur atque ut tamquam a praesentibus coram haberi sermo videretur.*

7. Cum enim saepe mecum ageres, ut de amicitia scriberem aliquid, digna mihi res *cum* omnium cognitione *tum* nostra familiaritate visa est. Itaque feci non invitus, ut *prodessem* multis rogatu tuo.

8. Sed, ut in Catone Majore, qui est scriptus ad te de senectute, Catonem induxi senem disputantem, quia nulla videbatur aptior persona, quae de illa aetate loqueretur, quam ejus, qui et diutissime senex *fuisse* et in ipsa senectute praeter ceteros *floruisse*: sic, cum accepissemus a patribus maxime memorabilem C. Laeli et P. Scipionis familiaritatem fuisse, idonea mihi Laeli persona visa est, quae de amicitia

6. Ejus disputationis sententias memoriae mandavi, quas *in* hoc libro exposui arbitrato meo; *ibidemque ipsos induxi loquentes, ne "inquam" et "inquit" saepius interposita sint, atque ut tamquam a praesentibus coram haberi sermo videatur.*

7. Cum enim saepe mecum ageres, ut de amicitia scriberem aliquid, digna mihi res *et* omnium cognitione *et* nostra familiaritate visa est. Itaque feci non invitus, ut *prosim* multis rogatu tuo.

8. Sed, ut in Catone Majore, qui est scriptus ad te de senectute, Catonem induxi senem disputantem, quia nulla videbatur aptior persona, quae de illa aetate loqueretur, quam ejus, qui et diutissime senex *fuerat* et in ipsa senectute praeter ceteros *floruerat*: sic, cum accepissemus a patribus maxime memorabilem *Caji Laelii* et *Publii Scipionis* familiaritatem fuisse, idonea mihi Laelii persona visa est, quae de

DE AMICITIA.

VOCABULARY

6. disputatio, -nis, f: *discussion, discourse, debate*
sententia, 1: *opinion, sentence, maxim*
arbitratus, 4 (*fr. arbitrator, 1, to be of an opinion*):
judgment, 49, a; 88

[quasi: *as if*]
ibidemque: *and in the same place*
induco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to bear or bring in, introduce, 100*
interpono, 3, -posui, -positum: *to put between, 99*

7. cum enim: *now then, since, 125, b*
agere cum aliquo, ut: *to act with someone in order that, to solicit*
dignus, 3: *worthy, 89, a*
cognitio, -nis (*fr. cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum, to learn*): *knowledge, 49, a*
familiaritas, -tatis, f (*fr. familiaris, 2, and this fr. familia*): *intimacy, 49, u*
invitus, 3: *unwilling, 49, A1*

8. senectus, -tutis, f (*fr. senex, old*): *old age, 49, u*
aptus, 3: *joined, suitable, fitting, 27, a*
aetas, -tatis f: *age*
quam ejus (persona): *than his person or he*
quae loquetur, 120, c., 5
diu, adv: *long, 28, f*
qui fuerat, 120, d
praeter: *beside, beyond, 50, a*
ceteri, -ae, -a: *the rest, all others*
floreo, 2, -rui, -, : *to bloom, flower, flourish, 120, d*
accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to get, receive, hear, 40; 125, b*
memorabilis, 2 (*fr. memoro, 1, to mention*): *re-*

TRANSLATION

6. *I committed to memory the ideas of his discourse, which I have set forth in this book according to my judgment, where I have introduced them speaking, lest "I say" and "says he" should be frequently inserted, and that the discourse might seem to be held as if by persons present, face to face.*

praesens, -ntis, (*fr. praesum, to be before*): *present, coram: in the presence of, 50, b* (93)

7. *Now then, since you often solicited me to write something about friendship, the topic seemed to me to be worthy both of the knowledge of all and of our intimacy: therefore I have not done it unwillingly, but, at your request, to be useful to many.*

feci, 100
rogo, 1: *to ask, 116, b; 94*
prosum, prodesse: *to be useful, 41, 1; 79*

8. *But, as in Cato the Elder, which has been written you on old age, I introduced Cato as an old man (in the act of) discussing, because no other person seemed to be better fitted to speak about that period of life, than he who had been an old man for a very long time, and in that very period was prospering beyond all others: thus, since we had learned from our fathers that the attachment of Cajo Laelius and Publius Scipio was most remarkable, the person of Laelius seemed to me as qualified to discuss those*

markable, 49, i
idoneus, 3: *fit, qualified*

ON FRIENDSHIP

ea ipsa dissereret, quae disputata ab eo meminisset Scaevola.

9. Genus autem hoc sermonum positum in hominum veterum auctoritate et eorum illustrium, plus nescio, quo pacto videtur habere gravitatis; itaque ipsa mea legens sic afficior interdum, ut Catonem, non me loqui existimem.

10. Sed ut tum ad senem senex de senectute, sic hoc libro ad amicum amicissimus scripsi de amicitia. Tum est Cato locutus, quo erat nemo fere senior temporibus illis, nemo prudentior; nunc Laelius et sapiens, (sic enim est habitus) et amicitiae gloria excellens de amicitia loquetur.

11. Tu velim a me animum parumper avertas, Laelium loqui ipsum putes. C. Fannius et Q. Mucius ad socerum veniunt post mortem Africani; ab his sermo oritur; respondet Laelius, cujus tota disputatio est de amicitia, quam legens te ipse cognosces.

amicitia ea ipsa dissereret, quae disputata ab eo Scaevola meminerat.

9. Genere autem hoc sermonum posito in hominum veterum auctoritate et eorum illustrium, nescio, quo pacto plus haberi gravitatis videatur: itaque ipse mea legendo sic afficior interdum, ut Catonem, non vero me loquentem existimem.

10. Sed ut tunc ad senem senex de senectute, sic in hoc libro ad amicum amicissimus scripsi de amicitia. Tunc est Cato locutus, quo erat nemo fere senior temporibus illis, nemo prudentior; nunc Laelius et sapiens, (sic enim est habitus), et amicitiae gloria excellens de amicitia loquetur.

11. Tu velim a me animum parumper avertas et Laelium ipsum loquentem putes. Cajus Fannius et Quintus Mucius ad socerum veniunt post mortem Africani; ab his sermo oritur; respondet Laelius, cujus tota disputatio est de amicitia, quam legendo temet ipsum cognosces.

DE AMICITIA.

VOCABULARY

disseret, 130
meminerat, 120, d

9. genus, -neris, n: birth, sex, sort, kind, 114, b
vetus, -teris: old, ancient, 26, a
illustis, 2: illustrious
pactum, 2 (fr. paciscor, 3, pactum, to bargain): contract, means, 88
videatur, 132
[legens: a reading one]; legendo: by reading, 117, e; 118, c
loquentem, 35, a

10. tum: at the same time; tunc: then
amicus, 3: friendly
quo, 87
habeor, passive of habeo: to be held
gloria, 1: glory, renown, 84
excello, 3, -cellui, -celsum: to excel

11. velim: I would like, 103, a; 57, b
animus, 2: disposition, mind
parumper: for a little while
averto, 3, -rti, -rsum, transitive: to turn away, 103
puto, 1: to reckon, estimate, suppose, 35, a
orior, 4, ortum: to arise, start
respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: to answer, 80, o
legendo, 118, e
cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: to recognize

Page seventy four

TRANSLATION

(observations) on friendship, which Scaevola remembered to have been treated by him.

9. How then, after this sort of discussion had been based on the authority of those ancient and illustrious men, a greater validity could seem to be obtained, I do not know; accordingly while reading my writings, at times, I am so affected as to think that Cato is speaking and not I.

existimo, 1: to think, 124, b

10. But, as then I, an old man, wrote to an old man, on old age, so in this book as a most intimate friend, I have written to a friend on friendship. Then Cato was speaking, than whom there was scarcely anyone older or wiser at that time: now Laelius both wise, (for thus was he held), and excellent in renown for friendship, will speak on friendship.

11. I wish you would turn your mind from me for a little while, and imagine that Laelius is speaking. After the death of Africanus, Cajus Fannius and Quintus Mucius came to their father-in-law; the discourse is started by them, and Laelius, whose whole discourse is on friendship is answering; by reading it you will recognize yourself.

ON FRIENDSHIP

12. FANNIUS: *Sunt ista, Laeli;*

nec enim melior vir fuit Africano quisquam, nec clarior.

Sed existimare debes omnium oculos in te esse coniectos unum;

te sapientem et appellant et existimant.

13. Tribuebatur *hoc modo* M. Catoni; scimus L. Acilium apud patres nostros appellatum esse sapientem; sed uterque alio quodam modo; Acilius, quia prudens esse in jure civili putabatur; Cato, quia multarum rerum usum habebat; multa ejus et in senatu et in foro vel provisiva prudenter, vel acta constanter, vel acute responsa ferebantur; propterea cognomen sapientis jam in senectute habebat.

12. FANNIUS: *Pluribus jam, Laeli, diebus ante Africanus mortuus est; et tamen ita maerore affecti sumus, acsi eum nunc amiserimus, quia nemo eo melior fuit, nec quisquam clarior. Dives semper fuit populus Romanus viris exemplaribus: et sicut eum habuit optimum, sic te, Laeli, habet sapientissimum.*

Omnium enim oculos in te unum coniectos esse tibi animadvertendum est, ut amisso homine tanto exemplum tuum sectando sapientiam humano digni nomine imitemur tuam, qui sapiens et appellaris et existimaris. Nunc apparet sapientiam summum esse vitae bonum.

13. Tribuebatur *quidem haec nuper* Marco Catoni; scimus Lucium Acilium apud patres nostros appellatum esse sapientem; sed utrumque alio quodam modo; Acilium, quia prudens esse in jure civili putaretur; Catonem, quia multarum rerum usum haberet; multa enim ejus et in senatu et in foro vel provisiva prudenter, vel acta constanter, vel acute responsa ferebantur; propterea cognomen sapientis jam in senectute habebat.

DE AMICITIA.

VOCABULARY

12. ante: *before*, 85
maeror, -is, m (fr. maereo, 2, to mourn): *mourning*, 49, a; 88
afficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to affect*, 100
acsi: *as if*, 120, b
amitto, 3, amisi, amissum: *to send away, lose*
exemplaris, 2 (fr. exemplum, 2, example): *exemplary*, 49, r
conjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: *to throw, cast*, 40
[debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to owe, be obliged*]
animadverto, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to notice, perceive*, 76
sector, 1 (fr. sequor, 3, -cutum): *to follow*, 49, j;
imitor, 1: *to imitate*, 124, a (117, e)
dignus, 3: *worthy*, 89, a; 56
existimo, 1: *to judge, esteem*, 59, A
appareo, 2, -rui, -ritum: *to appear, become clear or visible*, 57, 4

13. tribuo, 3, -bui, -butum: *to attribute*
nuper: *lately, not long ago*
uterque, 3: *each (of two), both*, 30, k
utrumque, Acilium, Catonem, are acc. with inf. governed by scimus
jus, juris, n: *right, law*
putaretur, 133, a
civilis, 2 (fr. civis, citizen): *civil*, 49, r
usum habeo: *to be expert*, 133, a
usus, 4 (fr. utor, 3, usum, to use): *use, practice*
provideo, 2, -vidi, -visum: *to foresee*, 57, 4
fertur: *it is said or recorded* (fr. fero), 43, 8a; 48, e

TRANSLATION

12. FANNIUS: *Well, Laelius, several days ago Africanus died, and yet we are afflicted with sorrow, as if we had just now lost him. For there was none better than he, none more illustrious. The Roman people were ever rich in exemplary men: as they regarded him the greatest, so they consider you, Laelius, the wisest among us.*

You must then realize that all eyes are centered on you, in order that we, having lost such a great man, may imitate your wisdom in a manner worthy of the human name, by following the example of you who are called and esteemed wise. Now it is clear that the greatest boon of life is wisdom.

13. *Not long ago this was attributed to Cato; we know that among our fathers Lucius Acilius also was called wise; but each for different reasons: Acilius, because he was considered expert in civil law; Cato, because he was very well versed in many things, for in the senate and in public many instances were recorded either of his shrewd forethought, or of his consistent action, or of his sharp retorts; and so already in his old age he bore the surname of wise.*

cognomen, -minis, n: *surname, family name*

ON FRIENDSHIP

14. *Te autem alio quodam modo, non solum natura et moribus, verum etiam studio et doctrina esse sapientem, nec sicut vulgus sed ut eruditi solent appellare sapientem, qualem in reliqua Graecia neminem, (nam qui septem appellantur, eos, qui ista subtilius quaerunt, in numero sapientium non habent), Athenis unum accepimus, et eum quidem etiam Apollinis oraculo sapientissimum iudicatum; hanc esse in te sapientiam existimant, ut omnia tua in te posita esse ducas, humanosque casus virtute inferiores putas.*

15. *Itaque ex me quaerunt, credo ex hoc item Scaevola, quoniam pacto mortem Africani feras, eoque magis quod proximis Nonis, cum in hortos D. Bruti auguris commentandi causa, ut assolet, venissemus, tu non adfuisti, qui diligentissime semper illum diem et illud munus solitus esses obire.*

16. SCAEVOLA: *Quaerunt quidem, C. Laeli, multi, ut est a Fannio dictum, sed ego id respondeo,*

14. *Tu autem, Laeli, alio quodam modo, non solum natura et moribus, verum etiam studio et doctrina sapiens non a vulgo sed ab eruditis soles appellari, qualem in tota Graecia neminem, (nam qui septem sapientes appellantur, sapientiam subtilius non inquirentes in numero sapientium non habentur), nisi Athenis Socraten solum fuisse traditum est, et eum quidem etiam Appollinis oraculo sapientissimum iudicatum; hujus tu habere sapientiam existimaris, qui omnia in te posita a te supportanda esse, humanosque casus virtute superandos ducas.*

15. *Ideoque ex me quaeritur, credoque etiam ex ipso Scaevola, quoniam animo mortem Africani feras, eoque magis quod prioribus Nonis, cum in hortos Decii Bruti auguris, ut assolet, commentatum venissemus, tu non adfuisti, qui diligentissimus semper illum diem et illud munus obire solitus esses.*

16. SCAEVOLA: *Quaerunt quidem, Laeli, multi, ut est a Fannio dictum, et a me responsum, ut ani-*

DE AMICITIA.

VOCABULARY

14. mos, moris, m: *custom, habit; pl.: morals*
 studium et doctrina: *learning and knowledge, 84*
 vulgus, 2, n: *people, crowd, 93*
 eruditus, 3, (fr. erudio, 4, to educate): *learned, 93*
 subtilis, 2: *subtle*
 qualis, 2: *such, 28, a*
 inquirō, 3, -isivi, -isitum: *to search, inquire*
 Athenae, -arum: *Athens, 21, d*
 sapiens, -ntis, m: *a wise man, 26, c*
 traditur, -tum est: *it is told or held, 48, e*
 Socrates, -tis: *Socrates; Socraten, Greek acc.*
 et - quidem: *and even*
 oraculum, 2: *oracle, 93, a*
 iudico, 1: *to judge, 57, 4*
 supporto, 1: *to bring, bear, 57, 4; Coll. 37, 3*
 supero, 1: *to overtop, surpass, conquer, 57, 4; 111, c*

15. quaero, 3, quaesivi, -situm: *to ask, seek, 48, e*
 quinam, 3: *which? what? (emphatical), 30, h*
 [proximus, 3: *nearest, 27, g*
 prior, 2: *former, last, 27, g*
 Nonae, -arum, f: *Nones, 97*
 hortus, 2: *garden*
 assoleo, 2, -solitum: *to be accustomed, 31, d*
 commentor, 1: *to study, record, discuss, 116, a*
 diligens, -ntis: *diligent, 56*
 munus, -neris, n: *office, duty, function, gift*
 oboeo, 4: *to go against, perform, die, 42, 3*

16. respondeo, 2, -di, -nsum: *to answer*

TRANSLATION

14. *But you, Laelius, are usually called wise for some other reason, not only because of your nature and character, but also because of your learning and knowledge, and not by the common people, but by learned men, and such as none in all Greece was held, (for the seven who are named wise have no rank among the wise, since they did not seek after wisdom in a subtle manner), except Socrates alone at Athens, who was judged the wisest even by the Apollonian oracle; and you are considered to have his wisdom, you who think that you must bear all that is laid upon you and master human fate by your own virtue.*

duco, 3, duxi, ductum: *to lead, draw, consider, 120, c5*

15. *Therefore, they ask me and also Scaevola himself, I believe, with what spirit you bear the death of Africanus, and the more so, because on the last Nones, when we had assembled for our (inaugural) discussions in the garden of Decius Brutus, the augur, as is our wont, you were not present, you who ever were accustomed to assist most diligently on that day and at that function.*

solitus esses: 120, c3

16. SCAEVOLA: *They, indeed, do question me, as Fannius says, and as I have observed, my answer*

ON FRIENDSHIP

quod animum adverti, te dolorem, quem acceperis cum summi viri tum amicissimi morte, ferre moderate, nec potuisse non commoveri, nec fuisse id humanitatis tuae; quod autem Nonis in collegio nostro non adfuisses, valetudinem respondeo causam, non maestitiam fuisse.

17. LAELIUS: Recte tu quidem, Scaevola, et vere; nec enim ab isto officio, *quod semper usurpavi, cum valerem, abduci incommodo meo debui, nec ullo casu arbitror hoc constanti homini posse contingere, ut ulla intermissio fiat officii.*

18. Tu autem, Fanni, *quod mihi tantum tribui dicis, quantum ego nec agnosco nec postulo, facis amice; sed, ut mihi videris, non recte judicas de Catone; aut enim nemo, quod quidem magis credo, aut si quisquam, ille, sapiens fuit.*

Quomodo, ut alia omittam, mortem filii tulit! Memineram Paulum, videram Galum, sed hi in pueris, Cato autem in perfecto et spectato viro.

adverti, a te dolorem, quem morte acceperis et summi viri et amicissimi, ferri moderate, nec esse humanitatis tuae, quod non movearis afflicto; quod autem Nonis in collegio nostro non adfuisses, valetudinem censeo causam et non maestitiam fuisse.

17. LAELIUS: Recte tu quidem, Scaevola, et vere *arbitratus es; nec enim ab isto officio, quo semper perfunctus sum, cum valerem, abduci incommodo potui meo, nec ullo casu arbitror hoc posse constanti homini contingere, ut ulla intermissio fiat officii.*

18. Tu autem, Fanni, *tribuendo mihi, quantum ego nec agnosco nec desidero, facis amice; sed, ut mihi videtur, non recte judicas de Catone; aut enim nemo, quod quidem magis credo, aut si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit.*

Solum memoro, ut alia omittam, quomodo mortem filii tulerit. Memineram Paulum, videram Galum, sed hi pueris, Cato autem perfecto et spectato viro amisso fuit afflicto.

DE AMICITIA.

VOCABULARY

dolor, -is, m: *dolor, pain, sorrow*
 summus, 3: *highest, great, 27, f*
 ferri, 58; *Coll. 37, 4*
 moderato, 1: *to moderate, 28, a*
 humanitas, -tatis, f: *human feeling, cultured mind, 71*
 moveo, 2, movi, motum: *to move, 131, b*
 [commoveo, 2, -movi, -motum: *to move violently*]
 affligo, 3, -flicxi, -ictum: *to dash, afflict, 56*
 collegium, 2: *assembly, college, guild*
 valetudo, -dinis, f: *health*

17. recte arbitror, 1: *to be right*
 perfungor, 3, -nctum: *to perform, discharge, 93, b*
 [usurpo, 1: *to draw to oneself by use*]
 valeo, 2, -lui, -litum: *to be strong, able, healthy, 125, a*
 incommodum, 2: *discomfort, 93, a*
 abduco, 3, -duxi, -uctum: *to lead or draw away*
 constans, -ntis: *steadfast*
 contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: *to touch, happen, 79*

18. agnosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: *to recognize*
 desidero, 1: *to want, desire*
 [postulo, 1: *to demand*]
 quidem: *even, quite, indeed, (or an untranslatable*
 quisquam, 2: *any(one), 30, i* (emphasis)
 memoro, 1: *to mention; tulerit, 132*
 omitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to omit, 124, a*
 perfectus, 3: *complete, mature, perfect*
 spectatus, 3 (fr. specto, 1, *to look at*): *respected, renowned*
 amitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to lose, 88; 110, b*

TRANSLATION

has been that you bear with resignation the affliction which has come upon you by the death of that great man, your most intimate friend; nor is consistent with your cultured mind not to be moved when afflicted. And with regard to the fact that you had not attended our assembly on the Nones, I suppose ill health was the cause, and not grief.

censeo, 2, -sui, -nsum: *to appraise, guess, 57, 4*
 maestitia, 1 (fr. maestus, 3, *sad*): *sadness, grief, 49, u*

17. LAELIUS: *You are quite right, Scaevola; neither could I by my indisposition be kept from that duty, which I always discharged when I was well; nor by any chance, I think, can it happen to a steadfast man, that any omission in his duty should take place.*

intermissio, -nis, f: *respite, omission, 49, a*

18. *As regards yourself, Fannius, you are very kind, attributing to me as much as I neither admit nor desire; but as it seems to me, you do not judge correctly in regard to Cato; for, either there was never a wise man, which I rather believe, or if there was one, it was he.*

I only mention, to omit other events, how he bore the loss of his son. I remember Paulus, I saw Galus; but they were afflicted by the loss of their boys, whilst Cato (was afflicted) by that of a mature and respected man.

FOR ARCHIAS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Si quid est in me *ingeni*, iudices, (quod sentio, quam sit exiguum), aut si qua exercitatio dicendi, in qua me non infitior mediocriter esse versatum, aut si hujusce rei ratio aliqua ab optimarum artium studiis ac disciplina profecta, a qua *ego* nullum confiteor aetatis meae tempus abhoruisse, earum rerum omnium vel imprimis hic A. Licinius fructum a me repetere prope suo jure *debet*.

2. Nam, *quoad* longissime potest mens mea respicere spatium praeteriti temporis et pueritiae memoriam recordari ultimam, inde usque repetens hunc video mihi principem et ad suscipiendam et ad *ingrediendam* rationem horum studiorum exstitisse.

Quodsi haec vox hujus hortatu praeceptisque conformata nonnullis aliquando salutis fuit, a quo id accepimus, quo ceteris opitulari et alios servare pos-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Si quid est in me *sollertiae*, iudices, (quod sentio, quam sit exiguum), aut si qua exercitatio dicendi, in qua me non infitior mediocriter esse versatum, aut si hujusce rei ratio aliqua ab optimarum artium disciplina ac studiis est profecta, a qua *me* nullo confiteor aetatis meae tempore abhoruisse, earum rerum omnium vel imprimis hic *Aulus* Licinius fructum a me repetere prope suo jure *potest*.

2. Nam, *quam* longissime *modo* potest mens mea respicere spatium praeteriti temporis et recordari inde usque repetens ultimam pueritiae memoriam, hunc video mihi principem et ad suscipiendam et ad *persequendam* rationem horum studiorum exstitisse.

Quodsi haec *mea* vox hujus hortatu *magistri* praeceptisque conformata nonnullis aliquando salutis fuit, huic profecto ipsi, quantum est situm in nobis, et

PRO AULO LICINIO ARCHIA POETA.

VOCABULARY

1. [ingenium, 2: *nature, talent*]
 sollertia, 1 (*fr. sollers, -rtis, skillful*): *cleverness, 49, u; 67, c*
 exiguus, 3: *scanty, slight*; sit, 132
 exercitatio, -nis, f (*fr. exerceo, 2, -cui, -citur, to practice*): *skill*
 infitior, 1 (*fr. fâri, to say*): *to deny, 49, A1; 57, 4*
 mediocris, 2: *moderate, middling, 28, a*
 verso, 1 (*fr. verito, 3, -rti, -rsum, to turn*): *to turn often, 49, j; in passive: to be versed in, 36, b; esse, 35, a*
 ratio, -nis, f: *account, method, system, reason*
 disciplina, 1: *discipline, training*
 proficiscor, 3, -fectum: *to set out, arise from*
 abhorreo, 2, -rui, -: *to shrink back from, be averse*
2. *quam longissime (modo): as very far as, 27, k*
 [quoad, *arch. for: quousque, usque dum, quamdiu*]
 spatium, 2: *space, course*
 praetereo, 4: *to pass (by), elapse*
 repeto, 3: *to ask or go back*
 recordor, 1: *to remember, recall*
 princeps, -cipis: *chief, master, 26, d*
 suscipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to take on, undertake, 118*
 [ingredior, 3: *to enter*]
 persequor, -secutum: *to follow, pursue, 118*
 existo, 3, -stiti, -stitum: *to come into existence, be,*
 quodsi is an *emphatical si: hence, if, for, if (35, b)*
 hortatus, 4 (*fr. hortor, 1, to exhort*): *encouragement, 93, a*
 praeceptum, 2 (*fr. praecipio, 3, to command*): *precept, direction, 93, a*

TRANSLATION

1. *If there is any cleverness in me, judges, and I know how slight it is; if there is any skill in my oratory, in which I do not deny that I am somewhat versed; or if I have some system, drawn from the study and the training of the liberal sciences, to which, I confess, that at no time of my life have I ever been averse, in the strict sense of justice Aulus Licinius is the first who is entitled to claim the benefit of all these qualities from me.*

to, 35, b

imprimis, or in primis: before all, especially, first
prope, adv.: close, strictly speaking
 [debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to owe, be indebted*]

2. *For, as very far back as my mind can look on the course of the past time, and (can) remember, retracing thence up to the last memory of my childhood, I see that this man was my master both in undertaking and pursuing the system of these studies.*

(Hence), if this word of mine, trained by the encouragement and direction of this master, was at times a help to others, undoubtedly we are indebted, as much as it lies in our power, to bring help and

conformo, 1: to form
aliquando: sometime
salus, -lutis, f: health, welfare, greeting, safety, 77
profecto: indeed
(ops), opis, f: power, help
accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to receive, 100

FOR ARCHIAS

semus, huic profecto ipsi, quantum est situm in nobis, et opem et salutem ferre debemus.

3. Ac, ne quis a nobis hoc *ita* dici forte miretur, quod alia quaedam in hoc facultas sit ingeni, neque haec dicendi ratio aut disciplina, ne nos quidem huic uni studio *penitus* unquam dediti fuimus.

Etenim omnes artes, quae ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum et quasi cognatione quadam inter se continentur.

4. Sed ne cui vestrum mirum esse videatur me in quaestione legitima et in iudicio publico, (cum res agatur apud praetorem populi Romani lectissimum virum et apud severissimos iudices, tanto conventu hominum ac frequentia), hoc uti genere dicendi, quod non modo a consuetudine iudiciorum, verum etiam a forensi sermone abhorreat, quaeso a vobis, ut in hac causa mihi detis hanc veniam accomodatam huic reo, vobis, quem ad modum spero, non molestam, ut me pro summo poeta atque eruditissimo homine di-

opem et salutem ferre debemus, a quo id accepimus, quo ceteris opitulari et alios servare possimus.

3. Ac, ne quis hoc a nobis dici forte miretur, cum in Archia facultas quaedam alia ingenii, et nequaquam haec mea dicendi ratio aut disciplina sit, notum vobis esse oportet, quod ne nos quidem huic uni studio soli unquam dediti fuerimus.

Etenim omnes artes, quae ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum et quasi cognatione quadam inter se continentur.

4. Ideoque coram eminentis Praetoris Romani tribunali justissimisque vobis iudicibus nec non hoc concursu hominum litteratissimorum, cum prope novo genere quodam dicendi insolitus uti videar, quaeso, ut in causa summi poetae hujus in otio stu-

PRO ARCHIA.

VOCABULARY

opitulor, 1 (fr. opem ferre alicui, to bring help): to servo, 1: to keep, save, rescue (help, 73)
ceterus, 3: the other, the rest

3. forte: perchance, perhaps
cum: 125, b
nequaquam: not at all
notus, 3 (fr. novi, to know, 45, 14): (well) known
oportet, 2, -tuit: must, 48, d; Coll. 48, 9, 14
ne - quidem, an emphatical negation
unquam: ever
solus, 3: alone, 30, k
[penitus: entirely]
dedo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to surrender, devote, 131, b
humanitas, -tatis, f: humanity, culture, 49, u
pertineo, 2, -tinui, -: to reach, belong
quidam, 3: some, certain, 30, i
vinculum, 2 (fr. vincio, 4, vinxi, vinctum, to bind):

4. coram: before, 50, b
emineo, 2, -nui, -: to stand out, be eminent
tribunal, -is, n (fr. tribunus, 2, tribune): tribunal, [iudicium, 2: trial, judgment] (22, f; 49, r)
[lectus, 3: selected, excellent]
praetor, -is, m (fr. praeeo, 4, to go ahead): magistrate, judge
[severus, 3: severe]
[conventus, 4: assembly]
concursum, 4 (fr. concurro, 3, -curri, -cursum, to flock together): assembly

TRANSLATION

safety to this very man, from whom we have received that by which we are enabled to help and save many others.

3. However, lest perchance some one marvel, that this is said by us, since there is in Archias a certain other power of genius, not at all my skill or experience in speaking, it must be (well) known to you that we were never devoted to this one pursuit alone. For all the sciences which refer to culture have some common link, and are connected with each other as by a certain kinship.

fetter, link, 49, f
cognatio, -nis, f (fr. (g)nascor, 3, natum, to be born): relationship, 93, a
contineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to keep together, contain

4. But, since I seem unwontedly to use, in the strict sense of the word, a strange form of speaking before the judgment-seat of the eminent Roman Praetor and you, most just judges, as well as this assembly of very learned men, therefore, in the law suit of this distinguished poet, fully deserving (mer-

litteratus, 3 (fr. littera, 1, letter): learned, 49, l
insolitus, 3 (fr. soleo, 2, -litum, to be accustomed): unusual, 49, A1
[abhorreo, 2, -rui, -: to shrink back from]

FOR ARCHIAS

centem hoc concursu hominum litteratissimorum, hac vestra humanitate, hoc demique praetore exercente iudicium patiamini de studiis humanitatis ac litterarum paulo loqui liberius et in ejusmodi persona, quae propter otium ac studium minime in iudiciis periculisque tractata est, uti prope novo quodam et inusitato genere dicendi. (123 words; Cf. 89. DANTE)

5. Quod si mihi a vobis tribui concedique sentiam, perficiam profecto, ut hunc A. Licinium non modo non segregandum, cum sit civis, a numero civium, verum etiam, si non esset, putetis asciscendum fuisset.

6. Nam, ut primum ex pueris excessit Archias atque ab eis artibus, quibus aetas puerilis ad humanitatem informari solet, se ad scribendi studium contulit primum Antiochiae, (nam ibi natus est loco nobili), celebri quondam urbe et copiosa atque eruditissimis hominibus liberalissimisque studiis affluenti.

diogue bene merentis mihi maximum momentum studiorum humanitatis et litterarum, quem ad modum spero, ad vestram delectationem paulo liberius exposituro clementer indulgeatis. (55 words)

5. Quod si mihi a vobis tribui concedique sentiam, perficiam profecto, ut hunc Aulum Licinium non modo non esse segregandum, cum sit civis, a numero civium, verum etiam, si non esset, putetis asciscendum esse.

6. Nam, cum primum ex pueris excessit Archias atque ab eis artibus, quibus aetas puerilis ad humanitatem informari solet, se ad scribendi studium contulit primum Antiochiae, nam nobili loco natus est ibi, in celebri quondam urbe et copiosa atque eruditissimis hominibus liberalissimisque studiis affluenti.

PRO ARCHIA.

VOCABULARY

[frequentia, 1: large concourse]
[forensis, 2: legal, judicial]
[venia, 1: indulgence, pardon]
[accommodatus, 3: suitable]
[molestus, 3: irksome]
[eruditus, 3: learned]
[patior, 3, passum: to suffer]
otium, 2: leisure; in otio et negotio: in private and public life
paulus, 3: little, small, 85
[periculum, 2: peril]

5. concedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to yield, allow, 58
perficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to finish, bring about, 109, b
segrego, 1: to segregate, remove, 111
numerus, 2: number, 90
ascisco, 3, ascivi, -itum: to admit, receive, 135, d

(120, c

6. [ut primum arch.], cum primum: as soon as, excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go out, pass beyond informo, 1: to form, instruct se conferre: to betake or devote oneself Antiochia, 1: capital of Syria, 21, c nobili loco natus: born of noble rank, 91 ceber, -bris, -bre: frequented, renowned, 96; 21, g copiosus, 3: richly provided, wealthy studiis, 83

Page eighty

TRANSLATION

its both in private and public life, I beg that you kindly grant indulgence to me, who am about to expound a little more freely the paramount importance of the cultural and liberal studies, as I hope, for your enjoyment.

[tracto, 1: to treat]
[inusitatus, 3: unusual]
indulgeo, 2, -dulsi, -litum: to indulge, gratify, grant, 124, a; 79

5. (For,) if I feel that this is given and granted to me by you, I shall undoubtedly bring it about not only that you will not think that this Aulus Licinius (is) to be excluded from the number of citizens, since he is a citizen, but even (that you will think he is) to be added (to this number) if he were not (a citizen already).

6. Well, as soon as Archias had grown out of childhood and the training by which boyhood is accustomed to be formed to refinement, he devoted himself to the study of writing, first at Antioch, since he was born of noble rank there, in that city once famous and wealthy, abounding in learned men and liberal arts.

affluo, 3, -fluxi, -fluctum: to flow to, abound

FOR ARCHIAS

Celeriter antecellere omnibus *ingeni* gloria coepit. Post in ceteris Asiae partibus cunctaque Graecia sic ejus adventus celebrabantur, ut famam *ingeni* expectatio, et expectationem *ipsius* adventus admiratioque superaret.

7. Erat Italia tum plena Graecarum artium et disciplinarum, studiaque haec et in Latio vehementius tum colebantur quam nunc *isdem* in oppidis, et hic Romae propter tranquillitatem rei publicae non neglegebantur.

Itaque hunc et Tarentini et Regini et Neapolitani civitate ceterisque praemiis donarunt, et omnes, qui aliquid de ingeniis poterant judicare, cognitione atque hospitio dignum aestimarunt.

Hac tanta celebritate famae cum esset jam absentibus notus, Romam venit Mario consule et Catulo.

8. Nactus est primum consules eos, quorum alter res ad scribendum maximas, alter cum res gestas, tum etiam studium atque aures *adhibere* posset.

Statim Lucilli, cum praetextatus *etiam tum* Archias esset, eum domum suam receperunt.

Celeriter antecellere omnibus *ingenii* gloria coepit. Post in ceteris Asiae partibus cunctaque Graecia sic ejus adventus celebrabantur, ut famam *ingenii* expectatio, et expectationem *ipsam* adventus admiratioque superaret.

7. Erat Italia tunc plena Graecarum artium et disciplinarum, studiaque haec et in Latio vehementius tunc colebantur quam nunc *iusdem* in oppidis, et hic Romae propter tranquillitatem rei publicae non negligeabantur.

Itaque hunc et Tarentini et Regini et Neapolitani civitate ceterisque praemiis donarunt, et omnes, qui aliquid de ingeniis poterant judicare, cognitione atque hospitio dignum aestimarunt.

Hac tanta celebritate famae cum esset jam absentibus notus, Romam venit Mario consule et Catulo.

8. Nactus est primum consules eos, quorum alter res ad scribendum maximas, alter cum res gestas, tum etiam studium atque aures *exhibere* posset.

Statim Lucilli, cum praetextatus *adhuc* Archias esset, eum *in* domum suam receperunt.

PRO ARCHIA.

VOCABULARY

celer, -is, e: *swift, quick*, 28, a
antecello, 3, -lui, -, : *to excel, be distinguished*, 79
pars, -rtis, f: *part*
celebro, 1: *to publish, praise, celebrate*
adventus, 4 (*fr. advenio, 4, to arrive*): *arrival*, 49, a
supero, 1: *to conquer, surpass, exceed*, 124, b

7. Latium, 2: *the country of the Latins*
vehemens, -ntis: *vehement, vigorous*, 28, a
colo, 3, -lui, cultum: *to cultivate, worship*
Tarentinus, 3: *of Tarentum, city in southern Italy*
R(h)eginus, 3: *of R(h)egium, city in southern Italy*
civitas, -tatis, f: *citizenship, state, town, city*
praemium, 2: *advantage, profit, reward, gift*
dono, 1: *to present with*, 82
judico, 1: *to judge*
cognitio, -nis, f (*fr. cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum, to become acquainted with*): *acquaintance*
hospitium, 2: *hospitality*
abesse: *to be away, be absent*, 41, 1
Catulus and Marius consuls, 102 B.C., 115

8. nanciscor, 3, na(n)ctum: *to get, obtain*
res gestae (*fr. gero, 3, to carry*): *exploits*, 110, b
auris, -is, f: *ear, hearing*
[adhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to employ, use*]
exhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to produce, furnish*
praetextatus, 3, (*fr. praetexo, 3, -xui, -xtum, to weave a border*): *wearing a bordered toga*
adhuc: *still; domum ad se, or in domum suam*, 21, g

TRANSLATION

Then he quickly began to surpass all (his mates) by the brightness of his mind. Afterwards, his arrival in the other parts of Asia and all Greece was so celebrated that his expectation surpassed the fame of his talent, and his coming and admiration (exceeded) that expectation.

7. Italy was then replete with Greek sciences and systems, and these studies were cultivated at that time more ardently in Latium, than now in the same cities; and here in Rome they were not neglected on account of the tranquillity of the republic.

Hence it is that the Tarentines, the Rhegians, the Neapolitans presented him with citizenship and other gifts; and all who were in any way capable of judging talent esteemed him worthy of acquaintance and hospitality.

When by his great celebrity he was already known (to us, though) absent, he came to Rome in the consulship of Marius and Catulus.

8. In the very beginning he gained those consuls, one of whom was able to furnish the greatest exploits to write about; the other, both achievements and (literary) zeal and (critical) attention.

Immediately the Lucilli received him into their home, when Archias still wore the boys' toga.

FOR ARCHIAS

Et erat hoc non solum ingeni ac litterarum, verum etiam naturae et virtutis, ut domus, quae hujus adolescentiae prima favit, eadem esset familiarissima senectuti.

9. Erat temporibus illis jucundus Q. Metello, illi Numidico et ejus Pio filio; audiebatur a M. Aemilio; vivebat cum Q. Catulo et patre et filio; a L. Crasso colebatur; Lucullos vero et Drusum et Octavios et Catonem et totam Hortensiorum domum devinctam consuetudine cum teneret, afficiebatur summo honore, quod *eum non solum colebant*, qui aliquid percipere atque audire studebant, verum etiam *si* qui *forte* simulabant.

10. Interim satis longo intervallo, cum esset cum M. Lucullo in Siciliam profectus et cum ex ea provincia cum eodem Lucullo decederet, venit Heracleam.

Quae cum esset civitas aequissimo jure ac foedere, ascribi se in eam civitatem voluit idque, cum ipse per se dignus putaretur, tum auctoritate et gratia Luculli ab Heracleensibus impetravit.

Et erat hoc non solum ingenii ac litterarum *gratia*, verum etiam naturae et virtutis, ut domus, quae hujus adolescentiae prima *faveret*, eadem esset familiarissima senectuti.

9. Erat temporibus illis jucundus *Quinto* Metello, illi Numidico et ejus Pio filio; audiebatur a *Marco* Aemilio; vivebat cum *Quinto* Catulo et patre et filio; a *Lucio* Crasso colebatur; Lucullos vero et Drusum et Octavios et Catonem et totam Hortensiorum domum devinctam consuetudine cum teneret, afficiebatur summo honore, quod non *ab iis solis coleretur*, qui aliquid percipere atque audire studebant, verum etiam *ab iis*, qui *artis incapaces id tamen* simulabant.

10. Interim satis longo intervallo *elapso*, cum esset cum *Marco* Lucullo in Siciliam profectus et cum ex ea provincia cum eodem Lucullo decederet, venit Heracleam.

Quae cum esset civitas aequissimo jure ac foedere, ascribi se in eam civitatem voluit idque, cum ipse *etiam* per se dignus putaretur, tum auctoritate et gratia Luculli ab Heracleensibus impetravit.

PRO ARCHIA.

VOCABULARY

gratia, 50, d; 94
adolescentia, 1 (fr. *adolesco*, 3, to grow): youth, 49, u
faveo, 2, favi, fautum: to favor, 80, d; 120, c3; cf. 120, d

9. jucundus, 3: *pleasant, pleasing, agreeable*
vivo, 3, vixi, victum: to live
devincio, 4, -vinxi, -vinctum: to bind, fasten, pledge
consuetudo, -dinis, f: *custom, behavior, intimacy*, 93, a
quod coleretur, 131, a; qui studebant, 120, d
afficio, 3, feci, -fectum: to affect
incapax, -acis: *incapable, unable to grasp*, 66, b
simulo, 1: to imitate, feign, pretend

10. intervallum, 2: *interval of time or distance*,
elabor, 3, elapsum: to slide or pass away (114, b)
provincia, 1: *province*
decedo, 3, decessi, decessum: to depart, cease, 90
Heraclea, 1: *a town in south Italy*, 21, a
foedus, -deris, n: *league, covenant*, 86
quae: *this*, 30, b, 5
gratia, 1: *grace, favor, credit, influence*, 50, d; 94
impetro, 1: to obtain

Page eighty two

TRANSLATION

Well, this was for the sake not only of his talent and culture, but also of his character and virtue, that the home which first favored his youth was also the most friendly to him in his old age.

9. *He was in those times welcome to Quintus Metellus, the Numidian, and Pius, his son; he was listened to by Marcus Aemilius; he lived with Quintus Catulus, both father and son; he was respected by Lucius Crassus; (now then) since he held the Luculli and Drusus and Octavii and Cato and the whole family of the Hortensii captive by his social intercourse, he was treated with the greatest honor; for not only those befriended him, who sought to learn and hear something from him but also those who, incapable of learning, pretended (to do so).*

10. *Meanwhile, after quite a long interval, when he set out with Marcus Lucullus for Sicily and departed from that province with the same Lucullus, he came to Heraclea.*

As this was a confederate city of full Roman rights, he decided to be enrolled (as citizen) in that city; and then by the influence and authority of Lucullus he obtained it from the Heracleans, because they deemed him worthy for his own sake also.

FOR ARCHIAS

Data est civitas Silvani lege et Carbonis, si qui foederatis civitatibus ascripti fuissent, si tum, cum lex ferebatur, in Italia domicilium habuissent, et si sexaginta diebus apud praetorem essent professi.

Cum hic domicilium Romae multos jam annos haberet, professus est apud praetorem Q. Metellum familiarissimum suum.

11. Si nihil aliud nisi de civitate ac lege dicimus, nihil dico amplius; causa dicta est.

Quid enim horum infirmari, Gratti potest? Heraclae-ne esse eum ascriptum negabis?

Adest vir summa auctoritate et religione M. Lucullus, qui se non opinari, sed scire, non audivisse, sed vidisse, non interfuisse, sed egisse dicit.

Adsunt Heraclenses legati, nobilissimi homines hujus judicii causa cum mandatis et cum publico testimonio venerunt, qui hunc ascriptum Heraclensem dicunt.

12. Hic tu tabulas desideras Heraclensium publicas, quas Italico bello incenso tabulario interisse scimus omnes?

Data enim est civitas Silvani lege et Carbonis omnibus, qui foederatis civitatibus ascripti fuissent, si tum, cum lex ferebatur, in Italia domicilium habuissent et si intra sexaginta dies apud praetorem Romanum essent professi.

Cum vero hic Aulus domicilium Romae multos jam annos haberet, professus est apud praetorem Quintum Metellum familiarissimum suum.

11. Si nihil aliud nisi de civitate ac lege est dicendum, nihil dico amplius; causa dicta est.

Quid enim horum infirmare, Gratti, potes? Heraclae-ne esse eum ascriptum negabis?

Adest vir summae auctoritatis et religionis Marcus Lucullus, qui se non opinari, sed scire, non audivisse, sed vidisse, non interfuisse, sed egisse dicit.

Adsunt Heraclenses legati, nobilissimi homines hujus judicii causa cum mandatis, qui cum publico testimonio venerunt, qui hunc ascriptum Heraclensem dicunt.

12. Hic tu tabulas desideras Heraclensium publicas, quas Italico bello tabulario incenso interuisse scimus omnes?

PRO ARCHIA.

VOCABULARY

foederatus, 3: *confederate, allied*
 ascribo, 3, -scripsi, -ptum: *to enroll, include*, 79; 120,
 legem ferre: *to pass a law* (c3)
 domicilium, 2: *a place of dwelling, residence*
 sexaginta, indecl.: *sixty*, 29, a; 95
 intra: *within*, 50, a (109, b)
 profiteor, 2, -fessum: *to confess, profess, register*,
 multos annos, 64
 familiaris, 2: *intimate*

11. dicendum, 111, b
 amplius: *more*

infirmo, 1: *to weaken, invalidate*

religio, -nis, f: *conscientiousness, morality*, 67, d
 interesse: *to be between, be present*

causa, 94; 50, d
 mandatum, (fr. mando, 1, *to order*): *commission*
 testimonium, 2 (fr. testor, 1, *to bear witness*): *evidence, testimony, proof*

12. incendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to kindle, burn*, 114, b
 tabularium, 2 (fr. tabula, 1, *tablet, record*): *record office*, 49, n
 intereo, 4: *to perish*, 42, 3

TRANSLATION

For, citizenship was given by the law of Silvanus and Carbo, to all who had been enrolled in one of the allied cities, provided they had had residence in Italy when this law was passed, and had registered with the Roman praetor within sixty days.

Now, since this Aulus had dwelt at Rome already many years, he registered with the praetor Quintus Metellus, his most intimate friend.

11. If we have to speak of nothing else but the citizenship and law, I say nothing more; the cause is tried.

Now, Grattius, which of these facts can you deny? Will you deny that he was enrolled in Heraclaea?

For there is present Marcus Lucullus, a man of very great authority and integrity, who says that he does not merely conjecture, but knows; that he did not hear, but saw; that he was not only present, but cooperated.

The Heraclaeans' deputies, most noble men who came entrusted with public proofs, are present for the sake of this trial, and say that this man was enrolled as a Heraclaeans.

12. Here you require the public records of the Heraclaeans (citizens), which we all know were destroyed during the Italian war in the conflagration of the record office.

FOR ARCHIAS

Est ridiculum ad ea, quae habemus, nihil dicere, quaerere, quae habere non possumus; et de hominum memoria tacere, litterarum memoriam flagitare; et, cum habeas amplissimi viri religionem, integerrimi municipi jus jurandum fidemque, ea, quae depravari nullo modo possunt, repudiare tabulas, quas idem dicis solere corrumpi desiderare.

13. An domicilium Romae non habuit is, qui tot annis ante civitatem datam sedem omnium rerum ac fortunarum suarum Romae collocavit? An non est professus?

Immo vero eis tabulis professus, quae sola ex illa professione collegioque praetorum obtinent publicarum tabularum auctoritatem.

Nam, cum Appi tabulae negligentius asservatae dicerentur, Gabini, quam diu incolumis fuit levitas, post damnationem calamitas omnem tabularum fidem resignasset, Metellus homo sanctissimus modestissimusque omnium tanta diligentia fuit, ut ad L. Lentulum praetorem et ad iudices venerit et unius nominis litura se commotum esse dixerit.

Est ridiculum ad ea, quae habemus, nihil dicendo quaerere, quae habere non possumus; et de hominum memoria tacendo litterarum memoriam flagitare; porro, cum habeas amplissimi viri religionem, integerrimi municipii jus jurandum fidemque, haec omnia, quae depravari nullo modo possunt, repudiando tabulas desiderare, quas corrumpi idem dicis solere.

13. An domicilium Romae non habuit is, qui tot annis ante civitatem datam sedem omnium rerum ac fortunarum suarum Romae collocavit? An non est professus?

Immo vero eis tabulis professus, quae sola ex professione collegioque praetorum obtinent publicarum tabularum auctoritatem.

Nam, cum Appii tabulae negligentius asservatae dicerentur, quamdiu incolumis fuit levitas, cumque post damnationem Gabini calamitas omnem tabularum fidem resignasset, Metellus homo sanctissimus modestissimusque omnium tanta diligentia fuit, ut ad Lucium Lentulum praetorem et ad iudices veniret et unius nominis litura se commotum esse diceret.

PRO ARCHIA.

VOCABULARY

ridiculus, 3 (fr. rideo, 2, to laugh): ridiculous, 49, dicendo, tacendo, 117, e (f; 26, f)
 flagito, 1: to ask, entreat, demand
 amplus, 3: ample, great, honorable
 integer, -gra, -grum: whole, inviolate, pure
 municipium, 2: a free town with citizenship
 jus jurandum, juris jurandi, n (fr. juro, 1, to swear): oath
 depravo, 1: to pervert, spoil, corrupt
 repudio, 1: to refuse, reject, 117, e
 corrumpo, 3, -rupi, -ruptum: to corrupt, 57, 4

13. sedes, -dis, f: seat, chair, residence
 is, eis, (Vergil and Horace would say ille, illis; but their poetical freedom is not permitted in prose), 30, b2; civitatem datam, 110, b'
 colloco, 1: to place, lay, set, arrange, 50, c'
 collegium, 2 (fr. colligo, 3, to collect): assembly, college, office, board, 49, f
 negligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: to neglect
 asservo, 1: to preserve, keep
 quamdiu: as long as
 incolumis, 2: safe, sound, uninjured
 levitas, -tatis, f (fr. levis, 2, lightness): thoughtlessness, fickleness, 49, u
 calamitas, -tatis, f: damage, failure, loss
 resigno, 1: to unseal, release, resign, cancel, 125, a
 fuit, veniret, diceret, 99, b

Page eighty four

TRANSLATION

It is ridiculous to say nothing about the things we have, and to demand what is impossible for us to have; and to be silent about the testimony of the human mind, and require the proof of the records; now as you have the conscientious evidence of a most distinguished man, and the oath and the reliability of an irreproachable city, (it is ridiculous) to reject these things which by no means can be corrupted, and to desire the records, which you yourself say, are usually corrupted.

13. Now, did he not have a residence in Rome, he who for so many years, before citizenship was given (him), established the abode of all his properties and fortunes at Rome? (Or) is he not registered?

Nay, he is registered in those records which carry the authority of a public document only through the declaration and the board of praetors.

For, since the records of Appius were said to have been kept carelessly as long as fickleness was unpunished, and when, after the condemnation of Gabinius, public scandal destroyed all faith in the record tablets, Metellus, the most upright and moderate of all (officials), was so conscientious, that he came to Lucius Lentulus, the praetor, and to the judges and said that he was stirred up by the effacement of just one name.

FOR ARCHIAS

His igitur in tabulis nullam lituram in nomine A. Licini videtis.

14. Quae cum ita sint, quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubitetis, praesertim cum aliis quoque in civitatibus fuerit ascriptus?

Etenim, cum mediocribus multis et aut nulla aut humili aliqua arte praeditis gratuito civitatem in Graecia homines impertiebant, Reginos credo aut Locrenses aut Neapolitanos aut Tarentinos, quod scaenicis artificibus largiri solebant, id huic summa ingeni praedito gloria noluisse!

Quid? *Ceteri* non modo post civitatem datam, sed etiam post legem Papiam aliquo modo in eorum municipiorum tabulas irrepererunt!

Hic, qui ne utitur quidem illis, in quibus est inscriptus, *quod* semper se Heracleensem esse voluit, *rejicietur?*

15. Census nostros requiris. Scilicet est *enim* obscurum proximis censoribus hunc cum clarissimo imperatore L. Lucullo apud exercitum fuisse; superi-

His igitur in tabulis nullam lituram in nomine Auli Licinii videtis.

14. Quae cum ita sint, quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubitetis, praesertim cum aliis quoque in civitatibus fuerit ascriptus?

Etenim, cum mediocribus multis et aut nulla aut humili aliqua arte praeditis gratuito civitatem in Graecia homines impertiebant, Reginos credo aut Locrenses aut Neapolitanos aut Tarentinos, quod scaenicis artificibus largiri solebant, id huic summa ingenii praedito gloria maluisse!

Quid? *Alii* non modo post civitatem datam, sed etiam post legem Papiam aliquo modo in eorum municipiorum tabulas irrepererunt!

Hic, qui ne utitur quidem illis, in quibus est inscriptus, *quia* semper se Heracleensem esse voluit, *rejiciatur?*

15. *Deinde* census nostros requiris, *Gratti*, tibi scilicet obscurum est proximis censoribus hunc cum clarissimo imperatore Lucio Lucullo apud exercitum fuisse; superioribus censoribus hunc cum eodem

PRO ARCHIA.

VOCABULARY

litura, 1 (*fr.* lino, 3, levi, litum, or linio, 4, to smear): erasure, 49, a

14. praesertim: especially, chiefly

mediocris, 2: moderate, middling, mediocre
praeditus, 3: endowed

gratuito or gratis: gratuitously

impertio, 4: to impart, bestow, give, 79

scaenicus, 3 (*fr.* scaena, 1, stage, scene): theatrical, 49, t

artifex, -ficus, m: artist, master of any art, 49, A

largior, 4: to give abundantly, impart; solebant, 133, b

malo: to prefer, choose rather, 42, 6

[*ceteri*, 3: the other, the rest]

legem datam, 110, b'

irrepro, 3, -repsi, -reptum: to creep or crawl into

rejicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to reject, 40

15. census, 4 (*fr.* censeo, 2, -nsui, -nsum, to assess, estimate): assessment, 49, a

obscurus, 3: obscure

proximus, 3: nearest, next, following, 27, g

clarus, 3: clear, bright; clarissimus, title of learned or distinguished men: gentleman

hunc: him, (*Vergil and Horace would say illum*), 30, b2

TRANSLATION

Well, you see no erasure on the name of Aulus Licinius in these record tablets.

14. Since this is the case, why is it that you doubt concerning his citizenship, especially when he was also enrolled in other cities?

And now, when in Greece men gratuitously bestow citizenship on many average men, endowed with little or no skill, I believe that either the Rhegians or Locrians or Neapolitans or Tarentines were more willing to give (this) man, enjoying the highest renown for genius, that which they were accustomed to grant also to the theatrical artists.

What (else is there to say)? Others, not only after his citizenship (had been) given, but also after the Papiian law, somehow stole into the registers of those confederate cities!

Ought this man to be rejected, who does not avail himself of those records in which he was enrolled, because he wished himself to be a Heracleean?

15. Finally, Grattius, you demand our census records. You, of course, are unaware of the fact that he (Archias) was in the army with the illustrious commander in chief, Lucius Lucullus, at the time of the censors nearest (to his citizenship); that at the

censor, -is, m (*fr.* censeo, 2, to assess): censor, 49, d;

FOR ARCHIAS

oribus cum eodem quaestore fuisse in Asia; primis Julio et Crasso nullam populi partem esse censam; *sed* (quoniam census non jus civitatis confirmat, *ac* tantum modo indicat eum, qui sit census), *ita* se jam tum gessisse pro cive; eis temporibus, quibus tu criminariis, ne ipsius quidem iudicio in civium Romanorum jure esse versatum.

Et testamentum saepe fecit nostris legibus et adiit hereditates civium Romanorum et *in* beneficiis ad aerarium delatus est a L. Lucullo proconsule.

Quaere argumenta, si potes: nunquam hic neque *suo* neque *amicorum* iudicio revincetur.

quaestore fuisse in Asia; primis Julio et Crasso nullam populi partem esse censam; *ac* (quoniam census non confirmat jus civitatis, *sed* tantum modo indicat eum, qui sit census), *Archiam* jam tunc se pro cive gessisse; *dein* eis temporibus, quibus tu criminariis, ne *tuo* ipsius quidem iudicio in civium Romanorum jure esse *te* versatum.

Demum testamentum saepe *Archias* fecit legibus nostris et adiit hereditates civium Romanorum et *pro* beneficiis *remunerandis* ad aerarium est delatus a proconsule *Lucio Lucullo*.

Quaere *modo* argumenta, si *quae* potes: nunquam *enim* hic neque *tuo* neque *inimicorum* revincetur iudicio.

PRO ARCHIA.

VOCABULARY

quaestor, -is, m (fr. quaero, 3, to seek): treasurer, quaestor, paymaster, 115
gero, 3, gessi, gestum: to carry, wear; se gerere: to act as, carry on oneself, behave
criminator, 1: to accuse, 133, b
tuo ipsius, 30, c"
testamentum, 2 (fr. testor, 1, to witness): will, testament, 49, e
adeo, 4: to go to, enter, 42, 3; 61, a
hereditas, -tatis, f: heritage, inheritance
remuneror, 1: to recompense, reward, 118, a
aerarium, 2 (fr. aes, aeris, n, copper, bronze): treasury, 49, n
defero, 3, detuli, delatum: to bring down or to
revinco, 3, -vici, -victum: to conquer, suppress, convict
iudicium, 2: trial, law-suit

TRANSLATION

time of the previous censors he was with the same (Lucullus being) quaestor in Asia; that at the time of the first (named assessors), Julius and Crassus, no part of the people was assessed; moreover, (you are unaware of it) that (because the assessment does not confirm the right of citizenship, but only indicates who was assessed), Archias acted at that time as a citizen; that concerning those times for which you accuse (him), indeed by your own judgment, you are not versed in the rights of Roman citizens.

Then, Archias often made a will by our laws, and received inheritances of Roman citizens; moreover, he was brought by Lucullus, the proconsul, to the treasury for rewards.

Well, seek arguments, if you can find any, for this man will never be convicted, neither by your law-suit, nor by that of (any) enemies.

18. CAJUS SALLUSTIUS CRISPUS

86 - 34 B.C.

Course 97

Monograph Writer

WAR WITH JUGURTHA

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

A. Postquam rex finem loquendi fecit, legati Jugurthae largitione magis quam causa freti paucis re-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

A. Postquam rex finem loquendi fecit, legati Jugurthae largitione magis quam causa *dicenda* freti

EX BELLO JUGURTHINO.

VOCABULARY

A. largitio, -nis, f (fr. largior, 4, to give abundantly): giving freely, bribery, 93, b
fretus, 3: relying on, trusting in (with abl.)

TRANSLATION

A. After the king (Adherbal) finished his speech, the legates of Jugurtha, relying on their bribery more

WAR WITH JUGURTHA

spondent Hiempsalem ob saevitiam suam interfectum; Adherbalem bellum ultro inferentem, postquam superatus sit, queri, quod injuriam facere nequisset; Jugurtham ab senatu petere, ne se alium putarent ac Numantiae cognitus esset, neu verba inimici ante facta sua ponerent. Deinde utrique curia egrediuntur.

Senatus statim consulitur. Fautores legatorum, praeterea magna pars gratia depravata Adherbalis dicta contemnere, Jugurthae virtutem extollere laudibus; gratia, voce, denique omnibus modis pro alieno scelere et flagitio sua quasi pro gloria nitebantur.

B. At contra pauci, quibus bonum et aequum divitiis carius erat, subveniendum Adherbali et Hiempsalis mortem severe vindicandam censebant.

Sed ex omnibus maxime Aemilius Scaurus homo nobilis, impiger, factiosus, avidus potentiae, honoris,

paucis respondent Hiempsalem ob saevitiam suam interfectum esse; Adherbalem bellum ultro inferentem, postquam superatus esset, queri, quod injuriam facere nequisset; demum Jugurtham a senatu petere, ne eum alium putarent, quam Numantiae cognitus esset, neque verba inimici factis ejus anteponebant. Deinde utrique curia egrediuntur.

Senatus statim consulitur. Fautores legatorum, praeterea magna pars opibus depravata contemnetes Adherbalis dicta virtutem Jugurthae laudibus extollunt atque potentia, voce, denique omnibus modis pro alieno scelere ac flagitio quasi sua pro gloria annuntiantur.

B. At contra pauci, quibus bonum et aequum divitiis carius erat, subveniendum Adherbali et Hiempsalis mortem severe vindicandam censebant.

Ex omnibus autem maxime agitabat Aemilius Scaurus homo nobilis, impiger, factiosus, avidus

EX BELLO JUGURTHINO.

VOCABULARY

respondent, 101
saevitia, 1 (fr. saevus, 3, raging, wild): ferocity, cruelty, 49, u
interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to kill
bellum inferre: to start a war
supero, 1: to conquer; defeat, 99; 101
queror, 3, questum: to complain, 61
nequeo: to be unable, 42, 3g; 102, 9; 131, b
alium quam, 87
antepono, 3, -posui, -situm: to prefer, 79

consulo, 3, -lui, -litum: to consult, 81; 101
fautor, -is, m (fr. faveo, 2, -vi, fautum, to warm): favorer, protector, 49, d
(ops), opis, f: power, influence, riches
depravo, 1: to pervert, spoil, corrupt
contemno, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: to contemn, 101 (not 101, a)
extollo, 3, extuli, elatum: to lift up, extol, 101
scelus, -leris, n: misdeed, heinous deed, villainy
flagitium, 2: shameful crime, infamy

B. contra: on the contrary
divitiae, -arum (fr. dives, -vitis, rich): riches
subvenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to succor, aid, 79
vindico, 1: to claim, avenge, punish

impiger, -gra, -grum: unsloughful, active
factiosus, 3 (fr. factio, -nis, f, political party): fond of power, factious, 49, t
avidus, 3: greedy, 66, b

TRANSLATION

than on the exposition of their case, replied with few words that Hiempsal had been killed on account of his ferocity; that Adherbal was complaining that, having started a war of his own accord, he could not do any harm, after he had been defeated; that Jugurtha was asking the Senate not to think him other than he was known at Numantia, and not to prefer the words of his enemies to his deeds. Thereafter, both parties left the curia.

The senate was immediately consulted. Those in favor and a great part (of the senators) corrupted by bribery, despising the words of Adherbal, with praise extolled the virtues of Jugurtha; moreover, with influence, speech and finally in every way, they fought for the villainy and infamy of an alien as if for their own glory.

annitor, emph. form of nitor, 3, nisum: to lean upon strive after, 101; Cf. 101, a

B. On the other hand, those few to whom what was just and right was dearer than wealth, resolved to aid Adherbal and severely avenge the death of Hiempsal.

Of them all, Aemilius Scaurus was the most active (in discussion). (He was) one of the nobility, energetic, factious, greedy for power, honor, and

WAR WITH JUGURTHA

divitiarum, ceterum vitia sua callide occultans.

Is postquam videt regis largitionem famosam impudentemque, quod in tali re solet, veritus, ne polluta licentia invidiam accenderet, animum a consueta libidine continuit. (C. 15)

C. Quorum Jugurtha accepta oratione respondit sibi neque majus quidquam, neque carius auctoritate senatus esse; ab adulescentia sua ita se enisum, ut ab optimo quoque probaretur; ceterum, quo plura bene atque strenue fecisset, eo animum suum injuriam minus tolerare; Adherbalem dolis vitae suae insidiatum, quod ubi comperisset, sceleri ejus obviam isse; populum Romanum neque recte neque pro bono facturum, si ab jure gentium sese prohibuerit; postremo de omnibus rebus legatos Romam brevi missurum. (C. 22)

potentiae, honoris atque divitiarum, ceterum vitia sua callide occultans.

Videns enim Jugurthae largitionem famosam impudentemque, quod in tali re fieri solet, veritusque, ne venali justitia invidiam accenderet, animum a consueta libidine continuit.

C. Quorum oratione accepta Jugurtha respondit sibi neque majus quidquam, neque carius auctoritate senatus esse; ab adulescentia sua ita se esse enisum, ut ab optimo quoque probaretur; ceterum, quo plura bene atque strenue fecisset, eo minus ab animo suo tolerari injuriam; Adherbalem dolis vitae suae insidiatum, quod ubi comperisset, sceleri ejus obviam iisse; populum Romanum neque recte neque pro bono a se praestito facturum, si a jure gentium eum prohiberet; postremo de omnibus rebus legatos Romam brevi missurum.

EX BELLO JUGURTHINO.

VOCABULARY

ceterum (fr. ceterus, 3, the rest): otherwise, 28, d;
vitium, 2: fault, vice, crime (Coll. 39, 1)
callidus, 3: clever, cunning, 28, a

[polluo, 3, -lui, -lutum: to defile, pollute]
venalis, 2: on sale, venal
consuesco, 3, -suevi, -suetum: to be accustomed
invidia, 1: envy
accendo, 3, -ndi, -nsu: to kindle, 124, a
libido, -dinis, f: lust, violent desire

C. enitor, 3, enisum: to strive, struggle, 100
probo, 1: to try, test, approve, 124, b
strenuus, 3: brisk, vigorous, strenuous, 28, a
tolero, 1: to bear, endure, 58; 35, a
dolus, 2: fraud, deceit, guile
insidior, 1: to lie in ambush, plot against, 80, e
comperio(r), 4, -ri, -rtum: to find out, discover
obviam, adv. (fr. ob viam): against one's way, 78
prohibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: to hold back, hinder, 135, b
postremo (fr. postremus, 3, hindmost): finally, 27, f
brevi or brevi tempore: shortly, in a short time, 95

TRANSLATION

wealth, otherwise concealing his vices cunningly.
occulto, 1: to hide, conceal

For, seeing the notorious and shameless bribery of Jugurtha, which is customary in such cases, and fearing lest he enkindle envy through his venal justice, he restrained his habitual greediness.

contineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to keep together, restrain

C. Having received their reply, Jugurtha answered that there was nothing either greater or dearer to him than the authority of the senate; that he strove from his youth to be esteemed even by the best man as well; that, for the rest, the more good and brave things he achieved, the less harm his soul would suffer; that Adherbal fraudulently lay in ambush for his life, hence, as soon as he became aware of it, he punished his crime; that the Roman people would neither act justly, nor would they reward his exploits, if they would check him in the right of nations; finally, that he would shortly send legates to Rome concerning all these affairs.

The most prolific writer*

THE FIRST LATIN DICTIONARY

Excerpts

With archaisms

1. Quemadmodum vocabula essent imposita rebus in lingua Latina, sex libreis exponere institui. De his treis, ante hunc feci quos, Septimio misi. In his ad te scribam.

2. Incipiam de locis sub ipsius loci origine.

LOCUS est, ubi *quid* LOCATUM esse potest, ut nunc dicunt COLLOCATUM. Veteres id dicere solebant, apparet apud Plautum: "Filiam habeo grandem, cassam dote, atque ILLOCABILEM; neque eam queo LOCARE cuiquam." LOCA natura prima duo: CAELUM et TERRA. CAELI dicuntur LOCA supera.

3. DIVES a DIVO, qui ut DEUS nihil indigere videtur.

Ab AURIBUS videntur dicta verba: AUDIO et AUSCULTO; audio ab AVEO, *quod* auribus AVEMUS discere semper, quod Ennius videtur etymon ostendere velle in Alexandro, cum ait: "Jamdudum *ab* ludeis animus atque AURES AVENT AVIDE expectantes nuntium."

Without archaisms

1. Quemadmodum vocabula essent imposita rebus in lingua Latina, sex libris exponere institui. De his tres, quos ante hos feci, Septimio misi. In his ad te scribam.

2. Incipiam de locis sub ipsius loci origine.

LOCUS est, ubi *aliquid* LOCATUM esse potest, ut nunc dicunt COLLOCATUM. Veteres id dicere solebant, *ut* apparet apud Plautum: "Filiam habeo grandem, cassam dote, atque ILLOCABILEM; neque eam queo LOCARE cuiquam." LOCA natura prima *sunt* duo: CAELUM et TERRA. CAELI dicuntur LOCA supera.

3. DIVES a DIVO, qui ut DEUS nihil indigere videtur.

Ab AURIBUS videntur dicta *esse* verba: AUDIO et AUSCULTO; ab audio *vero* AVEO, *quia* auribus AVEMUS discere semper, quod etymon Ennius videtur ostendere velle in Alexandro, cum ait: "Jamdudum animus atque AURES AVENT AVIDE *de* ludis expectantes nuntium."

DE LINGUA LATINA AD M. T. CICERONEM (L. IV — VI.)

VOCABULARY

1. quem ad modum or quo modo: *how*, 132
vocabulum, 2: *word, vocable*
impono, 3, -sui, -situm: *to give, apply, put on*, 79
expono, 3, -sui, -situm: *to expose, explain*
instituo, 3, -ui, -tutum: *to build, determine, settle*

2. loco, 1: *to place*, 50, c'

colloco, 1: *to place side by side, collocate*, 50, c'
cassus, 3: *empty, vain; with abl.: without*, 83
dos, dotis, f: *dowry*, 22, d; 23, Ia
illocabilis, 2: *unplaceable*, 49, A1
super, 3: *upper*, 27, f

3. divus, 3: *divine*

auris, -is, f: *ear, hearing*
ausculto, 1: *to overhear*
aveo, 2, -, -, *obsolete: to yearn*
(h)ave, *Punic verb: be well, hail*, 47
etymon, 2, n: *the true sense of a word*, 20
jamdudum: *since a long time*
nuntius, 2: *report, herald*

* In his long life he wrote six or seven hundred volumes on all kinds of subjects, but nearly all of them are lost, and this fact is a sufficient criticism of their worth.

TRANSLATION

1. I determined to explain in six books how names were given to things in the Latin language. I sent to Septimius three of these, which I completed before these (three). In these I am writing to you.

2. I shall begin with places (giving) the etymology of the very (word) place.

PLACE is where something can be PLACED, COLLOCATED, as they now say. That the ancients used to say this, is apparent in Plautus: "I have a grown-up daughter without dowry and UNPLACEABLE; nor can I PLACE her (in marriage) with anyone." By nature there are two PLACES (of) first (rank): HEAVEN and EARTH. The HEAVENS are called the upper PLACES.

3. (GOODS, WEALTH), WEALTHY, comes from GODLY, which like a GOD we know wants nothing.

It seems that HEAR and OVERHEAR come from EARS; and from hear comes YEARN, because we YEARN to learn always (by hearing) through our ears; thus Ennius seems to wish to demonstrate this etymon in his Alexander, saying: "Since a long while our minds and EARS are YEARNING with AVIDITY, awaiting the report about the games."

THE FIRST LATIN DICTIONARY

4. In hoc libro dicam de poëticeis vocabuleis et eorum originibus, in quæis multa difficilia.

LUMEN JUBARVE in caelo, ut leo habet in capite JUBAM. Itaque ait Pacuvius: "exorto JUBARE, NOCTIS decurso itinere". Apud Plautum in Parasito Piger: "Hic bene potus primo CREPUSCULO". CREPUSCULUM dictum a Sabineis, et *id* dubium tempus, NOCTIS an diei sit. Itaque in Condalio est: "Tam CREPUSCULO, ut ament lampades accendere." Ideo dubiae res CREPERAE dictae.

4. In hoc libro dicam *et* de poëticeis vocabulis et eorum originibus, in quibus multa *sunt* difficilia.

LUMEN JUBARQUE in caelo, ut leo habet in capite JUBAM. Sicque Pacuvius ait: "exorto JUBARE, noctis decurso itinere". Apud Plautum *vero* in Parasito Pigo: "Hic bene potus primo CREPUSCULO". CREPUSCULUM dictum a Sabinis, et *dubium est*, noctis tempus an diei sit. Sic enim in Condalio est: "Tali CREPUSCULO, ut ament lampades accendere." Ideo dubiae res CREPERAE dictae *sunt*.

DE LINGUA LATINA AD M. T. CICERONEM (L. IV — VI.)

VOCABULARY

4. poëticus, 3: *poetical, of poetry*

lumen, -minis, n: *light*
 jubar, -is, n: *radiance, beam*
 juba, 1: *mane*
 exorior, 4, -ortum: *to rise, appear*, 114, b
 decurro, 3, -curri, -cursum: *to run down, finish*, 114, b
 parasitus, 2: *parasite*
 piger, -gra, -grum: *lazy*
 poto, 1, -tavi, po(ta)tum: *to drink*, 36, e
 crepusculum, 2: *twilight*, 95
 [creper(us), 3, *obsolete Sabine word: hazy, uncertain, doubtful*]

TRANSLATION

4. In this book I am going to treat also about *poetical words and their origin, in which there are many difficulties.*

LIGHT and RADIANCE in the sky are as the (RADIANT) MANE on the head of the lion. Hence, Pacuvius says: "At the appearance of LIGHT and the disappearance of night." Or, again Plautus in the *Lazy Parasite*: "He is quite drunk at early TWILIGHT." It was called TWILIGHT by the Sabines; it is an uncertain time, whether it is of day or night. For in Condalius it reads: "In such a GLOOM that people feel like lighting a lamp." Hence, things uncertain are called HAZY.

THE FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR

Excerpts

With archaisms

1. Quom oratio natura tripartita esset, ut superioribus libris ostendi, ejus prima pars, quemadmodum vocabula rebus essent imposita; secunda, quo

Without archaisms

1. Cum grammatica natura tripartita sit, ut superioribus libris ostendi, ejus prima pars est (DICTIONARY), quemadmodum vocabula rebus fuerint imposita; secunda est (MORPHOLOGY), quo pac-

DE LINGUA LATINA (L. VII — IX.)

VOCABULARY

1. [oratio, -nis, f: *speech, prayer*]
 grammatica, 1, *Greek: grammar*
 tripartitus, 3: *divided into three parts*
 super(us), 3: *upper*, 27, f; 93, a
 ostendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to show*
 pactum, 2 (*fr. paciscor*, 3, *pactum, to contract*):
agreement, treaty, manner, way, 114, b; 132
 declino, 1: *to decline*

TRANSLATION

1. Since by its nature grammar is divided into three parts, as I showed in the former books, of which the first part (THE DICTIONARY) is (an exposition of) how names were given to things; the second (THE INFLECTION), (of) how those declined were differentiated (in the various cases);

discrimen, -minis, n: *difference, danger*, 23, III

THE FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR

pacto *de his* declinata in discrimina *ierunt*; *tertia*, *ut ea* inter se ratione conjuncta sententiam efferant.

2. *Dividitur oratio* in quattuor *partes*: unam, quae habet casus; alteram, quae habet tempora; *et* tertiam, quae habet neutrum; *et* quartam, in qua est utrumque. Has vocant quidam *appellandei*, *dicendei*, *adminiculandei*, *jungendei*.

Appellandei dicitur, *ut* HOMO *et* NESTOR; *dicendei*, *ut* SCRIBO *et* LEGO; *adminiculandei*, *ut* DOCTE *et* COMMUNE; *jungendei*, *ut*, ATQUE.

Appellandei partes sunt quattuor, *e* *quibus* dicta a quibusdam: *provocabula*, *quae sunt*, *ut* QUISQUE; *vocabula*, *ut* SCUTUM, GLADIUS; *nomina*, *ut* ROMULUS, REMUS; *pronomina*, *ut* HIC, HAEC.

3. Multa a duobus *capitibus* recti casuum confluunt in obliquum unum; nam ab *his* *rectis*: HEC COELI, HAE COELIAE fit: HEIS COELIIS.

to haec declinata in discrimina *ierint*; *tertia vero est* (SYNTAX), *qua* ratione inter se conjuncta sententiam efferant.

2. *Vocabula vero* dividuntur in quattuor *classes*: unam, quae habet casus (NOUNS); alteram, quae habet tempora (VERBS); tertiam, quae habet neutrum (ADVERBS); *et* quartam, in qua est utrumque (CONJUNCTIONS). Has quidam vocant: *appellandi*, *dicendi*, *jungendi et adminiculandi partes*.

Appellandi pars est e.g. HOMO *vel* NESTOR; *dicendi pars*, *ut* SCRIBO *vel* LEGO; *adminiculandi pars*, *ut* DOCTE *vel* COMMUNE; *jungendi demum partes sunt*, *ut* UT, ATQUE.

Appellandi partes porro sunt iterum quattuor, quae a quibusdam *sunt* dicta: *provocabula* (INDEFINITE PRONOUNS), *ut* QUISQUE; *vocabula* (NOUNS), *ut* SCUTUM, GLADIUS; *nomina* (PROPER NOUNS), *ut* ROMULUS, REMUS; *et* *pronomina* (PRONOUNS), *ut* HIC, HAEC.

3. Multa *nomina* a duabus *rectorum casuum terminationibus* confluunt in obliquam unam; nam ab *his* *rectis*: HI COELI, HAE COELIAE fit; HIS COELIIS.

DE LINGUA LATINA (L. VII — IX.)

VOCABULARY

ratio, -nis, f (*fr. reor*, 2, *ratum*, *to think*): *reason*, *procedure*, *manner*, 49, a
effero, 3, *extuli*, *elatum*: *to carry out*, *bring forth*, 49, A2; 132

2. *neuter*, -tra, -trum: *neither*, 30, k
appello, 1: *to address*, *appeal*, *name*, *call*, 117, c
jungo, 3, *junxi*, *junctum*: *to join*, *connect*, 117, c
adminiculo, 1: *to support*, *aid*, *help*, 117, c

e.g., *exempli gratia*: *for instance*
commodus, 3: *easy*, *snug*, 28, a
provocabulum, 2, *which stands for a word*, *formed like pronomen*
scutum, 2: *(a large quadrangular) shield*
gladius, 2: *(a short) sword*

3. *rectus*, 3: *direct*
confluo, 3, -fluxi, -fluctum: *to flow together*
Coelius, 3: *Coelian*

TRANSLATION

the third (THE SYNTAX), (of) *how those combined form a sentence*.

2. *Then words are divided into four classes: one, which has cases, (NOUNS); the second, which has tenses, (VERBS); the third, which has neither, (ADVERBS); the fourth, which has both, (CONJUNCTIONS). Some call these: parts of naming, saying, joining, and helping.*

A part of naming is e.g., MAN or NESTOR; a part of saying is, e.g., I WRITE, or I READ; a part of helping is, e.g., WISELY or EASILY; finally parts of joining are, e.g., AS, AND.

Parts of naming are again four, named by some: provocabula (INDEFINITE PRONOUNS), such as: EVERY ONE; vocabula (NOUNS), such as: SHIELD or SWORD; nomina (PROPER NOUNS), as: ROMULUS or REMUS; and pronomina (PRONOUNS), as: THIS (MAN) or THIS (WOMAN).

3. *Many nouns from two endings of direct cases flow together into one oblique form; for, from these direct cases, HI COELII, HAE COELIAE there will be (in the oblique cases only): HIS COELIIS.*

THE FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR

Duobus modis imponitur vocabulum, aut *re singulari*, aut *multitudine*: singulari, ut CICER; *multitudine*, ut SCALAE; nec dubium est, quin ordo declinationum, in quo res singulares declinantur, solae ab singulari aliquo casu proficiscantur, ut CICER, CICERI, CICERIS; item contra in eo ordine, qui *multitudinis* erit solum, ut SCALAE, SCALEIS, SCALAS.

Duobus modis imponitur vocabulum, aut *in numero singulari*, aut *in plurali*: *in singulari*, ut CICER; *in plurali*, ut SCALAE; nec est dubium, quin ordo declinationum, in quo res singulares declinantur, solae a singulari aliquo casu proficiscantur, ut CICER, CICERI, CICERIS; item contra in eodem ordine, qui *pluralis* erit solum, ut SCALAE, SCALIS, SCALAS.

DE LINGUA LATINA (L. VII — IX.)

VOCABULARY

[multitudo, -dinis, f: crowd, large number]

cicer, -is, n: *pea*, 23, I, b

scalae, -arum: *ladder, staircase*

proficiscor, 3, -fectum: *to depart, start*

TRANSLATION

The words can be given in two ways, either in the singular number or in the plural; in the singular, as CICER; in the plural, as SCALAE; there is no doubt that the way of the declensions, in which words in the singular are declined, starts only from a singular case, as: CICER, CICERI, CICERIS; likewise, on the other hand, in that order, which will be just the plural, as: SCALAE, SCALIS, SCALAS.

20. CORNELIUS NEPOS

74 - 24 B.C.

Course 67

Biographer

TIMOLEON, THE CORINTHIAN

Excerpts

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Sine dubio magnus omnium iudicio hic vir exstitit. Nam huic uni contigit, quod nescio, an nulli, ut ex patriam, in qua erat natus, oppressam a tyranno liberaret et a Syracusanis jam inveteratam servitatem depelleret.

Sed in his rebus non simplici fortuna conflictatus est; et *id*, quod difficilius putatur, multo sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortunam.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Sine dubio magnus omnium iudicio hic vir exstitit. Nam huic uni contigit, quod nescio, an ulli, ut et patriam, in qua esset natus, oppressam a tyranno liberaret et a Syracusanis jam inveteratam servitatem depelleret.

Sed in his rebus non simplici fortuna est conflictatus; et, quod difficilius putatur, multo sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortunam.

DE TIMOLEONTE CORINTHIO.

VOCABULARY

1. Timoleon, -ntis, Timophanes, -nis, *two Corinthians*
 exsisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum: *to arise, come into existence*
 contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: *to touch, reach, happen*, 48, b
 nascor, 3, natum: *to be born*, 120, c3; Cf. 120, d
 opprimo, 3, -pressi, -pressum: *to oppress*
 tyrannus, 2: *tyrant*, 90
 Syracusanus, 3: *of Syracuse, Syracusan*, 49, 2
 invetero, 1: *to make old; in passive: grow old*
 servitus, -tutis, f (*fr. servus, 2, slave*): *slavery*, 49, u
 depello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: *to drive away, expel*, 124, b
 conflicto, 1: *to combat with; pass.: much troubled*

TRANSLATION

1. Without any doubt, this man became great in the opinion of everybody. For it befell him only, (and) I hardly think that (it befell) any other man to free his native country oppressed by a tyrant, and to remove the longstanding servitude of the Syracusans.

But in these affairs he was afflicted by no simple luck; and, what is to be considered more difficult, he bore his good fortune much more wisely than his bad fortune.

secundus, 3: *second, following, favorable*
 adversus, 3: *opposite, contrary, unfavorable*

TIMOLEON, THE CORINTHIAN

2. Nam cum frater ejus Timophanes dux a Corinthiis delectus tyrannidem per milites mercenarios occupasset particepsque regni ipse posset esse, tantum afuit a societate sceleris, ut antetulerit civium suorum libertatem fratris salutem, et parere legibus quam imperare patriae satius duxerit.

Hac mente per haruspice[m] communemque affinem, cui soror ex isdem parentibus nata nupta erat, fratrem tyrannum interficiendum curavit.

3. Hoc praeclarissimum ejus factum non pari modo probatum est ab omnibus. Nonnulli enim laesam ab eo pietatem putabant. Mater post id factum neque domum ad se filium admisit, neque aspexit, quin fratricidam impiumque detestans compellaret.

Quibus rebus ille adeo est commotus, ut nonnunquam vitae finem facere voluerit, atque ex ingratorum hominum conspectu morte decedere. (C. 1)

4. Huic quidam Laphystius homo petulans et ingratus, vadimonium cum vellet imponere, quod cum

2. Nam cum frater ejus Timophanes dux a Corinthiis delectus tyrannidem per milites mercenarios occupasset particepsque regni ipse esse posset, tantum afuit a participatione sceleris, ut praeferret civium suorum libertatem fratris salutem, et parere legibus quam imperare patriae satius duceret.

Hac mente per haruspice[m] communemque affinem, cui soror ex iisdem parentibus nata nupta erat, fratrem tyrannum interficiendum curavit.

3. Hoc praeclarissimum ejus factum non pari modo ab omnibus est probatum. Nonnulli enim laesam ab eo pietatem putabant. Mater post id factum neque domum ad se filium admisit, neque aspexit, quin fratricidam impiumque detestans compellaret.

Quibus rebus adeo est commotus, ut nonnunquam vitae finem facere atque ex ingratorum hominum conspectu morte decedere vellet.

4. Huic quidam Laphystius homo petulans et ingratus, vadimonium cum vellet imponere, ut cum eo

DE TIMOLEONTE CORINTHIO.

VOCABULARY

2. deligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: to elect, pick out, 59, B
Corinthius, 3: of Corinthus, Corinthian, 49, z
tyrannis, -nidis, f (fr. tyrannus, 2): tyranny
mercenarius, 3 (fr. merces, -edis, f, hire): hired, 49, m
occupo, 1: to take possession of, 125, a
absum, -afui, -, : to be away or far, 41, 1; 49, A2
pareo, 2, parui, paritum: to appear, obey, 80, l
satius, (fr. satis, enough): rather, better, 28, f
duco, 3, duxi, ductum: to draw, lead, reckon, esteem,
99, b; 68, b

haruspex, -pice, m: soothsayer, 49, i
affinis, 2: neighboring, related in marriage
nubo, 3, nupsi, nuptum: to marry a man, 80, k
interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to kill
curo, 1, to care for, (this is the Latin factitive verb:

3. praeclarus, 3: very bright, brilliant, 27, a; 49, A1
par, -is: equal, like, 88

probo, 1: to prove, approve

laedo, 3, laedi, laesum: to injure, hurt, offend

fratricida, 1: killer of one's own brother, 49, A

detesto, 1: to curse, execrate, detest

compello, 1: to address, accost, call by name, 59, A;
121, C

conspicuo, 4 (fr. conspicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum,
to look at): look, sight, 90

4. Laphystius, 2, a Syracusan

petulans, -ntis: quarrelsome, aggressive

vadimonium, 2: bail, recognizance to appear before
a court

TRANSLATION

2. For, when Timophanes, his brother, commander in chief, elected by the Corinthians, had taken possession of the tyranny by hired soldiers, and he himself had the possibility of sharing the reign, he was so far from the participation in this crime, that he preferred the liberty of his fellow citizens to the welfare of his brother, and reckoned it better to obey the laws than to reign over his fatherland.

In this belief, through the soothsayer, their common brother-in-law, whom their sister, born from the same parents, had married, he ordered his brother, the tyrant, to be killed.

domum aedificari, or aedificandam curavit: he had a house built)

3. This admirable deed of his was not equally approved by all men.

For some thought that he failed against brotherly love. Even his mother never admitted him, her son, to her home after this deed, nor looked at him without cursing him and calling him a godless man and a fraticide.

He was so much affected by this that he wished to put an end to his life and to depart by death from the sight of ungrateful men.

4. When Laphystius, a quarrelsome and ungrateful man, wished to impose on him the obligation of appearing before the court to deal with him accord-

TIMOLEON, THE CORINTHIAN

illo se lege agere diceret, et complures concurrissent, qui procacitatem hominis manibus coërcere conarentur, Timoleon oravit homines, ne id facerent; namque id ut Laphystio et cuivis liceret; se maximos labores summaque adisse pericula; hanc enim speciem libertatis esse, si omnibus, quod quisque vellet, legibus experiri liceret.

(C. 5)

lege ageret, et complures concurrissent, qui procacitatem hominis manibus coërcere conarentur, Timoleon homines rogavit, ne ita agerent, cum id et Laphystio et cuivis liceret, dicens eam enim esse speciem libertatis, ut omnibus, quod quisque vellet, legibus experiri liceret; et se jam majores labores summaque adisse pericula.

DE TIMOLEONTE CORINTHIO.

VOCABULARY

complures: *very many, several, 26, b*
 procacitas, -tatis, f (fr. procax, -caxis, insolent): *impudence, 49, u*
 coërceo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to enclose, restrain*
 conor, 1: *to strive, endeavor, 35, f; 120, c1*
 periculum, 2: *danger, peril*
 experior, 4, -pertum: *to try, prove, test; cum liceret, adeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: to go, undergo, 42, 3 (124, b*

TRANSLATION

ing to the laws, and several flocked together, and intended to punish the impudence of this man with their hands, Timoleon asked them not to do so, as that was permitted to Laphystius and as well to any man, stating that was the idea of liberty, that every one might try anything by all the laws; and that he had already faced greater difficulties, even extreme perils.

21. PUBLIUS VERGILIUS MARO

70 - 19 B.C.

Course 44

The Greatest Latin Epic Poet

Virgil's and Horace's great merit is that they embellished the Latin prose with elegant phrases, but by standardizing "ille" instead of the Ciceronian "is" for the third personal pronoun, they very unfavorably influenced the language of the common people, and even of many writers.

AENEID

BOOK I. Theme, invocation and Juno's hatred

*In hexameter ***In prose ***

1. Arma virumque cano, Troiae qui primis ab oris
 Italiam, fato profugus, Laviniaque venit
 litora, multum ille et terris jactatus et alto

1. Arma virumque cano, qui fato profugus ob
 immitem saevae Junonis iram vi superorum terra
 marique multum jactatus a Troiae oris in Italiam

AENEIS.

LIBER PRIMUS.

Thema, invocatio et Junonis ira.

VOCABULARY

1. Aeneis, -idis, f (fr. Aeneas, 1): *Aeneid, 49, s*
 arma, -orum, 2: *tools, weapons, war*
 fatum, 2 (fr. fari, 1, fatum, to speak): *fate, 93, a*
 profugus, 3 (fr. profugio, to flee): *fugitive, exiled,*
 ob: *on account of, 50, a (49, 1*
 superus, 3: *that above, 27, f; superi, -orum: gods*
 [ille, 3: *that, 30, b]*
 terra marique: *on land and sea*

TRANSLATION

1. Arms I sing and the man, who exiled by fate
 from the coast of Troy, and tossed about on sea and
 land by the power of those above, on account of the

[altus, 3: *high, deep, 26, f]*jacto, 1: *to toss*

* Cf. 139

** Cf. 13, I, II

AENEID

Theme, invocation and Juno's hatred

vi superum saevae memorem Junonis ob iram,
multa quoque et bello passus, dum conderet urbem.

8. Musa, mihi causas memora, quo numine laeso
quidve dolens regina deum tot volvere casus
insignem pietate virum, tot adire labores
impulerit. Tantaene animis caelestibus irae?

ad Lavinia littora venit primus et bello multa passus,
donec conderet urbem.

8. Musa, mihi causas memora, quo numine laeso
quidve dolens regina deorum tot solvere casus, tot
adire labores impulerit insignem pietate virum. Tan-
tane in animo caelestibus irae?

Juno excites Aeolus

65. Aeole, namque tibi divum pater atque homi-
num rex
et mulcere dedit fluctus et tollere vento,
gens inimica mihi Tyrrhenum navigat aequor
Ilium in Italiam portans victosque penates:

65. Aeole, cui deorum pater rexque hominum po-
testatem dedit ventis et mulcendi fluctus et tollendi,
en gens inimica mihi Tyrrhenum navigat mare Tro-
iam in Italiam portans devictorumque penates: in-

AENEIS.

Thema, invocatio et Junonis ira.

VOCABULARY

[memor, -is: *mindful*] immitis, 2: *harsh, pitiless, un-
relenting*

saevus, 3: *cruel, ruthless*

ira, 1: *anger, wrath*

Juno, -nis, *daughter of Saturn, sister and wife of
vis, f: force, power, 22, g* (Jupiter)

Lavinium, 2, *a town in Latium, built by Aeneas and
named after Lavinia, his second wife; Lavinius,
3: Lavinian*

8. memoro, 1: *to mention, recount, relate, 108, a*
numen, -inis, n: *nod, divine will, divinity*
laedo, 3, laesi, laesum: *to hurt, offend, 114, b*
doleo, 2, -lui, -lurus: *to suffer, pain, grieve*
[volvo, 3, volvi, volutum: *to roll*]
solvo, 3, -lvi, -lutum: *to solve, overcome*
adeo, 4, adivi, -itum: *to go, undergo, 42, 3; 61, a*
impello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: *to push, drive, impel, 132*
insignis, 2: *distinguished*
pietas, -atis, f: *piety, 84*

65. Aeolus, 2, *the ruler of winds*
[namque: *and because*]
[div(in)us, 3: *divine*]
[atque: *and (joins a greater thing)*]
-que: *and (joins an additional thing)*

ventus, 2: *wind*
mulceo, 3, -lsi, -lsum: *to stroke, appease, 117, c*
fluctus, 4 (fr. fluo, 3, -uxi, -uctum, *to flow*): *stream,
wave, 49, a*
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatus: *to lift, take away, 117, c*
en: *behold, see, 52, a*

TRANSLATION

*unrelenting wrath of the ruthless Juno, first came to
the Lavinian shores in Italy, having also suffered
much in war, till he founded the city.*

litus, lit(t)oris, n: *shore*
patior, 3, passum: *to suffer, 36, c*
donec: *till, 120, c2; [dum: while]*
condo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to establish, preserve, hide*

8. *Muse, tell me the reasons, what divinity having
been offended, or by what Juno, the queen of the
gods, (has been) grieved (that she) forced the man
of distinguished piety to endure so many disasters,
and to undergo so many hardships. Is there such
great wrath in the mind of gods?*

tantus, 3: *so great*
animus, 2: *mind*
caelestis, 2: *heavenly, 74*

Juno sollicitat Aeolum.

65. *Aeolus, to whom the father of gods and the
king of men has given the power both to appease
and to raise waves by winds, behold, a race, un-
friendly to me, sails the Tuscan sea, transporting
into Italy, Troy and the gods of those defeated;*

gens, -ntis, f: *clan, race*
inimicus, 3: *unfriendly, hurtful, 78*
Tyrrhenus, 3: *Etruscan, Tuscan*
[aequor, -is, n: *flat surface (of a desert or sea)*]
Penates, -(i)um, m: *family dieties, home*

AENEID

Juno excites Aeolus

incute vim ventis submersasque obrue puppes.

cute vim ventis submersasque obrue naves.

Aeneas in danger

102. Stridens aquilone procella
velum adversa ferit fluctusque ad sidera tollit.
Franguntur remi; tum prora avertit et undis
dat latus: insequitur cumulo praeruptus aquae mons.

102. Stridens aquilone procella velum
adversa ferit fluctusque ad sidera tollit. Franguntur
remi; tum proram avertit et undis latus *exponit*, in-
sequiturque cumulo mons aquae praeruptus.

108. Tres notus abreptas in saxa latentia torquet
110 tres eurus *ab alto*
in *brevia* et syrtes urget. Miserabile visu.

108. Tres *naves* notus abreptas in saxa latentia
torquet. 110... tres eurus *a mari in vada* et syr-
tes urget. Miserabile visu!

Neptune intervenes

124. Interea magno misceri murmure pontum

124. Interea magno misceri murmure pontum

AENEIS.

Juno sollicitat Aeolum.

VOCABULARY

incutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: *to strike in*, 79; 108, *a*
submergo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: *to plunge under, sink*
obruo, 3, -ui, -utum: *to cover over, bury*, 108, *a*
[puppis, -is, f: *poop or stern of a ship*]

TRANSLATION

*strike force into your winds and submerging, engulf
their ships.*

Aeneas in periculo.

102. strideo, 2, or strido, 3, -di, -: *to make a harsh*
aquilo, -onis, m: *north wind*, 93, *a* (noise)
procella, 1: *storm*
velum, 2: *sail*
ferio, 4: *to strike, beat, hit*
sidus, -deris, n: (*group of*) *stars*
remus, 2: *oar*
frango, 3, fregi, fractum: *to break*, 101
prora, 1: *proW (of a ship)*
averto, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to turn away*, 101
unda, 1: *wave*

102. *A storm, roaring with the north wind, strikes
against the sail and heaves the billows to the stars.
The oars are broken. Then it turns the proW side-
ways and exposes the flank to the waves, and a
steep mountain of water with its mass rushes up.*

expono, 3, -sui, -situm: *to put out, expose*, 78; 101
insequor, 3, -secutum: *to follow on*, 101
cumulus, 2: *heap*
praeruptus, 3: *steep*, (fr. praerumpo, 3, -rupi, -rup-
tum: *to break up in front*), 36, b

108. notus, 2: *south wind*
abripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum: *to snatch or tear away*,
saxum, 2: *rock* (36, b)
lateo, 2, -tui, -: *to be hid, concealed*, 36, *a*
torqueo, 2, -rsi, -rtum: *to twist, whirl, roll*, 101
110. eurus, 2: *south east wind*
[brevis, 2: *short*; brevia, -ium: *short shallows*]
vadum, 2: *shoal, shallow*
syrteis, -is, f: *sand bank*

108. *The south wind (having) snatched three
ships away, whirls them against hidden rocks. 110.
... (and) the east wind drives three (others) from
the sea upon shoals and sand banks. A piteous spec-
tacle!*

urgeo, 2, -rsi, -rsum: *to urge, drive*, 101
video, 2, vidi, visum: *to see*, 116, b; 84

Neptunus intercedit.

124. interea: *meanwhile*
misceo, 2, -scui, -ixtum: *to mix, mingle*
murmur, -is, n: *noise, murmur, roar*, 88 *

124. *Meanwhile, Neptune perceived that the deep*
pontus, 2: *depth, deep sea*

21. PUBLIUS VERGILIUS MARO

70 - 19 B.C.

Course 44

AENEID

Neptune intervenes

emissamque *hiemem* sensit Neptunus et imis *stagna* refusa vadis graviter commotus et alto prospiciens summa placidum caput extulit unda.

emissamque *procellam ac in imum ex vadis aquas* sensit Neptunus refusas graviter commotus, et ex alto prospiciens placidum caput *ex summa* extulit unda.

131. Eurum ad se Zephyrumque vocat, *dehinc talia* fatur:

Tantane vos generis tenuit fiducia vestri, *jam* caelum terramque meo sine numine, venti, miscere, et tantas audetis tollere moles?

131. Eurum ad se Zephyrumque vocat, *deinde sic*

fatur: Venti, tantane vos generis vestri fiducia tenet, *ut* caelum terramque miscere sine meo numine *audetis* et tantas tollere moles?

142. Sic ait et dicto citius *tumida aequora* placat. Cymothoe simul et Triton adnixus acuto detrudunt naves scopulo, levat ipse tridenti.

142. Sic ait et dicto citius placat *turbidum mare*. Cymothoe simul et Triton adnixus naves detrudunt scopulo acuto, *et ipse* levat tridente.

AENEIS.

Neptunus intercedit.

VOCABULARY

emitto, 3, -misi, -missum: to send out, 35, b
[hiems, -ĕmis, f: winter]
imus, 3 (fr. inferus, 3, that below): the lowest, 26, f;
27, f
[stagnum, 2: swamp]
sentio, 4, -nsi, -nsum: to feel, perceive, 57, 4
Neptunus, 2, the god of the sea, brother of Jupiter
refundo, 3, -fudi, -sum: to pour back, overflow, 35, b
gravis, 2: heavy, strong, 28, a
commoveo, 2, -movi, -motum: to shake, affect, 36, b

131. zephyrus, 2: (warm) west wind
[dehinc: from here, henceforth]; deinde: afterwards
for, 1, fatum: to speak, 44, 11
genus, -neris, n: birth, stock, kind, sort, gender
fiducia, 1: confidence, reliance, trust
teneo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to hold, have
audeo, 2, ausum: to dare, 31, d; 35, f

142. ajo: to say, 44, 9
dictum, 2 (fr. dico, 3, dixi, dictum, to say): saying,
word, speech, 87
citus, 3: quick, 28, a
placo, 1: to appease, calm, 101
[tumidus, 3: swell]
turbidus, 3: confused, wild, excited
Cymothoe, 1, one of Neptune's nymphs, 19, c
simul: together with
Triton, -is, m: Triton, son of Neptune
adnitor, 3, -nisum or -nixum: to lean upon, strive,
exert

TRANSLATION

sea was disturbed by a great uproar; that a storm arose and that the waters rushed to the bottom from shallows; (hence) greatly affected and looking forth from the deep, he raised his serene head from the highest wave.

(behold, 40
prospicio, 3, -spexi, -pectum: to look forward, see,
placidus, 3: quiet, gentle, serene
effero, 3, extuli, elatum: to bring out, lift up, rear
unda, 90

131. He calls to himself the East and West winds; then he addresses them thus: "Winds, are you kept by such a great confidence in your race as to dare without my divine command to embroil heaven and earth, and to raise such troubles?"

moles, -lis, f: mass, heap, trouble

142. He speaks thus, and more swiftly than his speech, appeases the stormy sea. Together, Cymothoe and Triton with exertion push the ships off from the sharp rocks, and he (Neptune) himself raises them with his trident.

detrudo, 3, -usi, -usum: to push down or away, 101
scopulus, 2: rock, 90
acutus, 3: sharp, keen
levo, 1: to arise, lift up, 101
tridens, -ntis, m: trident, 93, a

AENEID

Aeneas lands in Africa and finds Carthage

157. Defessi Aeneadae, quae proxima litora/ cursu contendunt petere et Libyae vertuntur ad oras.

305. At pius Aeneas per noctem plurima volvens, ut primum lux alma data est, exire locosque explorare novos, quas vento accesserit oras, quaerere constituit, sociisque exacta referre.

418. Corripuere viam interea, qua semita monstrat. Jamque ascendebant collem, qui plurimus urbi imminet adversasque aspectat desuper arces. Miratur molem Aeneas, magalia quondam; miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.

157. Defessi Aeneadae cursu contendunt proxima petere littora et vertuntur ad Libyae oras.

305. Tunc pius Aeneas per noctem mente plurima volvens, ut primum lux alma est orta, constituit exire locaque explorare nova et quaerere, ad quasnam vento accessisset oras, exactaque sociis referre.

418. Corripiunt interea viam, qua semita monstrat. Jamque ascendunt collem, qui urbi plurimum imminet adversamque desuper aspicit arcem. Miratur Aeneas aedes eorum, qui habebant magalia quondam; miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.

AENEIS.

Aeneas appellitur in Africam et reperit Carthaginem.

VOCABULARY

157. defetiscor, 3, defessum: to become tired
Aeneades, 1: descendant or companion of Aeneas, 19, c

cursus, 4 (fr. curro, 3, cucurri, cursum, to run): running, course, 93, a

contendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: to stretch, to strive, 101
proximus, 3: the next, 27, g

305. nox, noctis, f: night, 22, d
mens, -ntis, f: mind, 22, c; 93, a
plurimus, 3: very much, many, 27, e

ut primum: as soon as
lux, lucis, f: light, 22, d
almus, 3: nourishing, kind
orior, 4, ortum: to rise

exeo, 4: to go out, set out, 42, 3
constituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: to place, dispose, resolve
locus, 2, m: place, pl. loca, -orum; loci, -orum only in books

exploro, 1: to explore, discover, 57, 3
quinam, 3: who? what? 30, h

418. corripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum: to seize strongly, semita, 1: path (take up, 40; 101
monstro, 1: to show, point out, 101; qua, 96, a
jamque: and now

collis, -is, m: hill
ascendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to mount, ascend, 101
immineo, 2, -, -: to hang over, threaten, 101
adversus, 3: opposite; desuper: from above
aspicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum: to look at, see, behold [aspecto, 1, frequentative of aspicio, 49, j]

arx, arcis, f: fortress, citadel
aedis, -dis, f: temple, house
miror, 1: to admire, 101
magalia, ium, n (Punic word): huts, tents

Page ninety eight

TRANSLATION

157. Fatigued, the Trojans strive in their course to reach the nearest shores, and turn to the coasts of Lybia.

verto, 3, -rti, -rsum: to turn, 101

Lybia, 1: Lybia

ora, 1: border, coast, country

305. Now, the devout Aeneas pondering over many things in the night, resolved as soon as kind light arose to get out and to explore the new land and to find out to what country he had been driven by the winds, and to inform his companions of his discoveries.

accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go to, approach, 132

socius, 2: companion

exigo, 3, -egi, -actum: to drive away, complete, finish, 36, b

refero, 3, retuli, relatum: to bring back, relate, 79; 57, 3

418. Meanwhile, they take the direction toward which the path is pointing. Now they ascend the hill that high above overhangs the city and looks toward the opposite citadel. Aeneas admires the buildings of those who formerly had only huts. He admires the gates, the bustle, and the pavements of their streets.

quondam: once upon a time

porta, 1: gate

strepitus, 4 (fr. strepo, 3, -ui, -itum, to make noise): noise, bustle

stratum, 2 (fr. sterno, 3, stravi, stratum, to spread): pavement, 26, f

21. PUBLIUS VERGILIUS MARO

70-19 B.C.

Course 44

AENEID

Aeneas lands in Africa and finds Carthage

437. O fortunati, quorum jam moenia surgunt,
Aeneas ait et fastigia suspicit urbis.

437. O fortunati, quorum jam moenia surgunt, *in-*
quit Aeneas et fastigia suspicit urbis.

Aeneas sees Dido

494. Haec dum Dardanio Aeneae miranda videntur,
dum stupet obtutuque haeret defixus in uno,
regina ad templum forma pulcherrima Dido
incessit magna juvenum stipante caterva.

494. Haec dum Dardanio Aeneae miranda videntur,
dum stupet haeretque obtutu defixo, regina forma
pulcherrima Dido ad templum incedit magna juvenum
stipante caterva.

Dido welcomes Aeneas and asks him to relate the fall of Troy

613. Obstupuit primo aspectu Sidonia Dido,
casu deinde viri tanto et sic ore locuta est:
Quis te, nate dea, per tanta pericula casus
insequitur? Quae vis immanibus applicat oris?
Tu-ne ille Aeneas, quem Dardanio Anchisae

613. Primo aspectu obstupuit Sidonia Dido, casu
deinde viri tanto et sic eum est allocuta: Quod factum
te, dea nate, insequitur per pericula tanta? Quae
vis immanibus *his te* applicat oris? Tu-ne ille Aeneas,
quem Dardanio Anchisae alma Venus genuit

AENEIS.

Aeneas appellitur in Africam et reperit Carthaginem.

VOCABULARY

437. fortunatus, 3: *fortunate*
inquit: *says he*, 44, 10
moenia, -ium, n: *city walls, bulwark*
surgo, 3, -rrexi, -rrectum: *to rise*
fastigium, 2: *height*

TRANSLATION

437. "O, happy you, whose walls now are rising,"
Aeneas says and looks up at the heights of the city.
suspicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum: *to look up at*, 101

Aeneas conspicit Didonem.

494. Dardanus, 3; Dardanius, 3; Dardanides, 1:
descendant of Dardanus, 2, the son of Jupiter,
ancestor of the royal family of Troy, 19, c; 49,
z; 73
stupeo, 2, -pui, -: *to be stunned, stupefied, astonished,*
amazed
haereo, 2, haesi, haesum: *hang to, cleave to, adhere*
obtusus, 4 (*fr. obtueor*, 2, -tu(i)tum, *to look at*): *to*
look, gaze
defigo, 3, -fixi, -fixum: *to fix to*
regina, 1: *queen*
forma, 1: *form*, 86

494. *While these things seem wondrous to the*
Dardanian Aeneas, while he is amazed, and with
staring eyes hangs upon them, queen Dido of sur-
prising beauty is advancing to the temple, surrounded
by a numerous retinue of youths.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum: *beautiful*, 27, b
Dīdō, -ōnis, f: *Dido*
juvenis, -is, c: *youth, young man, young woman*
stipo, 1: *to accompany, surround*, 114, a
caterva, 1: *crowd, troop*

Dido benigne recipit Aenean et rogat, ut narraret excidium Troiae.

613. aspectus, 4 (*fr. aspicio*, 3, *to look at*): *sight,*
view, 95
obstupeo, 2, -pui, -: *to become senseless, astonished;*
casu, 94
Sidonius, 3: *of Sidon (a city of Phoenicia) Phoe-*
nician, 49, 2
alloquor, 3, -locutum: *to address*
sic: thus
dea, 1: *goddess*, 19, b
nascor, 3, natum: *to be born*, 91
qui, 3: *who? which?*, 30, h
periculum, 2: *danger*

613. *Sidonian Dido was astonished at the first*
look, then at the disaster of such a great man, and
accosted him thus: "What fate, O goddess-born,
pursues you through such great dangers? What
power brings you to these savage lands? Are you
that Aeneas whom at the Phrygian Simois stream

immanis, 2: *waste, savage*
hic, 3: *this*, 30, f
applico, 1, -cui, -citum, or -avi, -atum: *to apply to,*
land, 79
Anchises, 1: *the father of Aeneas*, 19, c

AENEID

Dido welcomes Aeneas and asks him to relate the fall of Troy

alma Venus Phrygii genuit Simoentis ad undam? ad Phrygii Simoentis undas?

628. Me quoque per multos similis fortuna labores
jactatam hac demum voluit consistere terra.
Non ignara mali miseris succurrere disco.

628. Me quoque per multos jactatam labores simili
fortuna consistere voluit in hac demum terra. Di-
dici miseris succurrere non ignara mali.

753. . . . Age, et a prima dic, hospes, origine nobis
insidias, inquit, Danaum casusque tuorum,
erroresque tuos; nam te jam septima portat
omnibus errantem terris et fluctibus aestas.

753. Age, dic, hospes, inquit, a prima origine no-
bis insidias Danaorum, casus tuorum tuosque erro-
res; nam septima jam te gestat aestas multis in ter-
ris fluctibusque errantem.

BOOK II. Aeneas tells the story

1. Conticuere omnes intentique ora tenebant.
Inde toro pater Aeneas sic orsus ab alto:
Infandum, regina, jubes renovare dolorem,

1. Conticuerunt omnes intentique eum intuebantur.
In toro sedens alto sic pater Aeneas est exorsus: In-
fandum, regina, jubes renovari dolorem narranti,

AENEIS.

Dido benigne recipit Aenean et rogat, ut narraret excidium Troiae.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

Venus, neris, f: Venus, goddess of love and grace,
wife of Vulcan
gigno, 3, genui, genitum: to beget, bear
Phrygius, 3: of Phrygia, Phrygian

kind Venus bore to the Dardanian Anchises?"

Simois, -entis, m, a small river in Troas

628. quoque: also
similis, 2: similar, 78
fortuna, 1: fortune
consisto, 3, -stiti, -: to stop, halt, 35, g
demum: at last, now at length
disco, 3, didici, -: to learn (79)
miser, -era, -rum: miserable, unhappy, distressed

628. "A like fortune doomed me also, tossed by
many hardships, to settle at length in this land. Not
ignorant of misfortune, I have learned to succor the
distressed."

(57, 3

succurro, 3, succurri, -cursum: to help, succor, aid,
malus, 3: bad, 26, f; 66, b

753. age: well, come, good, go on, 47
dico, 3, dixi, dictum: to say, 34, c
hospes, -pitis, c: guest
origo, -ginis, f: origin
insidiae, -arum: snares, plots
Danaus, 2, the founder of Argos, hence Danaus, 3:
Greek, Argive
error, -is, m (fr. erro, 1, to wander, err): wander-
ing, error
septimus, 3: seventh, 29, b

753. "Well, my dear guest," she says, "tell us from
the beginning the plots of the Greeks, the disaster
of your friends, and your wanderings; for now the
seventh summer keeps you wandering over many
lands and seas."

aestas, -atis, f: summer

gesto, 1 (fr. gero, 3, gessi, gestum, to carry): to
hold, 49, j

LIBER SECUNDUS.

Aeneas refert res gestas.

1. conticesco, 3, -ticui, -: to become silent, 49, k
[intendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: to stretch, intend, be atten-
tive
intueor, 2, tuitum: to look at, gaze
[os, oris, n: mouth, face]
torus, 2: couch, sofa
sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: to sit
(ex)ordior, 4, -orsum: to begin

1. All became silent and eagerly fixed their eyes
upon him. Father Aeneas, sitting on his high couch,
began thus: "O queen, you command me to renew

infandus, 3: execrable, unheard of
jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: order, 57, b
renovo, 1: to renew
dolor, -is, m: pain, woe

AENEID

Aeneas tells the story

Trojanas *ut* opes et lamentabile regnum
eruerint Danai, quaeque ipse miserrima vidi.

quo eruerint bello Danaei opes Trojanas et lamentabile regnum, quaeve viderim miserrima ipse.

The wooden horse

13. Fracti bello fatisque repulsi
ductores Danaum tot jam labentibus annis
instar montis equum divina Palladis arte
aedificant, sectaque intexunt abiete costas:
votum pro reditu simulant; ea fama vagatur.

13. Fracti bello tot jam annis elapsis fatoque repulsi duces Danaorum divina Palladis ope equum instar montis aedificant, contignationesque sectis ei instruunt abietibus: votum pro reditu simulant famaque divulgant.

18. Huc delecta virum sortiti corpora furtim
includunt caeco lateri penitusque cavernas
ingentis uterumque armato milite complent.

18. Delectas virorum sortiti catervas caecis ejus lateribus furtim includunt, sicque innumeras in toto corpore cavernas armatis militibus penitus complent.

AENEIS.

Aeneas refert res gestas.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

eruo, 3, erui, erutum: *to dig, tear, pluck out or away*
133, a
(ops), opis, f: *help, power, pl.: wealth*
lamentabilis, 2 (fr. lamento, 1, *to bewail*): *deplorable*, 49, i
regnum, 2 (fr. rego, 3, *to direct*): *reign, realm*, 49, f

woes (which are) execrable for me to relate, how the Greeks overturned the wealth of Troy and its regrettable realm, and what miseries I myself saw."

-ve: *and*, (used where -que would change the meaning)

Equus ligneus.

13. frango, 3, fregi, fractum: *to break*, 36, b
tot, (indecl.): *as many*, 16, c
elabor, 3, -lapsum: *to glide, slip away*, 114, b
repello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: *to push back, baffle*, 36, b
[ductor, -is, m (fr. duco, 3, duxi, ductum, *to lead*):
leader, 49, d]
Pallas, -adis, *the goddess of wisdom, Minerva's*
[ars, -rtis, f: *art*] (Greek name)
equus, 2: *horse*
instar, indecl. *takes the gen.: like*, 16, c
mons, -ntis, m: *mountain*, 22, c; 23 II 6
aedifico, 1: *to build*, 101
contignatio, -nis, f (fr. tignum, 2, *beam*): *story*, 49, a
seco, 1, -cui, -ctum: *to cut*
[intexo, 3, -xui, -xtum: *to weave in*]
instruo, 3, -struxi, -ctum: *to set up, build in*, 79; 101

13. Disheartened by the war (which) had lasted so many years, and baffled by fate, the Greek commanders, with the help of Pallas, build a horse, the size of a mountain, and with fir planks they construct many stories in it. (This) they pretend to be an offering to secure their return, and spread this by report.

abies, -etis, f: *fir*, 92
[costa, 1: *rib*]
votum, 2: *vow, offering*
simulo, 1: *to pretend*, 101
reditus, 4 (fr. redeo, 4, -ivi, -itum, *to return*): *return*
fama, 1: *talk, report*, 88
[vago, 1: *to wander*]
divulgo, 1: *to make public, spread abroad*, 101

18. deligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to select*, 36, b
sortior, 4: *to choose by lot*
caecus, 3: *blind, dark, unseen*
latus, -teris, n: *side*, 79
furtim: *secretly*, 28, c
includo, 3, -clusi, -clusum: *to shut up*
[ingens, -ntis: *vast, immense*]
innumerus, 3: *countless*
corpus, -poris, n: *body*; [uterus, 2: *womb*]

18. Having chosen select bands of men, they secretly shut them up in its dark sides, and thus completely filled up the very many caverns of its whole body with armed soldiers.

caverna, 1: *cavern*
armo, 1: *to arm*, 36, b; 83
penitus: *thoroughly*, 28, c
compleo, 2, -evi, -etum: *to fill up*, 83

AENEID

Laocoon's warning

41. Laocoon *ardens* summa decurrit ab arce,
et *procul*: O miseri, quae tanta insania, cives?
Aut *hoc* inclusi ligno occultantur Achivi,
aut aliquis latet *error*; equo ne credite Teucri.
Quidquid *id est*, timeo Danaos et dona ferentes.

Laocoon killed by serpents, the horse brought into Troy

234. *Dividimus* muros et moenia pandimus urbis.
Accingunt omnes operi pedibusque rotarum
subjiciunt *lapsus*, et *stuppea vincula* collo
intendunt: scandit fatalis machina muros
feta armis. Pueri circum innuptaeque puellae
sacra canunt funemque *contingere* gaudent.

41. Laocoon *incensus* a summa decurrit arce, et
jam e longinquo monet: Quae tanta insania, O miseri
cives? Aut *huic* ligno inclusi occultantur Achivi,
aut *hic* aliqui latet *dolus*; equo *huic* ne credite Teu-
cri. Quidquid *sit*, timeo Danaos et dona ferentes.

234. Urbis *incidimus* murum et moenia pandimus.
Operi accinguntur omnes rotasque subjiciunt pedi-
bus *equi* et *stuppeos funes* collo *adjungunt*, et scan-
dit *per* muros armis *referta* machina fatalis. Pueri
innuptaeque puellae circum *eam hymnos* canunt sa-
cros, funemque *attingere* gaudent.

AENEIS.

Monitum Laocoontis.

VOCABULARY

41. Laocoon, -ntis: *Laocoon, the priest of Neptune in Troy* (36, b
incendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to set on fire, incite, stir up*,
[ardeo, 3, arsi, arsum: *to burn (used with a noun, as*
summus, 3: *the highest*, 27, f (ira ardet)
jam: *already, now, even, yet*
[procul, adv.: *far*]; longinquus, 3: *far, distant*, 26, f
moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: *to admonish, warn*
civis, -is: *citizen*
insania, 1 (fr. insanus, 3, insane): *insanity*, 49, u
aut - aut: *either - or*
lignum, 2: *wood*, 79
occulto, 1: *to hide, conceal*
hic: *here*
Achivi, -orum; Achaei, -orum: *of Achaia, Achaeans*,
aliquis, 3: *some*, 30, i (Greeks)
dolus, 2: *fraud, deceit, trick*

TRANSLATION

41. *Laocoon excited hastens down from the very high citadel, and while a great way off he warns: "O wretched countrymen, what great insanity is this? Either the Greeks are hidden enclosed within this wood, or some snare is concealed therein; Trojans, don't trust this horse. Whatever it be, I dread the Greeks, even when they bring gifts."*

lateo, 2, -tui, -titum: *to be hidden, concealed*, 61
Teucer, -cri: *the first king of Troy*
Teucer, 3: *Teucrian*
quisquis, 2: *whoever*, 30, i
sit, 107
timeo, 2, -mui, -: *to fear*
et (if it does not join two identical parts): *also, too*
fero, 3, tuli, latum: *to bring*, 43, 8

Laocoonte serpentibus occiso equus Troiam introducitur.

234. [divido, 3, -visi, -visum: *to divide*]
incido, 3, incidi, -cisum: *to cut into or through*, 101
murus, 2: *wall*
pando, 3, -ndi, passum: *to extend, open*
accingo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to gird, equip*, 101
opus, -peris, n: *work*, 79
rota, 1: *wheel, roller*
[lapsus, 4: *gliding, fault*]
subjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: *to throw or cast under*, 79
pes, pedis, m: *foot, leg*, 79
stuppeus, 3 (fr. stuppa, tow): *made of tow, hempen*,
funis, -is, m: *rope* (49, s
[vinculum, 2: *band, fetter*]
[intendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: *to stretch, intend*]
adjungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to join, bind, connect*, 79
machina, 1, *Greek: machine*; scando, 3: *to climb*
refercio, 3, -fersi, -fertum: *to stuff or fill full*, 36, b
[fetus, 3: *pregnant, fertile*]

Page one hundred and two

234. *We cut through the city wall and lay open the citadel. All prepare themselves for this work. They cast rolling-wheels under the feet of the horse, and bind hempen ropes to its neck: the machine filled with arms passes through the city wall. Boys and unmarried girls chant sacred hymns around it, and are glad to touch its ropes.*

fatalis, 2 (fr. fatum, 2, fate): *fatal*, 49, r
innuptus, 3 (fr. nubeo, 2, nupsi, nuptum, to marry):
unmarried, 49, A 1
circum: *around*, 50, a
hymnus, 2: *hymn*
[sacrum, 2: *sacred thing, sacrifice*]
cano, 3, cecini, cantum: *to sing*
gaudeo, 2, gavisum: *to be glad*, 31, d
attingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: *to touch*, 57, 4
[contingo, to touch strongly, happen]

AENEID

The Greeks return

254. . . Jam Argiva phalanx instructis navibus ibat a Tenedo tacitae per amica silentia lunae littora nota petens. *Flammas cum regia puppis extulerat, fatisque deum defensus iniquis inclusos utero Danaos et pinea furtim laxat claustra Sinon. . .*

265. Invadunt urbem somno vinoque sepultam; caeduntur vigiles, portisque patentibus omnes accipiunt socios. . .

705. . . . Jam per moenia clarior ignis auditur propiusque aestus incendia volvunt. Ergo age, care pater, cervici imponere nostrae;

254. . . . Jam Argiva phalanx instructis in navibus littora nota petens ibat a Tenedo in silentio tacitae lunae amico. *Lucem cum regia navis exhibuerat, Sinon fato deorum iniquo defensus pinea furtim laxat claustra Danais equo inclusis.*

265. Invadunt urbem somno vinoque sopitam; caeduntur vigiles, portisque patentibus omnes recipiunt socios.

705. . . . Jam per moenia clare auditur fragor ignis propiusque aestus incendium volvit. Ergo age, care pater, cervici imponere nostrae; ipse subibo

Aeneas flees

AENEIS.

Graeci revertuntur.

VOCABULARY

254. Argivus, 3: of Argos, the capital of Argolis in phalanx, -ngis, f: phalanx (Greece, 49, r novi, notum: to know, 45, 14 Tenedos, 2: Tenedos island, 20 silentium, 2 (fr. sileo, 2, -lui, -, to be silent): silence, 49, f taceo, 2, -cui, -citur: to be silent luna, 1: moon amicus, 3: friendly regius, 3 (fr. rex, regis, king): royal, 49, v [flamma, 1: flame] exhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: to hand over, display [effero, 3: to bring out] Sinon, -is: a deceitful Greek soldier

265. invado, 3, -asi, -asum: to enter, invade, assault somnus, 2: sleep, slumber, 93, a vinum, 2: wine sopio, 4: to put to sleep, 36, b [sepelio, 4, -livi, -ltum: to bury] caedo, 3, caesi, caesum: to cut vigil, -is: wakeful, watchman

705. clarus, 3: clear, 28, a fragor, -is, m (fr. frango, 3, fregi, fractum, to break): noise, crack, 49, a ignis, -is, m: fire propior, 2: nearer, 27, g aestus, 4: heat incendium, 2 (fr. incendo, 3, to set fire): conflagration, fire, 49, f volvo, 3, volvi, volutum: to roll, turn

TRANSLATION

254. Now, in the kind light of the silent moon, the Greek phalanx sets out from Tenedos and in equipped vessels, approaches the well known shores. As soon as the royal galley exhibits the signal light, Sinon, protected by the bad fate of the gods, secretly unlocks the pine prison for the Greeks, shut up in the horse.

iniquus, 3: uneven, unjust, hostile, 49, A1; 93, a defendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to defend, protect, 36, b pineus, 3 (fr. pinus, 2, f, pine): of pine wood, 49, s laxo, 1: to widen, relax claustrum, 2 (fr. claudio, 3, -usi, -usum, to close): confinement, prison, 49, f

265. They assault the city, (which was) rendered senseless by sleep and wine; the sentinels are slain and through the opened gates they receive all their companions.

pateo, 2, -tui, -: to stand or lie open, 114, a recipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to receive; [accipio, 3: to accept]

Aeneas effugit.

705. Now, throughout the citadel the crackling of fire is distinctly heard, and the heat rolls the conflagration nearer. "Come, dear father, place yourself on my neck, and I shall support you with my shoul-

age: come, well, good!, 52, e cervix, -icis, f: the nape of the neck, neck, 79 impono, 3, -posui, -situm: to put in or upon, 79

AENEID

Aeneas flees

ipse subibo humeris, nec me labor iste gravabit;
quo res cumque cadent, unum et commune periculum,
una salus ambobus erit. . . .

humeris, nec me labor iste gravabit; *quidcumque ac-*
ciderit, unum et commune periculum, una *eademque*
erit salus ambobus.

Mihi parvus *Julus*
sit comes, et longe servet vestigia conjux:
vos famuli, quae dicam, *animis advertite vestris*.

Mihi parvus *Ascanius* sit comes, et longe servet
vestigia conjux: vos *vero* famuli facite, quae dicam.

BOOK III. The Trojans build a fleet and set out wandering.

1. Postquam *res* Asiae Priamique evertere gentem
immeritam visum superis, ceciditque superbum
Ilium, et *omnis* humo fumat Neptunia Troia,
diversa exilia et desertas quaerere terras
auguriis agimur *divum*, classemque sub *ipsa*
Antandro et Phrygiae molimur montibus Idae.

1. Postquam *opes* Asiae Priamique gentem imme-
ritam evertere visum *est* superis, ceciditque Ilium
superbum, et *tota* humo *aequata* fumabat Neptunia
Troia, auguriis *deorum* agimur *remotum* quaerere
exilium in desertis terris, classemque molimur sub
Antandro ad montem Phrygiae Idae.

AENEIS.

Aeneas effugit.

VOCABULARY

subeo, 4: to undergo, come under, take on, 42, 3
humeris, 93, a
gravo, 1: to load, burden
accido, 3, -cidi, -: to befall, 48, b; [cado, 3, cecidi,
casum: to fall]
communis, 2: common

Julus, 2, is the other name of *Ascanius*, the son of
comes, -mitis, c: companion; mihi, 74 (*Aeneas*)
servo, 1: to observe, keep, 106
vestigium, 2: footprint, trace
conjux, -ugis: wife

TRANSLATION

ders, nor will this burden weigh on me; whatever
may happen, we shall both have one and the same
common danger and one and the same salvation."

salus, -lutis, f: health, welfare, fortune
idem, 3: the same, 30, f; ambo, 3: both, 29, h

"Let the little *Ascanius* be my companion, and let
my wife follow my footsteps from afar, and you,
my servants, do what I shall say."

famulus, 2: servant

LIBER TERTIUS.

Troiani classe aedificata peregre proficiscuntur.

1. Priamus, 2, the last king of Troy
Asia, 1: Asia
immeritus, 3 (fr. mereor, 2, meritum, to earn): un-
deserved, 49, A1; 36, c
visum est, the same as: visum est bonum
humus, 2, f: soil, 78
Ilium or Ilion, 2: (poetical name of) Troy
aequo, 1: to equal with, 78, b; fumo, 1: to smoke
Neptunius, 3: Neptunian, built by Neptune, 49, v
augurium, 2: augury, omen, 88
ago, 3, egi, actum: to act, drive, 101
[diversus, 3: different]
removeo, 2, -movi, -motum: to put afar off, remote,
quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: to seek, 35, g (36, b

1. After it seemed fit to the gods undeservedly to
overthrow our wealth in Asia and the race of Priam,
and after the stately Ilium fell, and after entire Nep-
tunian Troy, leveled to the ground, was smoking,
we were forced by augurian advice of the gods to
find a distant exile in deserted lands. And we built
a fleet near Antandros at the Phrygian Ida.

exilium, 2 (fr. exulo, 1, to exile): exile, 49, f
desero, 3, -rui, -rtum: to abandon, forsake, 36, b
classis, -is, f: fleet, class
molior, 4: to make, plan, 101
Antandros, 2: Antandros, a town in Mysia, 20
Ida, 1, a mountain in Phrygia and Creta

AENEID

The Trojans build a fleet and set out wandering

7. Incerti, quo fata ferant, ubi sistere detur, contrahimusque viros. Vix prima inceperat aestas et pater Anchises dare fatis vela jubebat.

7. Incertique, quo fatum ferat, ubi sistere detur, contrahimus viros. Vix prima inceperat aestas, vela fato dari jussit pater Anchises.

BOOK IV. *Dido falls in love with Aeneas*

1. At regina gravi jamdudum saucia cura vulnus alit venis et caeco carpitur igne. Multa viri virtus animo, multusque recursat gentis honor; haerent infixi pectore vultus verbaque, nec placidam dat membris cura quietem.

1. Jamdudum regina vulnus amoris gravi alit cura et caeco carpitur igne. Multa recursat animo virtus viri, multusque honor gentis; haeretque pectori infixus vultus verbaque, nec placidam dat membris cura quietem.

Aeneas, warned by Jupiter to found his reign in Italy, secretly prepares his flight

296. At regina dolos, — quis fallere possit amantem — praesensit, motusque excepit prima futuros.

296. At regina dolum, — quis enim fallere posset amantem, — praesentit, actusque percipit prima futuros.

304. Tandem his Aeneam compellat vocibus ultro:

304. Tandem his Aeneam vocibus compellat ultro:

AENEIS.

Troiani classe aedificata peregre proficiscuntur.

VOCABULARY

7. incertus, 3: *uncertain*, 49, A1
quo: *whither*, 51, f
sisto, 3, steti, statum: *to place, stop, halt*
contrāho, 3, -traxi, -actum: *to draw together*, 101
incipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to begin*

TRANSLATION

7. *Uncertain whither fate conveys us and where it will be granted us to settle, we draw our countrymen together. Hardly had the early summer begun, when father Anchises gave the commands to hoist the sails in accordance with fate.*

LIBER QUARTUS.

Dido deperit Aeneae amore.

1. jamdudum: *long since*
vulnus, neris, n: *wound*
amor, -is, m (fr. amo, 1, *to love*): *love*, 49, a
alo, 3, alui, alitum: *to nourish*, 101
cura, 1: *care*, 88
carpo, 3, carpsi, carptum: *to pluck, tear, annoy*, 101
recurso, 1 (fr. recurro, 3, -curri, -cursum, *to recur*):
occur often, 49, j; 79; 101
honor, -is, m: *honor, respect, dignity*
haereo, 2, haesi, haesum: *to hang to, adhere*, 101
infigo, 3, -fixi, -fixum: *to fix, fasten to*, 36, b; 79
vultus, 4: *countenance, look*

1. *Already the queen has nourished with a painful anxiety the wound of (deep) love, and she has been attacked by its unseen flame. The great virtue of the man, and the great dignity of his race repeatedly recur to her mind, and his looks and words cling to her breast; nor do her thoughts allow a calm rest to her limbs.*

membrum, 2: *member, limb*, 73
placidus, 3: *quiet, gentle, serene*
quies, -etis, f: *rest*, 23, Ic

Aeneas a Jove monitus, ut in Italia regnum conderet, clam aufugiturus.

296. fallo, 3, fefelli, falsum: *to fail, deceive*
posset, 103, b
praesentio, 4, -sensi, -sensum: *to feel beforehand*, 101
actus, 4 (fr. ago, 3, egi, actum, *to act*): *action*, 49, a
[motus, 4 (fr. moveo, 2, movi, motum, *to move*):
motion]

296. *But the queen, — for who could deceive a lover, — had a presentiment of the fraud and she was the first to perceive his future actions.*

percipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to perceive*, 101
[excipio, 3: *to take out*]

304. tandem: *at length, at last*
vox, vocis, f: *voice, word*, 88
compello, 1: *to accost*, 101

304. *At length, instinctively she accosts Aeneas with these words:*

ultro: *instinctively, spontaneously, of one's own accord*

AENEID

Aeneas, warned by Jupiter to found his reign in Italy, secretly prepares his flight

Dissimulare posse sperasti, perfide, tantum nefas, tacitusque mea decedere terra?
Nec te noster amor, nec te data dextera quondam,
nec moritura tenet crudeli funere Dido?

331. . . . Ille Jovis monitis immota tenebat lumina, et curam sub corde premebat.
Tandem pauca refert: 356 (ab Jove missus ipso)
361. Italiam non sponte sequor. . . .

Dissimulare posse sperasti, perfide, tantum nefas, taciteque mea decedere terra? Nec te noster amor, nec te data jam dextera, nec tenet crudeli funere moritura Dido?

331. Ille Jovis monitis immotos tenebat oculos, et dolorem in corde reprimebat. Tandem pauca refert: 356. A Jove ipso missus
361. non sponte Italiam sequor.

Dido's death

646. Conscendit furibunda rogos ensemque recludit.
659. Moriemur inultae, sed moriamur, ait. Sic, sic juvat ire sub umbras. Hauriat hunc oculis ignem crudelis ab alto

646. Conscendit furibunda rogam ensemque recludit.
659. Moriemur inultae, sed moriamur, inquit. Etiam sic juvat ire ad umbras. Percipiat a mari hunc ignem oculis Dardanus crudelis, et secum ferat

AENEIS.

Aeneas a Jove monitus, ut in Italia regnum conderet, clam aufugiturus.

VOCABULARY

dissimulo, 1: to conceal, disguise, 35, f
spero, 1: to hope, 32, d
perfidus, 3: perfidious; perfide, vocative
nefas, indecl. noun and adj.: impious deed, wicked, 16, c
tacite decedere, 28, a; 57, 3, or tacitum te decedere, 57, 4
decedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go away, forth, depart, 90
331. monita, -orum (fr. moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum, to admonish): warning, 94
Juppiter, Jovis: Jupiter, the supreme god of the Romans
immotus, 3 (fr. moveo, 2, to move): unmoved, 49, A1; 36, b
[lumen, -minis, n: light]
dolor, -is, m (fr. doleo, 2, -lui, -, to have pain): pain, 49, a

646. conscendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to mount, 101
furibundus, 3 (fr. furo, 3, -rui, -, to rage): frantic, rogos, 2: funeral pile (49, h; 56
ensis, -is, m: sword, 23, I

659. inultus, 3 (fr. ulciscor, 3, ultum, to revenge): unavenged, 49, A1; inultae, plural of majesty
juvo, 1, juvi, jutum: to help; impers.: it delights, 48, d
umbra, 1: shade, shadow, the soul of a dead person [haurio, 4: to take fluid with a vessel, 106]
secum: with himself, 50, b'

Page one hundred and six

TRANSLATION

"You perfidious man, did you hope to conceal from me so wicked an action, and to steal away in silence from my land? Does neither our love retain you, nor your pledged faith, nor Dido, resolved to die by a cruel death?"

dextera data: the right hand given as a pledge of morior, 3, mortuum: to die, 40; 111, a (faith funus, -neris, n: funeral, death, 88

331. By the commands of Jupiter, he kept his eyes unmoved and repressed the pain in his heart. At length he briefly replied: "Being sent by Jupiter himself, I do not head for Italy of my own accord."

reprimo, 3, -pressi, -pressum: to repress
refero, 3, retuli, relatum: to carry back, report, re-sponte: of one's own accord, 88 (late, 43, 8
sequor, 3, secutum: to follow, seek

Dido moritur.

646. Frantically she mounts the funeral pile and unsheathes the sword.

recludo, 3, -clusi, -sum: to uncloset, unsheath, 101

659. "I will die," she says, "unavenged, yet let me die; even thus it pleases me to descend to the shades. Let the cruel Trojan see this fire with his eyes from the sea, and let him bear with him the

ferat, 106

AENEID

Dido's death

Dardanus, et nostrae secum ferat omina mortis.
Dixerat; atque illam media inter talia ferro
collapsam aspiciunt comites ensemque cruore
spumantem sparsasque manus.

nostrae omen mortis. Dixit, et inter haec verba vi-
dent comites ferro collapsam ensemque cruore stil-
lantem atque manus aspersas.

BOOK V. Storm forces Aeneas to Sicily

1. Interea medium Aeneas jam classe tenebat
certus iter, fluctusque atros aquilone secabat
moenia respiciens, quae jam infelicis Elissae
collucent flammis. . . .

1. Interea Aeneas jam medium classe iter certus
tenebat, fluctusque atros contra aquilonem secabat
moenia respiciens, quae jam infelicis Didonis collu-
cebat pyra.

Games on the anniversary of Anchises' death

109. Munera principio ante oculos circoque locan-
tur
in medio sacri tripodes viridesque coronae,
et palmae pretium victoribus armaque et ostro
perfusae vestes, argenti aurique talenta;
et tuba commissos medio canit aggere ludos.

109. Munera principio ante oculos in medio collo-
cantur circo: sacri tripodes viridesque coronae atque
palmae pretium victoribus, nec non arma et ostro
tinctae vestes, argenti aurique talenta; tuba in medio
canit campo ludos commissos.

AENEIS.

Dido moritur

VOCABULARY

omen, -minis, n: omen, a bad foreboding
collabor, 3, -lapsum: to fall down, collapse, 36, c
cruor, -oris, m: blood (of a wound), gore, 88
[spumo, 1: to foam]; stillo, 1: to drip, 36, a
manus, 4: hand, 24, b
[spargo, 3, to strew, scatter]; aspergo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: to sprinkle, bespatter, 36, b

TRANSLATION

omen of my death." She spoke, and while she spoke,
her attendants perceive her collapsed by the sword,
and the weapon dripping with gore and her hands
bespattered with blood.

LIBER QUINTUS.

Aeneas procella in Siciliam appulsus.

1. interea: meanwhile
jam: already, (generally not translated)
medius, 3: middle
ater, -tra, -trum: dark
infelix, -icis: unhappy, 49, A1
colluceo, 2, -luxi, -: to shine all around

1. Meanwhile Aeneas already safely held the half
way with his fleet, and (while) looking back to the
citadel illumined by the funeral pyre of the unhappy
Dido, he cut the dark billows against the north wind.

Ludi in anniversario mortis Anchisae.

109. munus, -neris, n: office, duty, gift
sacer, -cra, -um: sacred
colloco, 1: to arrange, settle, 50, c
tripos, -odis, f: tripod
viridis, 2: green
corona, 1: wreath, crown
pretium, 2: price
palma, 1: palm, palm branch
nec non: and also
victor, -is, m: (fr. vinco, 3, vici, victum, to defeat):
conqueror, 49, d; 73
ostrum, 2: purple dye, 93, a
[perfundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: to pour over, wet]
tingo, 3, tinxi, -nctum: to dye, 36, b

109. First the prizes are set before their eyes in
the midst of the circus: (viz.) sacred tripods, green
wreaths and palms, the reward of the victors; and
also weapons, vestments of purple dye, and gold
and silver talents; in the midst of the campus a
trumpet gives the signal that the games have started.

talentum, 2: weight of 100 lbs., talent
campus, 2: playground, meadow
[agger, -is, m: mound]
tuba, 1: trumpet; (tuba canere: to sound a trum-
pet, or play on a trumpet)
committo, 3, -misi, -missum: to commit, begin, 57, 4

AENEID

Boat race

114. Prima pares ineunt gravibus certamina remis
quattuor ex *omni* delectae classe *carinae*.

136. Considunt transtris *intenta*que brachia remis
intenti expectant signum. . . .

114. Prima pares ineunt certamina gravibus remis
ex *tota* classe quattuor *naves* delectae.

136. Considunt *in* transtris brachiisque *ad* remos
intenti expectant signum.

Foot race

291. Hic, qui forte velint rapido contendere cursu,
invitat pretiis animos et praemia ponit.
Undique conveniunt Teucri mixtique *Sicani*,
Nisus et Euryalus primi. . . .

291. Hic, qui forte velint rapido contendere cursu,
invitat pretiis *animum eorum* et praemia ponit. Un-
dique conveniunt Teucri mixtique *Siculi*, Nisus et
Euryalus primi.

Boxing match

362. Nunc, si cui virtus animusque in pectore
praesens
adsit, et evinctis attollat brachia *palmis*.
Sic ait et geminum pugnae proponit *honorem*,
victori *velatum auro* vittisque *juvencum*,
ensem *atque* insignem galeam solacia victo.

362. Nunc, si cui virtus animusque in pectore ad-
est, revinctis attollat brachia *pugnis*. Sic ait et ge-
minum proponit *praemium* pugnae: victori *vitulum*
vittis *aureis ornatum*, ensem *et* insignem galeam so-
latium victo.

AENEIS.

Certamen navale.

VOCABULARY

114. par, -is: *equal, like*
ineo, 4: *to go, enter in, commence*, 61, a
certamen, -minis, n (fr. certo, 1, *to fight*): *fight*, 49, e
deligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to pick, select*, 36, b

136. consido, 3, -sessi, -sessum: *to sit down*, 101
transtrum, 2: *cross bench, beam*
intendo, 3, -tendi, -ntum: *to stretch*, 36, b
brachium, 2: *arm*, 88
expecto, 1: *to expect*, 101

291. fors, -rtis, f: *chance*; fors, forte, forsitan:
rapidus, 3: *hasty, rapid*, 88 (perhaps
invito, 1: *invite, allure*, 101
contendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: *to strive for, compete*, 117, b
praemium, 2: *gain, reward*
undique: *from everywhere*
convenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to come together*, 101
misceo, 2, miscui, mixtum: *to mingle, mix*, 36, b

362. revincio, 4, -vinxi, -vinctum: *to bind back or*
around, 114, b, c
attollo, 3, attuli, allatum: *to lift up, raise aloft*, 106
pugnus, 2: *fist*; [palma, 1: *palm of the hand*]
propono, 3, -posui, -situm: *to propose*, 101
pugna, 1 (fr. pugno, 1, *to fight*): *fight*, 49, a
vitulus, 2: *calves*; [juvencus, 3: *young*]
orno, 1: *to equip, adorn*, 36, b
[velo, 1: *to veil, hide*]
aureus, 3 (fr. aurum, 2, *gold*): *golden*, 49, s
vitta, 1: *ribbon, band, fillet*, 88

Page one hundred and eight

TRANSLATION

114. *Four ships, selected from the whole fleet,*
equally (matched) with heavy oars, commence the
contest.

136. *They sit down on the benches, and with their*
arms stretched to the oars, they wait for the signal.

signum, 2 (fr. signo, 1, *to mark*): *sign, signal*

Certamen cursus.

291. *Here he incites the courage of those who*
perhaps intend to compete in the foot race, and ex-
hibits the prizes. Mingled Trojans and Sicilians
throng from everywhere, Nisus and Euryalus the
first.

Siculus, 3: *Sicilian*; [Sicani, -orum: *a race in Sicily*]

Certamen pugilatu.

362. *Now, whoever has skill and courage in his*
breast, let him raise his hand with his fist bound
around. This he speaks and proposes a double pre-
mium: to the conqueror a calf, adorned with golden
fillets, and to the vanquished, as a solace, a sword
together with a decorated helmet.

galea, 1: *helmet*
insignis, 2: *distinguished, eminent*
solatium, 2 (fr. solor, 1, *to console*): *solace*, 49, f; 73

AENEID

Contest in archery

485. Protinus Aeneas *celeri* certare sagitta invitatur, qui forte velint, et praemia ponit, *Ingentique* manu malum de nave Seresti erigit et *volucrem* trajecto in fune columbam quo tendant ferrum malo suspendit ab alto.

Inspired by Juno, the Trojan women, weary of wandering, set fire to the ships

637. Hic quaerite Trojam; hic domus est vobis en quattuor arae Neptuno: deus ipse *faces* animumque ministrat.

661. Frondem ac virgulta facesque conjiciunt. Furit *immissis Vulcanus habenis* transtra per et remos et pictas *abierte* puppes.

699. Quattuor amissis servatae a *peste carinae*.

Anchises in a vision sends Aeneas to Italy and to visit the Lower World

729. Lectos juvenes, fortissima corda,

485. *Mox* protinus Aeneas *habili* certare sagitta invitatur, qui forte velint, et praemia ponit, *fortique* manu malos de nave Seresti erigi *curat*, et *volantem* columbam, *quam sagittis petant*, alte suspendi in fune trajecto.

637. Hic quaerite Trojam; hic domus est vobis: En quattuor arae *ardent* Neptuno: deus ipse *ignem* animumque ministrat.

661. Frondes, virgulta facesque conjiciunt. Furit *ignis* *immissus* *rapide* per transtra, remos et *pineas* puppes pictas.

699. Quattuor amissis servatae *sunt naves a flammis*.

729. Lectos juvenes corde fortissimos defer in

AENEIS.

Certamen sagittandi.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

485. protinus: *forthwith, immediately*
 habilis, 2: *handy, skillful*, 93, a
 [celer, -eris, -e: *swift*]
 mālus, 2, m: *mast*
 erigo, 3, erexi, erectum: *to erect, raise*, 35, a
 curo mālum erigi: *I have a mast erected, or I order to be erected*
 volo, 1: *to fly*; [volucer, -cris, -cre: *winged*]
 peto, 3, petii, petitum: *to ask, go, attack*, 130
 suspendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to hang up*, 35, a

485. *Right afterwards Aeneas invites those who perhaps desire to match their skill at arrow shooting, and he sets the prizes; then he orders masts from Serestus' ship to be erected with strong hands, and a flying dove to be hung high upon a rope thrown across the (masts) at which they may aim their arrows.*

trajectio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: *to throw through, over or across*, 36, b

Junone suggerente mulieres peregrinatione pertaesae incendunt naves.

637. en: *behold, see*, 52, a
 quattuor: *four*, 29, a; Neptuno, 73
 ministro, 1: *to serve, afford*

637. "Here seek Troy. Here is your home. See, here are four altars to Neptune. The god himself supplies you with fire and courage."

661. frons, -ndis, f: *leafy twig, branch*
 virgultum, 2: *thicket, brush-wood*, 49, o
 fax, -acis, f: *torch, fire brand*
 conjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: *to throw together*, 101
 fūro, 3, -rui, -: *to rage*, 101
 immitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to send in, let free*, 36, b
 [habena, 1: *rein*]

661. They throw on branches, brushwood and fire-brands. The applied fire rages through the benches, oars and painted sterns of pine.

pineus, 3 (fr. pinus, 2, f, pine): *of pine wood*, 49, s
 pingo, 3, -nxi, -ictum: *to paint*, 36, b

699. amitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to lose*, 114, b

699. With the loss of four, the ships are saved from the fire.

Anchises in visione in Italiam ire jubet Aenean et visitare inferos.

729. lego, 3, legi, lectum: *to pick, select, read*, 36, b
 corde, 84
 defero, 3, -tuli, delatum: *to bring down, carry to*, 34, c

729. "Carry along to Italy chosen youths, strong

AENEID

Anchises in a vision sends Aeneas to Italy and to visit the Lower World

defer in Italiam. Gens dura atque aspera cultu debellanda tibi Latio est. Dites tamen ante infernas accede domos, et Averna per alta congressus pete, nate, meos. Non me impia namque Tartara habent, tristes umbrae, sed amoena piorum concilia Elysiumque colo. . . .

Italiam. Gens dura atque aspera cultu est debellanda tibi in Latio. Divites tamen, nate, prius infernas accede sedes et per altum Avernum pete congressum mecum. Non impius Tartarus et tristes umbrae me habent, sed amoena piorum concilia, nam Elysium incolo.

BOOK VI. The Cumaean Sibyl leads Aeneas through the Underworld

257. . . . Procul este profani, conclamat vates, totoque absistite luco; tuque invade viam vaginaque eripe ferrum: nunc animis opus, Aenea, nunc pectore firmo. Tantum effata, furens antro se immisit aperto; ille ducem haud timidus vadentem passibus aequat.

257. . . . Procul este profani, exclamat vates, totoque absistite luco; tuque invade viam vaginaque eripe ferrum: nunc animo opus est, Aenea, atque pectore firmo, inquit et furens immittit se antro aperto; ipse ducem vadentem haud timidus passibus aequat.

AENEIS.

Anchises in visione in Italiam ire jubet Aenean et visitare inferos.

VOCABULARY

durus, 3: *hard, hardy*
asperus, 3: *rough, harsh, wild*
cultus, 4 (fr. colo, 3, colui, cultum, to cultivate): *cultivation, manners, 84*
debello, 1: *to subdue, 76; 118*
dives, -vitis: *wealthy, rich, 26, d*
sedes, -dis, f (fr. sedeo, 2, to sit): *seat, throne,*
Avernus, 2, *a lake near Cumae* (abode, home)
mecum: *with me, 50, b'*
congressus, 4 (fr. congredior, 3, -gressum, to meet): *meeting, interview*
impius, 3: *impious, 49, 41*
amoenus, 3: *pleasant, delightful*

TRANSLATION

of heart. In Latium you will have to subdue a race harsh and rough in manners. But first, my son, visit the lower regions and have an interview with me through the deep Avernus. I am not in the possession of the godless Tartarus, but in pleasant assemblies, for I inhabit Elysium."

Tartarus (or -os), m; pl. Tartara, -orum, n: *the infernal regions*
concilium, 2 (fr. concilio, 1, to unite): *assembly*
Elysium, 2, *the abode of the blessed*
incolo, 3, -colui, -cultum: *to inhabit*
[colo, 3, colui, cultum: *to cultivate, worship*]

LIBER SEXTUS.

Sibylla Cumaea ducit Aenean ad inferos.

257. procul: *far, far off*
profanus, 3: *profane*
[conclamo, 1: *to call together*]; exclamo, 1: *to cry*
vates, -tis, c: *soothsayer, seer* (aloud)
absisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum: *to go away, 34, a*
lucus, 2: *grove, forest, 90*
invado, 3, -vasi, -vasum: *to go in, attack, 108, a*
vagina, 1: *sheath, 90*
eripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum: *snatch away, 108, a*
opus, indecl.: *need, needed, 83*
pectus, -oris, n: *breast, heart*
[effor, 1, effatum: *to speak out, 44, 11*]
aperio, 4, aperui, apertum: *to uncover, open, 79*

257. "Stand aloof, you profane," exclaims the soothsayer, "and begone from all the grove, and you, Aeneas, boldly march forward and snatch your sword from its sheath. "Now," says she, "courage is needed, Aeneas, and firmness of soul," and raving she enters the open cave. With intrepid steps he keeps close to his preceding leader.

timidus, 3 (fr. timeo, 2, to fear): *fearful, 49, t*
passus, 4 (fr. pando, 3, pandi, passum or pansum, to stretch open): *step, pace, 88*
aequo, 1: *to make level, equal*

AENEID

At the entrance of the Lower World

273. Vestibulum ante ipsum primisque in faucibus
Orci
Luctus et ultrices posuere cubilia Curae;
pallentesque habitant Morbi tristisque Senectus
et Metus et malesuada Fames ac turpis Egestas.

273. Ante vestibulum ipsum in prima Orci fauce
Luctus et ultrices posuerunt cubilia Curae; pallen-
tesque hic habitant Morbi tristisque Senectus et Me-
tus et malesuada Fames ac turpis Egestas.

The Styx (or Acheron) and Charon its ferryman

295. Hinc via Tartarei quae fert Acherontis ad
undas.
Turbidus hic caeno vastaquae voragine gurgis aestuat.

295. Hinc via fert ad Tartarei Acherontis undas.
Turbidus hic fluvius caeno voraginibus aestuat va-
stis.

384. Ergo iter inceptum peragunt fluvioque pro-
pinquant.
Navita quos jam inde ut Stygia prospexit ab unda,

384. Ergo iter peragunt inceptum fluvioque pro-
pinquant. Quos nauta ubi aspicit, jam inde a Stygis
undis

AENEIS.

Apud inferorum introitum.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

273. vestibulum, 2: entrance, vestibule
Orcus, 2: the Underworld
faux, -ucis, f: throat, jaw, 22, d
palleo, 2, -lui, -: to be pale
luctus, 4 (fr. lūgeo, 2, luxi, luctum, to mourn):
mourning, grief
ultor, -is, m; ultrix, -icis, f (fr. ulciscor, 3, ultum, to
take vengeance, avenge): avenger
cubile, -lis, n (fr. cubo, 1, to lie down): bed, den,
morbus, 2: disease (room, 49, i
tristis, 2: sad, sorrowful
senectus, -tutis, f (fr. senex, old): old age, 49, u

273. Before the vestibule itself, at the brim of the
Underworld's jaws, Grief, and vengeful Cares have
placed their den; pale diseases, disconsolate Old Age,
as well as Fear and ill-advising Famine and ugly
Need dwell there.

fames, -mis, f: hunger
metus, 4 (fr. metuo, 2, -ui, -, to fear): fear
malesuadus, 3 (fr. suadeo, 2, to advise): ill-advising,
turpis, 2: ugly (49, t
egestas, -atis, f (fr. egens, needy): need, 49, u

Styx et Charon ejus portitor.

295. hinc: hence, 51, f
Tartareus, 3 (fr. Tartarus, 2, Hell): Tartarean, 49, v
Acheron, -ntis, m, other name of Styx, -ygis, f, a
river of the Underworld
turbidus, 3 (fr. turbo, 1, to disturb): turbid, 49, t
fluvius, 2 (fr. fluo, 2, to flow): river, 49, t
[gurgis, -gitis, m: whirlpool]
caenum, 2: mire, dirt, filth, 84

295. Hence a path leads to the Tartarean Acheron.
This river turbid with mire boils with vast whirl-
pools.

vorago, -ginis, f: chasm, whirlpool, 88
aestuo, 1: to boil, be hot, rage
vastus, 3: vast, enormous

384. perago, 3, -egi, -actum: to drive through,
incipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to start, begin (complete
propinquo, 1: to approach (with dat.)
nauta, 1: sailor
aspicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum: to look at, behold, 40

384. They therefore accomplish the journey (which
they had) begun, and approach the river; whom as
soon as the boatman beheld from Styx's waves, he

[prospicio, 3: to look forward]

AENEID

The Styx (or Acheron) and Charon its ferryman

387. increpat ultro:
 Quisquis es, armatus qui nostra ad flumina tendis,
 fare age, *quid* venias, jam istinc, et comprime gres-
 sum:

391. Corpora viva nefas est Stygia vectare carina.

387. increpat ultro: Quisquis es, qui armatus ad
 nostrum flumen tendis, fore age, jam istinc, *cur*
 venias, et comprime gressum:

391. Corpora viva nefas est *nave* Stygis vectari.

Cerberus

417. Cerberus haec ingens latratu regna trifauci
 personat adverso recubans immanis in antro.

417. Cerberus ingens immanisque in antro recu-
 bans adverso regnum hoc trifauci personat latratu.

The mourning shade of Dido

442. Hic, quos durus amor crudeli tabe peredit,
 silva tegit; *curae* non ipsa in morte relinquunt.
 450. Inter quas Phoenissa errabat recens a vulnere
 Dido.

442. Hic silva tegit, quos amor durus tabe crudeli
 peredit; *et moeror eos* non ipsam post mortem re-
 linquit. 450. Inter quas Dido Phoenissa vulnere er-
 rabat *recenti*.

AENEIS.

Styx et Charon ejus portitor.

VOCABULARY

387. increpo, 1, -ui, -pitum or -avi, -atum: to rustle,
 quisquis, 2: whoever, 30, i (chide
 flumen, -minis, n: river
 tendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: to stretch, strive, tend
 for, 1: to say, 44, 11
 age, encouraging interjection: come, well, good, 47
 istinc: thence

391. vivus, 3: living
 vecto, 1 (fr. veho, 3, vexi, vectum, to carry): to car-
 ry, convey, ride, 49, j

TRANSLATION

387. chides instinctively: Whoever you are, that
 armed are tending to our river, say (right) from
 there why you are coming, and stop approaching.

comprimo, 3, -pressi, -pressum: to press together,
 hold back, 108, a
 gressus, 4 (fr. gradior, 3, gressum, to walk): step

391. To convey living bodies on Styx's ferry is not
 permitted.

Cerberus.

417. Cerberus, 2: three-headed dog
 recubo, 1: to lie back
 adversus, 3: opposite
 trifaux, -ucis: three-throated
 persono, 1, -nui, -nitum: to sound through, resound
 immanis, 2: enormous, vast, monstrous

417. Lying in the cave opposite, Cerberus, huge
 and monstrous, resounds through this realm with
 his triple-throated barking.

latratus, 4 (fr. latro, 1, to bark): barking, 88

Maesta Didonis umbra.

442. tego, 3, texi, tectum: to cover, conceal, pro-
 tabes, -bis, f: putrefaction, plague, 93, a (tect
 peredo, 3, -edi, -esum: to eat up, destroy
 maeror, -is, m (fr. maereo, 2, -, -, to grieve): grief,
 relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: to leave (49, a
 Phoenissus, 3: Phoenician
 vulnus, -neris, n: wound, 86

442. Here a forest keeps those whom the cruel
 pest of crazy love has consumed. Their grief does
 not leave them (even) after death itself. 450. A-
 mongst them Phoenician Dido with her fresh wound
 was wandering.

recens, -ntis: fresh, 26, c

AENEID

Hell

548. Respicit Aeneas subito et sub rupe sinistra moenia lata videt triplici circumdata muro, quae rapidus flammis ambit torrentibus amnis.

548. Subito respicit Aeneas et videt *arcem immensam* sub rupe sinistra circumdatam triplici muro, quam rapidus amnis torrentibus ambit flammis.

Famous evildoers

580. Hic genus antiquum Terrae, Titania pubes fulmine dejecti fundo volvuntur in imo.

580. Hic genus Terrae antiquum Titaniae proles fulmine dejectae in imo volvuntur fundo.

616. Saxum ingens volvunt, alii radiisque rotarum districti pendent; sedet aeternumque sedebit,

616. *Alii* saxum ingens volvunt, alii rotarum radiis districti pendent, et alii aliter in aeternum torquentur.

625. Non, mihi si linguae centum sint oraque centum, omnia poenarum percurrere nomina possim.

625. Si linguae mihi oraque essent centum, non omnia poenarum genera percurrere possem.

AENEIS.

Tartarus.

VOCABULARY

548. respicio, 3, -pexi, -ctum: to look back, 40
subito: suddenly
rupes, -pis, f: rock, cliff
[latus, 3: ample]
sinister, -tra, -trum: left
immensus, 3: immeasurable
circundo, 1, -dedi, -datum: to surround
triplex, -licis: threefold, 29, g; 93, a

TRANSLATION

548. (Now) Aeneas suddenly looks back and sees under a cliff on the left side an immense stronghold, surrounded with a triple wall, around which a rapid river flows with burning flames.

amnis, -is, m: river
torreo, 2, -rui, tostum: to burn, fry, 93, a
ambio, 4: to go around, 61, a

Malefactores.

580. antiquus, 3: ancient
Titanius, 3 (fr. Titanus, 2 or Titan, -is, Titan): Titanian, 49, z
[pubes, -bis, f: the sign of puberty]; proles, -is, f:
fulmen, -minis, n: thunderbolt, 93, a (offspring)
dejicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to throw or cast down, 40

580. Here Earth's ancient progeny, the Titanian offspring, hurled down with thunderbolts, welter in the deepest abyss.

imus, 3: the lowest, 27, f
fundus, 2: bottom, estate

616. saxum, 2: rock
radius, 2: ray, spoke, 79
distingo, 3, -trinxi, -ictum: to draw apart, stretch
pendeo, 2, pependi, -: to hang (out, 36, b
aliter: otherwise, 28, e
aeternus, 3: eternal

616. Some roll a huge stone, others hang, stretched out on the spokes of wheels, and others are tormented forever in various ways.

torqueo, 2, -rsi, -rtum: to twist, torture

625. os, oris, n: mouth, 23, I d
[nomen, -minis, n: name]; poena, 1: punishment
genus, -neris, n: species, kind
percurro, 3, -curri, -cursum: to run along, 109, c

625. If I had a hundred tongues and mouths, I would not be able to recount the kinds of their punishments.

AENEID

The Elysian fields and the Lethe river

637. Devenere locos laetos et amoena virecta
fortunatorum nemorum sedesque beatas.

703. Interea videt Aeneas in valle reducta
seclusum nemus et virgulta sonantia silvae,
Letheumque domos placidas, qui praenatat, amnem.

713. Tum pater Anchises: Anima, quibus altera
fato
corpora debentur, Lethaei ad fluminis undas
securas latices et longa obliviam potant.

637. Devenere ad loca laeta et virecta amoena,
ad fortunatorum nemora sedesque beatas.

703. Interea videt Aeneas in valle reducta seclu-
sum nemus et sonora silvae virgulta, amnemque Le-
then, quae placidum perfluit lucum.

713. Tum pater Anchises: Anima, inquit, quibus
altera corpora fato dabuntur, ex Lethaei undis obli-
vionem bibunt aeternam.

Anchises shows the future Roman heroes

754. Et tumulum capit, unde omnes longo ordine
possit
adversos legere et venientium discere vultus.

756. Nunc age, Dardanium prolem quae deinde
sequatur
gloria, qui maneant Itala de gente nepotes,

754. Tum tumulum ascendit, unde omnes longo in
ordine possit observare adversos et venientium videre
vultus.

756. Nunc ergo Dardanium prolem, quae deinde
sequatur gloria, quae evadant de Itala gente nepo-

AENEIS.

Elysium et Lethe.

VOCABULARY

637. devenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to come through,
virectum, 2: turf, meadow (arrive, 32, d
fortunatus, 3: fortunate
nemus, -moris, n: grove, forest

703. vallis, -is, f: valley, vale
reduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to bring back, sequester,
36, b
secludo, 3, -clusi, -clusum: to shut up apart, 36, b
sonorus, 3: loud, resonant; [sono, 1: to make noise,
sound]
virgultum, 2 (fr. virga, 1, twig): thicket, brush-
wood, 49, o

713. [debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: to owe]
[securus, 3: sure, safe]
[oblivium, 2, obsolete for]: oblivio, -onis, f (fr. ob-
liviscor, 3, -litum, to forget): forgetfulness, 49, b
[latex, -ticis, m (fr. lateo, 2, -tui, -, to hide): liquid,
fluid]

Anchises ostendit futuros heroes Romanos.

754. tumulus, 2: mound, hill
ascendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to mount, 101
observo, 1: to watch
venio, 4, veni, ventum: to come, 26, a
vultus, 4: countenance, look, face

756. evado, 3, -asi, -asum: to become, turn out, 132
gens, -ntis, f: clan, people, nation
nepos, -otis, m: grandchild

Page one hundred and fourteen

TRANSLATION

637. (At length) they came to the joyful regions
and pleasant meadows, to the grove of the fortunate
and the abodes of the blessed.

703. Meanwhile Aeneas sees in a sequestered val-
ley a secluded grove (with) rustling thicket and the
Lethe river, which flows through these quiet woods.

Lethe, 1, f, an infernal river, 19, c
perfluo, 2, -flui, -xum: to flow through
[praenato, 1: swim before]
lucus, 2: grove

713. Now, father Anchises said: "The souls to
whom other bodies are granted by fate, drink eternal
oblivion of Lethe's waves."

[poto, 1: to drink often]; bibo, 3, bibi, bibitum: to
drink

754. Then he mounts a hill, whence he may notice
the (souls) opposite him in a long row, and watch
the countenances of the approaching (shades).

756. Now then, I shall explain what glory will fol-
low the Trojan offspring, and what descendants will
come forth from your Italian race, the distinguished

21. PUBLIUS VERGILIUS MARO

70 - 19 B.C.

Course 44

AENEID

Anchises shows the future Roman heroes

illustres animas nostrumque in nomen ituras
expediam: (hic) Romulus, ... Marcellus,
... Caesar, ... Augustus

890. *Exin* bella viro memorat, quae deinde geren-
da,

892. et quo quemque modo fugiat feratque labo-
rem.

tes, illustres animas in nostrum nomen ituras expe-
diam: (hic) Romulus, ... Caesar, ... Mar-
cellus, ... Augustus

890. *Demum* bella filio memorat, quae deinde
erunt gerenda,

892. et quo quemque *effugiat* modo feratque la-
borem.

AENEIS.

Anchises ostendit futuros heroes Romanos.

VOCABULARY

illustris, 2: *bright, brilliant, distinguished*
expedio, 4: *to disengage, put in order, despatch, 132*

890. [*exin, arch. for*] *exinde*: *from there, thence*
memoro, 1: *to mention, recount*
gero, 3, *gessi, gestum*: *to carry, bear*; *bellum g.*: *to*
[fugio, 3, fugi, fugitum: to flee] (*wage a war*
effugio, 3, -fugi, -fugitum: to escape, avoid, 40; 132

TRANSLATION

souls, succeeding to our names: (there) is
Romulus, ... Caesar, ... Marcellus, ... Augustus...

890. *Finally, he tells his son of the wars, which*
hereafter are to be waged ... and how he may evade
or surmount each difficulty.

labor, -is, m: work, toil, difficulty

21. PUBLIUS VERGILIUS MARO

70 - 19 B.C.

Course 83

BEE KEEPING

*Original in hexameter **

Protinus *aerii* mellis caelestia dona
Exsequar. Hanc *etiam*, Maecenas, aspice partem.
Admiranda tibi levium spectacula rerum,
Magnanimosque duces totiusque ordine gentis
Mores et studia et populos et proelia dicam.

*In prose. ***

Protinus *dulcis* caelestia dona mellis *rhythmis* ex-
sequar. Hanc *quoque*, Maecenas, aspice partem. Ad-
miranda levium rerum spectacula, magnanimosque
totius gentis duces, mores et studia et populos et
proelia tibi ordine dicam.

GEORGICON. LIBER QUARTUS.

De Cura Apum.

VOCABULARY

1. *protinus*: *without delay, on the spot*
[*aërius*, 3 (*fr. aër, -ris, m, air*): *airy, lofty, 49, m*]
mel, mellis, n: honey
rhythmus, 2: *rhythm, song, 88*
exsequor, 3, *-secutum*: *to follow, accomplish*
Maecēnās, -ātis: Cajus Cilnius Maecenas, a friend of
Augustus
spectaculum, 2 (*fr. specto, 1, to look at*): *sight,*
show, spectacle, 49, f

TRANSLATION

Now I shall sing about the heavenly gifts of
sweet honey. Listen, Maecenas, to this part as well.
I shall tell in order of marvellous spectacles of tiny
beings: the generous chiefs, the habits, the pursuits,
the tribes, and the wars of the whole race.

proelium, 2: *battle*
magnanimus, 3: *high-minded*
ordine, 88

* Cf. 139

** Cf. 13, I, II

BEE KEEPING

6. In tenui labor, at tenuis non gloria, si quem
Numina laeva sinunt auditque vocatus Apollo.

8. Principio sedes apibus statioque petenda,
Quo neque sit ventis aditus, nam pabula venti
Ferre domum prohibent, neque oves haedique petulci
Floribus insultent, aut errans bucula campo
Decutiat rorem et surgentes atterat herbas.

13. Absint et picti squalentia terga lacerti
Pinguibus a stabulis meropesque aliaeque volucres,
Et manibus Procne pectus signata cruentis;
Omnia nam late vastant ipsasque volantes
Ore ferunt dulcem nidis immitibus escam.

6. In tenui materia est labor, at non est tenuis ars
cantanda, si Numina laeva me sinunt exauditque in-
vocatus Apollo.

8. Imprimis sedes apibus statioque est eligenda,
quo nec ventis sit aditus, qui pabula domum ferre
prohibent, nec oves haedique petulci inter flores in-
sultent, aut in campo bucula errans decutiat rorem et
surgentes atterat herbas.

13. Absint ab apiario prospero et lacerti squalentia
terga colorati, meropesque aliaeque volucres, uti et hi-
rundines pectore manibus Procnes signato cruentis
nam omnia late vastant apes ipsasque volantes et ore
eas ferunt escam dulcem immitibus pullis.

GEORGICON.

De Cura Apum.

VOCABULARY

6. tenuis, 2: thin, slight, fine, tiny
laevus, 3: left, unfavorable
sino, 3, sivi, situm: to place, permit, 109, a

8. quo: whither, to which, where, 57, f; 130
aditus, 4 (fr. adeo, 4, to go to): entrance, access, 49, a
pabulum, 2 (fr. pasco, 3, pavi, pastum, to feed):
food, 49, f
petulcus, 3: butting, frisky
haedus, 2: young goat, kid
insulto, 1: to leap on, dance, 130
campus, 2: meadow, field, place
decutio, 3, -cussi, -ssum: to shake off, 130
bucula, 1 (fr. bos, bovis, c, cow): heifer, 49, p

13. [stabulum, 2: stable]
apiarium, 2 (fr. apes, -pis, f, bee): apiary, 49, n
lacertus, 2: lizard, muscle in the upper arm
squaleo, 2, -lui, -: to be dirty, covered with some-
tergum, 2: back, 65 (thing)
coloro, 1 (fr. color, -is, color): to color
[pingo, 3, pinxi, pictum: to paint]
merops, -opis, m: bee-eater (bird)
volucer, -cris, -cre: flying; volucris, -is, f: bird
hirundo, -dinis, f: swallow
pectore signato, 86
pectore signato, 86; [Procne pectum signata, 65]
Procne, 1, Tereus' wife, who killed her son and
served him up to his father to avenge her hus-
band's infidelity; then, pursued, she was changed
into a swallow, 19, c

TRANSLATION

6. The material (with which the bees) work, is
trifling, but not so their art (which I) will sing, if
the unfavorable deities allow (it) and Apollo (whom
I) invoked, hears me.

8. First, a place, a locality must be chosen, to which
there be no access for the wind, which prevents
(them) from carrying home their food; nor must
sheep, nor frolicking kids dance around the flowers,
nor must (any) straying heifer shake off the dew
and bruise the rising flowers in the meadow.

ros, roris, m: dew
surgo, 3, surrexi, -rrectum: to rise,
attero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: to rub, bruise, 130

13. The colored lizards too, with their scaly backs,
should keep far from a prosperous apiary, (no less
than) the bee-eaters and other birds, such as the
swallows with their breasts stained by Procne's
bloody hands; for, far and wide they destroy all
bees, even those flying, and carry them in their
mouths, as a delicate food for their unfeeling nest-
lings.

cruentus, 3: bloody, 93, a
volo, 1: to fly
apes, apis, f (gen. pl. apum): bee
immitis, 2: pitiless, cruel, 49, A1, 2
pullus, 2: any young animal, nestling
[nidus, 2: nest]
esca, 1: food

BEE KEEPING

18. *At liquidi fontes et stagna virentia musco
Adsint et tenuis fugiens per gramina rivus,
Palmaque vestibulum aut ingens oleaster inumbret,
Ut, cum prima novi ducent agmina reges
Vere suo, ludetque favis emissa juventus,
Vicina invitet decedere ripa calori
Obviaque hospitium teneat frondentibus arbor.*

25. *In medium, seu stabit iners seu profluet umor,
Transversas salices et grandia conjice saxa,
Pontibus ut crebris possint consistere et alas
Pandere ad aestivum solem, si forte morantes
Sparsit aut praeceps Neptuno immersit Euris.*

30. *Haec circum casiae virides et olentia late
Serpulla et graviter spirantis copia thymbrae*

18. *Dein et fons vel stagnum musco virens adsit,
vel tenuis per gramina fugiens rivus, palmaque aut
ingens oleaster inumbret vestibulum, ut, cum vere
sereno prima agmina ducunt novae reginae ludique
favis emissa juventus, et a calore decedere invitat
ripa vicina, frondenti hospitio eas obvia teneat arbor.*

25. *Sive stat iners sive profluit aqua, in medium
transversas salicis virgas et eminentia conjice saxa,
ut crebris in pontibus possint consistere et alas pan-
dere in calore solis, si forte morantes sparsit aut
aquae praeceps immersit Euris.*

30. *Circum haec floeant casiae virides, et late
olentia serpulla et copia graviter spirantis thymbrae,*

GEORGICON.

De Cura Apum.

VOCABULARY

18. stagnum, 2 (fr. stagno, 1, to stand still):
standing water, pool, 49, f
muscus, 2: moss, 88
rivus, 2: brook
vireo, 2, -rui, -: to be green
gramen, -minis, n: grass, turf
oleaster, 2: wild olive tree
inumbro, 1: to shade, overshadow, 106
vestibulum, 2: courtyard, entrance
ver, veris, n: spring, 95
favum, 2: honey comb, 90
agmen, -minis, n (fr. ago, to set into motion): march,
juventus, -tutis, f: youth (swarm, 49, e
decedo, 3, -cessi, -ssum: to depart, leave, withdraw,
invito, 1: to invite, 124, a (90)

25. iners, -rtis: idle, lazy, still
profluo, 3, -fluxi, -uctum: to flow forth
[(h)umor, -is, m: moisture]
medius, 3: middle, 26, f
transversus, 3: transverse
salix, -icis, f: willow (tree)
virga, 1: twig
creber, -bra, -brum: dense, (many)
emineo, 2, -nui, -: to stand out
saxum, 2: rock, stone
pando, 3, pandi, -nsum: to stretch, extend, spread
[aestivus, 3: of summer]
spargo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: to scatter, strew

30. floreo, 2, -rui, -: to bloom, flower, 106
casia, 1: lavender
viridis, 2: green
oleo, 2, -lui, -: to emit an odor, be fragrant, smell
serpullum, 2: thyme

TRANSLATION

18. *Then let there be a spring, or a pool with
green moss, or a small creek, hastening through the
meadow, and let a palm or a large wild olive tree
overshadow the entrance, in order that, when early
queens lead their first swarms in the bright spring,
and the young (bees), borne from the honey comb,
indulge in sport, and the bank of the neighboring
pool invites (them) to withdraw from the heat, the
nearby tree may receive them with leafy shelter.*

ripa, 1: the bank of a stream
frondeo, 2, -dui, -: to be leafy, 26, c
hospitium, 2 (fr. hospes, -pitis, c, guest): hospitali-
ty, inn, shelter, 49, n; 93, a

25. *Whether the water stands still or flows, throw
crosswise willow twigs into its middle, and stones
partly submerged, that they may rest on many
bridges, and spread their wings in the heat of the
sun, if perchance the rash east-wind should have
scattered the loiterers, or plunged them into the wa-
ter.*

consisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum: to stop, halt
immergo, 3, -mersi, -rsum: to plunge into, 79
praeceps, cipitis: rash, headlong, 26, d
Eurus, 2: east-wind
moror, 1: to linger, loiter

30. *Around these (things) green cassia, as also
wide fragrant thyme and an abundance of strong-*

spiro, 1: to blow, breathe
thymbra, 1: savory

BEE KEEPING

Floreat, irriguumque bibant violaria fontem.

33. Ipsa autem, seu corticibus tibi suta cavatis
Seu lento fuerint alvaria vimine texta,
Angustus habeant aditus: nam frigore mella
Cogit hiemps, eademque calor liquefacta remittit.
Utraque vis apibus pariter metuenda;

37. neque illae
nequiquam in tectis certatim tenuia cera
spiramenta linunt fucoque et floribus oras
explent, collectumque haec ipsa ad munera gluten
et visco et Phrygiae servant pice lentius Idae.

42. Saepe etiam effossis, si vera est fama, latebris
sub terra fovere Larem, penitusque reperate

irriguumque fontem violaria bibant.

33. Ipsa autem alvearia, sive tibi ex corticibus ca-
vatis suta, sive lento vimine fuerint texta, angustus
habeant aditus: nam frigore hiemps favum constrin-
git, eundemque liquefacit calor. Apibus utraque vis
caeli pariter est metuenda;

37. nec ipsae
nequaquam tenuia spiramenta in tectis certatim
linunt cera, fucoque oras ex plantis explent allato,
collectumque ad hoc ipsum opus, adhibent gluten
lentius et visco et pice Phrygiae Idae.

42. Saepe etiam, si vera est fama, in effossis sub
terra latebris habent domicilia, penitusque in pumi-

GEORGICON.

De Cura Apum.

VOCABULARY

irriguus, 3 (fr. irriigo, 1, to water): watering, 49, t
violarium, 2 (fr. viola, 1, violet): violet-bed, 49, n
bibō, 3, -bi, -bitum: to drink, 106

33. alvearium, (fr. alveus, 2, trough): beehive, 49, n
cortex, -ticis, c: bark, rind, 92
cavo, 1: to hollow
suo, 3, sui, sutum: to sew, 120, 2
lentus, 3: slow, pliant, sticky
vimen, -minis, n (fr. vieo, 2, to twine together):
osier, 49, e; 92
texo, 3, -xui, -xtum: to weave, twine, 120, 2
angustus, 3: narrow
frigus, -oris, n: cold, coolness, 93, a
constringo, 3, -inxi, -ictum: to bind, draw together,
compress

37. nequaquam: by no means
spiramentum, 2 (fr. spiro, 1, breath): (air) hole, 49, e
tectum, 2 (fr. tego, 3, texi, tectum, to cover): roof,
abode
certatim: (fr. certo, 1, to contend, vie): emulously,
lino, 3, levi, litum or linio, 4: to smear (28, e
cera, 1: wax, 93, a
fucus, 2: rouge, propolis (bee glue), drone bee, 93, a
expleo, 2, -plevi, -etum: to fill (up)
affero, 3, attuli, allatum: to bring to, 43, 8; 49, A2; 83
colligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: to collect
ora, 1: edge, brim, border, crack

42. effodio, 3, -di, -ffosum: to dig out, excavate
latebra, 1: hiding place
penitus: thoroughly, deep within, 28, c
[lar, -is, m: tutelary deity, home; foveo, 2, -vi, -fo-
tum: to keep warm]

TRANSLATION

scented savory may bloom, and let violet-beds drink
(of) the watering fountain.

33. Further on, let the hives themselves, whether
(they be) sewn for you of hollowed-out bark, or
woven of pliant osier, have narrow inlets, for win-
ter congeals the honey-comb with its cold, and the
heat melts it. Bees must be protected from both
kinds of weather;

liquefacio, 3, -feci, -factum: to melt, dissolve
[remitto, 3, -misi, -issum: to send back, forgive]
calor, -is, m: heat
metuo, 3, -ui, -, : to fear, 76

37. above all, they eagerly smear with wax, all the
crevices in their abode and fill the cracks with
propolis, brought forth from plants; they apply a
glue (which they have) collected for this very pur-
pose, and (which is) more tenacious than either bird
lime or the pitch of Phrygian Ida.

gluten, -inis, n: glue
viscum, 2: mistletoe, bird lime, 87
pix, -icis, f: pitch, 87
Ida, 1, name of several mountains

42. Often also, if the report is true, they abide in
excavated hiding places underground; they have

domicilium, 2 (fr. domus, house): dwelling place,
pumex, -micis, m: porous stone (abode, 49, p

BEE KEEPING

pumicibusque cavis exesaeque arboris antro.

45. Tu tamen et levi rimosa cubilia limo
unge fovens circum et raras superinjice frondes.

47. *Neu propius tectis taxum sine, neve rubentes
ure foco cancos, altae neu crede paludi,
aut ubi odor caeni gravis aut ubi concava pulsu
saxa sonant vocisque offensa resultat imago.*

51. *Quod superest, ubi pulsam hiemem sol aureus
egit
sub terras caelumque aestiva luce recludit;
illae continuo saltus silvasque peragrant
purpureosque metunt flores et flumina libant
summa leves*

cibus cavis sunt repertae, nec non in exesae arboris
cavo.

45. Tu tamen fovens rimosa alvearia levi limo un-
ge circum et raras superinjice frondes.

47. *Nec taxum sine prope apiario, neque coctos ure
ibi cancos, neque altae confide paludi, nec loco, ubi
odor caeni est gravis, aut ubi concava pulsu resonant
saxa, vocisque resultat echo.*

51. *Sine mora simulac pulsam hiemem sol aureus
sub terram egit, caelumque aestiva luce recludit, con-
tinuo ipsae saltus silvasque peragrant, purpureis ex
floribus metunt pollen nectarque leves bibunt sum-
mum.*

GEORGICON.

De Cura Apum.

VOCABULARY

reperio, 4, -ri, -rtum: to find
exedo, 3, -di, -esum: to eat up
[antrum, 2: cave]
cavus, 3: hollow, concave, 26, f

45. limus, 2: clay, 93, a
rimosus, 3 (fr. rima, 1, crack): full of cracks,
chinky, 49, t
ungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: to smear
rarus, 3: rare
superinjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: throw upon, 40

47. taxus, 4, f: yew tree, 16, b
sino, 3, sī(v)i, situm: place, permit
coquo, 3, coxi, -ctum: to cook
cancer, -cri, 2: cancer, crab
caenum, 2: dirt, filth, mire, dung
concauus, 3: hollow, vaulted
pulsus, 4 (fr. pello, 3, pepulsi, pulsum, strike, drive):
stroke, blow, 94
resulto, 1 (fr. resilio, -lui, -ultum): rebound, re-
sound, 49, j

51. [supersum: to be left, remain]
mora, 1: delay
simulac: as soon as, 120, c
continuo: immediately, 28, a
recludo, 3, -usi, -usum: to disclose, bring to light, 93, a
saltus, 4 (fr. salio, 4, -lui, -ltum, to leap): a leap,
peragro, 1: to wander, roam (pass, dale
purpureus, 3: purple, bright, 49, s
meto, 3, messui, -ssum: to reap
pollen, -linis, m: pollen

TRANSLATION

been found deep in stone holes and cavities of worm-
eaten trees.

45. (Your part) however, in keeping them warm,
(is to) smear the chinky hives around with smooth
clay, and to strew light leaves above.

frons, -ndis, f: leaf, foliage, leafy twig

47. Don't allow a yew tree (to stand) near the
apiary, nor (should you) burn there cooked crab
(shells); do not trust in a deep lake, nor in a place
where the stench of dung is strong, or where the hol-
low stones resound at a blow, and where the echo
of the voice reverberates.

echo, f, Greek, indecl. except gen., -us: echo
confido, 3, -fisum: to trust, 31, d; 79

51. As soon as the golden sun has chased the de-
feated winter under the earth, and has brightened
the sky with summer light, without delay they roam
through the dales and woods, and reap the pollen
of the bright flowers and lightly drink the finest nec-
tar from them.

nectar, -is, n: the drink of gods
lēvis, 2: light, 56
[libo, 1: to pour, offer]

BEE KEEPING

..... *Hinc* nescio qua dulcedine laetae
progeniem nidosque fovent, hinc arte recentes
excudunt ceras et mella tenacia fingunt.

58. *Hinc ubi jam* emissum caveis ad sidera caeli
nare per aestatem liquidam suspexeris agmen
obscuramque trahi vento mirabere nubem,
contemplator: aquas dulces et frondea semper
tectata petunt

62. *Huc* tu jussos asperge saporas,
trita melisphylla et cerinthae ignobile gramen;
tinnitusque cie et Matris quate cymbala circum:
ipsae consident medicatis sedibus, ipsae
intima more suo sese in cunabula condent.

Nescio *edicere*, qua dulcedine *exinde* progeniem
nidosque foveant laetae, qua arte hinc excudant cel-
las recentes et mel tenax fingant *exinde*.

58. *Mox cum* per aestatem serenam ad caelum ex
caveis emissum *examen* nare conspexeris trahique
vento nubem obscuram miratus sis, contemplare,
semper dulces aquas et frondea ab iis tecta peti.

62. *Tunc* tu jussos asperge saporas, trita melis-
phylla et vile cerinthae gramen; cieque tinnitus et
circumquate cymbala Matris *Cybeles*: et ipsae con-
sident medicatis sedibus ac more suo in intima se
alvearia condent.

GEORGICON.

De Cura Apum.

VOCABULARY

dulcedo, -dinis, f (fr. dulcis, 2, sweet): *sweetness, tenderness, 88*
exinde: *therefrom, henceforth*
progenies, 5 (fr. gigno, 3, genui, -nitum, beget): *de-
scent, offspring, 49, u*
excudo, 3, -cudi, -cusum: *to strike out, forge, coin,*
fingo, 3, finxi, fictum: *to form, mould, 132* (132
tenax, -acis: *grasping, sticky*

58. [sidus, -eris, n: *star*]
[liquidus, 3: *liquid*]
serenus, 3: *clear, bright, fair*
cavea, 1: *cavity*
examen, -minis, n (fr. exago): *swarm; (fr. exami-
no): examination, 49, e*
no, 1: *to swim, float*
[suspicio, 3, -spexi, -ctum: *to look upward, suspect*]
conspicio, 3, -spexi, -ctum: *to behold, perceive, 32, f*

62. jubeo, 2, jussi, -ssum: *to order, prescribe*
aspergo, 2, -rsi, -rsum: *to sprinkle, 108, a*
sapor, -is, m (fr. sapio, 3, -pui, -, to taste): *the
taste of a thing, juice*
melisphyllum, 2: *bee grass*
tero, 3, trivi, tritum: *to rub, bruise, grind*
cerintha, 1: *wax flower*
vilis, 2: *worthless, common*
[ignobilis, 2: *ignoble*]
cieo, 2, civi, citum: *to summon, arouse, 108, a*
tinnitus, 4 (fr. tinnio, 4, ring, tinkle): *jingling*
circumquatio, 3, -assi, -ssum: *to shake, beat around,*
cymbalum, 2: *cymbal* (108, a
Cybele, 1 or Magna Mater, a Phrygian goddess, 19, c

TRANSLATION

*I cannot describe with what gentle care they there-
with joyously tend their offspring and nest (using
the pollen and nectar), with what art they form
thereof new cells and then store away the viscous
honey (made) therefrom.*

recens, -ntis: *fresh, new*

58. *Soon, during the bright summer when you per-
ceive a swarm issued from their hives floating to
the sky, and you admire them driven by the wind
as a blackening cloud, be sure, they are seeking
sweetened waters and leafy shelters.*

nubes, -bis, f: *cloud*
contemplor, 1: *to look at attentively, 108, a; 57, 4*
frondeus, 3 (fr. frons, -dis, f, foliage): *leafy, 49, s*

62. *Now, sprinkle the prescribed fluids, the bruised
bee grass and the common wax flower; ring the
bells and beat all around the cymbals of mother Cy-
bele; they will settle on the place prepared and after
their manner they will retire into the interior of the
(prepared) hive.*

consido, 3, -sedi, -sessum: *to sit, settle down, 79*
medico, 1 (fr. medicus, 2, physician): *to heal, sprin-
kle with a preparation, 49, e*
[cunabulum, 2 (fr. cunae, -arum, cradle): *a little
cradle, 49, f*]
condo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *establish, bury, withdraw,*
(hide

21. PUBLIUS VERGILIUS MARO

70 - 19 B.C.

Course 83

BEE KEEPING

67. *Sin* autem ad pugnam exierint, nam saepe du-
regibus incessit magno discordia motu; (obus
continuoque animos vulgi et trepidantia bello
corda licet longe praesciscere; namque morantes
Martius ille aeris rauci canor notus increpat et vox
auditur fractos sonitus imitata tubarum.

73. Tum trepidae inter se coeunt pinnisque coru-
scant
spiculaque exacuunt rostrisque aptant lacertos,
... magnisque vocant clamoribus hostem.

67. *Si* autem ad pugnam exierint, nam saepe dis-
cordia duabus reginis magno incedit motu, continuo
animos vulgi et *pro* bello trepidantia corda e longe
praesciscere licebit; namque Martius aeris rauci ca-
nor notus morantes increpat ac vox fractos tubarum
sonitus imitata auditur.

73. Tum trepidae inter se coeunt pinnisque coru-
scant
spiculaque exacuunt rostris aptantque lacertos,
... magnisque vocant clamoribus hostem.

GEORGICON.

De Cura Apum.

VOCABULARY

67. incedo, 3, -cessi, -ssum: walk, come on, break
out, 79
vulgus, 2, n: people, crowd, multitude, 20, d
trepido, 1: to tremble, be excited
praescisco, 3, -scivi, -scitum: to find out beforehand
Martius, 3 (fr. Mars, -rtis, Mars): warlike, 49, z
raucus, 3: hoarse, dull-sounding (melody
canor, -is, m (fr. cano, 3, cecini, cantum, sing): song,
increpo, 1, -pui, -pitum: rustle, chide, rebuke
imitor, 1: to imitate, copy

73. trepidus, 3, (fr. trepido, 1): trembling, excited,
pinna, or penna, 1: feather, wing, 88 (49, t; 56
corusco, 1: shake, flash, glitter
spiculum, 2 (fr. spica, 1, -us, -um, 2, a spike): a
sharp point, a sting, 49, p
exacuo, 1: to sharpen

TRANSLATION

67. Then, when they go forth to battle with great
excitement, for between two queens discord often
arises, you can at once learn from afar the mind of
the multitude and their excitement for battle; for
a well-known warlike din of dull-sounding bronze
(trumpet) stirs up the loiterers, and a voice is heard
like the broken sound of a war bugle.

sonitus, 4 (fr. sono, 1, -nui, -nitum, to sound):
sound, 49, a

73. Now, they excitedly flock together, shake their
wings, sharpen their stings*, adjust their limbs with
their mandibles, and summon the enemy with a loud
buzz.

rostrum, 2: beak, mandible, 93, a

* A mistaken idea. They never wage war, but they are fond of collecting honey even from another weaker hive, not well defended. In this robbery all the bees of the weaker hive are killed in its defense, but an equal number of the robber bees are killed also.

22. ALBIUS TIBULLUS

Lyric Poet

59 - 19 B.C.

Course 48

TO MESSALA ON FARM LIFE*

Original in distichs **

In prose ***

Divitias alius fulvo sibi congerat auro,

Divitias alius fulvo sibi congerat auro, et teneat culti

DE VITA AGRESTI AD MESSALAM.

Liber Primus. Elegia I.

VOCABULARY

divitiae, -arum (fr. dives, -vitis, rich): riches, 49, u
fulvus, 3: tawny reddish yellow, 93, a
congero, 3, -gessi, -stum: to carry together, heap, 103

TRANSLATION

Let another heap wealth for himself in shiny gold,

* From this poem of Tibullus we can realize whence the Roman martyrs inherited their strong faith in God.

** Cf. 139, b2 *** Cf. 13, I, II

ON FARM LIFE

- Et teneat culti jugera magna soli,
Quem labor assiduus vicino terreat hoste,
 Martia cui somnos classica *pulsa* fugent:
 Me *mea* paupertas vitae *traducat inert*,
 Dum meus assiduo luceat igne focus.
7. Ipse *seram teneras* maturo tempore vites
 Rusticus, *et facili grandia* poma manu.
 Nec spes destituat, sed frugum semper acervos
 Praebeat, et pleno *pinguia* musta lacu.
11. Nam veneror, *seu stipes* habet desertus in agris,
Seu vetus in trivio florea *serta* lapis
Et quodcumque *mihi* pomum *novus* educat annus
 Libatum agricolae ponitur *ante* deo.
15. Flava Ceres, tibi sit nostro de rure corona
 Spicea, quae templi pendeat ante fores.
- jugera multa soli;
alium angor assiduus vicino terreat hoste, Martia
 cui somnos classica *flata* fugent:
 me *autem* ducat *meae* paupertas vitae *modestae*, dum
 meus assiduo luceat igne focus.
7. *Fertiles* maturo tempore vites *pomique arbores*
grandis ipse sero rusticus *habili* manu.
 Nec spes destituat, sed frugum semper acervos
 pleno *mustum pingue* praebeat lacu.
11. Nam veneror quodcumque libatum agricolae, *sive*
quod habet stipes desertus in agris,
sive florea *serta*, *quae* habet vetus in trivio *lapis*;
quodve deo ponitur pomum *novi anni productum*.
15. Flava Ceres, tibi sit nostro de rure corona spicea,
 quae ante templi pendeat fores.

DE VITA AGRESTI.

VOCABULARY

- jugerum, 2: acre, (120 x 240 feet)
 solum, 2: bottom, ground, land, the sole of foot, 67, b
 angor, -is, (fr. ango, 3, -nxi, -nctum, press together,
 torment): distress, anguish, torment, 49, a
 classicum, 2: military signal, trumpet; cui, 74
 Martius, 3 (fr. Mars, -rtis, m, the god of war):
 martial, of war, 49, z
 vicinus, 3: neighboring, 115
 flo, 1: to blow, 110, b'
 fugo, 1: to put to flight, chase, 120, c3
7. [tener, 3: tender, soft]
 fertilis, 2: fruitful
 vitis, -is, f: vine
 pomum, 2: fruit, 67, d
 maturus, 3: mature, perfect, early, 95
 grandis, 2: great, large
 sero, 3, sevi, satum: to sow, set, plant
 rusticus, 3 (fr. rus, ruris, n, country, farm): rural,
 farmer, 49, t
 habilis, 2: handy, fit (lurch, 103
 destituo, 3, -ui, -utum: set down, desert, leave in the
11. libo, 1: pour, offer, 26, f
 stipes, -pitis, m: log, trunk of a tree, post
 desero, 3, -rui, -rtum: forsake, a desert, neglect
 trivium, 2: crossing of three roads
 ager, -gri, 2: field
 floreus, 3 (fr. flos, -oris, m, flower): of flower, 49, s
 sertum, 2 (fr. sero, 3, -rui, -rtum, weave): garland, wreath, 26, f
15. flavus, 3: (golden) yellow
 Ceres, -reris: the goddess of agriculture
 spiceus, 3 (fr. spica, 1, spike): of spike of corn, 49, s
 pendeo, 2, pependi, -, : hang, 120, c3
 foris, -is, f: door

TRANSLATION

- and hold many acres of cultivated land; let another
 for whom the sound of war-bugles chases dreams
 away be terrified with anguish by his neighboring
 foe; as (for me), let the poverty of my modest life
 guide me, provided the fire burn constantly in my
 (hearth.
 [traduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: carry over, direct]
 assiduus, 3: constant, unceasing
 luceo, 2, -uxi, -, : shine, glitter, be bright, 128
 focus, 2: hearth
7. At the proper time, as a farmer with skilled
 hands, I plant fertile vines and trees of large fruit.
 May hope not desert me, but (let her) afford me an
 abundant harvest and sweet new wine in a full vat.
- frux, -ugis, f: fruit, crop, 22, a
 acervus, 2: heap
 praebeo, 2, -bui, -itum: offer, furnish, afford, 103
 mustum, 2: new wine, must
 pinguis, 2: fat, rich
 lacus, 4: lake, vat, tub, 86
11. For I do venerate every sacred offering of a
 farmer, whether (one) on a solitary post in the fields
 or the flower wreaths on the old (altar) stone at a
 road crossing, or the fruit, produced in the new sea-
 son, which is set up to a god.
15. Golden Ceres, mayest thou have the crown of
 grain standing in our fields; may it hang before thy
 temple gates.

59 - 19 B.C.

ON FARM LIFE

- Pomosisque ruber custos ponatur in hortis,
Terreat ut saeva falce Priapus aves.
19. Vos quoque, felicis quondam, nunc pauperis agri
Custodes, *fertis* munera vestra, Lares.
Tunc vitula innumeros lustrabat caesa juvencos;
Nunc agna exigui est hostia magna soli.
Aгна cadet vobis, quam circum rustica pubes
Clamet: *io* messes et bona vina date!
25. Jam modo, jam possum contentus vivere parvo,
Nec semper longae deditus esse viae:
Sed Canis aestivos ortus vitare sub umbra
Arboris ad rivos praetereuntis aquae.
29. Nec tamen interdum pudeat *tenuisse bidentem*
Aut stimulo tardos increpuisse boves.
Non agnamve sinu pigeat fetumve capellae
Desertum oblita matre referre domum.
- Ruberque Priapus custos ponatur in hortis pomosis,
ut saeva falce terreat aves.
19. Vos quoque Lares, felicis quondam, nunc pauperis agri custodes *accipitis* munera vestra.
Tunc vitula lustrabat caesa innumeros juvencos,
nunc agna est hostia magna exigui soli.
Aгна cadet vobis, circum quam rustica pubes clamet:
Eia, messes et bona vina date!
25. Modo jam parvo contentus vivere possum, *non sicut miles* longae deditus viae:
Sicque queo vitare aestivum Canis *calorem* sub umbra arboris ad aquam rivi praetereuntis.
29. Nec tamen pudeat interdum *usum me esse rastello* aut stimulo tardos increpuisse boves.
Nec agnam *vel* fetum capellae oblita matre desertum pigeat *in* sinu domum referre.

DE VITA AGRESTI.

VOCABULARY

- pomosis, 3 (*fr.* pomum): full of fruit, 49, t
custos, -todis: watchman
Priapus, 2: the god of fertility
saevus, 3: severe
falx, -lcis, f: scythe, 22, c
19. quondam: formerly, once
Lar, -is, m: tutelary deity of a home
munus, -eris, n: office, gift
vitulus, 2, -a, 1: calf
lustrum, 1: cleanse by sacrifice
caedo, 3, cecidi, caesum: to hew, kill
juvencus, 3: young (man, girl), heifer
agnus, 2, -na, 1: lamb
exiguus, 3: small, scanty
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: to fall
pubes, -is, f: hair on the chin, youth; clamet, 120, c3
25. contentus, 3: contented
dedo, 3, dedidi, deditum: to surrender, devote, dedicate
- queo, 4: to be able, 42, 3, g
aestivus, 3 (*fr.* aestus, 4, heat): of summer, 49, t
vito, 1: to shun, avoid, 35, f
[orior, 4, ortum: to rise]
canis, -is, c: dog, Dog Star, 22, b
calor, -is, m: heat
29. interdum: sometimes
rastellum, (*fr.* rastrum, 2, hoe): little hoe, 49, p
stimulus, 2: goad
[bidens, -ntis, m: of two teeth]
increpo, 1, -pui, -itum, or -avi, -atum: to rattle, make noise, reprove
bos, bovis, c: bullock, ox, cow
tardus, 3: slow, tardy
fetus, 4: brood

TRANSLATION

Let the red Priapus be put as watchman in our orchards, that he may scare the birds with his fearful scythe.

terreo, 2, -rrui, -rritum: to terrify, scare, 124, a

19. And you, Lares, the guardians of my once rich, but now poor fields, will also receive your gifts; formerly a slain calf was the lustrative offering for countless heifers, but now a lamb is the great sacrifice of my tiny field. A lambkin will fall to you, around which the rustic youth will shout: Oh (gracious gods), give us good harvest and wine.

(io), eia, interjection of joy: oh, gee, 52, e
messis, -is, f (*fr.* meto, 3, messui, messum, reap): harvest, 49, a

25. Well, I can live contented with little, not like a soldier destined for a long journey. And so, I can shun the dog-day heat of summer under the shadow of a tree close to the water of a stream running by.

umbra, 1: shadow, shade
rivus, 2: stream, brook
praetereo, 4: to pass by, 42, 3

29. Nor is there, of course, any shame, if at times I used a hoe, or if I stirred up the slow oxen with a goad, or if I bring home in my arms a lambkin or the deserted kid of a goat, when their mother was forgetful.

obliviscor, 3, -litum: to forget, 114, b
capella, 1 (*fr.* capra, 1, she-goat): (a little) she-goat, 49, p; sinus, 4: bosom, lap, bay

ON FARM LIFE

33. At vos exiguo pecori, furesque, lupique,
Parcite; de magno est praeda petenda grege.
35. Hic ego pastoremque meum lustrare quotannis
Et placidam soleo spargere lacte Palem.
37. Adsitis, divi, neu vos e paupere mensa
Dona, nec e puris spernite fictilibus.
Fictilia antiquus primum sibi fecit agrestis
Pocula, de facili composuitque luto.
41. Non ego divitias patrum fructusque requiro,
Quos tulit antiquo condita messis avo.
Parva seges satis est; satis est, requiescere lecto.
Si licet, et solito membra levare toro.
45. Quam juvat immites ventos audire cubantem,
Aequore ab indomito dum sibi nauta timet;
33. At vos furesque lupique exiguo pecori parcite;
de magno est praeda petenda grege.
35. Hic ego Palem placidam, pastorem meum quo-
tannis lustrando spargere soleo lacte.
37. Adsitis, dii, nec e pauperi mensa, neque e fictili-
bus puris spernite dona.
Nam fictilia sibi vasa fecit agricola antiquus eaque
de simplici composuit luto.
41. Nec ego divitias patrum fructusque requiro, quos
contulit antiquo condita messis avo.
Nam parva seges mihi satis est, si requiescere in lec-
to licet et membra fatigata reclinare solito in
toro.
45. Quanto perere juvat cubantem audire ventos immi-
tes, dum sibi nauta indomitum timet mare;

DE VITA AGRESTI.

VOCABULARY

33. fur, -is, c: thief, 23, III a
lupus, 2: wolf
grex, gregis, m: flock
pecus, -coris, n: cattle
parco, 3, peperci, parsum: to spare, 80, y; 108, a
praeda, 1: booty
Palis, -is: the goddess of shepherds
35. spargo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: to scatter, strew, sprin-
lac, lactis, n: milk, 93, a (kle, 35, f
quotannis, adv.: yearly
37. [div(in)us, 3: divine]
fictilis, 2 (fr. fingo, 3, -nxi, -ictum, to form): mould-
ed, fictil; fictile (vas): earthen vase, 49, r
sperno, 3, sprevi, spretum: to despise, 108, a
mensa, 1: table
pauper, -is: poor, 26, d
vas, vasis, n: vessel; pl. vasa, -orum
[agrestis, 2 (fr. ager, 2, field): rustic]
41. confero, 3, -tuli, collatum: to bring to, contrib-
ute, 43, 8; 49, A2
avus, 2: grandfather
seges, -etis, f: crop, fruit
condo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to form, store up
membrum, 2: member, limb
lectus, 2: bed
[levo, 1: lift]
45. [quam, before adverbs and adjectives: how]
quantopere, before verbs: how (Cicero)
juvo, 1, juvi, jutum: to help, delight
cubo, 1, -bui, -bitum: to lie down
immitis, 2: sour, harsh, cruel, 49, A1
[aequor, -is, n: flat surface, 23, Ia

TRANSLATION

33. And both you thieves and you wolves, spare
the few cattle; your booty should be taken from a
larger (flock).
- pastor, -is, m (fr. pasco, 3, pavi, pastum, to feed):
shepherd, 49, d
35. Here, in sacrificing, I am accustomed to sprin-
kle the kind Palis, my shepherd-goddess, with milk
every year.
37. Be present, all ye gods, and despise neither the
sacrifice from a poor table, nor (those) from plain
earthen vessels. For the farmer of old made his ves-
sels for himself by pottery work, and moulded them
out of ordinary clay.
- lutum, 2: mud, clay, 92
[poculum, 2: drinking cup]
41. I do not insist on having the wealth and crops
of my ancestors, which the successful harvest se-
cured for my grandfather. For a small yield satisfies
me, if I can but rest in my own bed, and lay my
weary limbs on my accustomed couch.
- reclino, 1: to recline
[torus, 2: knot, loop, mattress]
45. How delightful it is for one resting to hear the
fierce winds, whilst the sailor fears for himself (on
account of) the furious sea; or how pleasing it is
- timeo, 2, -mui, -: to fear, 87
indomitus, 3: untamed, wild, furious, 49, A

22. ALBIUS TIBULLUS

59 - 19 B.C.

Course 48

ON FARM LIFE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>Aut gelidas hibernus aquas <i>quum</i> fuderit auster,
Securum somnos, imbre juvante, sequi!</p> <p>Hoc mihi contingat: sit dives jure, furorem
Qui maris et tristes ferre potest pluvias.</p> <p>51. O quantum <i>est</i> auri potius, pereatque smaragdi,
Quam timeam longae mille pericla viae!</p> <p>53. Te bellare decet terra, Messala, marique,
Ut domus hostiles praeferat exuvias.</p> <p>55. Non ego laudari curo, modo vota secundet
Parva seges, quaeso, segnis inersque vocer.</p> <p>Hic ego dux milesque bonus; vos signa, tubaeque
Ite procul, cupidis vulnera ferte viris;
Ferte et opes: ego composito securus fructuum acer-
vo
Despiciam dites, despiciamque famem.</p> | <p>aut <i>quantopere</i> delectat securum sequi imbre juvan-
te <i>vota</i>, cum gelidas fuderit aquas auster hiber-
nus!</p> <p>Hoc mihi contingat: sitque jure dives, qui furorem
<i>molestasque</i> maris pluvias potest ferre.</p> <p>51. O quantum<i>vis</i> auri, <i>vel etiam</i> smaragdi potius
pereat, quam timeam pericula mille viae longae!</p> <p>53. Te <i>vero</i>, Messala, bellare decet terra marique, ut
<i>nostra patria</i> hostiles habeat praedas.</p> <p>55. <i>Numquam</i> ego laudari curo, modo parva seges
vota secundet; segnis <i>dein</i>, quaeso, inersque
vocer.</p> <p>Hic ego dux <i>ero</i> milesque bonus: vos <i>vero</i> signa tu-
baeque ite procul, cupidis vulnera ferte viris
<i>nec non</i> et opes, <i>donec</i> ego composito securus fruc-
tuum acervo despiciam <i>divitem</i> famemque.</p> |
|---|---|

DE VITA AGRESTI.

VOCABULARY

- securus, 3: *sure, secure, fearless*, 57, 4
 imber, -bris, m: *shower*, 114, a
 votum, 2: *vow, desire*
 [somnus, 2: *sleep*]
 gelidus, 3 (*fr. gelu*, 4, *frost*): (*icy*) *cold*, 49, t
 auster, -tri, m: *south-wind*
 fundo, 3, fudi, fustum: *to pour*, 125, a
 hibernus, 3: *wintry*
 contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: *to touch, reach, hap-*
51. *quantusvis*, -tavis, -tumvis: *as great as you please, however much*
 smaragdus, 2: *emerald*
 [exuviae, -arum: *clothing or skin of body*]
 potius, *adv.* (*fr. potis*, 2, *able*): *rather*, 28, f
53. Marcus Valerius Messala, *the patron of Tibullus*
 decet, -cuit: *it becomes, fits, behooves*, 48, d
55. *secundo*, 1: *to favor, assist*, 128
 segnis, 2: *sluggish, slothful*
 iners, -rtis: *inactive, lazy*; vocer, 103
 procul: *afar off, far away*
 cupidus, 3 (*fr. cupio*, 3, *to desire*): *greedy*, 49, t
 vulnus, -neris, n: *wound*
 composito, 114, b
 despicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum: *to despise*, 128
 fames, -is, f: *famine*

TRANSLATION

- for one to attain his desires in security by a favoring rain, after the chilly south wind has poured down its cool waters.*
May this be my lot; let him have the right to be rich who can endure the fury and dreary rains of the sea.
- pen*, 79; 103
 furor, -is, m (*fr. furo*, 3, -, -, *to rage*): *madness, fury*
51. *Let an amount of gold or even of emerald, however great, perish rather than I should fear the thousand perils of a long voyage.*
- pereo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to perish*, 106
53. *Nevertheless, Messala, it behooves you to wage wars on land and sea, that our country may get booty from our enemies.*
55. *I do not care to be praised, just let a small crop second my prayers, then I may be called sluggish and lazy. Here I shall be a commander in chief and a good soldier; and you, O war banners and bugles go far away; bring wounds as well as wealth to ambitious men, while I, secure with my gathered crops, disdain both wealth and famine.*

Lyric Poet

PRAISE OF PEACE*

Original in distichs **

- Pacis amor deus est; pacem veneramur amantes:
Stant mihi cum domina proelia dura mea.
3. Non tamen invisio pectus mihi carpitur auro,
Nec bibit e gemma divite nostra sitis;
Nec mihi mille jugis Campania pinguis aratur,
Nec miser aera paro clade, Corinthe, tua.
7. O prima infelix fingenti terra Prometheo!
Ille parum cauti pectoris egit opus;
Corpora disponens mentem non vidit in arte.
Recta animi primum debuit esse via.
11. Nunc maris in tantum vento jactamur, et hostem
Quaerimus, atque armis nectimus arma nova.
Haud ullas portabis opes Acherontis ad undas:
Nudus ad infernas, stulte, vehere rates.

In prose ***

- Pax animo dulcis est; pacem veneramur amantes:
stant tamen cum uxore proelia dura mea.
3. Ne invisio quidem pectus mihi carpitur auro, nec
bibit e gemma diviti mea sitis;
nec mihi mille jugis Campania pinguis aratur, nec
miser aera paro clade, Corinthe, tua.
7. O infelix prima terra a Prometheo formata! Pa-
rum is considerati pectoris egit opus:
corpus disponens menti non providit in arte. Recta
animi via praeprimis debuisset sisti.
11. Nam per vasta maria vento jactamur et hostes
quaerimus atque bellis nectimus bella nova.
Haud tamen ullas portabimus opes ad Acherontis
undas; nudus ad infernam, stulte, veheris cym-
bam.

LAUDANS PACEM.

Liber III. Elegia V.

VOCABULARY

1. veneror, 1: to venerate
durus, 3: harsh, rough, rude
[domina, 1: mistress, lady] (wife)
uxor, -is, f (fr. ungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum, to smear):

3. ne - quidem, a strong negation
invideo, 2, -vidi, -isum: to envy, grudge, 80, f
carpo, 3, -psi, -ptum: to pluck off, harass
mihi, 74
bibō, 3, bibi, -bitum: to drink
gemma, 1: gem, jewel, goblet
sitis, -is, f (fr. sitio, 4, to thirst): thirst, 22, g
jugum, 2: yoke, 93, a
aro, 1: to plough

7. [fingo, 3, finxi, -ctum: to mould, shape, invent]
considero, 1: to consider, 110, b'
Prometheus, 2, the hero who made the first man of
clay and stole fire from heaven to enliven it
praeprimis: first of all (settle, 103, b
sisto, 3, steti, statum: to cause to stand, place, put,

11. jacto, 1 (fr. jacio, 3, jeci, jactum, to throw):
toss, boast, 49, j
necto, 3, nexi, nexum: to tie, bind, link
(ops), opis, f: power; in pl. riches, wealth, 22, a
Acheron, -ntis, m, the boundary river of the under-
world

nudus, 3: naked
veho, 3, vexi, vectum: to carry, bear, convey, take

* Propertius gives us an ingenuous culture portrait of the noble, pagan Roman mind.

** Cf. 139, b2 *** Cf. 13, I, II

Page one hundred and twenty six

TRANSLATION

1. Peace is sweet to the mind; we lovers venerate
peace, yet I have fights (even) with my wife.

proelium, 2: battle, fight

3. No, my heart is not harassed by greed for gold,
nor is my thirst quenched from a rich goblet, nor is
a rich Campania(n estate) ploughed for me by a
thousand yokes, nor do I, as a miser, hoard money to
your detriment, O Corinth.

Campania, 1, the level country of Central Italy
aes, aeris, n: copper, ore, bronze, money
clades, -is, f: loss, damage

7. O unfortunate clay, first formed by Promethe-
us! He did not consider well the working of the
(human) heart; creating the body he did not provide
well for the mind. The right way of the mind should
have been fixed first of all.

11. For, tossed by the wind on the vast seas, and
seeking enemies we link wars to new wars. Yet we
shall not take along (any) wealth to the river of the
underworld; fool, you will be taken naked to the
boat of the Acheron.

cymba, 1: a small boat (of Charon)
[ratis, -is, f: raft]

23. SEXTUS AURELIUS PROPERTIUS

51 - 15 B.C.

Course 33

PRAISE OF PEACE

15. Victor cum victis pariter miscemur Indis.
 Consule cum Mario, capte Jugurtha, sedes.
 Lydus Dulichio non distat Croesus ab Iro.

15. Victor cum victis pariter miscemur Indis. Cum
 consule Mario, capte Jugurtha, sedes.
 Lydus Croesus non distat ab Iro Dulichio.

18. Optima mors, Parcae quae venit acta die

18. Optima mors est, quae venit die a Parcis desti-
 nata.

Me juvèt in prima coluisse Helicon juvena,
 Musarumque choris implicuisse manus;
 Me juvet et multo mentem vincere Lyaeo,
 Et caput in verna semper habere rosa.

Me juvet coluisse Heliconem in prima juvena Mu-
 sarumque choris implicuisse manus;
 me juvet multis mentem vinctam deliciis fuisse, et
 caput in verna semper habuisse rosa.

23. Atque ubi jam Venerem gravis interceperit aetas,
 Sparsert et nigras alba senecta comas,
 Tum mihi naturae libeat perdiscere mores;

23. Atque ubi jam voluptates gravis interceperit ae-
 tas, et nigras comas sparsert alba senecta,
 tum mihi libeat naturae perdiscere leges;

26. Quis deus hanc mundi temperet arte domum;
 Qua venit exoriens, qua deficit; unde coactis
 Cornibus in plenum menstrua luna redit;

26. qui deus hanc mundi temperet arte domum;
 qua veniat exoriens, qua deficiat; unde coactis cor-
 nibus in plenum per mensem luna redeat;

LAUDANS PACEM.

VOCABULARY

15. victor, -is (fr. vinco, 3, vici, victum, to con-
 quer): conqueror, 49, d
 misceo, 2, -cui, mixtum or mistum: to mingle
 par, -is: equal, like, 28, a
 Indus, 3, an inhabitant of India, Hindu
 Lydus, 3: a Lydian
 Croesus, 2, a king of Lydia, famous for his wealth
 disto, 1, -stiti, -: to be apart or distant

18. Parca, 1, the goddess of fate, 93
 Helicon, -nis, m, a hill of Boeotia, sacred to the Mu-
 ses; -a, Greek acc. suffix
 juvena, 1 or juvenus, -tutis, f: youth, 95
 chorus, 2: dance, (art), 79
 implico, 1, -cui, -citum: to enfold, entangle, engage,
 juvat, juvit: it delights, pleases, 48, d; 103 (79)
 vincio, 4, vinxi, vinctum: to bind, fetter
 [Lyaeus, 2: Bacchus]

23. [venus, -eris, f: beauty, charm]
 voluptas, -tatis, f: pleasure, lust, enjoyment
 intercipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to intercept, 120, c3
 spargo, 3, -rsi, -sum: scatter, strew, sprinkle, 120, c3
 coma, 1: hair of the head
 senecta, 1 or senectus, -tutis, f: old age
 libet, -buit, impersonal: it pleases, 48, d; 103

26. tempero, 1: to refrain, temper, rule, 132
 unde: whence, 51, f
 qua: in which way, 96, a
 exorior, 4, -ortum: to rise, spring
 deficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to fail, go out, 132
 cogo, 3, coëgi, coactum: to drive or force together,
 cornu, 4: horn, 114, b (114, b

TRANSLATION

15. All of us, conqueror(s) and defeated Hindus
 alike, shall be thrown together and you, O captured
 Jugurtha, shall sit with Marius the consul. The Ly-
 dian Croesus will not differ from Irus, the Dulichian
 (beggar).

Irus, 2, a beggar of Dulichion island, 90

18. The best death is the one that comes on the
 day determined by fate. I can be glad that in my
 early youth I cultivated the sciences, that I was en-
 gaged in the arts of the Muses; I can rejoice that
 my mind was captivated by many pleasures, and that
 I always kept my head amidst the pleasures of
 youth.

vernus, 3 (fr. ver, -is, n, spring): of spring, vernal

23. But (now) when age has snatched away the
 lust of the body and a gray color sprinkles my black
 hair, let me have the pleasure of studying (what
 are) the laws of nature:

[mos, moris, m: custom; pl.: manners]
 perdisco, 3, -didici, -: to study thoroughly

26. what god skillfully governs the house(hold) of
 the universe; whence it starts and where it is going;
 why the horns of the moon, forced together, always
 turn into a full (disk) in a month; why the winds

[menstruus, 3: monthly]
 luna, 1: moon

PRAISE OF PEACE

Unde salo superant venti; quid flamine captet
Eurus, et in nubes unde perennis aqua;

31. Si ventura dies, mundi quae subruat arcus;
Purpureus pluvias cur bibit arcus aquas;
Aut cur Perrhaebei tremuere cacumina Pindi,
Solis et atratis luxerit orbis equis;

35. Cur serus versare boves et plaustra Bootes;
Pleiadum spisso cur coit igne chorus;

37. Curve suos fines altum non exeat aequor,
Plenus et in partes quattuor annus eat;
Sub terris si jura deum et tormenta Gigantum;

40. Tisiphones atro si furit angue caput;
Aut Alcmæoniae furiae, aut jejunia Phinei;

Unde salum superent venti; quid captet flatu eu-
rus, et in nubibus unde perennis aqua;

31. an ventura sit dies, quae mundi destruat molem;
purpureus arcus an bibat pluvias aquas;
aut cur cacumina tremuerint Perrhaebei Pindi, solis-
que atratis equis cur luxerit orbis;

35. cur verset boves et plaustrum serus Bootes; cur
Pleiadum chorus spissis luminibus coierit;

37. curve suos fines altum non exeat mare et cur
plenus annus in quattuor eat partes;
an sint sub terris jura deorum et tormenta Gigan-
tum;

40. an caput Tisiphones atris furat anguibus;
an sint Alcmæoniae furiae, aut jejunia Phinei;

LAUDANS PACEM.

VOCABULARY

salum, 2 (Greek): the open sea
capto, 1 (fr. capio, 3, cepi, captum, to catch): to
hunt, desire, 49, j; 132
flatus, 4 (fr. flo, 1, to blow): blowing, 49, a; 93, a
[flamen, -inis, m: priest of some particular deity]
eurus, 2: south-east wind

31. destruo, 3, -struxi, -ctum: to destroy, 120, c3
[subruo, 3, -rui, -rutum: to dig under, 132]
[arx, arcis, f: fortress]
moles, -lis, f: mass, heap, large construction
pluvius, 3 (fr. pluvia, rain): rainy, of rain, 49, v
arcus, 4: bow, arch
cacumen, -minis, n: extreme point, summit
Perrhaebus, (3), Pindus, 2, a mountain in the Per-
rhaebian county of Thessaly
tremo, 3, -mui, -: to tremble, 132

35. serus, 3: late
plaustrum, 2: cart, wain
bos, bovis, c: ox, bullock, cow
verso, 1, frequ. form of vertere, 3: to turn, 49, j; 132
Bootes, 1, ox-driver (in Ursus Major), 19, c
Pleiades, -dum, f: Pleiades, a constellation (the sev-
en daughters of Atlas)

37. -ve, -que: and
[aequor, -is, n: flat surface] (torture, 49, e
tormentum, 2 (fr. torqueo, 2, torsi, -rtum, twist):
gigas, -antis, m: giant, 22, a

40. Tisiphone, 1, one of the furies, 19, c
anguis, -is, m: snake, 88
ater, 3: black, dark, poisonous
Alcmæonius, 3: of Alcmæus, the matricide, driven
mad by the three furies (Furiae, -arum), Alec-
to, Mægæra, Tisiphone, 49, z

Page one hundred and twenty eight

TRANSLATION

are more powerful than the sea; what Euris hunts
for, with its blowing; whence the unfailing water
in the clouds;

nubes, -bis, f: cloud
perennis, 2: lasting, continuous

31. whether the day will come which will destroy
the construction of the world; whether the rainbow
drinks the rain water; why the summit of the Per-
rhaebian Pindus (mountain) trembles; why the
world mourns, when the sun drives in ecliptical
course;

atro, 1 (fr. ater, 3, black): to blacken, 49, l
equus, 2: horse, 94 or 114, b
lugeo, 2, luxi, -ctum: to mourn, 132

35. why the tardy ox-driver (in the Dipper) drives
the oxen and the wain; why the Pleiads' choir as-
sembles in dense lights;

spissus, 3: close, dense, thick, 88
coëo, 4: to go together, 42, 3; 132

37. why the sea does not exceed its limits; why a
whole year passes through four seasons; whether in
the nether world the gods do justice and the giants
have their torments;

40. whether the head of Tisiphone swarms with
poisonous snakes; whether the Alcmæonian furies
and the fastings of Phineus are real; whether the

jejunium, 2 (fr. jejuno, 1, to fast): a fast, 49, f
Phineus, 2, a king in Thrace, who killed his inno-
(cent son

23. SEXTUS AURELIUS PROPERTIUS

51 - 15 B.C.

Course 33

PRAISE OF PEACE

*Num rota, num scopuli, num sitis inter aquas;
Num tribus infernum custodit faucibus antrum
Cerberus, Tityo jugera pauca novem;*

*an sit rota Ixionis, aut scopulus Sisyphi, vel
sitis Tantalii inter aquas;
an Cerberus tribus infernum custodiat faucibus an-
trum, et Tityus sit extensus super jugera no-
vem;*

45. An ficta in miseris descendit fabula gentes,
Et timor haud ultra quam rogos esse potest.
*Exitus hic vitae superet mihi! Vos, quibus arma
Grata magis, Crassi signa referte domum.*

45. an fictae fabulae in miseris descenderint gentes,
et timor haud ultra quam rogos esse possit.
*Reliquum meae vitae haec edoceat me! Vosque, qui-
bus arma grata sunt magis, Crassi signa amissa
domum referte.*

LAUDANS PACEM

VOCABULARY

rota, 1: *wheel*
Ixion, -is, m, a king in Thessaly, who insulted Juno
scopulus, 2: *rock*
Sisyphus, 2, a king of Corinth, a cunning robber
Tantalus, 2, a king of Phrygia, who set his slain son
as food before the gods
Cerberus, 2, the three-headed dog at the gate of Tar-
tarus
infernus, 3: *under, infernal*
faux, -cis, f: *throat, 22, d; 93, a*
45. *descendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to come down, de-
ultra, adv.: longer (scend, 132*
rogo, 2: funeral pile or pyre
edoceo, 2, -cui, -ctum: to teach, 60
reliquum, 2 (fr. relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum, to leave):
[exitus, 4: exit] (rest
Crassus, 2, Roman general defeated at Euphrates

TRANSLATION

*wheel of Ixion, the rock of Sisyphus, and the thirst
of Tantalus amidst the waters exist; whether the
three-headed Cerberus watches the entrance of the
lower world; whether Tityus is stretched over nine
acres;*

antrum, 2: a cave
Tityus, 2, a son of Jupiter, who insulted Latona
extendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to stretch out
jugerum, 2: acre

45. *or whether invented stories have been handed
down to pitiful peoples, and dread will not last long-
er than the funeral pyre.*

*The rest of my life must teach me these things.
And you, Crassi, to whom weapons are rather ac-
ceptable, get back ~~the~~ ^{the} lost war standards of Crassus.*

24. QUINTUS HORATIUS FLACCUS

65 - 8 B.C.

Course 54

The greatest Latin Lyric Poet

LETTER TO THE PISOS UPON THE ART OF POETRY

*Original in hexameter **

*In prose ***

1. Humano capiti cervicem pictor equinam

1. Humano capiti si pictor jungere velit cervicem

ARS POETICA.

VOCABULARY

1. pictor, -is, m (fr. pingo, 3, pinxi, -ictum, to
paint): *painter, 49, d*
jungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to join, unite, 78, b*
volo, velle, volui, -: *to be willing, wish, 109, b*
cervix, -icis, ~~fi~~: *nape of the neck, neck*

TRANSLATION

1. *If a painter joined the neck of a horse to a hu-
man head, and drew different feathers on limbs taken*

*equinus, 3 (fr. equus, 2, horse): of horse, equine,
49, t*

* Cf. 139 ** Cf. 13, I, II

ART OF POETRY

Jungere si velit et varias inducere plumas
Undique collatis membris, ut turpiter atrum
Desinat in piscem mulier formosa superne,
Spectatum admissi risum teneatis, amici?

6. Credite, Pisones, isti tabulae fore librum
Persimilem, cujus, velut aegri somnia, vanae
Fingentur species, ut nec pes nec caput uni
Reddatur formae.

Pictoribus atque poetis
Quidlibet audendi semper fuit aequae potestas.

11. Scimus, et hanc veniam petimusque damus-
que vicissim;
Sed non ut placidis coeant immitia, non ut
Serpentes avibus gementur, tigribus agni.

equinam et varias inducere plumas membris *anima-*
lium undique collectis *ita*, ut *exempli gratia* mulier
superne formosa turpiter in piscem desinat atrum,
risum-*ne* teneatis, amici, spectatum admissi?

6. Credite, Pisones, librum *poetae* persimilem fore
isti tabulae, cujus vanae *figurae* velut somnia aegri
finguntur *ita*, ut nec uni *earum* pes *proprius aut* ca-
put reddatur.

Pictoribus atque poetis quidlibet audendi semper
fuit aequae potestas.

11. Scimus *hoc* et hanc veniam petimus damusque
vicissim; sed non *adeo*, ut *mitibus jungantur* immi-
tia, *neque* ut avibus *copulentur* serpentes, *vel* tigri-
bus agni.

ARS POETICA.

VOCABULARY

pluma, 1: feather
induco, 3, -dixi, -ctum: to bring in, coat, spread, 79
varius, 3: various
membrum, 2: limb, 79; animal, -is, n: animal, 22, g
undique: from everywhere
[confero, 3, contuli, collatum: to bring to]
colligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: to collect, 79
ita ut: so that, 124, b
mulier, -ēris, f: woman
supernus, 3: above, on the top
formosus, 3 (fr. forma, 1, form): beautifully formed,
turpis, 2: foul, ugly, base (49, t)

6. credo, 3, -didi, -ditum (alicui): to believe, 108,
a; 57, 4
Piso, -nis, (fr. pisum, 2, pea) Calpurnius and his
two sons, the addressees of this letter, 49, z
persimilis, 2: very like, quite similar, 49, A1
tabula, 1: board, tablet, picture, painting, 78
vanus, 3: vain, false
figura, 1: form, figure
[species, 5: sight, view]
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick
velut(i): as, even as, just as
somnia, 2 (fr. somnio, 1, to dream): dream, 49, f
fingo, 3, -nxi, -ictum: to form, mould, portray
pes, pedis, m: foot

11. venia, 1: indulgence, permission, licence
adeo: so far, so much, to such an extent
vicissim: in return
[coëo, 4, -ivi, -itum: go together, 42, 3]
mitis, 2: meek, tame, 78, b
[placidus, 3: quiet, gentle]
immitis, 2: harsh, cruel, wild
avis, -is, f: bird
serpens, -ntis, m (fr. serpo, 3, -rpsi, -rptum, crawl):
snake, serpent

Page one hundred and thirty

TRANSLATION

from animals everywhere, so that, e.g., a woman,
beautiful in the upper part, hideously terminated in
a black fish, could you restrain your laughter, my
friends, (if) admitted to see it?

dēsino, 3, -sī(v)i or sīi, -sītum: to leave off, cease,
end, terminate
piscis, -is, m: fish
ater, atra, atrum: dark, black
risus, 4 (fr. rideo, 2, risi, risum, to laugh at):
laughter, 49, a
specto, 1: to look at, see, 116, a

6. Believe me, Pisos, the work of (any) poet
would be quite similar to the picture, the characters
of which are portrayed like a sick man's dream, so
that neither head nor foot appropriate to any of them
is painted.

Painters and poets have ever had equal right to
dare anything.

reddo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to render, 124, b
quilibet, 3: any (you will), 30, i
audeo, 2, -, ausum: to dare, 117, c
aequus, 3: equal
potestas, -tatis, f: power, right

11. We all know this, and we demand and give this
permission in return, but not so as to join the wild
with the tame, or to couple serpents with birds, or
lambs with tigers.

copulo, 1: to pair, join, connect, 124, b; 78, b
[gemino, 1: to double, repeat]
tiger, -gris or -gridis, m: tiger, 78
agnus, 2: lamb

ART OF POETRY

14. Inceptis gravibus plerumque et magna profes-
sis

*Purpureus, late qui splendeat, unus et alter
Adsuitur pannus, cum lucus et ara Dianae
Et properantis aquae per amoenos ambitus agros,
Aut flumen Rhenum, aut pluvius describitur arcus;*

19. Sed nunc non erat his locus. Et fortasse cu-
pressum

Scis *simulare*: quid hoc, si fractis enatat exspes
Navibus, aere dato, qui pingitur? Amphora coepit
Institui; currente rota cur urceus exit?

23. Denique sit quidvis simplex dumtaxat et unum.
Maxima pars vatium, pater et juvenes patre digni,
Decipimur specie recti: brevis esse laboro,

14. Plerumque inceptis *operibus* gravibus et ma-
gna professuris praefiguntur sonorosus versus sed val-
de detriti, uti cum lucus et ara describitur Dianae et
ambitus aquae properantis per agros amoenos, aut
flumen Rhenus aut pluvius arcus;

19. sed nunc non est hic locus subtilia docendi.
Fortasse scis *cypressum pingere*, sed quid hoc juvat
si accepta pecunia necesse pingatur fractis enatans
navibus exspes?

Amphora coepit institui; cur rota figuli currente
exit urceus?

23. Denique sit quidquid dumtaxat simplex atque
unum. Maxima pars poetarum, O pater Piso et ju-
venes patre digni, decipimur saepe circa speciem rec-

ARS POETICA.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

14. plerumque: mostly
incipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to start, begin, 40
gravis, 2: heavy, serious
profiteor, 2, -fessum: to avow, profess, deal with
praefigo, 3, -fixi, -fixum: to prefix, 79
[assuo, 3, -sui, -sutum: to sew on]
[pannus, 2: rag, cloth]
sonorosus, 3 (fr. sonor, noise, sono, 1, to sound):
sonorous, 49, t
valde: very, 28, d
[splendeo, 2, -dui, -: to glitter, 130]
detero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: to wear out, off
[late, (fr. latus, 3, broad, large): far and wide], 28, a
lucus, 2: grove
ara, 1: altar
Diana, 1, a virgin goddess of the moon and hunting

19. fortasse: perhaps
[simulo, 1: make like, counterfeit]
cypressus, 2 or 4, f: cypress
juvo, 1: to aid, help, please
[aere dato: for brass (money), 114, b, c]
pecunia, 1: money, cash
enato, 1: to swim out, from
navis, -is, f: ship, 114, b; or 90
frango, 3, fregi, fractum: to break, wreck, 36, b
exspes, used only in nom.: hopeless
amphora, 1: two handled jug; urceus, 2: pitcher

23. denique: at last, finally, at length
dumtaxat: only
[vates, is, m: soothsayer, prophet]
decipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to deceive, passive: be
mistaken

14. Frequently (when) serious poems (are) be-
gun, (which are) about to deal with great things,
some verses, sonorous, but very trite, are put before
them, e.g. when the grove and altar of Diana, and
the curves of a stream, rushing through a pleasant
meadow, or when the river Rhine, or the rainbow
are described;

ambitus, 4 (fr. ambio, 4, go around): circuit, curve,
49, a
amoenus, 3: pleasant, delightful
flumen, -minis, n: river
Rhenus, m: the river Rhine
pluvius, 3 (fr. pluvia, 1, rain): rainy
subtilis, 2: subtle
doceo, 2, -cui, -ctum: to teach, 60; 117, c

19. but there is no room here to teach subtle
things. Perhaps you know how to paint a cypress;
but what is that, if you are paid to paint a person
hopelessly swimming from a shipwreck?
A great vase began to be formed: why does a little
cup turn out when the potter's wheel runs?

coepi, -pisse, -ptum: to start, begin, 45, 12
instituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: to put in, build
figulus, 2: potter
rota, 1: wheel (of the potter), 114, a

23. Finally, let a thing be simple and whole, what-
ever it be. O father Piso and sons worthy of your
father, we the great majority of the poets are often
mistaken concerning what is correct. If I labor to

ART OF POETRY

Obscurus fio; sectantem levia *nervi*
Deficiunt *animique*; professus grandia turget;

28. Serpit humi tutus nimium timidusque procel-
lae;

Qui variare cupit rem *prodigaliter unam*,
Delphinum silvis *adpingit, fluctibus* aprum:
In vitium ducit culpae fuga, si caret arte.

32. Aemilium circa *ludum faber imus* et unguis
Exprimet et mollis imitabitur aere capillos,
Infelix operis summa, quia *ponere* totum
Nesciet: hunc *ego* me, si quid componere *curem*,
Non magis esse *velim*, quam naso vivere pravo,
Spectandum nigris oculis nigroque capillo.

ti. Si brevis esse laboro, obscurus fio; sectantem
levia *ars et spiritus* deficiunt; grandia professus tur-
get;

28. humi serpit nimium tutus timidusque procel-
lae;

qui rem *nimio* variare cupit *eandem*, delphinum silvis
appingit, fluviusque aprum: in vitium ducit fuga cul-
pae, si caret arte.

32. *Fictor celebrer* Aemilium circa *palestram aere*
effingit et unguis ac molles imitatur capillos, infelix
tamen est operis summa, quia totum *conficere con-*
gruenter nescit; si quid componere *velim*, hunc esse
me magis *nolim*, quam naso vivere pravo *et esse ni-*
gris oculis conspicuum nigroque capillo.

ARS POETICA.

VOCABULARY

circa: about, 50, a
laboro, 1: to work, strive
obscurus, 3: dark, obscure
sector, 1 (fr. sequor, 3, -cutum, to follow): pursue,
[nervus, 2: nerve] (aim at, 49, j
[animus, 2: courage]
deficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to fail

28. humi: on the ground, 21, f
nimio, nimium (fr. nimius, 3, excessive): exceeding-
tutus, 3: sure, cautious (ly, 28, a
timidus, 3 (fr. timeo, 2, -ui, -, to fear): fearful, timid
procella, 1: storm, 66, a
[prodigaliter, for prodige: prodigally]
vario, 1: to vary
cupio, 3, -ivi, -tum: to desire, long for, want
delphinus, 2: dolphin
silva, 1: forest
appingo, 3, -xi, -ctum: to paint upon, in, 79
fluvius, 2: river

32. [ludus, 2: game]
palaestra, 1: gladiatorial school
fictor, -is, m (fr. fingo, 3, to form): statuary, artist
[faber, -bri, m: worker]
[imus, is the same as, infimus, 3: the lowest, 27, f]
celeber, -bris, -bre: renowned, famous
unguis, -is, m: fingernail
mollis, 2: soft
aes, aeris, n: copper, brass, bronze
capillus, 2: hair
infelix, -icis: unhappy, unfortunate
summa, 1: the highest place or point, whole, the
total, sum, 84
congruo, 3, -rui, -: to be fitted to, correspond, agree,

TRANSLATION

be concise, I become obscure; art and inspiration
fail the one who aims at light things; one who un-
dertakes sublime themes, proves showy.

grandis, 2: great
turgeo, 2, -gui, -: swell up, be turgid, showy

28. he who is too cautious and fearful of the storm,
crawls on the ground; he who wants to vary his sub-
ject excessively, paints dolphins in the woods and
boars in the river: the flight from a fault leads one
into an error, if he lacks art.

[fluctus, 4 (fr. fluo, 3, -xi, -ctum, to flow): stream-
aper, -pri, m: boar (ing)
vicium, 2: fault, vice
fuga, 1 (fr. fugio, 3, fugi, -gitum, to flee): flight
careo, 2, -rui, -: to lack, 83
culpa, 1: fault, error, 66, a

32. A renowned artist near the Aemilian gladia-
torial school, represents in brass the finger nails and
imitates the soft hair, yet he is unfortunate in the
main, because he is unable to arrange the whole har-
moniously. If I had a mind to compose something,
I would no more wish to be like this one, than to
live with a distorted nose, yet remarkable for black
eyes and black hair.

be harmonious, 28, a
nasus, 2: nose, 88
pravus, 3: crooked, deformed, perverse, wrong
conspicuus, 3: remarkable, 57, b'

ART OF POETRY

38. Sumite materiam vestris, qui scribitis, aequam
Viribus, et versate diu, quid ferre recusent,

Quid valeant humeri. Cui lecta *potenter* erit res,
Nec facundia deseret *hunc* nec lucidus ordo.

42. Ordinis haec virtus erit et venus, aut ego fallor,
Ut jam nunc dicat *jam* nunc *debetia* dici,
Pleraque differat et praesens in tempus omittat.

45. In verbis etiam *tenuis* cautusque serendis,
Hoc amet, hoc spernat promissi carminis auctor.

47. Dixeris egregie notum si callida verbum
Reddiderit junctura novum. Si forte necesse est
Indiciis monstrare recentibus abdita rerum,
Fingere cinctutis *non exaudita* Cethegis
Continget, dabiturque licentia sumpta *prudenter*.

38. Qui scribitis, sumite materiam vestris viribus
aequam, et versate diu, quid ferre recusent, quidve
valeant humeri.

Cui res *studiose* erit lecta, *eum* nec facundia de-
seret nec lucidus ordo.

42. Ordinis haec virtus erit et venus, aut ego fallor,
si nunc dicit, *quae* nunc sunt dicenda, pleraque dif-
fert et praesens in tempus omittit.

45. Etiam in serendis verbis *tener* cautusque pro-
missi carminis auctor hoc amet, hoc spernat.

47. Egregie dices, si notum verbum callida reddi-
derit junctura novum.

Si forte necesse fuerit recentibus monstrare indi-
ciis abdita rerum, contigeritque fingere a Cethegis
cinctutis *nunquam* audita verba, dabitur *semper* li-
centia sumpta *modeste*.

ARS POETICA.

VOCABULARY

38. aequus, 3: *suitable*, 78
vis, f: *force, strength*, 22, g
verso, 1 (fr. *verto*, 3, *to turn*): *to turn round, pon-
der*, 49, j; 108, a
fero, 3: *to bear*, 43, 8; 132
recuso, 1: *refuse*, 132
diu: *for a long time, for a while*
quidve or et quid: *and what*
humerus, 2: *shoulder*
studiosus, 3 (fr. *studium*, 2, *zeal*): *diligent, care-
lego*, 3, legi, lectum: *to read*, 109, a3; *ewi* 75; (ful

42. virtus, -tutis, f: *virtue, power*
venus, -eris, f: *charm, loveliness, grace*
fallo, 3, fefelli, falsum: *to slip, fail, deceive*; fallor:
to be mistaken
differo, 3, distuli, dilatatum: *to differ, delay, put off*
omitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to let go, drop, waive*

45. sero, 3, -rui, -rtum: *to weave, entwine, com-
tener, -era, -erum: tender, gentle* (bine, 118
[*tenuis*, 2: *thin*]
cautus, 3: *cautious, circumspect*
sperno, 3, sprevi, spretum: *separate, reject, despise*,
promitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to promise* (106

47. egregius, 3: *eminent*
callidus, 3: *clever (in reason), dexterous, cunning*
junctura, 1 (fr. *jungo*, 3, -nxi, -nctum, *to join*):
joint, combination, 49, a
recens, -ntis: *new, fresh, recent*
indicium, 2: *denunciation, impeachment, mark, term*,
demonstro, 1: *to show* (88
contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: *to touch, happen, befall*,
abdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to hide* (109, a3
cinctutus, 3: *apron-girded*

TRANSLATION

38. *You who write, choose a subject suitable to
your abilities, and ponder over for a while, what your
strength refuses and what it is able to bear.*

*Neither eloquence nor lucid arrangement will fail
the one, who has studied the subject carefully.*

facundia, 1 (fr. *facundus*, 3, *eloquent*): *eloquence*,
49, u (109, a3
desero, 3, -rui, -rtum: *to desert, forsake, leave, fail*,
lucidus, 3 (fr. *luceo*, 3, -xi, -, *to shine*): *splendid*, 49, t
ordo, -dinis, f: *order, arrangement*

42. *This power and grace of arrangement will be
there—or I am mistaken—if the poet says now what
ought to be said now, and puts off many (other)
things, omitting them for the present.*

45. *In combining words, the gentle and circum-
spect author of a promised work should select one
and reject another.*

carmen, -mimis, n: *song, poem*

47. *You will express yourself eminently, if a clever
combination renders a well-known word as a new
one.*

*If perchance it is necessary to express unknown
parts of things by new terms, and if it happens to
create words never heard by the apron-girded Ceth-
egi, the licence taken modestly will be granted.*

Cethegus, 2: *old patrician name*, 93

ART OF POETRY

52. *Et nova fictaque nuper habebunt verba fidem, si Graeco fonte cadent, parce detorta. Quid autem Caecilio Plautoque dabit Romanus ademptum*

Vergilio Varioque? Ego cur, acquirere pauca Si possum, *invideor*, cum lingua Catonis et Enni Sermonem patrium ditaverit *et* nova rerum Nomina protulerit?

Licuit semperque licebit
Signatum praesente nota producere nomen.

60. Ut silvae foliis *pronus* mutantur in annos, Prima cadunt: ita verborum vetus interit aetas, Et juvenum ritu florent modo nata vigentque.

63. Debemur morti nos nostraque: sive *receptus* Terra Neptunus classes aquilonibus arcet,

52. *Etiam* verba nova nuperque ficta habebunt fidem, si *ceciderint ex* fonte Graeco parce detorta.

Cur autem *Statio* Caecilio Plautoque *dat* *populus* Romanus ademptum Vergilio Varioque *Rufo*?

Cur ego *reprehendor*, si acquirere pauca possum *verba*, cum lingua Enni Catonisque *multum* ditaverit patrium sermonem *ac* nova nomina protulerit rerum?

Licuit semperque licebit *praesenti inopia desideratum* producere *verbum*.

60. Ut silvae foliis mutantur *currentes* in annos, *utque* prima cadunt *folia*, ita verborum *veterum* interit aetas, et juvenum ritu modo nata vigent florentque

63. Debemur morti nos nostraque; sive *ut* terra opere regio *versa in portum*, ubi Neptunus classes

ARS POETICA.

VOCABULARY

52. fides, 3: *trust, credence, faith, belief, acceptance* (a3)
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: *to fall (from), descend*, 109,
fons, -ntis, m: *fountain, source*, 91
parcus, 3: *sparingly, scanty, little*, 28, a
detorqueo, 2, -rsi, -rtum: *to turn away, twist, distort*
Caecilius Statius, *a comic poet, contemporary of Ennius*
Accius Plautus, *a comic poet, 254-184 B.C.*
adimo, 3, -emi, -emptum: *to take away*, 79
Quintus Ennius, *an epic poet, 239-169 B.C.*
Porcius Cato, *a husbandry writer, 234-149 B.C.*
Publius Vergilius, *an epic poet, 70-19 B.C.*
L. Varius Rufus, *a tragic poet, 74-14 B.C.*
Horatius Flaccus, *a lyric poet, 65-8 B.C.*
reprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to hold back, rebuke, blame*
[invideo, 2, -vidi, -visum: *to envy, grudge*]

60. folium, 2: *leaf*
muto, 1: *to change*
[pronus, 3: *inclined forward, stooping*]
aetas, -tatis, f: *age*
ritus, 4: *rite, manner*, 88
nascor, 3, natum: *to be born*; modo natus: *new-born*
vigeo, 2, -gui, -: *to thrive, be in power*

63. debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to owe, be bound, indebted to do; passive: destined to be, be doomed*
mors, -rtis, f: *death*
portus, 4: *sea port, harbor*

Page one hundred and thirty four

TRANSLATION

52. *New and lately formed words, a little transformed will have acceptance, if they descend from a Greek source.*

Why do the Roman people grant to Plautus and Statius Caecilius what is denied to Virgil and Varius Rufus?

Why am I blamed if I am able to acquire a few words, when also the language of Cato and Ennius enriched the native tongue and produced new terms for things?

It has been permitted, and will ever be, to coin a word required by a present need.

dito, 1: *to enrich*, 125, a
patrius, 3: *paternal, ancestral, native*
inopia, 1: *need*, 93, a
[signo, 1: *to mark, note, seal*]

60. *As the forests in their leaves are changed through the running years, and as the first leaves fall off, so the life of old words perishes, and the new born (words) thrive and flourish in the manner of youth.*

floreo, 2, -rui, -: *to flower, flourish*

63. *We and our works are doomed to death, either as the land by the royal work (is) turned into a harbor where Neptune protects our ships from the*

ODE TO THE ROMAN STATE

- Fluctus! O quid agis? *Fortiter occupa*
 Portum! Nonne vides ut
 Nudum remigio latus,
2. *Et* malus celeri saucius Africo
 Antennaeque gemant, ac sine funibus
 Vix durare carinae
 Possint imperiosius
3. *Aequor?* Non tibi sunt integra lintea,
 Non *di*, quos iterum pressa voces malo.
 Quamvis Pontica pinus,
 Silvae filia nobilis,
4. Jactes et genus et nomen inutile,
 Nil pictis timidus *navita* puppibus
 Fidit. *Tu* nisi ventis
 Debes ludibrium, cave.
- in mare! O quid agis? *Certo quiesce in*
 portu! Nonne vides *quam* nudum
 remigio *sit* latus
2. sauciusque celeri Africo malus,
*quomodo*que antennae gemant, *et quemadmodum*
 sine funibus carina vix durare
 possit *effrenatum*
3. *mare?* Non sunt tibi integra lintea,
 non *di*, quos malo pressa *invoces* iterum.
 Quamvis Pontica pinus,
 silvae filia nobilis
4. et genus et nomen inutile jactes,
 nil timidus *nauta tuus* pictis puppibus
 fidit. Nisi ventis ludibrio
esse vis, cave.

AD REM PUBLICAM.

VOCABULARY

certus, 3: *sure*
 quiesco, 3, -evi, -etum: *to rest, repose*
 remigium, 2 (*fr. remigo, 1, to row*): *rowing, oars, 84*

2. saucius, 3: *wounded, injured, hurt*
 Africus, 2: *south-west stormy wind*
 (mālus, 2, f: *apple tree*); mālus, 2, m: *mast*; (mā-
 lum, 2: *apple, fruit*; mālus, 3: *bad*)
 antenna, 1: *sail-yard*
 gemo, 3, -mui, -mitum: *to sigh, groan, 132*
 quemadmodum: *as, just as, in that or what manner*
 funis, -is, m: *rope*
 carina, 1: *keel*

3. [aequor, -oris, n: *flat surface, desert*]
 integer, -gra, -grum: *whole, entire*
 linteum, 2: *linen cloth, sheet, sail*
 premo, 3, pressi, pressum: *to press, overwhelm, 36, b*
 [voco, 1: *to call*]; invoco, 1: *invoke, 120, c2*
 Ponticus, 3 (*fr. Pontus, 2, the Black Sea*): *of Pon-*
 pinus, 2 or 4, f: *pine* (tus)

4. inutilis, 2: *useless*
 jacto, 1 (*fr. jacio, 3, jeci, jactum, to throw*): *to*
throw often, se jactare: to boast, brag, 49, j
 nil or nihil, n (*gen.: -li, dat., abl.: -lo, acc. with*
prep.: -lum, as: ad nihilum): *nothing; nil, used*
only in nom. and acc.
 nauta, m, 1: *sailor*
 puppis, -is, f: *stern (or poop of a ship)*
 fido, 3, -, fisum: *to trust, 31, d; 78*

TRANSLATION

Just rest safely in the harbor. Do you not see how
your flanks are without oars,

2. *and your mast is injured by the violent south-*
wind, and how your sail-yards groan, and how your
keel without rigging is scarcely able to weather the
overwhelming

vix: *scarcely*
 duro, 1: *to endure, weather, 35, f*
 effrenatus, 3 (*fr. frenum, 2, bridle*): *unrestrained,*
fierce, 49, l

3. *waves?*
You have not whole sails, nor gods whom you
may invoke again, when overwhelmed by evil.
Although as a pine of Pontus, as a noble daughter
of the forest

4. *you may boast of your race and name, (now)*
useless to you, your timid sailor places no trust in
your painted stern. Beware lest you become a play-
thing for the winds.

ventus, 2: *wind, 77*
 ludibrium, 2: *derision, mockery, plaything, 77*
 caveo, 2, cavi, cautum: *to be on guard, provide, be-*
ware, 108, a

TO MAECENAS

Temperant vites neque Formiani
Pocula colles.

vites nec Formiani colles
temperant pocula.

AD MAECENATEM.

VOCABULARY

vitis, -is, f: *vine*
Formianus, 3: *of Formia, a town in Latium*
collis, is, m: *hill*
tempero, 1: *temper, make mild, season*

TRANSLATION

Formian hills season my cups.
poculum, 2: *drinking cup*

25. TITUS LIVIUS

59 B.C. — 17 A.D.

Course 99

Historian

HISTORY OF ROME

Book Twenty Two

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Jam ver appetebat, atque Hannibal ex hibernis movit, et nequiquam ante conatus transcendere Apenninum intolerandis frigoribus et cum ingenti periculo moratus ac metu.

Galli, quos praedae populationumque conciverat spes, postquam pro eo, ut ipsi ex alieno agro raperent agerentque, suas terras sedem belli esse premique utriusque partis exercituum hibernis viderunt, verterunt retro in Hannibalem ab Romanis odia.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Jam ver appetebat, atque Hannibal ex hibernis movit, qui nequaquam ante conatus esset intolerandis frigoribus transcendere Apenninum, nec sine ingenti periculo ibi moraretur ac metu.

Galli enim, quos praedae populationumque conciverat spes, postquam pro eo, quod ipsi ex alieno agro raperent agerentque, suas terras sedem belli esse premique utriusque partis exercituum hibernis viderunt, in Hannibalem a Romanis reverterunt odia.

AB URBE CONDITA.

Liber Vigésimus Secundus.

VOCABULARY

1. ver, -is, n: *spring, spring-time*
appeto, 3, -ti(v)i, -tium: *to grasp, desire, draw near*
hibernus, 3: *wintry*; hiberna, -orum: *winter quarters*
moveo, 2, -vi, -otum: *to move* (ters, 90)
conor, 1: *undertake, attempt, strive*, 120, c2
intolerandus, 3 (fr. tolero, 1, to tolerate): *intolerable, unbearable*, 49, A1; 49, h; 95
transcendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to climb, pass over*, 57, 3
Apenninus, 2: *Apennines*
ingens, -ntis: *immense, enormous*
moror, 1: *to linger, delay, stay*, 126, c2
praeda, 1: *booty, plunder*, 66, b
concieo, 2, -civi, -citur: *to stir up, bring together*
populatio (fr. populo(r)), 1, *to lay waste, destroy*:
spes, 5: *hope, desire* (spoil, 49, a)

TRANSLATION

1. Spring now drew near, and Hannibal, who before neither had been able to attempt at all to cross the Apennines in the intolerable cold, nor could he stay there without great danger and fear, quitted his winter quarters.

The Gauls, whom the hope of plunder and spoil had collected, turned their hatred from the Romans upon Hannibal, when they saw their own lands made the seat of war, and themselves burdened by the winter-quarters of the armies of both parties, instead of (having the chance of) carrying and driving away (booty) from the fields of others.

rapio, 3, -pui, -ptum: *to snatch, carry*, 40; 131, a
premo, 3, pressi, -ssum: *to press*, 57, 4

HISTORY OF ROME

Petitusque saepe principum insidiis, ipsorum inter se fraude, eadem levitate, qua consenserant, *consensum* indicantium, servatus erat, et mutando nunc vestem, nunc tegumenta capitis, errore etiam sese ab insidiis munierat.

2. Ceterum hic quoque ei timor causa fuit maturius movendi ex hibernis.

Per idem tempus Gn. Servilius consul Romae idibus Martii magistratum iniit. Ibi cum de re publica retulisset, redintegrata in C. Flaminium invidia est: duos se consules creasse, unum habere; quod enim illi justum imperium, quod auspiciis esse; magistratus id a domo, publicis privatisque penetibus, Latinis feriis actis, sacrificio in monte perfecto, votis in Capitolio nuncupatis, secum ferre; nec privatum auspicia sequi, nec sine auspiciis profectum in externo ea solo nova atque integra concipere posse.

Hinc petitus saepe erat Gallorum principum insidiis, *ast* inter se fraude *facta*, eadem levitate, qua consenserant, *ipsisque* *conspirationem* indicantibus servatus est; et mutando nunc vestem, nunc *capillamentum* et tegumen capitis in errorem eos inducens etiam ab insidiis se munivit.

2. Ceterum hic quoque timor ei causa fuit maturius movendi ex hibernis.

Per idem tempus Gnaeus Servilius consul Romae idibus Martii magistratum iniit. Ibi cum de re publica retulisset, redintegrata in Cajum Flaminium est invidia *plebe* *murmurante*: duos se consules creasse et unum tantum habere; quod enim illi justum imperium, quod auspiciis esset; magistratus id a domo, publicis privatisque penetibus, Latinis feriis actis, sacrificio in monte perfecto, votis in Capitolio nuncupatis, secum ferre; nec privatum auspicia sequi, nec sine auspiciis profectum in externo ea solo nova atque integra concipere posse.

AB URBE CONDITA.

VOCABULARY

insidiae, -arum: *ambush, snare, plot*, 93, a
 fraus, -udis, f: *deceit, treachery*, 114, b
 consentio, 4, -sensi, -nsum: *to agree, conspire*
 conspiratio (fr. conspiro, 1, *to conspire, agree*):
conspiracy, 49, a (49, l, e)
 capillamentum, 2 (fr. capillus, 2, *hair*): *hairdress*,
 tegumen, -minis, n (fr. tego, 3, texti, tectum, *to cover*):
covering; tegumen capitis: *headgear*, 49, e
 munio, 4: *to fortify*

2. *maturus*, 3: *ripe, timely, early*, 28, a

magistratus, 4: *office, official*
 refero, 3, -tuli, -latum: *to carry back, report*, 42, 8
 redintegratio, 1: *to restore, renew*
 invidia, 1: *envy, indignation*
 murmuro, 1: *to murmur, be dissatisfied*, 114, a; 57, 4
 auspiciis, 2 (fr. aves aspicio, *to look at the birds*):
divination, auspices, 49, f; *esset*, 132
 Penates, -um, m: *family deities, and of the state*
 feriae Latinae: *Latin holidays of the confederate*
cities, 114, b
 nuncupo, 1: *to name, take a vow*, 114, b
 proficiscor, 3, -fectum: *to depart, set out*
 solum, 2: *soil, sod, country*
 concipio, 3, -cepi, -ptum: *to take (together)*

TRANSLATION

Hence he was often exposed to the snares of the chieftains of the Gauls, but he was saved by the treachery (they) manifested toward each other, disclosing their conspiracy with the same inconstancy with which they conspired; and changing sometimes his dress, at other times the fashion of his hair and his headgear, he deceived them and protected himself from their snares as well.

2. After all, this fear was also a reason to move more speedily from his winter-quarters.

In the meantime, (at Rome,) Gnaeus Servilius, the consul, entered upon his office on the Ides of March. There, when he reported the public affairs, the indignation against Flaminius (the other consul) was rekindled, and the people complained that they had created two consuls, yet possessed but one, (for) what lawful authority could the other have, and what auspices? (They complained also) that the magistrates (used to) take these (auspices) with them from home, from the tutelary deities of themselves and the state, after the celebration of the Latin holidays, after the sacrifice completed upon the mount, and after the vows, duly taken at the Capitol; and finally that one could neither take auspices privately, nor could one, when he had departed from home without auspices, take them new and entire on a foreign soil.

HISTORY OF ROME

3. Augebant metum prodigia ex pluribus simul locis nuntiata; in Sicilia militibus aliquot spicula, in Sardinia autem in muro circumeunti vigilias equiti scipionem, quem manu tenuerat, arsisse; et litora crebris ignibus fulsisse; et scuta duo sanguine sudasse; et milites quosdam ictos fulminibus, et solis orbem minui visum; et Praeneste ardentis lapides caelo cecidisse; et Arpis parmas in caelo visas pugnantesque cum luna solem; et Capenae duas interdiu lunas ortas; et aquas Caeretes sanguine mixtas fluxisse, fontemque ipsum Herculis cruentis manasse sparsum maculis; et in Antiati metentibus cruentas in corbem spicas cecidisse; et Faleriis caelum findi velut magno hiatu visum, quaque patuerit ingens lumen effulsisse; sortes sua sponte attenuatas, unamque excidisse ita scriptam "Mavors telum suum concutit"; et per idem tempus Romae signum Martis Appia via ac simulacra luporum sudasse; et Ca-

3. Augebant metum prodigia ex pluribus simul locis nuntiata, *etquidem*, in Sicilia militibus aliquot spicula, in Sardinia vero in muro equiti vigilias circumeunti scipionem, quem manu teneret, arsisse; et litora crebris ignibus fulsisse; et scuta duo sanguine sudasse, et milites quosdam ictos fulminibus, et solis orbem minui visum; et Praeneste ardentis lapides ex caelo cecidisse; et Arpis parmas in caelo visas pugnantesque cum luna solem; et Capenae duas interdiu lunas ortas; et aquas Caeretes sanguine mixtas fluxisse; fontemque ipsum Herculis cruentis manasse sparsum maculis; et in Antiati agro metentibus cruentas in corbem spicas cecidisse; et Faleriis caelum findi velut magno hiatu visum, quaque pateret, ingens lumen effulsisse; sortes sua sponte attenuatas, unamque excidisse scriptam sic: "Mavors telum suum concutit"; et per idem tempus Romae statuum Martis Appia via ac simulacra luporum su-

AB URBE CONDITA.

VOCABULARY

3. augeo, 2, auxi, auctum: to enhance, augment
etquidem: namely
spiculum, 2 (fr. spica, 1; spicus, spicum, 2, spike):
the sharp point (of a spear), 49, p
murus, 2: city wall
vigilia, 1: watch, guard
scipio, -nis, m: a staff
teneo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to hold, 133, a
ardeo, 2, arsi, arsum: to burn, glow, be on fire
litus, -toris, n: seashore
creber, -bra, -brum: thick, frequent, 88
fulgeo, 2, fulsi, -: to lighten, blaze
scutum, 2: a large quadrangular shield
sudo, 1: sweat, perspire
sanguine, 88
ic(i)o, 3, ici, ictum: to strike, hit, smite
fulmen, -minis, n (fr. fulgeo): lightning, 49, e; 93, a
minuo, 3, -nui, -nutum: to lessen, diminish
Praeneste, -tis, n: Palestrina, a town in Italy, 21, d
Arpi, -orum: a town in Apulia, 21, d
parma, 1: a round shield
Capena, 1: a town in Etruria, 21, c
interdiu: in the daytime (Etruria)
Caeres, -etis: of Caere, n, indecl., an old city in
cruentus, 3 (fr. cruor, -is, n, blood of a wound):
macula, 1: spot, stain, fault, 88 (bloody)
spargo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: to sprinkle
Antias, -atis: of Antium, 2 (an old town in Latium)
spica, 1: spike, an ear of corn
corbis, -is, f: basket
Falerii, -orum: the capital of Etruria, 21, d

TRANSLATION

3. Prodigies, announced from many places at the same time, augmented the terror, namely, that in Sicily the points of darts of (some) soldiers were inflamed; and in Sardinia the staff of a horseman, going his rounds on the city wall, took fire, as he held it in his hand; that the shores blazed with frequent fires; that two shields sweated blood; that some soldiers were struck by lightning; that the disk of the sun seemed to be diminished, and at Praeneste red hot stones fell from the heavens; that in Arpi round shields were seen in the sky, and the sun (was) fighting with the moon; that at Capena two moons rose in the daytime; that the waters of Caere flowed mixed with blood; and that the fountain of Hercules flowed sprinkled with blood; that in the field of Antium bloody heads of wheat fell into the basket of the reapers; at Falerii the sky appeared cleft as if with a great chasm, and where it was open, a vast light shown forth; that the Sibylline tablets spontaneously became loose and one fell out, inscribed thus: "Mars shakes his spear"; and that at the same time the statue of Mars at Rome on the Appian way and the statues of the wolves sweated;

findo, 3, fidi, fissum: to split, cleave
hiatus, 4 (fr. hio, 1, to gape): opening, cleft, chasm,
pateo, 3, -tui, -: to be or lie open, 102, b (49, a; 88
sors, -rtis, f: lot, fate, kind, Sibylline tablet
attenuo, 1: to make thin or loose
Mavors, -rtis: (archaic for): Mars
concutio, 3, -cussi, -ssum: to shake, agitate, 40
simulacrum, 2: image, statue, portrait, effigy

HISTORY OF ROME

puae speciem caeli ardentis fuisse lunaeque inter imbrem cadentis.

4. Inde minoribus etiam dictu prodigiis fides habita; capras lanatas quibusdam factas, et gallinam in marem, gallum in feminam sese vertisse.

His, sicut erant nuntiata, expositis auctoribusque in curiam introductis, consul de religione patres consuluit.

Decretum, ut ea prodigia partim majoribus hostiis, partim lactentibus procurarentur, et uti supplicatio per triduum ad omnia pulvinaria haberetur; cetera, cum decemviri libros inspexissent, ut ita fierent, quemadmodum cordi esse divis e carminibus profarentur.

5. Decemvirorum monitu decretum est. Jovi primum donum fulmen aureum pondo quinquaginta fieret, Junoni Minervaeque ex argento dona daren-

dasse; et Capuae caeli ardentis lunaeque inter imbrem cadentis speciem fuisse.

4. Inde etiam minoribus prodigiis fides habita est, uti: capras lanatas quibusdam natas, et gallinam in marem ac gallum in feminam mutatum esse.

His, sicut erant nuntiata, expositis testibusque in curiam introductis, consul de religione patres consuluit.

Decretumque est, ut ea prodigia partim majoribus hostiis, partim lactentibus procurarentur, et ut supplicatio per triduum ad omnia pulvinaria haberetur; cetera, secundum libros a decemviris inspectos fierent, quemadmodum cordi esse sibi carminibus dii profarentur.

5. Itaque decemvirorum monitu decretum est, ut Jovi primum donum fulmen aureum pondo quinquaginta fieret, Junoni Minervaeque ex argento dona

AB URBE CONDITA.

VOCABULARY

Capua, 1, chief town in Campania, 21, c
species, 5: sight, view, look, appearance

4. capra, 1: (she-) goat
lanatus, 3 (fr. lana, wool): with wool 49, l
gallina, 1: hen
gallus, 2: cock
mas, maris: male, 22, d
femina, 1: female, woman
muto, 1: to change
nuntio, 1: to report
testis, -is, c: witness, 114, b
curia, 1: the senate
religio, -onis, f: conscientiousness, religious feeling
decerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum: to decide, decree
hostia, 1: victim (93, a)
lactens, -ntis (fr. lacteo, 2, -, -, to suck): suckling,
procuro, 1: take care, manage, make favorable, 124, a
supplicatio, (fr. supplicor, 1: supplicate, entreat suppliantly): supplication, 49, a
triduum, 2: a space of three days
pulvinarium, 2 (fr. pulvinar, -is, n, cushion): cushion seat, shrine, 49, u

5. monitus, 4 (fr. moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum, to warn): advise, 49, a; 93, a
pondo, adv.: by weight

TRANSLATION

and that at Capua there was the appearance of the sky aflame and that of the moon falling amidst a shower.

4. After these, credit was given even to less ominous things: that some men's goats were born with wool; that a hen was changed into a cock, and a cock into a hen. After these things, as they had been reported, (were) laid before the senate, and the witnesses (were) introduced, the consul consulted the senators for their religious opinion.

(So) it was decreed that these prodigies should be made favorable partly with full-grown, partly with suckling victims, and that a supplication should be made at every shrine for three days; and that the other things should be done, as the gods should declare in their oracles to be agreeable to their wish according to the books inspected by the decemviri.

decemviri, -rorum, m: a college of ten men; decemviri sacris faciendis: the guardians of the Sibylline books

profor, 1: to say, foretell, 44, 11; 120, c3
cordi, 77; carminibus, 88

5. Thus, by the advice of the decemviri it was decreed: first, that a golden thunderbolt of fifty pounds weight should be made as an offering to Jupiter; that an offering of silver be presented to Juno and Minerva; that sacrifices of full-grown victims be of-

HISTORY OF ROME

tur, et Junoni reginae in Aventino Junonique Sospitae Lanuvii majoribus hostiis sacrificaretur, matronaeque pecunia collata, quantum conferre cuique commodum esset, donum Junoni reginae in Aventinum ferrent; lectisterniumque fieret, et ut libertinae et ipsae, unde Feroniae donum daretur, pecuniam pro facultatibus suis conferrent.

Haec ubi, facta, decemviri Ardeae in foro majoribus hostiis sacrificarunt. Postremo Decembri jam mense ad aedem Saturni Romae immolatum est, lectisterniumque imperatum (*et eum lectum senatores straverunt*) et convivium publicum, ac per urbem Saturnalia diem ac noctem clamata, populusque eum diem festum habere ac servare in perpetuum jussus.

6. Dum consul placandis Romae *dis* habendoque *dilectu* dat operam, Hannibal profectus ex hibernis, quia jam Flaminius consulem Arretium pervenisse fama erat, cum aliud longius, *ceterum* commodius ostenderetur iter, propiorem viam per paludem pe-

darentur, et Junoni reginae in Aventino Junonique Sospitae Lanuvii majoribus hostiis sacrificaretur, matronaeque pecunia collata, quantum conferre cuique commodum esset, donum Junoni reginae in Aventinum ferrent; lectisterniumque fieret, et ut libertinae et ipsae pecuniam pro facultatibus suis conferrent, unde Feroniae donum daretur.

Haec ubi facta *essent*, decemviri Ardeae in foro majoribus hostiis sacrificarunt. Postremo Decembri jam mense ad aedem Saturni Romae immolatum est, imperatumque lectisternium *lecto* a senatoribus *strato*, *sicut* et convivium publicum *celebratum* atque per urbem Saturnalia die ac nocte clamata, populusque eum diem festum habere ac servare in perpetuum jussus.

6. Dum consul placandis Romae *diis* habendoque *delectui* operam *daret*, Hannibal, quia Flaminius consulem jam Arretium pervenisse fama erat, ex hibernis profectus, cum aliud longius, *quamvis* commodius ostenderetur iter, propiorem viam per palu-

AB URBE CONDITA

VOCABULARY

Aventinus, 2, *one of the seven hills of Rome*
 Sospita, 1, f (*fr. sospito, 1, to keep safe*): *savior*,
 Lanuvium, 2, *a town in Latium* (49, a)
 commodus, 3: *fit, appropriate, convenient*
 lectisternium, 2 (*fr. lectus, 2, couch and sterno, 3,*
stravi, stratum, to spread): *banquet for the*
gods, 49, A; 49, f
 libertinus, 2: *freed man*; libertina, 1: *freed woman*
 pecunia, 1: *money*
 Feronia, 1, *a divine patroness of freed men*
 Ardea, 1, *a town in Latium, 21, c*
 immolo, 1: *to sprinkle with sacred meal, sacrifice*
 lecto strato, 114, b
 convivium, 2: *banquet*
 Saturnalia, -iorum, *a festival with public spectacles*
and banquets, slaves were waited upon by their
masters

6. placo, 1: *to appease, reconcile, 118, a*
 delectus, 4 (*fr. deligo, 3, -legi, -lectum, to select*):
selection, levy, 49, a
 operam dare delectui: *to select, 128*
 pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to arrive*
 Arretium, 2, *a town in Etruria, 21, a*
 fama, 1: *talk, report, news*
 ostendo, 3, -ndi, -sum: *to show, 120, c6*
 propior, 2: *nearer, 27, g*

TRANSLATION

ferred to Juno the Queen on the Aventine and to Juno the Savior at Lavinium; that the matrons, contributing as much money as might be convenient to each, carry it to the Aventine as a present to Juno the Queen, and a lectisternium be celebrated; then, that even the freed women contribute money according to their means, from which a present might be made to Feronia.

When these things had been done, the decemviri sacrificed full-grown victims in the forum at Ardea. Finally, as it was December, a sacrifice was made at the temple of Saturn at Rome and a lectisternium ordered, (in which) the senators prepared the couch; moreover, a public banquet was held, and for a day and a night the Saturnalian festivities were heralded throughout the city; and the people were ordered to keep this day (Dec. 17) as a holiday forever.

6. *Whilst the consul employed himself in appeasing the gods and holding the levy, Hannibal, because it was reported that Flaminius, the consul, had arrived at Arretium, set out from his winter-quarters, and took the nearer way through a marsh, where the river Arno had overflowed more than usual, al-*

inundo, 1: to overflow

HISTORY OF ROME

tit, qua fluvius Arnus per eos dies solito magis inundaverat.

Hispanos et Afros (*id omne veterani erat robur exercitus*), admixtis ipsorum impedimentis, necubi consistere coactis necessaria ad usum deessent, primos ire jussit; sequi Gallos, *ut id agminis medium esset*; novissimos ire equites; Magonem *inde* cum expeditis Numidis cogere agmen, maxime Gallos, si taedio laboris longaeque viae, *ut est mollis ad talia gens*, dilaberentur aut subsisterent, cohipientem.

7. Primi, qua modo praeirent duces, per praealtas fluvi ac profundas voragines, *hausti paene limo immergentesque se*, tamen signa sequebantur.

Galli neque sustinere se, neque prolapsi assurgere ex voraginibus poterant, nec *aut corpora animis aut animos* spe sustinebant; alii fessa aegre trahentes membra, alii, ubi semel *victis taedio animis* procubuissent, inter jumenta et ipsa jacentia passim morientes; maximeque omnium vigiliae conficiebant per quadriduum jam et tres noctes toleratae.

dem petiit, qua fluvius Arnus per eos dies solito magis inundaverat.

Hispanos et Afros, *utrosque veteranos*, robur exercitus *sui*, admixtis ipsorum impedimentis, necubi consistere coactis necessaria ad usum deessent, primos ire jussit; sequi Gallos, *qui medii in agmine essent*; novissimos ire equites; Magonem *deinde* cum expeditis Numidis cogere agmen, maxime Gallos, si taedio laboris longaeque viae, *cum esset ista mollis ad talia gens*, dilaberentur aut subsisterent, cohipientem.

7. Primi, qua modo praeirent duces, per praealtas fluvii ac profundas voragines, *immersi absorptique paene limo*, tamen signa sequebantur.

Galli neque sustinere se neque prolapsi assurgere ex voraginibus poterant; nec *corpus animo, nec animum* spe sustinebant; alii fessa aegre trahentes membra, alii, ubi semel *victi taedio animi* procubuissent, inter jumenta et ipsa jacentia passim mortui sunt; maximeque omnes *vigiliae conficiebant* per quadriduum jam et tres noctes toleratae.

AB URBE CONDITA.

VOCABULARY

Afer, -ra, -rum: *African*
 veteranus, 3: *veteran*, 49, t
 robur, -boris, n: *strength*
 impedimentum, 2 (*fr. impedio, 4, to hinder*): *hindrance, heavy baggage*, 49, e; 114, b
 necubi, ne ubi: *lest anywhere*, 124, a
 agmen, -minis, n (*fr. ago, 2, to drive*): *march*, 49, e
 Mago, -onis, *Hannibal's brother*
 expeditus, 3: *quick, light-armed*
 Numida, 1: *a Numidian*
 taedium, 2: *disgust, weariness*, 94
 mollis, 2: *soft, tender, weak*
 dilabor, 3, -lapsum: *glide apart, fall away*, 135, a
 cohibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to keep together, hinder*

7. praealtus, 3: *very deep or high*, 49, A1
 vorago, -ginis, f: *eddy, whirlpool*
 immergo, 3, -rsi, -sum: *to plunge into*
 absorbeo, 2, -bui, -rptum: *to swallow, gulp down*
 limus, 2: *slime, mud, mire*, 93, a
 prolabor, 3, lapsum: *slip along, fall forward*
 assurgo, 3, -surrexi, -ctum: *to rise, stand up*
 vinco, 3, vici, victum: *to conquer, subdue*, 114, b
 taedio, 93, a
 procumbo, 3, -cubui, -cubitum: *to lie, fall down*, 120,
 jumentum, 2: *a beast (of burden)* (c6)
 aegre: *scarcely*, 28, a
 passim: *here and there, far and wide*, 28, c
 quadriduum, 2: *a space of four days*

TRANSLATION

though a longer, but easier route was shown to him.
 He ordered the Spaniards and Africans, all of them veterans, the strength of his army, to lead, having their own baggage intermixed with them, lest, being compelled to halt anywhere, they might want their necessary things; the Gauls (he ordered) to go next, that they might be the middle in the march; the cavalry to march in the rear; after them Mago (his brother), with the light-armed Numidians, to keep the army together, particularly checking the Gauls, if they should fall away or halt, wearied from exertion and long marching, since that nation is wanting in vigor for such fatigues.

7. The van being plunged and nearly swallowed up in the mud followed the standards wherever the guides did but lead them, through even the very deep and fathomless eddies of the river.

When fallen, the Gauls could neither support themselves, nor raise themselves from the eddies; nor did they support their bodies with energy, nor their minds with hope; some (were) painfully dragging their weary limbs; others whose spirit (was) subdued with fatigues, died where they had fallen, here and there among the beasts (who) themselves (were) fallen; but it was chiefly the vigil endured for four days and three nights, that wore them out.

HISTORY OF ROME

8. Cum, omnia obtinentibus aquis, nihil, ubi in sicco fessa sternerent corpora, inveniri posset, cumulat in aqua sarcinis insuper incumbabant, aut jumentorum itinere toto prostratorum passim acervi tantum quod extaret aqua quaerentibus ad quietem parvi temporis necessarium cubile dabant.

9. Ipse Hannibal, aeger oculis ex verna primum intemperie variante calores frigoraque, elephanto, qui unus superfuerat, quo altius ab aqua exstaret, vectus, vigiliis tamen et nocturno umore palustriue caelo gravante caput, et quia medendi nec locus nec tempus erat, altero oculo capitur.

8. Cum omnibus aqua obtentis nihil, ubi in sicco fessa sternerent corpora, inveniri posset, cumulat in aqua sarcinis insuper incumbabant, aut jumentorum in itinere toto prostratorum passim acervi, quantum aqua extarent, quaerentibus quietem parvi temporis necessarium cubile dabant.

9. Ipse Hannibal elephanto, qui unus superfuerat, quo altius ab aqua excelleret, vectus, aeger oculis ex verna praepremis intemperie varianti calores frigoraque, maxime tamen vigiliis et nocturno humore palustriue caelo caput aggravanti et cum medendi nec locus nec tempus esset, altero oculo capitur.

AB URBE CONDITA.

VOCABULARY

8. obtineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to get, obtain, 114, b
 aqua, 93, a
 siccus, 3: dry
 cumulo, 1: to heap
 sarcina, 1: bundle, package, luggage, 79
 insuper: upon, above, in addition to
 incumbo, 3, -bui, -bitum: lie upon, exert oneself, 79
 prosterno, 3, -stravi, -stratum: cast or lay down
 acervus, 2: heap
 cubile, lis, n: resting place, room, den, bed

9. aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, ill, aching
 intemperies, 5: inclement weather, 49, A1; 94
 vario, 1: to vary, (inter)change, 26, c
 calor, -is, m: heat
 elephantis, 2: elephant, 93, a
 quo altius: the higher, 87; 130
 excello, 3, -llui, -lsum: to excel, be eminent, 130
 veho, 3, vexi, vectum: to carry, ride
 humor, -is, m: moisture, damp atmosphere, 94
 palustris, 2 (fr. palus, -udis, n, marsh): marshy
 coelum, 2: sky, climate; (coeli, -orum, m: Heaven)
 aggravatio, 1: to make heavy or worse, 26, c

TRANSLATION

8. Since no dry (spot) could be found where they might stretch their weary bodies, for water covered every place, they laid themselves down upon their baggages, thrown in heaps into the water; or piles of beasts, lying everywhere through the whole route, in as much as they stood out of the water, afforded a necessary bed for those, (who) sought a short temporary repose.

9. In order to be higher above the water, Hannibal himself (was) riding on the elephant which alone remained, (and) suffering from pains in his eyes especially on account of the inclement vernal weather, interchanging with heat and cold, but chiefly because the watching, nocturnal damp and marshy atmosphere disordered his head, and because there was neither place nor time for remedies, (he) lost one of his eyes.

medeor, 2, -, : to heal, cure, 117, c
 capi oculis: to be deprived of one's eyes, 90

Lyric Poet

DEATH OF LUCRETIA

Original in distichs *

In prose **

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Jamque erat orta dies : passis sedet <i>illa</i> capillis,
Ut solet ad nati mater itura rogum.
Grandaevumque patrem fido cum conjuge castris
Evocat; et posita venit uterque mora.</p> <p>5. Utque vident habitum, quae luctus causa requi-
runt;
Cui paret exsequias, quove sit icta malo.</p> <p>7. <i>Illa</i> diu reticet, pudibundaque celat amictu
<i>Ora</i>: fluunt lacrimae more <i>perennis</i> aquae.</p> <p>9. Hinc pater, hinc <i>conjux</i> lacrimas solantur et
orant,
Indicet: et caeco flentque paventque metu.</p> | <p>1. Jamque erat orta dies : passis sedet <i>ipsa</i> capillis,
<i>mor</i>, ut itura ad nati rogum mater solet, <i>vadit</i>
grandaevumque patrem fido cum conjuge castris
evocat: et <i>nulla</i> posita mora venit uterque.</p> <p>5. Utque vident habitum, quae <i>sit</i> luctus causa, re-
quirunt;
cui paret exsequias, quove sit icta malo.</p> <p>7. <i>Ipsa</i> diu reticet, pudibundaque celat amictu <i>vul-</i>
<i>tum</i>: fluunt lacrimae more aquae <i>scaturientis</i>.</p> <p>9. Hinc pater, hinc <i>conjux</i> <i>lacrimantem</i> solantur et
orant, <i>ut</i>
indicet <i>causam</i>: et caeco flent paventque metu.</p> |
|--|---|

MORS LUCRETIAE.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

1. orior, 4, ortum, oriturum: to rise, arise
pando, 3, -ndi, -nsum or passum: to stretch out, loos-
rogus, 2: funeral pile (en, 114, b, c)
grandaevus, 3: very old, aged
fidus, 3: faithful, trusty
evoco, 1: to call out, 101
conjux, -ugis, (fr. conjungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum, con-
nect): wife, husband, 49, i
5. habitus, 4 (fr. habeo, 2, -bui, -bitum, to have):
habit, garment, 49, a (mourning, 49, a
luctus, 4 (fr. lugeo, 2, luxi, -ctum, to mourn):
requirunt, 101 which in vivid poetical description
like this can be considered as a primary tense
paro, 1: to prepare, 132
ic(i)o, 3, ici, ictum: to strike, hit, 132; quo malo, 93, a
7. reticeo, 2, -cui, -: to be silent
pudibundus, 3 (fr. pudet, to be ashamed): bashful,
56; 49, h
amictus, 4 (fr. amicio, 4, -cui, -ctum, to clothe):
garment, 93, a
ōs, ōris, n: mouth
vultus, 4: face
celo, 1: to hide, conceal
9. hinc - hinc, or hinc - illinc: on this side and on
that
lacrimo, 1 (fr. lacrima, 1, tear): weep, shed tears
solor, 1: to comfort, console
indico, 1: to declare, reveal, 124, a
fleo, 2, -evi, -etum: to weep

1. The day had already dawned, and she sat with
her hair down; then, as a mother would go to her
child's funeral pile, she went and called her aged
father and faithful husband from the camp: and both
came without delay.
- castra, -orum, n: camp, 90
mora, 1: delay, 114, b
5. When they saw her garment, they asked the
reason of her mourning, (and) for whom she was
preparing a funeral pile, and with what (great) evil
she was stricken.
- exsequiae, -arum: funeral
7. She was silent for a long time, and bashfully
hid her face with her cape, while her tears flowed
like rushing water.
- fluo, 3, -uxi, -ctum: to flow
[perennis, 2: perennial]
scaturio, 4: to gush
9. Both father and husband were consoling her
and asking her (as she) wept to indicate the reason;
while they wept and were alarmed by a blind fear.
- caecus, 3: blind
paveo, 2, pavi, -: to fear, be afraid of

* Cf. 139, b2 ** Cf. 13, I, II

DEATH OF LUCRETIA

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>11. Ter conata loqui, ter destitit; ausaque quarto
Non oculos <i>ideo sustulit illa</i> suos:
“Hoc quoque Tarquinio <i>debebimus?</i> Eloquar”, in-
quit?
“Eloquar infelix dedecus ipsa meum?”
Quaeque potest, narrat: restabant ultima: flevit
Et matronales erubuerunt genae.</p> <p>17. Dant veniam facto genitor <i>conjunx</i>que coactae.
“Quam”, dixit, “veniam vos datis, ipsa nego.”</p> <p>Nec mora, celato figit sua pectora ferro;
Et cadit <i>in</i> patrios sanguinolenta pedes.</p> <p>21. Tunc quoque, jam moriens, ne <i>non</i> procumbat
<i>honeste</i>,
Respicit; <i>haec</i> etiam cura cadentis erat.
Ecce super corpus, communia damna gementes,
Obliti decoris virque paterque <i>jacent</i>.</p> <p>25. Brutus adest; <i>tandemque</i> animo sua nomina
fallit;
Fixaque semianimi corpore <i>tela</i> rapit,</p> | <p>11. Ter conata loqui, ter destitit; ausaque est quarto
non <i>tollens</i> oculos suos:
“Hoc quoque Tarquinio <i>debemus!</i> Quomodo elo-
quar”, inquit?
“Quomodo eloquar infelix ipsa dedecus meum?”
Quaeque potest, narrat: restabant ultima: flevit et
matronales erubuerunt genae.</p> <p>17. Dant veniam facto genitor <i>conjux</i>que coactae.
“Veniam”, inquit, “quam, vos datis, ipsa <i>non</i>
<i>accepto.</i>”</p> <p>Nec mora, celato <i>transfigit</i> pectus suum ferro.
Et cadit <i>ad</i> patrios sanguinolenta pedes.</p> <p>21. Tunc quoque, jam moriens, ne procumbat <i>inde-</i>
<i>center</i>,
respicit; <i>hoc</i> etiam cadenti curae erat.
Ecce super corpus, communia damna gementes,
obliti decoris vir paterque <i>cadunt</i>.</p> <p>25. <i>Ast</i> Brutus adest; animo sua nomina fallens
<i>fixum</i> eripit semianimi corpore <i>ferrum</i>,</p> |
|--|--|

MORS LUCRETIAE.

VOCABULARY

11. conor, 1: to endeavor, strive, try
desisto, 3, destiti, -tium: to desist, stop
audeo, 2, -, ausum: to dare, 31, d
quarto: fourthly, 29, b; 28, a
dedecus, -coris, n: shame, disgrace
eloquor, 3, -locutum: to speak out, tell, 104
resto, 1, restiti, -: to remain, be left
matronalis, 2 (fr. matrona, 1, a noble lady): ma-
gena, 1: cheek, face (tronly, 49, r)
17. [nego, 1: to deny]
cogo, 3, coëgi, -actum: to constrain
accepto, 1: to receive, admit
[figo, 3, fixi, fictum: to fix]; transfigo: pierce
pectus, -toris, n: breast
ferrum, 2: iron, sword, dirk, 93, a
sanguinolentus, 3: bloody, bleeding, 56
patrius, 3 (fr. pater, -tris, father): of a father, paternal, 49, z
21. procumbo, 3, -cubui, -cubitum: to bend for-
ward, fall prostrate, 124, a
respicio, 3, -spexi, -ctum: to look back, look at, 101
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: to fall, 77
gemo, 3, -mui, -mitum: to sigh, groan, lament
obliviscor, 3, -litum: to forget, 92
decus, -coris, n (fr. decet, it becomes): honor, de-
cency, 49, a
25. semianimus, 3, or semianimis, 2: half-dead,
half-alive, 90
[telum, 2: missile, dart, lance]

TRANSLATION

11. Thrice she tried to speak; and thrice she
stopped; the fourth time, not lifting her eyes, she
dared (to reply), “This, too, we owe to Tarquinius.
O, how shall I tell,” she said, “how shall I, unhappy,
word my shame?” She said what she could but the
last was left out; she wept and her matronly face
blushed.
17. Both father and husband gave pardon to her
(as) having been constrained. “The pardon, you
give me,” she said, “I (can)not accept.” And with-
out delay she pierced her heart with a concealed
dirk, and fell bleeding at her father’s feet.
21. And even then, already dying, she looked, lest
she should fall indecently; even this she cared for,
as she sank down. At the same moment, both father
and husband lamenting their common loss, and for-
getful of decorum, fell upon her body.
- [jaceo, 2, jacui, jaciturum: to lie]
25. But Brutus is there now; disavowing his
names, he snatches the dirk from the half-dead body
and holding it, dripping with generous blood, fear-

DEATH OF LUCRETIA

Stillantemque tenens generoso sanguine cultrum
Ediditque impavidos ore minante sonos:

stillantemque tenens generoso sanguine cultrum
ediditque impavidus hoc juramentum ore mi-
nanti:

28. "Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cru-
orem,
Per tuos Manes, qui mihi numen erunt,
Tarquinius poenas profuga cum stirpe daturum:
Jam satis est virtus dissimulata diu."

28. "Tibi ego juro per hunc fortem castumque cru-
orem,
per tuos Manes, qui mihi numen erunt,
Tarquinius profugum poenas cum stirpe daturum:
jam satis diu est vera virtus ejus dissimulata."

33. Illa jacens ad verba oculos sine lumine movit;
Visaque concussa dicta probare coma.

33. Ipsa jacens ad verba oculos jam sine lumine mo-
vit;
visaque est probare juramentum coma concussa.

35. Fertur in exsequias animi matrona virilis:
Et secum lacrimas, invidiamque trahit.
Vulnus inane patet. Brutus clamore Quirites
Concitat, et regis facta nefanda refert.
Tarquinius cum prole fugit. Capit annua Consul
Jura: dies regnis illa suprema fuit.
(Fasti II. 813-852)

35. Fertur in exsequias matrona animi virilis:
trahitque secum lacrimas odiumque.
Vulnus hians patet. Brutus clamore Quirites
concitat, et regis facta nefanda refert.
Tarquinius cum prole fugit. Consul capit munus
annuum: sicque dies regni illa suprema fuit.

MORS LUCRETIAE.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

stillo, 1: to drip; culter, -tri, 2: knife
ēdo, 3, ēdidi, -ditum: to give out, take
impavidus, 3 (fr. paveo, 2, pavi, -, to fear): fear-
less, 49, A1; 56

28. cruor, -is, m: blood (from a wound)
Manes, -nium, m: spirits of the dead
profugus, 3 (fr. profugio, 3, to escape): fugitive, 49, t
stirps, -pis, f: stock, race, offspring
dissimulo, 1: to conceal, disguise

33. coma, 1: hair (of the head), 114, b, c
concutio, 3, -cussi, -ssum: to shake, agitate, 40

35. hio, 1: to gape
[inanis, 2: empty, void
pateo, 2, -tui, -: to be, or stand open
Quirites, -(i)um: Roman citizens
concito, 1: to assemble, excite, 101
nefandus, 3 (fr. fari, to say): impious, execrable, 118
proles, -lis, f: offspring, 22, b
munus, -neris, n: office, charge
annuus, 3 (fr. annus, 2, year): lasting for a year, annual, 49, t

lessly takes this vow with a threatening voice:

minor, 1: to threaten, 26, c
juramentum, 2 (fr. juro, 1, to swear): oath, 49, e

28. "I swear to you by this heroic and chaste
blood, and by your spirit which will (henceforth)
be my god, that Tarquinius banished with his family
shall atone for this: his real worth has been dis-
guised long enough already."

33. Prostrate, she moved her lusterless eyes at
these words, and seemed to approve these oaths by
the stirring of her hair.

35. The woman of virile soul is brought to her
funeral; and she draws tears and indignation with
her. Her gaping wound is visible. With a cry Brutus
assembles the Roman citizens, and relates the king's
crimes. Tarquinius flees with his family; consuls
undertake his office yearly; and thus, that day was
the last of the kingship (in Rome).

Flattering Monograph Writer, but Excellent Stylist*

ROMAN HISTORY

WITH
archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Eadem et virtus et fortuna subsequenti tempore ingressa animum imperatoris Tiberii fuit, quae initio fuerat. Qui concussis hostium viribus classicis pedumque expeditionibus cum res Galliarum maximae molis, accensaeque plebis Viennensium dissensiones coërcitione magis quam poena mollisset, et Senatus Populusque Romanus postulante patre ejus, ut aequum ei jus in omnibus provinciis exercitibusque esset, *quam* erat ipsi, decreto complexus esset, (etenim absurdum erat, non esse sub *illo*, quae ab *illo* vindicabantur; et qui ad opem ferendam primus erat, ad vindicandum non judicari parem) in urbem reversus jam pridem debitum sed continuatione bellorum dilatum ex Pannoniis Dalmatisque egit triumphum.

2. Cujus magnificentiam quis miretur in Caesare? Fortunae vero quis non miretur indulgentiam?

WITHOUT
archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Eadem et virtus et fortuna subsequenti tempore ingressa animum imperatoris Tiberii fuit, quae initio fuerat. Qui concussis hostium viribus classicis pedumque expeditionibus cum res Galliarum maximae molis, accensaeque plebis Viennensis dissensiones coërcitione magis quam poena *mollisset*, et Senatus Populusque Romanus postulante patre ejus, ut aequum ei jus in omnibus provinciis exercitibusque esset, *ut* erat ipsi, decreto complexus esset, (etenim absurdum erat, non esse sub *eo*, quae ab *eo* vincebantur; et qui ad opem ferendam primus erat, ad vindicandum non judicari parem), in urbem reversus jam pridem debitum sed continuatione bellorum dilatum ex Pannoniis Dalmatisque egit triumphum.

2. Cujus magnificentiam quis miretur in Caesare? Fortunae vero quis non miretur indulgentiam?

HISTORIA ROMANA.

VOCABULARY

1. subsequor, 3, -secutum: to follow, 95; 26, c
ingredior, 3, -gressum: to enter, 40
concutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: to shake, shatter, 114, b
classicus, 3 (fr. classis, -is, navy): classic, naval, 49, t
pedes, -ditis: foot soldier
expeditio, -nis (fr. expedio, 4, to settle): undertaking
moles, -lis, f: mass, heap, difficulty, trouble, 67, b
accendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to kindle, excite
Viennensis, 2: of Vienne on the Rhone, 49, v
dissensio, -nis, f (fr. dissentio, 4): disagreement, opposition, 49, a
coërcitio, -nis, f (fr. coërcio, 2, -cui, -citum, to enclose, curb): restraint, 49, a; 93, a
mollio, 4: to soften, restrain, 125, a
postulo, 1: to demand, request, 26, c
decretum, 2 (fr. decerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum, to decide): decree, 93, a
complector, 3, -plexum: to embrace, surround, accept, 125, a
absurdus, 3: unreasonable, absurd
[vindico, 1: to claim, avenge]; vincebantur, 133, b

2. magnificentia, 1: loftiness, splendor
miretur, 104
indulgentia, 1 (fr. indulgeo): kindness, 49, u

* Put to death for high treason.

TRANSLATION

1. The same bravery and success marked the soul of Tiberius, the emperor, in later times as in the beginning. After (he had) defeated the navy of the enemy and (had checked) the campaigns of their army, and after he had settled by restraint rather than by punishment the great disturbances of the Gauls and the dissensions of the excited people of Vienne, and at his father's request the senate and the Roman people had passed a decree, that he might have the same right as (his father) himself had over the provinces and armies, — for it was absurd, that the (territories) conquered by him should not be under him, and that he who was first in cooperation should not be considered equal in right, — having returned to Rome, he celebrated his triumph over the Pannonians, and Dalmatians long overdue, but delayed by wars.

Pannonius, 3: Pannonian
Dalmatus, 3: Dalmatian

2. Who would not wonder at its magnificence, (since) a Caesar (was) concerned? And who would

ROMAN HISTORY

Quippe omnes eminentissimos hostium duces non occisos fama narravit, sed vinctos triumphus ostendit.

Quem mihi fratrique meo inter praecipuos praecipuisque donis adornatos viros comitari contigit.

3. Quis non inter reliqua, quibus singularis moderatio Tiberii Caesaris elucet atque eminent, hoc quoque miretur, quod, cum sine ulla dubitatione septem triumphos meruerit, tribus contentus fuerit? Quis enim dubitare potest, quin ex Armenia recepta et ex rege ei praeposito, cujus capiti insigne regium sua manu imposuerat, ordinatisque rebus Orientis ovans triumphare debuerit?

Sed in hoc viro nescias, utrum magis mireris, quod laborum periculūque semper excessit modum, an, quod honorum temperavit.

4. Venitur ad tempus, in quo fuit plurimum metus. Quippe Caesar Augustus Tiberium filium missurus in Illyricum ad firmanda pace, quae bello subegerat, Nolam petiit: et ingravescente in dies valetudine, cum sciret, quis volenti omnia post se salva

Quippe omnes eminentissimos hostium duces non occisos fama narravit, sed vinctos triumphus ostendit.

Quem mihi fratrique meo inter praecipuos praecipuisque donis adornatos viros comitari contigit.

3. Quis non inter reliqua, quibus singularis moderatio Tiberii Caesaris elucet atque eminent, hoc quoque miretur, quod, cum sine ulla dubitatione septem triumphos meruerit, tribus contentus fuerit? Quis enim dubitare potest, quin ex Armenia recepta et ex rege ei praeposito, cujus capiti insigne regium sua manu imposuerat, ordinatisque rebus Orientis ovans triumphare oportuerit?

Sed in hoc viro nescias, utrum magis mireris, quod laborum periculūque semper excessit modum, an, quod honorum temperavit.

4. Venitur ad tempus, in quo fuit plurimum metus. Quippe Caesar Augustus Tiberium filium mittens in Illyricum ad firmanda pace, quae bello subegerat, Nolam petiit: et ingravescente in dies valetudine, cum sciret, quis volenti omnia post se salva

HISTORIA ROMANA.

VOCABULARY

quippe: *indeed, to be sure, for*
emineo, 2, -nui, -: *to stand out, be eminent*
occido, 3, -cīdi, -cīsum: *to kill*
ostendo, 3, -di, -nsum: *to show*
praecipuus, 3: *especial, peculiar*
contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: *to touch; contingit, impersonal, with dat.: it happens*

3. eluceo, 2, eluxi, -: *to beam forth, shine out*
mereo(r), 2, merui, meritum: *to merit, deserve*, 125, a
contentus, 3: *contented, satisfied*
regius, 3 (fr. rex, regis, king): *royal*, 49, z
insignis, 2: *distinguished, remarkable*, 26, f
ordino, 1: *to set in order*, 114, b
ovo, 1: *to rejoice, exult, celebrate*
triumpho, 1: *to triumph*, 35, f
[debeo, 2, -hui, -bitum: *to owe, be engaged*]
excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to go out, pass beyond*,
nescias, 103 (131)
tempero, 1: *to keep within limits*

4. Illyricum, 2, or Illyria, 1: *Dalmatia*
subigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to work through, subdue*
ingravesco, 3, -, -, (fr. gravis, 2, heavy): *to become heavy*, 114, a; 26, c
valetudo, -dinis, f (fr. valeo, to be healthy): *health*
accerso, or arcesso, 3, -ivi, -itum: *to fetch, call to a place*, 111, c

TRANSLATION

not admire the kindness of fortune, for, the report had it that the most famous chieftains of the enemies were not killed, and then the triumph showed them in fetters.

(As) my brother and I (were) among the first men, adorned with eminent distinctions, (we) happened to escort him.

3. *Who would not dare admire the (fact), along with Tiberius Caesar's other (virtues) among which his modesty shines forth and is outstanding, that, although beyond any doubt he had merited seven triumphs, he was satisfied with three? For, after having conquered Armenia and appointed her king, whose head he decorated with a royal crown by his own hands, and after having settled the oriental affairs, who can doubt that he ought to have triumphed gloriously?*

But you do not know whether you should admire more the labor and trial in which he overworked himself, or the modesty he maintained.

4. *Now we come to the time most filled with alarm. Then Caesar Augustus, sending Tiberius, his son, to Illyria in order to strengthen with peace what he had conquered with arms, he (himself) set out for Nola: as his health was failing day by day and he knew who had to be summoned (if he) wish(ed)*

ROMAN HISTORY

remanere accersendus foret, festinanter revocavit
filium circumfususque amplexibus Tiberii sui ani-
mam caelestem caelo reddidit. (L. II. C. 121-123)

remanere accersendus foret, festinanter revocavit
filium circumfususque amplexibus Tiberii sui ani-
mam caelestem caelo reddidit.

HISTORIA ROMANA.

VOCABULARY

festino, 1: *to hasten*, 28, a
circumfundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: *to pour around, sur-
round* (embrace, 88
amplexus, 4 (fr. amplector, 3, -plexum, *to embrace*):
reddo, 3, -ddidi, -dditum: *to give back, render*

TRANSLATION

*all to remain safe after his death, he, therefore, hastily
called back his son, and, supported with the em-
braces of his own Tiberius, he rendered his heavenly
soul to heaven.*

28. VALERIUS MAXIMUS

? - 35? A.D.

Course 43

Writer of Historical Sketches

SAYINGS AND ANECDOTES*

Popular School Text in the Middle Ages

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Non invitus huic subnecto Daphidam, ne quis
ignoret, quantum interfuerit cecinisse deorum lau-
des et numen obtrectasse. Hic cum ejus studii esset,
cujus professores Sophistae vocantur, ineptae et
mordacis *opinationis* Apollinem Delphis irridendi
causa contulit: an equum invenire posset, cum om-
nino nullum habuisset.

*Cujus ex oraculo reddita vox est: inventurum
equum, sed ut eo perturbatus periret. Inde cum joca-*

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Non invitus huic subnecto Daphidam, ne quis
ignoret, quantum interfuerit cecinisse deorum lau-
des et numen obtrectasse. Hic cum ejus esset stu-
dii, cujus professores Sophistae vocantur, inepti *se*
et mordacis *animi* Delphos contulit Apollinem irri-
dendi causa *interrogaturus*: an equum invenire pos-
set, cum omnino nullum habuisset.

*Cui ex oraculo reddita vox est: inventurum
equum, a quo excussus periret. Inde delusa sacra-*

FACTA ET DICTA MEMORABILIA.

VOCABULARY

1. invitus, 3: *unwilling*, 49, A1; 56
subnecto, 3, -nexi, -nexum: *to bind or join to*, 79
Daphidas, 1, a *sophist of Telmesius in Lycia*, 19, c
ignoro, 1: *not to know*, 124, a
quantus, 3: *how much, as much*, 132
cano, 3, cecini, cantum: *to sing, praise*
obtrecto, 1: *to disparage*, 35, b
professor, -is (fr. profiteor, 2, -fessum, *to confess*):
professor of any science, 49, a
sophista, 1, *one paid for teaching practical wisdom*
ineptus, 3 (fr. apto, 1, *to adapt*): *unsuitable, fool-
ish*, 49, A1 (49, i; 67, d
mordax, -acis (fr. mordeo, *to bite*): *biting, satirical*,
[*opinatio, -nis, f: supposition*]
Delphi, -orum, a *town in Phocis, Greece*, 21, e
irrideo, 2, -risi, -risum: *to laugh at, mock, ridicule*,
117, c

* Epitomized by NEPOTIANUS in the fourth century.

TRANSLATION

1. Not unwillingly do I relate here (the story of)
Daphidas, lest anyone be ignorant of how important
it is to have sung the praises of the gods or to have
belittled a deity. Since he was (fond) of the art,
the masters of which are called sophists, he (full)
of a foolish and sarcastic spirit betook himself to
Delphi to ridicule Apollo by questioning whether he
could find his horse, though he had no horse at all.
The answer rendered by the oracle was that he
would find his horse and being thrown therefrom,

equus, 2: *horse*
invenio, 3, -veni, -ventum: *to find*, 35, d
omnino: *at all*

[*perturbo*, 1: *disturb*] (search by shaking
executio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: *to strike out, throw off*,
pereo, 4: *to perish*, 42, 3; 133, a

?- 35? A.D.

SAYINGS AND ANECDOTES

bundus, *quasi* delusa sacrarum sortium fide revertetur, incidit in regem Attalum saepenumero a se contumeliosis *dictis* absentem lacessitum: *ejusque* jussu, saxo, cui nomen erat EQUI, praecipitatus, *ad* deos *usque* cavillandos dementis animi *justa supplicia* pependit.

2. Eodem oraculo Macedonum rex Philippus admonitus, ut a quadrigae violentia salutem suam custodiret, toto regno disjungi *currus* jussit; eumque locum, qui in Boeotia Quadriga vocatur, semper vitavit: neque tamen *denuntiatio* periculi genus effugit: nam Pausanias in capulo gladii, quo eum occidit, quadrigam habuit caelatam.

(Lib. I. C. VIII, 8-9)

3. M. Cato, cum salutandi gratia praetextatus ad Syllam venisset et capita proscriptorum in atrium allata vidisset, atrocitate rei commotus paedagogum,

rum sortium fide jocabundus cum reverteretur, incidit in regem Attalum *persaepe* a se contumeliosis *verbis* in absentia lacessitum, *cujus* jussu a saxo, cui nomen EQUI erat, praecipitatus *justum* dementis *etiam* deos cavillantibus animi supplicium pependit.

2. Eodem oraculo Macedonum rex Philippus admonitus, ut a quadrigae violentia salutem suam custodiret, toto regno *quadrigas* disjungi jussit, eumque locum, qui in Boeotia Quadriga vocatur, semper vitavit: neque tamen *enuntiatio* periculi genus effugit, nam Pausanias in capulo gladii, quo eum occidit, quadrigam habuit caelatam.

3. Marcus Cato, cum salutandi gratia *puer* praetextatus ad Sullam venisset et capita proscriptorum in atrium allata vidisset, atrocitate rei commotus

FACTA ET DICTA MEMORABILIA.

VOCABULARY

jocabundus, 3 (*fr.* jocos, 1, *to jest*): *jocose, sportive, facetious*, 56

[*quasi*, *for sentences contrary to fact: as if*]

deludo, 3, -lusi, -lusum: *to mock, cheat*, 114, b

sors, -rtis, f: *lot, sort, oracular response*, 22, c

incido, 3, -cidi, -, : *to fall in or on, encounter*

[*saepenumero, arch. for:*] *persaepe: very often*

contumeliosus, 3 (*fr.* contumelia, 1, *outrage*): *insolent*, 49, t; 88

laceo, 3, -ssivi, -ssitum: *to provoke, tease, exasperate*

jussu, 4 (*fr.* jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum, *to command*):

saxum, 2: *rock* (order, 94)

demens, -ntis: *foolish*

2. oraculum, 2: *oracle*

Macedo, -nis: *Macedonian*, 22, a

admoneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: *to admonish*

violentia, 1 (*fr.* violens, -ntis, *violent*): *violence*, 49, u

quadriga, 1: *a team of four horses*

salus, -utis, f: *health, welfare, life, salvation*

disjungo, 3, -junxi, -nctum: *to disjoin*, 57, b

vito, 1: *to shun, avoid* (nounce)

enuntio, 1: *to announce, declare*; [denuntio, 1: *de-*

effugio, 3, -fugi, -gitum: *to run away, escape*, 40

genus, -neris, n: *birth, class, kind, gender*

occido, 3, -cidi, -cisum: *to kill*

3. saluto, 1: *to greet, pay a visit*, 117, c

gratia: *for the sake of*, 50, d; 94

praetextatus, 3 (*fr.* praetexta, 1, *bordered toga*): *clad in a praetexta*

proscribo, 3, -scripsi, -ptum: *to outlaw, proscribe*

atrium, 2 (*fr.* ater, 3, *dark*): *the dark open court of a Roman house* (49, A2)

affero, 3, attuli, allatum: *to carry or bring to*, 43, 8;

TRANSLATION

he would perish. Thence, after deriding faith in the oracular responses, when jestingly^{he} was going home, he encountered Attalus the king, (who) often (had) been exasperated by him with ignominious words (uttered) in his absence; at the (king's) order (he was) precipitated from the rock that had the name of HORSE; (thus) he atoned with just punishment for his folly, (having dared) to satirize even a god.

cavillor, 1: *to jest, joke, satirize*

praecipito, 1: *to cast down headlong*

supplicium, 2: *capital punishment*

pendo, 3, pependi, pensum: *to suspend, judge, pay*

2. Being admonished by the same oracle to guard his life against the violence of a quadriga, Philip, the king of the Macedonians, ordered all quadrigas throughout his whole country to be dismantled, and always shunned the place in Boeotia, called Quadriga: yet he did not escape the kind of peril indicated, for Pausanias had a quadriga engraved on the hilt of the sword^{by} which he slew him.

capulus, 2: *coffin, handle, hilt*

caelo, 1: *to engrave, carve*

3. When Marcus Cato, as yet a boy, had come to Sulla's house to pay a visit and had seen the heads of the proscribed brought into his porch, being

commoveo, 2, -movi, -motum: *to move, affect*

atrocitas, -tatis, f (*fr.* atrox, -ocis, *terrible*): *ferceness, cruelty*, 49, u; 88

SAYINGS AND ANECDOTES

Sarpedonem nomine, interrogavit, quapropter nemo inveniretur, qui tam crudelem tyrannum occideret.

Cumque is non voluntatem hominibus, sed facultatem deesse, quod salus ejus magno militum praesidio custodiretur, respondisset, ut ferrum sibi daretur, obsecravit, affirmando perfacile se eum interfecturum, quod in lecto illius considerare soleret. Paedagogus et animum Catonis agnovit et propositum exhorruit, eumque postea ad Syllam excussum semper adduxit. (Lib. III. C. I. 2)

paedagogum, nomine Sarpedonem, interrogavit, quapropter nemo inveniretur, qui tam crudelem tyrannum occideret.

Cum is non voluntatem hominibus, sed facultatem, quod salus ejus magno militum praesidio custodiretur, deesse respondisset, ut ferrum sibi daretur, obsecravit affirmando perfacile se illum interfecturum, quod in lecto illius considerare soleret. Paedagogus animum et propositum Catonis agnoscens ac exhorrescens eum postea ad Sullam nonnisi excussum adduxit.

FACTA ET DICTA MEMORABILIA.

VOCABULARY

paedagogus, 2: *guide, coach or tutor for a boy*
 quapropter, cur: *why*, 132
 crudelis, 2: *cruel*
 tyrannus, 2: *tyrant*; occideret, 133, a
 facultas, -tatis, f: *ability, opportunity*, 57, 4
 praesidium, 2 (fr. praesidio, to sit before): *protection, defence*, 49, f; 93, a
 custodio, 4: *to guard, watch*, 120, c5
 respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: *to answer*, 80, o; 125, a
 obsecro, 1: *to implore, entreat*
 affirmo, 1: *to strengthen, assert*, 117, e
 soleo, 2, -, -litum: *to be accustomed*, 31, d; 133, a

TRANSLATION

moved by the atrocity of (such) proceedings, he asked Sarpedon, his tutor, why no one could be found who would kill so cruel a tyrant.

When (Sarpedon) answered that not the will but the opportunity was lacking to men, since he (Sulla) was guarded by a great force of soldiers, (Cato) pleaded that a dirk be given him, stating that he could easily kill him, because he was accustomed to sit on his couch. The tutor realizing the courage and the determination of Cato, and being terrified, thereafter did not bring him to Sulla unless he had first searched him.

29. PHAEDRUS

A freed man of Augustus, wrote 97 fables partly borrowed from Aesop.

FABLES

The Ass and the Lion Out Hunting

*Original in iambs **

*In prose ***

1. Virtutis expers, verbis gloriam jactans
 Ignotos fallit, notis est derisui.

1. Virtutis expers, verbis gloriam jactans
 ignotos fallit, notis est derisui.

FABULAE.

Asinus et Leo Venantes.

VOCABULARY

1. virtus, -tutis, f: *virtue, worth*, 23, II
 expers, -rtis: *devoid*, 66, b
 verbum, 2: *word*, 88
 gloria, 1: *glory, value*
 jacto, 1 (fr. jacio, 3, throw): *to boast*, 49, j; 36, a
 ignotus, 3 (fr. ignosco, 3, not to have a notion of):
unknown, a stranger who does not know one,
 36, b

* Cf. 139 ** Cf. 13, I, II

Page one hundred and fifty two

TRANSLATION

1. *One devoid of worth, yet with words boasting of his value, deceives strangers (who do not know him), but is a laughing-stock to intimates (who know him).*

notus, 3: *known, one who knows one*, 45, 14; 77
 fallo, 3, fefelli, falsum: *to deceive*
 derisus, 4: *laughing, laughing-stock*, 77

FABLES

The Ass and the Lion Out Hunting

3. Venari asello comite cum vellet leo,
Contexit *illum* frutice et admonuit simul,
Ut insueta voce terreret feras,
Fugientes ipse exciperet. Hic auritulus

Clamorem subito tollit totis viribus
Novoque turbat bestias miraculo.

9. Quae dum paventes exitus notos petunt,
Leonis affliguntur horrendo impetu.

11. Qui, postquam caede fessus est, asinum evocat
Jubetque vocem premere. Tunc ille insolens:
"Qualis videtur opera tibi vocis meae?"
"Insignis," inquit, "sic, ut, nisi nossem tuum

3. Venari asello comite cum vellet leo,
contexit *eum* frutice et admonuit simul,
ut insueta voce terreret feras,
fugientesque ipse exciperet.

Hic auritulus
clamorem subito tollit totis viribus
novoque turbat bestias miraculo.

9. Quae dum paventes exitus notos petunt,
leonis affliguntur horrendo impetu.

11. Qui, postquam caede fessus est, asinum evocat
jubetque vocem premi. Tunc ille insolens:
"Qualis," inquit, "videtur tibi opera vocis meae?"
Hic vero: "Insignis *ita*, ut, nisi nossem tuum

FABULAE.

Asinus et Leo Venantes.

VOCABULARY

3. venor, 1: to hunt, 57, 3
asellus, 2 (fr. asinus, 2, ass): little donkey, 49, p;
comes, -mitis, c: companion, 115 (115)
volo, velle, volui, -: to wish, want, 42, 4; 125, a
leo, -nis, m: lion
contego, 3, -texi, -ctum: to cover
is, 3: he; [ille, 3: that], 30, b
frutex, -ticis, f: bush, shrub, shrubbery, 93, a
admoneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: to advise, order, 32, d; 72
simul: at the same time
insuetus, 3: unusual, extraordinary, 49, A1
vox, vocis, f: voice, 88; 22, a
terreo, 2, -rrui, -rritum: frighten, terrify, 124, a
fera, 1: wild beast
fugio, 3, fugi, fugiturum: to flee, 36, a; 61
excipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to catch, 40; 124, a
hic, 3: the, 15, a
auritulus, 3 (fr. auritus, 3, long-eared): little ass,

9. dum: while, as 128
paveo, 2, pavi, -: to be frightened, fearful, 36, a
exitus, 4: outlet, exit, path, track
peto, 3, -tivi, -titum: seek, require, assault, 101
affligo, 3, flixi, -ctum: to dash, strike down, 101
horrendus, 3: dreadful, terrible

11. postquam: after
caedes, -is, f: slaughter, 88
fatiscor, 3, fessum: to be tired, fatigued, 32, d
evoco, 1: to call, 101
jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: to order, 57, b; 101
premo, 3, pressi, pressum: to press, check, 58
insolens, -ntis: arrogant, insolent, 56
qualis, 2: what kind of? how?
inquam: to say, 44, 10
opera, 1: labor, operation
hic: the (lion), 30, b2

TRANSLATION

3. When a lion wanted to hunt with an ass as companion, he covered him with shrubbery and at the same time ordered him to frighten the wild beasts with his extraordinary voice, whilst he himself would catch them (as they) fled.

Suddenly with all his might long-ears raised a shout and startled the wild beasts with the new marvel (sound).

long-ears, 49, p
clamor, -is, m: outcry, shout
subito: suddenly, 28, b
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: to raise, lift, take, 101
totus, 3: all, whole
vis, vis, in pl. virium, f: force, power, might, 22, g;
novus, 3: new, novel (88)
miraculum, 2: wonder, marvel, 49, f; 88
turbo, 1: disturb, startle, 101

9. As they, being frightened, sought their accustomed tracks, they were struck down by the dreadful onslaught of the lion.

impetus, 4: assault, onslaught, 93, a

11. When he became tired of the slaughter he called the ass and ordered him to check his voice. Then the latter arrogantly said: "How does the sound of my voice appear to thee?" "So marvelous" (replied) the former, "that if I did not know thy

insignis, 2: eminent, marvellous
[sic: so, thus, in this manner]; ita: so that, in such a way
novi, no(vi)sse, motum: to know, 45, 14; 109, c, d

FABLES

The Ass and the Lion Out Hunting

Animum genusque, simili fugissem metu."

animum genusque, simili fugissem metu."

The Cow, the Goat, the Sheep and the Lion

1. Nunquam est fidelis cum potente societas:
Testatur haec fabula propositum meum.

1. Nunquam est fidelis cum potente societas:
testatur haec fabula propositum meum.

3. Vacca et capella et patiens ovis injuriae
Socii fuere cum leone in saltibus.

3. Vacca et capella et patiens ovis injuriae
socii fuerunt cum leone in saltibus.

5. Hi cum cepissent cervum vasti corporis,
Sic est locutus partibus factis leo:
"Ego primam tollo, nominor quia leo;
Secundam, quia sum fortis, tribuetis mihi;
Tum, quia plus valeo, me sequetur tertia;
Maló afficietur, si quis quartam tetigerit."

5. Hi cum cepissent cervum vasti corporis,
sic est locutus partibus factis leo:
"Ego primam tollo, nominor enim leo;
secundam, quia sum fortis, tribuetis mihi;
tum, quia plus valeo, me sequetur tertia;
malo afficietur, si quis quartam tetigerit."

FABULAE.

Asinus et Leo Venantes.

VOCABULARY

animus, 2: *mind, courage, spirit*
genus, -neris, n: *race, stock, gender*
similis, 2: *similar*
metus, 4: *fear, fright, 88*

TRANSLATION

*courage and thy race, I myself should have fled
with a similar fright."*

Vacca, Capella, Ovis et Leo.

1. nunquam: *never*
fidelis, 2: *faithful, trustworthy, 49, r*
potens, -ntis: *mighty, powerful, 26, c*
cum, *prep.: with, 50, b*
societas, -tatis, f: *company, association, 49, u*
testor, 1: *to testify, bear out*

1. *Association with the mighty is never trustwor-
thy: the following fable bears out my proposition.*

3. vacca, 1: *cow*
capella, 1 (*fr. capra, 1, she-goat*): *little goat, 49, p*
ovis, -is, f: *sheep*
patiens, -ntis (*fr. patior, 3, to endure*): *patient, 40*
injuria, 1: *injury*; patiens injuriae: *harm enduring,
patient, 66, a*

fabula, 1: *fable, narrative, story*
propositum, 2: *statement, assertion, proposition*

5. capio, 3, cepi, captum: *to take, seize, 40; 125, a*
cervus, 2: *stag*
vastus, 3: *enormous, huge, immense*
corpus, -poris, n: *body, 67, d*
loquor, 3, locutum: *to speak, 31, c*
pars, -tis, f: *part, portion, 22, c; 114, b*
primus, 3: *first, 29, b*
nomino, 1: *to call, 59, B*
secundus, 3: *second, 29, b*
quia: *because*
fortis, 2: *courageous, powerful, strong*
tribuo, 3, -ui, -utum: *to allot, grant*
tum: *then*
plus, -uris: *more, 27, e; Coll. 37, 4*

3. *A cow, a goat, and a patient sheep were associ-
ates of a lion in the woods.*

socius, 2: *companion, associate*
saltus, 4: *woodland, woods, forest*

5. *After they had taken a stag of huge size,
the portions having been made, the lion spoke as
follows: "I take the first (share) because I am called
lion; you will grant me the second, because I am
powerful; then, because I prevail, the third will
come to me; woe betide the one who touches the*

valeo, 2, -ui, -: *to be able, healthy, strong*
sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow*
tertius, 3: *third, 29, b*
malus, 3: *bad, 26, f; 93, a*
afficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to treat*
quartus, 3: *fourth, 29, b*
tango, 3, tetigi, tactum: *to touch, 109, a3*

FABLES

The Cow, the Goat, the Sheep and the Lion

Sic totam praedam sola improbitas abstulit.

Sic totam praedam sola improbitas abstulit.

Faults of Men

1. Peras imposuit Jupiter nobis duas:
Propriis repletam vitiis post tergum dedit,
Alienis ante pectus suspendit *gravem*.

4. Hac re videre nostra *mala* non possumus;
Alii *simul* delinquant, censores sumus.

1. Peras imposuit Jupiter nobis duas:
propriis repletam vitiis post tergum dedit *gravem*,
alienis *oneratam* ante pectus suspendit *levem*.

4. Hac re videre nostra *peccata* non possumus;
simulac delinquant alii, censores sumus.

FABULAE.

Vacca, Capella, Ovis et Leo.

VOCABULARY

totus, 3: *entire, whole*, 30, *k*
praeda, 1: *booty, prey*
improbitas, -tatis, f: *impudence, wickedness*, 49, *u*
aufero, 3, abstuli, ablatum: *to take away, carry off*, 43, 8; 49, *A2*

TRANSLATION

fourth." Thus, dishonesty alone took the whole prey.

De Hominum Vitiis.

1. pera, 1: *scrip, wallet, sack*
impono, 3, -posui, -situm: *to place upon*, 79
Jupiter, Jovis, m: *Jupiter*
duo: *two*, 29, *h*
proprius, 3: *one's own, proper, individual*
repleo, 2, -plevi, -pletum: *to fill*
vitium, 2: *fault, defect, crime, vice*, 83
post, *prep.*: *behind*, 50, *a*
tergum, 2: *back*
do, 1, dedi, datum: *to give*
gravis, 2: *heavy*

4. hac re, 94
noster, 3: *our*, 30, *e*
peccatum, 2: *sin*
possum, posse, potui, -, : *to be able*, 41, 2
simulac: *as soon as*; [simul: *at the same time*]
delinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: *to fail, commit a crime*

1. *Two sacks did Jupiter put upon us: the heavy one, filled with our own faults, he hung behind our back; the light one, loaded with those of others, he suspended at our breast.*

alienus, 2: *strange, other*, 26, f; 93, *a*
onero, 1: *to load*, 36, *b*
ante, *prep.*: *before*, 50, *a*
pectus, -toris, n: *breast*
suspendo, 3, -pendi, -pensum: *to hang, suspend*
levis, 2: *light*

4. *On this account we cannot see our sins; (but) as soon as others fail, we are severe judges.*

censor, -is, m (fr. censeo, 2, -nsui, -nsum: *to estimate*): *censor, a severe judge*

Historian

HISTORY OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Inter haec Alexander, ad conducendum ex Peloponneso militem Cleandro cum pecunia misso, Lyciae Pamphyliaeque rebus compositis, ad urbem Celaenas exercitum admovit.

2. Mediam illa tempestate interfluebat Marsyas amnis, fabulosis Graecorum carminibus inclytus.

3. Fons ejus, ex summo montis cacumine excurrens in subjectam petram magno strepitu aquarum cadit: inde diffusus circumjectos rigat campos, liquidus et suas duntaxat undas trahens.

4. Itaque color ejus placido mari similis locum poetarum mendacio fecit: quippe traditum est Nymphas amore amnis retentas in illa rupe considerare.

1. Inter haec Alexander, ad conducendos ex Peloponneso milites Cleandro cum pecunia misso, Lyciae, Pamphyliaeque rebus compositis, ad urbem Celaenas exercitum admovit.

2. Quam mediam illo tempore interfluebat Marsyas amnis, fabulosis Graecorum carminibus inclytus.

3. Fons ejus ex summo montis cacumine excurrens in subjacentem petram magno strepitu aquarum cadit: inde diffusus circumjacentes rigat campos profluendoque suas duntaxat trahit undas.

4. Cujus color placido mari occasionem imaginationi poetarum dedit: traditum quippe est Nymphas amore amnis retentas in illa rupe considerare.

EX HISTORIA RERUM ALEXANDRI MAGNI.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

1. conduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to bring together, hire, 118; 35, g

Peloponnesus, 2, f, an island, now Morea

pecunia, 1: money

Lycia, 1; Pamphylia, 1, countries in Asia Minor

Celaenae, 1, a town in Phrygia of Asia Minor

2. medius, 3: middle

[tempestat, -tatis, f: weather, storm]

interfluo, 3, -fluxi, -fluxum: to flow between, 61, a

Marsya(s), 1, tributary of the river Meander; a satyr beaten by Apollo in a musical contest and flayed alive

3. cacumen, -minis, n: top, summit, extreme point

excurro, 3, -curri, -cursum: to run out, hasten

[subjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to cast under, subdue]

subjaceo, 2, -jacui, -: to lie under, be subject

strepitus, 4 (fr. strepo, 3, -pui, -pitum, to make noise): loud noise, 49, a; 88

cado, 3, cecidi, casum: to fall

difflo, 3, -fluxi, -fluxum: to pour out, diffuse

rigo, 1: to water, moisten, bedew

campus, 2: field

4. placidus, 3: quiet, still, gentle, 78, a

[mendacium, 2 (fr. mentior, 3, mentitum, to lie): rupes, -pis, f: rock, cliff (lie)]

Nympha, 1, a being of half-divine nature

consido, 3, -sedi, -sessum: to sit down, encamp

1. In the meanwhile, sending Cleander with money to levy soldiers from the Peloponnesus, and having settled the affairs of Lycia and Pamphylia, Alexander led his army to the town of Celaenae.

2. Through the middle of this city at that time flowed the Marsyas river, famous in the mythical poems of the Greeks.

inclytus, 3: celebrated, renowned, famous, 84
amnis, -is, m: river

3. (It has) its source at the summit of the mountain, (and) falls down on the underlying rock with a mighty noise of waters; thence spreading out, it waters the surrounding fields, and then (as it) flow(s) along, collects its water (into a single stream).

profluo, 3, -fluxi, -fluxum: to flow forth, 117, e
duntaxat: only, exactly
traho, 3, traxi, tractum: to draw, assume, receive

4. Its color, similar to the calm sea, offered opportunity to the imagination of poets; for, it was said, the Nymphs, overpowered by love of the stream, sat on its rock.

HISTORY OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

5. Ceterum quamdiu intra muros fluit, nomen suum retinet: at cum extra munimenta se evolvit, majore vi ac mole agentem undas Lycum appellant.

6. Alexander quidem urbem destitutam a suis intrat: arcem vero, in quam confugerant, oppugnare adortus caduceatorem praemisit, qui denuntiaret: ni dederent, ipsos ultima esse passuros.

7. Illi caduceatorem in turrim, et situ et opere multum editam perductum, quanta esset altitudo, intueri jubent ac nuntiare Alexandro, non eadem ipsum et incolas aestimatione munimenta metiri: se scire inexpugnabiles esse; ad ultimum pro fide morituros.

8. Ceterum ut circumsideri arcem et omnia sibi in dies arctiora viderunt esse, sexaginta dierum inducias pacti, ut, nisi intra eos auxilium Darius misset, dederent urbem; postquam nihil inde praesi-

5. Ceterum quamdiu intra muros fluit, nomen suum retinet: at cum extra munimenta se evolvit, majore vi ac mole agens undas Lycus (?) appellatur.

6. Alexander urbem ab incolis destitutam intrat et arcem, in quam confugerant, oppugnaturus legatum praemittit, qui denuntiaret, ni se dederent, ipsos ultima esse passuros.

7. At illi in turrem et situ et opere multum editam perductum legatum, quanta esset altitudo, intueri jubent ac nuntiare Alexandro non eadem ipsum et incolas aestimatione munimenta metiri, seque scire inexpugnabiles esse, atque ad ultimum se pro Darii fide morituros.

8. Cum autem circumsideri arcem et omnia sibi in dies arctiora esse viderent, sexaginta dierum inducias ita pacti sunt, ut, nisi intra eos dies Darius auxilium mitteret, urbem traderent; et postquam

EX HISTORIA RERUM ALEXANDRI MAGNI.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

5. quamdiu: *as long as*
 murus, 3: *wall, city wall*
 munimentum, 2 (*fr. munio, 4, to fortify*): *fortress*
 evolvo, 3, evolvi, evolutum: *to roll out*
 moles, -lis, f: *mass, heap*
 unda, 1: *wave*

6. destituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to set down, leave*
 oppugno, 1: *to assault, storm, besiege, 111, a*
 [adorior, 4, -ortum: *to rise up, to attack*]
 [caduceator (*fr. caduceus, 2, herald's staff*): *herald*]
 dedo, 3, dedidi, deditum: *to give up, surrender, 109, d*
 patior, 4, passum: *to suffer, 135, b; ni, 109, d*

7. turris, -is, f: *tower; acc. turrem, (turrim)*
 editus, 3 (*fr. edo, 3, -didi, -ditum, to give out*):
high, lofty
 altitudo, -dinis, f (*fr. altus, 3, high*): *height, 49, u;*
 intueor, 2, -tutum: *to look or gaze at, 57, b (132)*
 metior, 4, mensum: *to measure, 57, 4*
 inexpugnabilis, 2 (*fr. expugno, 1, to conquer*): *un-*
conquerable, 49, A 1; 49, i
 fides, 5: *faith*

8. circumcido, 3, or -sedeo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: *to*
sit around, besiege, 57, 4
 ar(c)tus, 3: *narrow, tight, close, 27, a; 78, a*
 sexaginta: *sixty, 29, a*
 induciae, -arum: *truce, armistice*
 paciscor, 3, pactum: *to make a bargain, agree, stipu-*
late
 praesidium, 2 (*fr. praesideo, to sit before*): *protec-*
tion, defense, 49, f; 67, c

5. Moreover, as long as it flows inside the (city) walls, it retains its name, but as soon as it flows out of the fortress, driving its waters with a greater force and volume, it is called Lycus.

6. Alexander enters the city, (which was) abandoned by its inhabitants, and, starting to besiege the stronghold into which they fled, he sends his legate to announce that unless they surrendered, they would suffer the worst.

7. But they, having led the legate to their tower, very high in its position and construction, asked him to look at its height and report to Alexander that he and the inhabitants do not estimate the strongholds at the same value, and that they know themselves to be unconquerable, and that faithful to Darius, they are resolved to die to the last (man).

8. But, when they saw the stronghold besieged on all sides, and themselves daily more and more distressed, they agreed on an armistice of sixty days so that, if Darius would not send help within those days, they would surrender the stronghold; and as no help had been sent from (Darius), on the ap-

HISTORY OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

dii mittebatur, ad praestitutam diem permisere se regi.

9. Superveniunt deinde legati Atheniensium petentes, ut capti apud Granicum amnem redderentur sibi. Ille non hos modo, sed etiam ceteros Graecos restitui suis jussurum respondit finito Persico bello.

10. Ceterum Dario imminens, quem nondum Euphratem superasse cognoverat, undique omnes copias contrahit; totis viribus tanti belli discrimen aditurus.

nihil inde praesidii mittebatur, ad praestitutam diem in potestatem se Alexandri permiserunt.

9. Superveniunt deinde legati Atheniensium petentes, ut capti apud Granicum amnem Graeci redderentur ipsis. Is autem non hos modo, sed etiam ceteros Graecos restitui suis finito Persico bello jussurum se respondit.

10. Interea Dario imminens, quem nondum Euphratem superasse cognoverat, totis viribus tanti belli discrimen aditurus undique omnes copias contrahit.

The Knots of Gordius

11. Phrygia erat, per quam ducebatur exercitus, pluribus vicis, quam urbibus frequens.

12. Tunc habebat quondam nobilem Midiae regionem; Gordium nomen est urbi, quam Sangarius amnis interfluit, pari intervallo Pontico et Cilicio mari distantem.

11. Phrygia tunc erat, per quam ducebatur exercitus, pluribus vicis quam urbibus frequens.

12. Inter quas habebat quondam nobilem Midiae regionem; Gordium nomen est urbi, quam Sangarius amnis interfluit pari intervallo Pontico et Cilicio mari distantem.

EX HISTORIA RERUM ALEXANDRI MAGNI.

VOCABULARY

praestituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: to appoint beforehand
permitto in potestatem: to surrender

9. supervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to come over or unexpectedly

capio, 3, cepi, captum: to seize, capture
reddo, 3, reddidi, redditum: to give back, render, 124, a

restituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: to replace, restore, 57, b
finio, 4: to limit, finish, end, put an end to, 114, b

10. immineo, 2, -nui, -: to hang over, threaten, 79
nondum: not yet

Euphrates, -is, or -ae, m, tributary of Tigris, -idis,
supero, 1: to be above, surpass, conquer (or -is

contraho, 3, -traxi, -tractum: to draw together, collect, 101

discrimen, minis, n (fr. discerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum,
to sever): crisis, danger

TRANSLATION

pointed day they surrendered to the power of Alexander.

9. Then the legates of the Athenians came unexpectedly, asking (Alexander) to release to them the Greeks captured at the river Granicus. He answered (them) he would order not only those, but even all the rest of the Greeks to be released, after the Persian war had been ended.

10. In the meantime, with hostile intent towards Darius, whom he had not yet heard to have passed the Euphrates, and in order to approach with his full strength the decisive battle of so great a war, he drew together from everywhere all (possible) troops.

adeo, 4: to approach, incur, 111, a

De Nodis Gordii.

11. vicus, 2: street, village
frequens, -ntis: numerous, crowded, 84

12. intervallum, 2: interval, distance
disto, 1, distiti, -: to be apart, distant
Pontus, 2, the Black Sea; Ponticus, 3: Pontic, 90
Cilicus, 3 (fr. Cilicia, a country in Asia Minor):
Cilician

11. (At that time) Phrygia, through which his army was being led, was more abundant in villages than in cities.

12. Among the latter there was in times past the noble capital of Midas. Gordium is the name of the city, divided into two (parts) by the Sangarius river, at an equal distance from the Pontic and Cilician Seas.

The Knots of Gordius

13. Inter haec maria angustissimum Asiae spatium esse comperimus, utroque in arctas fauces compellente terram.

14. Alexander urbe in suam ditionem redacta Jovis templum intrat. Vehiculum, quo Gordium Midae patrem vectum esse constabat, aspexit cultu haud sane a vilioribus vulgarisque usu abhorrens.

15. Notabile erat jugum astrictum compluribus nodis in semet ipsos implicatis et celantibus nexus, incolis deinde affirmantibus editam esse oraculo sortem Asiae potiturum, qui inexplicabile vinculum solvisset, sortis ejus implendae cupido incessit animo.

16. Circa regem erat et Phrygum et Macedonum turba; illa exspectatione suspensa, haec sollicita ex temeraria regis fiducia. Quippe serie vinculorum ita

13. Utroque mari in arctam regionem compellente terram inter haec maria hic angustissimum Asiae spatium comperimus.

14. Alexander urbe in suam ditionem redacta Jovis templum intrat. Ibi vehiculum forma et ornatu haud sane differens a vilioribus vulgaribusque aspicit, quo Gordium Midae patrem vectum esse constabat.

15. Notabile erat jugum astrictum compluribus nodis in semet ipsos implicatis et celantibus nexus, incolisque affirmantibus editam esse oraculo, quod sortem Asiae potiturus esset, qui inextricabile vinculum solveret, sortis ejus implendae cupido invasit animum.

16. Circa regem erat et Phrygum et Macedonum turba; illa exspectatione suspensa, haec sollicita ex temeraria regis fiducia. Serie quippe vinculorum

De Nodis Gordii.

VOCABULARY

13. spatium, 2: *space, distance*
comperio, 4, -peri, -pertum: *to find out, discover*
[faux, -ucis, f: *throat, jaw*]

14. ditio, nis, f: *power, sovereignty*
redigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to bring or lead back, 114, b*
aspicio, aspexi, aspectum: *to look at, behold, 101*
vilis, 2: *cheap, low-priced, common*
[vulgatus, 3: *well known*]
vulgaris, 2: *common*
consto, 1, -stiti, -staturus: *to stand still, consist, cost, be well known*

15. notabilis, 2 (fr. noto, 1, to mark): *remarkable*
jugum, 2: *yoke, horse's collar*
astringo, 3, nxi, -ictum: *to tighten*
nodus, 2: *knot*
implico, 1: *to enfold, entangle*
in semet ipsos implicatus: *intertwined*
celo, 1: *to hide, conceal, keep secret*
nexus, 4 (fr. necto, 3, nex(u)i, nexum, to connect):
entwining, binding
sors, -rtis, f: *lot, sort, oracular response*
potior, 4, potitum: *to get possession, 93, b; 31, b*
inextricabilis, 2 (fr. extrico, 1, to disentangle): *in-*

16. suspensus, 3 (fr. suspendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum, to hang up): *anxious, doubtful*
sollicitus, 3: *anxious*
temerarius, 3: *inconsiderate, rash*
fiducia, 1: *confidence, courage, 84*

TRANSLATION

13. We find this land compressed by both seas into a narrow region, the narrowest part of Asia (Minor).

14. Alexander, having taken the city into his possession, entered the temple of Jupiter. He noticed there a carriage, in form and adjustment hardly different from the less valued and common (vehicles), in which it was known that Gordius the father of Midas had driven.

[abhorreo, 2, -rrui, -: *to shrink back, be opposed to*]

15. It was remarkable (in this) that its harness was fastened to it by several knots, intertwined and concealing their connection, and, as the inhabitants affirmed that there was an oracular response that he who would undo the intricate tie should master Asia, the desire to realize the prophecy seized his mind.

tricate
[incedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to walk*]
invado, 3, -vasi, -vasum: *to go in, invade, assail*

16. Around the king there was a crowd of Phrygians and Macedonians; the former (held) in suspense with expectation, the latter in anxiety because of the king's rash confidence. For as the arrange-

The Knots of Gordius

astrieta, ut, unde nexus inciperet quove se conderet, nec ratione nec visu percipi posset, solvere aggressus *injecerat* curam, ne in omen verteretur irritum inceptum.

17. *Ille* nequaquam diu luctatus est cum latentibus *nodis*. Nihil, inquit, interest, quomodo solvantur: gladioque *ruptis* omnibus *loris*, oraculi sortem vel elusit vel implevit.

18. Cum deinde Darium, ubicumque esset, *occu- pare* statuisset, ut a tergo tuta relinqueret, Amphoterum classi ad oram Hellesponti, copiis *autem* praefecit Hegelochum, Lesbos et Chium et Con praesidiis hostium liberaturos. (Lib. III.)

ita astricta, ut, unde nexus inciperet quove se conderet, nec ratione nec visu percipi posset, solvere *nodos* aggressus, ne irritum inceptum in omen verteretur, curam *injecit*.

17. Nequaquam diu luctatus est cum latentibus *loris*. Nihil, inquit, interest, quomodo solvantur: gladioque *dissectis* omnibus *nodis*, oraculi sortem vel elusit vel implevit.

18. Cum deinde Darium, ubicumque esset, *aggredi* decrevisset *et* ut a tergo tuta relinqueret, Amphoterum classi ad oram Hellesponti, Hegelochum *vero* copiis praefecit *eosque* Lesbos et Chium et Con a praesidiis hostium liberaturos.

De Nodis Gordii.

VOCABULARY

unde: *where from?*
 quo: *where to?* 51, f
 condo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to establish, conceal*, 132
 percipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to perceive*, 124, b
 aggredior, 3, -gressum: *to approach, attack*, 36, c
 injicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: *to throw in, cause*
 omen, -minis, n: *omen, sign*
 irritus, 3: *void, invalid, vain, ineffective*
 inceptum, 2 (*fr. incipio*, 3, -cepi, -ceptum, *to start*): *undertaking, beginning*

17. luctor, 1: *to wrestle, struggle*
 lateo, 2, latui, latitum: *to be hidden*, 61
 [rumpo, 3, rupi, ruptum: *to break, burst, rend, tear*]
 disseco, 1, -secui, -sectum: *to cut asunder*, 114, b, c
 eludo, 3, eludi, elusum: *to play, mock, ridicule*

18. ubicumque: *wherever*
 [statuo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to make stand, state*]
 decerno, 3, decrevi, decretum: *to decide*, 125, b
 tergum, 2: *back*
 ora, 1: *edge, border, coast, region*
 Lesbos, 2, Chios, 2, Co(o)s, 2, f: *islands in the Ae-gean Sea*

TRANSLATION

ment of the ties was so complicated that (the place) where a binding began or (was) hid away, could be detected neither by reasoning nor by sight, Having begun to undo the knots, he took pains lest his unsuccessful undertaking would be changed into an (unfavorable) omen.

17. *He did not struggle with the puzzling straps for a long while at all. "It matters not," he said, "how they be disentangled": and, by cutting through all the knots with his sword, he either eluded or fulfilled the prophecy.*

18. *Then, as he had decided to attack Darius, wherever he happened to be, and (as he wished) to leave everything secure in his rear, he put Amphoterus in charge of his navy at the coast of the Hellespontus, and Hegelochus in charge of his auxiliary troops, (that they might) free Lesbos, Chios, and Cos from the hostile guards.*

31. TITUS PETRONIUS ARBITER

? - 60? A.D.

Course 62

Dictator of fashion and taste in Nero's court. The first novelist and an excellent classical stylist.

SATYRICON.

A mirror of contemporary manners.

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Nos jam ad triclinium perveneramus, in cujus parte prima procurator rationes accipiebat.

Et quod praecipue miratus sum, in postibus triclinii fasces erant cum securibus fixi, quorum unam partem quasi embolum navis aeneum finiebat, in quo erat scriptum: C. POMPEIO TRIMALCHIONI SEVIRO AUGUSTALI: CINNAMUS DISPENSATOR.

2. His repleti voluptatibus cum conaremur in triclinium intrare, exclamavit unus ex pueris, qui super hoc officium erat positus: "Dextro pede."

Sine dubio paulisper trepidavimus, ne contra praecceptum aliquis nostrum limen transiret.

3. Ceterum ut pariter movimus dextros gressus, servus nobis despoliatus procubuit ad pedes ac ro-

1. Jam ad triclinium pervenimus, in cujus procoetone (parte antica) procurator rationes accipiebat.

Et quod praecipue miratus sum, in postibus triclinii fasces erant cum securibus fixi, quorum unam partem quasi embolum navis aeneum finiebat, in quo erat scriptum: CAJO POMPEIO TRIMALCHIONI SEVIRO AUGUSTALI: CINNAMUS DISPENSATOR.

2. His repleti voluptatibus cum conaremur in triclinium intrare, exclamavit unus ex pueris, qui super hoc officium erat positus: "Dextro pede."

Sine dubio paulisper trepidavimus, ne contra praecceptum aliquis nostrum limen transiret.

3. Ceterum ut pariter movimus dextros pedes, servus nobis veste despoliatus procubuit ad pedes ac ro-

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

1. satyricon, 2: a satirical romance, 20
triclinium, 2: triclinium, Roman dining room
pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to arrive at, reach
procoeton, -is, m, Greek: lobby, (oe like in coelo)
anticus, 3: fore, front; posticus, 3: rear, back
procurator, -is, m: steward, procurator
ratio, -nis, f: reason, account
praecipue: especially
miror, 1: to wonder at, be surprised
postis, -is, m: post, doorpost, 23, I
securis, -is, f: axe, 22, g
fascis, -is, m: bundle, packet; fasces: fasces
figo, 3, fixi, fixum: to fix, fasten, drive in
quasi: as if, like, as
embolum, 2, Greek: (ship's) beak, ornament (on the prow of a ship)

2. conor, 1: endeavor, 25, a

paulisper: a little (while)
trepido, 1: to hesitate, fear, be anxious
limen, -minis, n: threshold

3. ceterum: for the rest, besides, but
ut: as, in the moment as, just as
pariter (fr. par, -is, equal): in like manner, together
[gressus, 4: step] (28, a
despolio, 1: to strip

1. We already reached the triclinium, in the lobby of which the steward was receiving accounts.
And what I especially wondered at were fasces with axes, fastened to the door-posts of the triclinium; (they were) finished off (at) one end (by a sort of) bronze figurehead of a ship on which was written: TO TRIMALCHIO, PRIEST OF THE AUGUSTAN COLLEGE — CINNAMUS, THE STEWARD.

finio, 4: to finish (off), enclose
aeneus, 3 (fr. aes, -is, n, copper): brazen, 49, s
sevir, 2, m: sevir, (a priest of a sodality of six men)
Trimalchio, -nis: Trimalchio
Augustalis, 2: Augustan, 49, r
repleo, 2, -plevi, -pletum: to fill up, 83

2. When filled with these delights, we endeavored to enter the triclinium, one of the slave boys who was charged with this duty, cried out: "Right foot first."

Of course, for a little while we were anxious lest any one of us should cross the threshold against the regulation.

3. But (just) as we all were in like manner lifting our right feet, a slave, stripped of his garment, fell

vestis, -is, f: clothes, garment, 90
procumbo, 3, -cubui, -cubitum: to fall prostrate, 79

SATYRICON.

gare coepit, ut *se* poenae eriperemus: nec magnum esse peccatum suum, propter quod periclitaretur; subducta enim sibi vestimenta dispensatoris in balneo, quae vix fuissent decem sestertiorum.

4. Retulimus ergo dextros pedes dispensatoremque in atrio aureos numerantem deprecati sumus, ut servo remitteret poenam.

Superbus *ille* sustulit vultum et: "Non tam jactura me movet," inquit, "quam negligentia nequissimi servi. Vestimenta mea cubitoria perdidit, quae mihi natali meo cliens quidam donavit, Tyria sine dubio, sed jam semel lota. Quid ergo *est*? Dono vobis eum."

5. Tandem *ergo* discubuimus pueris Alexandrinis aquam in manus nivatam infudentibus aliisque insequentibus ad pedes ac paronychia *cum* ingenti subtilitate tollentibus.

gare coepit, ut *eum* poenae eriperemus: nec magnum esse *ait* peccatum suum, propter quod periclitaretur; subducta enim sibi vestimenta dispensatoris in balneo, quae vix fuissent decem sestertiorum.

4. Retulimus ergo dextros pedes dispensatoremque in atrio aureos numerantem deprecati sumus, ut servo remitteret poenam.

Superbus *is* sustulit vultum et: "Non tam jactura me movet," inquit, "quam negligentia nequissimi servi. Vestimenta mea cubitoria perdidit, quae mihi natali meo cliens quidam donavit, Tyria sine dubio, sed jam semel lota. Quid ergo *faciam*? Dono vobis eum."

5. Tandem discubuimus pueris Alexandrinis aquam in manus nivatam infudentibus aliisque insequentibus ad pedes ac paronychia ingenti subtilitate tollentibus.

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

eripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum: *to tear away, free, 79*
 periclitator, 1: *be in danger, be imperilled*
 subduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to lead away secretly, steal, 79; 57, 4*
 dispensator, -is, m: *steward, treasurer*
 vestimentum, 2 (fr. vestio, 4, clothe): *clothing, 49, c*
 balneum, 2: *bath*
 vix: *scarcely, fuissent, 133, a*
 semis, indecl.: *half, 16, c; semis tertius, or sestertius, 2, signed II et S (emis), or S written over*

4. refero, 3, -tuli, -latum: *to carry or take back, atrium, 2: open hall (43, 8 aureus (nummus), 2: golden (coin), 49, s numero, 1: to count (de)precor, 1: to beg, ask, pray remitto, 3, -misi, -missum alicui aliquid: send back, relieve, remit, 124, a tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: to lift up, raise, remove vultus, 4: look, mien, face jactura, 1: throwing, loss nequam, indecl.: worthless, wicked, 16, c cubitorius, 3: lying down in (at table or in bed) vestis cubitoria: dinner dress, pajamas perdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to lose*

5. discumbo, 3, -cubui, -cubitum: *recline at table nivatus, 3 (fr. nix, nivis, f, snow): cooled with snow, 49, l infundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: to pour in or on, 114, a insequor, 3, -cutum: to follow on paronychium, 2, Greek: hangnail ingens, -ntis, : immense, great subtilitas, -tis, f: subtlety, minuteness, exactness*

TRANSLATION

at our feet and began to ask us to free him from his punishment, and said that the fault for which he was imperilled was not great, viz., that the steward's clothes, scarcely worth ten sesterces, were stolen from him in the bath.

II, thus \$, two and a half of a Roman as: sesterce, the standard Roman silver coin (like a dime), 67, d

4. Therefore, we drew back our right feet and asked the steward, who was counting gold pieces in the hall, to cancel the punishment of the slave.

He looked up haughtily: "It is not the loss," said he, "which I mind, but the carelessness of this scoundrel; he lost my dinner dress which one of my clients gave me on my birthday. It was doubtless a Tyrian one, though washed once already. But what shall I do? I give him to you."

natalis, -is, m (fr. natus, 3, born): birthday, 49, r; 95 Tyrius, 3 (fr. Tyrus): of Tyre, Tyrian, 49, z lavo, 1, lavi, lavatum or lotum: to wash

5. At last we reclined at table, while boys from Alexandria poured on our hands water cooled with snow; and others followed to our feet, with great skill removing our hangnails.

Even in this task, (naturally) so annoying, they were not silent, but sang during their work.

SATYRICON.

Ac ne in hoc quidem tam molesto tacebant officio, sed obiter cantabant. Ego experiri volui, an tota familia cantaret, itaque potionem poposci. Paratissimus puer non minus me *acido* cantico excepit, et quisquis aliquid rogatus, ut daret. Pantomimorum chorum, non patrisfamiliae triclinium crederes.

6. Allata est *tamen* gustatio valde lauta; nam jam omnes discubuerant praeter ipsum Trimalchionem, cui locus novo more primus servabatur. *Ceterum* in promulsidari asellus erat Corinthius cum bisaccio positus, qui habebat olivas in altera parte albas, in altera nigras.

Tegebant asellum duae lances, in quarum marginibus nomen Trimalchionis inscriptum erat et argenti pondus. Ponticuli *etiam* ferruminati sustinebant glires melle et papavere sparsos.

Ac ne in hoc quidem tam molesto tacebant officio, sed obiter cantabant.

Ego experiri volui, an tota familia cantaret, itaque potionem poposci. Paratissimus puer non minus me *acri* excepit cantico, et quisquis aliquid rogatus, ut daret. Pantomimorum chorum, non patrisfamiliae triclinium crederes.

6. Allata est *mox* gustatio valde lauta; nam jam omnes discubuerant praeter Trimalchionem ipsum, cui locus novo more primus servabatur.

Inter cetera in promulsidari asellus *aeneus* erat Corinthius cum bisaccio positus, qui habebat olivas in altera parte albas, in altera nigras.

Tegebant asellum *et* duae lances, in quarum marginibus nomen Trimalchionis inscriptum erat *et* argenti pondus. *Ubi* ponticuli *ad lances* ferruminati glires melle et papavere sustinebant sparsos.

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

ne - quidem: *not even*
 molestus, 3: *burdensome, annoying*
 obiter: *in passing, by the way, during the work*
 canto, 1: *to sing, chant*
 experior, 4, expertum: *to find out, 57, 3*
 potio, -nis, f: *a drink*
 posco, 3, poposci, -, : *to demand, ask, 60*
 paratus, 3: *ready, prompt*
 [acidus, 3: *sour*]; acer, acris, acre: *sharp, shrill, 88*
 excipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to except, catch, welcome, follow one's order*
 quisquis, 2: *whoever, all of them, 30, i*
 rogo, 1: *ask, 60*

6. affero, 3, attuli, allatum: *to bring, serve, 43, 8*
 gustatio, -nis, f: *relish, appetizer*
 lautus, 3: *splendid, grand, sumptuous, delicious*
 promulsidare, -ris, n: *tray (fr. promulsis, -sidis, f, appetizer), 22, f*
 asellus, 2 (fr. asinus, 2: *donkey*): *little donkey, 49, p*
 aeneus, 3: *brazen*
 Corinthius, 3 (fr. Corinthus, 2): *of Corinth*
 bisaccium, 2: *double knap-sack*
 oliva, 1: *olive, olive tree*
 tego, 3, -exi, -ectum: *to cover, lie on*
 lanx, -ncis, f: *dish, 22, c*
 margo, -ginis, m: *border, edge, brim, 23, IIa*
 pondus, -deris, n: *weight, 23, III*
 ponticulus, 2 (fr. pons, -tis, m: *bridge*): *little bridge, etiam: moreover (49, p*
 ferrumino, 1: *to solder, cement*
 glis, -iris, m: *dormouse, 23, I*

TRANSLATION

I wanted to find out whether the whole family sang, and so I asked for a drink; promptly a slave boy with a shrill chant followed my order none the less, and all of them (did so, when they were) asked to do anything. You would think (it) a theatrical chorus and not the dining room of a landed proprietor.

do, 1: *give, serve, 124, a*
 pantomimus, 2: *actor in pantomime*
 chorus, 2: *choral dance, choir, chorus, 57, 4*
 paterfamilias, 1: *host, landed proprietor, 19, c*

6. *Soon a very delicious appetizer was brought in; for every one had reclined except Trimalchio, for whom the first place was reserved according to the new style.*

Among other things there was placed (before us) on a tray a brazen donkey of Corinth with a double knap-sack, which held white olives on one side, and black (ones) on the other.

On the little donkey there were two dishes, on the edges of which Trimalchio's name and the weight of silver was engraved. And here, little bridges, soldered to the dishes, held dormice covered with honey and poppy.

mel, mellis, n: *honey, 23, III; 88*
 papaver, -eris, n: *poppy, 23 Ib; 88*
 sustineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: *to sustain, hold*
 spargo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: *to spread, sprinkle*

SATYRICON.

Fuerunt et tomacula super craticulam argenteam ferventia posita, et infra craticulam Syriaca pruna cum granis Punici mali. (C. 30.)

7. In his eramus lautitiis, cum ipse Trimalchio ad symphoniam allatus est positusque inter cervicalia minutissima expressit imprudentibus risum.

Interim gustantibus adhuc nobis repositorium allatum est cum corbe, in qua gallina erat lignea patentibus in orbem alis, quales esse solent, quae incubant ova.

Accesere continuo duo servi et symphonia strepente scrutari paleam coeperunt erutaque subinde pavonia ova divisere convivis. (C. 32.)

8. Convertit ad hanc scaenam Trimalchio vultum et: "Amici," ait, "pavonis ova gallinae jussi supponi.

Fuerunt et tomacula ferventia super craticulam argenteam posita, et infra craticulam Syriaca pruna cum granis Punici mali.

7. In his eramus lautitiis, cum Trimalchio ipse ad symphoniam allatus demissusque inepte inter cervicalia minutissima expressit imperitis risum.

Interim gustantibus adhuc nobis allatum est repositorium cum corbe, in qua gallina erat lignea patentibus in orbem alis, quales esse solent, quae incubant ova.

Accesserunt continuo duo servi et symphonia strepente scrutari paleam sub gallina coeperunt erutaque subinde pavonia ova dividerunt convivis.

8. Convertit ad hanc scaenam Trimalchio vultum et: "Amici," inquit, "pavonis ova gallinae jussi sup-

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

tomaculum, 2: *sausage (finest)*
 fervens, -ntis (fr. *ferveo, seethe*): *hot*, 26, a
 craticula, 1 (fr. *crates, -tis, f, grate*): *grill*
 infra: *below*, 50, a
 Syriacus, (fr. *Syria*): *Syrian*
 prunus, 2, f: *plum tree*; prunum, 2: *plum*, 16, b
 granum, 2: *grain, seed*

7. lautitia, 1: *splendor, elegance, delicacy*
 symphonia, 1: *music*; ad symphoniam: *to the sound of music*

demitto, 3, -misi, -issum: *to send or put down, drop*
 ineptus, 3: *awkward, clumsy*, 28, a
 imperitus, 3: *unskilled*, 49, A1; 66, b
 risus, 4: *smile, scorn*

cervical, -is, n (fr. *cervix, -cis, f (nape of the) neck: cushion, pillow (for the head)*). 49, r; 22, b
 minutus, 3: *small, minute (fr. minuo, 2, -ui, -utum, to lessen, 27, a)*

gusto, 1: *to taste, relish*, 114, a
 repositorium, 2 (fr. *repono, 3, -osui, -situm, to place back*): *tray*, 49, g

corbis, -is, f; corbula, 49, p: *basket*
 gallus, 2, et gallina, 1: *rooster, and hen*
 lignum: *wood*; ligneus, 3: *wooden*, 49, s
 pateo, 2, -ui, -, : *to be open*, 86
 soleo, 2, solitum: *to be used to, accustomed*, 31, d
 incubo, 1: *to brood, incubate, hatch*
 ovum, 2: *egg*

accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to step forth*, 32, d
 continuo, : *right away, at once*

8. jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: *to order*, 57, b

TRANSLATION

There were also hot sausages laid on a silver grill, and under the grill Syrian plums with seeds of pomegranate.

mālus, 2, f: *apple tree*, 16, b; mālum, 2: *apple*; mālum punicum: *pomegranate*; mālus, 2, m: *mast*; mālus, 3, bad; mālum, 2: *evil*

7. We were in the midst of these delicacies, when Trimalchio himself being carried in to the sound of music and put clumsily on very tiny pillows, expressed his scorn for his awkward (carriers).

In the meanwhile we were still eating daintily, when a tray was brought in with a basket on it, in which there was a wooden hen with her wings spread out such as they are wont to do, when they hatch their eggs.

Two slaves stepped forth at once, and to the sound of the music began to search the chaff under the hen, and having taken out peahen's eggs, they distributed (them) to the guests.

strepo, 3, -pui, -pitem: *to clash, make noise, sound*,
 scrutator, 1: *to search*, 35, f (114, a)
 palea, 1: *chaff*

eruo, 3, -ui, -utum: *to dig, pluck, tear or take out*
 subinde: *thence*

pavonius, 3 (fr. *pavo, -onis, m, peacock, peahen*):
of peacock, peahen, 49, v

divido, 3, -isi, -isum: *to divide, distribute*, 32, d
 conviva, 1, c: *guest*

8. Trimalchio turned his face toward this display. "Friends," said he, "I ordered peahen's eggs to be (put

SATYRICON.

Et, me Hercules, timeo ne jam concepta sint; temptemus tamen, si adhuc sorbilia sunt."

Accipimus nos cochlearia non minus selibras pendentia ovaque ex farina pingui figurata pertundimus.

Ego quidem paene projecì partem meam, nam videbatur mihi jam in pullum coisse. Deinde ut audivi veterem convivam: "Hic nescio, quid boni debet esse," persecutus putamen manu pinguisssimam ficedulam inveni piperato vitello circumdatam. (C. 33.)

9. Inter tumultum cum forte paropsis excidisset et puer jacentem sustulisset, animadvertit Trimalchio colaphisque objurgari puerum ac projicere rursus paropsidem jussit.

Insecutus est supellecticarius argentumque inter reliqua purgamenta scopis coepit everrere. Subinde

poni. Et, me Hercules, timeo ne jam concepta sint; temptemus tamen; forte sorbilia adhuc sunt."

Accipimus ergo cochlearia non minus selibras pendentia ovaque ex farina pinguique figurata pertundimus.

Ego paene projecì meum, nam videbatur mihi jam in pullum coisse. Ast ut audivi veterem convivam: "Huic nescio, quid boni necesse insit," manu persecutus putamen pinguisssimam ficedulam inveni piperato vitello circumdatam.

9. Inter tumultum cum forte paropsis excidisset et puer jacentem sustulisset, animadvertit Trimalchio colaphisque objurgari puerum ac projicere rursus paropsidem jussit.

Insecutus est analecta argentumque inter reliqua purgamenta scopis everrebat. Subinde intraverunt

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

concipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to conceive, 40
tempto, or tento, 1: to touch, try, test, attempt, 106
sorbilis, 2 (fr. sorbeo, 2, -bui, -, to suck up): something to suck, 49, i

adhuc: still, yet

cochlear, -ris, n: spoon, 22, f

selibra, 1: half a pound

pendo, 2, pependi, pensum: to weigh, (transitive farina, 1: flour (and intransitive)

pinguis, 2: fat; in neuter: lard

figuro, 1 (fr. figura): to form, 49, t

pertundo, 3, -tudi, -tusum: to break through, per-paene: almost (forate

pullus, 2: young animal, chicken

coëo, 4, -ivi, -itum: to go together, 42, 3

vetus, -teris: old, 26, a

persequor, 3, -secutum: pursue, find; manu, 93, a

putamen, -minis, n (fr. puto, 1, to cut, think): cutting, shell, 49, e

9. tumultus, 4: riot, trouble, bustle, bustling serv-paropsis, -sidis, f: (dessert) dish (ice, rush

excido, 3, -cidi, -: to fall

jaceo, 2, jacui, -citur: to lie, be on the ground

colaphus, 2: box on the ear, 88

objurgo, 1: to scold, chide, chastise, 57, b

projicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to throw down, 57, b

rursus: again

insequor, 3, -cutum: follow

[supellecticarius, 2: one charged with order in rooms]

analecta, 1, c, Greek, or in Latin scoparius, 2 (fr. scopae, -arum, broom): one charged with the (sweeping, valet, 49, m

TRANSLATION

under the hen, and by Hercules; I am afraid that they are somewhat hatched by now. Yet let us try, maybe they are fit to suck."

Accordingly we took our spoons, (each) a half pound in weight at least, and broke the eggs formed of flour and lard.

I almost threw mine away, as it seemed to me to be turned into a chicken by now, but hearing an experienced diner say: "I don't know, but there should be something good in here," (I) broke its shell with my finger (and) I found a fat beccafico, surrounded with peppered yolk.

ficedula, 1: beccafico (small bird)

piperatus, 3 (fr. piper, -is, m, pepper): peppered, 49, l
vitellus, 2 (fr. vitulus, 2, calf): little calf, yolk

(of an egg), 49, p

circumdo, 1, -dedi, -datum: to surround, 82

9. When, in the bustle, a silver dish accidentally fell down and the slave boy picked it up from the floor, Trimalchio noticed (it) and ordered the boy to be chastised by having his ears boxed, and to throw the dish down again. Then a chamberman stepped forth and with his broom swept the silver (dish) into the other rubbish.

argentum, 2: silver

purgamentum, 2 (fr. purgo, to clean): sweepings, reliquus, 3: the other (rubbish, filth, 49, e

everro, 3, everri, -rsum: to sweep out

subinde: immediately, upon the instant

SATYRICON.

intraverunt duo Aethiopes vinumque *dedere in manus*; aquam enim nemo porrexit.

10. Laudatus propter elegantias dominus: "Aequum," inquit, "Mars amat."

Statim allatae sunt amphorae vitreae diligenter gypsatae, quarum in cervicibus pittacia erant affixa cum titulo: FALERNUM OPIMIANUM ANNO-RUM CENTUM. (C. 34)

11. "Sophos!" universi clamamus et sublatis ad *cameram* manibus juramus Hipparchum Aratumque comparandos *illi homines non fuisse; donec* advenerunt ministri ac toralia praeposuerunt toris, in quibus retia erant picta subsessorisque cum venabulis et totus venationis apparatus.

Nec sciebamus, quo mitteremus suspiciones nostras, cum extra triclinium clamor sublatus est in-

duo Aethiopes vinumque *ad lavandas fuderunt manus*; aquam enim nemo porrexit.

10. Laudatus propter elegantias dominus: "Aequum," inquit, "Mars amat."

Statim allatae sunt amphorae vitreae diligenter gypsatae, quarum in cervicibus pittacia erant affixa cum titulo: FALERNUM OPIMIANUM ANNO-RUM CENTUM.

11. "Sophos!" universi clamamus et sublatis ad *laquearia* manibus juramus *nec Hipparchum nec Aratum* comparandos *ei esse; interim* advenerunt ministri ac toralia praeposuerunt toris, in quibus retia erant picta subsessorisque cum venabulis et totus venationis apparatus.

Nec sciebamus, quo mitteremus suspiciones nostras, cum extra triclinium clamor sublatus est in-

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

Aethiops, -pis, c: *black man, negro, Ethiopian*
lavo, 1, lavi, lotum: *to wash*, 118, a
fundo, 3, fudi, fustum: *to pour*
porrigo, 3, -rexi, -ctum: *to reach, offer*

10. dominus: *host*
elegantia, 1: *refinement, elegance*
aequus, 3: *equal, fair*
Mars, -rtis, m: *Mars, the god of war*
amphora, 1: *two-handed vase, pitcher*
vitreus, 3 (fr. vitrum, 1, glass): *of glass*, 49, s
gypso, 1: *to plaster (to close with gypsum)*
cervix, -icis, f: *nape of the neck, neck*
pittacium, 2: *label*
Falernus, 3: *of Falerii, city in Etruria, Falernian (wine)*, 26, f

11. sophos, 3, *Greek, in Latin sapiens*, -ntis: *wise*
universus, 3: *whole, entire; in pl.: all together*
[camera, 1: *vault*]; laquear, -is, n: *ceiling (flat)*, 22, f
juro, 1: *to swear*
Hipparchus, 2; Aratus, 2, *Greek authors*
[donec *while*]; interim: *in the meanwhile*
advenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to come to, arrive*
toral, -is, n (fr. torus, 2, couch): *coverlet*, 49, r; 22, f
praepono, 3, -posui, -positum: *to put before, adapt*,
rete, -tis, n: *net, hunting net* (79)
pingo, 3, -nxi, -pictum: *to paint*
subsessor, -is, m (fr. subsido, 3, -sedi, -sessum, sit,
settle down): *man lying in wait*, 49, a
venabulum, 2: *hunting spear*
venatio, -is, f (fr. venor, 1, hunt): *hunting, chase*,

TRANSLATION

(Then) immediately entered two Ethiopians and poured wine to wash our hands, for no one offered us water.

10. (Now, when) the host was praised for his elegancies, he said: "Mars likes what is fair." Then there were brought in glass pitchers, carefully sealed with gypsum; to the necks of which labels were affixed with the inscription: FALERNIAN OF OPIMIUS' VINTAGE, A HUNDRED YEARS OLD.

affigo, 3, -fixi, -xum: *to fasten, affix*
Opimianus, 3: *of the vintage of Lucius Opimius, the consul, 121 B.C.*

11. "Sophos," we all shout and swear, with our hands lifted up to the ceiling, that neither Hipparchus nor Aratus were to be compared with him; in the meanwhile servants came and draped on the couches coverlets, on which were painted nets and men lying in wait with hunting spears and all the equipment of the chase.

We did not know what to expect, when a great shout arose outside the dining room, and behold,

49, a; 49, b
apparatus, 4: *equipment*
suspicio, -nis, f (fr. suspicio, 3, -exi, -ctum, to suspect): *suspicion, inkling, expectation*, 49, a
ingens, -tis: *great*

SATYRICON.

gens, et ecce canes Laconici etiam circa mensam discurrere coeperunt.

Secutum est hos repositorium, in quo positus erat primae magnitudinis aper, et quidem pileatus, e cuius dentibus sportellae dependebant duae palmulis textae, altera caryotis altera Thebaicis repleta. Circa autem minores porcelli ex coptoplacentis facti, quasi uberibus imminerent, scrofam positam significabant. Et hi quidem apophoreti fuerunt.

12. *Ceterum* ad scindendum aprum non ille carpus accessit, qui altilia laceraverat, sed barbatus ingens fasciis crualibus *alligatus* et alicula subornatus polymita, strictoque venatorio cultro latus apri vehementer percussit, ex cuius plaga turdi evolaverunt.

Parati aucupes cum harundinibus fuerunt et eos circa triclinium volitantes momento exceperunt.

gens, et ecce canes Laconici etiam circa mensam discurrere coeperunt.

Secutum est hos repositorium, in quo positus erat primae magnitudinis aper, et quidem pileatus, e cuius dentibus sportellae dependebant duae palmulis textae, altera caryotis altera Thebaicis repleta. Circa autem minores porcelli ex coptoplacentis facti, quasi uberibus imminentes scrofam positam significabant. Et hi quidem apophoreti fuerunt.

12. *At vero* ad scindendum aprum non ille carpus accessit, qui altilia laceraverat, sed barbatus ingens fasciis crualibus *ligatus* et alicula subornatus polymita, strictoque venatorio cultro latus apri vehementer percussit, ex cuius plaga turdi evolaverunt.

Parati aucupes cum harundinibus *adfuerunt* et eos circa triclinium volitantes momento exceperunt.

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

canis, -is, c: *dog, hound*, 22, b
 Laconicus, 3: *Spartan*
 discurro, 3, -rri, -rsum: *to run every way, to and fro*, 35, f
 magnitudo, -dinis, f: *greatness, size*
 aper, 2, *gen. apri: wild boar*
 pileatus, 3 (*fr. pileus, 2, hat*): *wearing a hat (as citizen), with a hat on*, 49, l
 dens, -tis, m: *tooth, tusk*, 23, II
 sportella, 1 (*fr. sporta, basket*): *little basket*, 49, s
 dependeo, 2, -ndi, -: *to hang down*
 palmula, 1 (*fr. palma, 1, palm tree*): *little palm*,
 texo, 3, texui, textum: *to weave* (*date*, 49, p; 78)
 caryota, 1: *Syrian date*, 83
 Thebaicus, 3: *Theban*
 repleo, 2, -plevi, -etum: *to fill up*
 circa, *adv.*: *around*, 50, a

12. carpus, 2: *carver*
 altilis, 2: *fattened*; altiles, altilia, -ium: *fowls*
 lacerō, 1: *to tear to pieces, mangle*
 scindo, 3, -idi, -issum: *to tear, cleave, divide*, 118, a
 barbatus, 3 (*fr. barba, 1, beard*): *bearded*, 49, l
 fascia, 1: *band, bandage*, 88
 cruralis, 2 (*fr. crus, -uris, n, shin (-bone), leg*): *of leg*, 1: *to tie, bind* (*the leg*, 49, r)
 alicula, 1 (*fr. ala, 1, wing*): *little wing, cape, short*
 suborno, 1: *to equip* (*cloak*, 49, p; 88)
 polymitus, 3 (*Greek*): *gaudy, variegated*
 stringo, 3, -nxi, -ictum: *to draw, unsheathe*, 114, b, c
 venatorius, 3 (*fr. venor, 1, hunt*): *of hunting*, 49, m
 culter, -tri, 2: *knife*
 latus, -teris, n: *side*
 percutio, 3, -cussi, -ssum: *to strike*
 plaga, 1: *region, plague, wound*, 90
 turdus, 2: *thrush*

TRANSLATION

Spartan hounds began to run even round the table. A tray followed them, on which was lying a boar of the largest size, with a citizen hat on, and two woven date baskets, one full of Syrian, the other of Theban dates, were hanging from its tusks. And around it there (were) lying small pigs, made of Grecian cake, as if watching for the teats, — they represented a lying sow. And these were to be taken along (by the guests).

porcellus, 2 (*fr. porcus, 2, pig*): *little pig*, 49, p
 coptoplacenta, 1, *Greek*: *fine cake*, 92
 uber, -is, n: *udder, teat*, 23 Ib
 immineo, 2, -, -: *to overhang, look or watch for*, 79
 scrofa, 1: *sow*
 apophoretus, 3, *Greek, in Latin auferendus*, 3: *to be taken along (by the guests as a gift)*

12. *However, to divide the boar the carver who carved the fowls did not come, but a big bearded man, with bands wound around his legs, equipped with a short gaudy cloak, and having unsheathed his hunting knife, he vehemently struck the side of the boar, and a number of thrushes flew out of the gash.*

Fowlers were ready with (limed) reeds and they caught them in a moment, as they fluttered around the dining room.

evolo, 1: *to fly out*
 paro, 1: *to prepare, make ready*
 aucups, -cupis, m: *fowler*
 (h)arundo, -dinis, f: *reed*, 23, II
 momentum, 2: *moment*, 95
 excipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to catch*
 volito, 1 (*fr. volo, 1, to fly*): *to flutter*, 49, j

SATYRICON.

13. Dum haec loquimur, puer speciosus, vitibus hederisque redimitus, modo Bromium, interdum Lyaeum Euhiumque confessus, calathisco uvas circumtulit et poemata domini sui acutissima voce traduxit. Ad quem sonum conversus Trimalchio: "Dionyse, inquit, liber esto." Puer detraxit pileum apro capiti- que suo imposuit. ----- (C. 40)

14. Dum Eumolpus cum Bargate in secreto loquitur, intrat stabulum praeco cum servo publico aliaque sane modica frequentia, facemque fumosam magis quam lucidam quassans haec proclamavit: "Puer in balneo paulo ante aberravit, annorum circa sedecim, crispus, mollis, formosus, nomine Giton. Si quis eum reddere aut commonstrare voluerit, accipiet nummos mille."

13. Dum haec loquimur, puer speciosus, vitibus hederisque redimitus, modo Bromium, interdum Lyaeum Euhiumque confessus, *in* calathisco uvas circumtulit et poemata *mox* domini sui acutissima voce produxit. Ad quem sonum conversus Trimalchio: "Dionyse," inquit, "liber es." Puer detraxit pileum apro capiti- que suo imposuit. -----

14. Dum Eumolpus cum Bargate in secreto loquitur, intrat stabulum praeco cum servo publico aliaque sane modica frequentia, facemque fumosam magis quam lucidam quassans haec proclamavit: "Puer in balneo paulo ante aberravit, annorum circa sedecim, crispus, mollis, formosus, nomine Giton. Si quis eum reddiderit aut commonstraverit, accipiet nummos mille."

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

13. speciosus, 3: *beautiful*
vitis, -is, f: *vine, (vine leaves)*, 88
hedera, 1: *ivy*, 88
redimio, 4: *to tie round, wreath, crown*
Bromius, Lyaeus, Euhius, the noisy, the drunken, the pitiable; surnames of Bacchus
confiteor, 2, -fessum: *to confess, produce, impersonate* (basket
calathiscus, 2, Greek (fr. calathus, 2, basket): *little*
modo - interdum - mox: *now - then - and then*
uva, 1: *grape*
circumfero, 3, -tuli, -latum: *to carry or pass around*
poema, -atis, n, Greek: *poem, verse*
acutus, 3: *sharp, shrill*, 17, a; 88
produco, 3, -dixi, -ductum: *to produce, recite*

14. Eumolpus, 2; Bagates, 3; Asclytus, Greek secretus, 2: *secret*. (names
intro, 1: *enter*
stabulum, 2: *stable, inn*
praeco, -nis, m: *crier, herald*
publicus, 3: *public, official*
sane: *quite*
modicus, 2: *small*
frequentia, 1: *crowd*
fax, facis, f: *torch*
fumosus, 3, (fr. fumus, 2, smoke): *smoky, smoke-giving*, 49, t
lucidus, 3, (fr. lux, -cis, f, light): *light-giving*, 49, t
quasso, 1 (fr. quatio, 3, shake): *shake violently*, 49, j
aberro, 1: *to be lost*
balneum, 2: *public bath*
paulus, 3: *little, small, short*, 95
sedecim: *sixteen*, 29, a

Page one hundred and sixty eight

TRANSLATION

13. *As we were speaking, a beautiful boy crowned with vine and ivy leaves, impersonating Bacchus, now the Noisy, now the Drunken, now the Pitiable, passed grapes around in a little basket, and then recited the poems of his master with a very shrill voice. Trimalchio turned toward that voice and said: "Dionysius, you are free." The boy took the citizen hat from the boar and put it on his own head. -----*

sonus, 2: *sound*
converto, 3, -rti, -rsum, transitive: *to turn*
liber, -era, -erum: *free*
detraho, 3, -traxi, -ctum: *to draw or take down*, 79
impono, 3, -posui, -situm: *to put in or on*, 79

14. *While Eumolpus is speaking privately with Bagates, a herald with a public servant and a rather small crowd enters the inn and shaking a torch (that gives off) more smoke than light, proclaims as follows: "A short time ago a boy, Giton by name, about sixteen years old, with curly hair, well fed and beautiful was lost in the public baths. Anyone who returns him or points him out will receive a thousand silver coins.*

crispus, 3: *curly*
mollis, 2: *soft, fattish*
formosus, 3 (fr. forma, form): *beautifully formed*, 49, t
Giton, -is, a Greek name; [Gitona, Greek acc.]
commonstro, 1: *to show fully, indicate*
nummus, 2: *silver coin, sesterce*
mille: *thousand*, 29, i

SATYRICON.

15. Imperavi Gitoni, ut raptim grabbatum subiret annexereturque pedes et manus institis, quibus sponda culcitam ferebat, ac sic ut olim Ulixes Cyclopi arietem adhaesisset, extentus infra grabbatum scrutantium eluderet manus.

16. Eumolpus autem, quia effractum ostium cellae neminem poterat excludere, irrumpit perturbatus et: "Mille, inquit, nummos inveni; jam enim persequar abeuntem praeconem et in potestate tua esse Gitonem meritissima prodicione monstrabo."

Genua ego perseverantis amplector, ne morientes vellet occidere, et: "Merito, inquam, excandesceres, si posses perditum ostendere. Nunc inter turbam fugit, nec, quo abierit, suspicari possum. Per fidem, Eumolpe, reduc puerum et vel Asclyto redde."

15. Protinus imperavi Gitoni, ut raptim grabbatum subiret annexereturque pedes et manus institis, quibus sponda culcitam ferebat, ac sic ut olim Ulixes Cyclopi arietem adhaesisset extentus infra grabbatum scrutantium eluderet manus.

16. Eumolpus dein, quia effractum ostium cellae neminem poterat excludere, irrumpit concitatus et: "Mille," inquit, "nummos inveni; confestim enim persequar abeuntem praeconem et in potestate tua esse Gitonem meritissimo indicio monstrabo."

Genua ego perseverantis amplector, ne morientem vellet occidere, et: "Merito," inquam, "excandesceres, si posses perditum ostendere. Nunc enim inter turbam aufugit, nec, quo abierit, suspicari possum. Per fidem, Eumolpe, reduc puerum et vel Asclyto redde."

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

15. protinus, adv.: right away
 impero, 1: to order
 raptim (fr. rapio, 3, -pui, -ptum, to snatch): quickly,
 grabbatus, 2: bed, bedstead (hurriedly, 28, c
 subeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: to undergo, go under, 61, a;
 124, a
 annecto, 3, -nexui, -xum: to connect, hook in
 instita, 1: seam, border, edge
 sponda, 1: webbing, spring (in a bed)
 culcita, 1: mattress
 aries, -etis, m: ram
 Cyclops, -pis, m: Cyclops
 Ulyxes, -is, m: Ulysses

16. effringo, 3, -fregi, -fractum: to break open or
 ostium, 2: entrance, door (off
 excludo, 3, -clusi, -sum: to exclude, keep out
 irrumpo, 3, -rupi, -ruptum: to break or rush in
 [perturbo, 1: to disturb]
 concito, 1: to stir up, excite
 confestim: without delay, immediately
 meritum, 2: merit; merito: deservedly, 88
 indicium, 2: disclosure, evidence, proof, 88
 monstro, 1: to demonstrate
 genu, 4: knee
 persevero, 1: to persist
 amplector, 3, -plexum: embrace
 excandescio, 3, -ndui, -, (fr. candeo): to glow, burn
 with passion, be excited, 49, k; 109, e
 ostendo, 3, -ndi, -sum: to show, 35, f
 turba, 1: crowd
 aufugio, 3, -fugi, -giturus: to run away

TRANSLATION

15. Therefore, I immediately ordered Giton to hurry under the bed and to hook his feet and hands into the frame by which the webbing held up the mattress, and thus stretched out under the bed as Ulysses of old clung to the ram of the Cyclops, to escape the hands of the searchers.

adhaereo, 2, -haesi, -sum: to adhere, stick to, cling,
 extendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: to stretch out (79
 infra, prep.: under, 50, a
 scrutor, 1: to search, 26, a
 eludo, 3, -si, -sum: to ridicule, evade, escape

16. Now, since the broken door could not keep any one out, Eumolpus rushed in all excited and cried out: "I have found a thousand sesterces; for I shall instantly follow the departing crier and with an indubitable proof I shall demonstrate that Giton is in your power."

(He) persisted, and I embraced his knees, lest he should want to kill a dying man, saying: "You might justly be excited if you could show the lost boy. For he ran away in the crowd, and I have not the least idea where he has gone. On my honor, Eumolpus, get the boy back, and even give him to Asclytus."

abeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: to go away, 42, 3; quo: where
 suspicor, 1: to suspect, have an idea of (to, 51, f
 per fidem: upon my honor
 reduco, 3, -duxi, -ctum: to lead back, 34, c
 vel, used with only one word: even, 27, k

SATYRICON.

17. Dum haec ego iam credenti persuadeo, Giton collectione spiritus plenus ter continuo ita sternutavit, ut grabbatum concuteret. Ad quem motum Eumolpus conversus salvere Gitona jubet. Remota enim culcita videt Ulixem, cui vel esuriens Cyclops potuisset parcere.

(C. 97)

17. Dum haec ego jam credenti persuadeo Giton collecto halitu plenus ter continuo ita sternutavit, ut grabbatum concuteret. Ad quem motum Eumolpus conversus salvere Gitonem jubet. Remota enim culcita videt Ulixem, cui vel esuriens Cyclops potuisset parcere.

SATYRICON.

VOCABULARY

17. jam: *already, about*
 credo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to believe*
 persuadeo, 2, -suasi, -sum, alicui aliquid: *to persuade, suggest*
 colligo, 3, -legi, -ectum: *collect, (hold back)*
 [spiritus, 4: *spirit*]
 halitus, 4 (fr. halo, 1, *to breathe*): *breath*
 plenus collecto halitu: *because of holding back his*
 ter: *three times, 29, d* (breath, 83)
 continuo: *in succession*
 sternuto, 1: *to sneeze*
 concutio, 3, -cussi, -ssum: *to shake*
 conversus (fr. converto, 3): *turned around*
 motus, 4: *motion*

TRANSLATION

17. *While I was suggesting this to him (who was) about to believe (me), Giton, because of holding back his breath, sneezed three times in succession so as to shake the bed. At that commotion Eumolpus having turned around, greeted Giton. And after (having) raised up the mattress he saw Ulysses, whom even a hungry Cyclops might have spared.*

salvère jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: *to send greetings to an absent one, to remember one, greet, 101*
 removeo, 2, -movi, -motum: *to remove, raise up, 114, b*
 esurio, 4: *be hungry*
 parco, 3, peperci, parcitum, parsurus: *to spare, pity, 80, j*

THE FOUNDER OF CLEAR, CONCISE, BRIGHT AND ATTRACTIVE DOCTRINAL STYLE

32. LUCIUS ANNAEUS SENECA*

3 A.D. - 65 A.D.

Course 104

The Greatest Roman Philosopher.

Tacitus: "Senecae ingenium amoenum et temporis ejus auribus accomodatum: Seneca's genius was pleasant and adapted to the ears of his time." *Ann. XIII, 3.*

EPISTLE 61

Lucius Annaeus Seneca with greetings to his Lucilius.

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Desinamus, quod volumus, velle. Ego certe *id* ago senex, *ne* eadem velim, quae puer volui. In hoc

1. Desinamus, quod volumus, velle. Ego certe *ita* ago senex, *ut non* eadem velim, quae puer volui. In

EPISTOLA LXI.

Seneca Lucio Suo Salutem.

VOCABULARY

(mittens) salutem: *sending greetings*
 1. desino, 3, -sii, -situm: *to leave off, cease, desist,*
 [id - quod, 131, c] (106)
 ita - ut non, 124, b

TRANSLATION

1. *Let us cease wishing what we have wished. Indeed, as an old man, I live in such a manner as not to wish what I wished as a boy. In this (endeavor)*

* Cf. *The Preface of the GRAMMAR.*

EPISTLE 61

unum eunt dies, in hoc noctes. Hoc opus meum est, haec cogitatio: imponere veteribus malis finem.

2. *Id* ago, ut mihi instar totius vitae dies sit. Nec, me Hercules, tamquam ultimum rapio, sed *illum* aspicio, tamquam esse vel ultimus possit.

3. Hoc animo tibi hanc epistolam scribo, tamquam me *cum* maxime scribentem mors evocatura sit. Paratus exire sum et ideo fruor vita, quia *quam diu* futurum hoc sit, non nimis pendeo.

4. Ante senectutem curavi, ut bene viverem, in senectute, ut bene moriar: bene autem mori est libenter mori.

5. Da operam, ne quid unquam invitus facias. Quidquid *neesse futurum est repugnanti*, volenti *neccessitas non est*.

hoc unum eunt dies, in hoc noctes. Hoc opus meum est, haec cogitatio: imponere veteribus malis finem.

2. *Ita* ago, ut mihi instar totius vitae dies sit. Nec, me Hercules, tamquam ultimum rapio, sed *eum* aspicio, tamquam esse vel ultimus possit.

3. Hoc animo tibi hanc epistolam scribo, tamquam me maxime scribentem mors evocatura sit. Paratus exire sum et ideo fruor vita, quia *quando* futurum hoc sit, non nimis pendeo.

4. Ante senectutem curavi, ut bene viverem, in senectute, ut bene moriar: bene autem mori est libenter mori.

5. Da operam, ne quid unquam invitus facias. Quidquid *injuria est nolenti*, volenti *placitum est*.

EPISTOLA LXI.

VOCABULARY

impono, 3, -posui, -positum: to put on, impose, 79; 55, 4

vetera mala: former wickedness (He was banished from Rome on account of his profligate life)

2. instar, indecl. noun or adj. with gen.: like, as me Hercules, for the colloquial Hercle, 52, d
rapio, 3, rapui, -raptum: to seize, grasp
tamquam: as, like as, as if, 120, c

3. evoco, 1: to call out, 120, c3; exire, 35, g
fruor, 3, fruitum: to enjoy, 93, b
[quamdiu: how long, as long]: quando; when, 132
nimis: too much, overmuch, excessively
pendeo, 2, pependi, -: to hang (over), ponder

4. curo, 1: to take care
libenter (fr. libet, libuit, libitum, it pleases): willingly, with pleasure. (He was forced by Nero, his former pupil, to commit suicide.)

5. operam dare alicui: to take pains with
invitus, 3: unwilling, 56
placitus, 3 (fr. placeo, 2, -cui, -citum, to please): pleasing

TRANSLATION

my days and nights are spent. This is my task, this my thought — to put an end to my former sin(ful life).

2. I so act that (every) day is to me as a whole life. By no means do I consider it as my last day, yet I look at it as if it might be the very last.*

3. With this mind I am writing you this letter, as if death were to call me (while I am) greatly (absorbed in) writing. I am ready to leave life; and therefore I enjoy it, because I do not ponder much upon when the end is to come.

4. Before my old age, I strove to enjoy myself, and in my old age (spurning sensual pleasures) I strive to die well; to die well, of course, means to die willingly.

5. Take pains that you do nothing unwillingly. (For), whatever is disagreeable to an unwilling person, is agreeable to a willing one.

* His sound philosophy was so close to the Christian mentality, and his writings so widely read and so well liked that unintentionally, but very effectively, he prepared the way for Christianity among the Romans. Hence it is that many Christian writers more or less adopted his excellent doctrinal style.

EPISTLE 61

6. *Ita* dico: qui imperia libens excipit, partem acerbissimam servitutis effugit, facere quod nolit. Non, qui jussus aliquid facit, miser est, sed, qui invitus facit.

7. Itaque sic animum componamus, ut, quicquid res exiget, id velimus et *in primis*, ut finem nostri sine tristitia cogitemus. *Ante* ad mortem quam ad vitam praeparandi sumus.

8. Satis instructa vita est, sed nos *in instrumenta* ejus avidi sumus: deesse aliquid nobis videtur et semper videbitur.

9. Ut satis vixerimus, nec anni nec dies faciunt, sed animus. Vixi, Lucili carissime, quantum satis erat: mortem plenus expecto.

Vale.

6. *Ideoque* dico: qui imperia libens excipit, partem acerbissimam servitutis effugit, *quam* facere noluit. Non, qui jussus aliquid facit, miser est, sed, qui invitus facit.

7. Itaque sic animum componamus, ut, *quidquid* res exiget, id velimus et *imprimis*, ut finem nostrum sine tristitia cogitemus. *Magis* ad mortem quam ad vitam praeparandi sumus.

8. Satis instructa vita est, sed nos *instrumentorum* ejus avidi sumus: deesse aliquid nobis videtur et semper videbitur.

9. Ut satis vixerimus, nec anni nec dies faciunt, sed animus. Vixi, Lucili carissime, quantum satis erat: mortem plenus expecto.

Vale.

EPISTOLA LXI.

VOCABULARY

6. [*ita: thus, so*]
ideoque: *on that account, therefore*
imperium, 2 (*fr. impero, 1, to order*): *to order*
excipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to except, receive, 40*
effugio, 3, -fugi, -fugiturus: *to flee, escape, 40*

7. itaque: *and thus, therefore, on that account*
exigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to drive out, exact, require, 120, c2*
(*in primis*), *imprimis: first of all, especially*
nostri, 66, a; 30, a; noster, 3: *our, 30, e*

8. instruo, 3, -uxi, -uctum: *to set up, instruct*
instrumentum, 2 (*fr. instruo*): *tool, means to an end,*
desum, -esse, -fui, -: *to be missing, 41, l (49, e*

9. sat, satis, indecl.: *enough*
plenus, 3: *full, complete, 83; 56*
quantus, 3: *how much, as much as*

TRANSLATION

6. Hence I say, he who receives orders willingly escapes the most galling part of subordination which he was unwilling to bear. Not he who is ordered to do something is miserable, but the one who does it unwillingly.

7. Therefore, let us make up our minds to do willingly whatever our circumstances require, and above all to think of our end without sorrow. We have to be prepared rather to die than to live.

8. Life is sufficiently explained, but we (still) long for its (missing) means (of perfection): something (of divine succour) seems to be wanting (in it), and it will always seem to be wanting to us (pagans).

9. To live long enough depends neither on years, nor on days, but on our minds. I have lived, dear Lucilius, as much as I could wish; fully satisfied, I wait for death. Good-bye.

Non tempero mihi, quin utar interdum temerarie verbis et proprietatis modum excedam. *I do not check myself sometimes from using words daringly or from exceeding the bounds of (literary) propriety.* Seneca, *Nat. Quest.* III, 18, 7

ON ANGER

1. Primus liber, Novate, *benigniore* habuit materiam: facilis enim in proclivia vitiorum decursus est. Nunc ad *exiliora* veniendum est. Quaerimus enim ira utrum *judicio* an *inpetu* incipiat; id est, utrum *sua* sponte *moveatur*, an quemodmodum *ple-raque*, quae intra nos insciis nobis oriuntur.

2. Nam et in corpore nostro ossa nervique et articuli, firmamenta totius et vitalia, minime speciosa visu, prius ordinatur; deinde *haec*, ex quibus omnis in *faciem aspectumque* decor est: post haec omnia, qui maxime oculos rapit, color ultimus perfecto jam corpore affunditur.

3. Iram, quin species oblata injuriae moveat, non est dubium: sed utrum speciem ipsam statim sequatur et non accedente *animo* excurrat, an *illo* assentiente moveatur, quaerimus. Nobis *placet* nihil *illam* per se *audere*, sed *animo* approbante.

1. Primus liber, Novate, *faciliorem* habuit materiam: facilis enim in proclivia vitiorum decursus est. Nunc *autem* ad *subtiliora* veniendum est. Quaerimus enim, utrum *judicio* an *impulsu* ira incipiat; id est, utrum *nostra* sponte *exoriatur*, an quemadmodum pleraque, quae intra nos insciis nobis oriuntur.

2. Nam et in corpore nostro ossa nervique et articuli, firmamenta totius et vitalia, minime visu speciosa prius ordinatur; deinde *ea*, ex quibus omnis in *facie aspectuque* decor est: post haec omnia, qui maxime oculos rapit, color ultimus perfecto jam corpori affunditur.

3. Quin iram species oblatae injuriae moveat, non est dubium: sed utrum speciem ipsam statim sequatur et non *mente* accedente *exoriatur*, an *vero* *hac* assentiente moveatur, quaerimus. Nobis nihil per se *agere* ira *videtur*, sed *mente* approbante.

DE IRA AD NOVATUM.

VOCABULARY

1. proclivis, 2: *sloping downward*
decursus, 4 (*fr.* decurro, 3, -urri, -ursum, *to run down*): *running down*
[exilis, 2: *thin, meagre*]
subtilis, 2: *subtle*
[impetus, 4: *attack*]; impulsus, 4: *impulse*, 88
spons, -ntis, f, *used only in the abl.*: *free will*, 88
inscius, 3: *ignorant*, 67, b; 115

2. nervus, 2: *sinew, tendon, nerve*
articulus, 2: *joint, part*
firmamentum, 2 (*fr.* firmo, 1, *to strengthen*): *prop*,
vitalis, 2 (*fr.* vita, 1, *life*): *vital*, 26, b (*support*)
visus, 4 (*fr.* video, 2, vidi, visum, *to see*): *sight*, 88
aspectus, 4 (*fr.* aspicio, 3, -spexi, -ctum, *to look at*):
sight
decor, -is, m: *elegance, grace, beauty*; corpori, 79

3. ira, 1: *anger*
offero, 3, obtuli, oblatum: *to bring to, produce*
species, 5: *view, look, kind*
injuria, 1: *injury, harm, wrong*
accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to come to, approach*, 114, a
assentio, 4, -sensi, -sensum: *to assent*, 114, a
[excurro, 3, -curri, -cursum: *to run out*]

TRANSLATION

1. *The first book, Novatus, had an easier subject: for the descent on the slope of crime is easy. But now, let us go to more subtle things. We are investigating whether anger takes its rise from our mind, or from our instinct; i.e., whether with our volition, or without our knowledge, in the same way as many (other) things take place in our body.*

2. *For in our body, too, the bones, the tendons, and the joints (which are) the strength and vitality of the whole, but not at all pleasing to the sight, are the first things to be formed; only afterwards those things by which all beauty in face and feature appears; and after all these the color which above all else captivates the eyes, is added to the complete body.*

3. *There is no doubt anger takes rise from the feeling of an inflicted wrong, but we (now) investigate whether it follows the sensation immediately, arising without the cooperation of our mind, or with its assent. To us it seems that anger does nothing by itself, but by the assent of the mind.*

ON ANGER

4. Nam speciem capere acceptae injuriae et ultionem ejus concupiscere et utrumque conjungere nec laedi se debuisse et vindicari debere non est ejus impetus, qui sine voluntate nostra concitatur. Ille simplex est: hic compositus et plura continens. Intellexit aliquid, indignatus est, damnavit, ulciscitur: haec non possunt fieri, nisi animus eius quibus tangebatur assensus est. (Lib. II. 1)

5. Quorsus, inquis, haec quaestio pertinet? Ut sciamus, quid sit ira. Nam si invitis nobis nascitur, numquam rationi succumbet. Omnes enim motus, qui non voluntate nostra fiunt, invicti et inevitabiles sunt, ut horror frigida aspersis, ad quosdam tactus aspernatio: ad peiores nuntios subriguntur pili et rubor ad improba verba suffunditur sequiturque vertigo praerupta cernentis.

6. Quorum quia nihil in nostra potestate est, nulla, quominus fiant, ratio persuadet. Ira praeceptis fugatur: est enim voluntarium animi vitium, non ex

4. Nam speciem percipere illatae injuriae ac ultionem ejus concupiscere et utrumque conjungere nec laedi nos oportuisse et vindicari oportere non est nostri instinctus, qui sine voluntate nostra concitatur. Hic simplex est, ille autem compositus animi motus plura continens. Si quis aliquid mali intellexit, indignatur, damnat, ulciscitur: haec autem non possunt fieri, nisi animus eis, quibus tactus erat, assenserit.

5. Quorsum, inquis, haec quaestio pertinet? Ut sciamus, inquam, quid sit ira. Nam si invitis nobis nascitur, nunquam rationi succumbet. Omnes enim motus, qui non voluntate nostra fiunt, invicti et inevitabiles sunt, ut horror frigida aqua aspersis, vel ad quosdam tactus aspernatio, vel uti ad peiores nuntios subriguntur pili et rubor ad improba verba suffunditur sequiturque vertigo praerupta cernenti.

6. Quorum quia nihil in nostra potestate est, nulla, quominus fiant; ratio persuadere potest. Ira autem praeceptis fugatur: est enim voluntarium vitium, et

DE IRA AD NOVATUM.

VOCABULARY

4. ultio, -nis, f (fr. ulciscor, 3, ultum, to avenge): concupisco, 3, -ivi, -itum: to covet (vengeance)
laedo, 3, laesi, laesum: to hurt, injure, 55, a5
vindico, 1: to claim, liberate, avenge, 55, a5
concito, 1: to stir up, excite
instinctus, 4 (fr. instinguo, 3, -nxi, -nctum, to instigate): instinct, 71
indignor, 1: to be offended, be indignant
tango, 3, tetigi, tactum: to touch

5. quorsum, (quorsus): whither? (79)
succumbo, 3, -cubui, -cubitum: to lie under, fall down,
horror, -is, m (fr. horreo, 2, -ui, -, to shiver): shivering
aspergo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: to sprinkle, 81 (ering)
aspernatio (fr. aspernor, 1, to despise, reject): con-
subrigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: to rise on high (tempt)
improbis, 3: bad, wicked, shameless
suffundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: to suffuse
vertigo, -ginis, f (fr. verto, 3, to turn): dizziness
praeruptus, 3: steep, precipitous, 26, f
cerno, 3, crevi, cretum: to separate, perceive

6. persuadeo, 2, -suasi, -suasum: to persuade
praeceptum, 2 (fr. praecipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum, to command): precept, rule, command, 93, a
fugo, 1: to put to flight, chase (ing)
voluntarius, 3 (fr. voluntas, will): of the will, will-

TRANSLATION

4. For to become cognizant of an inflicted wrong and to wish its revenge, and to join these two, namely the lack of reason for the offense, and the need to be avenged, is not the (work) of our instinct, which becomes aroused without our will. The latter is a simple emotion, but the former is a composite movement of our mind, made up of several (factors.) If someone has perceived some wrong, he takes it amiss, punishes, and avenges; yet this cannot happen unless his mind has reflected on those things by which it has been affected.

5. Where, you ask, does this question lead us? And I answer that we may know what anger is. For if it arises without one's will, it is never subject to the mind. All movements which happen without our will, are uncontrollable and inevitable; such as shivering (when one is) sprinkled with cold water, or a repulsive feeling at some touches, or when at some bad tidings (one's) hair stands on end, or when a blush rises at obscene words, and dizziness overcomes one (when) looking over a precipice.

6. Because none of these lie in our power, no reasoning can prevent them from happening. On the other hand, anger (can be) checked by discipline, because it is a vice of the will, and not one of those

ON ANGER

his, quae conditione quadam humanae sortis eveniunt, ideoque etiam sapientissimis accidunt, inter quae et primus *ille* animi ictus ponendus est, qui nos *post opinionem* injuriae movet.

7. Hic subit etiam inter ludicra scenae spectacula et lectiones rerum vetustarum: saepe Clodio Ciceronem expellenti et Antonio occidenti videmur irasci. Quis non contra Marii arma, contra Sullae proscriptionem concitatur? Quis non Theodoto et Achillae et ipsi puero non puerile auso facinus infestus est?

8. Cantus nonnunquam et citata modulatio instigat; Martiusque *ille* tubarum sonus movet *mentes* et atrox pictura *et* justissimorum suppliciorum tristis aspectus. Id est, *quod* arridemus ridentibus et contristat nos turba maerentium et effervescimus ad aliena certamina: quae non sunt irae, *non magis* quam tristitia est, quae ad conspectum mimici naufragii contrahit frontem;

non ex *his*, quae conditione quadam humanae sortis *inevitabiliter* eveniunt, ideoque etiam sapientissimis accidunt, inter quae et primus animi ictus *iste* ponendus est, qui nos *sensu* injuriae movet.

7. Hic subit etiam inter ludicra scenae spectacula *nec non* et lectiones rerum vetustarum: *sic* saepe Clodio Ciceronem expellenti et Antonio occidenti videmur irasci. Quis non contra Marii arma, *vel* contra Sullae proscriptionem concitatur? Quis non Theodoto et Achillae et ipsi puero non puerile auso facinus infestus est?

8. Cantus nos nonnunquam et citata modulatio instigat; Martiusque tubarum sonus *ipse* movet *animum*, *sicut* et atrox pictura *ac* justissimorum suppliciorum tristis aspectus. Id est, arridemus ridentibus et contristat nos turba maerentium et effervescimus ad aliena certamina: quae *omnia* non sunt irae, *neque plus* quam tristitia, quae ad conspectum mimici naufragii contrahit frontem;

DE IRA.

VOCABULARY

sors, -rtis, f: *lot, fate, fortune*
 evenio, 4, eveni, -ntum; accido, 3, -cidi, -, : *to happen*
 ictus, 4 (fr. ic(i)o, ici, ictum, *to strike*): *blow, hit*

7. subeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to undergo, happen*
 ludicus, 3: *playful, sportive*
 scena or scaena, 1: *stage, scene, theatre*
 spectaculum, 2 (fr. specto, 1): *sight, show, spectacle*
 irascor, 3, iratum: *to be angry*, 80, f (49, f
 Theodotus, 2, *rhetorician, praceptor of Ptolemy XII, responsible for Pompey's murder, hence put to death by Brutus.*
 infestus, 3: *hostile, opposing*
 Achilles, 1, *Egyptian general, the murderer of Pompey*, 19, c

8. modulatio, f (fr. modulator, 1, *to measure*):
 cito, 1: *to cite, recite* (rhythm, melody)
 instigo, 1: *to instigate, stimulate*
 atrox, -ocis: *terrible, fearful*
 supplicium, 2: *capital punishment*
 maereo, 2, -, -: *to be sad or mournful, grieve*
 effervesco, 3, -(b)ui, -: *to boil up, be excited*
 irae, 71; mimicus, 3: *mimic, counterfeit*
 naufragium, 2: *shipwreck*

TRANSLATION

things which inevitably befall (a man) in certain conditions of human life, and hence happen even to the wisest men; among these latter is to be put that first emotion of the soul which affects us at the sense of wrong.

7. *This also happens at theatrical performances, and at the reading of old narratives as well; thus we often seem to be angry with Clodius (for) banishing Cicero, or with Antonius (for) killing him. Who is not aroused against Marius' slaughter or Sulla's proscription? Who is not opposed to Theodotus and Achilles, or even to a boy perpetrating a non-childish villainy?*

8. *Sometimes a chant, and a rhythmical recitation stimulates (us). The war bugle affects our soul, and so does a horrifying painting or the sad spectacle of a capital punishment, even when fully justified. That is to say, we laugh with those (who) laugh, and a crowd of mourners saddens us, and we are excited at games played by others. All these (emotions) are not anger, nor are they more than the sorrow that wrinkles our brow at a pictured shipwreck;*

ON ANGER

9. *non magis* quam timor, qui Hannibale post Cannas moenia circumsidente lectoris percurrit animos: sed omnia ista motus sunt animorum *moveri volentium nec affectus, sed* principia proludentia *affectibus.* (Lib. II, 2)

10. Nihil ex *his*, quae animum fortuito *impellunt*, *adfectus* vocari *debet*: ista, ut ita dicam, patitur animus magis quam *facit*. Ergo *affectus* est non ad oblatas rerum species moveri, sed permittere se *illis* et hunc fortuitum motum prosequi. Nam si quis pallorem et lacrimas procidentis altumve suspirium et *oculos* subito acriores aut quid *his* simile indicium *affectus animique* signum putat, fallitur nec intelligit corporis *hos* esse pulsus. (Lib. II, 3)

9. *neque plus* quam timor, qui Hannibale post Cannas moenia circumsidente lectoris percurrit animus: sed omnia ista sunt motus animi *sentientis et minime actus mentis, ast sunt* principia proludentia *actibus mentis.*

10. Nihil ex *istis*, quae animum fortuito *afficiunt* *mentis actus* vocari *potest*: ista, ut ita dicam, patitur animus magis quam *agit*. Ergo *actus mentis* est non ad oblatas rerum species moveri, sed permittere se *eis* et fortuitum motum prosequi. Nam si quis pallorem et lacrimas procidentis altumve suspirium et *vultum* subito acriorem aut *aliquid istis* simile indicium *actus mentis voluntatisque* signum putat, fallitur nec intelligit corporis *istos* esse *tantum* impulsus.

DE IRA.

VOCABULARY

9. moenia, -ium, n: *city walls, bulwarks*
circumsido, 3, -sedi, -: *to besiege, 114, a*
percurro, 3, -curri, -cursum: *to run over or through*
principium, 2: *beginning*
proludo, 3, -lusi, -lusum: *to prelude, 79*

10. [impello, 3, -pulsi, -pulsum: *to impel*]
afficio, 3, affeci, affectum: *to affect*
fortuitus, 3: *fortuitous, accidental, 28, a*
pallor, -is, m (fr. palleo, 2, *to be pale*): *paleness*
suspirium, 2 (fr. suspiro, 1, *to sigh*): *sigh*
subito, (fr. subitus, 3, *sudden*): *suddenly, 28, a*
acer, -cris, -cre: *sharp, biting, passionate*
indiciu(m), 2 (fr. indico, 1, *to declare*): *mark, sign, token*
fallo, 3, fefelli, falsum: *to fail; fallor: to be mistaken*
[pulsus, 4: *push, stroke*]
impulsus, 4: *impulse*

TRANSLATION

9. *nor are they more than the fear that runs through the soul of a reader, when after Cannae Hannibal is besieging the city walls; but all these (feelings) are movements of the sensitive soul; they are not at all acts of the mind, but preludes to its acts.*

10. *None of these things which affect the soul by chance must be called an act of mind; for the soul, so to say, endures them rather than produces them. Hence, the essence of an act of mind is not the first movement produced by things seen, but the surrendering of the mind to them, and the following up of our instinctive reactions. For, if someone considers the pale ness and the tears of a person (that is) falling, or a deep groan and a suddenly severe face, or other similar reactions to be an evidence of an act of the mind and will, he is mistaken, and does not understand that these (affections) are only impulses of the body.*

33. CAJUS PLINIUS SECUNDUS

23 - 79 A.D.

Course 70

Compiler. His condensed style is crude. His great merit consists in his rich vocabulary.

NATURAL HISTORY

Paper

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Prius tamen quam digrediamur ab Aegypto, et papyri natura dicitur, cum chartae usu maxime humanitas vitae constet et memoria. Et hanc Alexandri Magni victoria repertam auctor est M. Varro, condita in Aegypto Alexandria;

2. antea non fuisse chartarum usum: in palmarum foliis primo scriptitatum: deinde quarundam arborum libris; postea publica monumenta plumbeis voluminibus: mox et privata linteis confici coepta aut ceris. Pugillarium enim usum fuisse etiam ante Trojana tempora invenimus apud Homerum.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Prius tamen quam digrediamur ab Aegypto, et papyri natura dicitur, cum chartae usu maxime humanitas vitae constet et memoria. Et hanc auctor est Marcus Varro condita in Aegypto Alexandria Alexandri Magni victoria esse repertam;

2. neque fuisse antea usum chartarum, sed in palmarum foliis primo scriptitatum, deinde quarundam in arborum libris; postea confici coepta esse publica monumenta in plumbeis laminis, et mox privata in linteis aut in ceris. Pugillarium enim usum fuisse etiam ante Trojana tempora invenimus apud Homerum.

NATURALIS HISTORIA.

De Papyro.

VOCABULARY

1. prius - quam: *before*, 127, b
digredior, 3, -gressum: *to go apart, depart*, 127, b
Aegyptus, 2, f: *Egypt*, 16, b
papyrus, 2: *papyrus plant*, 16, b
papyrum, 2: *paper, writing material*
charta, 1, *Greek: paper, sheet of paper*
humanitas, -tatis, f: *humanity, culture, refinement of education*
consto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to stand still, consist, stand firm*, 57, 4
(Romans
Marcus Varro, 116-28 B.C. *one of the most learned*
condo, 3, condidi, -ditum: *to compose, form, establish*, 114, b

2. folium, 2: *leaf*
scriptito, 1: *to write often, scribble*
quidam, 3: *some*, 31, i
liber, -bri, m: *the inner bark of a tree, book*
conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to accomplish, finish, write*,
coepi, coepisse, coeptum: *to begin, start*, 45, 12 (40
monumentum, 2 (fr. moneo, 2, *to remind*): *memorial built or written, monument, memoirs, annals*
plumbeus, 3 (fr. plumbum, 2, *lead*): *leaden*
volumen, -minis, n: *volume, roll, book*
lamina, 1: *plate, blade*
linteum, 2: *linen, cloth*
cera, 1: *wax; pl.: writing tablets*

TRANSLATION

1. Yet before we leave Egypt, let us speak also about the nature of papyrus, because culture and history depend greatly on the use of paper. Marcus Varro relates that it was invented (to satisfy) the ambition of Alexander the Great, after (?) Alexandria had been founded;

auctor est: *he is the warrant of the truth that*, 57, 4
Alexander, -dri: *Alexander*
victoria, 1 (fr. vinco, 3, vici, victum, *to conquer*):
victory, ambition, 93, a
reperio, 4, re(p)peri, repertum: *to find, discover, invent*

2. nor was paper in use before that time; but people wrote on palm leaves, then on the bark of certain trees; then public acts began to be written on leaden plates, and soon private matters on linen, or wax. For in Homer we find the use of wax tablets, even before the time of Troy.

pugillaris, 2 (fr. pugillus, 2, *hollow of the hand*):
fitting the hollow of the hand; pl.: writing tablets, m, *because libri are understood*
Trojanus, 3 (fr. Troja, 1, *Troy*): *Trojan*
invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to find*

NATURAL HISTORY

Paper

3. Papyrus ergo nascitur in palustribus Aegypti, aut quiescentibus Nili aquis, ubi evagatae stagnant, duo cubita non excedente altitudine gurgitum, brachiali radice obliquae crassitudine, triangulis lateribus, decem non amplius cubitorum longitudine in gracilitatem fastigatum, thyrsi modo cacumen includens semine nullo, aut usu ejus alio, quam floris ad deos coronandos.

4. Radicibus incolae pro ligno utuntur; nec ignis tantum gratia, sed ad alia quoque utensilia vasorum. Ex ipso quidem papyro navigia texunt: et e libro vela, tegetesque, nec non et vestem, etiam stragulam, ac funes. Mandunt quoque crudum, decoctumque, succum tantum devorantes.

3. Caulibus scilicet triangulis papyrus non excedens duobus cubitis altitudinem aquarum, ac brachiali radice obliquae crassitudine, decem non amplius cubitorum altitudine, in gracilitatem fastigata, thyrsi modo cacumen includens, semine nullo, nec usu floris alio quam ad deos coronandas nascitur in palustribus Aegypti et quiescentibus Nili aquis, ubi exundatae stagnant.

4. Radicibus ejus incolae pro ligno non ignis tantum gratia, sed ad varia quoque utensilia vasorum utuntur. Ex ipsa enim papyro navigia texunt; e libro vela, tegetes, nec non et vestem immo etiam stragula ac funes conficiunt. Mandunt quoque crudam decoctamque, pulpam tantum devorantes.

NATURALIS HISTORIA.

De Papyro.

VOCABULARY

3. caulis, -is, m: stalk, 23, I; 86
 scilicet: of course, to wit
 [latus, -teris, n: side]
 triangulus, 3 (fr. tres and angulus, 2, angle): triangular
 excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go out or beyond, ex-cubitus, or -um, 2: elbow, cubit, 85 (ceed
 altitudo, -dinis, f. (fr. altus, 3, deep, high): height, depth
 brachialis, 2 (fr. brachium, 2, arm): of arm, 49, r
 crassitudo, -dinis, f (fr. crassus, 3, thick): thickness, radix, -icis, f: root (49, u; 86
 obliquus, 3: slanting, lying sideways
 decem: ten, 29, a
 amplius, (fr. amplus, 3, large, ample): more, any more, 87
 gracilitas, -tatis, f (fr. gracilis, slender): slenderness
 fastigo, 1: to sharpen to a point, rise upwards
 thyrsus, 2, Greek: panicle, raceme, tuft on a plant
 modus, 2: manner, mood, way, 88
 cacumen, -minis, n: top, summit

4. utensilia, -ium, n: utensils
 vas, vasis, n, pl. vasa, -orum: vase, vessel
 navigium, 2 (fr. navigo, 1, to sail): sailing, ship
 texo, 3, texui, textum: to weave, construct
 velum, 2: veil, sail
 tegetes, -gis, f (fr. tego, texi, tectum, to cover, conceal): mat, rug, 23, Ic; 49, a
 vestis, -is, f: cloth
 stragulum, 2: mattress, rug, covering
 mando, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to chew, eat
 crudus, 3: uncooked, raw

TRANSLATION

3. (The) paper (plant), as it is known, thrives in the marshy places of Egypt and in the stagnant waters of the Nile which remain after the inundations; (its) triangular stalk (is) no deeper than two cubits below (the surface) of the water, (and its entire) height (is) no more than ten cubits, with a (stalk of) tapering slenderness ending in a tuft without any seed, and with no use for (its) flowers except for the decoration of idols; (its) slanting root (is) of the thickness of an arm.

includo, 3, -clusi, -sum: to shut up, enclose
 semen, -inis, n: seed, 86
 corono, 1: to wreath, crown, 118
 nascor, 3, natum: to be born
 palustris, 2 (fr. palus, -udis, f, swamp): marshy, 49, r
 quiesco, 3, -evi, -etum: to rest, repose
 Nilus, 2: Nile, the greatest river of Egypt
 exundo, 1: to overflow
 [evagor, 1: to wander]
 stagno, 1: to stand still, stay

4. The inhabitants use its root as wood, not only for fire, but also for various vase-like utensils. They also construct boats of papyrus; they make sails, mats and even clothes, as well as mattresses and ropes from its fibers. They eat it cooked or raw, swallowing only its pulp.

decoquo, 3, -coxi, -coctum: to boil, cook
 pulpa, 1: pulp
 [succus, 4 (fr. sugo, 3, suxi, suctum, to suck): juice, devoro, 1: to swallow, devour (sap)]

NATURAL HISTORY

Paper

5. Praeparantur ex *eo* chartae, *diviso acu* in praetenuis, sed quam latissimas philuras. *Principatus medio, atque inde scissurae ordine*. Texuntur omnes madente tabula Nili aqua. Turbidus liquor glutinis praebet vicem.

6. Primo supina tabula *scheda allinitur* longitudine papyri, quae potuit esse, resegminibus utrinque amputatis; transversa postea crates peragit. Premitur deinde prelis, et siccantur sole plagulae, atque inter se junguntur, proximarum semper bonitatis diminutione ad deterrimas. Nunquam plures scapo, quam vicenae. (Lib. XIII, 21-23)

5. Praeparantur ex *ea* chartae *divisa cultro* in praetenuis sed quam latissimas philuras; *optimae scissurae ex medio; inde versus in corticem sunt viliores*. Texuntur chartae in tabula Nili aqua madenti. Turbida aqua glutinis praebet vicem.

6. Primo *philurae quam longissimae, recta linea ambobus marginibus resectae super* supinam tabulam *junctim inter se applicantur, alterae dein modo eratis allinuntur*. Sic *confectae* plagulae prelis deinde premuntur, sole siccantur, atque proximarum semper bonitatis diminutione ad deterrimas inter se junguntur. Nunquam scapo plures quam vicenae rediguntur.

NATURALIS HISTORIA.

De Papyro.

5. *divido*, 3, -visi, -visum: to divide

culter, -tri, m: knife, 93, a

praetenuis, 2: very thin, 49, A1

quam: as much as possible, 27, k

latus, 3: wide, broad

philura, 1, Greek: bast, membrane, slice

scissura, 1 (fr. *scindo*, 3, *scidi*, *scissum*, to tear):

inde: hence; *versus in*: towards

cortex, -ticis, c: cork, rind, shell

vilis, 2: cheap, low-priced

madeo, 2, -dui, -: to be wet, be drunk

6. *recta linea*, adv.: straight, 88

margo, -ginis, m: margin, 23, IIa; 84

reseo, 1, -cui, -ctum: to cut off

supinus, 3: bent backwards, spread or stretched out

junctim (fr. *jungo*, 3, -nxi, -nctum, to join): jointly

applico, 1, -cui, -citum or -cavi, -catum: to apply, ar-

cratis, -is, f: grate, trellis

[*scheda*, 1, Greek: slice]

allino, 3, -levi, -litum: to smear, bedaub

pagula, 1 (fr. *pango*, *pepigi*, *pactum*, to fasten): lock, grated sheet

5. *Writing paper is made of it, by cutting it with a knife into very thin slices, but as broad as possible; the best cuts are from the middle; hence toward the bark they are poorer. The paper sheets are woven on a board moistened with the water of the Nile. The turbid water takes the place of glue.*

turbidus, 3 (fr. *turbo*, 1, to bother): turbid, confused

gluten, -tinis, n: glue

(*vicis*), -is, f: change, place, duty

6. *First the slices, as long as possible, cut straight on both edges, are arranged closely together on a flat board; then the others are glued on like grating. The sheets thus made are put under a press, dried in the sun and assorted in descending order from the more perfect to the less perfect ones. They are never packed more than twenty to a scroll.*

sicco, 1: to dry

prelum, 2: press

viceni, 3: twenty each, twenty by twenty, 29, c

scapus, 2: stalk, column, scroll

redigo, 3, -egi, -actum: to draw, collect, settle

WRITER OF EPIGRAMS

1. Deriding Bodily Defects

*Original in distichs ***In prose ***

1. *Basia* das aliis, aliis das, Postume, dextram.
Dicis, utrum, mavis, elige. Malo manum. II. 21

1. *Salutando* das, Postume, aliis *oscula* (ore male olenti), aliis *das* dextram *dicisque mihi*: utrum mavis, elige. Certe manum malo.

2. *As a Mourner of Lucanus*

2. *Haec est illa dies, quae magni conscia partus,*
Lucanum populis et tibi Polla, dedit.
Heu Nero crudelis, nullaque invisior umbra:
Debit hoc saltem non licuisse tibi. VII. 20

2. *Hodie est dies anniversarius, qui magnum*
populo familiaeque edidit Lucanum.
Crudelis et quocumque invisior Nero, utinam
eum tibi occidere non licuisset.

As a Base Flatterer

3. *Serus ut aetheria Germanicus imperet aula,*
Utque diu terris, da pia thura Jovi. XIII. 4

3. *Offer sacrificia* Jovi, ut *Domitianus serus ad caelos perveniens ibi imperaturus longe regnet in terra.*

Haughty and Scornful

4. *Candidius nihil est te, Caeciliane; notavi,*
Si quando ex nostris disticha pauca legis,

4. *Candidiorem neminem te, Caeciliane, novi; nam cum legis pauca meis ex distichis, protinus confers*

EX EPIGRAMMATIS.

Corporalem cavillans defectum.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

1. [basium, 2: a kiss (of pleasure)]
osculum, 2: a kiss (of veneration)
dexteram dare: to shake hands
malo, malle, malui, -, : to prefer, 42, 6
oleo, 2, olui, -, : to emit an odor or smell

1. *In greeting, Postumus, you give kisses (with your foul lips) to some, and a handshake to others, and to me you say: "Choose which of the two you prefer." Certainly I prefer your hand shake.*

Lugens Lucanum.

2. dies, 5, m or f: day, 25, a
[conscius, 3: cognizant of, 66, b]
[partus, 4 (fr. pario, 3, pepererit, partum, to bear):
birth]
[Polla, 1, wife of Lucanus]
edo, 3, edidi, editum: to give out, produce
invisus, 3 (fr. invideo, 2, -visi, -visum, to envy):

2. *Today is the anniversary day which gave Lucanus to the people and to his family. O Nero, cruel and more hateful than anyone, would that you had not been permitted to kill him.*

hated

[umbra, 1: shade, shadow, shade of a dead person]

Vilis adulator.

3. [aetherius, 3 (fr. aether, -is, m, the upper air, heaven): ethereal, heavenly]
Germanicus, 2, Domitian, the blood-thirsty persecutor of Christians
[aula, 1: court, yard, palace]

3. *Offer sacrifices to Jupiter that Domitian coming late to rule in heaven, may reign long on earth.*

[t(h)us, t(h)uris, n: incense, frankincense]

Irrisor arrogans.

4. candidus, 3: shining white, clear, lucid, candid
distichon, 2: distich, 20
protinus: without delay, at once, immediately
[recito, 1: to read aloud, recite]
confero, 3, contuli, collatum: to compare, confer, 49,
(A2

4. *I have never known a more candid man than you, Caecilian; (for) when you read a few of my distichs, in order to enjoy them more, you compare*

* Cf. 139, b2 ** Cf. 13, I, II

EPIGRAMS

Haughty and Scornful

- Protius aut Marsi recitas, aut scripta Catulli. *haec Marsi Catullique scriptis; quae, ut mea magis placeant collata, probas deteriora esse meis. Laude tua nullum est opus: confer modo illis magis, Caeciliane, tua.*
- Haec mihi das, tamquam deteriora legas,*
Ut collata magis placeant mea. *Credimus illud.*
Malo tamen recites, Caeciliane, tua. II. 70

As a Needy Bard

5. *Aera domi non sunt, superest hoc, Regule, tantum* 5. *Pecuniam domi non habeo: nil aliud superest,*
Ut tua vendamus munera: numquid emis? *Regule, quam, ut vendam dona abs te accepta: non-*
VII. 15 *ne emis, ast generosus mihi porro relinques ea.*

His Prostituted Pen.

6. *Laudatus nostro quidam, Faustine, libello* 6. *Versibus meis laudatus quidam dissimulat, Fau-*
Dissimulat, quasi nil debeat: imposuit. V. 37 *stine, quasi nil mihi debeat: imposui mihi.*

As a Parasite.

7. *Ad coenam nuper Varus me forte vocavit,* 7. *Ad coenam nuper Varus me forte vocavit. Opu-*
Ornatus dives, parvula coena fuit, *lentissimus dives exigua coena me tractavit. Aureo*
Auro non dapibus oneratur mensa, ministri *apparatu et non dapibus onerata est mensa. Ministri*
Apponunt oculis plurima, pauca gulae. *apposuerunt oculis plurima, sed pauca gulae. "Jube,*
Tunc ego: Non oculos, sed ventrem pascere veni; *inqui, apponi dapes: non enim oculos, sed ventrem*
Aut appone dapes, Vare, vel aufer opes. IV. 78 *pascere veni; vel auferr(e ex opibus mihi, Vare,*
permitte.)"

EX EPIGRAMMATIS.

Irrisor arrogans.

VOCABULARY

Marsus Domitius, a poet known only by name
confer, 34, c

TRANSLATION

them without delay with the poems of Marsus and Catullus, which you find worse than mine. There is no need, Caecilian, of your praise; just compare your (poems) with them.

Immodeste mendicans.

5. [aes, aeris, n: copper, bronze, brass]
supersum: to be over and above, be left, remain, 41, 1
vendo, 3, vendidi, venditum: to sell
[numquid? emphatical question particle]
emo, 3, emi, emptum: to buy

5. I have no money at home; there remains nothing else than to sell the gifts I got from you, Regulus. Will you (please) buy them, generously leaving them to me still?

Penna prostituta.

6. dissimulo, 1: to conceal, ignore, leave unnoticed
impono, 3, -osui, -ositum: to put, place in, deceive
[libellus, 2 (fr. liber, -bri, book): booklet]

6. (Look,) Faustinus, a man, praised by my verses, acts as if he owed me nothing; I have deceived myself.

Parasitus.

7. [orno, 1: to equip, provide with]
opulentus, 3: rich, wealthy, splendid
tracto, 1: to drag, haul along, treat, handle, manage
apparatus, 4 (fr. appareo, 2, -rui, -ritum, to appear,
serve): equipment, splendor, pomp, display, pa-
daps, dapis, f: meal, feast, banquet, meat (rade
gula, 1: gullet, throat, gluttony
(ops), opis, f: power, help, wealth, riches, 22, a
pasco, 3, pavi, pastum: to feed, feast

7. Recently Varus happened to invite me to dinner. The very rich man treated me to a scanty meal. The table was loaded with golden plate and not with food. His servants put many things for the eyes, but little for the gullet. "Let food be served," I said, "for I came to feast my stomach and not my eyes; or else allow me to take along some of the golden plate."

aufero, 3, abstuli, ablatum: to carry away

EPIGRAMS

Never Noble-Minded

8. Semper agis causas et res agis, Attale, semper. Est, non est, quod agas, Attale, semper agis. Si res et causae desunt, agis, Attale, mulas. Attale, ne, quod agas, desit, agas animam. I. 80
8. Semper agis causas et res agis, Attale, semper. Est *vel* non est, quod agas, Attale, agis semper. Si res et causae desunt, agis, Attale, mulas. Ne, quod agas, desit, animam, Attale, agas.

EX EPIGRAMMATIS.

Nunquam nobilis.

8. causam agere: to plead one's case
mula, 1 or mulus, 2: mule
desum, deesse, defui, -, : to be absent, fail, 41, 1
animam agere: to be in the death agony, be dying

8. Attalus, you are always pleading a case, always engaged in something. Whether or not there is something to do, Attalus, you are always busy. If cases or lawsuits are lacking, Attalus, you drive mules, Attalus, lest something be lacking for you to do, give an obolus to Charon.

35. CAJUS PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS

WRITER OF LETTERS

Pliny Sends Greetings to His Friend Cornelius Tacitus

Original in a very simple style

In a good classical style

1. Ridebis, et licet, rideas. Ego ille quem nosti apros tres et quidem pulcherrimos cepi.
1. Ridebis audito hoc; modo riseris: ego, inquam, quem bene nosti otiosum, apros tres et pulcherrimos quidem venando prostravi.
2. Ipse, inquis, ipse? Non tamen ut omnino ab in-
2. Ille, inquis, ipse? Ita! Egometipse; nulla tamen

EX EPISTOLIS.

Cajus Plinius Cornelio Suo Salutem.

VOCABULARY

1. rideo, 2, risi, risum: to laugh
[licet: it is permitted]
audio, 4: to hear, 114, b
modo, tantum modo, solum modo: just, but, however
riseris, 106
inquam: to say, 44, 10
bene: well, 28, d
novi, nosse, notum: to know, 45, 14
otiosus, 3 (fr. otium, 2, idleness, leisure): idle, lazy,
aper, apri, m: boar (49, t; 57, 4
tres, tria: three, 29, a, 3
pulcher, -chra, -chrum: beautiful, fine, 27, b; 11, b'

2. ille, 3: he (the distant), 30, b
ipse, 3, emph.: even he, 30, c
ita!: so (it is), yes
-metipse, 3: -self, 30, c'
ast: but, yet, however, 119, a
nullus, 3: none, 30, k

TRANSLATION

1. On hearing what follows, you will smile; just keep smiling. I, whom you well know to be a lazy fellow, slew three boars, and very fine ones indeed, (while I was) out hunting.

et - quidem, take the *emph.* word in between: and even
venatio, -nis, f (fr. venor, 1, to hunt): hunting, 49, a; 88; 117, e
prosterno, 3, -stravi, -stratum: to throw before, cast, [capiro, 3, cepi, captum: catch] (slay)

2. That fellow, you say, he? That's right! I myself, but there was no great change in affairs, (nor)

res, 5: thing, affair
mutatio, -nis, f (fr. muto, 1, to change): change, 49, a
omnino: at all

LETTERS

Pliny Sends Greetings to Tacitus

ertia mea et quiete discederem; ad retia sedebam.

3. Erat in *proximo* non venabulum aut lancea, sed stilus *et* pugillares. Meditabar aliquid enotabamque, ut, si manus vacuas, plenas tamen ceras reportarem.

4. *Non est quod* contempnas hoc studendi genus. Mirum est *ut* animus agitatione motuque corporis excitetur. *Jam* undique silvae et solitudo ipsumque illud silentium, quod venationi datur, magna cogitationis incitamenta sunt.

5. Proinde *cum* venabere, *licebit* auctore me ut panarium et lagunculam *sic etiam* pugillares feras.

rerum mutatio omnino *facta*, ut ab inertia mea et quiete discederem; ad retia *solum modo* sedebam.

3. Eratque in *manu* non venabulum aut lancea, sed stilus *cum* pugillaribus. Meditabar notabamque aliquid, ut, si manus vacuas, ceras tamen reportarem plenas.

4. *Neque* est, *ut* contempnas hoc studendi genus. Mirum *enim* est, *quomodo* animus agitatione motuque corporis excitetur, *cum* undique silvae et solitudo ipsumque illud silentium, quod venationi datur, *magnis* incitamento sunt cogitationibus.

5. Proinde *quandoque* venatum *iturus*, auctore me, *uti* panarium et lagunculam, *ita et* pugillares

EX EPISTOLIS.

Cajus Plinius Cornelio Suo Salutem.

VOCABULARY

inertia, 1, (*fr.* iners, -rtis, *idle*): *sloth, laziness*, 49, *u*
 quies, -etis, *f*: *rest, comfort*, 23, I, *c*
 discedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to depart, go away*, 124, *a*
 rete, -tis, *n*: *net*; cassis, -is, *m*: *hunting net*, 23, I

3. venabulum, 2 (*fr.* venor, 1, *to hunt*): *hunting lancea*, 1: *lance* (*spear*, 49, *f*)
 stilus, 2: *pointed iron or bone, pencil*
 pugillares, -rium, *m*, (*libelli*): *waxen tablets, notebook*, 49, *r*
 meditator, 1: *to meditate*, 31, *c*
 noto, 1: *to note, jot down*
 vacuus, 3: *empty*
 cera, 1: *wax*; *pl.*: *waxen tablets*

4. est, *ut*: *it is to, ought to, have to*, 124, *b*
 contemno, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: *to despise*, 124, *b*
 studeo, 2, -dui, -, *to study*, 80, *p*
 genus, -neris, *n*: *birth, family, sex, kind*
 mirus, 3: *wondrous*
 quomodo: *how*
 animus, 2: *mind, mood, spirit*
 agitatio, -nis, *f* (*fr.* agito, 1, *to put in constant motion*): *activity, excitement*, 49, *a*; 93, *a*
 motus, 4 (*fr.* moveo, 2, *movi, motum, to move*): *motion, excitement*, 49, *a*; 93, *a*
 excito, 1: *to excite, enliven*, 132
 cum: *when, since*, 126, *a*

5. proinde: *henceforth, therefore*
 quando(cum)que: *whenever*
 [licebit: *it will be permitted*]
 eo, ivi, itum: *to go*, 116, *a*
 auctore me: *on my authority*, 115
 ut or uti — ita et or sic et: *as well as*
 panarium, 2 (*fr.* panis, -is, *m*, *bread*): *lunch-box*, 49, *n*

TRANSLATION

did I depart in the least from my laziness and comfort; I was just sitting at my hunting nets.

sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: *to sit*

3. *There was in my hand no hunting spear or lance, but a pencil and a notebook. I was meditating and jotting down some thoughts, in order that I might carry home at least a full notebook, even if my hands (were) empty.*

tamen: *yet, at least*, 119, *b*
 reporto, 1: *to carry back home*, 124, *a*
 plenus, 3: *full*

4. *Nor is there any reason to despise this kind of study. For it is wonderful how the mind is stimulated by excitement and corporal activity, while all around the forest, the solitude, and the silence itself which goes with hunting, are an incentive for great imagination.*

(all around)
 undique: *on all sides, everywhere, from everywhere*,
 silentium, 2 (*fr.* sileo, 2, *to be silent*): *silence*, 49, *f*
 solitudo, -dinis, *f*: *solitude*, 23, II; 49, *u*
 incitamentum, 2: *excitement, incentive*, 77; 49, *e*
 cogitatio, -nis, *f* (*fr.* cogito, 1, *to think*): *thought, imagination*, 77

5. *For that reason whenever you go hunting, do not forget, on my authority, (to take along) your notebook as well as your lunch box and (wine)*

laguncula, 1 (*fr.* lagena, 1, *jar*): *bottle, flask* (*of*
 omitto, 3, omisi, omisum: *to forget* (*wine*), 49, *p*
 fero, 1: *to carry*, 43, 8

LETTERS

Pliny Sends Greetings to Tacitus

Experieris non Dianam magis montibus quam Minervam inerrare. *ferre ne omiseris. Experieris enim non Dianam magis quam Minervam inerrare montibus.*

Vale.

Vale.

Pliny is Greeting His Friend Fabius Justus

1. *Olim* mihi nullas epistulas mittis. Nihil est, inquis, quod scribam. At hoc ipsum scribe nihil esse, quod scribas.

1. *Jamdudum* mihi nullas mittis epistulas. Nihil est, inquis, quod scribam. At hoc ipsum scribe nihil esse, quod scribas.

Vel solum illud, unde incipere priores solebant "Si vales, bene est: ego valeo." Hoc mihi *sufficit*; est enim maximum.

Vel solum illud, unde priores incipere solebant "Si vales, bene est: ego valeo." Hoc mihi *sufficiet*; est enim maximum.

2. *Ludere* me putas? *Serio peto*. Fac sciam, quid agas, quod sine sollicitudine summa nescire non possum.

2. *Illudere* me putas? *Serio peto, absit tale cogites*. Fac *modo* sciam, quid agas; quod sine sollicitudine summa nescire non possum.

Vale.

Vale.

EX EPISTOLIS.

Cajus Plinius Cornelio Suo Salutem.

VOCABULARY

experior, 4, -pertum: *to experience, find*
Diana, 1, *the virgin goddess of hunting*
magis: *rather*
Minerva, 1, *the virgin goddess of sciences*
inerro, 1: *to roam, rove, 57, 3; 79*

TRANSLATION

bottle. For you will find that Diana does not roam the hills any more than Minerva. Good-bye!

Vale: *Good-bye!*, 47

Cajus Plinius Fabio Justo Suo Salutem.

1. [*olim: once upon a time*]; *jamdudum: for a*
epistola, 1, *Greek: letter* (long time)
scribo, 3, scripsi, -ptum: *to write, 131*
hoc ipsum: *that very thing, 30, c*
at: *but, well*
nihil, 2 (*acc. with prep. nihilum*): *nothing; in pl.*
takes its form from nullus, 3

1. *For a long time you have not sent me any letters. There is nothing to write, you say. Well, write that very thing that there is nothing to write about.*

scribas, 133, a

vel: *or*
solus, 3: *only, alone, 30, k*
priores, -rum, m: *ancestors, 27, g*
incipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to start, 40,*
soleo, 2, solitum: *to be accustomed, 31, d*
valeo, 2, -lui, -iturus: *to be strong, healthy, 47*
sufficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to replace, suffice, 40*

Or write only that with which our ancestors used to start: "If you are well, all right; so am I." That will satisfy me, because that is (what) is most important.

maximus, 3: *greatest, most important, 27, e*

2. *illudo, 3, -lusi, -lusum: to jest, mock; ludo: to play, 79*
serio, (fr. serius, 3, earnest): earnestly, in earnest, 28, a
peto, 3, peti(v)i, petitum: to go, assail, ask, beg
absum, abesse, abfui, -: be far, 41, 1; 124, a
after peto and absit, "ut", 124, a, can be dropped
talis, 2: such, so
facio, 3, feci, factum: to do, make, 34, c; 108
scio, 4: to know, 124, a; after fac "ut", can be dropped; 34, c

2. *Do you think that I am jesting? Don't you believe it, (for) I am asking in earnest. Let me know what you are doing, (for) I cannot remain in ignorance without very great anxiety. Good-bye!*

ago, 3, egi, actum: *to do, act, 132*sine: *without, 50, b*summus, 3 (*fr. superus, 3, high*): *great, very great, 27, f.*possum, posse, potui, -: *to be able, can, 41, 2*

35. CAJUS PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS

61 - 115 A.D.

Course 35

LETTERS

Pliny to His Friend Septicius with Greetings

1. Frequenter hortatus es, ut epistulas, si quas paulo curatius scripsissem, colligerem publicaremque.

Collegi non servato temporis ordine, neque enim historiam conponebam, sed *ut* quaeque in manus venerat.

2. Superest, ut nec te consilii, nec me paeniteat obsequii. *Ita enim fiet, ut eas quae* adhuc neglectae jacent, requiram; *et* si quas addidero, non suppressam.

Vale.

Pliny Salutes Arrianus, His Friend

1. *Quia* tardiozem adventum tuum prospicio, librum, quem prioribus epistulis promiseram, exhibeo.

1. Frequenter hortatus es, ut epistolas, si quas paulo curatius scripsissem, colligerem publicaremque.

Collegi *ergo eas, tuae obtemperans voluntati*, non servato temporis ordine, neque enim historiam conponebam, sed *prout* quaeque in manus venerat.

2. *Nunc* superest, ut nec te consilii, nec me paeniteat obsequii. *Utique* adhuc jacentes requiram neglectas; *immo* si quas scripsero, non suppressam.

Vale.

1. Tardiozem adventum tuum prospiciens librum, quem prioribus promisi epistolis, *hicce* exhibeo.

EX EPISTOLIS.

Cajus Plinius Septicio Suo Salutem.

VOCABULARY

1. frequens, -ntis: *frequent*, 28, a
hortor, 1: *to encourage*; ut, 124, a
si aliquis: *if some one*, 30, i
curatus, 3: *careful*, 28, a
scribo, 3, -ipsi, -iptum: *to write*, 135, a
colligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to collect*, 124, a

ergo: *therefore*
obtempero, 1: *to comply with*, 79
voluntas, -tatis, f: *will, wish*
servo, 1: *to keep, save*, 114, b
ordo, -dinis, m: *order*
historia, 1: *history*
compono, 3, -posui, -positum: *to compose*

2. nunc: *now*
supersum, -esse, -fui, -: *to be over and above, be*
consilium, 2: *counsel* (left, remain, 41, 1
nec - nec; neque - neque: *neither - nor*
paeniteo, 2, -tui, -: *impers.: to repent, regret, be sor-*
utique: *of course* (ry, 62; 124, a
adhuc: *yet, still*
jaceo, 2, -cui, -citurus: *to lie*
requiro, -isivi, -isitum: *to seek, search for*
negligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to neglect*
immo: *even, moreover, nay*

Cajus Plinius Arriano Suo Salutem.

1. tardus, 3: *slow, late, delayed*, 27, a
adventus, 4 (fr. advenio, 4, -veni, -ventum, *to ar-*
rive): *arrival, coming*, 49, a
prospicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum: *to foresee*, 40; 110, a
liber, -bri, m: *book, volume*
prior, 2: *former*, 27, g

TRANSLATION

1. *You often encouraged me to select and publish some of the letters which I had written a little more carefully.*

publico, 1: *to publish*, 124, a

Therefore, according to your desire, I collected them, not in chronological order, for I was not composing history, but just as they came to hand.

ut(i), prout(i): *as, just as*
quisque, 3: *each, he*, 30, i

2. *(All that) now remains (is) that neither you should regret your counsel, nor I my compliance.*

Moreover, I shall search for (any that may still have been) neglected (and are) lying around; nay more, if I write any more, I shall not keep (them) back.

[addo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to add*]
supprimo, 3, -pressi, -pressum: *to press down, keep or hold back*, 109, 3

1. *Foreseeing (that) your coming will be delayed, I herein enclose the book I have promised in my for-*

promitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to promise*
hicce: *in this place, herein*, 30, b, 3
exhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to give, hand over, show*

LETTERS

Pliny Salutes Arrianus, His Friend

Hunc rogo ex consuetudine tua et legas et emendes, eo magis, quod nihil ante peraeque eodem stilo scripsisse videor.

Temptavi enim imitari Demosthenem semper tuum, Calvumque nuper meum dumtaxat figuris orationis: nam vim tantorum virorum "Pauci, quos aequus amavit," assequi possunt.

2. Nec materia ipsa huic — vereor, ne inprobe dicam — aemulationi repugnavit: erat enim prope tota in contentione dicendi, quod me longae desidiae indormientem excitavit, si modo is sum ego, qui excitari possim.

3. Non tamen omnino Marci nostri lecythos fugi-

Perlegere velis, quaeso, atque tua ex consuetudine emendes eum, qualem ante nullum simili confecisse stilo videor.

Nam ipsum Demosthenem temptavi imitari semper tuum, nec non Calvumque nuper meum figuris dumtaxat orationis; vim enim tantorum virorum "Pauci, quos aequus amavit," assequi possunt.

2. Nec materia orationis ipsa — vereor, ne inepte loquar — huic conamini repugnare videtur, cum prope tota in contentionis formam redacta sit; quodve me longae desidiae indormientem excitavit, si tamen excitari possim.

3. Attamen nec omnino Marci nostri olfactoria fu-

EX EPISTOLIS.

Cajus Plinius Arriano Suo Salutem.

VOCABULARY

perlego, 3, -legi, -lectum: to read through, peruse, 103
consuetudo, -dinis, f: custom, habit, 49, u
emendo, 1: to correct, 106
qualis, 2: of which kind, such
[peraeque: quite alike]
similis, 2: similar, 88

nam: for

Demosthenes, -nis: Strength of People, (famous Greek orator in the fourth century, B.C.)

tempto or tento, 1: to touch, try, prove

imitator, 1: to try, 35, f

Calvus, 2, Roman orator and poet, contemporary of nuper: lately, not long ago (Cicero)

figura, 1: form, figure, 88

semper tuus: always your (model)

dumtaxat: merely, only

oratio, -nis, f: speech

vis, f: strength, force, 22, g

2. materia, 1: matter, subject matter

vereor, 2, veritum: to fear, revere, 123

ineptus, 3: unsuitable, silly, improper, 28, a

conamen, -minis, n (fr. conor, 1, to strive): effort, 49, e

repugno, 1: to oppose, resist, be repugnant, 79; 55, d

prope: nearly, almost

totus, 3: whole, 30, k

contentio, -nis, f: contest, combat, debate

redigo, 3 -egi, -actum: to lead or bring back, make, -ve, suffix of qui, 3: and (render, 125, b)

3. attamen: however, but

nec omnino: not in the least

olfactorium, 2: perfume, 49, g

TRANSLATION

mer letters. I beg you to read it and correct it according to your custom. I do not think I have ever written another in the same style.

conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to compose, 40; 55, d

For I tried to imitate Demosthenes, your constant model, and also Calvus, lately my own, but only in figures of speech, because (only the) "few whom Jove has loved" are able to attain the power of such great men.

tantus, 3: such, great

paucus, 3: few, little

aequus, 3: equal, level, just, right (epithet of Jove in the 6th book of Aeneid)

assequor, 3, -secutum: to reach, attain, 35, f

2. Nor does the subject matter of my book — I fear I speak improperly — seem to be repugnant to my effort, since nearly the whole is arranged in the form of a debate; and this fact aroused me slumbering in a long idleness, if I am yet able to be aroused.

longus, 3: long

desidia, 1: sloth, idleness

indormio, 4: to sleep, slumber, fall asleep, 79

excito, 1: to rouse, arouse, 109, b

tamen: yet, 119, b

3. Nor have I omitted in the least the perfumes of

[lecythus, 2 Greek: oil cruet]

35. CAJUS PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS

61 - 115 A.D.

Course 81

LETTERS

Pliny Salutes Arrianus, His Friend

mus, quotiens paulum itinere decedere non intempestivis amoenitatibus admonebamur: acres enim esse, non tristes volebamus.-----

gimus, quotiescumque non intempestivis paraboliarum metaphorarumque amoenitatibus ab itinere argumentorum paulum discedere visum est; vigore enim et non demissione animi nos praeditos esse volumus.—

Vale.

Vale.

EX EPISTOLIS.

Cajus Plinius Arriano Suo Salutem.

VOCABULARY

fugio, 3, fugi, fugitum: to flee, omit
 quotiescumque: whenever
 [quoties : as often as]
 intempestivus, 3: unreasonable, untimely, inopportune, 49, a
 parabola, 1, Greek: parable
 metaphora, 1 Greek: metaphor
 amoenitas, -tatis, f (fr. amoenus, 3, pleasant): pleasantness, 49; 88
 iter, itineris, n: going, walk, way, path, 23, I, b
 argumentum, 2: argument, 49, e
 paulum, adv.: (fr. paulus, 3, little): a little, Coll. 39, 1
 discedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go asunder, depart

TRANSLATION

our Marcus (Tullius Cicero), whenever it seemed good to depart a little from the path of arguments by a well-fitting pleasantness of parables and metaphors, for I wished to be vigorous and not enervated.

[admoneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: to admonish]
 visum est: it seemed good
 [acer, acris, acre: sharp, cutting, shrill]
 vigor, -is, m: vigor, force
 [tristis, 2: sad]
 demissio, -nis, f, (fr. demitto, 3, misi, missum, to put down): lowering, dejection, discouragement
 praeditus, 3: endowed, provided with, 49, a; 57, b'

36. MARCUS FABIVS QVINTILIANVS

40 - 118 A.D.

Course 69

RHETORICIAN

Rhetorical Instructions

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Neque id statim legenti persuasum sit omnia, quae optimi auctores dixerint, utique esse perfecta.

Nam et labuntur aliquando et oneri cedunt et indulgent ingeniorum suorum voluptati, nec semper

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Neque statim legenti persuasum sit omnia, quae optimi auctores scripserint, esse etiam omnino perfecta.

Nam et labuntur aliquando et commodo cedunt et indulgent ingeniorum suorum amori, nec semper

INSTITUTIONES ORATORIAE.

VOCABULARY

1. [id, 131, c]
 persuadeo, 2, -suasi, -suasum, alicui aliquid: to convince [utique: of course] (vince)
 labor, 3, lapsus: to fall, make mistakes
 commodum, 2: ease, convenience
 [onus, -neris, n: burden]
 indulgeo, 2, -lsi, -litum: to indulge, be drawn, 79
 ingenium, 2: mind, talent, genius, mental power
 amor, -is, m: delight, love, display

TRANSLATION

1. Nor must a reader at once be convinced that all that the best authors have written is altogether perfect.

Sometimes they make mistakes and prefer their own convenience or are drawn to display their own erudition, nor are they always mindful of the mental

[voluptas, -tatis, f: lust, sensual pleasure]

Rhetorical Instructions

intendunt animum; nonnunquam fatigantur, cum Ciceroni dormire *interim* Demosthenes, Horatio vero etiam Homerus ipse videatur.

2. Summi enim sunt, homines tamen. Acciditque *his qui*, quidquid apud illos reppererunt, dicendi legem putant, ut deteriora imitentur (*id enim* est facilius) ac se abunde similes putent, si vitia magnorum consequantur.

3. Modesto tamen et circumspecto iudicio de tantis viris pronuntiandum est, ne, quod plerisque accidit, damnent quae non intellegunt.

Ac si *necesse est in alteram errare partem*, omnia eorum legentibus placere quam multa displicere maluerim.

4. Plurimum dicit oratori conferre Theophrastus lectionem poetarum multique ejus iudicium sequuntur, neque immerito.

Namque ab his in rebus spiritus et in verbis sub-

intendunt animum *lectorum*, nonnunquam fatigantur, cum Ciceroni dormire *interdum* Demosthenes, Horatio vero etiam Homerus ipse videatur.

2. Summi enim, homines tamen sunt. Acciditque *nonnullis, ut*, quidquid apud eos reppererint, dicendi legem putent et deteriora imitentur, quod semper facilius est, ac se abunde similes magnis existiment, si errores eorum consequantur.

3. Modesto tamen et circumspecto iudicio de tantis viris *sententia* est pronuntianda, ne, ut plerisque accidit, damnent, quae non intelligunt.

Ac si *quando error nullo evitari potest modo*, omnia eorum lectoribus placere, quam multa displicere maluerim.

4. Plurimum dicit oratori conferre Theophrastus lectionem poetarum multique ejus iudicium sequuntur, neque immerito.

Namque ab his in rebus spiritus et in verbis sub-

INSTITUTIONES ORATORIAE.

VOCABULARY

non in^ondo, 3, -di, -ntum: *not to mind, disregard*
animus, 2: *mind, mental ability* (er, 49, d
lector, -is, m (fr. lego, 3, legi, lectum, to read): *read-*
dormito, 1 (fr. dormire, 4, to sleep): *to be drowsy,*
flagging, 49, j; 55, d
interdum: *sometimes, at times*

2. [hic: is, 30, b, 1]
reperio, 4, -(p)peri, repertum: *to find*, 120, c4
deterior, 2: *worse, weaker, weak*, 27, e
id, quod, 30, b, 4, 5
abunde: *quite*
[vitium, 2: *vice, crime*]
consequor, 3, -secutum: *to attain, appropriate*, 135, a

3. circumspectio, 3, -spexi, -spectum: *to look around,*
consider
iudicium, 2 (fr. iudico, 1, to judge): *judgment, cri-*
sententia, 1: *opinion, criticism* (ticism, 49, f; 88
pronuntio, 1: *to announce, utter*, Coll. 37, 3
[alter, 2, the other, one or any of the two]
evito, 1: *to avoid*
si (ali)quando: *if at any time*
displiceo, -cui, -citur: *to displease*

4. confero, 3, -tuli, collatum: *bring to, be profitable,*
non immerito: *not without reason* (43, 8
et - et - et, a special emphasis, cf. 15, d

TRANSLATION

ability of their readers; sometimes they are fatigued,
since Demosthenes at times seems to Cicero to be
flagging, and to Horace, Homer himself.

[interim: *meanwhile*]

2. *Supreme, indeed, they are, yet human. Thus it*
happens that some readers consider as a rule of
speech whatever they find in their writings, and
imitate the weak parts, which it is always easier to
follow, and they judge themselves to be quite similar
to those great men, if they appropriate their errors.

3. *However, criticism of such great men must be*
uttered with moderate and cautious judgment, lest
the critics disapprove, as happens to many, what they
do not understand.

Yet, if at times error can in no way be avoided, I
would prefer that a reader be pleased with every
thing rather than displeased by (too) many things.

malo, -lui, -, : *to prefer, wish rather*, 42, 6; 103

4. *Theophrastus says that it is very profitable for*
an orator to read the poets, and many, not without
reason share his opinion.

For from them (can) be acquired vividness in
facts, elegance in words, full motives for affections,

Rhetorical Instruction

limitas et in affectibus motus omnis et in personis decor *petitur*, praecipueque *velut attrita* cotidiano actu forensi ingenia optime rerum talium *blanditia* reparantur; ideoque in hac lectione Cicero requiescendum putat.

5. Meminerimus tamen non per omnia poetas esse oratori sequendos nec libertate verborum nec licentia figurarum; poeticam ostentationi comparatam et praeter *id* quod solam petit *voluptatem*, eamque fingendo non falsa modo sed etiam incredibilia quaedam sectatur, *patrocinio* quoque aliquo iuvari,

6. quod *alligata* ad certam pedum necessitatem non semper uti propriis possit, sed depulsa recta via necessario ad eloquendi quaedam deverticula confugiat, nec mutare quaedam modo verba, sed extendere, corripere, dividere cogatur; nos vero armatos stare in acie et summis de rebus decernere et ad victoriam niti. (Lib. X. C. I, 24-29.)

limitas, et in affectibus motus omnis et in personis decor *acquiritur*, praecipue *vero exhausta* quotidiano actu forensi ingenia optime talium rerum *deliciis* reparantur; ideoque in hac lectione et Cicero requiescendum putat.

5. Meminerimus tamen non per omnia poetas esse oratori sequendos nec libertate verborum nec licentia figurarum; et poeticam ostentationi comparatum esse et praeterquam, quod solam petat *delectationem*, eamque etiam fingendo non falsa modo, sed etiam incredibilia quaedam sectetur, *licentia* quoque aliqua iuvari;

6. et, quod *astricta* certis pedum moris non semper uti propriis possit *verbis*, sed recta via depulsa necessario ad eloquendi quaedam deverticula confugiat, nec mutare quaedam modo verba, sed et extendere, corripere dividereque *eam coactam esse*; nos vero armatos stare in acie et summis de rebus decernere et ad victoriam niti.

INSTITUTIONES ORATORIAE.

VOCABULARY

sublimitas, -tatis, f: *sublimity, elegancies*
decor, -is, m: *ornament*
[peto, 3, -ti(v)i, -titum: *ask, go*]
[blanditia, 1: *flattery*]
deliciae, -arum, pl.: *delight*
[attero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: *wear away*]
exhaurio, 4, -hausi, -haustum: *to exhaust*
reparo, 1: *to repair, refresh*

5. figura, 1: *form*
poetica, 1 (ars): *poetry*
ostentatio, -nis, f: *boasting*
comparo, 1: *to compare, be like*
praeterquam quod: *besides that*; petat, 120, c5
fingo, 3, -nxi, fictum: *to form, imagine, mould*
sector, 1: *follow eagerly, pursue*, 120, c5
[patrocinium, 2: *defense*]
juvo, 1, juvi, jutum: *to help*

6. eo quod: *for the reason that*
astringo, 3, -nxi, -strictum: *to bind to, confine*
[alligo, 1: *to tie to*]
mora, 1: *pause, length*
depello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: *expel, drive away*
deverticulum, 2: *by-way*
necessario: *necessarily*
confugio, 3, fugi, -giturus: *to take refuge*, 120, c5
eloquor, 3, -locutum: *to say, express, speak*
muto, 1: *to change*
extendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: *to extend, lengthen*
corripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum: *to seize, rebuke, shorten*
divido, 3, -vidi, -visum: *to divide*
cogo, 3, coëgi, coactum: *to compel, force*

TRANSLATION

and beautiful characterization in persons; especially (those) minds (which are) exhausted by daily work in the forum (can be) well refreshed with the delight of such things; therefore, Cicero also thinks rest is to be found in reading them.

requiesco, 3, -evi, -etum: *to rest, find rest*; Coll. 37, 3

5. Yet we must be mindful that an orator cannot follow the poets in everything, neither in the liberty of words, nor in the freedom of forms; (we must also remember) that poetry is like a showy spectacle; and besides (the fact) that it intends only delectation, which it pursues by fashioning not only false, but even unbelievable things, it also (naturally) enjoys a certain license;

6. and because poetry, (being) confined to a certain length of feet, cannot avail itself of the proper words, but driven off the right path to take refuge in some by-way of speech, it is forced not only to change words, but also to lengthen, shorten, and separate them; (but we must remember that) we (rhetoricians) are standing on our guard (to) set to rights these important (literary questions) and strive for the victory (of correct style).

summus, 3: *highest, most important*, 27, f
decerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum: *to decide, set to right*
nitor, 3, -nisum or nixum: *to lean upon, prop, make an effort*

HISTORIAN

"Of Untutored and Crude Style." (His own opinion)

ANNALS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Urbem Romam a principio reges habuere; libertatem et consulatum L. Brutus instituit. Dictaturae ad tempus sumebantur; neque decemviralis potestas ultra biennium, neque tribunorum militum consulare jus diu valuit.

Non Cinnae, non Sullae longa dominatio; et Pompei Crassique potentia cito in Caesarem, Lepidi atque Antonii arma in Augustum cessere, qui cuncta discordiis civilibus fessa nomine principis sub imperium accepit.

2. Sed veteris populi Romani prospera vel adversa claris scriptoribus memorata sunt; temporibusque Augusti dicendis non defuere decora ingenia, donec gliscente adulatione deterrentur.

Tiberii Gaique et Claudii ac Neronis res florentibus ipsis ob metum falsae, postquam occiderant, recentibus odiis compositae sunt.

Inde consilium mihi pauca de Augusto et extrema

1. Urbem Romam a principio reges habuerunt; libertatem et consulatum Lucius Brutus instituit. Dictaturae ad tempus sumebantur; neque decemviralis potestas ultra biennium, neque tribunorum militum consulare jus diu valuit.

Non Cinnae, non Sullae longa dominatio fuit; et Pompeii Crassique potentia cito in Caesarem, Lepidi atque Antonii arma in Augustum cesserunt, qui cuncta discordiis civilibus fessa nomine principis sub imperium accepit.

2. Convenienter veteris populi Romani prospera vel adversa a claris scriptoribus memorata sunt; nec temporibus Augusti dicendis defuerunt decora ingenia, donec gliscente adulatione deterrentur.

Tiberii Gaique et Claudii ac Neronis res gestae florentibus ipsis ob metum false, postquam vero occiderant, recentibus odiis compositae sunt.

Ideoque consilium mihi est pauca de Augusto et

EX ANNALIBUS.

"Incondita et rudi voce."

VOCABULARY

1. instituo, 3, -ui, -utum: to establish, teach
sumo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: to take, employ, set up
dictatura, 1: dictatorship
decemviralis, 2 (fr. decemvir): relating to the decembiennium, 2: (space of) two years (virs, 49, r
valeo, 2, -lui, -liturus: to be strong or well or in value
dominatio, -onis, f (fr. dominor, 1, to rule): power, despotism
cedo, 3, cessi, -ssum: to go, yield
fessus, 3: tired, exhausted
discordiis fessa: disarranged, 88

2. memoro, 1: to mention, relate
decorus, 3 (fr. decus, -oris, n, ornament, glory): beautiful, illustrious
ingenium, 2: nature, talent, genius
glisco, 3, -, -: to blaze, grow, increase
adulatio, -nis, f (fr. adulator, 1): flattery, 49, a
floreo, 2, -rui, -: to blossom, flourish
occido, 3, -cidi, -casum: to fall down, die
consilium, 2: deliberation, plan, intention

TRANSLATION

1. From the beginning kings ruled the city of Rome; Lucius Brutus established liberty and consular authority. Occasionally a dictatorship was set up; the power of the decemvirs did not (extend) beyond two years, nor was the consular right of the military tribunes of long duration.

Neither did the tyranny of Cinna and Sulla last long. The power of Pompey and Crassus passed quickly to Caesar; likewise the military command of Lepidus and Antonius passed on to Augustus, who under the name of prince assumed the command of all affairs (which had been) disarranged by the civil wars.

2. The prosperous and adverse affairs of the ancient Roman people have been suitably recorded by eminent authors; nor were illustrious writers lacking for perpetuating the era of Augustus, until they were intimidated by the increasing flatteries (of the imperial court).

Thus the history of Tiberius and Caligula, and also that of Claudius and Nero was written falsely on account of fear, while they were alive, but after their death, with ardent hatred.

Therefore, my plan is to write a little about Au-

ANNALS

tradere, mox Tiberii principatum et cetera, sine ira et studio, quorum causas procul habeo.

3. Postquam Bruto et Cassio caesis nulla jam publica arma, Pompeius apud Siciliam oppressus exutoque Lepido, interfecto Antonio ne Julianis quidem partibus nisi Caesar dux reliquus, posito triumviri nomine consulem se ferens et ad tuendam plebem tribunicio jure contentum,

ubi militem donis, populum annona, cunctos dulcedine otii pellexit, insurgere paulatim, munia senatus, magistratuum, legum in se trahere, nullo adversante, cum ferocissimi per acies aut proscriptione cecidissent, ceteri nobilium, quanto quis servitio promptior, opibus et honoribus extollerentur ac novis rebus aucti tuta et praesentia quam vetera mallent.

extrema, mox Tiberii principatum et cetera tradere sine ira et studio, quorum causas procul habeo.

3. Postquam Bruto et Cassio caesis nulla jam publica arma remansissent, nec non Pompeio apud Siciliam oppresso, Lepidoque porro exercitu exuto ipse Antonius quoque interfectus esset, ne Julianis quidem partibus, nisi Augustus dux reliquus fuit, qui seposito triumviri nomine consulem se ferens ad tuendam plebem tribunicio jure contentus esset:

ast, ubi milites donis, populum annona cunctosque dulcedine otii pelliceret, paulatim omnia disponendo, munia senatus ac magistratuum legumque constituentium nullo adversante in se traxit, cum ferocissimi in acie aut proscriptione cecidissent, ceterique nobilium, quanto servitio promptiores essent, eo plus opibus et honoribus extollerentur, ac novis rebus aucti tuta et praesentia quam vetera et periculosa mallent.

EX ANNALIBUS.

VOCABULARY

extremum, 2 (fr. exter, 3, outward): end, 27, f
principatus, 4 (fr. principor, 1, to rule): rule, do-
procul: far, 50, b (minion, 49, a

3. caedo, 3, cecidi, -caesum: to hew, cut, kill, 114, b
opprimo, 3, -ressi, -ssum: to suppress, overthrow,
porro: forward, further (114, b
exuo, 3, exui, -utum: to put off, deprive, 114, b
interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to destroy, kill, 120, c6
sepono, 3, -posui, -situm: to lay aside, cast off, 114, b
Julianus, 3: Caesarian
pars, -rtis, f: part, party, partisan
se ferre; se gerere: to act as
contentus esset, 120, c6
annona, 1: grain, bread, 88
otium, 2: idleness, peace, 88
pellicio, 3, -llexi, -ctum: entice, decoy, win, 120, c3
paulatim: gradually
munia, -ium: duties
[insurgo, 3, -rrexi, -ctum: to rise up]
dispono, 3, -osui, -situm: to arrange
adversor, 1: to oppose, resist
ferox, -ocis: fierce
servitium, 2: service
promptus, 3: prompt
tutus, 3: safe
extollo, 3, extuli, elatum: lift up, raise up, 49, A2
augeo, 2, auxi, auctum: to increase, enrich

TRANSLATION

gustus and his last days, then about the rule of Tiberius and about other affairs without hatred or favor, for (neither) of which I have (any) motive.

3. After the fall of Brutus and Cassius no public army remained; and, since Pompey had been overthrown near Sicily, and Lepidus deprived of his army, and Antonius killed, none of the Caesarian partisans remained, except Augustus, the leader, who by casting off the name of triumvir and acting as consul, was content to protect the people with the tribunitial power;

while, however, he was winning the soldiers with donations, the people with bread, and all with the blessing of peace, he took upon himself by the gradual arrangement of all things the functions of the senate and of the magistrates and (the power even) of passing (new) laws, since the zealous (republicans) had died in battle or by proscription, and (as for) the rest of the nobility the more prompt they were in his service, the more they were rewarded with wealth and honor; and thus, enriched by the new conditions, they preferred the safe and present (affairs) to the old (republic) and (its) dangers.

periculosus, 3, (fr. periculum, peril): dangerous
malo, malui, -: to prefer 42, 6; 120, c3 (49, s

ANNALS

4. Neque provinciae *illum* rerum statum abnuebant, suspecto senatus populique imperio ob certamina *potentium* et avaritiam magistratuum, invalido legum auxilio, quae vi, ambitu postremo pecunia turbabantur.

5. Ceterum Augustus subsidia dominationi Claudium Marcellum, sororis filium admodum adulescentem pontificatu et curuli aedilitate M. Agrippam ignobilem loco, bonum militia et victoriae socium, geminatis consulatibus extulit, mox defuncto Marcello generum sumpsit; Tiberium Neronem et Claudium Drusum privignos imperatoris nominibus auxit, integra etiam domo sua; *nam* genitos Agrippa, Gajum et Lucium in familiam Caesarem induxerat, necdum posita puerili praetexta principes iuventutis appellari, destinari consules specie recusantis flagrantissime cupiverat.

6. *Ut* Agrippa vita concessit, Lucium Caesarem euntem ad Hispaniensis exercitus, Gaium remean-

4. *Dein* suspecto senatus populique imperio ob certamina *potentum* et avaritiam magistratuum *ac* invalido legum auxilio neque provinciae, quae vi, ambitu postremo pecunia turbarentur, *novum* rerum statum abnuebant.

5. Ceterum Augustus subsidia dominationi Claudium Marcellum, sororis filium admodum adulescentem pontificatu et curuli aedilitate, *Marcum Vipsanum* Agrippam ignobilem loco, *sed* bonum militia et victoriarum socium, geminatis consulatibus extulit, mox defuncto Marcello generum sumpsit; Tiberium Neronem et Claudium Drusum privignos imperatoris nominibus auxit: integra etiam *heredibus* domo sua genitos Agrippa Gajum et Lucium in familiam Caesarum induxit, necdum posita puerili praetexta principes iuventutis *eos* appellari, destinarique consules specie recusantis flagrantissime cupiebat.

6. Agrippa vita *functo* Lucium Caesarem euntem ad Hispaniensis exercitus, Gajum remean-

EX ANNALIBUS.

VOCABULARY

4. suspicio, 3, -pexi, -ctum: *look up, suspect*, 114, b imperium, 2, (fr. impero, 1, to command): *power* 49, f
certamen, -minis, n (certo, 1, to fight): *contest, con-*
invalido auxilio, 115; 114, c (tention, 49, c
ambitus, 4, (ambire, 4, go around): *circuit, bribery*
postremo: *at last* (49, a; 88
pecunia, 1: *money, graft*, 88

5. subsidium, 2: *aid, help, assistance*
admodum: *very, well*
adolesco, 3, -levi, -ultum: *grow, be raised up*
pontificatus, 4, (fr. pontifex): *pontifical*, 88
curulis, 2: *having a chariot*
aedilitas, -tatis, f, (fr. aedilis, a magistrate): *dignity*
gemino, 1: *to double*, 88 (of an edile, 49, u; 88
defungor, 3, -functum: *to perform, die*, 114, b
gener, 2: *son-in-law*
privignus, 3: *step-son*
imperatorius, 3, (fr. imperator): *imperial*, 49, z
domo, 115; 114, c
heredibus, 84
genitus, 2, (gigno, 3, genui, genitum, beget): *son,*
praetexta, 114, b (36, b
princeps, -cipis: *chief, leader*, 26, d; 59, A
flagro, 1: *to blaze, burn, be ardent*

6. vita fungor, 3, -ctum: *to die*, 93, b; 114 b, c

TRANSLATION

4. *Moreover, the provinces, which were harassed by violence, bribery, and finally by graft, did not oppose the new arrangement, as the power of the senate and the people was suspected on account of the contentions of the leaders, the avarice of the magistrates and the ineffectiveness of the laws.*

abnuo, 3, -nui, -nutum: *to refuse, deny*

5. *Besides, Augustus took as his assistants in the government Claudius Marcellus, his sister's son, still a very young man, by (appointing him to) the pontifical and curule dignity, and Vipsanius Agrippa (a man of) obscure birth, but distinguished in war and associated in his victories, by awarding him two successive consulships, and whom after the death of Marcellus he took for his son-in-law; furthermore, he graced Tiberius Nero and Claudius Drusus, his step-sons, with the title of emperor; (then) although his family was complete in (so far as) heirs (were concerned), he adopted Gajus and Lucius, the sons of Agrippa, into the family of the Caesars, and although (they were) still clad with the purple-hemmed toga of youth, he desired most ardently, (but) with a show of reluctance, that they should be called the leaders of youth, and be marked out as future consuls.*

6. *After the decease of Agrippa, either death*

ANNALS

tem Armenia et vulnere invalidum mors fato pro-
pera vel novercae Liviae dolus abstulit; Drusoque
pridem extincto Nero solus e privignis erat, *illuc*
cuncta vergere: filius, collega imperii, consors tri-
buniciae potestatis assumitur omnisque per exercitus
ostentatur, non obscuris, ut antea, matris artibus,
sed palam hortatu.

7. Nam senem Augustum devinxerat adeo, uti ne-
potem unicum, Agrippam Postumum, in insulam
Planasiam projecit, rudem sane bonarum artium
et robore corporis stolide ferocem, nullius tamen
flagitii compertum.

At hercule Germanicum Druso ortum octo apud
Rhenum legionibus imposuit ascirique per adoptionem
a Tiberio jussit, quamquam esset in domo Tiberii
filius juvenis, sed qui pluribus munimentis insisteret.

8. Bellum ea tempestate nullum nisi adversus Ger-

Armenia et vulnere invalidum mors fato pro-
pera vel novercae Liviae dolus abstulit; Drusoque pridem
extincto Nero solus e privignis *superat*, cunctaque
ad eum vergebant: filius, collega imperii, consors tri-
buniciae potestatis assumitur omnesque per exerci-
tus non obscuris, ut antea, matris artibus, sed palam
hortatu ostentatur.

7. Senem enim Augustum devinciebat adeo, ut ne-
potem unicum Agrippam Postumum rudem sane
bonarum artium et robore corporis stolide ferocem,
nullius tamen flagitii compertum, in insulam Planasi-
am ejiceret.

Insuper Germanicum Druso ortum octo apud
Rhenum legionibus imposuit ascirique per adop-
tionem a Tiberio jussit, quo pluribus munimentis
insisteret, quamquam esset filius juvenis in domo
Tiberii.

8. Bellum eo tempore nullum nisi adversus Ger-

EX ANNALIBUS.

VOCABULARY

remeo, 1: go or come back
fatum, 2: fate, 84
properus, 3, (fr. propero, 1, hasten): quick, prema-
noverca, 1: step-mother (ture, 49, t
extinguo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: put out, extinguish
supersum, -esse, -fui, -: to remain, be left over
vergo, 3, -rsi, -: to tend, turn to
consors, -rtis: sharing in, partner, 66, b
assumo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: to take to oneself, 59, B
palam: openly
ostento, 1, (fr. ostendo, 3, -ndi, -stum, to show): to
show off, display, proclaim, 49, j

7. devincio, 4, -vinxi, -vinctum: to tie fast, pledge
nepos, -otis, m: grandson, nephew
rudis, 2: rough, rude, uncouth
stolidus, 3: stupid, foolish; robore, 84
flagitium, 2: crime, infamy
comperio(r), 4, -rtum: to find out, prove, (its past
participle takes the gen.), 66, b

orior, 4: to arise, spring, be born, 91
Rhenus, 2, m: the river Rhine
ascio, 4: to take to oneself, adopt, 57, b
adoptio, -nis, f (fr. adopto, 1, to adopt): adoption
quo stands for ut eo, 130
insisto, 3, -stiti, -: to stand on, place oneself on, 124, a

8. [tempestatas, -tatis, f: weather]; tempus, -poris,
n: time, 95

TRANSLATION

hastened by fate, or the intrigues of Livia, their step-
mother, removed both Lucius Caesar, who was go-
ing to the Spanish armies, and Gajus also, (as he
was) returning from Armenia, weakened by a
wound; and since Drusus had already died, Tiberius
Nero alone remained of the step-sons, and every-
thing turned to his favor: he was considered as the
son of Augustus, the colleague of the emperor, and
the associate of the tribunitial power; he was fre-
quently proclaimed (as such,) throughout all the
armies, not as before, by the secret artifices of his
mother, but by her open direction.

7. For, Livia influenced the aged Augustus so
much that he banished to Planasia Agrippa Postu-
mus, his only grandson, uncouth, indeed, in fine arts,
and foolishly fierce by the strength of his body, yet
not found (guilty) of any crime.

Moreover, he placed Germanicus, the son of Dru-
sus, over the eight legions near the Rhine, and or-
dered Tiberius to adopt him, in order that he might
be secured with many safeguards, even though there
was a youth in the family of Tiberius.

8. At that time no war was waged, except against

ANNALS

manos supererat, abolendae magis infamiae ob amissum cum Quintilio Varo exercitum quam cupidine proferendi imperii aut dignum ob praemium. Domi res tranquillae, eadem magistratum *vocabula*; iuniores post Actiacam victoriam, *etiam senes* plerique inter bella civium nati: quotusquisque reliquus qui rem publicam vidisset?

9. *Igitur* verso civitatis statu nihil usquam prisci et integri moris: omnes exuta aequalitate iussa principis *aspectare*, nulla in praesens formidine, dum Augustus aetate validus seque et domum et pacem sustentavit.

Postquam provecta jam senectus aegro et corpore fatigabatur *aderatque* finis et spes novae, pauci bona libertatis in cassum *disserere*, plures bellum *pavescere*, alii *cupere*;

pars *multo* maxima imminentes dominos variis rumoribus *differebant*: trucem Agrippam et ignominia

manos supererat, *idque* abolendae magis infamiae ob amissum cum Quintilio Varo exercitum, quam cupidine proferendi imperii, aut dignum ob *aliud* praemium. Domi res tranquillae *erant*, eadem *enim* magistratum *nomina vigeant*; iuniores *cives* post Actiacam victoriam, *seniores vero* plerique inter bella civium nati *erant*, *et sic* quotusquisque *erat* reliquus, qui *priscam* rem publicam vidisset?

9. *Re enim vera*, verso civitatis statu nihil usquam prisci et integri moris *remanebat*: nulla in praesens formidine, dum Augustus aetate validus seque et domum et pacem *sustentaret*, omnes exuta aequalitate iussa principis *aspectabant*.

Provecta autem senectute, cum aegro jam corpore fatigaretur *adessetque* finis *tranquillitatis* et spes novae *dominationis*, pauci bona libertatis in cassum *disserebant*; plures bellum *pavescebant*, alii *idem* *cupiebant*;

pars *vero* maxima variis imminentes dominos rumoribus *differebat*, *etquidem*: trucem Agrippam et

EX ANNALIBUS.

VOCABULARY

supersum, -esse, -fui, -, : to be over and above, remain
 aboleo, 2, -levi, -letum: to destroy, cleanse, 118
 infamia, 1: ill report, shame, dishonor, infamy, 66, a
 tranquillus, 3: tranquil, calm, peaceful
 vigeo, 2, vigui, -, : to be vigorous, thrive, flourish
 Actiacus, 3 (fr. Actium,): of Actium
 quotus, 3: which in line?
 quotusquisque, 3: of what ever number in a line
 reliquus, 3: remaining, left
 priscus, 3: ancient, old
 vidisset, 120, c2

9. mos, moris, m: custom, usage, wont, morality,
 in praesens: for the present (67, c
 formido, -dinis, f (fr. formido, 1, to fear): fear,
 dread, 49, b

sustento, 1: to hold up, support, sustain, 120, c6
 exuo, 3, -ui, -utum: to draw, take, put off, 114, b
 aspecto, 1: to look at, observe, watch for

dominatio, -nis, f, (fr. dominor, 1, to rule): domain

in cassum (fr. cassus, 3, empty, useless): in vain
 dissero, 3, -rui, -rtum: to treat, discuss
 pavesco, 3, -, -: to fear, be afraid

immineo, 2, -nui, -: to hang over, threaten, look out
 differo, 3, distuli, dilatum: to spread, postpone, differ
 trux, -ucis: rough, savage, fierce
 accendo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: to kindle, light up, provoke

Page one hundred and ninety four

TRANSLATION

the Germans, and it (was carried on) rather from the desire to wipe out the dishonor (arising) from the army lost together with Quintilius Varus, than to extend the empire, or for any other worthy reward. Everything was peaceful at home, because the same names of magistrates were (still) in use; (besides) the young citizens were (all) born after the victory of Actium, and the older mostly during the civil wars; how many therefore were left who had seen the ancient republic?

9. To be truthful, because of the change in government, nothing remained of the ancient and integral self-esteem of the citizens, for, as long as Augustus maintained himself in his full vigor, (preserved) his dynasty and (ruled in) peace; all, without any fear for the present, casting away the republican equality, watched for the emperor's decrees.

But when in his advanced age he was burdened with infirmities and the end of tranquillity and the prospect of a new sway drew near, a few disputed theoretically the supreme good of the citizens' liberty; very many feared a war; others desired it;

but the great majority spread various rumors around concerning the possible succeeding emperors, namely: that the fierce Agrippa (Posthumus) en-

ANNALS

accensum *non* aetate neque rerum experientia tantae molis parem;

10. Tiberium Neronem maturum annis, spectatum bello, *set* vetere atque insita Claudiae familiae superbia, multaque indicia saevitiae quamquam premantur erumpere;

hunc et prima ab infantia eductum in domo regnatrice; congestos juveni consulatus, triumphos; ne iis quidem annis, quibus Rhodi specie secessus exul egerit, aliud quam iram et simulationem et secretas libidines meditatum;

accedere matrem muliebri inpotentia; serviendum feminae duobusque insuper adulescentibus, qui rem publicam interim premant, quandoque distrahant.

11. Haec atque talia agitantibus gravescere vale-

ignominia accensum *neque* aetate neque rerum experientia tantae molis parem esse;

10. Tiberium Neronem *esse* maturum annis, spectatum bello, *sed* vetere atque insita Claudiae familiae superbia multisque indicibus saevitiae, quamquam suppressis, tamen erumpentibus;

eumque, cum et prima ab infantia in domo regnatrice educatus esset, ac juveni consulatus triumphique congesti essent, ne iis quidem annis, quibus Rhodi specie secessus exul ageret, aliud quam iram et simulationem et secretas libidines meditatum esse;

accedere matris effrenatam intemperantiam: sicque serviendum fore feminae duobusque insuper adulescentibus, qui rem publicam interim premerent, aliquandoque distraherent.

11. Haec atque talia agitantibus et quibusdam

EX ANNALIBUS.

VOCABULARY

moles, -lis, f: mass, heap, difficulty
par, -is: equal, like, suitable, appropriate, 78, a

10. insitus, 3, (fr. insero, 3, -sēvi, -sītum, to sow in): inborn, innate, inbred, 79
indicium, 2, (fr. indico, 1, to reveal): mark, sign, evidence, 86
saevitia, 1, (fr. saevus, 3, raging, wild): ferocity, cruelty
erumpo, 3, -rupi, -ruptum: to break out or forth
spectatus, 3, (fr. specto, 1, to regard): respected, excellent
regnatricis, -ricis, (fr. regno, 1, to reign): she who reigns, royal, 49, d
ēdūco, 1: to bring up, 125, b; [ēdūco, 3, -uxi, -uctum: to lead out]
congero, 3, -gessi, -gestum: to heap together, 125, b
Rhodus, 2, f, island of the coast of Asia Minor
secessus, 4 (fr. secedo, 3, -cessi, -ssum, to retire, withdraw): retirement, recess
exsul, -is: banished, exiled; ageret, 120, c3
simulatio, 1 (fr. simulo, 1, to simulate): feint, pretense, pretext
meditor, 1: to think over, consider
accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to approach, assent, be added, 57, 4
effrenatus, 3, (fr. effreno, 1, to let loose): unrestrained

11. agito, 1, (fr. ago, 3, to drive): to put in constant motion, discuss
agitantibus: as they (the people) were discussing, (here translated by) after, 115, 114, c

TRANSLATION

raged by his (late) humiliation would be qualified neither by his age nor by his experience for such a charge;

10. that Tiberius Nero would be mature in age, renowned in war, but with the ancient and inbred pride of the Claudian family and with many traits of cruelty, though repressed yet breaking forth;

that, since even from his earliest childhood he had been educated in the imperial palace, and because as a young man he had been granted the consulship and triumphs, even in those years during which he dwelt at Rhodes, banished (from Rome), under the pretext of (enjoying) a rest, he did nothing else than plan revenge, simulation, and secret lusts;

then, that to this would be added the uncurbed ambition of his mother; and as a result they would have to be subjected to a woman besides her two sons, who in the meantime would oppress the republic and then divide it.

intemperantia, 1, (fr. tempero, 1: to control): intemperance, excess, arrogance

[importentia, 1: importence]

insuper: above, over, moreover, besides

aliquando: once, at any time, sometimes

[quandoque: whenever]

interim: meanwhile

distraho, 3, -traxi, -tractum: to pull apart, divide

11. After these and similar events, Augustus'

ANNALS

tudo Augusti, et *quidam* scelus uxoris suspectabant. Quippe rumor incesserat paucos ante menses Augustum, electis consciis et comite uno Fabio Maximo, Planasiam vectum *ad visendum* Agrippam;

multas illic utrimque lacrimas et signa caritatis spemque ex eo fore ut juvenis penatibus avi redderetur; quod Maximum uxori Marciae aperuisse, illam Liviae; *gnarum id* Caesari: neque multo post extincto Maximo, — (dubium an quaesita morte), — auditos in funere ejus Marciae gemitus semet in-cusantis, quod causa exitii marito fuisset.

12. Utcumque se *ea* res habuit, vixdum ingressus Illyricum Tiberius properis matris litteris accitur; neque satis compertum est, spirantem adhuc Augustum apud urbem Nolam an exanimem repererit. Acribus namque custodiis domum et vias saep-

quidem uxoris scelus suspectantibus, *ingravescebat* valetudo Augusti. Rumor quippe incesserat paucos ante menses Augustum *una cum* electis consciis et Fabio comite Maximo, Planasiam vectum *esse visum* Agrippam;

multas illic utrimque lacrimas *fusas* et signa caritatis *edita* spemque ex eo *fuisse*, ut juvenis penatibus avi redderetur; quodve a Maximo uxori Marciae *et ab illa* Liviae *non latente* Caesarem *apertum esse*; neque multo post extincto Maximo, — dubium *usque erat*, an quaesita *actum esset* morte, — auditos *esse* in funere ejus Marciae gemitus semet in-cusantis, quod causa exitii marito fuisset.

12. Utcumque se res haberet, vixdum Tiberius Illyricum ingressus *esset*, properis matris litteris accitur; neque satis compertum est, spirantem adhuc Augustum apud urbem Nolam an exanimem reperisset. Acribus namque custodiis domum et vias

EX ANNALIBUS.

VOCABULARY

ingravesco, 3, -, -; to become heavy, annoying
suspecto, 1: to look at, suspect, (114,a, translated by a sentence)
incedo, 3, -cessi, -ssum: to walk, advance, spread
consciis, 3: cognizant of, privy to (abroad)
veho, 3, vexi, vectum: to carry, ride, drive, 57, 4
viso, 3, visi, visum: to contemplate, call upon, visit,
utrimque: from or on both sides (116, a
lacrima, 1: tear
fundo, 3, fudi, fusum: to pour, shed, 57, 4
lateo, 2, -tui, -titum: to be hidden, concealed, 61; 115
aperio, 4, -rui, -rtum: to open, disclose, 57, 4
[ignarus, 3: ignorant of]
extinguo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: to extinguish, kill, 114, b
usque: at every point, (often cannot be translated)
gemitus, 4, (fr. gemo, 3, -mui, -mitum, to sigh):
funus, -neris, n: funeral, interment (groan, lament
incuso, 1: accuse, blame
exitium, 2, (fr. exeo, to go out): destruction, ruin,
death

12. se habere: to be, 120, c, 2
vixdum: scarcely, hardly, 120 c, 6
Illyricum, 2, or Illyria, 1: Dalmatia
accio, 4: to call to, summon, 101
comperio, 4, -peri, -pertum: to find out, discover
spiro, 1: to breathe, exhale, live
exanimis, 2, or -mus, 3: lifeless, senseless
reperio, 4, rep(p)eri, repertum: to find, meet, 132
acer, acris, acre: sharp, cutting, energetic, harsh
custodia, 1, (fr. custodio, 4, to guard): custody,
sentinels

TRANSLATION

health began to fail, so that some suspected his wife's contrivances. Indeed, the rumor was passed around that a few months before, Augustus, in company with his select cronies and his attendant Maximus Fabius, has journeyed to Planasia to visit Agrippa.

There both had shed many tears, and mutual affection had been shown, which had been a source of hope that the young man would return to his homestead; (moreover it was rumored) that this secret had been disclosed by Maximus to Marcia, his wife, and by her to Livia; (and this fact was) not hidden from Caesar; (it was also rumored) that not long after, when Maximus had died, — it was yet doubtful whether it had happened by murder or suicide, — the wailing of Marcia accusing herself as the cause of her husband's death was heard at his funeral.

12. In whatever manner it might have happened, scarcely had Tiberius entered Illyricum, when he was recalled by his mother's letter; nor was it ever clearly proven whether he had found Augustus alive or dead at Nola. For Livia fenced the house and the roads with harsh watchmen, and during that time favorable tidings were spread, (and) after

saepio, 4, saepsi, -ptum: to fence, enclose
laetus, 3: joyful, glad

37. CORNELIUS TACITUS

60 - 118 A.D.

Course 112

ANNALS

serat Livia, laetique interdum nuntii vulgabantur, donec provisio quae tempus *monebat*, simul excessisse Augustum et rerum potiri Neronem fama eadem tulit.

13. Primus facinus novi principatus fuit Postumi Agrippae caedes, quem *ignarum inermumque* quamvis *firmatus* animo centurio (custodiae appositus jussu Liviae) aegre confecit.

saepserat Livia, laetique interdum nuntii vulgabantur, donec provisio, quae tempus *exegisset*, simul *vita* excessisse Augustum et rerum potiri *Tiberium* Neronem fama eadem tulit.

13. Primus facinus novi principatus fuit caedes Postumi Agrippae, quem *necopinantem inermemque* quamvis *considerato* animo centurio (custodiae appositus jussu Liviae) aegre confecit.

EX ANNALIBUS.

VOCABULARY

vulgo, 1: *to communicate, spread abroad, divulge*
 exigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to exact, demand, require,*
 120, c 3

excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to go out; e vita exc.: to die*

potior, 4, -titum: *to get possession of, obtain, 93, b*

13. caedes, -dis, f, (*fr. caedo, 3, cecidi, caesum, to hew, cut down*): *killing, slaughter*

necopinans, -ntis: *unaware*

(inermus, 3, *arch, for:*) inermis, 2: *unarmed*
 aegre: *hardly, scarcely*

TRANSLATION

everything which the circumstances required had been prepared, the rumor told at the same time that Augustus had expired and that Tiberius Nero had taken possession of the empire.

fama, 1: *talk, rumor*

13. *The first outrage of the new regime was the murder — on Livia's order — of Postumus Agrippa, whom unsuspecting and unarmed (as he was), the centurion, the prefect of his guard — though acting with full deliberation — killed (only) after a hard fight.*

37. CORNELIUS TACITUS.

60 - 118 A.D.

Course 114

"Of Untutored and Crude Style." (His own opinion)

AGRICOLA

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Clarorum vivorum facta moresque posteris tradere, antiquitus usitatum; ne nostris quidem temporibus quamquam incuriosa suorum aetas omisit, quotiens magna aliqua ac nobilis virtus vicit ac su-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Clarorum vivorum facta moresque posteris tradere *etiam* antiquitus usitatum *est*; ne nostris quidem temporibus aetas *nostra*, quamquam suorum *vivorum* incuriosa *videatur*, *id omittit*, quotiescumque

DE VITA GNAEI JULII AGRICOLAE

"incondita et rudi voce."

VOCABULARY

1. mos, moris, m: *custom, usage, wont; pl. morals*
 posterius, -rorum, (*fr. posterus, subsequent*): *poster-*
ity, 27, f

usito, 1, (*frequ. of utor, 3, usum, to use*): *to use; in*
passive: to be usual

usitor, 1, *intr.:* *to use often*

incuriosus, 3, (*fr. incuria, 1, carelessness*): *careless,*
negligent

TRANSLATION

1. *It was a custom of old to write for posterity a history of the deeds and the virtues of famous men; and although our age seems indifferent to its great men, it does not forget them, not even in our days, as often as great and noble virtue conquers and over-*

[quotiens], quoties: *how often, as often as*
 quotiescumque: *how often soever; vicerit, 120, c2*

AGRICOLA

pergressa est vitium parvis magnisque civitatibus commune, ignorantiam recti et invidiam.

2. Sed apud priores ut agere digna memoratu pronum magisque in aperto erat, ita celeberrimus quisque ingenio ad prodendam virtutis memoriam sine gratia aut ambitione bonae tantum conscientiae pretio ducebatur.

3. Ac plerique suam ipsi vitam narrare fiduciam potius morum quam arrogantiam arbitrati sunt; nec id Rutilio et Scauro citra fidem aut obtrectationi fuit: adeo virtutes isdem temporibus optime aestimantur, quibus facillime gignuntur.

At nunc narraturo mihi vitam defuncti hominis venia opus fuit, quam non petissem incursaturus tam saeva et infesta virtutibus tempora.

magna aliqua virtus ac nobilis et indolentiam et invidiam veri meriti, duplex hoc civitatibus parvis magnisque commune vitium, vicerit ac supergressa sit.

2. Sed, cum apud priores memoratu digna in aperto agere magis pronum esset, celeberrimus quisque ingenio ad prodendam virtutis memoriam sine ambiendis aut acceptandis gratiis, pretio tantum bonae conscientiae ducebatur.

3. Ac plerique suam propriam vitam narrare fiduciam potius morum quam arrogantiam arbitrati sunt; nec id Rutilio aut Scauro dedecori aut obtrectationi fuit; virtutes enim isdem temporibus, quibus facillime gignerentur, optime aestimabantur.

Attamen nunc narraturo vitam defuncti hominis venia mihi praeprimis opus fuit, quam non petissem, nisi tam saeva et virtutibus infesta tempora incur-saturus.

AGRICOLA.

VOCABULARY

[rectus, 3: straight, right, proper, suitable, 26, f]
indolentia, 1 (fr. doleo, to suffer pain): indolence
supergridior, 3, -gressum: to overstep, surpass,
120, c3

invidia, 1 (fr. invideo, 2, -visi, -visum, to envy): envy

2. priores, -rum (fr. prae, before): ancestors, 27, g
in aperto (fr. aperio, 4, -rui, -rtum, to open): publicly
pronus, 3: inclined, well-disposed
cum, 125, b
prodo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to bring forth, reveal, betray,
ambio, 4: to go around, strive after, 118 (118
pretio ducebatur (cuique), 77

3. fiducia, 1: confidence, trust, reliance
Publius Rutilius Rufus, consul in 105 B.C. banished
unjustly

Marcus Aemilius Scaurus, consul in 115 and 107
prosecuted for accepting bribes from Jugurtha,
hence nobody read his book. Cicero.

dedecus, -coris, n: dishonor, 77

obtrectatio, -nis, (fr. obtrecto, 1, to disparage): dis-
paragement, 77

gigno, 3, genui, genitum: to beget, bear, bring forth,
120, c3

defungor, 3, -nctum: to finish, complete, die

venia, 1: indulgence, forgiveness, permission

opus est, 83, a

infestus, 3: hostile, 78

petissem, 103, b

praeprimis: first of all

TRANSLATION

comes indolence and envy of true greatness, that
twofold vice common in towns large and small.

2. Moreover, since it was rather easy in our an-
cestors' days to perform in public deeds worthy of
remembrance, everyone remarkable for his talent
was led to write a memory of his achievements,
without seeking applause or accepting it (if it came
unsought), but only for the reward of a good con-
science.

3. And many thought that to portray their own
lives was (an evidence of) their genuine belief in
public morals, rather than arrogance (on their part);
(thus) the (autobiography) was no discredit or dis-
grace to Rutilius and Scaurus: for virtues were
greatly esteemed in those days when they were very
easily practiced.

And now, notwithstanding this, I who am about
to relate the life of a deceased, had first of all to
beg permission (from Trajan) which I would not
have asked, unless I were running across a time
cruel and hostile to virtues.

incurso, 1 (frequ. of incurro): to run in, run across,
111, a

AGRICOLA

4. Legimus, cum Aruleno Rustico Paetus Thrasea, Herennio Senecioni Priscus Helvidius laudati essent, capitale fuisse, neque in ipsos modo auctores, sed in libros quoque *eroum* saevitum, delegato triumviris ministerio ut monumenta clarissimorum ingeniorum in comitio ac foro urerentur.

5. Scilicet illo igne vocem populi Romani et libertatem senatus et conscientiam generis humani aboleri arbitrabantur, expulsis insuper sapientiae professoribus atque omni bona arte in exilium acta, ne quid usquam honestum occurreret.

Dedimus profecto grande *patientiae* documentum; et sicut vetus aetas vidit quid ultimum in libertate esset, ita nos quid in servitute, adempto per inquisitiones etiam loquendi audiendique commercio. Memoriam quoque ipsam cum voce perdidissemus si tam in nostra potestate esset oblivisci quam tacere.

4. Legimus *enim*, cum *ab* Aruleno Rustico Paetus Thrasea *et a* Herennio Senecione Priscus Helvidius laudati *in libris* essent, capitale fuisse, neque in ipsos modo auctores, sed delegato triumvirorum ministerio in libros quoque *ita* saevitum *esse*, ut monumenta clarissimorum ingeniorum *istorum* in comitio *publice* urerentur.

5. Scilicet illo igne vocem populi Romani et libertatem senatus et conscientiam generis humani aboleri arbitrabantur, expulsis insuper sapientiae professoribus atque omni bona arte in exilium acta *insistebant*, ne quid usquam honestum occurreret.

Dedimus profecto grande *ignaviae* documentum; et sicut vetus aetas vidit, quid ultimum in libertate esset, ita nos adempto per inquisitiones etiam loquendi audiendique commercio *experti sumus*, quid in servitute *contineretur*. Memoria quoque ipsam cum voce perdidissemus, si tam in nostra potestate esset oblivisci quam tacere.

AGRICOLA.

VOCABULARY

4. capitalis, 2 (*fr. caput*): *imperiling one's life*
Junius Rusticus Arulenus, *tribune in the year 66 A.D.*
Herrenius Senecio, *a native of Spain, a friend of Pliny*
Paetus Thrasea, *senator, put to death by Nero and Priscus Helvidius, his son-in-law, banished by Nero, and put to death by Vespasian; both opponents of the imperial power.*
delego, 1: *to delegate*, 114, b
comitium, 2, *place of the comitia, -orum, assembly of the people, near the forum*

5. aboleo, 3, -levi, -letum: *to abolish*
insuper: *moreover, besides*
professor, -is, m (*fr. profiteor*, 2, -fessum, *to profess any kind of art*): *teacher, professor*, 114, b
insisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum: *to stand on, persist*
usquam: *anywhere, in any case*
occurro, 3: *to occur, meet, present itself*, 124, a
ignavia, 1: *sloth, cowardice*
commercium, 2: *trade, commerce, intercourse, communication*, 114, b
contineretur, 132
perdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to destroy, lose*, 109, c
obliviscor, 3, -litum: *to forget*
taceo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to be silent, not to speak*

TRANSLATION

4. *For, we read when Paetus Thrasea was praised in books by Rusticus Arulenus, and Priscus Helvidius by Herrenius, it was a capital (crime), and (Domitian) was enraged not only against the authors themselves, but also against their books through (the sentence of) the delegated triumvirs, so that the works of such very renowned writers were burned publicly in the juridical forum.*

(*book, written work*)
monumentum, 2 (*fr. moneo, remind*): *monument*,
saevio, 4: *to rage, be enraged*
uro, 3, ussi, ussum: *to burn*, 124, b

5. *Evidently, they thought that the voice of the Roman people, the liberty of the senate, and the conscience of the human race was abolished by that fire; moreover, by expelling the teachers of philosophy, and by banishing all fine arts they insisted that no honest thing might any longer remain.*

In fact, we gave a great proof of our cowardice; and as the former age saw what was excessive in liberty, so being deprived by inquisitions even of the practice of speaking and hearing, we experienced what was meant by servitude. With our voice we should have lost also our memory, if it were as much in our power to forget, as to be silent.

AGRICOLA

6. Nunc demum redit animus; et quamquam primo statim beatissimi saeculi ortu Nerva Caesar res olim dissociabiles miscuerit, *principatum* ac libertatem, augeatque *cotidie* felicitatem temporum Nerva Trajanus, nec spem modo ac votum securitas publica, sed ipsius voti fiduciam ac robur assumpserit, *natura* tamen infirmitatis humanae tardiora sunt remedia quam mala; et *ut* corpora nostra lente augescunt, cito extinguuntur, sic ingenia studiaque oppresseris facilius quam revocaveris.

7. Subit quippe etiam ipsius inertiae dulcedo, et invisae primo desidia postremo etiam amatur.

Quid, *si* per quindecim annos, grande mortalis aevi spatium, multi fortuitis casibus, promptissimus *quisque* saevitia principis interciderunt, pauci, et ut ita dixerim, non modo *aliorum* sed etiam *nostri* superstites sumus, exemptis e media vita tot annis, quibus juvenes ad senectutem, senes prope ad ipsos exactae

6. Nunc demum redit animus; et quamquam primo statim beatissimi saeculi ortu Nerva Caesar res olim dissociabiles *tyrannidem* ac libertatem miscuerit, augeatque *quotidie* felicitatem temporum Nerva Trajanus, nec spem modo ac votum securitas publica, sed *etiam* ipsius voti fiduciam ac robur assumpserit, *secundum* tamen *naturam* infirmitatis humanae tardiora sunt remedia quam mala; et *sicuti* corpora nostra lente augescunt, *et* cito extinguuntur, sic ingenia studiaque oppresseris facilius quam revocaveris.

7. Subit quippe etiam *servitutem* ipsius inertiae dulcedo, et invisae primo desidia postremo etiam amatur.

Nam quid *aliud est*, quod per quindecim annos, grande mortalis aevi spatium, *cum* multi fortuitis casibus, promptissimi *vero* saevitia principis interciderunt, pauci et, ut ita dixerim, non modo *aliis* sed etiam *nobis* superstites sumus *et*, exemptis e media vita tot annis, quibus juvenes ad senectutem

AGRICOLA.

VOCABULARY

6. primus statim: *the very first*
 Marcus Cocceius Nerva (96-98 A.D.) who appointed Tacitus as consul
 dissociabilis, 2: *unharmonizing, discordant, incompatible*
 tyrannis, -idis, f, Greek: *tyranny* (patible)
 augeo, 2, auxi, auctum: *to make increase*, 120, c 3
 [cotidie, archaic for:] quotidie: *every day*
 Marcus Ulpius Trajanus (98-117 A.D.) was adopted by Nerva
 votum, 2, (fr. voveo, 2, vovi, votum, to vow): *vow, wish, desire*
 robur, -boris, n: *strength, hard wood, oak wood*
 assumo, 3, -sumpsi, -ptum: *to take to oneself*, 120, c 3
 remedium, 2, (fr. medeor, to cure): *remedy*, 49, f
 augesco, 3, auxi, -: *to begin to grow*
 extinguo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to put out, extinguish*
 revoco, 1: *to call again or back, revoke*, 103

7. subeo, 4: *to go or crawl under, befall*, 42, 3; 61, a
 inertia, 1, (fr. iners, -rtis, slothful): *slothfulness*
 desidia, (fr. deses, desidis, idle): *idleness, inactivity*
 Titus Flavius Domitianus (81-96 A.D.), a cruel persecutor of the Christians; ruled 15 years
 fortuitus, 3, (fr. fors, -rtis, f, chance): *incidental*, 88
 promptus, 3: *ready, quick, disposed*
 intercido, 3, -cidi, -: *to fall between, perish*
 ita dixerim, *interjected phrase: so to say*, 103
 superstes, -stis: *surviving*, 26, d; 78

TRANSLATION

6. Now, at length, our spirits begin to revive; and although in the very beginning of a glorious era, Caesar Nerva has reconciled the sovereign power and liberty, things formerly incompatible, and Trajan daily spread the happiness of his time (by a most cruel persecution of thousands of innocent Christians?), and although public security (?) entertained not only (new) hope(s) and wish(es), but also confidence and strength of its hope(s); nevertheless, according to the nature of human weakness, the remedy works more slowly than the disease. Just as our bodies develop slowly and waste away quickly, so you can suppress talents and studies more easily than you can revive them. (Tacitus' low flattery of the living emperor.)

7. Surely, (after a while) the charm of idleness soon steals into an (inactive) servitude itself, and leisure at first hated finally is even loved.

For, what else (than charm of idleness) is it that as few survivors not only of others, but, so to say, also of ourselves, we old men have come by slavish silence almost to the end of our completed old age, through fifteen years, — a great span of so many years lost from our mortal life, — during which

AGRICOLA

aetatis terminos per silentium venimus? Non tamen pigebit vel incondita ac rudi voce memoriam prioris servitutis ac testimonium praesentium bonorum composuisse. Hic *interim* liber honori Agricolae soceri mei destinatus, professione pietatis aut laudatus erit aut excusatus.

8. Gnaeus Iulius Agricola, vetere et illustri Foro-juliensium colonia ortus utrumque avum procuratorem Caesarum habuit, quae equestris nobilitas est.

Pater illi Julius Graecinus senatorii ordinis, studio eloquentiae sapientissimaeque notus, iisque ipsis virtutibus iram Gaii Caesaris meritis: namque M. Silanum accusare jussus et, quia abnuebat, interfectus est.

9. Mater Julia Porcilla fuit, rarae castitatis. In hujus sinu *indulgentia*que educatus, per omnem honestarum artium cultum pueritiam adulescentiamque transegit.

pervenerunt, senes prope ad ipsos exactae aetatis terminos per *servile* venimus silentium?

Non tamen pigebit *me* vel INCONDITA AC RUDI VOCE memoriam prioris servitutis ac testimonium praesentium bonorum composuisse. *Ideoque* hic liber *ex illis maestissimis temporibus depromptus*, memoriae et honori Agricolae soceri mei destinatus professione pietatis aut laudatus erit aut *saltem* excusatus.

8. Gnaeus Julius Agricola, vetere et illustri colonia Foro-julio ortus utrumque avum procuratorem Caesarum habuit, quae equestris nobilitas est.

Pater illi Julius Graecinus senatorii ordinis, studio eloquentiae sapientissimaeque notus, iisque ipsis virtutibus iram Gaji Caesaris meritis *est*: namque Marcum Silanum accusare jussus et, quia abnuebat, interfectus est.

9. Mater Julia Porcilla fuit, rarae castitatis. In hujus sinu *diligentia*que educatus, per omnem honestarum artium cultum transegit pueritiam adulescentiamque.

AGRICOLA.

VOCABULARY

pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to arrive, reach*
 exactus, 3, (fr. exigo, -egi, -actum, *to require*):
accurate, exact, precise
 vel before an adj.: *eventhough, very*
 inconditus, 3, (condo, 3, condidi, -ditum, *to put together*): *disordered, disarranged, confused, ir-*
maestus, 3: sad, sorrowful (regular)
 depromo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: *to take, fetch out*
 socer, -eri, m: *father-in-law*

8. Foro-julium^u or Forum Julii: *Frejus, founded by Caesar*
 procurator, -is, m: *manager, administrator, treasurer*
 quae, here according to classical usage agrees with nobilitas instead of procuratorem
 equester, -tris, (fr. equus, 2, horse): *equestrian, knight, 49, r*
 Marcus Silvanus, *father-in-law of Caligula*
 abnuo, 3, -nui, -nutum, -nuiturus, 3: *to refuse, deny*
 interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to destroy, murder, slay*
 40

9. rarus, 3: *rare, 67, d*
 transigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to pass time, settle*

TRANSLATION

youth attained old age, whilst many perished eventually, and the zealous republicans (succumbed) to the cruelty of the emperor?

Yet I am not ashamed to write memoirs of our former slavery and the history of our present affairs, even though in a style untutored and crude. Hence, this book, sprung from those very sad times, and destined for the memory and honor of Agricola, my father-in-law, shall be praised or at least excused as a manifestation of my filial piety

8. Gnaeus Julius Agricola, born in the ancient and illustrious colony of Foro-julium, had as grandfathers (men who were) treasurers to the Caesars, (which office) was of equestrian nobility.

His father Julius Graecinus who was of senatorial rank, and eminent for oratory and philosophy, incurred by his very virtues the wrath of Caligula: for he had been commanded to accuse Marcus Silanus (a man of unblemished character), and was put to death because he declined.

9. His mother Julia Porcilla was of rare purity. He was brought up under her tender love and solicitude, and spent his boyhood and youth in a complete course of the humanities.

AGRICOLA

Arcebat eum ab illecebris peccantium praeter ipsius bonam integramque naturam, quod statim parvulus sedem ac magistram studiorum Massiliam habuit, locum Graeca comitate et provinciali parsimonia mixtum ac bene compositum.

10. Memoria teneo solitum ipsum narrare se prima in iuventa studium philosophiae acrius ultra quam concessum Romano ac senatori, hausisse, ni prudentia matris incensum ac flagrantem animum coërcuisset.

Scilicet sublime et erectum ingenium pulchritudinem ac speciem magnae excelsaeque gloriae vehementius quam caute appetebat. Mox mitigavit ratio et aetas, retinuitque, quod est difficillimum, ex sapientia modum.

11. Prima castrorum rudimenta in Britannia Suetonio Paulino, diligenti ac moderato duci approbavit, electus quem contubernio aestimaret.

Arcebat eum ab illecebris peccantium propter ipsius bonam integramque naturam eo, quod statim parvulo sedem ac magistram studiorum Massiliam elegit, locum Graeca comitate et provinciali parsimonia mixtum ac bene compositum.

10. Memoria teneo solitum ipsum narrare se prima in iuventa studium philosophiae acrius ultra quam concessum Romano ac senatori hausurum fuisse, nisi prudentia matris incensum ac flagrantem animum coërcuisset.

Scilicet sublime et erectum ingenium pulchritudinem ac speciem magnae excelsaeque gloriae vehementius quam caute appetebat. Mox mitigavit ratio et aetas, retinuitque, quod est difficillimum, ex sapientia modum.

11. Prima castrorum rudimenta in Britannia Suetonio Paulino diligenti ac moderato duci approbavit addidicisse, electusque est ab illo, quem contubernio aestimaret.

AGRICOLA.

VOCABULARY

arceo, 2, -cui, -: to shut up, keep at a distance, protect
 illecebra, 1: allurement, enticement, attraction
 Massilia, 1: Marseilles, founded by Greeks in 398 B.C.
 comitas, -tatis, f, (fr. comis, 2, obliging, kind): courtesy, 84
 parsimonia, 1, (fr. parco, 3, pepercit, parsum, to spare): thriftiness, parsimony, 84

10. haurio, 4, hausi, haustum: to draw out, imbibe, 135, d
 incendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to kindle, set fire to
 flagro, 1: to blaze, glow, flame
 coërceo, 2, -cui, -citum: to confine, restrain
 erigo, 3, erexi, -ctum: to set up, erect
 cautus, 3: cautious, careful, circumspect
 appeto, 3, -ti(v)i, -titum: to seize on, desire, seek,
 mitigo, 1: to make mild, soothe (attack)
 retineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to hold back, retain

11. rudimentum, 2, (fr. rudis, 2, rough): beginning in anything, first principles
 approbo, 1: to approve, prove, establish, 57, 4
 contubernium, 2, (fr. taberna, 1, tent): comradeship, sharing the same tent; aestimaret, 120, c 3

Page two hundred and two

TRANSLATION

Because of his good and unspoiled nature, she guarded him against the vices of sinful youth, on which account she very early chose Marseilles for her boy as his residence and the place of his studies; (for this was a city) adorned and enriched with Grecian refinement and sober provincial economy.

10. I remember he used to relate that in his early youth he would have been devoted to the study of philosophy more passionately than was permissible for a Roman and a senator, if the prudence of his mother had not restrained his eager and ardent mind (which would have led him to the Christianity so bloodily persecuted).

For, his elevated and upright character seized upon the beauty and the ideal of great and supreme glory more vehemently than cautiously. (Like thousands of glorious Christian martyrs). Soon reason and age calmed (him) down, and, what is most difficult, he kept the (right) way by prudence.

11. In Great Britain under Suetonius Paulinus, a careful and prudent leader, he proved that he had mastered the fundamentals of military science, and by him (Paulinus) seemed worthy to share his tent.

AGRICOLA

Nec Agricola licenter, more juvenum qui militiam in lasciviam vertunt, neque segniter ad voluptates et commeatus titulum tribunatus et *inscitiam* rettulit: *sed noscere* provinciam, *nosci* exercitui; *discere* a peritis, *sequi* optimos; nihil appetere in jactationem, nihil ob formidinem recusare simulque et *anxius* et *intentus* agere.

12. Non sane alias exercitatio magisque in ambiguo Britannia fuit: trucidati veterani, incensae coloniae, intercepti exercitus; tum de salute, mox de victoria certavere. Quae cuncta, etsi consiliis ductuque alterius *agebantur* ac summa rerum et recuperatae provinciae gloria in ducem *cessit*, artem et usum et stimulos *addidere* juveni, intravitque animum militaris gloriae cupido, ingrata temporibus, quibus sinistra erga eminentes interpretatio *nec* minus periculum ex magna fama quam ex male.

(Liber I, 1-5)

Nec Agricola licenter, more juvenum, qui militiam in lasciviam vertunt, neque segniter ad voluptates et commeatus titulum tribunatus *retulit*: *ex contrario suum esse duxit* nosse provinciam, *notum esse* exercitui, *discere* a peritis, *sequi* optimos; nihil appetere in jactationem, nihil ob formidinem recusare simulque et *anxium* et *intentum* agere *quidquid*.

12. Non sane alias exercitatio magisque in ambiguo Britannia fuit: *nam sunt* trucidati veterani, incensae coloniae, intercepti exercitus; tum de salute, mox de victoria *certatum est*. Quae cuncta, etsi consiliis ductuque alterius *agerentur* ac summa rerum et recuperatae provinciae gloria in ducem *cederet*, artem *tamen* et usum et stimulos *addiderunt* juveni, intravitque animum militaris gloriae cupido, ingrata temporibus, quibus sinistra erga eminentes *viros* interpretatio *non* minus periculum ex magna fama quam ex mala *fuit*.

AGRICOLA.

VOCABULARY

lascivia, 1, (*fr.* lascivus, 3, *overbearing, insolent*):
segnis, 2: *slothful* (*insolence, lechery*)
commeatus, 4, (*fr.* meo, 1, *to go*): *traffic, furlough*
jactatio, -nis, f, (*fr.* jacto, 1, *to cast, boast*): *throwing, vain glory*
formido, -dinis, f, (*fr.* formido, 1, *to fear*): *fear*
recuso, 1: *to refuse*; recuso ob formidinem: *to shrink*
anxius, 3: *careful*, 56; 57, 4 (*from*
anxium et intentum, 56; anxium agere, 57, 4, *or in*
passive voice, a se anxio agi quidquid)

12. sane: *indeed, be sure, certainly*
exercito, 1: *to practice, try, harass*
ambiguus, 3: *ambiguous*, 26, f
trucido, 1: *to cut to pieces, slaughter*
intercipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to intercept*
certo, 1: *to fight*, 48, e
ductus, 4, (*fr.* duco, 3, duxi, ductum, *to lead*): *con-*
recupero, 1: *to get again, regain* (*duct*)
cedo, 3, cessi, cessum: *to yield, be attributed*, 120, c2
stimulus, 2: *goad, spur, impulse*
ingratus, 3: *unpleasant, ungrateful, unprofitable*
sinister, -tra, -trum: *left, unfavorable, adverse*
malus, 3,: *bad, of ill repute, unfavorable*

TRANSLATION

Neither by freedom, after the habit of (those) youths who turned military service into debauchery, nor by idleness did Agricola take advantage of his rank of tribune for pleasures and furloughs; on the contrary, he considered it his duty to know the province and to be acquainted with the army; to learn from experts and to imitate the best (leaders); to undertake nothing in a spirit of boastfulness, to shrink from nothing, and nevertheless, to do everything with care and circumspection.

12. *Certainly at no other time was Great Britain more harassed and in a greater (state of) uncertainty, for the veterans were massacred; the colonies burnt; and the armies captured (by Boadicea's attack); at times a battle was waged for safety, at times for glory (i. e. to rob the people of their land and liberty). Although all these things were conducted under the plans and leadership of another, and although the merit and glory of the conquered province devolved upon the leader, they all implanted in the youth the military art, tactics, and ambition; and there entered into his soul a longing for military glory (which was) unfortunate in (those) times in which an evil interpretation (of the accomplishments) of eminent men was to be feared not less from a great reputation than from a bad one.*

Satyrist

SATIRE V

Original in hexameter *

In prose.**

Si te propositi nondum pudet atque eadem est mens,
Ut bona summa putes aliena vivere quadra,
Si potes illa pati quae nec Sarmentus iniquas
Caesaris ad mensas nec vilis Gabba tulisset,
Quamvis jurato metuam tibi credere testi.

6. Ventre nihil novi frugalius. Hoc tamen ipsum
Defecisse puta, quod inani sufficit alvo,
Nulla crepido vacat? Nusquam pons et tegetis pars
Dimidia brevior? Tantine iniuria cenae,
Tam jejuna fames, cum possit honestius illic
et tremere et sordes farris mordere canini?

12. Primo fige loco, quod tu discumbere jussus
Mercedem solidam veterum capis officiorum.
Fructus amicitiae magnae cibus; imputat hunc rex,
Et quamvis rarum tamen imputat. Ergo duos post
Si libuit menses neglectum adhibere clientem,

Si te propositi nondum pudet atque eadem est mens,
ut summum bonum putes aliena vivere quadra, vel
si potes pati, quae nec Sarmentus nec vilis Gabba
ad iniquas Caesaris mensas tulerit,
quamvis jurato metuam tibi credere testi.

6. Ventre nihil novi frugalius: et puta hoc ipsum
defecisse, quod inani sufficeret alvo,
nulla crepido vacat, vel nusquam pons et tegetis pars
dimidia brevior ad mendicandum? Tantine est de-
fectus cenae, tamque esuriens fames, ut possis ad ini-
quas et tremere mensas et sordes farris mordere
canini?

12. Praeterea fige menti valide eo, quod discum-
bere jussus es, mercedem solidam veterum capis ser-
vitorum: nam praemium amicitiae cum magnis est
cibus. Imputat hunc rex, quamvis rarum tamen im-
putat. Ergo si duos post menses libuerit neglectum

EX SATURA QUINTA.

VOCABULARY

1. propositum, 2 (fr. propono, 3, -posui, -positum,
to propose): design, plan, purpose
quadra, 1: square, square dining table, quarter (of
bread), 88
Sarmentus, 2: a knight, buffoon parasite of Augus-
Gabba, 1: a slave jester of Augustus (tus
iniquus, 3: uneven, unequal, (refers to the practice
of serving good fare to patron, left-overs to
juro, 1: to swear, take an oath, 36, e (client
metuam, 103

6. frugalis, 2: frugal, sparing, economical
sufficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to be enough, satisfy, 40;
crepido, -dinis, f: base, pedestal, quay (79; 133, a
nusquam: nowhere
teges, -getis, f: mat, rug, covering
[jejunus, 3: fasting, hungry]; tanti, 68, a
fames, -mis, f: famine, hunger
sordes, -dis, f: dirt, filth
far, -rris, n: spelt, meat, bread
mordeo, 2, momordi, morsum: to bite, eat

12. figo, 3, fixi, fixum: to fix, fasten, 79
valide: very well
solidus, 3: dense, firm, solid, massive
imputo, 1: to impute, reckon
rarus, 3: loose, thin, rare, extraordinary

TRANSLATION

1. If you are not yet ashamed of the plan (you
have made) and if you are of the same opinion as
to think the chief good is to live at another man's
table, or if you can bear things which not even Sar-
mentus and the contemptible Gabba would have suf-
fered at the unequal board of Augustus, I would yet
fear to believe you, even though you were a witness
on oath.

testis, -is, c: witness

6. I know nothing more cheaply satisfied than
one's stomach; and suppose that even this (mini-
mum) which (ordinarily) satisfies the empty stom-
ach is lacking, is there no quay or no bridge and less
than half of a mat (to sit on and beg)? Is the miss-
ing of a meal so great (a matter), and is hunger so
ravenous that you should tremble at an unequal
board and munch the dirty bread of a dog?

caninus, 3 (fr. canis, -is, c, dog): of a dog, canine

12. Besides, fix this especially in your mind that
as you are asked to recline at table, you get your
reward in full for all your former services: for the
prize of your friendship with prominent men is a
meal. Rare though it be, even the king takes it into
account. Hence, if within about two months the

SATIRE V

Tertia ne vacuo cessaret culcita lecto,

invitare clientem, ne tertia in imo lecto culcita vacet, et

18. "Una simus", ait. Votorum summa. Quid ultra Quæris? Habet Trebius propter quod rumpere somnum

Debeat et ligulas dimittere, sollicitus ne Tota salutatrix jam turba peregerit orbem, Sideribus dubiis aut illo tempore quo se Frigida circumagunt pigri serraca Bootae.

18. "Una simus", aiat, hoc summum est votorum. Quid ultra desideras? Nunc sideribus disparentibus, vel prius illo tempore, quo adhuc agit serracum bo-reale piger Bootes, habet Trebius, cur somnum ab-rumpat, calceosque ligare omittat sollicitus, ne tota salutatrix turba jam peregerit orbem.

24. Qualis cena tamen? Vinum quod sucida nolit Lana pati: de conviva Corybanta videbis. Jurgia proludunt, sed mox et pocula torques Saucius et rubra deterges vulnera mappa, Inter vos quotiens libertorumque cohortem Pugna Saguntina fervet commissa lagoena.

24. Qualis tamen est cena? Vinum adest tibi, quod lana pati nolit sucida: et de convivis Corybantes formari videbis. Jurgia proludunt, sed mox poculis pugnabis saucius et mappa deterges vulnera cruenta, quotiescumque pugna fervet inter vos et libertorum cohortem Saguntinis lagoenis commissa.

EX SATURA QUINTA.

VOCABULARY

cliens, -ntis, m: *client, vassal*
lectus, 2: *bed, couch*

18. una: *together*
ultra: *on the other side of, beyond, further*
Trebius, 2, *the name of a client*
[ligula, 1 (fr. lingua, 1, tongue): *little tongue, shoe*
ligo, 1: *to tie* (strap)
[dimitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to send away*]
calceus, 2: *shoe*
omitto, 3, omisi, omisum: *to let go, omit*
sollicitus, 3: *stirred up, anxious, disturbed*
salutatrix, -ricis, (fr. saluto, 1, to greet): *greeting,*
49, d
perago, 3, -egi, -actum: *to bring to an end, complete*
sidus, -deris, n: *group of stars, constellation, star*

24. sucidus, 3: *juicy, full of sap*
lana, 1: *wool (for the fomentation of which wine was used)*
Corybantes, -ium: *the armed noisy dancing priests of Cybele*
jurgium, 2 (fr. jurgo, 1, to quarrel): *strife, quarrel*
proludo, 3, -ludi, -lusum: *to play beforehand, prelude*
poculum, 2: *drinking cup, goblet, 93, a*
[torqueo, 2, -rsi, -rtum: *to twist, hurl violently*]
saucius, 3: *wounded, injured, hurt*
detergo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: *to wipe off*
mappa, 1: *table napkin, 88*
Saguntinus, 3 (fr. Saguntum, 2, a town in Spain, famous for crockery, now Murviedro): *Saguntine, 93, a*

TRANSLATION

patron deigns to invite his neglected client, that the third place might not be unoccupied in the last couch (of his triclinium),

10. and says: "Let us be together", this is the very acme of your wishes. What further do you wish? Now, when the stars are fading (at daybreak) or even earlier at the time, when the sluggish Bootes still drives his chilly wain, Trebius has (reason) for interrupting his sleep and for leaving his shoe (laces) untied, worrying lest the greeting crowd should have completed its round (at his patron's house).

Bootes, 1: *the ox-driver in the constellation of Ursa Major, 19, c*

24. And what kind (of meal) is the supper? There is a wine which the (fresh) greasy wool would not absorb; and you will see the guests transformed into Corybantes; taunts precede, but soon wounded you will fight with goblets and wipe your gory wounds with your napkin whenever a battle, fought with Saguntine crockery, rages between you and the crowd of freedmen.

[quotiens], quoties: *how, or as many times*
quotiescumque: *whenever, how often soever*
committo, 3, -misi, -missum: *to commit, entrust, begin*

SATIRE V

30. Ipse *capillato* diffusum consule potat
Calcatamque tenet bellis socialibus *uvam*,
 Cardiaco nunquam cyathum missurus amico;
Cras bibet Albanis *aliquid* de montibus aut de
 Setinis, *cujus patriam titulumque* senectus
 Delevit multa veteris fuligine *testae*,
 Quale coronati Thræsea Helvidiusque bibebant
 Brutorum et Cassi natalibus.-----

30. *Paterfamilias* ipse diffusum consulibus *barba-*
tis vinum potat, *vel* bellis socialibus *calcatum* nun-
 quam missurus cardiaco cyathum amico; *die altero*
idem Albanis de montibus aut de Setinis bibet *vi-*
num, *cujus patriam titulumque* multa veteris *ampho-*
rae fuligine delevit senectus,
 quale coronati *hederis* Thræsea Helvidiusque *tantum*
 natalibus Bruti Cassique bibebant.-----

EX SATURA QUINTA.

VOCABULARY

30. *diffundo*, 3, -fudi, -fusum: *to pour on all sides, brighten*
 [capillatus, 3: *hairy*]; barbatus, 3: *bearded*
 potō, 1: *drink often*
 calco, 1: *to tread, tramp, press*
 cardiacus, 3: *one suffering from stomach ache*
 cyathus, 2, *Greek: ladle for filling, goblet*
 [cras: *tomorrow*]; die altero: *on the other day*
 Setinus, 3 (*fr. Setia, 1, a town in Latium, famous for its wine, now Sezze*): *Setian*
 amphora, 1, *Greek: jug*
 fuligo, -ginis, f: *soot (sometimes smoke was led through wine cellars to improve the flavor)*, 88
 hederā, 1: *ivy*, 88
 natalis, -is, m: *birthday*
 Marcus Junius Brutus, *Caesar's son, and Quintus*

TRANSLATION

30. *The host himself drinks wine, bottled during the bearded consuls' time or pressed during the civil wars, never thinking of sending a gobletful to his friend sick with a stomach ache. Tomorrow he will drink wine of the Albanian or Setian mountains, the country and name of which, old age has made illegible by reason of much mold on its old jug, such as Thræsea and Helvidius, wreathed with ivy, drank only on the birthday of Brutus and Cassius.*

Cassius Longinus, *murderers of Caesar, the violator of the Roman Constitution.*
 Paetus Thræsea, *put to death by Nero, and his son-in-law Priscus Helvidius, banished by Nero and put to death by Vespasian; both opponents of tyranny.*

39. MARCUS JUNIANUS JUSTINUS

?- 150? A.D.

Course 96

Historian

Epitome of the 44 Books of the HISTORY by TROGUS POMPEIUS (d. 9 A.D.)

WITH
archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

WITHOUT
archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Interea Philippus, dum auxilia a Graecia coëunt, nuptias Cleopatrae filiae et Alexandri, quem regem Epiri fecerat, celebrat. Dies erat pro magni-

1. Interea Philippus, dum auxilia a Graecia coëunt, nuptias filiae Cleopatrae et Alexandri, quem regem fecerat Epiri, celebrat. Dies erat pro mag-

Excerpta ex HISTORIA a TROGO POMPEIO (mortuo IX. A.D.) in XLIV Libris confecta.

VOCABULARY

1. auxilium, 2: *help, aid; pl. military power, troops*
 coëo, 4: *come together, assemble*, 42, 3; 101
 nuptiae, -arum: *marriage, nuptials*

TRANSLATION

In the meantime, whilst the military forces were assembling, Philip celebrated the nuptials of his daughter Cleopatra, and Alexander, whom he had made king of Epirus. Due to the greatness of the

HISTORY

tudine duorum regum, et collocantis filiam, et uxorem ducentis, apparatibus insignis.

2. *Sed* nec ludorum magnificentia deerat. Ad quorum spectaculum Philippus dum sine custodibus, medius inter duos Alexandros, filium generumque contenderet, Pausanias nobilis ex Macedonibus adolescens, nemini suspectus, occupatis angustiis, Philippum *in transitu* obtruncat, diemque laetitiae destinatum, foedum luctu funeris facit.

3. Creditum est etiam immissum ab Olympiade matre Alexandri fuisse; nec ipsum Alexandrum ignarum paternae caedis extitisse; *quippe non minus Olympiadem repudium et praelatam sibi Cleopatram*, quam *stuprum* Pausaniam doluisse. Alexandrum quoque, regni aemulum, fratrem ex noverca susceptum timuisse: eoque actum, ut in convivio antea, primum cum Attalo, mox cum ipso patre iurgaret adeo, ut etiam stricto gladio eum Philippus consecutus sit, aegreque a filii caede amicorum precibus exoratus.

nitudine duorum regum, et collocantis filiam et uxorem ducentis, apparatibus insignis.

2. Nec ludorum magnificentia deerat. Ad quorum spectaculum Philippus dum sine custodibus, medius inter duos Alexandros, filium generumque contenderet, Pausanias nobilis ex Macedonibus adolescens, nemini suspectus angustiis occupatis Philippum transeuntem obtruncat, diemque laetitiae destinatum luctu funeris foedum facit.

3. Creditum est *eum* etiam ab Olympiade matre Alexandri immissum fuisse; nec ipsum Alexandrum ignarum paternae caedis extitisse; *neque Olympiadem repudio et eo, quod Cleopatra ei praelata esset*, minus quam Pausaniam *stupro* doluisse; Alexandrum quoque *a regni aemulo fratre* ex noverca suscepto timuisse: eoque actum, ut in convivio antea, primum cum Attalo, mox cum ipso patre iurgaret adeo, ut etiam stricto gladio eum Philippus consecaretur, aegreque a filii caede amicorum precibus exoraretur.

HISTORIA.

VOCABULARY

colloco, 1: *to place, put, give (in marriage)*
 uxorem ducere: *to take a wife, marry*
 insignis, 2: *remarkable*
 apparatus, 4: *preparation, display*

2. gener, -eri, m: *son-in-law*
 contendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: *to stretch, strive, go*, 125, a
 suspicio, 3, -spexi, -ctum: *look up, suspect*, 78
 angustia, 1: *narrowness, narrow passage*
 obtrunco, 1: *to cut down, slay*, 101
 funus, -eris, n: *funeral*
 foedus, 3: *foul, filthy, abominable*

3. immitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to send in, incite*
 existo, 3, -stiti, -stitum: *arise, come forth, become*
 repudium, 2: *repudiation, divorce*, 94
 eo quod: *by the fact that*, 93, a
 stuprum, 2: *violation (by lust)*, 94
 doleo, 2, -lui, -liturus: *suffer pain, grieve*
 aemulus, 3: *rivalling, rival*
 noverca, 1: *stepmother*
 suscipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *take on, beget*
 timeo, also, *with the abl.*, 61
 eoque, adv.: *and so far*, 51, f
 iurgo, 1: *to quarrel, contend in words, brawl*
 stringo, 3, -nxi, -ictum: *to draw (together)*, 88
 consector, 1, (fr. sequor, follow): *pursue*, 99

TRANSLATION

two kings — the one giving his daughter (in marriage) the other taking a wife — the day was remarkable for grand preparations.

Nor did the splendor of public games fail. As Philip was proceeding to the pageant without his guards between the two Alexanders, his son and his son-in-law, Pausanias, a noble Macedonian youth, suspected by no one, took a position in a narrow passage, and slew Philip as he passed by, and made the day destined for rejoicing mournful with the sorrow of a funeral.

3. It was believed that he had been incited also by Olympias, Alexander's mother; and that Alexander himself knew of his father's assassination; and that Olympias was not less grieved because of her own repudiation and the fact that Cleopatra was preferred to her, than Pausanias was by his violation; and that Alexander feared his brother the rival for the throne, born of his stepmother: and it came so far that once at a banquet he quarreled with Attalus first, then with his father, so that Philip pursued him with unsheathed sword, and was hardly restrained by the prayers of his friends from the murder of his son.

? - 150? A.D.

HISTORY

4. His stimulis irarum *utrique* Pausaniam, de immunitate stupri sui querentem, ad tantum facinus impulsisse *creduntur*. Olympias audita regis nece cum titulo officii ad exsequias *cucurrisset*, in cruce pendentis Pausaniae capiti eadem nocte, qua venit, coronam auream imposuit: quod nemo alius audere nisi haec, superstite Philippi filio, potuisset.

5. Post haec Cleopatram, a qua pulsa Philippi matrimonio fuerat, in gremio ejus *prius* filia interfecta, finire vitam suspendio coëgit. Novissime gladium, quo rex percussus *est*, Apollini sub nomine Myrtalis consecravit: hoc enim nomen ante Olympiadis parvulae fuit. (Liber IX, C. 6-7.)

4. His stimulis irarum *uterque* Pausaniam de immunitate stupri sui querentem ad tantum facinus impulsisse *creditur*. Olympias audita regis nece, cum ad exsequias officii titulo *accurrisset*, capiti Pausaniae in cruce pendentis eadem nocte, qua venit, coronam auream imposuit, quod nemo alius audere nisi haec superstite Philippi filio potuisset.

5. Post haec Cleopatram, a qua pulsa Philippi matrimonio fuerat, in gremio ejus filia interfecta finire vitam suspendio coëgit. Novissime gladium, quo rex percussus *erat*, Apollini sub nomine Myrtalis consecravit: hoc enim nomen ante Olympiadis parvulae fuerat.

HISTORIA.

VOCABULARY

4. stimulus, 2: *incentive, stimulus*, 93, a
immunitas, -tatis, f: *immunity, impunity*
facinus, -noris, n: *villany, crime*
impello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: *impel, urge on*, 55, d
exsequiae, -arum: *funeral (ceremonies)*
titulus, 2: *label, title, pretence, pretext*, 88
accurro, 3, -curri, -rsum: *to hasten up*
[concurro, 3: *to run together, flock to*], 125, a
superstes, -stitis: *standing near, surviving*, 26, d; 115

5. gremium, 2: *lap*
suspendium, 2: *a hanging of oneself*, 88
cogo, 3, coëgi, coactum: *to drive, force, compel*
novissimus, 3, (fr. novus, 3: *new, last, late*): *final*

TRANSLATION

4. Owing to these incentives of wrath both Alexander and his mother were believed to have driven Pausanias (who was) complaining about the impunity of his violation, to so great a crime. As Olympias, hearing of the murder of the king, hastened up to the funeral under official pretence, on the very night on which she arrived she put a golden wreath on the head of Pausanias (who was) hanging on the cross; nobody else but she could have dared to (do this), under the protection of Philip's son.

5. Thereafter she compelled Cleopatra, by whom she had been rejected from Philip's matrimony, to put an end to her life by hanging herself, after her daughter had been killed on her lap. Finally, she consecrated the sword with which the king was slain to Apollo under the name of Myrtalis which was formerly the name of Olympias as a little girl.

40. CAJUS SUETONIUS TRANQUILLUS

? - 160? A.D.

Course 94

Biographer

DIVINE JULIUS

WITH
archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

WITHOUT
archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

1. Annum agens sextum decimum, patrem amisit;

1. Annum agens sextum decimum, patrem amisit;

DIVUS JULIUS.

VOCABULARY

1. annum ago, 3: *to be in - year*

TRANSLATION

1. In his sixteenth year he lost his father; under

DIVINE JULIUS

sequentibusque consulibus flamen Dialis destinatus dimissa Cossutia, quae familia equestri sed admodum dives praetextato desponsata fuerat, Corneliam Cinnae quater consulis filiam duxit uxorem, ex qua illi Julia nata est; neque ut repudiaret compelli a dictatore Sulla ullo modo potuit.

2. Quare a sacerdotio et uxoris dote et gentilicis hereditatibus multatus diversarum partium habebatur, ut etiam discedere e medio et quamquam morbo quartanae aggravante prope per singulas noctes commutare latebras cogere, seque ab inquisitoribus pecunia redimeret; donec per virgines vestales perque Mamercum Aemilium et Aurelium Cottam propinquos et affines suos veniam impetravit.

3. Satis constat Sullam, cum deprecantibus amicis et ornatissimis viris aliquamdiu denegasset atque illi pertinaciter contenderent, expugnatum tan-

sequentibusque consulibus flamen Dialis destinatus dimissa Cossutia, quae e familia equestri, sed admodum dives ei adhuc praetextato desponsata fuerat, Corneliam Cinnae quater consulis filiam duxit uxorem, ex qua ei Julia nata est; neque ut repudiaret compelli a dictatore Sulla ullo modo potuit.

2. Quare amisso sacerdotio et uxoris dote et gentilicis hereditatibus multatus est; ast adeo diversarum partium habebatur, ut etiam discedere e medio, et quamquam morbo quartanae aggravatus prope per singulas noctes commutare latebras cogere, seque non semel ab inquisitoribus pecunia redimeret; tandem per virgines vestales perque Mamercum Aemilium et Aurelium Cottam propinquos et affines suos veniam impetravit.

3. Satis constat Sullam, cum deprecantibus amicis et ornatissimis viris aliquamdiu obstitisset atque illi pertinaciter enterentur, expugnatum tan-

DIVUS JULIUS.

VOCABULARY

flamen, -minis, m: highpriest
 Dialis, 2: of Jupiter
 dimitto, 3, -misi, -missum: send away, let go, 114, b
 destino, 1: to aim, put, settle, destine
 equester, -stris, -stre: equestrian
 praetextatus, 3: clad in a bordered toga, (a boy or a admodum: very (senator)
 desponso, 1: to betroth, affianced
 quater: four times, 29, d
 repudio, 1: to repudiate, divorce, 124, a

2. dos, -otis, f: dowry, 22, d
 gentilicis, 3: of a gens, ancestral
 hereditas, -atis, f: inheritance
 mul(c)to, 1: to punish, to fine, 93, a
 diversus, 3: opposite, different
 pars, -rtis, f: part, party, politics, class, 67, d
 medius, 3: middle, public, 26, f
 morbus, 2: sickness, 93, a
 quartana, 1: ague, quarantine fever
 aggravatio, 1: to burden, weigh on, afflict
 prope: near, nearly
 latebra, 1: hiding place
 redimo, 3, -emi, -emptum: to ransom, redeem, 124, b
 tandem: at last

3. constat, impers.: it is well known, 48, b
 orno, 1: adorn, distinguish
 obsisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum: to withstand, resist, 125, a
 pertinax, -acis: firm, persistent, obstinate, 28, a
 enitor, 3, -nisum: to struggle, fight, persist, 125, a

TRANSLATION

the subsequent consuls, he as the appointed highpriest of Jupiter, having divorced Cossutia, a very rich girl of equestrian family, who had been betrothed to him (while he was) yet a boy, married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, four times consul; of her Julia was born to him; nor could he in any way be compelled by the dictator Sulla to repudiate her.

2. For that reason he was fined with the loss of his priestly office, the dowry of his wife and his ancestral inheritances; moreover, he was considered of such opposite policies, that he was compelled to depart from public life, to change his hiding places nearly every night, though afflicted by the ague, and often to ransom himself with money from the inquisitors; at last through the Vestal Virgins, Mamercus Aemilius, and Aurelius Cotta, his relations by blood and marriage, he obtained pardon.

propinquus, 3: near, relative, relation
 affinis, -is: brother-in-law or sister-in-law
 impetro, 1: to get, obtain

3. It is well known that Sulla, when he had resisted for a while the pleading of the kindest and most distinguished men, but had finally been overcome, after they obstinately persisted, cried out

DIVINE JULIUS

dem proclamasse sive divinitus sive aliqua conjectura, "vincerent ac sibi haberent, dum modo scirent eum, quem incolumem tanto opere cuperent, quandoque optimatum partibus, quas secum simul defendissent, exitio futurum: nam Caesari multos Marios inesse."

4. Stipendia prima in Asia fecit Marci Thermi praetoris contubernio; a quo ad accersendam classem in Bithyniam missus, desedit apud Nicomedem, non sine rumore prostratae pudicitiae: quem rumorem auxit, infra paucos rursus dies repetita Bithynia per causam exigendae pecuniae, quae deberetur cuidam libertino clienti suo. Reliqua militia secundiore fama fuit, et a Thermo in expugnatione Mitilenarum corona civica donatus est.

dem, sive divinitus, sive aliqua conjectura proclamasse: "Vicistis, ast vobis ipsis habeatis, atque modo sciatis eum, quem tantopere cupitis incolumem, aliquando optimatum partibus, quas nunc simul defenditis, exitio futurum esse, nam Caesari multi Marii insunt."

4. Stipendia prima in Asia fecit Marci Thermi praetoris contubernio; a quo ad accersendam classem in Bithyniam missus non sine prostratae pudicitiae rumore desedit apud Nicomedem; quem rumorem infra paucos dies ex Bithynia redux per causam exigendae pecuniae auxit, quam cuidam libertino clienti suo debebat. Reliqua militia secundiore fama fuit, et a Thermo in expugnatione Mitilenarum corona civica donatus est.

DIVUS JULIUS.

VOCABULARY

divinitus, (fr. divinus, 3): by inspiration, 28, c
 conjectura, 1, (fr. coniecto, 1, find out): conjecture,
 tantopere: so much, so greatly (49, a; 88
 incolumis, 2: safe, unharmed
 optimas, -atis, m: aristocrat, 22, a
 defendo, 3, -ndi, nsum: to defend, 133, b
 exitium, 2, (fr. exire): ruin, destruction, 49, f; 77

4. stipendium, 2: tax pay, fee
 stip. facere, or mereri: perform military service
 contubernium, 2: tent, companionship, intimacy, 88
 accerso or arcesso, 3, -sivi, -situm: to summon, bring
 prosterno, 3, -stravi, -stratum: to strew before,
 throw down, cast away
 pudicitia, 1: bashfulness, chastity; prostrata pudicitia: homosexuality
 rumor, -is, m: report, new, fame
 desido, 3, -sedi, sessum: to sink down, settle
 infra, prep: within, 50, a
 exigo, 3, -egi, -actum: to exact, demand, require
 libertinus, 3: libertine

TRANSLATION

either by inspiration or conjecture: "You have conquered, but you have to impute (the consequences) to yourselves, and notice well that he whom you want so much to be safe will some day be the ruin of the class of the aristocrats, which you likewise defend, for there are many Mariuses in Caesar."

4. He performed his military service in Asia in the intimacy of Marcus Thermus, the praetor; sent by him to bring the fleet to Bithynia, he lingered with Nicomedes, not without the report of having thrown away (all sense of) shame; returning within a few days from Bithynia, he increased this rumor by being sued for repaying money which he owed to one of his libertine clients. The rest of his military life was (passed) under more favorable reputation; he was even rewarded with the civic crown at the capture of Mitilene.

secundus, 3: second, prosperous

Writer of Anecdotes. An unreliable Grammarian

ATTICAN NIGHTS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists.

Italoi (Greek): Cattle; Italia: Cattle-land

1. Timaeus in historiis, quas oratione Graeca de REBUS POPULI ROMANI composuit, et M. Varro in ANTIQUITATIBUS RERUM HUMANARUM, terram Italiam de Graeco vocabulo appellatam scripserunt, quoniam boves Graeca veteri lingua ITALOI vocitati sunt, quorum in Italia magna copia fuerit. Conjectare autem ob eandem causam possumus, quod Italia tunc esset armentosissima.

1. Timaeus in historiis, quas lingua Graeca de REBUS POPULI ROMANI composuit, sicut et Marcus Varro in ANTIQUITATIBUS RERUM HUMANARUM, terram Italiam de Graeco vocabulo Italiam appellatam tradiderunt, quoniam boves Graeco vetere sermone ITALOI vocati essent, quorum in Italia magna copia erat. Nec non colligere ob eandem causam possumus, quod Italia tunc fuerit armentis abundantissima.

Mithridates Expert in Twenty-two Languages

2. Quintus Ennius tria corda habere sese dicebat, quod loqui Graece et Osce et Latine sciret. Mithridates autem Ponti atque Bithyniae rex inclytus, qui a Gn. Pompeio bello superatus est, duarum et viginti gentium, quas sub ditione habuit, linguas percalleuit, earumque gentium viris haud unquam per interpretem locutus est: sed ut quemque ab eo appellari usus fuit: perinde lingua et oratione ipsius

2. Quintus Ennius tria corda habere se dicebat, quod loqui et Graece et Osce et Latine sciret. Mithridates autem Ponti et Bithyniae rex inclytus, qui a Gnaeo Pompeio bello superatus est, duarum et viginti gentium, quas sub ditione habuit, linguas percalleuit, earumque omnium gentium viris haud unquam per interpretem locutus est, sed directe quemque solitus est appellare: perinde lingua cujusque

NOCTES ATTICAE.

De origine vocabuli Italiae.

VOCABULARY

1. Timaeus, Tauromenitanus, Greek historian in fifth century, B.C.
Italia, 1 (fr. Italus, vitulus, calf): Italy
bos, bovis, c: ox, bullock, cow; pl.: cattle
vocati essent, 120, c 5
copia erat, 120, d
[conjecto, 1: surmise, guess at]
colligo, 3, -legi, -ctum: collect, conclude, 99
armentum, 2: cattle, herd
[armentosus, 3, used only by Gellius: full of herds]

TRANSLATION

1. Timaeus in the history which he wrote in the Greek tongue on ROMAN AFFAIRS, related like Marcus Varro in the ANTIQUITIES OF HUMAN THINGS, that the Italian soil was called Italy from a Greek word, because cattle in the old Greek language was called ITALOI, of which there was a great abundance in Italy, and we can also gather from the same reason that Italy teemed with herds.

Mithridates XXII linguarum expertus.

2. Peritus, 3: experienced, skilful
Pontus, 2: Black Sea, or the country on its shores
inclytus, 3, Greek: celebrated, famous, renowned
ditio, -onis, f: power, sovereignty
percalleo, 2, -lui, -, with abl.: to be clever in; with
haud unquam: never (acc.: to understand)
interpretes, -etis, m: interpreter
appello, 1: to address, accost
perinde: in a like manner, just as, like, as

2. Quintus Ennius said he had three hearts, because he knew (how) to speak Greek, Oscan, and Latin; but Mithridates, the renowned king of Pontus and Bithynia, who was defeated in war by Gnaeus Pompey, knew the languages of twenty-two nations which he had under his rule, and he never spoke to the men of those nations through an interpreter, but he was accustomed to address every individual

Mitridates Expert in Twenty-two Languages

non minus scite, quam si gentis ejus esset, *lycutus* est.

eorum conversatus est non minus gnarus, quam si gentis ejus esset.

My Name is Julius

3. Duae istae in loquendo figurae, notae satis usitataeque sunt: "Mihi nomen est Julio, et mihi nomen est Julii". Tertiam figuram novam *hercle* repperi apud Pisonem in secundo ANNALIUM. Verba Pisonis haec sunt: L. Tarquinius collegam suum, quia Tarquinius nomen esset, metuere. Hoc perinde est, *tamquam* si ego dicam, mihi nomen est Julium.

3. Duae hae in loquendo figurae notae satisque usitatae sunt: "Mihi nomen est Julio et mihi nomen est Julii." Tertiam figuram novam (?) *per fidem* apud Pisonem repperi in secundo ANNALIUM. Verba Pisonis haec sunt: *Lucium* Tarquinius collegam suum, quia Tarquinius nomen *ei* esset, metuere. Hoc perinde est, *acsi* dicam mihi nomen esse Julium.

Neutral Verbs (?)

4. Utor *et vereor et hortor et consolor communia* verba sunt, ac *dici utroque versum* possunt: *vereor* te, et *vereor* abs te, id est tu me vereris; *utor* te, et *utor* abs te, id est, *ut* me uteris. Afranius in CONSOBRINIS: "Ubi malunt metui quam vereri se a suis."

4. Utor, vereor, hortor et consolor *neutralia* (?) verba sunt, ac *bifarie* possunt *adhiberi* (?), *etquidem*: *vereor* te, et: *honoror* abs te, *i. e.* tu me vereris; *utor* te, et: *adhibeor* abs te, *i. e.* tu me uteris. Nam et Afranius in CONSOBRINIS *dicere debuisset sive*: "Cum malunt suos, ut metuant, quam vereantur ipsos." *Sive*: "Cum malunt metui, quam honorari a suis."

NOCTES ATTICAE.

Mitridates XXII linguarum expertus.

VOCABULARY

[scitus, 3: *clever, shrewd*]
gnarus, 3: *knowing, acquainted with, expert*, 66, b
conversor, 1: *to have a conversation, converse*

TRANSLATION

directly. And he conversed in the language of each one no less perfectly than if he were one of that nation.

Mihi nomen est Julium. (?)

3. usitor, 1, (*fr. utor, usum, to use*): *to use often*, annales, -lium, m, (*fr. annalis, 2, yearly*): *annals* 36, d; 93, b
Tarquinius, 3, (*fr. Tarquiniⁱⁿ, -orum, a town in Etruria*): *Tarquinian*
L. Tarquinius *is in the nom. case, and not in the acc. as Gellius seems to think; there is, however, a third form, mihi nomen est Julius, but never Julium, 74*

3. These two expressions in speaking are well known and well used: "I am given the name of Julius", and: "My name is Julius". (Now,) by my faith, I have found a third, a new (?) form in Piso, in the second book of his ANNALS. Piso's words are as follows: "He feared Lucius Tarquinius, his colleague, because his name was Tarquinian". This is just the same, as if I would say my name is Julius.

Tarquinius nomen *is in the nominative neuter and means: a Tarquinian name.*

Verba neutralia (?)

4. neutralis, 2: *neutral*, Coll. XI, 1
[communis, 2: *common*]
vereor, 2, veritum: *to revere*, Coll. XI, 1
hortor, 1: *to exhort*, 36, d
consolor, 1: *to console*, Coll. XI, 1
[utroque versum: *turned in both directions*]
bifarius, 3: *of two ways*
Afranius, a comic Roman poet, born 130 B.C.
consobrinus, 3: *cousin (on the mother's side); on that of the father: patruelis, 2*

4. Utor (*to use*), vereor (*to revere*), hortor (*to exhort*) and consolor (*to console*) are *neutral* (?) verbs, and can be used in two ways (?), namely: I revere you, and I am revered by you, *i. e.* you revere me; I use you and I am used by you, *i. e.* you use me. For that reason Afranius should have said in his COUSINS either: Since they wish their own to fear rather than revere them. or: Since they prefer to be feared rather than revered by their own.

PART TWO

CHRISTIAN AUTHORS

42 — 104

IN CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER

PARS ALTERA

SCRIPTORES CHRISTIANI

XLII. — CIV.

TEMPORIS ORDINE.

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A.D.

Course 7

Holy Bible's Old Testament books, translated by St. Jerome from the Hebrew; New Testament books by Anonymous translators from the Greek.

I. THE CREATION

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

- C. I, 1. In principio creavit Deus caelum et terram.
 2. Terra autem erat inanis et vacua, et tenebrae erant super faciem abyssi:
 et Spiritus Dei ferebatur super aquas.
 3. Dixitque Deus: Fiat lux. Et facta est lux.
 4. *Et* divisit lucem a tenebris.
 5. *Et factum* est vespere et mane dies unus.
 7. *Et* fecit Deus firmamentum.
 8. Vocavitque Deus firmamentum caelum. Dies secundus.

WITHOUT

*archaisms and mistakes of copyists**

- C. I, 1. In principio creavit Deus caelum et terram.
 2. Terra autem erat inanis et vacua, et tenebrae, erant super faciem abyssi: et Spiritus Dei ferebatur super aquas.
 3. Dixitque Deus: Fiat lux. Et facta est lux.
 4. *Postea* divisit lucem a tenebris.
 5. *Factusque* est vespere, et mane dies unus.
 7. *Deinde* fecit Deus firmamentum.
 8. Vocavitque Deus firmamentum caelum. Dies secundus.

DE CREATIONE.

VOCABULARY**

- C. I, 1. Principium, 2: *beginning*, 95
 creo, 1: *to create*, 32, d; terra, 1: *earth*
 caelum, 2: *sky*; *pl.*: caeli, -orum: *heavens*
 2. autem: *but, and*, 119, b
 inanis, 2: *void, vain*
 vacuus, 3: *empty*, (in Hebrew *tohu va bohu*: *chaos and confusion*)
 tēnebrae, -arum, f: *darkness*
 feror, ferri: *to be carried*, 32, b; 43, 8, a
 super, *prep. with the accus.*: *over, above, on the top*;
with the abl.: *about*, 50, c
 3. fio, fieri, factum, *to be (done), become*, 43, 7
 fiat, 33, a; 106; facta est, 32, d
 4. post, postea, posthac, dein, deinde: *afterwards, then, thereafter*
 divido, 3, -visi, -visum: *to divide*, 32, d
 5. vespere (*abl. of vesper, -is, m, evening star*):
 (*in the*) *evening*
 mane, *indecl.*: *morning, in the morning, tomorrow*
 vespere in Hebrew: *HEREB*, a *previous dark dis-*
order, evening; mane in Hebrew: *BOKER*, a
 7. firmamentum, 2: *strengthened place, firmament*
 8. voco, 1: *to call*, 59, A

TRANSLATION***

- C. I, 1. *In the beginning God created heaven and earth.*
 2. *But the earth was void and empty and darkness was over the surface of the abyss and the spirit of God moved over the waters.*
 facies, 5; (*external*) *figure, face, countenance*
 abyssus, 2, f (*Greek*): *immense depth, whirl, abyss*
 spiritus, 4: *soul, spirit, life, strength*
 aqua, 1: *water*
 3. *Then God said: "Let there be light"; and light was made.*
 4. *Afterwards God separated the light from the darkness.*
 5. *And there was in the evening and morning the first day.*
following bright order, morning
dies in Hebrew: JOM, a period, a day
 7. *Then God created the firmament.*
 8. *And He named the firmament sky. (This was) the second day.*

* This grammatical exegesis in classical Latinity and its scholastic English "TRANSLATION" are not to be taken as corrections of the authorized Scripture Texts but are only for class-room exercises in the classical Latin style.

** Numbers after NOUNS and VERBS denote the declension or conjugation, (regular principal parts in the first conjugation: -āvi, ātum; in the fourth: -ī(v)i, -itum); after ADJECTIVES they indicate the endings; other numbers refer to the sections of the GRAMMAR, but numbers preceded by "COLL." to the CONVERSATIONS. Words in brackets [] are not properly used.

*** Words in parenthesis () are only for the sake of clearness.

I. THE CREATION

9. Dixitque Deus: Congregentur aquae, quae sub caelo sunt, in unum locum et appareat arida. Et factum est ita.

10. Et vocavit Deus aridam terram, congregationesque aquarum appellavit maria.

11. Et ait: Germinet terra herbam virentem et lignum. Et factum est ita.

13. Et factum est vespere et mane dies tertius.

14. Dixit autem Deus: Fiant luminaria in firmamento caeli, et dividant diem et noctem et sint in signa et tempora et dies et annos. Dies quartus.

20. Dixit etiam Deus: Producant aquae reptile animae viventis et volatile super terram sub firmamento caeli.

21. Creavitque Deus cete grandia, et omnem ani-

9. Posthac dixit Deus: Congregentur aquae, quae sub caelo sunt, in unum locum et appareat arida. Et factum est ita.

10. Aridam vocavit Deus terram, congregationesque aquarum appellavit maria.

11. Postea ait: Germinet terra herbam virentem et arborem. Et factum est ita.

13. Tum factus est vespere et mane dies tertius.

14. Dixit porro Deus: Fiant luminaria in firmamento caeli et dividant diem et noctem, et sint in signa et tempora et dies et annos. Dies quartus.

20. Etiam dixit Deus: Producant aquae reptilia animae viventis et volantia super terram sub firmamento caeli.

21. Creavitque Deus cete grandia, et omnia ani-

DE CREATIONE.

VOCABULARY

9. congrego, 1: to collect, gather together, 33, a; sub: beneath, 50, c (106 locus, 2: place; pl.: loca, -orum; but in a book: loci, appereo, 2, -rui, -riturus: to appear, 33, a; 106 (orum aridus, 3: dry; arida, 1: the dry part of the earth;

10. congregatio, -onis, f (fr. congrego, 1): union, appello, 1: to address, name, 59, A (49, a mare, -ris, n: sea, 22, f

11. germino, 1: to bring forth, sprout, 33, a; 106 herba, 1: herb [lignum, 2: wood] arbor, -is, f: tree, 23, I, a

13. tertius, 3: third, 29, b tum: in the meantime, whilst

14. [autem: but]; porro: then, moreover luminaris, 2: light giving (fr. lumen), 49, r; 26, f nox, noctis, f: night, 22, d signum, 2: sign; esse in signum: to schedule, regulate tempus, -poris, n: time; annus, 2: year

20. etiam: also, too; produco, 3, -dixi, -ductum: to produce, bring forth, 33, a; 106 reptilis, 2 (fr. repo, 3, -psi, -ptum, to creep): creeping, reptile, 26, f; 49, i (to live anima, 1: soul; animae viventis: living, 67, d; vivo, 3:

21. cete, n. indecl. or cetus, 2: large sea fish grandis, 2: big, great

TRANSLATION

9. Then God said: "Let the waters be gathered together into one place beneath the sky, and let the dry (part of the earth) be seen." And it was done.

or aridum, 2: dry ground, 26, f

10. The dry (part) God named land, and the gathering of the water (He named) sea.

11. Afterwards He said: "Let the land bring forth living herbs and trees." And (this) was done,

ita: so, thus, in such wise, to such an extent, yes

13. whilst in the evening and morning was the third day.

14. Further God said: "Let light (giving bodies) be in the firmament of the sky to divide day and night, and let them regulate the seasons, and days, and years." (This was) the fourth day.

20. Then God said again: "Let the waters bring forth living creatures, creeping on the ground and flying under the sky."

volatilis, 2 (fr. volo, 1, to fly): flying, 49, i

21. Afterwards God created large sea fishes and all

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A.D.

Course 7

I. THE CREATION

mam viventem atque motabilem, et omne volatile secundum genus suum. Dies quintus.

24. Dixit quoque Deus: Producat terra reptilia et bestias terrae secundum species suas.

26. *Et ait: Faciamus hominem ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram; et praesit piscibus maris, et volatilibus caeli, et bestiis, universaeque terrae.*

31. *Et factum est vespere et mane dies sextus.*
(Excerpts from Genesis by Moses, 1500 B.C.)

malia viventia atque mobilia, et omnia volatilia secundum genus eorum. Dies quintus.

24. Dixit quoque Deus: Producat terra reptilia et bestias terrae secundum species eorum.

26. *Aitque: Faciamus hominem ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram; et praesit piscibus maris et volatilibus caeli et bestiis universaeque terrae.*

31. *Tunc factus est vespere et mane dies sextus.*

60-400 A.D.

Course 28

II. THE ORIGINAL SIN

WITH
archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. III, 1. *Sed et serpens erat callidior cunctis animantibus terrae, quae fecerat Dominus Deus. Qui dixit ad mulierem: Cur praecepit vobis Deus, ut non comederetis de omni ligno paradisi?*

WITHOUT
archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. III, 1. *Cunctis, quae Dominus Deus fecerat, animantibus terrae erat callidior serpens. Qui dixit ad mulierem: Cur praecepit vobis Deus, ne comedatis de omni arbore paradisi?*

DE CREATIONE.

VOCABULARY

animal, -is, n: *animal*, 22, f
atque: *and*, and *also*
mobilis, 2 (fr. *moveo*, 2, *movi*, *motum*, to *move*):
secundum: *according to*, 50, a (moving, 49, i)
genus, -eneris, n: *gender*, *kind*
is, 3: *that*, *he*, 30, f, e,

24. *quoque*: *also*, *moreover*
bestia, 1: *beast*
species, 5: *species*, *kind*

26. *facio*, 3, *feci*, *factum*: *to make*, 106
ad: *to*, 50, a
imago, -ginis, f: *image*, *likeness*, *picture*
similitudo, -dinis, f: *similitude*
praesum: *to be over*, 41, 1; 79
piscis, -cis, m: *fish*, 23, I

31. *sextus*, 3: *sixth*, 29, b
tunc: *at that time*, *then*, *now*

TRANSLATION

animals living and moving (in the water), and all fowls each in its own genus. (This was) the fifth day.

quintus, 3: *fifth*, 29, b

24. *Moreover, God said: "Let the ground produce reptiles and beasts according to their kinds."*

26. *Finally, He said: "Let us make man to our image and likeness; let him be over the fishes of the water, over the fowls of the air, over the beasts, and over the whole earth."*

universus, 3: *whole*, *entire*

31. *In the meanwhile there was in the evening and morning the sixth day.*

PECCATUM ORIGINALE.

1. *cunctus*, 3 (used mostly in pl.): *all*
animans, -ntis, n (fr. *animo*, to *animate*, *live*): *animal*,
callidus, 3: *shrewd*, *cunning*, *sly* (26, c; 87)
serpens, -ntis, c (fr. *serpo*, 3, to *crawl*): *serpent*, 26, c
mulier, -is, f: *woman*
praecipio, 3 -cepi, -ceptum: *to order*, 40; 100
ne: *not to*, *that may not*, 124, a
comedo, 3, -edi, -esum, *to eat*, 46; 124, a

C. III, 1. *Shrewder than all animals that the Lord God had created was the serpent, and he (the serpent), said to the woman: "Why has God commanded that you should not eat of every tree of Paradise?"*

arbor -is, f: *tree*, 23, Ia
Paradisus, 2: *Paradise*

II. ORIGINAL SIN

2. Cui respondit mulier: *De fructu lignorum, quae sunt in paradiso, vescimur:*

3. De fructu vero *ligni, quod est in medio paradisi, praecipit nobis Deus, ne comederemus et ne tangeremus illud* ne forte moriamur:

4. Dixit autem serpens ad mulierem: Nequaquam morte moriemini.

5. Scit enim Deus, *quod in quocumque die comederitis ex eo, aperientur oculi vestri et eritis sicut dii, scientes bonum et malum.*

6. Vidit igitur mulier, *quod bonum esset lignum ad vescendum, et pulchrum oculis, aspectuque delectabile* et tulit de fructu *illius, et comedit; deditque viro suo, qui comedit.*

7. *Et aperti sunt oculi amborum: cumque cognovissent se esse nudos, consuerunt folia ficus, et fecerunt sibi perizomata.* (Genesis)

2. Cui respondit mulier: *Fructu arborum, quae sunt in paradiso, vescimur:*

3. de fructu vero *arboris, quae est in medio paradisi, praecepit nobis Deus, ne comedamus neque tangeramus eum, ne forte moriamur.*

4. Dixit autem serpens ad mulierem: Nequaquam morte moriemini.

5. Scit enim Deus, quocumque die *comedatis ex eo, apertum iri oculos vestros et fore vos sicut deos scientes bonum et malum.*

6. Vidit igitur mulier *bonam esse arborem ad vescendum et pulchram oculis aspectuque delectabilem, tulit de fructu ejus et comedit; deditque viro suo, qui similiter comedit.*

7. *Tunc aperti sunt oculi amborum: cumque cognovissent se esse nudos, consuerunt folia ficus et fecerunt sibi perizomata.*

PECCATUM ORIGINALE.

VOCABULARY

2. respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: *to answer*, 80, o
fructus, 4: *fruit*
vescor, 3, -, -: *to feed on, eat*, 93, b

3. de: *about*, 50, b
medius, 3: *middle*, 26, f
praecipit, 100
neque, or et ne, 124, a
tango, 3, tetigi, tactum: *to touch*, 124, a
forte, (jr. fors, -tis, f, chance): *perhaps, by chance*

4. nequaquam: *not at all*
mors, -tis, f: *death*, 22, c; 23, II; 88

5. scio, 4: *to know*, 57, 4
quicumque, 3: *whoever, whatever*, 30, i
ex: *of, from*, 50, b
aperio, 4, -rui, -rtum: *to open*, 57, 4; 35, d
oculus, 2: *eye*, 57, 4; fore, 35, c

6. video, 2, vidi, visum: *to see*, 57, 4
igitur: *therefore*, 119, b
aspectus, 4: *sight*, 49, a
delectabilis, 2: (jr. delecto, 1, delight): *delightful*,
similis, 2: *like, similar*, 28, a (49, i)

7. ambo, -ae, -o: *both*, 29, h
cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: *to notice, realize*, 125, a
nudus, 3: *naked*, 57, 4
folium, 2: *leaf*
consuo, 3, -sui, -sutum: *to sew*
ficus, 4: *fig tree, fig*

TRANSLATION

2. *The woman answered: "We eat of the fruit of (all) the trees of Paradise,*

3. *but concerning the fruit of the tree which is in the middle of Paradise, God has commanded us neither to eat nor to touch, lest perhaps we die."*

moriōr, 3, mortuum: *to die*, 40

4. *But the serpent said to the woman: "You will not at all die by death,*

5. *for God knows, in whatsoever day you eat of it, your eyes will be opened and you will be like gods, knowing good and evil."*

sicut: *as, like*

6. *Now the woman saw that the tree was appealing to the taste, beautiful to the eyes, and delightful by its form, hence she took of its fruit and ate and gave to her husband, who likewise ate.*

7. *Then the eyes of both were opened, and as they realized they were naked, they sewed leaves of fig trees together and made girdles for themselves.*

perizoma, -atis, n Greek: *girdle*

Punishment of Original Sin

14. *Et ait Dominus ad serpentem: Quia fecisti hoc, maledictus es inter omnia animantia et bestias terrae; super pectus tuum gradieris et terram comedes cunctis diebus vitae tuae.*

15. *Inimicitias ponam inter te et mulierem, et semen tuum et semen illius: ipsa conteret caput tuum, et tu insidiaberis calcaneo ejus.*

16. *Mulieri quoque dixit: Multiplicabo aerumnas tuas et conceptus tuos: in dolore paries filios, et sub viri potestate eris, et ipse dominabitur tui.*

17. *Adae vero dixit: Quia audisti vocem uxoris tuae, et comedisti de ligno, ex quo praeceperam tibi, ne comederes, maledicta terra in opere tuo: in laboribus comedes ex ea.*

19. *In sudore vultus tui vesceris pane, donec revertaris in terram, de qua sumptus es: quia pulvis es et in pulverem reverteris.* (Genesis)

14. *Ideoque ait Dominus ad serpentem: Quia fecisti hoc, maledictus es inter omnia animantia et bestias terrae; super pectus tuum gradieris et terram comedes cunctis diebus vitae tuae.*

15. *Inimicitias ponam inter te et mulierem atque semen tuum et semen ejus: ipsa conteret caput tuum, et tu insidiaberis calcaneo ejus.*

16. *Mulieri quoque dixit: Multiplicabo aerumnas tuas et conceptus tuos: dolore paries filios et sub viri potestate eris, et ipse dominabitur tui.*

17. *Adae vero dixit: Quia audisti vocem uxoris tuae, et comedisti de arbore, ex qua praeceperam tibi, ne comederes, maledicta terra in opere tuo: laboribus comedes ex ea.*

19. *In sudore vultus tui vesceris pane, donec revertaris in terram, de qua sumptus es: quia pulvis es et in pulverem reverteris.*

Poena Peccati.

VOCABULARY

14. ajo: *to say*, 44, 9
maledico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: *to curse*, 80, b
inter: *among*, 59, a
pectus, -toris, n: *breast*
gradior, 3, gressum: *to pace, walk*, 40

15. inimicitia, 1 (*fr. inimicus*, 3, *hostile*): *enmity*, pono, 3, posui, -situm: *to put, set* (49, u)
semen, -minis, n: *seed, offspring*
contero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: *to rub away, destroy, crush*
insidiator, 1: *to lie in wait, in ambush*, 79

16. multiplico, 1: *multiply*
aerumna, 1: *toil, misery, sorrow*
conceptus, 4 (*fr. concipio*, 3, -cepi, -ceptum, *to conceive*): *conception*, 49, a
dolor, -is, m: *pain*, 23, I; 88
pario, 3, peperit, partum: *to bring forth*, 40
filius, 2: *son, child*; sub: *under*, 50, c

17. Adam, *gen., dat.*: Adae; *all other cases*: Adam: audio, 4: *to hear* (Adam)
vox, vocis, f: *voice*
opus, operis, n: *work*, 23, III
labor, -oris, m: *labor, fatigue, hardship*, 88

19. sudor, -is, m: *sweat*, 23, I
vultus, 4: *face*
panis, -is, m: *bread*, 22, b; 23, I; 93, b
donec: *till*, 128, a
revertor, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to return something; in passive: come or go back*, 120, c, 3
pulvis, -veris, m: *dust*

TRANSLATION

14. *Therefore, God said to the serpent: "Because thou hast done this, thou art cursed among all the living beings and the beasts of the earth; thou shalt crawl upon thy breast and thou shalt eat dirt all the days of thy life."*

15. *"I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy offspring and hers: she will crush thy head, and thou shalt lie in ambush for her heel."*

calcaneum, 2: *heel*

16. *Then He said to the woman: "I shall multiply thy sorrows and thy conceptions. Thou shalt bring forth thy children with pain and thou shalt be under the power of thy husband, and he shall rule thee."*

potestas, -tatis, f: *power*, 23, II
dominor, 1, alicui or alicujus: *to rule*

17. *And to Adam He said: "Because thou hast followed the voice of thy wife and hast eaten of the tree concerning which I commanded thee not to eat, the earth is cursed in thy work, and thou shalt eat thereof with fatigue."*

19. *In the sweat of thy face thou shalt eat thy bread, till thou returnest to the earth, from which thou hast been taken: for thou art dust and thou shalt return to dust."*

in, *for motion with the accus.:* to, into, 50, c

First Homicide

C. IV, 8. Dixit Cain ad Abel fratrem suum: Egre-
diamur foras. Cumque essent in agro, consurrexit
Cain adversus fratrem suum Abel et interfecit eum.

9. *Et* ait Dominus ad Cain: Ubi est Abel frater
tuus? Qui respondit: Nescio. Num custos fratris
mei sum ego?

10. Dixit ad eum: Quid fecisti? Vox sanguinis
fratris tui clamat ad me de terra.

11. Nunc igitur maledictus eris super terram, quae
aperuit os suum et suscepit sanguinem fratris tui de
manu tua. (Genesis)

C. IV, 8. Dixit Cain ad Abel fratrem suum: Egre-
diamur foras. Cumque essent in agro, consurrexit
Cain adversus fratrem suum Abel et interfecit eum.

9. *Tunc* ait Dominus ad Cain: Ubi est Abel frater
tuus? Qui respondit: Nescio. Num custos fratris mei
sum ego?

10. Dixit ad eum: Quid fecisti? Vox sanguinis
fratris tui clamat ad me de terra.

11. Nunc igitur maledictus eris super terram, quae
aperuit os suum et suscepit sanguinem fratris tui de
manu tua.

III. DAVID AND GOLIATH

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XVII, 33. Ait Saul ad David: Non vales resi-
stere Philisthaeo isti, nec pugnare adversus eum: quia
puer es, hic autem vir bellator est ab adolescentia sua.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XVII, 33. Ait Saul ad David: Non vales resi-
stere Philisthaeo isti nec pugnare adversus eum: quia
puer es, hic autem vir bellator est ab adolescentia sua.

Primum Homicidium.

VOCABULARY

8. Cain and Abel, *indeclinable Hebrew names*
frater, -tris: *brother*, 22, b
egredior, 3, -gressum: *to go out*, 40; 106
foras, (*for motion*): *outside, outwards*
(foris: (*for rest*): *out doors*)
cumque: *and when*, 125, a
ager, agri, 2: *field*

9. nescio, 4: *not to know*; ubi: *where?*
num, nonne, ne, *quest. particles*, 51, b
custos, -todis, m: *guard, guardian*
iterum: *again*

10. sanguis, -is, m: *blood*, 23, I
clamo, 1: *to cry*
ad: *at, to*, 50, a

11. nunc: *now*
igitur: *therefore, for that reason*,
aperio, 4, -rui, -rtum: *to open*
ōs, ōris, n: *mouth*
manus, 4: *hand*, 24, b
suscipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to take on oneself, catch*,

TRANSLATION

C. IV, 8. Cain said to Abel, his brother: "Let us
go out." Then, when they were in the field, Cain at-
tacked his brother Abel and slew him.

consurgo, 3, -surrexi, -surrectum: *to rise, to attack*
adversus: *against*, 50, a
interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum; *to kill*, 32, d

9. Now God said to him: "Where is thy brother?"
He replied: "I do not know. Am I the guardian of
my brother?"

10. Then God said to Cain again: "What hast
thou done? The blood of thy brother cries to Me
from the earth.

11. Now, for that reason thou wilt be cursed upon
the earth that opened its mouth and absorbed the
blood of thy brother from your hand."

receive, 40

DE DAVID ET GOLIATH.

C. XVII, 33. ajo: *to say*, 44, 9
Saul, David, *indecl. Jewish names*
valeo, 2, -ui, -iturus: *to be well, be able*
resisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum: *to withstand*, 79
Philisthaeus, 2: *Philistine*
pugno, 1: *to fight*
adversus or adversum: *against*, 50, a

C. XVII, 33. Saul said to David: "Thou art not
able to withstand that Philistine, nor to fight against
him, because thou art a boy, whereas he has been a
warrior from his youth."

bellator, -is, m: *warrior*
adolescentia, 1: *youth*

III. DAVID AND GOLIATH

34. Dixitque David ad Saul: Pascebat servus tuus patris sui gregem, et veniebat leo, vel ursus, et tollebat arietem de medio gregis:

35. *Et* persequerbar eos, et percutiebam, eruebamque de ore eorum, *et illi* consurgebant adversum me, *et* apprehendebam mentum eorum et suffocabam interficiebamque eos.

36. Nam et leonem et ursum interfeci ego servus tuus: erit igitur et Philisthaeus hic incircumciscus quasi unus ex eis. Nunc vadam et auferam opprobrium populi; *quoniam* quis est iste Philisthaeus incircumciscus, qui ausus est maledicere exercitui Dei viventis?

48. Cum ergo surrexisset Philisthaeus et veniret et appropinquaret contra David, festinavit David et cucurrit ad pugnam ex adverso Philisthaei.

34. Dixitque David ad Saul: Pascebat servus tuus patris sui gregem, et veniebat leo vel ursus, et tollebat arietem de medio gregis:

35. *ego vero* persequerbar eos et percutiebam, eruebamque *praedam* de ore eorum, *ii autem* consurgebant adversum me; *tunc* apprehendebam mentum eorum et suffocabam interficiebamque eos.

36. Nam et leonem et ursum interfeci ego servus tuus: erit igitur et Philisthaeus hic incircumciscus quasi unus ex eis. Nunc vadam et auferam opprobrium populi; *nam* quis est iste Philisthaeus incircumciscus, qui ausus est maledicere exercitui Dei viventis?

48. Cum ergo surrexisset Philisthaeus et veniret et appropinquaret contra David, festinavit David et cucurrit ad pugnam ex adverso Philisthaei.

DE DAVID ET GOLIATH.

VOCABULARY

34. pasco, 3, (pavi), pastum: *to feed, pasture*, 32, b
grex, gregis, m: *flock*
leo, -nis, m: *lion*
ursus, 2: *bear*
aries, -etis, m: *ram*
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: *to lift, take*

35. persequor, 3, -secutum: *to pursue*, 32, b
percutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: *to strike, hit*, 32, b; 40
eruo, 3, -ui, -utum: *to dig, take, or snatch out*, 32, b
praeda, 1: *booty, prey*; os, oris, n: *mouth*
consurgo, 3, -surrexi, -surrectum: *to rise up*, 32, b
apprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to grasp, seize*, 32, b
mentum, 2: *jaw*

36. incircumciscus, 3: *uncircumcised*
quasi: *just as, as if*
vado, 3, vasi, vasum: *to go*, 32, c
aufero, auferre, abstuli, ablatum: *to take away, remove*, 32, c; 43, 8
opprobrium, 2: *shame*
populus, 2: *people*
quoniam, quia: *because*
audeo, 3, ausum: *to dare*, 31, d
maledico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: *to curse*, 80, b

48. cum ergo: *therefore when*
surgo, 3, surrexi, surrectum: *to rise, arise*, 125, a
appropinquo, 1: *to approach, (in Latin intrans.)*,
contra: *against*, 50, a (125, a)
festino, 1: *to hasten*, 32, d
curro, 3, cucurri, cursum: *to run*, 32, d
pugna, 1: *fight*

TRANSLATION

34. *But David said to Saul: "Thy servant pastured the flock of his father, and there came a lion or a bear, and took a ram from the midst of the flock:*

medius, 3: *middle, midst*, 26, f

35. *but I pursued them, and struck them, and snatched the prey out of their mouths and they rose against me, but I grasped their jaws and choked and killed them.*

suffoco, 1: *choke, strangle*, 32, b
interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to kill*, 32, b; 40

36. *For, I, thy servant, killed both a lion and a bear: therefore, this uncircumcised Philistine will be just as one of them. Now, I shall go and take away the shame from my people: for, who is this uncircumcised Philistine who has dared to curse the army of the living God?"*

exercitus, 4: *army*
vivo, 3, vixi, victum: *to live*, 36, a

48. *Hence, when the Philistine had risen and coming approached David, David hastened and ran forward to the fight, from the opposite side of the Philistine.*

adversus, 3: *opposite*, 26, f

III. DAVID AND GOLIATH

49. *Et misit manum suam in peram: tulitque unum lapidem, et funda jecit et circumducens percussit Philisthaeum in fronte ejus, et cecidit in faciem suam super terram.*

50. *Praevaluitque David adversum Philisthaeum in funda et lapide, percussumque Philisthaeum interfecit. Cumque gladium non haberet in manu David,*

51. *Cucurrit et stetit super Philisthaeum et tulit gladium ejus, et eduxit eum de vagina sua, praeciditque caput ejus.* (Lib. I. Regum)

49. *Trum misit manum suam in peram: tulitque unum lapidem, et in fundam jecit, et circumducens percussit Philisthaeum in fronte, qui cecidit in faciem suam super terram.*

50. *Sic praevaluit David adversum Philisthaeum funda et lapide, percutiensque Philisthaeum interfecit. Cumque gladium non haberet in manu,*

51. *cucurrit mox stetit super Philisthaeum atque apprehendens gladium ejus eduxit de vagina et praecidit caput ejus.*

IV. THE BETROTHAL OF TOBIAS AND SARA

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. VII, 2. *Intuensque Tobiam Raguel dixit Annae uxori suae: Quam similis est juvenis iste consobrino meo.*

3. *Et cum haec dixisset, ait: Unde estis, juvenes fratres nostri?*

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. VII, 2. *Intuensque Tobiam Raguel dixit Annae uxori suae: Quam similis est juvenis hic consobrino meo.*

3. *Et cum haec dixisset, ait: Unde estis, juvenes fratres nostri?*

DE DAVID ET GOLIATH.

VOCABULARY

49. *mitto, 3, misi, missum: to send, put, 32, d*
pera, 1: scrip
lapis, -idis, m: stone, 23, I
funda, 1: sling
jacio, 3, jeci, jactum: to throw, 32, d; 40
circumduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to swing around, 36, a
frons, -ntis, f: forehead, 23, II
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: to fall

50. *praevaleo, 2, -lui, -iturus: to prevail, be stronger, overcome (in Latin, intrans.) 32, d*
funda, 93, a
cum, 125, b
gladius, 2: sword

51. *sto, 1, steti, statum: to stand*
educo, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to draw or pull out, 32, d
vagina, 1: sheath
praecido, 3, -cidi, -cisum: to cut off, 32, d

TRANSLATION

49. *Now putting his hand into his scrip, he took a stone, and placed it into his sling, and then swinging it around he struck the Philistine on his forehead, who fell prostrate on the ground.*

facies, 5: face
super, with accus.: on; with abl.: about, from, 50, c

50. *So David overcame the Philistine with a sling and stone: hitting he killed the Philistine. As David had no sword at hand,*

manus, 4: hand, 24, b

51. *he ran, then stepped on the Philistine, and grasping his sword unsheathed it, and cut off his head.*

caput, -pitis, n: head, 23, III

DESPONSATIO TOBIAE ET SARAE.

C. VII, 2. *intueor, 2, -tuitum: to look at, 36, a*
Tobias, 1, Hebrew: My treasure is God, 19, c
Raguel, -is, Hebrew: God's friend.
Anna, 1, Hebrew: Grace
uxor, -is, f: spouse, wife; quam: how
similis, 2: similar, like, 78

3. *cum: when, 125, a*
unde: whence, 51, f, g
juvenis, is: young, youth, young man, 22, b

C. VII, 2. *Looking at Tobias, Raguel said to his wife: "How similar this young man is to my cousin."*

consobrinius, 3: cousin on the mother's side
(patruelis, 3: cousin on the father's side)

3. *Then, after he had said this, he added: "Whence are you, young men, our brethren?"*

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A.D.

Course 30

IV. THE BETROTHAL OF TOBIAS AND SARA

4. At *illi* dixerunt: Ex tribu Nephthali sumus, ex captivitate Ninive.

5. Dixitque *illis* Raguel: Nostis Tobiam fratrem meum? Qui dixerunt: Novimus.

6. Cumque multa bona loqueretur de eo, dixit Angelus ad Raguelem: Tobias, de quo interrogas, pater *istius* est.

7. Et misit se Raguel, et *cum* lacrimis osculatus est eum, et plorans supra collum ejus.

8. Et Anna uxor ejus, et Sara ipsorum filia, lacrimatae sunt.

9. Postquam *autem* locuti sunt, praecepit Raguel occidi arietem et parari convivium. Cumque hortaretur eos discumbere ad prandium,

10. Tobias dixit: Hic ego hodie non manducabo

4. *Qui* dixerunt: Ex tribu Nephthali sumus, ex captivitate Ninive.

5. Dixitque *eis* Raguel: Nostis Tobiam fratrem meum? Qui dixerunt: Novimus.

6. Cumque multa bona loqueretur de eo, dixit Angelus ad Raguelem: Tobias, de quo interrogas, pater est *hujus*.

7. *Quo* audito misit se Raguel *in amplectendum* et lacrimans osculatus est eum ploransque supra collum ejus.

8. *Etiam* Anna uxor ejus et Sara ipsorum filia lacrimatae sunt.

9. Postquam *vero* locuti erant, praecepit Raguel occidi arietem et parari convivium. Cumque hortaretur eos discumbere ad prandium,

10. Tobias dixit: Hic ego hodie non manducabo

DESponsatio TOBIAE ET SARAE.

VOCABULARY

4. qui, 3: *who, which, he*, 30, 5
tribus, 4: *tribe*, 24, b
Nephthali, *Hebrew, indecl., Jacob's son: My fight*
captivitas, -tatis, f (*fr. captivus, 2, captive*): *captivity*,

5. novi, no(vi)sse, notum: *to know*, 45, 14

6. cumque, 125, a
angelus, 2, *Greek: angel*
interrogo, 1: *to inquire*
hic, 3, iste, 3: *this*, 30, b, 2

7. quo audito: *having been heard, at these words*,
mitto, 3, misi, missum: *to send* (114, b, c
mitto me in amplectendum (*fr. amplector, 3, -lexum,*
to embrace): *to rush, to embrace*, 117, b
lacrimor, 1: *to weep*
osculor, 1: *to kiss*

8. Sara, 1, *Hebrew: Princess*

9. postquam: *after*, 120, c
praecipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to order*, 40; 57, b'
occidi, 3, -cidi, -cisum: *to kill*
aries, -etis, m: *ram*
paro, 1: *to prepare (transitive)*, 57, b'
convivium, 2, (*fr. convivor, 1, to eat and drink*):
hortor, 1: *to exhort*, 125, a (*feast, banquet*)
discumbo, 3, -cubui, -bitum: *to lie down, recline at*

10. hodie: *today*; (heri: *yesterday*)
manduco, 1: *to eat*, 109, a, 3

TRANSLATION

4. And they said: "We are of the tribe of Nephthali, of the captivity of Ninive."

Ninive, *indecl. or 1: Nisibis, Mosul*, 19, c (49, u

5. And Raguel continued: "Do you know Tobias, my brother?" They replied: "We do."

6. And when Raguel had said many good things about him, the angel said to him: "Tobias concerning whom thou inquirest is this young man's father."

7. At these words Raguel rushed to embrace him, and kissed him with tears, weeping on his shoulder.

ploro, 1: *to weep*, 26, a
super: *on*, 50, c
collum, 2: *neck*

8. Also Anne, his wife, and Sara their daughter wept.

9. After they had spoken, Raguel ordered a ram to be killed and a feast to be prepared. And when he exhorted them to sit down to dinner,

table, 57, b'
prandium, 2 (*fr. prandeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum, to lunch*):
lunch, dinner, 49, j

10. Tobias said: "I shall not eat nor drink here

IV. THE BETROTHAL OF TOBIAS AND SARA

neque bibam, nisi prius petitionem meam confirmes et promittas mihi dare Saram filiam tuam.

11. Quo audito verbo Raguel, expavit sciens, quid evenisset illis septem viris, qui ingressi sunt ad eam: et timere coepit, ne forte et huic similiter contingeret: et cum nutaret et non daret petenti ullum responsum,

12. Dixit ei Angelus: Noli timere dare eam *isti*, quoniam huic timenti Deum debetur conjux filia tua: propterea alius non potuit habere *illam*.

13. Tunc dixit Raguel: Non dubito, quod Deus preces et lacrimas meas in conspectu suo admiserit.

15. Et apprehendens dexteram filiae suae, dexteræ Tobiae tradidit dicens: Deus Abraham et Deus Isaac et Deus Jacob vobiscum sit, et ipse conjungat vos, impleatque benedictionem suam in vobis.

neque bibam, nisi prius petitionem meam confirmaveris et promiseris mihi dari Saram filiam tuam.

11. Quo verbo audito Raguel expavit sciens, quid evenisset illis septem viris, qui ingressi sunt ad eam: et timere coepit, ne forte et huic similiter contingeret: et cum nutaret et non daret petenti ullum responsum,

12. dixit ei Angelus: Noli timere dare eam *huic*, quoniam huic timenti Deum debetur conjux filia tua: propterea alius non potuit habere *eam*.

13. Tunc dixit Raguel: Non dubito, quod Deus preces et lacrimas meas in conspectum suum admiserit.

15. Tunc apprehendens dexteram filiae suae, dexteræ Tobiae tradidit dicens: Deus Abraham, Deus Isaac, Deus Jacob sit vobiscum, et ipse conjungat vos, impleatque vos benedictione sua.

DESPONSATIO TOBIAE ET SARAЕ.

VOCABULARY

bibo, 3, bibi, bibitum: to drink

nisi: unless 109, d

prius, adv.: formerly, first, 27, g (petition

petitio, -nis, f (fr. peto, 3, petivi, petitum, to ask): confirmo, 1: to strengthen, grant, 109, a, 3

11. audio, 4: to hear, 114, b

expavescio, 3, -pavi, -: to dread, be dismayed

evenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to happen, 99; 132

septem: seven, 29, a

vir, 2: man, husband

ingredior, 3, -gressum: to enter, 40: 120. d

timeo, 2, -mui: to fear

coepi, coepisse, -ptum: to begin, 45, 12

forte, fortasse: perhaps

contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: to touch, befall, 123

12. debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: to owe; debeor: to be due

propterea: for this reason, therefore

13. dubito, 1: to doubt, 121

preces, -cum, f. pl.: prayer

conspectus, 4 (fr. conspicio, 3, -pexi, -ctum, to regard): sight, presence, 49, a

15. apprehendo, 3, -di, -nsum: to seize, grasp, take dextera, 1: right hand

trado, 3, -didi, -ditum: to give up, hand over, give

Abraham, indecl. yet gen. and dat. also -hae, Hebrew: Father of multitude

Isaac, indecl. or Isaacus, 2, Hebrew: Laughing

Jacob, indecl. or Jacobus, 2, Hebrew: Holding heel

vobiscum: with you, 50, b'

conjungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: to join, 106

TRANSLATION

this day, unless thou first grant my petition, and promise to give me Sara thy daughter."

promitto, 3, -misi, -missum: to promise, 109, a, 3 dari, 58

11. Hearing (this) word, Raguel was dismayed, knowing what had happened to the seven husbands who had entered unto her; and he began to fear, lest perhaps the same befall him; and when he was in suspense and gave no answer,

nuto, 1: to nod, waver, stagger, 125, a

responsum, 2 (fr. respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum, to answer): answer

12. the angel said: "Be not afraid to give thy daughter to him, for to him who fears God thy daughter is due to be a wife; therefore another could not have her."

13. Then Raguel said: "I do not doubt that God has regarded my prayers and tears."

admittere in conspectum: to regard, 121

15. And taking the right hand of his daughter, he gave it into the right hand of Tobias saying: "The God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, the God of Jacob be with you, and may He join you together and fulfill His blessing on you."

impleo, 2: to fill, 106

benedictio, -onis,) (fr. benedico, 3, -dixi, -ctum, to praise, bless): blessing

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A.D.

Course 3C

IV. THE BETROTHAL OF TOBIAS AND SARA

16. *Et accepta charta, fecerunt conscriptionem matrimonii.*

16. *Dein accepta charta fecerunt consignationem matrimonii.*

17. *Et post haec epulati sunt benedicentes Deum.*
(*Liber Tobiae*)

17. *Post haec epulati sunt benedicentes Deum.*

60-400 A.D.

Course 51

V. PSALM 138

This inspired Hebrew hymn, like the other psalms, was translated into Greek by unlettered people and then from Greek into Latin, and was immediately sung and spread from mouth to mouth, thus being handed down through the centuries: hence, no correction was possible. Now it is a precious relic, not to be changed.

Here is its correction according to the Hebrew text.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1-2. Domine, probasti me et cognovisti me: Tu cognovisti sessionem meam et resurrectionem meam.

3. Intellexisti cogitationes meas *de longe*: *semitam meam* et *funiculum* meum investigasti.

4. *Et omnes vias meas praevидisti: quia non est sermo in lingua mea.*

5. Ecce Domine, Tu cognovisti omnia, novissima et antiqua: Tu formasti me, et posuisti me super manum Tuam.

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1-2. Domine, probasti me et cognovisti me: Tu cognovisti sessionem meam et resurrectionem meam.

3. Intellexisti cogitationes meas *e longinquo*: *otium* et *negotium* meum investigasti.

4. Omnes vias meas praevидisti, *antequam* sermo *esset de eis* in lingua mea.

5. Ecce Domine, Tu cognovisti omnia, novissima et antiqua: Tu formasti me, et posuisti me *conspicuum* super manum Tuam.

DESPONSATIO TOBIAE ET SARAE.

VOCABULARY

16. charta, 1: *paper, parchment*
accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to accept, receive, take*,
[conscriptio, -onis, f: *writing, composition*] (114, b)
consignatio, -nis, f (*fr. consigno, 1, to seal*): *contract*

17. epulor, 1: *to feast, eat, dine*

TRANSLATION

16. *Then taking parchment they made a contract of their marriage.*

matrimonium, 2: *marriage*

17. *Thereafter blessing God, they dined.*

PSALMUS CXXXVIII.

1-2. probro, 1: *to try, test, prove*
cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: *to be acquainted, know*
sessio, -nis f (*fr. sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum, to sit*): *sitting*
resurrectio, -nis, f (*fr. resurgo, 3, -surrexi, -surrectum,*

3. [semita, 1: *path, foot way*]
negotium, 2: *business, occupation, employment*
[funiculus, 2 (*fr. funis, is, m, rope*): *string*]
otium, 3: *leisure, ease, rest*

4. provideo, 2, -visi, -visum: *to see before, foresee*
antequam, 120, c 2: 127
sermo, onis, m: *speech*

5. ecce: *behold, 52, a*
novus, 3: *new; in superl.: the newest, the latest, 26, f*
conspicuus, 3: *visible, remarkable, striking*

1-2. *O Lord, Thou has tried me and known me; Thou hast known my sitting down and my rising up.*

to rise up again): *rising*

3. *Thou hast understood my thoughts from afar; Thou hast searched into my labor and rest.*

investigo, 1: *to search or track out*

4. *Thou hast foreseen all my ways, before any word about them could be on my tongue.*

5. *Behold, O Lord, Thou hast known all things, the latest and those of old: Thou hast formed me, making me known on thy hand.*

V. PSALM 138

6. Mirabilis facta est scientia Tua ex me: confortata est et non potero ad eam.

7. Quo ibo a spiritu Tuo? Et quo a facie Tua fugiam?

8. Si ascendero in caelum, Tu illic es: si descendero in infernum, Tu ades.

9-10. Si sumpsero pennas meas diluculo et habitavero in extremis maris, etiam illuc manus Tua deducet me et tenebit me dextera tua.

11-12. Et si dixi: forsitan tenebrae conculcabunt me, et nox illuminatio in deliciis meis: quia tenebrae non obscurabuntur a Te, et nox sicut dies illuminabitur; sicut tenebrae ejus, ita et lumen ejus.

13. Quia Tu possedisti renes meos: suscepisti me de utero matris meae.

6. Mirabilis facta est scientia tua coram me: nimis elevata est et non possum attingere eam.

7. Quo possem ire a spiritu tuo? Et quo a facie Tua fugere?

8. Si ascendam in caelum, Tu illic es: si descendam in infernum, Tu ades.

9-10. Si diluculo alas sumpsero et habitavero in extremis maris, etiam illuc manus Tua deducet me et tenebit me dextera tua.

11-12. Et si dixerō: Forsitan tenebrae cooperient me, et nox erit pro luce in voluptatibus meis: etiam tunc tenebrae non obscurabunt me coram Te, nam nox sicut dies illucescet Tibi, et tenebrae illius clarae erunt Tibi sicut et lumen hujus.

13. Tu enim fundasti intima mea: texuisti corpus meum in utero matris meae.

PSALMUS CXXXVIII.

VOCABULARY

6. coram: before, 50, b
[conforto, 1: to strengthen]
elevo, 1: to lift up, raise, elevate
attingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: to touch, arrive, reach

7. quo: whither, whereto, 51, f
possem, 103, b
facies, 5: figure, countenance, face

8. ascendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to mount, ascend, go up,
illic, ibi: there, 51, f (103, b
infernus, 3: which is low, Hell

9-10. [penna, 1: feather]; alla, 1: wing
diluculum, 2: the break of day, 95
habito, 1: to dwell, 190, a, 3
extremus, 3: uttermost, farthest, 26, f
illuc: thither, to that place, 51, f
deduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to lead or bring down, es-

11-12. tenebrae, -arum: darkness
cooperio, 4, -perui, -pertum: to cover entirely, envelop,
[conculco, 1: to tread, trample under foot]
[illuminatio, -nis, f (fr. illumino, 1, to enlighten): illu-
[deliciae, -arum: delight, charm] (mination)
voluptas, -tatis, f: sensual pleasure, lust
lux, lucis, f (fr. luceo, luxi, to enlighten): light, public-
obscurus, 1: to darken, obscure, 109, a3 (ity, 49, i
coram: in the presence of, 50, b
nox, noctis, f: night, 22, c

13. [possideo, -sedi, -sessum: to possess]
intimus, 3: inmost, most internal, 27, g
[ren, -is, m: kidney]
texo, 3, -xui, -xtum: to weave

TRANSLATION

6. Thy knowledge became wonderful before me; it is exceedingly high, and I cannot reach it.

7. Whither could I go from Thy Spirit? Or whither could I flee from Thy face?

8. If I ascend to Heaven, Thou art there; if I descend into Hell, Thou art present.

9-10. If I take wings in the early morning, and dwell in the farthest parts of the sea, even there Thy hand will lead me, and Thy right hand will uphold me.

cort, 100, a, 3

11-12. And if I say, perhaps the darkness will cover me, and the night instead of light will be around my lust; even then the darkness will not be dark to Thee, for night will be as day to Thee, for the darkness as well as light will be clear to Thee.

illucesco, 3, -luxi, -, (fr. luceo, to light): (to begin) to shine, 49, k
lumen, -minis, n (fr. luceo, to light): light, clearness

13. Thou hast formed my internal parts; Thou hast woven (the fibers of) my body in my mother's womb.

uterus, 2: womb

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A.D.

Course 51

V. PSALM 138

14. *Confitebor Tibi, quia terribiliter magnificatus es: mirabilia opera Tua, et anima mea cognoscit nimis.*

14. *Collaudo Te, quia mirabiliter formasti me: mirabilia opera Tua, quae anima mea agnoscit nimis.*

15. *Non est occultatum os meum a Te, quod fecisti in occulto: et substantia mea in inferioribus terrae.*

15. *Non erat occultum corpus meum a Te, quando concipiebar in occulto: nec substantia mea in utero matris meae.*

16. *Imperfectum meum viderunt oculi Tui, et in libro tuo omnes scribentur: dies formabuntur, et nemo in eis.*

16. *Me adhuc informem in utero viderunt oculi Tui, et in libro tuo omnes dies mei jam scripti erant, antequam formarentur, vel unus ex eis existeret.*

17. *Mihi autem nimis honorificati sunt amici Tui, Deus: nimis confortatus est principatus eorum.*

17. *At mihi nimis venerandae sunt cogitationes Tuae, Deus: et insuperabilis est virtus earum.*

18. *Dinumerabo eos, et super arenam multiplicabuntur: exsurrexi et adhuc sum Tecum.*

18. *Dinumerarem eas, sed super arenam multae sunt nimis: et exurgendo adhuc Tecum sum cogitans de eis.*

60-400 A.D.

Course 14

VI. PROVERBS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. VIII, 10. *Accipite disciplinam SAPIENTIAE, et*

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. VIII, 10. *Accipite disciplinam SAPIENTIAE, et*

PSALMUS CXXXVIII.

VOCABULARY

14. *confiteor, 2, -fessum: to confess*
[*terribilis, 2 (fr. terreo, 2, -rui, -ritum, to scare);*
terrible]
admirabilis, 2 (fr. admiror, 1, to admire): admirable,
formo, 1: to form, shape (49, i)

15. *occulto, 1: to hide, conceal*
[*ös, öis, n: bone*]
occultus, 3: hidden, secret, 26, f
substantia, 1: substance
[*inferus, 3: that which is below*]

16. [*imperfectus, 3 (fr. perficio, 3, -feci, -fectum,*
to complete): imperfect]
informis, 2: formless, 49, A, 1
liber, -bri, m: book

17. [*honorifico, 1: to honor, bestow honor*]
veneror, 1: to honor
[*principatus, 4 (fr. principor, 1, to be first): domin-*
ion]

18. *dinumero, 1: to count up, enumerate, 103, b*
arena, 1: sand
multiplico, 1: to increase many times, multiply
exsurgo, 3, -surrexi, -rrectum: to rise up, stand up, lift oneself up, 117, e

TRANSLATION

14. *I praise Thee, because Thou hast formed me marvelously; wonderful are Thy works, which my soul recognizes very well.*

agnosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: to recognize, acknowledge

15. *My body was not hidden from Thee when I was conceived in secret; nor my substance in my mother's womb.*

16. *Thy eyes saw me still shapeless in the womb, and all my days had been written in Thy book, before they were formed, or any one of them could exist.*

17. *Hence, to me Thy thoughts are exceedingly honorable, O Lord, and their preeminence is insuperable.*

18. *I would number them, but they are more numerous than the sands; and waking I am with Thee still meditating upon them.*

EX LIBRO PROVERBIORUM.

C. VII, 10. *accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to receive,*
disciplina, 1: discipline (66, a)
sapientia, 1: (fr. sapiens, -ntis, wise): wisdom, 49, u;

C. VIII, 10. *Of me (who am wisdom), receive dis-*

VI. PROVERBS

non pecuniam: doctrinam magis quam aurum eligit. non pecuniam: doctrinam magis quam aurum eligit.

11. Melior est enim sapientia cunctis pretiosissimis: et omne desiderabile ei non potest comparari.

11. Melior est enim sapientia cunctis pretiosissimis: et nihil desiderabile potest ei comparari.

12. Ego sapientia habito in consilio, et eruditus intersum cogitationibus.

12. Ego sapientia habito in consilio, et eruditus intersum cogitationibus.

13. Timor Domini odit malum: arrogantiam et superbiam, et viam pravam, et os bilingue detestor.

13. Timor Domini odit malum: arrogantiam et superbiam et viam pravam et os bilingue detestor.

14. Meum est consilium, et aequitas, mea est prudentia, mea fortitudo.

14. Meum est consilium et aequitas; mea est prudentia; mea fortitudo.

15-16. Per me reges regnant, et legum conditores justa decernunt: per me principes imperant, et potentes decernunt justitiam.

15-16. Per me reges regnant, et legum conditores justa decernunt: per me principes imperant, et potentes decernunt justitiam.

17. Ego diligentes me diligo: et qui mane vigilant ad me, invenient me.

17. Ego diligentes me diligo: et qui mane vigilant ad me, invenient me.

EX LIBRO PROVERBIORUM.

VOCABULARY

pecunia, 1: money
doctrina, 1: knowledge, learning, doctrine
eligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: choose, select, 108, a

11. pretiosus, 3: precious
cunctus, 3: all, 26, f; 87
desiderabilis, 2 (fr. desidero, 1, to desire): desirable,
comparo, 1: to compare, 79 (49, i)

12. habito, 1: to dwell
consilium, 2: counsel
erudio, 4: to teach; eruditus, 3: learned
intersum: to be present, 41, 1; 79

13. timor, -is, m: fear, 23, I
Dominus, 2: Lord
odi, odisse, osum: to hate, 45, 15
mālus, 3: evil, 27, e; 26, f
arrogantia, 1 (fr. arrogans, -ntis, arrogant): arrogance,
49, u (ness, 49, u)
superbia, 1 (fr. superbus, 3, proud): pride, haughti-

14. aequitas, -tatis, f: equity, 23, II
prudentia, 1 (fr. prudens, -ntis, wise): prudence, sagacity, practical wisdom, 49, u
fortitudo, -dinis, f (fr. fortis, 2, firm): steadfastness,

15-16. rex, regis, m: king
regno, 1: to reign
conditor, -is, m (fr. condo, 3, -didi, -ditum, to establish): founder, maker
justus, 3: just
decerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum: to decree
princeps, -pis: prince

17. diligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: to love
mane, indecl.: morning, in the (early) morning, 16
vigilo, 1: to be awake, watch

TRANSLATION

cipline and not money: choose doctrine rather than gold.

11. For wisdom is better than all precious things; and nothing desirable can be compared to it.

12. I wisdom dwell in counsel, and I am present in learned thoughts.

(49, a)
cogitatio, -nis, f (fr. cogito, 1: to think): thought,

13. The fear of the Lord hates evil; I detest arrogance, pride, and a wicked way, and a mouth with a treacherous tongue.

detestor, 1: to detest
bilinguis, 2: double-tongued, treacherous
pravus, 3: wicked

14. Counsel and equity are mine; prudence is mine; strength is mine.

firmness, courage, strength, 49, u

15-16. By me kings reign, and the law-givers decree just things; by me princes rule; the mighty decree justice.

impero, 1: to rule
potens, -ntis: powerful, mighty
iustitia, 1 (fr. iustus, 3, just): justice, 49, u

17. I love those who love me; and those who in the early morning watch for me, will find me.

invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to find

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A. D.

Course 14

VI. PROVERBS

18. Mecum sunt divitiae et gloria; opes superbae et justitia.

18. Mecum sunt divitiae et gloria, opes superbae et justitia.

19. Melior est enim fructus meus auro et lapide pretioso; et genimina mea argento electo.

19. Melior est enim fructus meus auro et lapide pretioso; et genimina mea argento electo.

20-21. In viis justitiae ambulo, in medio semitarum iudicii, ut ditem diligentes me et thesauros eorum repleam.

20-21. In viis justitiae ambulo, in medio semitarum iudicii, ut ditem diligentes me et thesauros eorum repleam.

22. Dominus possedit me in initio viarum suarum, antequam quidquam faceret a principio.

22. Dominus possedit me in initio viarum suarum, antequam quidquam faceret a principio.

23. Ab aeterno ordinata sum et ex antiquis, antequam terra fieret.

23. Ab aeterno ordinata sum et ex antiquis, antequam terra fieret.

30-31. Cum Eo eram cuncta componens. Et deliciae meae esse cum filiis hominum.

30-31. Cum Eo eram cuncta componens. Et deliciae meae esse cum filiis hominum.

32. Nunc ergo filii audite me: Beati, qui custodiunt vias meas.

32. Nunc ergo, filii, audite me. Beati, qui custodiunt vias meas.

35. Qui me invenerit, inveniet vitam, et hauriet salutem a Domino.

35. Qui me invenerit, inveniet vitam et hauriet salutem a Domino.

EX LIBRO PROVERBIORUM.

VOCABULARY

18. *mecum* (fr. cum me): *with me*, 50, *b'*
divitiae, -arum, f (fr. dives, -vitis, *riches*, 49. *u*
(ops) -pis, f: *in sing.: help; in pl.: wealth*
superbus, 3: *proud, sublime*

19. *melior*, 2 (fr. bonus, 3, *good*): *better*, 27, *e*
lapis, -dis, m: *stone*, 23, *I*; 87
genimen, -minis, n (fr. gigno, genui, genitum, *to*
beget): *offspring, product*, 49, *e*

20-21. *ambulo*, 1: *to walk*
medius, 3: *middle*, 26, *f*
semita, 1: *narrow path, path, footway*
iudicium, 2 (fr. iudico, *to judge*): *trial, judgment*,
dito, 1: *to enrich* (justice, 49, *f*

22. *posseido*, 2, -sedi, -sessum: *to possess*
antequam, 127, 120, *c*, 3
initium, 2 or *principium*, 2: *beginning*

23. *aeternus*, 3: *eternal*; *aeternum*, 2: *eternity*
ordino, 1: *to ordain, set up*
antiquus, 3: *old*; *ex antiquis*: *of old*

30-31. *compono*, 3, -osui, -ositum: *compose, settle*,
deliciae, -arum, f: *delight* (form

32. *nunc*: *now*; *ergo*: *therefore*
audio, 4: *to hear*, 108, *a*
beatus, 3: *blessed*
custodio, 4: *to guard, watch, keep*

35. *invenio*, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to find*, 109, *a*, 3
haurio, 4: *to draw up, receive*, 109, *a*, 3
salus, -lutis, f: *welfare, salvation*, 23, *II*

TRANSLATION

18. *With me are riches and glory, glorious wealth and justice.*

19. *For my fruit is better than gold and precious stones; and my product is better than choice silver.*

electus, 3: *chosen*; *electum argentum*: *choice silver*

20-21. *I walk in the way of justice, in the midst of the path of judgment, in order that I may enrich those who love me, and may replenish their treasures.*

repleo, 2, -plevi, -pletum: *to fill, fill up*

22. *The Lord possessed me in the beginning of His ways, before He made anything from the beginning.*

23. *I was set up from eternity, and of old before the earth was made.*

30-31. *I was with Him forming all things; and my delight was to be with the children of men.*

32. *Now, therefore, you children listen to me. Blessed are they who keep my ways.*

35. *He who finds me will find life, and will receive salvation from the Lord.*

VI. PROVERBS

36. Qui autem in me peccaverit, laedet animam suam. Omnes, qui me oderunt, diligunt mortem.

36. Qui autem in me peccaverit, laedet animam suam. Omnes, qui me oderunt, diligunt mortem.

60-400 A. D.

Course 25

VII. WISDOM

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. III, 1. Justorum autem animae in manu Dei sunt, et non tanget illos tormentum mortis.

4. Et si coram hominibus tormenta passi sunt, spes illorum immortalitate plena est.

6. Tamquam aurum in fornace probavit illos et quasi holocausti hostiam accepit illos; et in tempore erit respectus illorum.

C. IV, 1. O quam pulchra est casta generatio cum claritate: immortalis enim est memoria illius: quoniam et apud Deum nota est, et apud homines.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. III, 1. Justorum autem animae in manu Dei sunt, et non tanget eos tormentum mortis.

4. Etsi tormenta passi sunt in oculis hominum, spes eorum immortalitate plena est.

6. Tamquam aurum in fornace probavit eos, et quasi holocausti hostiam accepit eos; et in tempore erit respectus eorum.

C. IV, 1. O quam pulchra est casta generatio cum claritate: immortalis enim est memoria ejus: quoniam et apud Deum nota est et apud homines.

EX LIBRO PROVERBIORUM.

VOCABULARY

36. pecco, 1: *to sin*, 109, a, 3
laedo, 3, laesi, laesum: *to offend, injure, hurt*, 109, a, 3
mors, -tis, f: *death*, 22, c; 23, II

C. III, 1. justus, 3: *just*
anima, 1: *soul*
manus, 4, f: *hand*, 24, b
tango, 3, tetigi, tactum: *to touch*
tormentum, 2: *torment*

4. si: *if*, 109, a, 1
oculus, 2: *eye*
homo, -minis, m: *man*, 23, I
patior, 3, -, passum: *to suffer*, 40
spes, 5: *hope*

6. tamquam, quasi, *adverbs*: *as*
aurum, 2: *gold*
fornax, -acis, f: *furnace*
probo, 1: *to prove, test, try*
holocaustum, 2, Greek: *holocaust, (entirely burned)*
hostia, 1: *victim* (sacrifice)
accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to accept*, 40

C. IV, 1. quam (*before adj. and adv.*): *how*
castus, 3: *chaste*
generatio, -nis, f (*fr. genero, beget*): *generation*, 49, a
claritas, -tatis, f (*fr. clarus, 3, clear*): *clearness, brilliancy, fame*, 49, u
memoria, 1: *memory*
enim: *for*, 120, a

TRANSLATION

36. Then he who will sin against me will harm his soul; all who hate me love death.

C. III, 1. And the souls of the just are in the hand of God, and the torment of death does not touch them.

mors, -rtis, f: *death*, 22, c; 23, II

4. And although in the sight of men they suffered torments, their hope is full of immortality.

immortalitas, -tatis, f (*fr. mortalis, 2, mortal*): *im-
plenus, 3: full*, 83 (mortality, 49, u

6. As gold in the furnace He has proved them, and as a victim of a holocaust He has accepted them, and in due time they will be in veneration.

tempus, -poris, n: *time*; in tempore: *in due time*, 95
respectus, 4: *respect, honor, veneration*

C. IV, 1. O how beautiful is the chaste generation with glory, for its memory is immortal, because it is known to God and men.

quoniam: *because*, 120, c
apud: *at*, 50, a
novi, notum: *to know*, 45, 14

VII. WISDOM

7. Justus autem si morte praeoccupatus fuerit, in refrigerio erit.

8. Senectus enim venerabilis est non diuturna, neque annorum numero computata.

11. Raptus est, ne malitia mutaret intellectum ejus, aut *ne* fictio deciperet animam *illius*.

13. Consummatus in brevi explevit tempora multa.

14. Placita enim erat Deo anima *illius*: propter *hoc* properavit educere *illum* de medio iniquitatum: populi autem videntes, et non intelligentes nec *ponentes* in praecordiis talia.

C. V, 1. Tunc stabunt justi in magna constantia adversus eos, qui *se* angustiaverunt, et *abstulerunt* labores *eorum*.

7. Justus autem si morte praeoccupatus fuerit, in refrigerio erit.

8. Senectus enim venerabilis non est diuturna, neque annorum numero computata.

11. Raptus est, ne malitia mutaret intellectum ejus, aut fictio animam deciperet.

13. Consummatus brevi explevit tempora multa.

14. Placita enim erat Deo anima *ejus*: propterea properavit educere *eum* de medio iniquitatum: populi autem videntes nec intelligentes non *ponunt* in praecordiis talia.

C. V, 1. Tunc stabunt justi magna constantia adversus eos, qui *ipsos* angustiaverunt et *rejecerunt* labores *ipsorum*.

EX LIBRO SAPIENTIAE.

VOCABULARY

7. praeoccupo, 1: *take before, overtake*, 109, a, 3 refrigerium, 2 (*fr. frigeo, -gui, -, to be cold*): *refreshment, rest*, 49, f

8. senectus, -tutis, f (*fr. senex, old*): *old age*, 49, u venerabilis, 2 (*fr. veneror, to venerate*): *venerable, diuturnus*, 3: *of long duration* (49, i annus, 2: *year*; numerus, 2: *number*, 88

11. rapio, 3, rapui, raptum: *to snatch or take away*, 40 malitia, 1 (*fr. mälus, 3, bad*): *wickedness, vice*, 49, u muto, 1: *to change, alter*, 124, a intellectus, 4 (*fr. intelligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum, to understand*): *mind, intellect*, 49, a fictio, -nis, f (*fr. fingo, 3, finxi, fictum, to form, to*

13. consummo, 1: *to complete*; consummatus, 3: expleo, 2, -vi, -tum: *to fulfill* (perfected

14. placitus, 3: *pleasing*
propter: *on account of*; propterea: *therefore*
propero, 1: *to hasten*
educio, 3, -xi, -ctum: *to lead or bring out*
medius, 3: *middle*, 26, f
iniquitas, -tatis, f (*fr. iniquus, 3, unequal*): *iniquity*, populus, 2: *people* (49, u autem: *but, and*, 119, b video, 2, vidi, visum: *to see*
intelligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to understand*

C. V, 1. tunc: *then*
sto, 1, steti, statum: *stand*
constantia, 1 (*fr. constans, -ntis, steady*): *perseverance, firmness*, 49, u adversus: *against*, 50, a ipse, 3: *-self, he, she, it*, 30, c, (*not d*) angustio, 1 or ad angustias redigo: *to press, harass, worry, afflict*,

TRANSLATION

7. *And the just, if overtaken by death, will be at rest.*

8. *For venerable old age is neither in (mere) length (of days), nor counted by the number of years.*

computo, 1: *to count*

11. *He was taken away lest wickedness alter his mind, or deceit beguile his soul.*

(feign): *forming, deceit*, 49, a decipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to cheat, deceive, beguile*, 40; 124, a

13. *Being made perfect in a short space he fulfilled a long time.*

14. *His soul pleased God; therefore He hastened to bring him out of the midst of iniquities: and the people seeing, but not understanding, do not lay up such things in their hearts.*

pono, 3, posui, positum: *to put, lay up*, 50, c praecordium, 2: *diaphragm; in pl.: breast, heart, stomach, bowels*, 49, f talis, 2: *such*

C. V, 1. *Then the just will stand with great perseverance against those who afflicted them and discredited their works.*

[*aufero, abstuli, ablatum: to take away*]
rejicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: *to throw back or away*, 40 labor, -is, m: *work*

VII. WISDOM

2-3. Videntes turbabuntur timore horribili, et mirabuntur *in subitatione insperatae salutis*, dicentes intra se, *poenitentiam agentes*, et prae angustia spiritus gementes: Hi sunt, quos habuimus aliquando in derisum et *in similitudinem improperii*.

4. Nos insensati vitam *illorum* aestimabamus insaniam, et finem *illorum* sine honore:

5. Ecce quomodo computati sunt inter filios Dei, et inter sanctos sors *illorum* est.

6. Ergo erravimus a via veritatis.

8. Quid nobis profuit superbia? Aut divitiarum jactantia quid contulit nobis?

2-3 Videntes *ipsos* turbabuntur timore horribili, et *ipsorum* *subitam* ac *insperatam* salutem mirabuntur *maerentes*, prae angustia spiritus gementes et intra se dicentes: Hi sunt, quos habuimus aliquando in derisum et *opprobrium*; (vel: quos aliquando *derisui* habuimus et *opprobrio*.)

4. Nos insensati vitam *eorum* aestimabamus insaniam, et finem *eorum* sine honore:

5. Ecce quomodo computati sunt inter filios Dei, et inter sanctos sors *eorum* est.

6. Ergo erravimus a via veritatis.

8. Quid nobis profuit superbia? Aut divitiarum jactantia quid contulit nobis?

EX LIBRO SAPIENTIAE.

VOCABULARY

2-3. turbo, 1: *to disturb*
timor, -is, m: *fear*, 93, a
horribilis, 2 (*fr. horreo, -rui, -, to fear*) *frightful, dreadful*, 49, i
miror, 1: *to wander, be astonished at*
subitus, 3: *sudden*
salus, -utis, f: *welfare, salutation, salvation*
insperatus, 3 (*fr. spero, 1, to hope*): *unhoped for, (unexpected)*
intra: *within*, 50, a
maereo, 2, -, -: *to grieve, mourn*
angustia, 1: *narrowness, straitened condition, anguish*,
spiritus, 4: *spirit* (49, u)

4. insensatus, 3: *foolish, silly, fatuous*
vita, 1: *life*
aestimo, 1: *to esteem*
insania, 1 (*fr. insanus, 3, insane*): *madness, insanity*,
finis, is, m: *end* (49, u)

5. ecce: *lo, behold*, 52, a
quo modo: *how*, 88
computo, 1: *to reckon together, number*
inter: *among*, 50, a
sanctus, 3: *holy, saint*

6. ergo: *therefore, now it is manifest*
erro, 1: *to err, stray*
via, 1: *way*

8. quis, quid: *who, what?* 30, h
prosum, prodesse, profui, -: *to be useful, profit*, 79
superbia, 1 (*fr. superbus, 3, proud*): *pride, haughtiness*, 49, u
divitiae, -arum, f (*fr. dives, -vitis, rich*): *riches*, 49, u
jactantia, 1 (*fr. jactans, boastful*): *boasting, bragging*,

TRANSLATION

2-3. *Seeing them, they will be disturbed with a terrible fear, and will be amazed at their sudden and unexpected salvation, saying within themselves, mourning and groaning in anguish of spirit: "These are those whom we held at one time in derision and scandal."*

gemo, 3, gemui, gemitum: *to sigh, groan*
derisus, 4: *mockery, derision*, 49, a
opprobrium, 2 (*fr. opprobro, 1, to taunt*): *reproach, scandal, disgrace*, 49, f; 77

4. *We fools esteemed their life madness, and their end without honor:*

honor, -is, m: *honor*

5. *Behold, how they are numbered among the children of God, and their lot is among the Saints.*

sors, -rtis, f: *lot, rank, kind*, 22, c

6. *Now it is manifest we have strayed from the way of truth.*

veritas, -tatis, f (*fr. verus, 3, true*): *truth*, 49, u

8. *What has pride profited us? Or what has the vain glory of riches brought to us?"*

vainglory, 49, u
confero, 3, -tuli, -latum: *to bring together, to bring to*,
43, 8; 79

VIII. THE PROPHECY
of Isaias (700 B.C.)

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. LIII, 1-3. Quis credidit *auditui* nostro? Et vidimus Eum despectum et novissimum virorum, virum dolorum.

4. Vere languores nostros Ipse tulit, et dolores nostros Ipse portavit: et nos putavimus Eum quasi leprosum, et percussum a Deo et humiliatum.

5. Ipse *autem* vulneratus est propter iniquitates nostras, attritus est propter scelera nostra: disciplina pacis nostrae super Eum, et livore Ejus sanati sumus.

6. Omnes nos quasi oves erravimus, unusquisque in viam suam declinavit; et posuit Dominus in Eo iniquitatem omnium nostrum.

7. Oblatus est, quia Ipse voluit, et non aperuit os Suum: sicut ovis ad occisionem ducetur, et quasi agnus

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. LIII, 1-3. Quis credidit *sermoni* nostro? Vere vidimus Eum despectum et novissimum virorum, virum dolorum.

4. Vere languores nostros Ipse tulit, et dolores nostros Ipse portavit: nos *vero* putavimus Eum quasi leprosum et percussum a Deo et humiliatum.

5. Ipse *enim* vulneratus est propter iniquitates nostras, attritus est propter scelera nostra: disciplina pacis nostrae super Eum, et livore Ejus sanati sumus.

6. Omnes nos quasi oves erravimus, unusquisque in viam suam declinavit; et posuit Dominus in Eo iniquitatem omnium nostrum.

7. Oblatus est, quia Ipse voluit, et non aperuit os Suum: sicut ovis ad occisionem ducetur, et quasi a-

PROPHETIA

Ex Libro Isaias.

VOCABULARY

C. LIII, 1-3. [auditus, 4 (fr. audio, 4, to hear): hearing, listening, 49, a]
sermo, -nis, m: speech, word, 78, b
verus, 3: true; vere: indeed, yea, 28, a
despicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum: to despise, scorn, 40;
novus, 3: new, novissimus, 3: last (36, b)

4. languor, -ris, m: faintness, feebleness, sickness
fero, 3, tuli, latum: to carry, bear, 43, 8
porto, 1: carry, wear; puto, 1: to think, 59, A
leprosus, 3 (fr. lepra, leprosy): a leper, 49, t
percutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: to strike, 40; 36, b

5. vulnero, 1 (fr. vulnus, -neris, n: wound): to propter: for, because of, 50, a (wound, 49, l
iniquitas, -tatis, f (fr. iniquus, 3, unjust): iniquity, 49, u

attero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: to rub or wear away, afflict, scelus, -leris, n: wickedness, crime (36, b
disciplina, 1: system, training, chastisement
pax, pacis, f: peace

6. quasi, adv: as, as if
ovis, is, f: sheep
erro, 1: to err, go astray
unusquisque, 3: each one, 30, i
declino, 1: to bend aside, turn away, decline

7. offero, obtuli, oblatum: to offer, 43, 8
volo, volui, -: to be willing, want, wish, 42, 4
aperio, 4, -rui, rtum: to open
ōs, ōris, n: mouth; (ōs, ōssis, n: bone)
occido, 3, -cīdi, -cīsum, to kill, 116, a

TRANSLATION

C. LIII, 1-3. Who has believed our words? Truly, we saw Him scorned as the most abject of men, as the man of sorrows.

dolor, -ris, m: pain, sorrow, woe, 67, d

4. Indeed, He bore our infirmities and carried our woes. And we thought Him to be a leper, struck by God and humbled.

humilio, 1 (fr. humilis, 2, low): to lower, humble, 49, l

5. Yes, He was wounded for our iniquities, and afflicted for our crimes: the chastisement of our peace is upon Him, and by His bruises we have been healed.

super: on, upon, 50, c

livor, -is, m: livid spot on the body, sore, 93, a
sano, 1: to heal

6. We all went astray as sheep, each one turned aside to his own way; and the Lord laid the iniquity of us all upon Him.

pono, 3, posui, positum: to put, 50, c'

7. He was offered, because it was His own will, and He did not open His mouth: as a sheep He shall be

duco, 3, duxi, ductum: to lead, 34, c; 98, e; 6, a'

VIII. THE PROPHECY

of *Isaias* (700 B.C.)

coram tondente *se* obmutescet, et non aperiet os suum. gnus coram tondente obmutescet, et non aperiet os suum.

10-12. *Et* Dominus voluit conterere Eum in infirmitate. *Et* iniquitates eorum Ipse portabit. *Et* cum sceleratis reputatus est: et Ipse peccata multorum tulit, et pro transgressoribus *rogavit*.

10-12. Dominus voluit conterere Eum in infirmitate. Iniquitatem *enim* eorum Ipse portabit. Cum sceleratis reputatus est: et Ipse peccata multorum tulit, et pro transgressoribus *oravit*.

Malachias (500 B.C.)

C. I, 6. Filius honorat patrem, et servus dominum suum: si ergo Pater ego sum, ubi est honor meus? *Et* si Dominus ego sum, ubi est timor meus, *dicit* Dominus exercituum? Ad vos, o sacerdotes, qui despicitis nomen *meum*, et dicitis: in quo despeximus nomen Tuum?

C. I, 6. Filius honorat patrem et servus dominum suum: si ergo Pater ego sum, ubi est honor meus? Si Dominus ego sum, ubi est timor meus, *inquit* Dominus exercituum ad vos, o sacerdotes, qui despicitis nomen *ejus* et *Ei* dicitis: In quo despeximus nomen Tuum?

7. Offertis super altare meum panem pollutum, et dicitis: In quo polluimus Te?

7. Offertis super meum altare panem pollutum et dicitis: In quo polluimus Te?

10. Quis est in vobis, qui claudat ostia, et incendat

10. Quis est in vobis, qui claudat ostia et incendat

PROPHETIA

Ex Libro *Isaiae*.

VOCABULARY

coram: *before*, 50, *b*
 tondo, 3, totondi, tonsum: *to shear*; tondente [se,], 30, *e*, 1; 26, *c*
 obmutesco, 3, -tui, -: *to become dumb*, 49, *k*
 10-12. contero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: *to rub to small pieces, crush*
 infirmitas, -tatis, *f* (*fr.* infirmus, 3, *sick*): *infirmity*, *ac*, atque: *and also, and even* (49, *u*)
 sceleratus, 3: *wicked*, 26, *f*
 reputo, 1: *to reckon, consider, esteem, hold*
 peccatum, 2 (*fr.* pecco, 1, *to sin*): *sin*, 26, *f*
 multus, 3: *many, much*, 27, *e*
 transgressor, -ris, *m* (*fr.* transgredior, 3, -gressum, *to*

TRANSLATION

led to slaughter, and as a lamb He shall be dumb before His shearer, and He shall not open His mouth.

10-12. *The Lord was willing to crush Him in infirmity. For He will bear their iniquity. Even He was reputed among the wicked: and He bore the sins of many and prayed for trespassers.*

pass over): *trespasser, violator*, 49, *d*
 [rogo, 1: *to ask*]
 oro, 1: *to speak, pray, beseech*

Prophetia *Malachiae*.

C. 1, 6. honoro, 1 (*fr.* honor, -is, *m*, *honor*): *to honor*, 49, *l*
 timor, -is, *m* (*fr.* timeo, 2, -mui, -, *to fear*): *fear*, 49, *a*
 inquit: *he says*, 44, 10
 exercitus, 4: (*fr.* exerceo, -cui, -citum, *to practice*): *army*, 24; 49, *a*

7. sacerdos, -dotis, *c*: *priest, priestess*
 nomen, -minis, *n*: *name*, 23, *III*
 altare, -ris, *n*: *altar*, 23, *III*; 22, *f*
 panis, -is, *m*: *bread*, 22, *b*

10. claudio, 3, -udi, -usum: *to close, shut*, 120, *c*, 3; ostium, 2: *entrance, door, gate* (129)

C. I, 6. *A son honors his father, and a servant his master. If, then, I am a father, where is my honor; and if I am a master, where is your fear of me, says the Lord of armies to you O priests, who despise His name, and say to Him: "How have we despised thy name?"*

7. *You offer impure bread on my altar and say: "How have we profaned Thee?"*

polluo, 3, -lui, -lutum: *to defile, pollute*, 36, *b*

10. *Who is there among you, who closes the temple*
 incendio, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to kindle, set fire to*

42. BIBLIA SACRA

161 B.C.)

Course 32

Malachias (500 B.C.)

altare meum gratuito? Non est mihi voluntas in vobis, *dicit* Dominus exercituum: et munus non suscipiam de manu vestra.

altare meum gratuito? Non est mihi voluptas in vobis, *inquit* Dominus exercituum: et munus non suscipiam de manu vestra.

11. Ab ortu enim solis usque ad occasum, magnum *est* nomen meum in Gentibus: et in omni loco sacrificatur, et offertur nomini meo oblatio munda, quia magnum *est* nomen meum in Gentibus, *dicit* Dominus exercituum.

11. Ab ortu enim solis usque ad occasum, magnum *erit* nomen meum in Gentibus: et in omni loco sacrificabitur et offeretur nomini meo oblatio munda, quia magnum *erit* nomen meum in Gentibus, *inquit* Dominus exercituum.

60-400 A. D.

Course 32

IX. THE SECOND BOOK OF MACHABEES (176-161 B.C.)

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XII, 39. *Et* sequenti die venit cum suis Judas, ut corpora prostratorum tolleret et *cum* parentibus poneret in sepulchris paternis.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XII, 39. Sequenti die venit cum suis Judas, ut corpora prostratorum tolleret et *ad propinquos* poneret in sepulchris paternis.

40. Invenerunt autem sub tunicis interfectorum de donariis idolorum, quae apud Jamniam fuerunt, a quibus lex prohibet Judaeos: omnibus ergo manifestum.

40. Invenerunt autem sub tunicis interfectorum de donariis idolorum, quae apud Jamniam fuerunt, a quibus lex prohibet Judaeos: omnibus ergo manifestum.

Prophetia Malachiae.

VOCABULARY

gratuito (*fr.* gratus, 3, *grateful*) or gratis: *without a voluptas*, -tatis, f: *pleasure* (*fee, freely*)
munus, -neris, n: *office, duty, offering*
suscipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to take on, accept*, 40
manus, 4: *hand*, 24, b

TRANSLATION

gates and kindles my altar without a fee? There is no pleasure for me in you, says the Lord of armies, and I shall not accept any offering from your hand.

11. ortus, 4 (*fr.* orior, 4, ortum, *to rise*): *rising*
occasus, 4 (*fr.* occido, 3, -cidi, -casum, *to fall down*):
setting, set, 49, a
sol, -is, m: *sun*
gens, -ntis: *clan, nation, gentile*
locus, 2: *place*
sacrificio, 1: *to sacrifice*, 98, e; 6, a'
oblatio, -nis, f (*fr.* offero): *oblation, offering*

11. *From the rising of the sun to its setting my name shall be great among the gentiles, and in every place there shall be sacrificed and offered a clean oblation to my name: for my name shall be great among the gentiles, says the Lord of armies.*

mundus, 3: *clean, neat, elegant*

EX LIBRO SECUNDO MACHABAEORUM.

C. XII, 39. sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow*, 36, a
dies, 5: *day*, 25, a; 95
venio, 4, veni, ventum: *to come*
Judas, 1, *Hebr: Praised*, 19, c
corpus, -poris, n: *body, corpse*, 23, III
prosterno, 3, -stravi, -stratum: *to strew before, cast down, slay*, 36, b
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: *to raise, take up, carry*

C. XII, 39. *Judas came the next day with his folks to gather the corpses of the slain, and bury them near their kinsmen in their family graves.*

40. invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to find*
sub: *under* 50, c
interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to slay, kill*, 40
donarium, 2 (*fr.* dono, 1, *to donate*): *votive offering, gift*, 49, f
idolum, 2, *Greek: idol*, 66, a; apud: *at*, 50, a
Jamnia, 1, *Hebrew: Yebna, (God built it)*

parentes, -tum, m, pl.: *parents*
sepulchrum, 2: *grave, sepulchre*
paternus, 3 (*fr.* pater, *father*): *paternal, fatherly*, 49, t

40. *Now there were found under the garments of the slain, gifts for the idols that were at Jamnia, which (were) forbidden to the Jews (by) their law.*

lex, legis, f: *law*
prohibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to forbid*, 90

60-400 A. D.

IX. THE SECOND BOOK OF MACHABEES (176-161 B.C.)

factum est, ob hanc causam eos corruisse.

41. Omnes itaque benedixerunt justum iudicium Domini, qui occulta fecerat manifesta,

42. *Atque ita* ad preces conversi *regaverunt*, ut *id*, quod factum erat delictum, oblivioni traderetur.43. *Et* facta collatione duodecim milia drachmas argenti misit Jerusolymam offerri pro peccatis mortuorum sacrificium, bene et religiose de resurrectione cogitans.

44. Nisi enim eos, qui ceciderant, resurrecturos speraret, superfluum videretur et vanum orare pro mortuis.

46. Sancta ergo et salubris est cogitatio pro defunctis exorare, ut a peccatis solvantur.

factum est, ob hanc causam eos corruisse.

41. Omnes itaque benedixerunt justum iudicium Domini, qui occulta fecerat manifesta,

42. *simulque* ad preces conversi *precati sunt*, ut quod *patratum* erat delictum, oblivioni traderetur.43. *Dein* facta collatione duodecim milia drachmas argenti misit Jerusolymam offerri pro peccatis mortuorum sacrificium bene et religiose de resurrectione cogitans.

44. Nisi enim eos, qui ceciderant, resurrecturos speraret, superfluum videretur et vanum orare pro mortuis.

46. Sancta ergo et salubris est cogitatio pro defunctis exorare, ut a peccatis solvantur.

EX LIBRO SECUNDO MACHABAEORUM.

VOCABULARY

manifestus, 3: *manifest, clear*
 fio, fieri, factum: *to become*, 43, 7
 ob: *for*, 50, a
 causa, 1: *cause, reason*

41. itaque: *therefore, so, thus*
 justus, 3: *just, right*
 iudicium, 2 (*fr. iudico*, 1, *to judge*): *judgment*, 49, f
 occultus, 3: *secret, hidden*

42. simul: *at the same time, on the other hand*
 [ita: *so, thus*]
 converto, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to turn to (transitive)*
 precor, 1: *to pray*
 delictum, 2 (*fr. delinquo*, 3, -liqui, -lictum, *to fail, commit crime*): *fault, crime, sin*
 oblivio, -nis, f (*fr. obliviscor*, -litum, *to forget*):

43. collatio, -nis, f (*fr. confero*, -tuli, -latum, *to bring together, collect*): *collection*, 49, a; 114 b
 mille: *thousand*, 29, a, i
 drachma, 1, *Greek: dime, denarius*
 argentum, 2: *silver*, 67, a
 Jerusolyma, 1 or -orum, 2, *Hebrew: Jerusalem, (City of peace)*, 21, a; offerri, 57, b'
 morior, 3, mortuum: *to die*, 40; 26, f
 sacrificium, 2: *sacrifice*; 49, f
 bene (*fr. bonus*, 3, *good*): *well*, 28, d

44. cado, 3, cecidi, casum: *to fall*, 120, d
 spero, 1: *to hope*, 109, c, d
 superfluus, 3: *superfluous*
 vanus, 3: *vain*
 oro, 1: *to speak, beg, entreat, pray, beseech*

salubris, 2: *wholesome, salutary*
 defungor, 3, functum: *to finish, die, decease*, 93, b
 exoro, 1: *to beg, pray, beseech (emphatically)*
 solvo, 3, solvi, solutum: *to loosen, release, set free*,

TRANSLATION

So it became manifest to all that for that reason they had fallen.

corruo, 3, -rui, -: *to fall (together)*, 57, 4

41. *Therefore all blessed the just judgment of the Lord, who manifested these secret (things),*

42. *on the otherhand they turned to prayers and besought (God) to forgive the sins that had been committed.*

oblivion, 79

trado, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to give (up), hand over*, 124, a

43. *And having made a collection, he sent twelve thousand drachmas for sacrifice to be offered for the sins of the dead, thinking well and religiously about the resurrection.*

religiosus, 3: *conscientious, pious, god-fearing*, 28, a; 49, t

resurrectio, -nis, f (*fr. resurgo*, 3, -surrexi, -rrectum, *to rise*): *resurrection*, 49, a

cogito, 1: *to think*; cogitatio: *thought*, 49, a

44. *For unless he had hoped that those who fell would rise again, it would seem superfluous and in vain to pray for the dead.*

46. sanctus, 3: *holy*

46. *Therefore holy and salutary is the thought to pray for the deceased, that they may be freed from their sins.*

absolve, 124, a

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A. D.

Course 21

X. THE GOSPEL

The Rich Young Man

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

MATTH. C. XIX, 16. *Et ecce unus accedens ait illi: Magister bone, quid boni faciam, ut habeam vitam aeternam?*

17. Qui dixit ei: Quid me interrogas de bono? Unus est bonus, Deus. Si *autem* vis ad vitam ingredi, serva mandata.

18. *Dicit illi: Quae? Jesus autem dixit: Non homicidium facies; non adulterabis; non facies furtum; non falsum testimonium dices;*

19. honora patrem tuum, et matrem tuam; et diliges proximum tuum sicut te ipsum.

20. *Dicit illi adolescens: Omnia haec custodivi a juventute mea: quid adhuc mihi deest?*

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XIX, 16. *Tunc ecce quidam (juvenis) accedens ait Ei: Magister bone, quid boni faciam, ut vitam habeam aeternam?*

17. Qui dixit ei: Quid me interrogas de bono? Unus est bonus, Deus. Si *vero* ad vitam vis ingredi, serva mandata.

18. *Isque ad Jesum: Quae? Jesus autem: Non homicidium facies, inquit; non adulterabis; non facies furtum; non falsum testimonium dices;*

19. honora patrem tuum, et matrem tuam; et diliges proximum tuum sicut te ipsum.

20. Omnia haec, *inquit* adolescens, custodivi a juventute mea; quid adhuc mihi deest?

EX EVANGELIIS

De Juvene Divite.

VOCABULARY

C. XIX, 16. *Ecce: lo, behold, 52, a*
quidam, 3: some one, a, 30, i
juvenis, is: young, youth, young man, 22, b
accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to approach, come to
aio: to say, 44, 9
magister, -stri, master
bonus, 3: good, 20, b; 67, a
quis, 2: who, what, 30, h

17. *interrogo, 1: to ask, inquire*
unus, 3: one, alone, only, 30, k
volo, -lui, -: to will, wish, be willing, 42, 4
ingredior, 3, -gressum: to enter, 40
servo, 1: to keep, save, rescue, 108, a
mandatum, 2 (fr. mando, 1, to command): command-ment

18. *is: he (the present); ille: he (the distant) 30, b*
-que: and, 13, b
autem: but, and, 119, b
homicidium, 2: murder, 49, A; facies: 108, c
adultero, 1: to commit adultery, 108, c
furtum, 2: theft
falsus, 3: false

19. *honoro, 1: to honor, 108, a*
pater, -tris, m: father; mater, -tris: mother, 22, b
diligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: to love, 106
proximus, 3 (fr. prope, near): nearest, neighbor 27, g
sicut(i): as

20. *adolescens, -ntis (fr. adolesco, 3, -levi, adultum, to grow): young (man, girl)*
custodio, 4: to guard, watch, keep
juventus, -tutis, f: youth, 23, II
adhuc: yet, still

TRANSLATION

C. XIX, 16. *And behold a young man came and said to Him: "Good master, what good shall I do to have everlasting life?"*

facio, 3, feci, factum: to do, make, 104; 40
habeo, 2, habui, habitum: to have, 124, a
aeternus, 3: eternal, everlasting
diviti, abl. Pliny, 26fd

17. *And He said to him: "Why askest thou me concerning the good? One is good, God. But if thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments."*

18. *He said to Him: "Which?" And Jesus said: "Thou shalt not commit murder; thou shalt not commit adultery; thou shalt not steal; thou shalt not bear false witness;*

testimonium, 2: witness, evidence

19. *honor thy father and thy mother: and thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself."*

tu ipse, 3: yourself, 30, c

20. *"All these," said the young man, "I have kept from my youth. What is yet wanting to me?"*

desum, -fui, -: to be absent, wanting, lacking, fail, 79

The Rich Young Man

21. *Ait illi* Jesus: Si vis perfectus esse, vade, vende, quae habes, et da pauperibus, et habebis thesaurum in caelo: *et veni, sequere me.*

22. Cum audisset *autem* adolescens verbum, abiit tristis: *erat enim habens* multas possessiones.

23. Jesus *autem* dixit discipulis: *suis*: Amen dico vobis, *quia* dives difficile intrabit in regnum caelorum.

24. Et iterum dico vobis: Facilius est camelum per foramen acus transire, quam divitem intrare in regnum caelorum.

21. *Cui* Jesus: Si vis perfectus esse, vade, vende, quae habes, et da pauperibus, et habebis thesaurum in caelis: *dein* veni, sequere me.

22. Cum *vero* audisset adolescens verbum *hoc*, abiit tristis: multas enim possessiones habebat.

23. Jesus *tunc conversus* ad discipulos: Amen, *inquit*, dico vobis divitem difficile *ingressurum* in regnum caelorum.

24. Et iterum dico vobis: Facilius est camelum per foramen acus transire, quam divitem intrare in regnum caelorum.

Who is My Neighbor?

LUKE C. X, 29. Quis est meus proximus?

C. X, 29. Quis est meus proximus?

30. Suscipiens *autem* Jesus dixit: Homo quidam descendebat ab Jerusalem in Jericho et incidit in latro-

30. *Tunc* suscipiens Jesus dixit: Homo quidam descenderat a Jerusalem in Jericho et incidit in latro-

De Juvene Divite.

VOCABULARY

21. perfectus, 3 (*fr.* perficio, 3, -feci, -fectum, *to complete*): *perfect*
vado, 3, vasi, vasum: *to go*, 108, *a*
vendo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to sell*, 108, *a*
pauper, -is: *poor*, 26, *d*
thesaurus, 2: *treasure*
caelum, 2: *sky*; caeli, -orum, *m*: *Heaven*

22. audio, 4: *to hear*, 125, *a*
verbum, 2: *word, verb*
abeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to go away*, 42, 3
tristis, 2: *sad, sorrowful*, 56
possessio, -nis, *f* (*fr.* possideo, 2, -ssedi, -ssesum, *to*

23. converto, -verti, versum: *to turn to (transitive)*
amen, *Hebrew: be it so, as a fact, in fact, in truth*
discipulus, 2: *disciple*
dives, -vitis: *rich*, 26, *d*; 57, 4
difficilis, 2: *hard, difficult*, 27, *d*; *adv.* difficiliter *or*

24. iterum: *again*
facilis, 2: *easy*, 27, *d*; 28, *a*
camelus, 2: *Greek: camel*, 57, 4
foramen, -minis, *n*: *hole*
acus, 4, *f*: *needle*, 24, *b*
transeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to go or pass through*, 61, *a*

Quis est Meus Proximus?

C. X, 29. proximus, 3: *the nearest, fellowman*, 27, *g*

30. suspicio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to take upon, begin, start*, 40
descendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to go down, come down*
Jericho, *indecl. Hebrew: City of Odor or Moon*
incido, 3, -cidi, -;: *to fall in, come across*

TRANSLATION

21. *Jesus said to him: "If thou wilt be perfect go, sell what thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in Heaven: then come and follow me."*

dein: then
sequor, 3, secutum, 3: *to follow*, 108, *a*

22. *But when the young man had heard this word, he went away sad: for he had great possessions.*

possess): *possession*, 49, *a*

23. *And Jesus turning to His disciples said: "Amen, I say to you, that a rich man will hardly enter into the kingdom of Heaven.*

regnum, 2: *kingdom, reign* → (*difficile*

24. *And again I say to you: It is easier for a camel to pass through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of Heaven."*

intro, 1: *to enter*

C. X, 29. *Who is my neighbor,*

30. *Then Jesus answering said: "A man came down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among robbers,*

latro, -nis, *m*: *mercenary soldier, robber*

Who is My Neighbor?

nes, qui *etiam* despoliaverunt eum: et plagis impositis abierunt semivivo relicto.

31. Accidit autem, ut sacerdos quidam descenderet eadem via: et viso illo praeterivit.

32. Similiter et Levita, cum esset secus locum et videret eum, pertransiit.

33. Samaritanus *autem* quidam iter faciens venit secus eum: et videns eum misericordia motus est.

34. *Et appropians* alligavit vulnera ejus infundens oleum et vinum: *et* imponens illum in jumentum suum duxit in stabulum et curam ejus egit.

35. *Et altera* die protulit duos denarios et dedit stabulario *et ait*: Curam illius habe et quodcumque supererogaveris, ego, cum rediero, reddam tibi.

nes, qui despoliaverunt eum, et plagis impositis abierunt relinquentes eum semivivum.

31. Accidit autem, ut et sacerdos quidam descenderet eadem via: et videns eum praeteri(v)it.

32. Similiter et Levita, cum esset secus locum et videret eum, pertransiit.

33. Samaritanus *vero* quidam iter faciens venit secus eum, et videns eum misericordia motus est.

34. *Accedens* alligavit vulnera ejus infundens oleum et vinum: *dein* imponens eum in jumentum suum duxit in stabulum et curam ejus egit.

35. *Altero vero* die protulit duos denarios et tradens stabulario: Curam *hujus, inquit*, habe, et, quodcumque supererogaveris, ego, cum rediero, reddam tibi.

Quis est Meus Proximus?

VOCABULARY

despolio, 1: to despoil, strip

plaga, 1: blow, stroke, wound; region, track

impono, 3, -posui, -positum: to put in or upon, 114, b
semivivus, 3: half-dead

31. accido, 3, -cidi, -: to happen (main, 114)
sacerdos, -dotis, c: priest, priestess
ut: that, 124, b; via, 1: way, 96, a
video, 2, visi, visum: to see, 114, b

32. similis, 2: similar, 28, a
Levita, 1: Levite (Hebr., descendant of Levi), an assistant of Jewish priests
cum: when, 125, a
secus, prep.: along, aside; as adv.: otherwise

33. Samaritanus, 3 (fr. Samaria, 1, Hebr., Custodia): Samaritan
iter, itineris, n: going, walk, way, journey
misericordia, 1: mercy, pity, 93, a

34. [appropio, 1, coll. form of appropinquo, 1: to approach]

alligo, 1: to tie, bind to, fetter
vulnus, -neris, n: wound, 23, III
infundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: to pour in, 79
oleum, 2: oil
vinum, 2: wine
jumentum, 2: beast (of burden)

35. alter, -tera, -terum: the other, second, next, vero: but, and, 119, b (30, k)
profero, 3, -tuli, -latum: to bring or take forth or out, denarius (nummus) 2: dime (43, 8)
trado, 3, -didi, -ditum: to give (up), hand over
stabularius, 2 (fr. stabulum, 2, stable): inn-keeper, host, 49, m
curam habeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: to take care of, provide for, 108, a

TRANSLATION

who stripped and wounded him, then went away leaving him half-dead.

relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: to leave behind, let, re-

31. It chanced that also a priest went down the same way: and seeing him, passed on.

praetereo, i, vi, -itum: to pass by or on, 61, a

32. Likewise, a Levite, when he was near the place and saw him, passed by.

pertranseo, i, vi, itum: to go through, pass by, 61, a

33. Now a Samaritan, being on his journey, came near to him, and seeing him, was moved to pity.

moveo, 2, movi, motum: to move

34. And approaching he bound his wounds, having poured in wine and oil: then setting him upon his beast, he brought him to an inn and took care of him.

duco, 3, duxi, ductum: to lead, take
stabulum, 2 (fr. sto, 1, steti, statum, to stand): stable, inn, 49, j

curam ago, 3, egi, actum: to take care of

35. The next day he took two dimes, and giving them to the inn-keeper, he said: "Take care of him, and whatever thou expendest over, I shall repay thee when I return."

quicumque, 3: whoever, whatever, 30, i

supererogo, 1: to spend over, 109, a, 3

redeo, -ivi, itum: to return (intr.), to 109, a, 3

Who is My Neighbor?

36. Quis horum trium videtur tibi proximus fuisse illi, qui incidit in latrones?

37. At *ille* dixit: Qui fecit misericordiam in illum. Et ait *illi* Jesus: Vade, et tu fac similiter.

36. Quis horum trium videtur tibi proximus fuisse illi, qui incidit in latrones?

37. At *is* dixit: Qui misericordiam fecit in illum. Aitque *ei*, Jesus: Vade, et tu fac similiter.

Ninety-nine Just

LUKE C. XV, 2. Murmurabant Phariseae et Scribae dicentes: Quia hic peccatores recipit et manducatur cum illis.

3. Et ait ad illos parabolam istam dicens:

4. Quis ex vobis homo, qui habet centum oves: et si perdidit unam ex illis, nonne dimittit nonaginta novem in deserto et vadit ad illam, quae perierat, donec inveniat eam?

5. Et cum invenerit eam, imponit in humeros suos gaudens:

6. Et veniens domum convocat amicos et vicinos dicens illis: Congratulamini mihi, quia inveni ovem meam, quae perierat.

C. XV, 2. Murmurabant Phariseae et Scribae, quod Jesus peccatores reciperet et manducaret cum eis.

3. Ideoque ait ad eos parabolam hanc dicens:

4. Quis ex vobis homo, qui habet centum oves, et si perdidit unam ex eis, nonne dimittit nonaginta novem in deserto et vadit post illam, quae perierat, donec inveniat eam?

5. Et cum invenerit eam, imponit in humeros suos gaudens:

6. tum veniens domum convocat amicos et vicinos: Congratulamini mihi, inquit, quia inveni ovem meam, quae perierat.

Quis est Meus Proximus?

VOCABULARY

36. tres, tria, -ium: three, 29, a
video, 2, -vidi, -visum: to see, 55, d

37. vado, 3, vasi, vasum: to go, walk, 108, a
similis, 2: like, similar, 28, a

TRANSLATION

36. Which of these three seems to thee to have been the neighbor of him, who fell among the robbers?

37. "He who had mercy upon him," he said. "Go, and do thou likewise," replied Jesus.

De Nonaginta Novem Justis.

C. XV, 2. murmuro, 1: to murmur
Phariseaeus, 2, Hebr.: Pharisee, Separated, Jewish senator

scriba, 1: scribe, assessor of the great council of the Jews, Jewish theologian

quod, explicative: that, 131

[quia: because]

3. parabola, 1: parable

4. centum, indecl.: hundred, 29, a
ovis, is, f: sheep
perdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to destroy, lose, 109, b
nonne dimittit: does he not leave, 51, a
dimitto, 3, -misi, -misum: to let, leave, dismiss
nonaginta novem, indecl.: ninety-nine, 29, a
desertum, 2: desert, 26, f
pereo, -ivi, -itum: to be lost

5. cum, 125, a; humerus, 2: shoulder
gaudeo, 2, gavisum: to rejoice, 31, d

6. domum, adv.: home(ward), 21, f
convoco, 1: to call together, assemble
amicus, 2: friend
vicinus, 3: neighbor

C. XV, 2. The Pharisees and Scribes murmured because Christ received sinners and ate with them.

peccator, -is, m (fr. pecco, 1, to sin): sinner, 49, b
recipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to receive, take to oneself,
manduco, 1: to eat (40)

3. Therefore He told this parable to them:

4. What man is there among you who has a hundred sheep and if he has lost one of them, does he not leave the ninety-nine in the desert, and go after that which has been lost, till he finds it?

donec: still, 128, a
invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to find, 120, c, 2

5. And having found it, he puts it on his shoulder, rejoicing,

6. then coming home, assembles his friends and neighbors, saying: Congratulate me, for I have found my sheep which was lost.

congratulator, 1: to congratulate, rejoice with, 108, a

Ninety-nine Just

7. Dico vobis, *quod* ita gaudium erit in caelo super uno peccatore paenitentiam agente, *quam* super nonaginta novem justis, qui non indigent paenitentia.

7. *Quapropter* dico vobis ita gaudium fore in caelis super uno peccatore paenitentiam agenti, *sicut* super nonaginta novem justis, qui non indigent paenitentia.

The Living Bread

JOHN C. VI, 41. Murmurabant ergo Judaei *de illo quia* dixisset: Ego sum panis vivus, qui de caelo descendi.

C. VI, 41. Murmurabant ergo Judaei, *cum* dixisset: Ego sum panis vivus, qui de caelis descendi.

52. Si quis manducaverit ex hoc pane, vivet in aeternam: et panis, quem ego dabo caro mea est pro mundi vita.

52. Si quis manducaverit ex hoc pane, vivet in aeternum: et panis, quem ego dabo, caro mea est pro mundi vita.

53. Litigabant ergo Judaei *ad invicem* dicentes: Quomodo potest Hic nobis carnem suam dare ad manducandum?

53. Litigabant ergo Judaei *inter se* dicentes: Quomodo potest Hic nobis carnem suam dare ad manducandum?

54. Dixit ergo eis Jesus: Amen, amen, dico vobis: Nisi manducaveritis carnem Filii hominis, et biberitis ejus sanguinem, non habebitis vitam in vobis.

54. Dixit ergo eis Jesus: Amen, amen, dico vobis: Nisi manducaveritis carnem Filii hominis, et biberitis ejus sanguinem, non habebitis vitam in vobis.

55. Qui manducat meam carnem et bibit meum sanguinem, habet vitam aeternam: et ego resuscitabo eum in novissimo die.

55. Qui manducat meam carnem et bibit meum sanguinem, habet vitam aeternam: et ego resuscitabo eum in novissimo die.

De Nonaginta Novem Justis.

VOCABULARY

7. *quapropter*: *therefore*; gaudium, 2: *joy*
super: *about*, 50, *c*
paenitentia, 1 (*fr.* paenitens, -ntis, *repenting*): *repentance, penance*, 49, *a*
agere paenitentiam: *to do penance, repent* ...
ita—sicut(i): *such—as*; justus, 3: *just, right*

TRANSLATION

7. *Therefore I say to you: Such joy will be in Heaven upon one sinner repenting, as upon ninety-nine just who do not need penance.*

indigeo, 2, ui, -: *to need*, 83

Panis Vivus.

C. VI, 41. vivus, 3 (*fr.* vivo, 3, *to live*): *living, alive*
panis, is, m: *bread*, 22, *b*

C. VI, 41. *The Jews murmured because He had said: "I am the living bread which came down from Heaven.*

52. vivo, 3, vixi, victum: *to live*, 109, *a*, 3
caro, -rnis, f: *flesh, meat*
mundus, 2: *world, ornament*

52. *If any one eats of this bread, he shall live forever: and the bread which I shall give, is my flesh for the life of the world."*

53. litigo, 1: *quarrel, dispute, brawl, dissent*
quomodo, *how*; inter: *among*, 50, *a*

53. *The Jews disputed among themselves, saying: How can He give us his flesh to eat?*

54. sanguis, -inis, m: *blood*
manduco, 1: *to chew, eat*
bibō, 3, bibi, bibitum: *to drink*

54. *Thereupon Jesus continued: "Amen, Amen, I say to you: Unless you eat the flesh of the Son of man and drink his blood, you will not have life in you.*

55. resuscito, 1: *to revive, raise, resuscitate*
novissimus, 3 (*fr.* novus, 3, *new*): *newest, last*

55. *He who eats my flesh and drinks my blood, has everlasting life: and I will raise him up on the last day."*

The Passion and Crucifixion

JOHN C. XIX, 1. Tunc ergo apprehendit Pilatus Jesum et flagellavit.

2. *Et* milites plectentes coronam de spinis imposuerunt capiti Ejus: et veste purpurea circumdederunt Eum.

3. *Et* veniebant ad Eum et dicebant: Ave rex Judaeorum; et dabant Ei alapas.

4. Exivit ergo iterum Pilatus foras et dixit eis: Ecce adduco Eum foras, ut cognoscatis, quia nullam invenio in Eo causam.

5. Exivit ergo Jesus portans coronam spineam et purpureum vestimentum. *Et* dicit eis: Ecce homo.

6. Cum ergo vidissent Eum pontifices et ministri, clamabant dicentes: Crucifige, crucifige Eum. *Dicit* eis Pilatus: ego non invenio in Eo causam.

14. *Et* dixit Judaeis: Ecce rex vester.

JOHN C. XIX, 1. Tunc ergo apprehendit Pilatus Jesum et flagellavit.

2. *Dein* milites plectentes coronam de spinis imposuerunt capiti Ejus: et veste purpurea amicu'erunt Eum.

3. *Tum* veniebant ad Eum dicentes: Ave rex Judaeorum, et dabant Ei alapas.

4. Exivit iterum Pilatus *his factis* foras et dixit eis: Ecce adduco Eum foras, ut cognoscatis nullam in Eo a me inveniri causam.

5. *Secutus ergo est eum* Jesus gerens coronam spineam et purpureum vestimentum. Ecce homo, *dixit* eis Pilatus.

6. Cum ergo vidissent Eum pontifices et ministri, clamabant dicentes: Crucifige, crucifige Eum. Ego, *inquit* Pilatus, non invenio in Eo causam.

14. *Dixitque* Judaeis: Ecce rex vester.

Passio et Crucifixio.

VOCABULARY

XIX, 1. tunc ergo: *then*
apprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to seize, take*
Pilatus, 2 (*fr. pilum, 2, pestle, javelin*): *provided with flagello, 1: to whip, scourge, beat* (javelin, 49, 1

2. miles, -litis, m: *soldier*
plecto, 3, plexi, plexum: *to plait, weave*
corona, 1: *wreath, garland, crown*
spina, 1: *thorn*; purpureus, 3: *purple, red*
vestis, is, f: *garment, cloak, 93, a*

3. ave, Punic: *Hail, 47*
alapa, 1: *box on ear, blow*

4. exeo, -ivi, -itum: *to go out, 42, 3*
his factis: these (outrages) having been made, 114, b
foras: *forth, out of doors*
adduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to lead to or out*
cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: *to realize, 124, a*
causa, 1: *reason, cause*

5. sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow*
[porto, 1: *to carry, bear*]
spineus, 3 (*fr. spina, 1, thorn*): *thorny*
gero, 3, gessi gestum: *to wear*
vestimentum, 2 (*fr. vestio, 4, to clothe*): *garment,*

6. pontifex, -ficus, m: (*bridge maker*), *high priest,*
minister, -tri, m: *servant* (49, A; 49, i)
clamo, 1: *to cry out*
crucifigo, 3, -fixi, -fictum: *to crucify, 108, a*

14. rex, regis, m: *king*
vester, -tra, -trum: *your, 30, e*

Page two hundred and forty

TRANSLATION

C. XIX, 1. *Now therefore Pilate seized Jesus and scourged Him.*

2. *Then the soldiers plaiting a crown of thorns, put it on His head, and clothed Him with a red cloak.*

amicio, 4, -cui, -ctum: *to clothe*

3. *Now they came to Him saying: "Hail, King of the Jews," and they gave Him blows.*

4. *Thereafter Pilate went out again, and said to the Jews: "Behold, I bring Him forth that you may realize that I find no cause (of crime) in Him.*

invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to find, 114, b*

5. *And Jesus followed him, wearing a crown of thorns and a red cloak. "Behold the man," said Pilate to them.*

homo, -minis, m: *man* (49, e)

6. *But when the high priests and their servants saw Him, they cried out saying: Crucify Him! Crucify Him!" (But) Pilate said: "I do not find any fault in Him."*

14. *And he said to the Jews: "Behold your king!"*

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A.D.

Course 21

The Passion and Crucifixion

15. Illi autem clamabant: Tolle, tolle, crucifige Eum.

15. Illi autem *magis* clamabant: Tolle, tolle, crucifige Eum.

16. Tunc *ergo* tradidit eis *illum*, ut crucifigeretur. *Susceperunt autem* Jesum et eduxerunt.

16. Tunc *demum* tradidit eis *Eum*, ut crucifigeretur. *Apprehenderunt ergo* Jesum et eduxerunt.

17. *Et* bajulans sibi crucem exivit in eum, qui dicitur Calvariae, locum, Hebraice *autem* Golgotha,

17. *Bajulansque* crucem exivit in eum locum, qui Calvaria dicitur, Hebraice *vero* Golgotha.

18. *Ubi* crucifixerunt Eum, *et* cum Eo alios duos, hinc et hinc, medium *autem* Jesum.

18. *Ibi* crucifixerunt Eum, *cumque* Eo alios duos *unum* hinc et *unum* hinc, medium *vero* Jesum.

19. Scripsit *autem* et titulum Pilatus: et posuit super crucem. Erat autem scriptum: Jesus Nazarenus Rex Judaeorum.

19. *Etiam* titulum scripsit Pilatus et posuit super crucem. Erat autem scriptum: Jesus Nazarenus Rex Judaeorum.

60-400 A.D.

Course 34

XI. THE ACTS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XXVIII, 2. Accensa enim pyra reficiebant nos omnes propter imbrem, qui imminebat et frigus.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XXVIII, 2. Reficiebant enim nos omnes, accensa pyra propter imbrem, qui imminebat, et frigus.

3. Cum congregasset autem Paulus sarmentorum

3. Cum autem congregasset Paulus sarmentum et

Passio et Crucifixio.

VOCABULARY

15. magis: *rather, the more*, 28, *d*
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatus: *to life, take away*, 108, *a*

16. demum: *at length*
trado, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to give up or over*
educō, eduxi, eductum: *to lead out*

17. bajulo, 1: *to drag, carry*
crux, crucis, f: *cross*; Hebraicus, 3: *Hebrew*
Calvaria, 1 (*fr. calva*, 1, *skull*; *in Greek*, cranion, 2, *in Hebr.* Golgotha, *indecl.*): *Calvary*

18. utrimque unum *or* hinc et hinc unum: *one on*
medius, 3: *middle, between*, 56 (*either side*)

19. etiam: *also, too*
titulus, 2: *title*
scribo, 3, scripsi, scriptum: *to write*
Nazarenus, (*fr. Nazareth, Hebr. Custoditus*): *of Nazareth*

TRANSLATION

15. *But they cried out the more: "Take Him away, take Him away; crucify Him!"*

16. *Finally, therefore, he gave Him over to them to be crucified. Then they laid hands on Him and led Him out.*

17. *So, dragging His cross, He went out to the place which is named Calvary or in Hebrew Golgotha.*

18. *There they crucified Him, and with Him two others, one on either side and Jesus between them.*

19. *Pilate wrote the title also and placed it above the cross. There was written on it: JESUS OF NAZARETH, THE KING OF THE JEWS.*

EX ACTIBUS APOSTOLORUM.

C. XXVIII, 2. reficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to re-establish, refresh*, 40

accendo, 3, -cendi, -nsum: *to kindle, set fire to*, 114, *b*
pyra, 1, *Greek: stake, pyre, funeral pile, fire*
propter: *on account of*, 50, *a*
imber, -bris, m: *shower, rain*
immineo, 2, -, -: *to overhang, threaten*, 79

3. congrego, 1: *to collect, gather together*, 125, *a*
Paulus, 3 (*fr. paulus*, 3, *tiny*): *Paul (the Apostle)*

42—XI

C. XXVIII, 2. *They refreshed us all, kindling a fire on account of the rain which was starting on, and the cold.*

frigus, -goris, n: *cold*, 23, *III*

3. *But as Paul collected twigs and put them on the sarmentum, 2: (dry) twigs, small branches*

XI. THE ACTS

aliquantam multitudinem et imposuisset super ignem, vipera a calore cum processisset, invasit manum ejus.

4. *Ut* vero viderunt Barbari pendentem bestiam de manu ejus, *ad* invicem dicebant: Utique homicida est homo *hic*, qui cum evaserit de mari, ultio non sinit eum vivere.

5. *Et ille* quidem excutiens bestiam in ignem nihil mali passus est.

6. *At illi* existimabant eum in tumorem convertendum, et subito casurum *et mori*. *Diu autem illis expectantibus* et *videntibus* nihil mali in eo fieri convertentes *se* dicebant eum esse deum.

imposuisset super ignem, vipera *prae* calore cum processisset, invasit manum ejus.

4. *Ubi* vero viderunt Barbari pendentem bestiam de manu ejus, invicem dicebant: Utique homicida est homo *iste*, qui cum evaserit de mari, ultio non sinit eum vivere.

5. *At ipse* excutiens bestiam in ignem nihil mali passus est.

6. *Illi autem* existimabant eum in tumorem convertendum et subito casurum *ac moriturum*. *Ast*, cum diu expectassent et nihil mali in eo fieri viderent, *invicem ad se* convertentes dicebant eum esse deum.

XII. THE FIRST EPISTLE TO THE CORINTHIANS

C. XIII, 1. Si linguis hominum loquar: et angelorum, charitatem autem non habeam, factus sum velut aes sonans, aut cymbalum tinniens.

C. XIII, 1. Si linguis hominum loquar et angelorum, charitatem autem non habeam, factus sum velut aes sonans aut cymbalum tinniens.

EX ACTIBUS APOSTOLORUM.

VOCABULARY

vipera, 1: *viper*
 calor, -ris, m: *heat*
 prae: *before, by the reason of*, 50, b
 procedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to proceed*, 125, a
 4. [ut, arch, for:] ubi, cum: *as, when*, 129, d
 pendeo, pependi, -: *to hang*
 bestia, 1: *beast*
 Barbarus, 3: *Barbarian*
 invicem (fr. in and vicis, -is, f, turn): *by turn, mutually*
 utique: *of course, surely*
 homicida, 1 (fr. homo and caedo, to kill): *murderer*, 49, a
 evado, 3, -vasi, -vasum: *to go out, escape*, 125, a
 5. excutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: *to shake out or off, strike, throw*, 40
 patior, 3, passum: *to suffer*, 40
 nihil, 2 (acc. w. prep: nihilum): *nothing*
 6. existimo, 1: *to consider, deem, think*, 57, 4
 tumor, -ris, m: *swelling*; converti in tumorem: *to swell*
 converto, 3, -verti, -versum: *to turn to*, 111, c; 35, d
 subito, *suddenly*
 cado, 3, cecidi, casum: *to fall (down)*, 111, c; 35, d
 morior, 3, mortuum: *to die*, 40, 35, c
 diu: *for a long time, long*

TRANSLATION

fire, a viper forced out by the heat, fastened on his hand.
 invado, 3, -vasi, -vasum: *to go in, fall upon, attack,* (fasten
 4. *As the Barbarians saw the beast hanging on his hand, they said to another: "Surely, this man is a murderer, (for although) he escaped from the sea, vengeance does not let him live."*
 ultio, -nis, f (fr. ulciscor, 3, ultum, to avenge): *vengeance*, 49, a
 sino, 3, sivi, situm: *to place, put down, let*; vivere, 35, g
 5. *But he shaking the beast off into the fire, suffered no harm.*
 malum, 2: *bad, harm*, 67, c
 6. *The (Barbarians) thought he would swell up and suddenly fall and die; but when they had waited for a long time, and saw that no evil happened to him, turning to one another they said, he was a god.*
 expecto, 1: *to expect, wait for*

EX EPISTOLA PRIMA AD CORINTHIOS.

C. XIII, 1. lingua, 1: *language, tongue*, 93, a
 loquor, 109, b
 c(h)aritas, -tatis, n: *dearness, affection, love, esteem*,
 aes, aeris, n: *copper, brass, ore* (charity)
 sono, 1: *to sound, resound*
 cymbalum, 2, Greek: *cymbal*

C. XIII, 1. *If I speak in the language of men and of angels, but have no charity, I am become as sounding brass or a tinkling cymbal.*
 tinnio, 4: *to ring, tinkle, jingle*

XII. THE FIRST EPISTLE TO THE CORINTHIANS

2. *Et si habuero prophetiam, et noverim mysteria omnia, et omnem scientiam: et si habuero omnem fidem, ita ut montes transferam, charitatem autem non habuero, nihil sum.*

3. *Et si distribuero in cibos pauperum omnes facultates meas, et si tradidero corpus meum, ita ut ardeam, charitatem autem non habuero, nihil mihi prodest.*

4. *Charitas patiens est, benigna est. Charitas non aemulatur, non agit perperam, non inflatur,*

5. *non est ambitiosa, non quaerit, quae sua sunt, non irritatur, non cogitat malum.*

6. *Non gaudet super iniquitate, congauget autem veritati.*

7. *Omnia suffert, omnia credit, omnia sperat, omnia sustinet.*

8. *Charitas nunquam excidit, sive prophetiae eva-*

2. *Si habeam donum prophetiae et noverim mysteria omnia omnemque scientiam, et si habeam omnem fidem, ita ut montes transferam, charitatem autem non habeo, nihil sum.*

3. *Si distribuero in cibos pauperum omnes facultates meas, et si tradidero corpus meum ita, ut ardeam, charitatem autem non habuero, nihil mihi proderit.*

4. *Charitas patiens est, benigna est. Charitas non aemulatur, non agit perperam, non inflatur,*

5. *non est ambitiosa, non quaerit sua, non irritatur, non cogitat malum.*

6. *Non gaudet super iniquitate, congauget autem veritati.*

7. *Omnia suffert, omnia credit, omnia sperat, omnia sustinet.*

8. *Charitas nunquam excidet, etiamsi prophetiae*

EX EPISTOLA PRIMA AD CORINTHIOS.

VOCABULARY

2. donum, 2: gift
prophetia, 1, Greek: prophecy
mysterium, 2, Greek: mystery
scientia, 1 (fr. scio, 4, to know): knowledge, science, habeam, habeo, 109, b (49, u

3. distribuero, 3, -bui, -butum: to distribute, 109, a, 3
cibus, 2: food
pauper, -ris: poor
facultas, -tatis, f: ability, power, resource, goods
trado, 3, -didi, -ditum: to give up, give, deliver, 109, a, 3

4. patiens, -ntis (fr. patior, 3, to suffer): patient
benignus, 3: kind
aemulor, 1: to rival; (takes acc., dat., or cum)
perperam: wrongly, falsely, untruly

5. ambitiosus, 3 (fr. ambitio, striving): ambitious, pretentious, interested, 49, t
quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: to seek for, ask
irrito, 1: to stir up, excite (to anger)

6. congaudeo, -, gavisum: to rejoice (together), 31, d; 79

7. suffero, 3, sustuli, sublatum: to bear, endure, credo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to believe (suffer)
spero, 1: to hope
sustineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to sustain

8. excido, 3, -cidi, -: to fall out, pass away, leave sive (fr. si vel): or if; etiamsi: even if (off, 109, a, 3
sive—sive: if—or if, either—or

TRANSLATION

2. *If I had the gift of prophecy and knew all mysteries, all sciences, and I had all faith so that I could remove mountains, and have no charity, I am nothing.*

fides, 5: trust, faith

3. *If I distribute all my goods to feed the poor, and if I give my body so that I burn, but have no charity, it will profit me nothing.*

ardeo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: to burn, glow, be on fire, 124, b
prosum, -fui, -: to be useful, profit, 109, a, 3

4. *Charity is patient, is kind. Charity does not rival anyone, does not act untruly; is not puffed up;*

inflo, 1: to blow, give blast, puff up

5. *is not pretentious, does not seek its own, is not irritable, does not think evil.*

6. *It does not rejoice in iniquity, but enjoys the truth.*

7. *It bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, and sustains all things.*

8. *Charity will never cease, even though prophecy fail.*

XII. THE FIRST EPISTLE TO THE CORINTHIANS

cuabuntur, sive linguae cessabunt, sive scientia destruetur. *evanescent, vel linguae cessabunt, vel scientia deficiet.*

C. VII, 24. Unusquisque *in quo* vocatus est, fratres, *in hoc* permaneat *apud Deum*.

C. VII, 24. Unusquisque *ad quod* vocatus est, fratres, *in eo* permaneat *cum Deo*.

25. De virginibus praeceptum Domini non habeo: consilium *autem* do.

25. De virginibus praeceptum Domini non habeo, consilium *tamen* do.

27. Alligatus es uxori? Noli quaerere solutionem. Solutus es ab uxore? Noli quaerere uxorem.

27. Alligatus es uxori? Noli quaerere solutionem. Solutus es ab uxore? Noli quaerere uxorem.

28. Si accep*eris* uxorem, non peccasti. Et si nupserit virgo, non peccavit: tribulationem tamen carnis habebunt hujusmodi.

28. Si accep*isti* uxorem, non peccasti. Et si nupserit virgo, non peccabit: tribulationem tamen carnis habebunt hujusmodi.

33. Qui *autem* cum uxore est, sollicitus est, quae sunt mundi, quomodo placeat uxori, *et* divisus est.

33. Qui *enim* cum uxore est, sollicitus est *rebus*, quae sunt mundi, *et* quomodo placeat uxori, *sicque* divisus est.

34. *Et* mulier innupta et virgo cogitat, quae Domi-

34. Mulier *vero* innupta et virgo cogitat, quae Do-

EX EPISTOLA PRIMA AD CORINTHIOS.

VOCABULARY

evanesco, 3, -nui, -: *to vanish, disappear, not to be [evacuato, 1: to empty]*

cesso, 1: *to cease, linger, delay*, 109, a, 3

[destruo, 3, -struxi, -structum: *to pull down, destroy*]

C. VII, 24. unusquisque, 3: *every one*, 30, i
voco, 1: *to call*

permaneo, 2, -mansi, -mansum: *to remain, stay, abide*, 106

25. praeceptum, 2 (*fr. praecipio*, 2, -cepi, -ceptum, *to command*): *precepts, injunction*, 26, f
consilium, 2: *counsel*
tamen: *yet*

27. alligo, 1: *to tie to, bind to*
uxor, -ris, f: *wife, spouse*

nolo, nolle: *not to be willing*, 42, 5; 108, a

solutio, -nis f (*fr. solvo*, 3, -lvi, -lutum, *to untie*):

28. accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to take*, 40; 109, a, 2
pecco, 1: *to sin, commit a fault or crime*

nubo, 3, nupsi, nuptum: *to marry (a man)*, 80, k; 109, a, 3

tribulatio carnis: *carnal affliction (fr. tribulo*, 1, *to grieve)* 49, a

33. [autem: *but*]; enim: *for*
sollicitus (de) re, 3: *stirred up, agitated, solicitous*
placeo, 2, -cui, -citum: *to please*, 80, m; 132
divido, 3, -visi, -visum: *to divide, separate, to be remote*

34. mulier, -ëris, f: *woman, wife, matron*
innupta, 1 (*fr. nubo*, 3, nupsi, nuptum, *to marry a*

TRANSLATION

will be no more, or tongues will cease, or sciences will fail.

reficio, 3, -feci, -fectum, *to fail*, 40; 109, a, 3

C. VII, 24. *Every one, my brethren, should remain in his vocation with God.*

25. *Though about virgins I have no precepts from God, yet I give counsel.*

27. *If thou art bound to a wife, do not seek a divorce; art thou free of a wife, do not seek any.*

loosening

28. *If thou hast taken a wife, thou didst not sin. And if a virgin has married, she committed no sin: however, such will have their carnal affliction.*

hujus modi: *of this kind, such*, 67, d

33. *For he who lives with his wife, is solicitous for what belongs to the world, and how to please his wife, and so he is divided (between God and his wife).*

34. *Whilst an unmarried woman or a virgin (medi-man): unmarried woman, virgin, damsel*

42. BIBLIA SACRA

60-400 A.D.

Course 34

XII. THE FIRST EPISTLE TO THE CORINTHIANS

ni sunt, ut sancta sit corpore *et* spiritu. Quae autem nupta est, cogitat, quae sunt mundi, quomodo placeat viro.

mini sunt *et*, ut sancta sit corpore *ac* spiritu. Quae autem nupta est, cogitat, quae sunt mundi, *et* quomodo placeat viro.

39. Mulier alligata est *legi*, quanto tempore vir ejus vivit. Quod si *dormierit* vir ejus, liberata est: cui vult nubat: tantum in Domino.

39. Mulier alligata est *matrimonio pro* tempore, quo vir ejus vivit. Quod si *mortuus fuerit* vir ejus, liberata est: *et* cui vult, nubat, *sed* tantum in Domino.

60-400 A.D.

Course 38

XIII. THE APOCALYPSE

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XII, 1. Signum magnum apparuit in caelo: Mulier amicta sole, *et* luna sub pedibus ejus *et* in capite ejus corona stellarum duodecim.

2. *Et in utero habens* clamabat parturiens: *et* cruciabatur, *ut pariat*.

3. *Et* visum est aliud signum in caelo: *et* ecce draco magnus rufus.

4. *Et* cauda ejus trahens tertiam partem stellarum caeli *et* stetit ante mulierem, *ut* cum peperisset, filium ejus devoraret.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

C. XII, 1. Signum magnum apparuit in caelo: Mulier amicta sole, luna sub pedibus ejus *et* in capite ejus corona stellarum duodecim.

2. *Gravidaque* clamabat parturiens: *et partu* cruciabatur.

3. *Simul* aliud signum *quoque* visum est in caelo: ecce draco rufus, *tam* magnus,

4. *ut* cauda ejus tertiam stellarum caeli traheret partem, stetit ante mulierem filium ejus, cum peperisset, devoraturus.

EX EPISTOLA PRIMA AD CORINTHIOS.

VOCABULARY

mundus, 2: *world*
vir, 2: *man, husband*

39. *matrimonium*, 2: *marriage, matrimony*
quod si: *but if*, 109, *e*
[*dormio*, 4: *to sleep, rest*] 109, *b*
libero, 1: *to free*

C. XII, 1. *signum*, 2: *sign*
appareo, 2, -*ru*, -*riturus*: *to appear*
caelum, 2: *sky*; *caeli*, -*orum*, *m*: *Heaven*
amicio, 4, -*icui* or (-*ixi*), -*ctum*: *to clothe, wrap round*,
sol, -*is*: *sun*; *luna*, 1: *moon* (93, *a*
sub: *below*, 50, *c*
corona, 1: *wreath, garland, crown*

2. [*uterus*, 2: *womb*]
gravidus, 3: *pregnant, filled*
parturio, 4: *to travail, bear* (*bearing*, 49, *a*
partus, 4 (*fr. pario*, 3, *peperi*, *partum*, *to bear*, 40):

3. *simul*: *at once, at the same time*
draco, -*nis*, *m*: *dragon*; *rufus*, 3: *red, ruddy*

4. *cauda*, 1: *tail*
traho, 3, *traxi*, *tractum*: *to draw*, 124, *b*
devoro, 1: *to swallow, gulp down, devour*, 111, *a*

TRANSLATION

tates on what belongs to God in order to be holy in body and soul. On the contrary, she who is married, thinks of the world, and how to please her husband.

39. *A woman is bound by her marriage for the time her husband lives, but if her husband has died, she is freed; and let her marry whom she wants, but only in God.*

C. XII, 1. *Behold a sign appeared in the sky, a woman wrapped round by the sun, with the moon under her feet, and a crown of twelve stars on her head.*

duodecim, indecl.: twelve, 29, *a*

2. *Pregnant, she cried out travailing and was tormented by bearing her child.*

crucio, 1: *to torment*

3. *At the same time another sign appeared in the sky: behold a dragon, a big red one, so great*

4. *as to draw with its tail a third of the stars from the sky, stood before the woman to devour her child as soon as she had brought it forth.*

XIII. THE APOCALYPSE

5. *Et peperit filium et raptus est filius ejus ad Deum, ad thronum ejus.*

17. *Et iratus est draco in mulierem: et abiit facere proelium cum reliquis de semine ejus, qui custodiunt mandata Dei et habent testimonium Jesu Christi.*

C.XIX, 11. *Et vidi caelum apertum, et ecce equus: et qui sedebat super eum, vocabatur fidelis et verax; et cum justitia judicat et pugnat.*

12. *Oculi autem ejus sicut flamma ignis, et in capite ejus diademata multa, habens nomen scriptum, quod nemo novit nisi ipse.*

13. *Et vestitus erat veste aspersa sanguine: et vocatur nomen ejus Verbum Dei.*

14. *Et exercitus, qui sunt in caelo, sequebantur eum in equis albis, vestiti byssino albo et mundo.*

15. *Et de ore ejus procedit gladius ex utraque parte acutus, ut in ipso percutiat Gentes: Et ipse reget eas*

5. *Editus autem filius raptus est ad thronum Dei.*

17. *Tunc iratus draco mulieri abiit proelium commissurus cum reliquis de semine ejus, qui custodiebant mandata Dei et testimonium habebant Jesu Christi.*

C. XIX, 11. *Mox vidi caelum apertum. Et ecce equus: et qui sedebat super eum, vocabatur fidelis et verax, qui in justitia judicat et pugnat.*

12. *Oculi ejus sicut flamma ignis, et in capite ejus diademata multa, habens nomen in iis scriptum, quod nemo potuit intelligere nisi ipse.*

13. *Vestitusque erat veste sanguine aspersa: et nomen ejus vocabatur Verbum Dei.*

14. *Exercitus, qui sunt in caelis, sequebantur eum in equis albis vestiti byssino albo et mundo.*

15. *De ore ejus procedit gladius ex utraque parte acutus, quo Gentes percutiat regatque eas virga ferrea;*

EX APOCALYPSI.

VOCABULARY

5. edo, 3, edidi, editum: *to give out, bear*, 36, b
rapio, 3, -pui, -ptum: *to snatch away*, 40
thronus, 2, *Greek: throne*

17. irascor, 3, iratum: *to be angry, enrage*, 80, f
proelium, 2: *battle, fight*
proelium committo: *to assail, attack*, 111, a
semen, -minis, n: *seed*
reliquus, 3: *the rest*
custodio, 4: *to watch, hold, keep*

C. XIX, 11. aperio, 4, -rui, -rtum: *to open*
sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: *to sit*
fidelis, 2: *faithful*
verax, -acis: *truthful*

12. oculus, 2: *eye*
flamma, 1: *flame*
diadema, -tis, n *Greek: diadem*

13. vestio, 4: *to clothe*
aspergo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: *to sprinkle, stain*

14. sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow*
byssinus, 2 (*fr. byssus*, 2, f, *fine linen*): *of fine linen*,
mundus, 3: *clean* (93, a

15. os, oris, n: *mouth*
procedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to go or come out*
gladius, 2: *sword*; parte, 84
acuio, 3, -cui, -cutum: *to sharpen, edge*
percutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: *to strike*, 40; 130

TRANSLATION

5. *However, (after) her son (had been) born, (he) was snatched away to the throne of God.*

17. *Then the dragon enraged against the woman went away to assail the rest of her seed who were keeping the commandments of God, and giving testimony of Jesus Christ.*

mandatum, 2 (*fr. mando*, 1, *to order*): *commandment*, 26, f

C. XIX, 11. *Soon I saw Heaven opened: and behold a horse (appeared) and he who sat upon it was called faithful and truthful: he judges and fights in justice.*

12. *His eyes (were) like flames of fire, and on his head (were) many diadems on which his name (was) written, which no one but he could understand.*

13. *He was clad with a garment, stained with blood: and his name was the WORD OF GOD.*

14. *The armies of Heaven, clad in clean, white, fine linen, followed him upon white horses.*

15. *From his mouth a sword comes out, sharp on both edges to strike therewith the gentiles and to rule*

rego, 3, rexi, rectum: *to direct, guide, rule*, 130

XIII. THE APOCALYPSE

in virga ferrea: Et ipse calcat torcular vini furoris irae Dei omnipotentis.

16. *Et habet in vestimento, et in femore suo scriptum: Rex regum et Dominus dominantium.*

19. *Et vidi bestiam et reges terrae et exercitus eorum congregatos ad faciendum proelium cum illo, qui sedebat in equo, et cum exercitu ejus.*

20. *Et apprehensa est bestia et cum ea pseudopropheta, qui fecit signa coram ipso, quibus seduxit eos, qui adoraverunt imaginem ejus. Vivi missi sunt hi duo in stagnum ignis ardentis sulphure.*

21. *Et ceteri occisi sunt in gladio sedentis super equum, qui procedit de ore ipsius.*

C. XX, 1. *Et vidi angelum descendentem de caelo, habentem clavem abyssi et catenam magnam in manu sua.*

2. *Et apprehendit draconem serpentem antiquum*

et ipse calcat torcular vini furoris irae Dei omnipotentis.

16. *Habetque in vestimento in femore suo scriptum: Rex regum, Dominus dominantium.*

19. *Deum vidi bestiam et reges terrae et exercitus eorum congregatos commissurosque proelium cum eo, qui sedebat in equo, et cum exercitu ejus.*

20. *Ast apprehensa est bestia et cum ea pseudopropheta, qui fecerat signa coram ea, quibus seduxerat eos, qui adoraverunt imaginem bestiae. Vivique missi sunt hi duo in stagnum ignis ardentis sulphure.*

21. *Ceteri vero occisi sunt gladio procedenti de ore sedentis super equum.*

C. XX, 1. *Post haec vidi angelum descendentem de caelis, habentem clavem abyssi et catenam magnam in manu sua.*

2. *Qui apprehendit draconem serpentem antiquum,*

EX APOCALYPSI.

VOCABULARY

ferreus, 3 (*fr. ferrum, 2, iron*): of iron, 49, s; 93, a
calco, 1: to tread
torcular, -is, n: winepress, 22, f
vinum, 2: wine

16. vestimentum, 2 (*fr. vestio, 4, to clothe*): garment, -moris, n: thigh (ment, 49, e)
dominor, 1: to rule, be lord; (with the gen. or dative)

19. bestia, 1: beast
exercitus, 4 (*fr. exerceo, 2, -cui, -citur: to practice*): army, 49, a

20. apprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to seize, lay hold on
pseudopropheta, 1 Greek: false prophet, 49, A
coram: in the presence of, before, 50, b
seduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to mislead, seduce
adoro, 1: to adore
imago, -ginis, f: image, statue
vividus, 3 (*fr. vivo, 3, vixi, victum, to live*): alive, 49, i
stagnum, 2: pool, swamp

21. ceteri, 3: the rest, the others
occido, 3, -cidi, -cisum: to kill, slay

C. XX, 1. descendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to descend,
clavis, -is, f: key, lock
abyssus, 2, f Greek: abyss, fathomless depth
catena, 1: chain

2. antiquus, 3: old, ancient

TRANSLATION

them with an iron scepter. He treads the winepress of the fierceness of Almighty God's anger.

furor, -is, m (*fr. furo, 3, -, -: to rage*): raving, fierce-
ira, 1: anger, wrath (ness, 49, a

16. It is written on his garment, over his thigh: King of Kings, Lord of Lords.

19. Then I saw the beast and the kings of the earth and their armies, assembled to wage war against him who sat on his horse, and against his army.

20. However, the beast was seized and with it its false prophet who wrought signs before it, by which he seduced those who adored the statue of the beast. These two were cast alive into a pool of fire, burning with sulphur.

ardeo, 2, arsi, arsum: to burn
sulphur, -is, n: sulphur, 88

21. The rest were slain by the sword, (that) proceeded from the mouth of him (who) sat on the horse.

C. XX, 1. After that I saw an angel descending from Heaven and having the key of the abyss and a big chain in his hand.

2. He grasped the dragon, the old serpent who is

XIII. THE APOCALYPSE

qui est diabolus et satanas, *et* ligavit eum *per* annos mille.

3. *Et* misit eum in abyssum, *et* clausit *et* signavit super *illum*, *ut non* seducat amplius Gentes, donec consummentur mille anni: *et post* haec oportet *illum* solvi modico tempore.

7. *Et* cum consummati fuerint mille anni, solvetur satanas de carcere suo, *et* exhibit *et* seducet Gentes, quae sunt super quattuor angulos terrae, *et* congregabit eos in proelium.

9. *Et* descendit ignis a Deo de caelo *et* devoravit eos.

qui est diabolus et satanas, ligavitque eum *ad* annos mille.

3. *Ac* misit eum in abyssum, *quamve* clausit *et* obsignavit super *eum*, *ne* amplius seducat Gentes, donec consummentur mille anni: *post* haec oportebit *eum iterum* solvi *ad* modicum tempus.

7. *Cum vero* consummati fuerint mille anni, solvetur satanas de carcere suo, *et* exhibit *atque* seducet Gentes, quae sunt super quattuor angulos terrae, *ac* congregabit eos in proelium.

9. *At* descendet ignis a Deo de coelo *et* devorabit eos.

EX APOCALYPSI.

VOCABULARY

diabolus, 2, m, *Greek: devil, calumniator*
satanas, 1, *Hebrew: satan, adversary, antagonist*
ligo, 1: *to tie* (19, c)

3. obsigno, 1: *to seal*, 100; seducat, 124, a
consumo, 3, -mpsi, -ptum: *to consume; in the passive: to lapse*
oportet, 2, -tuit, -: *ought, one is to*, 48, d
iterum: *again*
solvo, 2, -lvi, -lutum: *to loosen, untie*

7. carcer, -is, m: *prison*
angulus, 2: *corner, nook*
congrego, 1: *to assemble, gather together*

9. descendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to come down, descend*
devoro, 1: *to swallow or gulp down, devour*

TRANSLATION

the devil and Satan himself, and tied him up (chained) for a thousand years.

3. *Then he has cast him into the abyss, and closed and sealed it upon him, lest he seduce the nations before the lapse of the thousand years: after that he shall be freed for a little time.*

modicus, 3: *moderate, little*

7. *After the thousand years are passed, Satan will be released from his prison, and he will go out and seduce the nations who dwell upon the four corners of the earth and he will assemble them for an attack.*

9. *But a fire shall come down from God, out of Heaven and shall devour them.*

43. MINUCIUS FELIX

Christian Lawyer at Rome

155-220 A.D.

Course 45

OCTAVIUS

Debate

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Quid potest esse tam apertum, tam confessum tamque perspicuum, cum oculos in caelum sustuleris et, quae sunt infra circaque, lustraveris, quam esse aliquod numen praestantissimae mentis, quo omnis

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Quid potest esse tam apertum, tam confessum tamque perspicuum, cum oculos in caelum sustuleris et, quae sunt infra circaque, lustraveris, quam esse aliquod numen praestantissimae mentis, quo omnis

OCTAVIUS.

VOCABULARY

1. aperio, 4, -rui, -rtum: *to uncover, open, make apparent*, 36. b
confiteor, 2, -fessum: *to confess, acknowledge*, 36, b
perspicuus, 3: *transparent, clear, conspicuous* (133, a)
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: *to lift up, raise, elevate*,
lustro, 1: *to illumine, look at, examine, regard;*

TRANSLATION

1. *What can be so apparent, so obvious and so manifest after you have lifted your eyes to the heavens and investigated what is within and around, as*

quae sunt, 120, d

praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to stand before, excel*

43. MINUCIUS FELIX

155-220 A.D.

Course 45

OCTAVIUS

natura inspiretur, moveatur, alatur, gubernetur?

2. Quid! Cum ordo temporum ac frugum stabili varietate distinguitur, nonne auctorem suum parentemque testatur ver aequae cum suis floribus et aestas cum suis messibus et autumnus maturitas grata et hiberna olivitas necessaria?

3. Longum est ire per singula. Nihil in homine membrorum est, quod non et necessitatis causa sit et decoris; et quod magis mirum est, eadem figura omnibus, sed quaedam unicuique lineamenta deflexa: sic et similes universi videmur et inter se singuli dissimiles invenimur.

4. At enim, quem colimus Deum, nec ostendimus nec videmus. Nec mireris, si Deum non vides; vento et flatibus omnia impelluntur, vibrantur, agitantur, et sub oculis tamen non venit ventus et flatus.

5. Ceterum, quod plerique pauperes dicimur, non

natura inspiretur, moveatur, alatur, gubernetur?

2. Quid! Cum ordo temporum ac frugum stabili varietate distinguitur, nonne auctorem suum parentemque aequae testatur ver suis floribus et aestas suis messibus et autumnus maturitas grata et hiberna olivitas necessaria?

3. Longum est ire per singula. Nihil in homine membrorum est, quod non et necessitatis causa sit et decoris; et quod magis mirum est, eadem figura omnibus, sed quaedam unicuique lineamenta deflexa: sic et similes universi videmur et inter nos dissimiles invenimur.

4. At enim, quem colimus Deum, nec ostendimus nec videmus. Nec mireris, si Deum non vides; vento et flatibus omnia impelluntur, vibrantur, agitantur, et sub oculis tamen non venit ventus et flatus.

5. Ceterum, quod plerique pauperes dicimur, non

OCTAVIUS.

VOCABULARY

inspiro, 1: *to blow in, inspire, vivify*, 130
alo, 3, alui, al(i)tum: *to nourish*, 130
guberno, 1: *to govern*, 130

2. Quid! *interjection: Why! What!*
frux, -gis, f (fr. fruor, 3, *to enjoy*): *fruit, crop*
distinguo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to separate, settle, distinguish*, 126, a
testor, 1: *to bear witness to*: [cum,] 93, a
ver, veris, n: *spring (time)*
aestas- tatis, f: *summer*
messis, -is, f (fr. meto, 3, messui, messum, *to reap*):
autumnus, 2: *autumn* (*harvest*, 93, a)
maturitas, -tatis, f (fr. maturus, 3, *ripe*): *maturity*

3. longum est, (si enumerare velim), *after Cicero*:
It would be too long, 109, b
singuli, 3: *one by one, every single one, each*, 29, c
membrum, 2: *member*, 67, c
decor, -is, m: *grace, elegance, beauty*; causa, 94
mirus, 3: *wonderful, astonishing*
lineamentum, 2 (fr. linea, 1, *line*): *drawing, sketch, feature*
deflecto, 3, -exi, -ctum: *to bend down, digress*
universus, 3: *whole, entire, all*

4. Ostendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to show, point at or out*
miror, 1: *to wonder, be astonished at*, 106
ventus, 2: *wind*, 93, a
flatus, 4 (fr. flo, 1, *to blow*): *blowing, blast, breeze*,
93, a
impello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: *to set in motion, impel*
vibro, 1: *to tremble, shake, vibrate*

5. Ceterum: *moreover, besides*
plerique, 3: *very many*
pauper, -is: *poor*, 26, d

TRANSLATION

that there is some Divinity of a most superior intellect, by whom all nature is vivified, moved, nourished, and governed?

2. *What! Since the order of the seasons and the crops is marked by a constant variation, do not spring with its flowers, summer with its harvests, and the delightful maturity of autumn, as well as the necessary olive harvest of winter equally bear witness to their author and cause?*

hibernus, 3: *wintry, of winter*
olivitas, -tatis, f (fr. oliva, 1, *olive*): *oil harvest*

3. *It would take too long to go into details. There is no member of the human body, which does not exist either by reason of necessity or of beauty; and what is still more marvelous, every one has the same form, yet some features are different in each one; thus we all seem to be alike and yet as individuals we differ from each other.*

invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to find*

4. *Moreover, we neither disclose nor see God whom we adore. And do not be astonished, if you do not see God. By the wind and breezes all things are moved, shaken, and disturbed, yet the wind and breeze are not subject to our sight.*

oculus, 2: *eye*

5. *Besides, the fact that most of us are said to be*

43. MINUCIUS FELIX

155-220 A.D.

Course 45

OCTAVIUS

est infamia nostra, sed gloria; animus enim, ut luxu solvitur, ita frugalitate firmatur. *Et* tamen quis potest pauper esse, qui non indiget, qui non inhiat alieno, qui Deo dives est?

6. Vos ipsi calamitosos viros fertis ad caelum, ut Mucium Scaevolam; qui, cum errasset in regem, perisset in hostibus, nisi dexteram perdidisset.

Et quot ex nostris, non dextram solum, sed totum corpus uri, cremari sine ullis ejulatibus pertulerunt, cum dimitti praesertim haberent in sua potestate!

7. Nec intellegitis, o miseri, neminem esse, qui aut sine ratione velit poenam subire, aut tormenta sine Deo possit sustinere. *(Excerpts from C. I-VI)*

est infamia nostra, sed gloria; animus enim, ut luxu solvitur, ita frugalitate firmatur. *Attamen* quis potest pauper esse, qui non indiget, qui non inhiat alieno, qui *in* Deo dives est?

6. Vos ipsi calamitosos viros fertis ad caelum, ut Mucium Scaevolam; qui, cum errasset in regem, perisset in hostibus, nisi dexteram perdidisset.

Et quot ex nostris, non dextram solam, sed totum corpus uri, cremari sine ullis ejulatibus pertulerunt, cum dimitti praesertim in sua haberent potestate!

7. Nec intelligitis, o miseri, neminem esse, qui aut sine ratione velit poenam subire, aut tormenta sine Deo possit sustinere.

OCTAVIUS

VOCABULARY

infamia, 1: *bad repute, shame, ignominy*
 luxus, 4: *luxury*, 93, a
 frugalitas, -tatis, f (fr. frugalis, 2, *oeconomical*):
frugality, 93, a
 indigeo, 2, -gui, -: *to need, want*, 83
 inhiio, 1: *to gape, covet, long for*, 79
 dives, -vitis: *rich*, 26, d

6. Calamitosus, 3 (fr. calamitas, -tatis, f, *misfortune*): *suffering great loss*
 “; qui (30, b, 5) periisset,” *independent*; “; qui perierit (99)” *would be a dependent clause*
 quot, *indecl.*: *how many*
 dextera (manus): *right hand*
 perdo, 3, -didi, -didum: *to lose*, 109, c, d
 solus, 3: *alone*; solum, *adv.*: *only*
 uro, 3, ussi, ussum: *to burn*
 cremo, 1: *to burn, consume by fire*
 ejulatus, 4 (fr. ejulo, 1, *to wail*): *lament*

7. ratio, -nis, f (fr. reor, 2, ratum, *to think*): *calculation, account, reason*
 subeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to undergo*, 61, b
 possit, 120, c, 2
 tormentum, 2 (fr. torqueo, 2, -rsi, -tum, *to twist*):
torment

TRANSLATION

poor, & is not our shame but our glory: for as the soul is weakened by excess, so it is strengthened by moderation. And still, how can one be poor, who needs nothing, who does not covet his neighbor's goods, and who is rich in God?

6. *You highly extol your men (who) suffered (great loss), for example, Mucius Scaevola; when he missed the king, he would have perished in the midst of the enemy, if he had not lost his right hand. And how many of us without any lamentation, suffered not only the hand, but the whole body to be burned and consumed by fire, especially when they had it in their power to be set free.*

perfero, 3, -tuli, -latum: *to suffer*, 43, 8
 cum: *when*, 125, c

7. *Nor do you understand, O unfortunate (people), that there is no one who would either desire to undergo pains without reason, or who would be able to bear torments without the grace of God.*

sustineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: *to sustain, refrain, bear*

44. QUINTUS SEPTIMIUS FLORENS TERTULLIANUS

160-230 A.D.

Course 47

TO THE MARTYRS

(197 A.D.)

WITH
archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Scimus ex Dominico praecepto, quod caro infirma

WITHOUT
archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Scimus ex praecepto Dominico carnem infirmam

AD MARTYRES.

CXCVII. P(OST) CH(RISTUM NATUM)

TRANSLATION

1. Dominicus, 3 (fr. Dominus, 2, *Lord*): *of the Lord.*
 praeceptum, 2 (fr. praecipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum, *to order, teach*): *precept, teaching*

VOCABULARY

1. *We know from our Savior's teaching, that the "flesh is weak but the spirit is willing." Therefore, infirmus, 3: weak, feeble, infirm*

44. QUINTUS SEPTIMIUS FLORENS TERTULLIANUS

160-230 A.D.

Course 47

TO THE MARTYRS

sit, spiritus promptus. Non ergo nobis blandiamur, quia Dominus consensit carnem infirmam esse.

esse, spiritum autem promptum. Non ergo nobis blandiamur, quasi Dominus consenserit carnem infirmam esse.

Propterea enim praedixit spiritum promptum, ut ostenderet, quid cui *debeat* esse subjectum; scilicet, ut caro inserviat spiritui, infirmior fortiori, ut ab eo etiam ipsa fortitudinem assumat.

Propterea enim praedixit spiritum promptum, ut ostenderet, quid cui *oporteat* esse subjectum; scilicet, ut caro serviat spiritui, infirmior fortiori, ut ab eo etiam ipsa fortitudinem assumat.

2. Colloquatur spiritus cum carne de communi salute, nec jam de incommodis carceris, sed de ipso agone et proelio *cogitans*.

2. Colloquatur spiritus cum carne de communi salute, nec jam de incommodis carceris, sed de ipso agone et proelio *subeundo*.

Timebit forsitan caro gladium gravem, et crucem excelsam et rabiem bestiarum, et summam ignium poenam, et omne carnificis ingenium in tormentis.

Timebit forsitan caro gladium gravem, et crucem excelsam et rabiem bestiarum, et summam ignium poenam, et omne carnificis ingenium in tormentis *inveniendis*.

3. *Sed* spiritus *contra* ponat sibi et carni, acerba licet ista, a multis tamen aequo animo excepta, immo et ultro appetita, famae et gloriae causa; nec a viris tantum, sed etiam a feminis, ut vos quoque, Benedictae, *sexui* vestro respondeatis.

3. *Attamen* spiritus *opponat* sibi et carni, acerba licet ista, a multis tamen aequo animo excepta, immo et ultro appetita, famae et gloriae causa; nec a viris tantum, sed etiam a feminis, ut vos quoque, Benedictae, *pro sexu* vestro respondeatis.

AD MARTYRES.

VOCABULARY

promptus, 3: *ready, prompt*
 blandior, 4: *to flatter*, 80, a; 103
 consensio, 4, -sensi, -sensus: *to agree, assent*, 120, b
 praedico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: *to foretell*, 99, b
 ostendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to show, declare*, 100; 124, a
 [debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to owe, be indebted*]
 oportet, -tuit: *it is needed, must be, ought to be*, 48, d; 102, 1; 132
 subjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: *to throw, cast, place under, subject*, 57, 4
 scilicet: *namely, i. e.*

2. colloquor, 3, -locutum: *to talk, converse, treat, commonis*, 2: *common, usual* (106)
 salus, -lutis, f: *welfare, salvation*
 incommodus, 3: *inconvenient, troublesome*, 26, f
 carcer, -is, m: *prison, jail*
 subeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to undergo*, 42, 3; 118
 gladius, 2: *sword*
 excelsus, 3 (fr. excello, 3, -llui, -lsum, *to excel*): *lofty, high*
 rabies, 5: *madness, fierceness, fury*
 summus, 3 (fr. superus, 3, *upper*): *highest*, 27, j
 carnifex, -ficis, m: *executioner*

3. oppono, 3, -posui, -positum: *to set, place before* [contra pono *is doctrinal*], 106
 acerbus, 3: *bitter, painful, severe, harsh*
 licet: *although, though, despite*
 aequus, 3: *equal, level, just, calm*
 animus, 3: *spirit, character, mind*, 88
 ultro: *spontaneously, of one's own accord*
 appeto, 3, -petii, -petitum: *to grasp, desire, seek*, 36, b
 causa, 1: *case, cause, reason*, 50, d; 94
 benedico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: *to bless*, 80, b; 36, b

TRANSLATION

let us not deceive ourselves, as if the Lord had conformed (to the fact) that our flesh is weak.
In order that He might indicate which one should be subject to the other, He made known that the flesh should serve the spirit, i. e. the weaker (should serve) the stronger, in order that from it the (flesh) may receive strength.

servio, 4: *to serve*, 80, l; 124, a
 fortitudo, -dinis, f (fr. fortis, 2, *strong, brave*): *strength, firmness, bravery, courage*, 49, u

2. *Let the spirit confer with the flesh about their common welfare, not thinking at all about the discomfort of prison, but solely about the contest and the battle which are to be undergone.*

Perhaps the flesh will fear the heavy sword, the cross raised on high, the fury of the wild beasts, the terrible pain of fire, the great inventiveness of the executioner in the kinds of torments.

ingenium, 2: *nature, genius, talent*
 tormentum, 2 (fr. torqueo, 2, -rsi, -rtum, *to twist*): *torment; inveniendis*, 118

3. *Yet let the spirit picture for itself and for the flesh these (torments) which despite their severity have been embraced with a calm mind by many; yea, and even willingly coveted for the sake of fame and glory, and this not only by men, but even by women, that you also, Blessed Women, may answer for your sex.*

sexus, 4: *sex*
 respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: *to answer*, 80, o; 124, a

TO THE MARTYRS

4. Longum est, si enumerem singulos, qui se gladio confecerint, animo suo ducti. De feminis ad manum est Lucretia, quae vim stupri passa, cultrum sibi adegit in conspectu propinquorum, ut gloriam castitati suae pareret.

5. Mucius dexteram suam in ara cremavit, ut hoc factum ejus fama haberet. Minus fecerunt philosophi: Heraclitus, qui se exussit; item Empedocles, qui in ignes Aetnaei montis desiluit; et Peregrinus, qui non olim se rogo immisit, cum feminae quoque contempserint ignes:

6. Dido, ne post virum dilectissimum nubere cogetur; item Asdrubalis uxor, quae jam ardente Carthagine cum maritum suum supplicem Scipionis videret, cum filiis suis in incendium patriae devolavit.

7. Bestias femina libens appetiit, et utique aspides,

4. Longum est, si enumerem singulos, qui animo suo ducti gladio se confecerunt. De feminis ad manum est Lucretia, quae vim stupri passa cultrum sibi adegit in conspectu propinquorum, ut gloriam castit^vi_{ta} suae pareret.

5. Mucius dexteram suam in ara cremavit, ut hoc factum ejus fama haberet. *Non* minus fecerunt philosophi: Heraclitus, qui se exussit; item Empedocles, qui in ignes montis Aetnae desiluit; et Peregrinus, qui non olim se rogo immisit, cum feminae quoque contemp^vsissent ignes,

6. ut Dido, ne post virum dilectissimum nubere cogetur; item Asdrubalis uxor, quae jam ardente Carthagine cum maritum suum supplicem Scipionis videret, cum filiis suis in incendium patriae devolavit.

7. *Quinimmo* bestias^{Cleopatra} libens appetiit, et utique aspi-

AD MARTYRES.

VOCABULARY

4. longum est, Ciceronian phrase: *It would be long*, 109, b
 enumero, 1: *to reckon, count up, enumerate*, 109, b
 singuli, 3: *one by one, each*, 29, c
 confecerunt, 120, d
 patior, 3, passum: *to suffer, endure*, 40
 culter, -tri, m: *knife*
 adigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to drive in, compel*, 79
 conspectus, 4 (*fr. conspicio*, 3, -spexi, -ctum, *to view*):
sight, view

5. dextera, 1: *right hand*
 ara, 1: *altar*
 cremo, 1: *to burn, consume by fire*
 factum, 2 (*fr. facio*, 3, feci, factum, *to make*): *fact*
 fama, 1: *talk, rumor, fame, report, news*
 exuro, 3, -ussi, -ussum: *to burn out or entirely*
 ignis, is, m: *fire*
 desilio, 4, -silui, -sultum: *to leap down*
 rogos, 2: *funeral pyre*
 immitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to send or let in*, 79

6. diligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to prize, love, esteem highly*
 nubo, 3, nupsi, nuptum: *to marry a man*, 80, k
 cogo, 3, coegi, coactum: *to bring together, unite, force*,
 uxor, -is, f: *wife* (124, a)
 ardeo, 2, arsi, arsum: *to burn*, 114, a
 maritus, 2: *husband*; videret, 125, a
 supplex, -licis: *suppliant*, 66
 incendium, 2 (*fr. incendo*, 3, -ndi, -nsum, *kindle*):
conflagration

7. quinimmo: *nay, even*
 libens or lubens, -ntis: *willing*, 56

TRANSLATION

4. *It would take too long if I should enumerate all (those) who, following their own impulses, killed themselves with the sword. As regards women, there is at hand Lucretia who, having suffered the ignominy of violation, stabbed herself with a knife in the sight of her relatives, to save the renown of her chastity.*

propinquus, 3: *neighboring, relative*
 pario, 3, peperit, partum: *to bring forth, obtain*, 40;
 124, a

5. *Mucius burned his right hand on the altar in order that tradition might hand down this deed of his. Some philosophers did no less: as Heraclius, who burned himself alive; likewise Empedocles, who leaped into the fire of Aetna; and Peregrinus, who not long ago threw himself into his funeral pyre, since women also made no account of the flames,*

contemno, 3, -tempsi, -mptum: *to despise, contemn*,
 125, b

6. *as Dido did that she might not be forced to marry after her much adored hero (departed); in like manner when the wife of Hasdrubal, whilst Carthage was in flames, saw that her husband was subdued by Scipio, she fled with her children into the flames of her native city.*

quin etiam or quin immo: *yea, rather, nay*
 devolo, 1: *to fly down*

7. *Nay, women willingly sought the beasts, even aspides, -idis, f: adder, asp*

44. QUINTUS SEPTIMIUS FLORENS TERTULLIANUS

160-230 A.D.

Course 47

TO THE MARTYRS

serpentes tauro vel urso horridiores, quas Cleopatra
immisit sibi, ne in manus inimici perveniret.

des, serpentes tauro vel urso horridiores, quas Cleo-
patra sibi immisit, ne in manus inimici perveniret.

(C. IV)

AD MARTYRES.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

serpens, -ntis, c: *snake, serpent*
taurus, 2: *bull, 87*
ursus, 2: *bear, 87*
horridus, 3 (*fr. horreo, 2, -rui, -, to shiver*): *shuddering*
pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to arrive, come to, 124, a*

adders, serpents, more horrible than the bull or bear,
which Cleopatra loosed against herself, lest she should
fall into the hands of her enemy.
inimicus, 2: *enemy*

45. THUSCIUS CAECILIUS CYPRIANUS

Roman Rhetorician, then Bishop and Martyr

200-258 A.D.

Course 90

ON PATIENCE

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. De patientia locuturus, fratres dilectissimi, et
commoda praedicaturus, unde potius incipiam, quam
quod nunc quoque ad audientiam, vestram patientiam
video esse necessariam, ut nec hoc ipsum, quod audi-
tis et discitis, sine patientia facere possitis?

2. Tunc enim demum sermo et ratio salutaris ef-
ficaciter discitur, si patienter, quod dicitur, audiatur.

Nec invenio, fratres dilectissimi, inter ceteras cae-
lestis disciplinae vias, quibus ad consequenda divinitus
praemia spei ac fidei nostrae *secta* dirigitur, quid magis
sit vel utilius ad vitam, vel majus ad gloriam,
quam ut, qui praeceptis Dominicis obsequio timoris
ac devotionis innitimus, patientiam maxime tota observa-
tione tueamur.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. De patientia locuturus, fratres dilectissimi, et
commoda praedicaturus, unde potius incipiam, quam
ut nunc quoque vestram patientiam *dicam* esse neces-
sariam ad audientiam *ista*, ut nec hoc ipsum, quod
auditis et discitis, sine patientia facere possitis?

2. Tunc enim demum sermo et ratio salutaris ef-
ficaciter discitur, si patienter, quod dicitur, audiatur.

Nec invenio, fratres dilectissimi, inter ceteras cae-
lestis disciplinae vias, quibus ad consequenda divinitus
praemia spei ac fidei nostrae *ecclesia* dirigitur, quid
magis sit vel utilius ad vitam, vel majus ad gloriam,
quam ut, qui praeceptis Dominicis obsequio timoris ac
devotionis innitimur, patientiam maxime tota observa-
tione tueamur.

DE BONO PATIENTIAE.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

1. diligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to prize, esteem highly, love*
commodum, 2 (*fr. commodus, 3, convenient*): *advan-
tage, 26, f*
potius, quam ut . . . : *rather than to . . . , 127, b*
quod auditis, 120, c, A
audientia, 1 (*fr. audio, 4*) *hearing, listening, attention*

2. demum: *at length, at last*
si, 109, b
quid magis sit, 132
utilius, majus quam, ut. . . , 127, b
innitor, 3, -ixum: *to lean upon, 79*
obsequium, 2 (*fr. obsequor, 3, -cutum, to obey*):
compliance, deference, obedience, 93, a
tueor, 2, tuitum: *to look at, care for, guard, 127, b*

1. As (I am) about to speak on patience, dearly
beloved brethren, and to praise its usefulness and ad-
vantages, what better start could I make than to
realize, that even now your patience is needed for
your attention, so that you are not even able to per-
form this act of listening and learning without pa-
tience.

2. In the final analysis, the instruction and its salu-
tary lesson is efficiently learned, if what is delivered,
is listened to with patience.

Dearly beloved brethren, among the different ways
of the heavenly discipline by which the Church is
divinely directed to attain the rewards of our faith and
hope, I do not find any which may be more useful
for our life, more effective for salvation than that,
relying on the precepts of the Lord we should cultivate
patience with the greatest possible care, *(by the practice of fear*
+ devotion

ON PATIENCE

3. Hanc se sectari philosophi quoque profitentur: sed tam illic patientia falsa est, quam et falsa sapientia est.

Nos autem, fratres dilectissimi, qui philosophi non verbis, sed factis sumus, nec vestitu sapientiam, sed veritate praeferimus, qui virtutum conscientiam magis quam jactantiam novimus; qui non loquimur magna, sed vivimus *quasi* servi et cultores Dei.

4. Patientia est, quae nos Deo et commendat et servat: ipsa est, quae iram temperat, quae linguam frenat, quae mentem gubernat, pacem custodit, disciplinam regit, libidinis impetum frangit, *tumoris* violentiam comprimit incendium simultatis *extinguit*, coërcet potentiam divitum, inopiam pauperum refovet.

5. Tuetur in virginibus beatam integritatem, in viduis laboriosam castitatem, in conjunctis et maritalis individuum caritatem; facit humiles in prosperis, in adversis fortes, contra injurias et contumelias mites; docet delinquentibus cito ignoscere: si ipse delinquas, diu et multum rogare; tentationes expugnat, persecutiones tolerat, passiones et martyria consummat. Ipsa

3. Hanc se sectari philosophi quoque profitentur: sed tam falsa est illic patientia, quam falsa est et sapientia.

Nos autem, fratres dilectissimi, qui philosophi non verbis, sed factis sumus, nec vestitu sapientiam, sed veritate praeferimus, qui virtutum conscientiam magis quam jactantiam novimus; qui non loquimur magna, sed vivimus *sicuti* servi et cultores Dei.

4. Patientia est, quae nos Deo et commendat et servat: ipsa est, quae iram temperat, quae linguam frenat, quae mentem gubernat, pacem custodit, disciplinam regit, libidinis impetum frangit, *superbiae* violentiam comprimit, incendium simultatis *extinguit*, coërcet potentiam divitum, *et* inopiam pauperum refovet..

5. Tuetur in virginibus beatam integritatem, in viduis laboriosam castitatem, in conjunctis et maritalis individuum caritatem; facit humiles in prosperis, in adversis fortes, contra injurias et contumelias mites; docet delinquentibus cito ignoscere: si ipse delinquas, diu et multum rogare; tentationes expugnat, persecutiones tolerat, passiones et martyria consummat. Ipsa

DE BONO PATIENTIAE.

VOCABULARY

3. sector, 1 (fr. sequor, 3, -cutum, to follow): to follow eagerly, 49, j
 profiteor, 2, -fessum: to avow, declare, profess
 illic: there, on that side
 vestitus, 4 (fr. vestio, 4): clothing, garment, 88
 jactantia, 1 (fr. jacto, 1, to throw often): boasting, bragging, vain glory, 49, u
 [quasi: as if]; ut, uti, sicuti, sicut: as
 cultor, -is, m (fr. colo, 3, -lui, cultum, to cultivate): worshipper, 49, d

4. commendo, 1: to recommend
 tempero, 1: to keep within limits, refrain, temper
 freno, 1: to bridle, curb, check
 frango, 3, fregi, fractum: to break
 [tumor, -is, m: swelling]
 comprimo, 3, -pressi, -pressum: to repress
 similtas, -tatis, f: rivalry, jealousy
 coërcio, 2, coërcui, -citum: to confine, restrain
 refoveo, 2, -fovi, -fotum: to warm again, restore, re-

5. marito, 1: to wed, marry, 26, f (fresh)
 individuus, 3, (fr. divido, 3, to divide): indivisible
 prosperus, 3: fortunate, prosperous, lucky, 26, f
 adversus, 3: opposite, opposed, unfavorable, 26, f
 contumelia, 1: insult, outrage
 delinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: to fail in duty, 135, a
 expugno, 1: to overcome, conquer, thwart
 consummo, 1: to sum up, complete

TRANSLATION

3. The philosophers also profess to pursue this, but as their wisdom is false, so too is their patience. ~~time of fear and devotion.~~

But, dearly beloved brethren, we who are philosophers not in words but in deeds, practice philosophy not in appearance but in reality, possessing not vain glory, but the knowledge of virtues, not speaking great things, but living as the servants and worshippers of

God.

4. It is patience that commends us to God and keeps us with Him. (Patience) it is that mitigates our anger; (patience) it is that checks our tongue, governs our mind, preserves our peace; (patience) it is that rules our manner of life, breaks the attack of our lust, represses the violence of our pride, quenches the fire of our jealousy, curbs the power of the rich, and relieves the wants of the poor;

5. (patience) it is that protects in virgins a blessed integrity; in widows, chastity through working; among the married, an undivided charity; (patience) makes one humble in prosperity, strong in tribulations, meek amidst injuries and insults; it teaches one to forgive quickly those (who) wrong (one) and to insist long and much upon asking pardon when one falls. It overcomes temptations, endures persecutions, and crowns sufferings and martyrdom. (Patience) it is

45. THUSCIUS CAECILIUS CYPRIANUS

200-258 A.D.

Course 90

ON PATIENCE

est, quae fidei nostrae fundamenta firmiter munit. est, quae fidei nostrae fundamenta firmiter munit.

(Num. 1-20)

DE BONO PATIENTIAE.

VOCABULARY

munio, 4: to fortify, defend

TRANSLATION

that strengthens the foundations of our faith.

46. LUCIUS CAELIUS FIRMIANUS LACTANTIUS

Roman Rhetorician with Christian Clearness

250-325 A.D.

Course 74

DIVINE INSTRUCTIONS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Si quis autem *volet* scire plenius, cur malos et injustos Deus potentes, beatos et divites fieri sinat, pios *contra*, humiles, miseros, inopes esse patiat, sumat eum Senecae librum, cui titulus est QUARE BONIS VIRIS MULTA MALA ACCIDANT, CUM SIT PROVIDENTIA; in quo *ille* multa, non plane imperitia *saeculari*, sed sapienter ac paene divinitus elocutus est.

2. "Deus," inquit, "homines pro liberis habet; sed corruptos et vitiosos luxuriose ac delicate patitur vivere, quia non putat emendatione sua dignos; bonos autem, quos diligit, castigat saepius, et assiduis laboribus ad usum virtutis exercet; nec eos caducis ac mortalibus bonis corrumpi ac depravari sinit." Unde nemini mirum debet videri, si pro nostris saepe delictis castigamur a Deo.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Si quis autem *velit* scire plenius, cur malos et injustos Deus sinat potentes, beatos et divites fieri, pios autem patiat humiles, miseros et inopes esse, sumat eum Senecae librum, cui titulus est QUARE BONIS VIRIS MULTA MALA ACCIDANT, CUM SIT PROVIDENTIA; in quo multa, non plane imperitia *profana*, sed sapienter ac paene divinitus elocutus est.

2. "Deus," inquit, "homines pro liberis habet; sed corruptos et vitiosos luxuriose ac delicate patitur vivere, quia non putat emendatione sua dignos; bonos autem, quos diligit, castigat saepius, et assiduis laboribus ad usum virtutis exercet; nec eos caducis ac mortalibus bonis corrumpi ac depravari sinit." Unde nemini mirum videri oportet, si pro nostris delictis saepe castigamur a Deo.

DE DIVINIS INSTITUTIONIBUS.

VOCABULARY

1. *volet*, archaic form of *velit*, from *volo*: to wish, 42, 4; 109, b
plenus, 3: full, plain, 27, l; 28, a
[contra, adverb: on the contrary, 50, a]
inops, -pis: helpless, without means
miser, -ra, -rum: wretched, unhappy, pitiable
patior, 3, *passum*: to suffer, 40; 132
imperitia, 1: want of skill, ignorance, 88
accido, 3, -cidi, -: to befall, happen
plane, (fr. *planus*, 3, level, flat): plainly, entirely, 28, a
paene: nearly, almost

2. *luxuriosus*, 3 (fr. *luxuria*, 1, luxury): voluptuous
delicatus, 3 (fr. *delicia*, 1, pleasure): delightful, fastidious
emendatio, -onis, f (fr. *emendo*, 1, to correct): correction, 89, a
dilligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: to prize, love, esteem highly
castigo, 1: to chastise
saepius: more often, 28, f; 27, l
exerceo, 2, -cui, -citur: to employ, exercise
usus, 4 (fr. *utor*, 3, usum, to use): practice
caducus, 3 (fr. *cado*, 3, to fall): perishable, transitory
corrumpo, 3, -rupi, -ruptum: to spoil, destroy
mirus, 3: wonderful, astonishing, 48, d
depravo, 1: to pervert, corrupt

TRANSLATION

1. If anyone wishes to know more fully why God permits the wicked and the unjust to become powerful, happy, and rich, and why He allows the just, on the contrary, to be humbled, distressed, and needy, let him take that book of Seneca entitled: WHY DO MANY EVILS BEFALL GOOD MEN, WHEN THERE IS A PROVIDENCE? Herein he has said many things not at all with worldly folly, but with wisdom and almost by inspiration.
divinus, 3: divine, 28, c

2. God, he says, has men for his children, but He permits the corrupt and wicked to live in luxury and lust (for their tiny good deeds), because He does not hold them worthy of His correction; whilst the good whom He loves, He chastises very often (for their tiny faults) and induces them by continual hardships to practice virtue, and does not permit them to be spoiled and perverted by perishable mortal goods. Hence it should not seem surprising to anyone if we are often chastised by God for our faults.

delictum, 2 (fr. *delinquo*, 3, -liqui, -lictum, to fail in duty): fault

DIVINE INSTRUCTIONS

3. Immo vero, cum vexamur ac premimur, tum maxime gratias agimus indulgentissimo Patri, quod corruptelam nostram non patitur longius procedere, sed plagis ac verberibus emendat. Ex quo intellegimus esse nos Deo curae, *quibus*, quoniam peccamus, irascitur.

4. Nam cum posset populo suo et opes et regna largiri, sicut dederat ante Judaeis, quorum nos successores ac posteri sumus, *idcirco* eum voluit sub aliena ditione atque imperio degere, ne rerum prosperarum felicitate corruptus in luxuriam laberetur ac Dei praecepta contemneret, sicut illi majores nostri, qui saepe terrenis ac fragilibus *his* bonis enervati aberrarunt a disciplina et legis vincula ruperunt.

5. Providit ergo, quatenus cultoribus suis praestaret quietem, si mandata servassent, *et* tamen eos emendaret, si praeceptis non obtemperassent. Itaque ne tam corrumperentur otio quam patres eorum licentia, premi eos voluit ab *uis*, in quorum manibus eos collocavit,

3. Immo vero, cum vexamur ac premimur, tum maxime gratias agimus indulgentissimo Patri, quod corruptelam nostram non patitur longius procedere, sed plagis ac verberibus emendat. Ex quo intelligimus esse nos Deo curae, quoniam, *cum* peccamus, irascitur.

4. Nam cum posset populo suo et opes et regna largiri, sicut dederat ante Judaeis, quorum nos successores ac posteri sumus, *nihilominus* voluit sub aliena ditione atque imperio eum degere, ne rerum prosperarum felicitate corruptus in luxuriam laberetur ac Dei praecepta contemneret, sicut illi majores nostri, qui saepe terrenis ac fragilibus bonis enervati aberrarunt a disciplina et legis vincula ruperunt.

5. Providit ergo, quatenus cultoribus suis praestaret quietem, si mandata servarent, *attamen* eos emendaret, si praeceptis non obtemperarent. Itaque ne tam corrumperentur otio quam patres eorum licentia, premi eos voluit ab *illis*, in quorum manibus eos collocavit,

DE DIVINIS INSTITUTIONIBUS.

VOCABULARY

3. im(m)o vero: *and even, nay more, moreover*
premo, 3, pressi, pressum: *to press, maltreat*
vexo, 1: *annoy, harass*
corruptela, 1 (*fr.* corrumpo, 3): *seduction, corruption*
procedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to proceed, go on*
verber, is, n: *whipping, scourge*, 93, a; 23, 1, b
Deo curae, 77
irascor, 3, iratum: *to be angry*, 80, f

4. (ops) opis, f: *power, influence; pl.: wealth*
largior, 4, -gitum: *to grant, impart*, 125, c
do, 1, dedi, datum: *to give, bestow*
ditio, -onis, f (*fr.* ditio, 1, *to enrich*): *government, power*
dego, 3, degui, -: *to abide, live; here used intransitive-*
majores, -rum, m: *ancestors* (ly, 57, b'
fragilis, 2: *frail, transitory, weak*
enervo, 1: *to render weak, weaken*
aberro, 1: *to go astray*
vinculum, 2 (*fr.* vincio, 4, vinxi, vinctum, *to bind*):
bond, fetter

5. quatenus: *how far, so far as that; elegantly used*
for ut, 124, a
praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to impart, give*, 120, c, 1
quies, etis, f: *rest*
servo, 1: *to keep, save, hold*, 135, a
obtempero, 1: *to comply, obey*, 80, l; 135, a
otium, 2: *idleness, leisure*, 88
licentia, 1: *liberty, leave*, 88

TRANSLATION

3. *Nay more, when we are harassed and hard pressed, then especially do we thank our most indulgent Father, because He does not allow our corruption to proceed any further, but corrects us by blows and lashes. From this we understand that God cares for us, for when we sin, He is angry.*

4. *Now, although He could grant (us) His people both wealth and country, just as He had given them to the Jews of old, whose successors and posterity we are, He nevertheless, wished His people (us Christians) to live under alien power and sway, lest corrupted by the happiness of prosperity they fall into luxury and despise the commandments of God, as did our ancestors (the Jews), who, weakened by earthly and perishable goods, often strayed from discipline and broke the bonds of the law.*

5. *Therefore, He had a care to give rest to His faithful, if they kept His commandments, and nevertheless to correct them, if they did not conform to His precepts. Therefore, lest they be corrupted by leisure as their ancestors (the Jews) were by their liberty, He wished them to be persecuted by those in whose hands He placed them, in order that He might*

colloco, 1: *to place*, 50, c';

46. LUCIUS CAELIUS FIRMIANUS LACTANTIUS

250-325 A.D.

Course 74

DIVINE INSTRUCTIONS

ut et labantes confirmet, et fidos experiatur ac tentet. ut et labantes confirmaret, et fidos experiretur et tentaret.
(Lib. V. De Justitia, C. XXIII)

DE DIVINIS INSTITUTIONIBUS.

VOCABULARY

labo, 1: *to totter, waver, sink*
confirmo, 1: *to strengthen, 99, b*
ficus, 3 (*fr. fido, 3, -, fismus, to trust*): *true, faithful*
experior, 4, -pertum: *to experience, find, 99, b*

TRANSLATION

both strengthen the wavering, and test and prove the faithful.
tento, 1: *to try, prove, test, 99, b*

47. SANCTUS HILARIUS

Died 366 A.D.

Course 49

COMMENTARY

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Vos estis sal terrae. Quod si sal infatuatum fuerit, ad nihilum valet id, quod salietur. Sal, ut arbitrator, terrae nullum est. Quomodo ergo Apostolos sal terrae nuncupavit?

Sed proprietates est quaerenda dicatorum, quam et Apostolorum officium et ipsius salis natura monstrabit. Sal est in se uno continens aquae et ignis elementum, et hoc ex duobus est unum.

2. Hic igitur in omnem usum humani generis effectus, incorruptionem corporibus, quibus fuerit aspersus, impertit, et ad omnem sensum conditi saporis aptissimus est.

Apostoli autem sunt rerum caelestium praedicatores et aeternitatis velut satores, immortalitatem omnibus corporibus, quibus eorum sermo aspersus fuerit, conferentes. Merito igitur sal terrae nuncupati sunt, per doctrinae virtutem, saliendo modo, aeternitati cor-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Vos estis sal terrae. Quod si sal infatuatum fuerit, ad salendum nihil valet ultra. Sal, ut arbitrator, terrae nullum est. Quomodo ergo Dominus Salvator Apostolos sal terrae nuncupavit?

Sed proprietates est quaerenda dicatorum, quam et Apostolorum officium et ipsius salis natura monstrabit. Sal est in se uno continens aquae et ignis elementum, et hoc ex duobus est unum.

2. Hoc igitur in omnem usum humani generis effectum incorruptionem corporibus, quibus fuerit aspersum, impertit, et ad omne genus conditi saporis aptissimum est.

Apostoli autem sunt rerum caelestium praedicatores et aeternitatis velut satores, immortalitatem omnibus corporibus, quibus eorum sermo aspersus fuerit, conferentes. Merito igitur sal terrae nuncupati sunt, per doctrinae virtutem saliendo modo aeternitati cor-

COMMENTARIUM.

VOCABULARY

1. sal, -is, m or n; pl. m: *salt*
quod si, 109, e
infatuo, 1: *to make a fool of or useless, 109, b; 110, b*
salio, 4, or salo, 3, -, salsum: *to salt, 117, b*
ni(hi)l, 2, n, its acc. with preposition nihilum: *nothing; here nihil is the dir. object or adv. of valet, (able to do), COLL., 39, 1*
ultra, adv.: *beyond, further, any more*
nuncupo, 1: *to name, call by name, 59, A*
monstro, 1: *to show, point out*
contineo, 2, -nui, -tentum: *to contain*

2. efficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to effect, produce, 36, b;*
aspergo, 3, -rsi, -rsum, *to sprinkle, 82*
impertio, 4: *to impart, share, bestow, 79*
sapor, -is, m (*fr. sapio, 3, to taste*): *savor*
condio, 4: *to pickle, preserve, season*
velut(i): *as, even as, just as*
confero, 3, contuli, collatum: *to bring together, collect*
merito, adv. (*fr. meritum, 2, merit*): *deservedly, with reason, 88*

TRANSLATION

1. You are the salt of the earth. Now, if salt loses its savor, it is useless for seasoning. It seems to me, there is no salt of the earth. How then could our Lord call the apostles the salt of the earth?

But we ought to consider the appropriateness of the saying, and this appropriateness will be demonstrated both by the office of the apostles and the nature of the salt. Salt itself, as a whole, contains the elements of fire and water; and this is one out of the two.

2. Now, this (salt) effective for every need of mankind, imparts incorruptibility to (those) bodies on which it is sprinkled, and it is most suitable for every kind of tasty flavor.

But the apostles are the heralds of heavenly goods, and, as the sowers of eternity, confer immortality to every one on whom their words have been sprinkled. Therefore, with reason are they called the salt of the

COMMENTARY

pora reservantes.

3. Sed natura salis semper eadem est, nec immutari unquam potest. Verum quia conversioni homo subiacet, et solus beatus, qui usque ad finem in omnibus Dei operibus permanserit, ideo eos, sal terrae nuncupatos, monet in traditae sibi potestatis virtute persistere, ne infatuati nihil saliant, et ipsi, sensu accepti saporis amisso, vivificare corrupta non possint, et projecti de Ecclesiae promptuariis, cum his, quos salierint, pedibus incedentium proterantur.

4. Nolite timere eos, qui occidunt corpus, *quando* pro naturae suae atque originis conditione resoluta, in substantiam spiritualis animae refundatur.

Etiam conditionem, qua teneremur, adjecit *negaturum se* eum Patri in caelis, qui *se* hominibus in terra negasset; eum *porro*, qui confessus coram hominibus *se* fuisset, a se in caelis confitendum; qualesque nos nominis *sui* testes hominibus fuisset, tali nos apud Deum Patrem testimonio ejus usuros.

(In Matth. C. 4-10)

pora reservantes.

3. Sed natura salis semper eadem est, nec immutari unquam potest. Verum quia conversioni homo subiacet, et solus beatus, qui usque ad finem in omnibus Dei operibus permanserit, ideo eos sal terrae nuncupatos monet in traditae sibi potestatis virtute persistere, ne infatuati nihil saliant, et ipsi sensu accepti saporis amisso vivificare corrupta non possint, et projecti de Ecclesiae promptuariis, cum his, quos salierint, pedibus incedentium proterantur.

4. Nolite timere eos, qui occidunt corpus, *quod* pro naturae suae atque originis conditione resoluta in substantiam spiritualem animae refundatur.

Etiam conditionem, qua teneremur, adjecit, *nempse* negandum a se eum Patri in caelis, qui *ipsum* hominibus in terra negasset; eum *vero*, qui confessus coram hominibus *ipsum* fuisset, a se in caelis confitendum; qualesque nos nominis *ejus* testes hominibus fuisset, tali nos apud Deum Patrem testimonio ejus usuros.

COMMENTARY

VOCABULARY

reservo, 1: to lay up, reserve, save

3. immutatio, 1: to change, alter
unquam: ever

conversio, -onis, f (fr. converto, 3, -rsi, -rsum, to turn around, change): change

subjaceo, -jacui, -: to lie under, be subject, 79

permaneo, 2, -nsi, -nsum: to remain, stay, abide, 120, c, 3

moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: to remind, admonish, 57, b'

persisto, 3, -stiti, -: to remain, persist, 35, g

corrumpo, 3, -rupi, -ruptum: to corrupt, destroy

ne ita infatuati sint, (124, a) ut nihil saliant . . . et non possint, 124, b

promptuarium, 2 (fr. promptus, 3, ready): depository, store

incedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to walk, march

4. occido, 3, -cidi, -cisum: to kill, slay (124, b)

refundo, 3, -fusi, -fusum: to pour back, 120, c, 3

resolvo, 3, -solvi, -solutum: to unbind, dissolve

teneo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to hold, keep (in mind), bind, 120, c, 3

adjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to throw or add to

confiteor, 2, -fessum: to confess

nego, 1: to deny; negandum, 58

negasset, 120, c, 5; Patri, 75

coram: before, in the presence of, 50, b

testimonium, 2 (fr. testor, 1, to bear witness): testimony

TRANSLATION

earth, when by the force of their doctrine, as by salting, they preserve (our) bodies.

3. Now, the nature of salt is always the same, nor can it ever be changed. However, since man is liable to change, and he alone is happy who perseveres to the end in all the works of God, our Lord therefore admonishes those whom He called the salt of the earth to remain constant in the strength of the power granted them, lest having lost their savor, they salt nothing, and, when the efficacy of their apostolic salt is gone, unable to vivify corrupt nature, be cast out of the depository of the Church to be trodden upon by passers-by, together with those whom they ought to have saved. (Literally: whom they have salted).

protero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: to tramp(le) or tread down,

4. Do not fear those who kill the body, which, because of the dissolved state of its nature and origin, will be reduced to the spiritual substance of the soul.

Nay more, He (Christ) added the condition by which we are bound, viz., that He, (Christ) will deny before the Father in Heaven, the one who denied Him before men on earth; but He will confess in Heaven the one who confessed Him before men; moreover, we shall avail ourselves of His testimony before God, in the manner in which we bore witness to His name before men.

utor, 3, usum: to use, avail oneself of, 93, b

48. SANCTUS AMBROSIUS
Roman Lawyer, Governor, then Bishop

340-397 A.D.

Course 78

SIX DAYS' (TIME)

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. *Illa herba et flos faeni figura est carnis humanae, sicut bonus Divinitatis interpres organo suae vocis expressit, dicens, "Omnis caro faenum."*

Et vere, viret enim gloria hominis in carne quasi faenum, et quae putatur esse sublimis, exigua quasi herba est, praematura ut flos, caduca quasi faenum; germinat vitae viriditatem in specie, non in fructu soliditatem, hilarioris vitae quasi flos praetendens jucunditatem breviori spatio occasura, sicut herba faeni, quod priusquam evellatur, arescit. Quae enim firmitudo in carne, quae salubritas potest esse diuturna?

2. Hodie videas adulescentem validum pubescentem, aetatis viriditate florentem, grata specie, suavi colore; crastina die tibi facie et ore mutatus occurrit, et qui pridie tibi lautissimus decorae formae visus est gratia, alio die miserandus apparet aegritudinis alicujus firmitate resolutus.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. *Ipsa herba et flos faeni figura est carnis humanae, sicut bonus Divinitatis interpres organo suae vocis expressit dicens: "Omnis caro faenum."*

Et vere, viret enim gloria hominis in carne quasi faenum, et quae putatur esse sublimis, exigua quasi herba est, praematura ut flos, caduca quasi faenum; germinat vitae viriditatem in specie, non in fructu soliditatem, hilarioris vitae quasi flos praetendens jucunditatem breviori spatio occasura, sicut herba faeni, quod priusquam evellatur, arescit. Quae enim firmitudo in carne, quae salubritas potest esse diuturna?

2. Hodie videas adolescentem validum, pubescentem, aetatis viriditate florentem, grata specie, suavi colore; crastina die tibi facie et ore mutatus occurrit, et qui pridie tibi lautissimus decorae formae visus est gratia, altero die miserandus apparet aegritudinis alicujus firmitate resolutus.

HEXAHEMERON.

VOCABULARY

1. herba, 1: grass, plant, weed
f(a)enum, 2: hay
caro, -rnis, f: flesh, meat
interpres, -pretis, m: interpreter, explainer, prophet
organum, 2: organ, 93, a
vox, vocis, f: voice
vireo, 2, -rui, -: to be green, thrive; quae, 30, b, 5
sublimis, 2: lofty
exiguus, 3: tiny, paltry, insignificant
germino, 1: to sprout out
viriditas, -tatis, f (fr. viridis, 2, green): verdure, freshness, 49, u
species, 5: species, sight, appearance, countenance
hilaris, 2 or hilarus, 3: merry, cheerful
soliditas, -tatis, f (fr. solidus, 3, solid): firmness
praetendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to stretch, show
jucunditas, -tatis, f (fr. jucundus, 3, pleasant): pleasurable, 2: space, time, a while (ure, 49, u
occido, 3, occidi, occisum: to fall down, set
evello, 3, evulsi, evulsum: to pluck (out), 120, c, 2
2. adolescens, -ntis, c (fr. adolesco, 3, to grow): young man or girl, 26, c
floresco, 2, florui, -: to bloom, be distinguished
color, -is, m: color, complexion, 86
facies, 5: face, 84
ōs, ōris, n: mouth, countenance, 84
pridie: a day before
lautus, 3: elegant, nice
decorus, 3 (fr. decor, -is, m, grace): becoming, beautiful
forma, 1: form, feature; gratia, 50, d; 94 (ful
[alius, 3: another]; alter, 3; the other, next

TRANSLATION

1. *The leaf and flower of the plant is a symbol of human flesh, as the devout Psalmist expressed it singing (literally: with the organ of his voice): "All flesh is as grass."*
For, truly, the (worldly) glory of man flourishes in his flesh like a weed, and, (although) it is thought to be sublime, (yet it) is paltry like a weed, short-lived like a flower, falling off like grass; it sprouts forth into the verdure only apparently and not into solidness of reality; feigning, as a flower, the pleasures of a jovial life, yet being about to fall in a very short time, like a blade of grass which, before it is plucked, dries up. For, what stability is there in flesh; what vigorousness can last long?
aresco, 3, arui, -: to become dry, wither
firmitudo, -dinis, f (fr. firmus, 3, firm): strength, firmness, 49, u
salubritas, -tatis, f (fr. salubris, 2, healthy): whole-
diuturnus, 3: longlasting (someness, 49, u
2. *Today you may see a young man healthy, growing, distinguished by the bloom of his life by a pleasing countenance and by an attractive complexion; tomorrow he meets you with face and complexion changed, and he who a day before seemed to you to be most elegant on account of his comely feature, appears but a day later pitiful and broken down by the ravages of some disease.*
resolvo, 3, -lvi, -lutum: to solve, break

SIX DAYS' (TIME)

Plerosque aut labor frangit, aut inopia macerat, aut cruditas vexat, aut vina corrumpunt, aut senectus debilitat, aut eviratos deliciae reddunt, aut studium decolorat. Nonne verum est, *quia* aruit faenum et flos decidit?

3. Alius avis atavisque nobilis et majorum honestatus infulis, prosapiae veteris clarus insignibus, amicis abundans, stipatus clientibus et utrumque latus tectus, producens maximam ac reducens familiam, repente aliqua accidentis periculi mole turbatus, destituitur ab omnibus, a sodalibus derelinquitur, impugnatur a proximis. Ecce verum est, *quia* sicut faenum vita hominis, priusquam evellatur, arescit.

Plerosque aut labor frangit, aut inopia macerat, aut cruditas vexat, aut vina corrumpunt, aut senectus debilitat, aut eviratos deliciae reddunt, aut studium decolorat. Nonne verum est, *quod* aruit faenum et flos decidit?

3. Alius avis atavisque nobilis et majorum honestatus infulis, prosapiae veteris clarus insignibus, amicis abundans, stipatus clientibus et utrumque latus tectus, producens ac reducens maximam familiam, repente aliqua accidentis periculi mole turbatus, destituitur ab omnibus, a sodalibus derelinquitur, impugnatur a proximis. Ecce verum est, *quod* sicut faenum vita hominis, priusquam evellatur, arescit.

HEXAHEMERON.

VOCABULARY

plerique, 3: *very many, the majority*
 macero, 1: *to emaciate, enervate*
 cruditas, -tatis, f (fr. crudus, 3, raw): *overeating, indubitato, 1: to disable (digestion)*
 deliciae, -arum: *pleasure, lust*
 eviro, 1: *to castrate, effeminate*
 reddo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to render, make*
 decoloro, 1: *to discolor*

3. avus, 2: *grandfather, 84*
 atavus, 2: *great grandfather, 84*
 honesto, 1: *to honor, distinguish*
 infula, 1: *mitre, chiefpriestly decoration, 88*
 majores, -rum: *ancestors*
 insignia, -ium: *insignia, coat of arms, escutcheon, 84*
 prosapia, 1: *family race or stock*
 stipo, 1: *to surround; utrumque latus, 65*
 produco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to produce, found*
 reduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to reduce, inherit*
 accidens periculum, 2: *accident*
 moles, -lis, f: *mass of, 88*
 destituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to forsake, leave in the lurch*

TRANSLATION

Usually labor breaks down most people, or hunger weakens them, or over-eating harms them, or old age disables them, or luxury renders them effeminate, or cupidity discolors them. Is it not true, that the plant has become dry and its flower is fallen?

aresco, 3, -rui, -: *to become dry, wither*

3. *Someone is noble through his parents and ancestors, and distinguished with the decorations of his forefathers, renowned with the insignia of an ancient family, or rich in friends, surrounded with clients, and protected on every side, being progenitor and inheritor of great families; but suddenly overcome by an avalanche of misfortune, he is forsaken by all, deserted by his friends, and attacked by those near him. Behold, it is true, that the life of man, before it is plucked, withers like a weed.*

impugno, 1: *to fight against, attack*
 proximus, 3: *neighbor, relative*

48. SANCTUS AMBROSIUS

MURDER OF ST. JOHN

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Quoniam beati Joannis Baptistae non strictim praetereunda est recordatio, interest, ut, quis et a

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Quoniam beati Joannis Baptistae non strictim praetereunda est recordatio, interest, ut, quis et a

DE NECE SANCTI JOANNIS.

VOCABULARY

1. Baptista, 1: *Greek: Baptist*
 strictim: *slightly, superficially, 28, c*
 recordatio, -nis (fr. recorder, 1, remember): *recollection, 49, a*
 praetereo, 4: *to go, pass by, 42, 3; 111, c*

TRANSLATION

1. *Since the remembrance of St. John the Baptist is not to be passed over superficially, it is of great interest: it concerns, imports, be of importance, 70*

MURDER OF ST. JOHN

quibus et quam ob causam, quomodo et quo tempore sit occisus, advertere *debeamus*. Ab adulteris justus occiditur, et a reis in iudicem capitalis sceleris poena convertitur.

2. Deinde praemium saltatricis mors est Prophetæ. Postremo, quod etiam omnes barbari horrere consueverunt, inter epulas atque convivia consummandæ crudelitatis profertur edictum; et de convivio ad carcerem, de carcere ad convivium feralis flagitii circumfertur obsequium. Quanta in uno facinore sunt crimina!

3. Quis non, cum e convivio ad carcerem cursare videret, putaret Prophetam jussum esse dimitti? Quis, inquam, cum audisset natalem esse Herodis, solemne convivium, puellæ optionem eligendi, quod vellet, datum, missum ad Joannem ob solutionem non arbitraretur?

4. Quid crudelitati cum deliciis? Quid cum funebus voluptati? Rapitur ad poenam Prophetæ conviviali tempore, conviviali praecepto, quo non cuperet vel absolvi: perimitur gladio; caput ejus affertur in

quibus et quam ob causam, quomodo et quo tempore sit occisus, *animadvertamus*. Ab adulteris justus occiditur, et a reis in iudicem capitalis sceleris poena convertitur.

2. Deinde praemium saltatricis mors est Prophetæ. Postremo, quod etiam omnes barbari horrere consueverunt, inter epulas atque convivia consummandæ crudelitatis profertur edictum; et de convivio ad carcerem, de carcere ad convivium feralis flagitii circumfertur obsequium. Quanta in uno facinore sunt crimina!

3. Quis non, cum e convivio ad carcerem cursari videret, putaret Prophetam jussum esse dimitti? Quis, inquam, cum audisset natalem esse Herodis, solemne convivium, puellæ optionem eligendi, quod vellet, datum, missum ad Joannem ob solutionem non arbitraretur?

4. Quid crudelitati cum deliciis? Quid cum funebus voluptati? Rapitur ad poenam Prophetæ conviviali tempore, conviviali praecepto, quo non cuperet vel absolvi; perimitur gladio, caput ejus affertur in

DE NECE SANCTI JOANNIS.

VOCABULARY

animadverto, 3, -verti, -versum: to take notice of, per-adulter, 2: adulterer (ceive, 124, a)
reus, 2: accused, culprit
capitalis, 2 (fr. caput, -pitis, n, head): mortal, capital, 49, r

2. propheta, 1, Greek: prophet
saltatrix, -trix, f (fr. salto, 1, to dance): dancing girl, 49, d
postremo (fr. posterus, 3, subsequent): at last, 27, f;
barbarus, 2: wild, savage man (28, a)
horreo, 2, -rui, -: to shudder
consuesco, 3, -suevi, -suetum: to be accustomed
epulae, -arum: food, dishes, banquet, feast
convivium, 2 (fr. convivor, 1, to eat and drink in company): banquet, feast, 49, f
feralis, 2: funeral, deadly, fatal

3. putaret, 103, c
curso, 1, (frequ. of curro, 3, to run): to run hither and thither, 48, e; 49, j
natis, m: birthday
optio, -onis, f (fr. opto, 1, to wish for, desire): choice, arbitraretur, 103, c (option, 49, a)

4. deliciae, -arum: pleasure, delight, charm
funus, -neris, n: funeral, ruin
voluptas, -tatis, f: pleasure, lust, 75
rapitur, 101

TRANSLATION

importance that we realize who was murdered, by whom, for what reason, in what manner, and at what time. A just man is put to death by adulterers; and the penalty for their capital offense is inflicted by the guilty on their judge.

2. Next, the reward for the dancing girl is the death of the prophet. Moreover, the order to perpetrate the cruelty at which even savage people would shudder, was proclaimed at a banquet, amidst feasting; and from the banquet to the prison, and from the prison to the banquet, the execution of the fatal deed took its course. How many crimes in one villainy!

flagitium, 2: shameful, crime, infamy
facinus, -noris, n: crime, villainy

3. Who would not think, as he saw one running from the banquet to the prison, that the prophet was ordered to be set free? Who, I say, would not think, that it was (a message) sent to St. John for his release when one heard that Herod had his birthday, that there was a solemn banquet, and that the girl had a free choice in what she wished to be done.

4. What (has) cruelty (to do) with enjoyments? What (have) funerals (to do) with delights? The prophet was seized hastily at banquet time by an order passed at the banquet, by which (order) he would not even wish to be released. He was slain with a sword; his head was carried on a plate. Such

MURDER OF ST. JOHN

disco. Hoc crudelitati ferculum debebatur, quo insatiata epulis feritas vesceretur.

5. Intuere, rex acerbissime, tuo spectacula digna convivio. Porrigere dexteram, ne quid saevitiae tuae desit, ut inter digitos tuos rivi defluant sacri cruoris.

Et quoniam non exsaturari epulis fames, non restringi poculis potuit inauditae saevitiae sitis, bibe sanguinem scaturientibus adhuc venis exsecti capitis profluentem.

6. Cerne oculos in ipsa morte sceleris tui testes aversantes conspectum deliciarum. Clauduntur lumina non tam mortis necessitate, quam horrore luxuriae. Os aureum *illud* exsanguie, cujus sententiam ferre non poteris, conticescit, et adhuc timetur.

(Lib. III. de Virg.)

disco. Hoc crudelitati ferculum debebatur, quo insatiata epulis feritas vesceretur.

5. Intuere, rex acerbissime, spectacula tuo digna convivio. Ne quid saevitiae tuae desit, porrigere dexteram, ut inter digitos tuos rivi defluant sacri cruoris.

Et quoniam non exsaturari epulis fames, non restringi poculis potuit inauditae saevitiae sitis, bibe sanguinem scaturientibus adhuc venis exsecti capitis profluentem.

6. Cerne oculos in ipsa morte sceleris tui testes aversantes conspectum deliciarum. Clauduntur lumina non tam mortis necessitate, quam horrore luxuriae. Os aureum *hoc* exsanguie, cujus sententiam ferre non poteris, conticescit, et adhuc timetur.

DE NECE SANCTI JOANNIS.

VOCABULARY

discus, 2: *quoit, disc*
ferculum, 2 (fr. fero, to carry): *litter, tray, course of*
insatiatus, 3: *insatiated* (a banquet, 49, f)
feritas, -tatis, f (fr. ferus, 3, wild): *wildness, savage-*

5. acerbus, 3: *bitter, rough, harsh*
cruor, -is, m: *blood, gore*
desum, -fui, -, : *to be wanting, fail*, 41, 1; 124, a
rivus, 2: *stream*

(ex)saturo, 1: *to satisfy, satiate, fill*
restringo, 3, -nxi, -ictum: *to bind, restrain*
inauditus, 3: *unheard of, unusual*
sitis, is, f (fr. sitio, 4, to thirst): *thirst*, 49, a; 22, g
bibō, 3, -bi, -bitum: *to drink*, 108, a
scaturio, 4: *to gush forth, pour out*
vena, 1: *vein*, 90
exseco, 1, -cui, -ctum: *to cut out, cut off*

6. cerno, 3, crevi, cretum: *to separate, distinguish, perceive*, 108, a
scelus, -leris, n: *wickedness, impiety, heinous offense*
testis, is (fr. testor, 1, to bear witness): *witness*, 49, a
aversor, 1: *to turn away (intr. v.)*, 49, l
claudio, 3, -usi, -usum: *to close*,
lumen, -minis, n: *light, (poetical) eye*
exsanguis, 2: *bloodless*
conticesco, 3, -cui, -, (fr. taceo, 2, -cui, -citur, be

TRANSLATION

a dish was needed for cruelty, that (such) insatiable savageness might feed on it.

vescor, 3, -, -, : *to feed on*, 93, b → (ness, 49, u

5. Look you, king most rude, at that spectacle worthy of your banquet. Lest you miss something of your savageness, reach out your hand in order that the streams of the sacred gore may flow down between ~~ated with food, and the thirst of your unheard-of~~ your fingers.

And as your hunger could not be satiated with food, and the thirst of your unheard-of ferocity could not be quenched with goblets, drink the blood flowing forth from the gushing veins of the amputated head.

profluo, 2, -fluxi, -uctum: *to flow forth*

6. Look at the eyes, the witnesses of your crime, (the eyes), turned away from the sight of *dyur* revels. These eyes are closed not so much by the force of death as by the horror of your lust. This golden mouth, the sentence of which you could not bear, is (now) silent, but still feared.

silent): *to become silent*, 49, k, 101.

48. SANCTUS AMBROSIUS

The Father of Latin Hymnody

340-397 A.D.

Course 15

MORNING SONG*

Original

1. Aeterne rerum Conditor,
Noctem diemque qui regis
Et *temporum* das tempora,
Ut alleves fastidium.

2. Nocturna lux viantibus
A nocte *noctem* segregans,
Praeco diei jam sonat,
Jubarque solis evocat.

3. Hoc excitatus lucifer
Solvit polum caligine;
Hoc omnis errorum cohors
Viam nocendi deserit;

4. Hoc nauta vires colligit,
Pontique mitescunt freta;
Hoc, ipsa petra Ecclesiae,
Canente culpam deserit.

5. Surgamus *̄*argo strenue:

In prose

1. Aeterne rerum Conditor,
noctem diemque qui regis
et *varia* das tempora,
ut alleves fastidium.

2. Noctis *signum* viantibus
noctis *partes* segregans
praeco diei jam sonat;
jubarque solis evocat.

3. Hoc excitatus lucifer
solvit polum caligine;
hoc omnis errorum cohors
viam nocendi deserit;

4. hoc nauta vires colligit,
pontique mitescunt freta;
ipsa petra Ecclesiae
hoc canente culpam deserit.

5. Surgamus *̄*argo strenue:

HYMNUS MATUTINUS.

VOCABULARY

1. aeternus, 3: *eternal*
conditor, is, m: *founder*, 23, I
nox, noctis, f: *night*, 22, d
rego, 3, rexi, -ctum: *to rule*
tempus, -poris, n: *time*; varius, 3: *various*
allevio, 1: *to lift up, alleviate, relieve*, 124, a
2. [lux, lucis, f: *light*, 22, d]
[nocturnus, 3: *nightly, nocturnal*]
vio, 1: *to travel*, 73
signum, 2: *sign*
pars, -rtis, f: *part*, 22, c; 23, II
segrego, 1: *to separate, distribute*, 36, a
praeco, -nis, m: *crier, herald (the rooster)*
sono, 1: *to sound, cry*
3. excito, 1: *to arouse, awaken*, 36, b
solvo, 3, -lvi, -lutum: *to loosen, release*; (in strophe 8:
polus, 2: *the pole (of the earth)* (fulfill)
caligo, -ginis, f: *mist, darkness*, 90
erro, -nis, m: *rover, vagabond*
noceo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to hurt, harm, sin*, 117, c
4. nauta, 1: *sailor*
vis, -is, pl: virium, f: *strength, force*, 22, g
colligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to collect*
pontus, 2: *sea*
mitesco, 2, -, -: *to become mild, subside*
fretum, 2: *strait, sound*
petra, 1: *rock, (Peter, the very Rock of the Church)*
5. surgo, 3, surrexi, -rrectum: *to rise*, 106
strenuus, 3: *brisk, prompt, vigorous*

TRANSLATION

1. *Eternal Founder of all things,
who rulest the night and the day,
and givest a variety of seasons
to relieve monotony.*
- fastidium, 2: *lothing, dislike, monotony*
2. *Now, the sign for the night to travellers,
distributing the parts of night,
the herald of the day is crowing, and is
awakening the rays of the sun.*
- jubar, -is, n: *beaming, light, radiance*
sol, -is, m: *sun*
evoco, 1: *to call forth, awake*
3. *Awakened by this the lightbearer (sun)
releases the pole from darkness;
by this all bands of vagabonds
abandon the path of sin.*
- desero, 3, -serui, -sertum: *to desert, forsake, abandon*
4. *By this the sailor collects his strength
and the sounds of the sea subside;
by its cry (Peter) the very Rock of the Church
abandons his sin.*
- Ecclesia, 1, Greek: *Church, assembly*
cano, 3, cecini, cantum: *to sing, cry*, 114, a
5. *Let us therefore rise with vigor;*

* IAMBIC DIMETER (tetrapody), quantitative: ♪ — | ♪ — | ♪ || — | ♪ ♪, Cf. 139, 4b, c

MORNING SONG

Gallus jacentes excitat,
Et somnolentos increpat;
Gallus negantes arguit.

6. Gallo canente spes redit,
Aegris salus refunditur,
Mucro latronis conditur,
Lapsis fides revertitur.

7. Jesu, labantes respice,
Et nos videndo corrige:
Si respicis, labes cadunt,
Fletuque culpa solvitur.

8. Tu, ^{lex}lex, refulge sensibus,
Mentisque somnum discute:
Te nostra vox primum sonet
Et vota solvamus tibi.

9. Deo Patri sit gloria
Ejusque soli Filio
Cum Spiritu Paraclito
Nunc et per omne saeculum. Amen.

gallus jacentes excitat,
et somnolentos increpat
gallus negantes arguit.

6. Gallo canente spes redit,
aegris salus refunditur,
mucro latronis conditur,
lapsis fides revertitur.

7. Jesu, labantes respice,
et nos videndo corrige:
si respicis, labes cadunt,
fletuque culpa solvitur.

8. Tu, ^{lex}lex, refulge sensibus,
mentisque somnum discute:
Te nostra vox primum sonet
et vota solvamus tibi.

9. Deo Patri sit gloria
Ejusque soli Filio
cum Spiritu Paraclito
nunc et per omne saeculum. Amen.

HYMNUS MATUTINUS.

VOCABULARY

gallus, 2: *Gaul, rooster, cock*
jaceo, 2, -cui, -citurus: *to lie, sleep, 36, a*
somnia, 3: *drowsy*
increpo, 1, -pui, -pitum: *to chide*
nego, 1: *to deny, refuse, be reluctant, 36, a*

6. spes, 5: *hope*
redeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to return, 42, 3*
aeger, -gra, -grum: *ill, unsound, sick, 26, f*
refundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: *to pour back, 79*
mucro, -nis, m: *edge, point, dagger*
latro, -nis, m: *hired soldier, robber, burglar*
condo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to establish, preserve, conceal,*
labor, 3, lapsus: *to fall, 26, f (to sheathe*

7. labo, 1: *to totter, waver, 36, c*
respicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum: *to look at, 40; 198. a*
corrigo, 3, -rrexī, -rrectum: *correct*
labes, -bis, f: *stain, sin*
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: *to fall, collapse*
fletus, 4: *weeping, repentance, 93, a*

8. refulgeo, -fulsi, -sum: *gleam, glitter back, flash in*
sensus, 4: *sensus, consciousness, heart, 79*
mens, -tis, f: *mind, 22, c; 23, II*
somnia, 2: *dream, sleep, slumber*
discutio, 3, -cussi, -sum: *to strike asunder, cast away,*
primus, adv: *first (108, a*
sono, 1: *to sound*

9. *Glory be to the Father
and to His only Son,*

TRANSLATION

*the cock awakens the sleepers,
and chides the drowsy;
the cock accuses the reluctant.*

arguo, 2, -gui, -gutum: *to prove, convict, argue*

6. *By the cock-crow hope returns,
health is restored to the sick,
the burglar's dagger becomes sheathed;
the faith of the fallen restored.*

fides, 5: *faith (to return, 79*
revertor, 3, -rti, -rsum, transitive, and revertor, intr.:

7. *O Jesus, look at the wavering,
and correct us by Thy glance:
if Thou lookest at us, our sins vanish,
and by weeping our sins are washed away.*

8. *Thou, O Light, shine into our hearts,
cast away (our fanciful) dreams: the slumber of our minds
may our voice sound first Thy Name,
and let us render our vows to Thee.*

paraclitus, 3, Greek: *advocate, consoler, teacher, (epi-
thet of the third Divine Person)*

*with the Consoler Holy Ghost,
now and through all ages. Amen.*

49. S. SOPHRONIUS EUSEBIUS HIERONYMUS

Great Latin Scholar of His Time

331-420 A.D.

Course 92

COMMENTARY

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Grandis fiducia! Petrus piscator erat, dives non fuerat, cibos manu et arte quaerebat, et tamen loquitur confidenter: Reliquimus omnia.

Et quia non sufficit tantum relinquere, jungit quod perfectum est: Et secuti sumus te. Fecimus, quod jussisti: quid igitur nobis dabis praemii?

2. Jesus autem dixit *illis*: Amen, dico vobis, *quod vos*, qui secuti estis me, in regeneratione, cum sederit Filius hominis in sede majestatis suae, *sedebitis* et vos super sedes duodecim, judicantes duodecim tribus Israel.

Non dixit: Qui reliquistis omnia; hoc enim et Crates fecit philosophus, et multi alii divitias contempserunt; sed: Qui secuti estis me, quod proprie Apostolorum est atque credentium. (*Lib. III. in Matth.*)

3. Quare non de simplici virgine, sed de desponsata concipitur? Primum, ut per generationem Joseph, origo Mariæ monstraretur; secundo, ne lapidaretur a Judaeis ut adultera; tertio, ut in Aegyptum fugiens haberet solatium.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Grandis fiducia! Petrus piscator erat, dives non fuerat, cibos manu et arte quaerebat, et tamen loquitur confidenter: Reliquimus omnia.

Et quia non sufficit tantum relinquere, jungit, quod perfectum est: Et secuti sumus te. Fecimus, quod jussisti: quid igitur nobis dabis praemii?

2. Jesus autem dixit *eis*: Amen, dico vobis, qui secuti estis me, in regeneratione, cum sederit Filius hominis in sede majestatis suae, et vos *sessuros* super sedes duodecim judicantes duodecim tribus Israel.

Non dixit: Qui reliquistis omnia; hoc enim et Crates fecit philosophus, et multi alii divitias contempserunt; sed: Qui secuti estis me, quod proprie Apostolorum est atque credentium.

3. Quare non de simplici virgine, sed de desponsata concipitur? Primum, ut per generationem Joseph origo Mariæ monstraretur; secundo, ne lapidaretur a Judaeis ut adultera; tertio, ut in Aegyptum fugiens haberet solatium.

COMMENTARIUM.

VOCABULARY

1. grandis, 2: *great, large*
fiducia, 1 (*fr. fido, 3, -, fisum, to trust*): *confidence, trust*
piscator, -is, m (*fr. piscor, 1, to fish*): *fisherman, 49, a*
ars, -rtis, f: *trade, profession, art, 88*
confido, 3, -, fisum: *to trust, be assured, 31, d; 28, a*
sufficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to put under, supply, be sufficient, suffice*
sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow, (neutral verb, COLL., praemium, 2: gain, profit, reward, 67, c (1*

2. regeneratio, -onis, f (*fr. regenero, 1, to regenerate*): *regeneration, 49, a*
Israël, indecl. or IsraëL, -is, Hebrew: *Israel*
Crates, -tis, a *cynic philosopher, follower of Diogenes*
contemno, 3, -mpsi, -ptum: *to despise, contemn*
proprie, (*fr. proprius, 3, proper*): *properly, 28, a*
Apostolorum, 71

3. desponso, 1: *to betroth*
concupio, 2, -cepi, -ceptum: *to conceive, 101*
generatio, -onis, f (*fr. genero, 1, to beget*): *generation*
Joseph, indecl. or Iosephus, 2, Hebrew, means, Dominus addidit: *God added*
lapido, 1: *to stone, 124, a*
adulter, 3: *adulterer, adulteress*
Aegyptus, 2, f: *Egypt, 16*

TRANSLATION

1. *What great confidence! Peter was a fisherman: he was not wealthy; he earned his bread by his labor and skill. Yet he confidently says: "we have left all things."*

But since it is not sufficient merely to leave all things, he adds what is perfect: "And we have followed Thee." We have done what you commanded: what reward therefore will you give us?

2. *Jesus said to them: "Yea, I say to you, because you have followed me, in the regeneration, when the Son of Man will sit on the throne of his majesty, you will also sit on twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel."*

He did not say: "You who have left all things," for the philosopher Crates, too, and many others contemned riches, but he said: "You who have followed me," which is proper to the apostles and the faithful.

3. *Why was Christ conceived not by a simple virgin, but by one betrothed? First, that by the family stock of Joseph, Mary's lineage might be proved; secondly, that she might not be stoned by the Jews as an adulteress; thirdly, that while fleeing to Egypt, she might have a consoler.*

solatium, 2 (*fr. solor, 1, to console*): *solace, 49, f*

COMMENTARY

Martyr Ignatius etiam quartam addidit causam, cur a desponsata conceptus *sit*: ut partus, inquiens, ejus celaretur a diabolo, *dum* eum *putat* non de virgine, sed de uxore generatum. (*Lib. I. in Matth.*)

4. Quanto amore et studio contenderim, ut pariter in eremo moraremur, conscium mutuae caritatis pectus agnoscit.

Quibus lamentis, quo dolore, quo gemitu, te abeuntem persecutus sim, istae quoque litterae testes sunt, quas lacrimis cernis interlitas.

5. Verum tu quasi parvulus delicatus *contemptum* rogantis per blandimenta *fovisti*, et ego *incautus*, quid agerem, nesciebam.

Tacerem? Sed, quod ardentem volebam, moderate dissimulare non poteram. Impensius obsecrarem? Sed audire nolebas, quia similiter non amabas. Quod unum potuit, sprete caritas fecit. Quem praesentem retinere non valuit, nunc quaerit absentem.

(*Epist. ad Heliod.*)

Martyr Ignatius etiam quartam addidit causam, cur a desponsata conceptus *esset*: ut partus, inquiens, ejus celaretur a diabolo, *qui* eum *putavit* non de virgine, sed de uxore generatum.

4. Quanto amore et studio contenderim, ut pariter in eremo moraremur, conscium mutuae caritatis pectus agnoscit.

Quibus lamentis, quo dolore, quo gemitu, te abeuntem persecutus sim, istae quoque litterae testes sunt, quas lacrimis cernis interlitas.

5. Verum tu quasi parvulus delicatus *votum* rogantis per blandimenta *devitasti*, et ego *anceps*, quid agerem, nesciebam.

Tacerem? Sed, quod ardentem volebam, moderate dissimulare non poteram. Impensius obsecrarem? Sed audire nolebas, quia similiter non amabas. Quod unum potuit, sprete caritas fecit. Quem praesentem retinere non valuit, nunc quaerit absentem.

COMMENTARIUM.

VOCABULARY

addo, -didi, -ditum: *to add*, 99, *b*
celo, 1: *to conceal, hide*, 124, *a*

hidden from the devil, who thought Him conceived by a wife, not by a virgin.

4. contendo, 3, -ndi, ntum: *to strive for*, 102, *2*
pariter, (*fr. par, -is, like*): *alike, together with*

moror, 1: *to linger, stay*, 102, *2*

consciis, 3: *privy to, cognizant of*, 66, *b*

mutuus, 3: *mutual, reciprocal, on both sides*

lamentum, 2 (*fr. lamento, 1, to wail*): *wailing, lament*, 88

gemitus, 4 (*fr. gemo, 3, -mui, -mitum, to sigh*): *sigh, groan*

prosequor, 3, -secutum: *to follow, accompany*, 132

lacrima, 1: *tear*, 93, *a*

5. delicatus, 3: *delicate, spoiled*

votum, 2: *vow, prayer, wish, desire*

[foveo, 2, fovi, fotum: *to warm, treat kindly*]

devito, 1: *to devoid*

blādicamentum, 2: (*fr. blandio, 4, to flatter*): *flattery*,
[incautus, 3: *careless, inconsiderate*] (49, *e*)

anceps, -cipitis: *two-edged, uncertain, perplexed*

tacerem, 103, *b*

ardeo, 2, arsi, arsum: *to burn, be burning with*

moderor, 1: *to temper, moderate, keep within bounds*

dissimulo, 1: *to conceal* (36, *d*)

impensus, 3: *strong, vehement*, 28, *a*

TRANSLATION

St. Ignatius, the martyr, added the fourth reason why Christ was conceived by a betrothed virgin: in order that His conception—so he says—might be

4. My heart, conscious of mutual love, knows with how much love and zeal I strove that we might stay together in the desert.

With what laments, with what pain, and with what sighs I followed you (as you) departed; this letter which you see blotted with my tears is also its witness.

cerno, 3, crevi, cretum: *to separate, perceive, see*

interlino, 3: -lēvi, -litum: *to blot out, erase*

5. However, as a child spoiled, with flattering kindness you declined my request, whilst I, perplexed, did not know what I ought to do.

Was I to be silent? But I was not able easily to conceal what I (so) ardently desired. Ought I to have implored more strongly? But you were unwilling to listen to me, because you did not love me in like manner. My rejected love did only what it could. Him whom it could not retain, when present, it now seeks when absent.

obsecro, 1: *to implore, pray*, 103, *b*

50. S. AURELIUS AUGUSTINUS

Roman Rhetorician, then Bishop

254-430 A.D.

Course 63

COMMENTARY

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Ostendit Dominus fatuos esse judicandos, qui temporalium bonorum vel copiam sectantes vel inopiam metuentes amittunt aeterna, quae nec dari possunt ab hominibus nec auferri.

2. Itaque, si sal infatuatum fuerit, in quo salietur? Id est, si vos, per quos condiendi sunt quodammodo populi, metu persecutionum temporalium amiseritis regna caelorum, qui erunt homines, per quos a vobis error auferatur, cum vos elegerit Deus, per quos errorem auferat ceterorum?

3. Ergo ad nihilum valet sal infatuatum, nisi, ut mittatur foras et calcetur ab hominibus. Non itaque calcatur ab hominibus, qui patitur persecutionem, sed qui persecutionem timendo infatuatur.

Calcari enim non potest nisi inferior; sed inferior non est, qui, quamvis corpore multa in terra sustineat, corde tamen fixus in caelo est.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Ostendit Dominus fatuos esse judicandos, qui temporalium bonorum vel copiam sectantes vel inopiam metuentes amittunt aeterna, quae nec dari possunt ab hominibus nec auferri.

2. Itaque, si sal infatuatum fuerit, quo salietur? Id est, si vos, per quos condiendi sunt quodammodo populi, metu persecutionum temporalium amiseritis regna caelorum, qui erunt homines, per quos a vobis error auferatur, cum vos elegerit Deus, per quos errorem auferat ceterorum?

3. Ergo ad nihilum valet sal infatuatum, nisi, ut mittatur foras et calcetur ab hominibus. Non autem calcatur ab hominibus, qui patitur persecutionem, sed qui persecutionem timendo infatuatur.

Calcari enim non potest nisi inferior; sed inferior non est, qui, quamvis corpore multa in terra sustineat, corde tamen fixus in caelis est.

COMMENTARIUM.

VOCABULARY

1. ostendo, 3, -ndi, -tum, -sum: to show, expose, fatuus, 3: foolish, idiotic; fool, idiot, 59, A (57, 4 judico, 1: to judge, decide, consider, 111, c temporalis, 2: temporal bona, -orum, n: goods copia, 1: plenty, abundance, power, chance sector, 1 (fr. sequor, 3, secutum, to follow): strive after, pursue, 49, j inopia, 1: want, need, lack metuo, 2, -tui, -, (fr. metus, 4, fear): to fear

2. Itaque: and so, therefore, for that reason, hence sal, -lis, m, n, pl. m: salt infatuus, 1: to fool, enervate, make savorless, 109, a, 3 salio, 4; sal(1)o, 3, -, salsum: to salt, pickle, 109, a, 3 (salio, 4, -lui, -litum: to spring, leap, jump) condio, 4: to season, preserve, 111, c (condo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to form, establish, found) quodammodo: in a certain measure or extent populus, 2: people, men persecutio, -nis, f (fr. persequor, 3, -secutum, to pursue): persecution, 49, a erunt, 109, a, 3; auferatur, 130

3. nihil, (its acc. with prep.: nihilum; gen. nihili), 2: nothing valeo, 2, -lui, -liturus: to be strong or able or worth foras: outwards, forth; (foris: outside) calco, 1: to tread upon, trample (down), 124, a patior, 3, passum: to suffer, bear, endure inferus, 3: that which is below, underneath, 27, j quamvis: although, howevermuch, 120, c, 2 cor, cordis, n: heart, soul, mind, 22, e figo, 3, fixi, fixum: to fix, fasten, affix, attach

TRANSLATION

1. Our Lord showed that they are to be considered foolish, who either by striving after an abundance of earthly goods, or by fearing the lack of them, lose the eternal, which can be neither given nor taken away by man.

amitto, 3, -misi, -misum: to send away, let go, lose, aeternus, 3: eternal, everlasting (133, b aufero, 3, abstuli, ablatum: to carry away, remove

2. Hence if the salt becomes unsavory, wherewith will it be salted? That is, if you, through whom in some way, the people are to be preserved, lose the heavenly kingdom from fear of worldly persecution, who will be the men, by whom your error can be removed, since God has chosen you, that by you He may remove the errors of others?

error, -is, m: error, fault eligo, 3, elegi, electum: to pick out, select, choose, 100; per quos auferat, 130 (102, 3 ceteri, -ae, -a, pl.: others

3. Therefore the savorless salt is good for nothing except to be cast out and trampled upon by men. However, he who suffers persecution is not trodden upon by men, but he who is weakened by fear of persecution.

For one cannot be trodden on, unless he is underneath; but he is not underneath, who, though he suffers much in body on earth, yet has his heart fixed in Heaven.

COMMENTARY

4. Vos estis lumen mundi. Quomodo superius dixit sal terrae, sic nunc dicit lumen mundi.

Nam neque superius ista terra accipienda est, quam pedibus corporeis calcamus, sed homines, qui in terra habitant, vel etiam peccatores, quorum condiendis et extinguendis putoribus apostolicum salem Dominus misit.

5. *Et* hic mundum, non caelum et terram, sed homines, qui sunt in mundo, vel diligunt mundum, oportet intelligi, quibus illuminandis Apostoli missi sunt.

Non potest civitas abscondi super montem posita; id est fundata super insignem magnamque justitiam, quam significat etiam ipse mons, in quo disputat Dominus. (Lib. I. De Serm. Dom. C. VI.)

4. Vos estis lumen mundi. Quomodo superius dixit sal terrae, sic nunc dicit lumen mundi.

Nam neque superius ista terra accipienda est, quam pedibus corporeis calcamus, sed homines, qui in terra habitant, vel etiam peccatores, quorum condiendis et extinguendis putoribus apostolicum sal Dominus misit.

5. *Etiam* hic mundum, non caelum et terram, sed homines, qui sunt in mundo, vel diligunt mundum, oportet intelligi, quibus illuminandis Apostoli missi sunt.

Non potest civitas abscondi super montem posita; id est fundata super insignem magnamque justitiam, quam significat etiam ipse mons, in quo disputat Dominus.

CONFESSIONS

Sero te amavi, pulchritudo tam antiqua et tam nova, sero te amavi. Et ecce intus eras, et ego foris, et ibi te quaerebam: et in ista formosa, quae fecisti, deformis irrueram.

Sero te amavi, pulchritudo tam antiqua et tam nova, sero te amavi. Et ecce intus eras, et ego foris, et ibi te quaerebam: et in ista formosa, quae fecisti, deformis irrueram.

COMMENTARIUM.

VOCABULARY

4. lumen, -minis, n: *light*
mundus, 2: *world, ornament*
superus, 3: *high, superius: above, 27, f*
accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to accept, receive, under-*
pes, pedis, m: *foot, leg* (stand, 111, c; 40
corporeus, 3: *corporeal*
habito, 1: *to inhabit, dwell*
peccator, -is, m (fr. pecco, 1, to sin): *sinner, 49, d*
extinguo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to extinguish, 118; 78*
putor, -is, m: *stench, corruption*

5. diligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to prize, love, esteem*
oportet, -tuit, *impers.: it behooves, is needful or prop-*
er, must be, ought to be, 48, d
intelligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to understand*
illumino, 1: *to enlighten, make clear, 118; 78*
civitas, -tatis, f: *citizenship, state, city, town*
abscondo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to conceal, hide*
mons, -ntis, m: *mountain, 23, II, b*
fundo, 1: *to found, strengthen*
insignis, 2: *distinguished, remarkable, eminent*
justitia, 1: *justice*

Sero, adv. (fr. serus, 3, late): *late*
pulchritudo, -dinis, f: *beauty*
antiquus, 3: *old, ancient*
intus: *within, inside*
quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: *to seek, search for*
formosus, 3: *beautiful*
deformis, 2: *deformed, ugly, foul, 56*

Page two hundred and sixty-eight

TRANSLATION

4. You are the light of the world. Just as above He called them salt, so now He names them the light of the world.

For, not that earth mentioned above, upon which we tread with our corporeal feet, is to be understood, but men who dwell on the earth, or even sinners, for the healing and extinguishing of whose corruption Our Lord sent the apostolic salt.

apostolus, 2, Greek: *apostle*; apostolicus, 3: *apostolic*

5. Also, here (by) the world is to be understood, not Heaven and earth, but the men who are in the world or love it, for whose enlightenment the apostles were sent.

A city placed on a mountain cannot be hidden; that is, (a city) founded upon an eminent and great justice, which the mountain signifies, upon which Our Lord is teaching.

significo, 1: *to signify, indicate, mean*

CONFESSIONES.

Too late have I loved Thee, O beauty, so ancient and so new: too late have I loved Thee. And behold, Thou wert within me, and I out of myself, and there I searched for Thee: I, like a fool, rushed headlong upon those beautiful things which Thou didst make.

irruo, 3, -rui, -rutum: *to rush in, upon*

50. S. AURELIUS AUGUSTINUS

254-430 A.D.

Course 63

CONFESSIONS

Mecum eras, et tecum non eram. Ea me tenebant longe a te, quae si in te non essent, non essent. Gustavi, et esurio et sitio.

(Lib. X. 27)

Mecum eras, et tecum non eram. Ea me tenebant longe a te, quae, si in te non essent, non essent. Gustavi te, ~~et~~ ^{enunc} te esurio et sitio.

CONFESSIONES.

VOCABULARY

teneo, 2, -ui, -ntum: to hold, keep
longe, (fr. longus, 3, long): far; essent, 109, c
gusto, 1: to taste
esurio, 4: to be hungry after
sitio, 4: to thirst after, be thirsty for

TRANSLATION

Thou wert with me, but I was not with Thee. These (beauties) kept me far from Thee, which unless they were in Thee, would not exist (at all). (At length) I tasted Thee, and now I hunger for Thee and thirst after Thee.

51. SANCTUS LEO MAGNUS

of Excellent Latinity

400-461 A.D.

Course 80

VIRTUE OF FASTING

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Si fideliter, dilectissimi, atque sapienter creatio- nis nostrae intellegamus exordium, inveniemus homi- nem ideo ad imaginem Dei conditum, ut imitator sui esset Auctoris; et hanc esse naturalem nostri generis dignitatem, si in nobis quasi in quodam speculo divi- nae benignitatis forma resplendat.

Ad quam utique nos quotidie reparat gratia Salva- toris, dum, quod cecidit in Adam primo, erigitur in secundo.

2. Causa autem reparationis nostrae non est nisi misericordia Dei; quem non diligere, nisi nos prior ipse diligeret et tenebras ignorantiae nostrae suae veritatis luce discuteret.

Quod per sanctum Isaiam Dominus praenuntians

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Si fideliter, dilectissimi, atque sapienter creatio- nis nostrae intelligamus exordium, inveniemus homi- nem ideo ad imaginem Dei conditum, ut imitator sui esset Auctoris; et hanc esse naturalem nostri generis dignitatem, si in nobis quasi in quodam speculo divi- nae benignitatis forma resplendat.

Ad quam utique nos quotidie reparat gratia Salva- toris, quia, quod cecidit in Adam primo, erigitur in secundo.

2. Causa autem reparationis nostrae non est nisi misericordia Dei; quem non diligere, nisi nos prior ipse diligeret et tenebras ignorantiae nostrae suae veritatis luce discuteret.

Quod per sanctum Isaiam Dominus praenuntians

DE JEJUNIO.

VOCABULARY

1. fidelis, 2 (fr. fides, 5, faith): true, faithful, 49, r; intelligamus, 109, b (28, a
exordium, 2 (fr. exordior, 4, -orsum, to start): begin- condo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to form, establish (ning imitator, -is, m(fr. imitor, 1, to imitate): imitator, 49, d
genus, -neris, n (fr. gigno, 3, genui, -nitum, to beget): gender, race, 49, a
speculum, 2 (fr. obsolete specio, 3, to look at): mirror si resplendat, (135,) can be replaced by ut 127, b
resplendeo, 2, -dui, -; to shine forth, glitter
utique: of course, especially
reparo, 1: to prepare, repair, restore

2. quem non diligere, 30, b, 5, (indep. sen- tence), 109, c, d
discutio, 3, -cussi, -ssum: to strike asunder, 109, c, d
praenuntio, 1: to announce, fortell

Concerning this (truth) the Lord, speaking through the holy (prophet) Isaias, said:

TRANSLATION

1. Dearly beloved (Brethren), if we realize truly and wisely the origin of our creation, we shall find that man was made to the image of God in order that he might be the imitator of his Creator, and that this is the natural dignity of our race, that in us, as in a mirror, the image of the divine goodness may shine forth.

For this (dignity) the grace of our Savior especially prepares us each day, because (man) who is fallen in the first Adam will be raised up in the second (Adam, who is Christ).

erigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: to raise up, erect

2. However, the motive for our redemption is none other than the mercy of God, whom we could not love, unless He himself (had) first loved us, and (had) dispelled the darkness of our ignorance by the light of His truth.

VIRTUE OF FASTING

ait "Adducam caecos in viam, quam ignorabant, et semitas, quas nesciebant, faciam illos calcare.

Faciam illis tenebras in lucem, et prava in directa. Haec verba faciam illis, et non relinquam eos." Nos ergo diligamus Deum, quoniam ipse prior dilexit nos.

3. Diligendo itaque nos Deus ad imaginem suam nos reparat, et ut in nobis formam suae bonitatis inveniatur, dat, unde ipsi quoque, quod operatur, operemur, accendens scilicet mentium nostrarum lucernas, et igne nos suae caritatis inflammans, ut non solum ipsum, sed etiam, quidquid diligit, diligamus.

Tria vero sunt, quae maxime ad religiosas pertinent actiones; oratio scilicet, jejunium et eleemosyna, quibus exercendis omne quidem tempus acceptum est, sed illud est studiosius observandum, quod apostolicis accepimus traditionibus consecratum.

4. Quod temporis ratio, et devotionis nostrae admonet consuetudo, pastoralis vobis, dilectissimi, sollicitudine praedicamus decimi mensis celebrandum esse jejunium, quo consummata perceptione omnium fruc-

ait: "Adducam caecos in viam, quam ignorabant, et faciam eos calcare semitas, quas nesciebant.

Faciam eis tenebras in lucem, et prava in directa. Haec faciam eis, et non relinquam eos." Diligamus ergo Deum, quoniam ipse prior dilexit nos.

3. Diligendo itaque nos Deus ad imaginem suam nos reparat, et ut in nobis formam suae bonitatis inveniatur, dat, unde ipsi quoque, quod operatur, operemur accendens scilicet mentium nostrarum lucernas et igne nos suae caritatis inflammans, ut non solum ipsum, sed etiam, quidquid diligit, diligamus.

Tria vero sunt, quae maxime ad religiosas pertinent actiones; oratio scilicet, jejunium et eleemosyna, quibus exercendis omne quidem tempus acceptum est, attamen id temporis est studiosius observandum, quod apostolicis accepimus traditionibus consecratum.

4. Quia temporis ratio et devotionis nostrae admonet consuetudo, pastoralis vobis, dilectissimi, sollicitudine praedicamus jejunium mensis Decembris esse celebrandum, quo consummata perceptione omnium fruc-

DE JEJUNIO.

VOCABULARY

adduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to lead to
caecus, 3: blind
ignoro, 1: to be ignorant of
calco, 1: to tread (upon)
tēbrae, -rarum: darkness
pravus, 3: crooked, wrong
dirigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: to set straight, arrange
[verbum, 2: word, thing] (abandon
derelinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: to forsake, desert,

3. unde or quo: by which, 120, c; 130
accendo, 3, -ndi, -nsu: to lighten up, kindle
scilicet, in full form scire licet, but means: namely
lucerna, 1: lamp, light

inflammo, 1: to inflame, set fire to

oratio, -nis, f (fr. oro, 1, to speak, pray): prayer, speech

jejunium, 2 (fr. jejuno, 1, to fast): fast, fasting, 49, f

eleēmosyna, 1, Greek: alms

studiosus, 3 (fr. studium, 2, zeal, study): eager, zealous

apostolicus, 3 (fr. apostolus, 2, apostle): apostolic

traditio, -nis, f: tradition, 88

consecro, 1: to make holy, consecrate

4. devotio, -nis, f (fr. devoveo, 2, -vi, -votum, to devote): devotion, worship

sollicitudo, -dinis, f (fr. sollicitus, 3, anxious): sollicitudo, 1: to preach (tude, care, 88

December, -bris, -bre: of December; also the masculine form used for the month of December instead of mensis December, which was the tenth month, as the Romans started the year with March.

TRANSLATION

"I shall lead the blind on the way, which they were ignorant of, and I shall make them tread the path, which they did not know.

I shall change their darkness into light, and shall make their crooked ways straight. These things I shall do to them, and I shall not desert them." Let us therefore love God, because He himself has first loved us.

3. By loving us, then, God restores us to His likeness, and that He may find in us the image of His goodness He gives that by which we ourselves also may do the work which He works, and this He does by enlightening our minds and by inflaming us with the fire of His charity, that we may love not only Him, but also whatever He loves.

Now there are three (things), which especially belong to religious actions, namely, prayer, fasting, and alms-giving. The practice of these is acceptable at all times, yet they should be more diligently observed during those times which we know to have been consecrated by apostolic traditions.

4. Dearly beloved Brethren, since both the season of the year and our usual religious practice suggest it to us, we preach to you with pastoral care, that the December fast should be kept after the harvesting of all crops has been completed. At this time a sacrifice

celebro, 1: to frequent, praise, practice; quo, 130
perceptio, -nis, f (fr. percipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum, to get): collecting, gathering together, 114, b

VIRTUE OF FASTING

tuum, dignissime largitori eorum Deo continentiae libamen offeratur. Quid enim potest efficacius esse jejunio?

5. ("Videsne,—ait S. Athanasius in libro de Virginitate,—quid faciat jejunium? Morbos sanat, distillationes corporis exsiccat, daemones fugat, pravas cogitationes expellit, mentem clariorem reddit, cor mundum efficit, corpus sanctificat, denique ad thronum Dei hominem sistit. Magna vis in jejunio, et magna ac praeclara fiunt per *illud*.)

Alioquin unde homines tam mirifica praestarent, et signa per eos fierent, et sanitatem infirmis per ipsos largiretur Deus? Jejunium enim Angelorum cibus est: et qui eo utitur, ordinis angelici censendus est." *BREV. ROM. Dom. III. Nov.*)

6. Semper enim virtuti cibus jejunium fuit. De abstinentia denique prodeunt castae cogitationes, rationabiles voluntates, salubriora consilia: et per voluntarias afflictiones caro concupiscentiis moritur, virtutibus spiritus innovatur.

Sed quia non solo jejunio animarum nostrarum salus acquiritur, jejunium nostrum misericordiis pauperum suppleamus. Impendamus virtuti, quod subtrahimus

tuum dignissime largitori eorum Deo libamen continentiae offeratur. Quid enim potest efficacius esse jejunio?

5. ("Videsne,—ait S. Athanasius in libro de Virginitate,—quid faciat jejunium? Morbos sanat, distillationes corporis exsiccat, daemones fugat, pravas cogitationes expellit, mentem clariorem reddit, cor mundum efficit, corpus sanctificat, denique ad thronum Dei hominem sistit. Magna vis in jejunio, et magna per *id* ac praeclara fiunt.

Alioquin unde homines tam mirifica praestent et signa per eos fiant, et sanitatem infirmis per ipsos largitur Deus? Jejunium enim Angelorum cibus est: et qui eo utitur, ordinis angelici censendus est."

6. Semper enim virtuti cibus jejunium fuit. De abstinentia denique prodeunt castae cogitationes, rationabiles voluntates, salubriora consilia: et per voluntarias afflictiones caro concupiscentiis moritur, virtutibus spiritus innovatur.

Sed quia non solo jejunio animarum nostrarum salus acquiritur, jejunium nostrum misericordiis pauperum suppleamus. Impendamus virtuti, quod subtrahimus

DE JEJUNIO.

VOCABULARY

largitor, -is, m (fr. largior, 4, -gitum, to impart): liberal giver, bestower
efficax, -caxis (fr. efficio, 3, to produce, effect): efficient

5. Athanasius, the Great, Bishop of Alexandria; faciat, 132 (300-379 A. D.)

morbis, 2: disease, sickness

sano, 1: to heal

distillatio, -nis, f (fr. stillo, 1, to drip): secretion of exsiccato, 1: to dry up (fluid)

thronus, 1, Greek: throne

sisto, 3, steti, statum: to put, place, stop

alioquin, otherwise

mirificus, 3: wonderful, astonishing

praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: to stand before, excel, give,

sanitas, -tatis, f (fr. sanus, 3, sound): health (103, a infirmus, 3: feeble, infirm, sick)

ordo, -dinis, m: series, line, row, rank, 67, d

6. prodeo, 4: to go or come forth, 42, 3

castus, 3: chaste

salubris, 2: wholesome, sound, useful

afflictio, -nis, f (fr. affligo, 3, -xi, -ctum, to strike, afflict): affliction

concupiscentia, 1 (fr. concupisco, 3): inordinate desire, lust, 78, b

innovo, 1: to renew, refresh

salus, -utis, f: welfare, salvation

miser cordia, 1: pity, mercy, compassion, 83

TRANSLATION

of abstinence is to be most worthily offered to their Bestower. For what can be more efficacious than fasting?

5. ("Do you realize," asks St. Athanasius in his book on Virginitate, "what fasting does? It heals sicknesses, dries up the humors of lust in one's body, puts the devils to flight, expels bad thoughts, clears up the mind, renders the heart pure, sanctifies the body, and finally, it places man next to the throne of God. There is a great power in fasting, and by it great and noteworthy deeds are wrought.

Otherwise, how would men be able to achieve such marvellous deeds, and why would God grant health to the sick through mere men? Fasting is the food of angels, and he who avails himself of it is to be considered as belonging to the rank of angels." *Rom. Breviary*).

6. Fasting has always been the nourishment of virtue. From abstinence there arise the chaste thoughts, good resolutions, sound plans. The flesh dies to lust by voluntary mortifications, and the spirit is refreshed for virtues.

But because the salvation of our souls is not secured by fasting alone, we have to supplement our fasting with charity towards the poor. Let us give to

VIRTUE OF FASTING

voluptati. Fiat refectio pauperis abstinentia jejunantis.

7. Studeamus viduarum defensioni, pupillorum utilitati, lugentium consolationi, dissidentium paci.

Suscipiat peregrinus, adjuvetur oppressus, vestiatur nudus, foveatur aegrotus, ut, quicumque nostrum de justis laboribus auctori bonorum omnium Deo sacrificium hujus pietatis obtulerit, ab eodem regni caelestis praemium percipere mereatur.

Quarta igitur et sexta feria jejunemus. Sabbato autem apud beatum Petrum Apostolum pariter vigilemus, *cujus* suffragantibus meritis, quae poscimus, impetrare possimus per Dominum Nostrum Jesum Christum, qui cum Patre et Sancto Spiritu vivit et regnat in saecula saeculorum. Amen.

(*Sermo II. De Jejunio*)

voluptati. Fiat refectio pauperis abstinentia jejunantis.

7. Studeamus viduarum defensioni, pupillorum utilitati, lugentium consolationi, dissidentium paci.

Suscipiat peregrinus, adjuvetur oppressus, vestiatur nudus, foveatur aegrotus, ut, quicumque nostrum de justis laboribus auctori bonorum omnium Deo sacrificium hujus pietatis obtulerit, ab eodem regni caelestis praemium percipere mereatur.

Quarta igitur et sexta feria jejunemus. Sabbato autem apud beatum Petrum Apostolum pariter vigilemus, *ut ejus* suffragantibus meritis, quae poscimus, impetrare possimus per Dominum Nostrum Jesum Christum, qui cum Patre et Sancto Spiritu vivit et regnat in saecula saeculorum. Amen.

DE JEJUNIO.

VOCABULARY

jejuno, 1: *to fast*

7. viduus, 3: *widowed, widow*
 defensio, -nis, f (*fr. defendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum, to defend*): *protection*
 pupillus, 2: *orphan*
 lugeo, 2, luxi, luctum: *to mourn*
 dissideo, 2, -sedi, -sessim: *to disagree, dissent*
 suscipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to take up, receive, 106*
 peregrinus, 3: *foreign, traveling*
 vestio, 4: *to clothe*
 nudus, 3: *naked*
 aegrotus, 3: *sick*
 praemium, 2: *gain, profit, reward*
 feria, 1: *holy day*; feria quarta: *Wednesday*; feria sexta: *Friday, 95*
 sabbatum, 2: *Saturday*
 vigilo, 1: *to keep awake, have a night devotion*
 suffragor, 1: *to vote, intercede, 88*
 posco, 3, poposci, -: *to demand, require*

TRANSLATION

virtue what we withdraw from pleasure. Let our fasting be the meal of the poor.

7. *Let us be zealous for the protection of widows, for the welfare of orphans, for the solace of those who mourn, for the peace of those who are at variance.*

Let us receive the travellers, assist the oppressed, clothe the naked, nurse the sick, so that whosoever of us has by his just labors offered to God, the Author of all good, a sacrifice of such piety, may merit to receive from Him the reward of the heavenly kingdom.

Let us fast on Wednesdays and Fridays. And likewise on Saturday let us have a vigil at St. Peter's the Apostle, that through his intercession we may be able to receive what we ask for, through our Lord Jesus Christ who liveth and reigneth with the Father and the Holy Ghost, world without end. Amen.

impetro, 1: *to obtain*
 saeculum, 2: *century, age*

52. ANICIUS MANLIUS SEVERINUS BOETHIUS

Philosopher and Statesman of Excellent Character

CONSOLATION OF PHILOSOPHY

His Swan Song in the prison where he was unjustly put to death by Theodoric, the Goth.

In distichs and poetical terms

In prose

1. Carmina qui quondam studio florente peregi, 1. Carmina qui quondam studio florente peregi,

DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE.

VOCABULARY

1. carmen, -minis, n: *poem, ode*,
 quondam: *once upon a time*

TRANSLATION

1. *I, who once in the midst of my flourishing studies*

CONSOLATION OF PHILOSOPHY

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>Flebilis <i>heu</i> maestos cogor inire modos.</p> <p>2. <i>Ecce mihi lacerae</i> dictant scribenda <i>Camenae</i>
Et veris elegi <i>fletibus ora</i> rigant.</p> <p>3. Has saltem nullus potuit pervincere terror,
Ne <i>nostrum</i> comites prosequerentur iter.</p> <p>4. Gloria felicitis olim <i>viridisque</i> juventae
Solantur maesti nunc mea fata senis.</p> <p>5. Venit enim properata malis inopina senectus
Et dolor aetatem <i>iussit inesse suam</i>.</p> <p>6. Intempestivi funduntur vertice cani
Et <i>tremet effeto</i> corpore laxa cutis.</p> <p>7. Mors hominum felix, quae se nec dulcibus annis
Insertit et maestis saepe vocata venit.</p> <p>8. <i>Eheu</i> quam surda miseris avertitur aure
Et flentes oculos claudere saeva negat.</p> | <p><i>nunc</i> flebilis maestos cogor inire <i>modulos</i>,</p> <p>2. <i>cum mihi lugubres Musae</i> dictant scribenda
et <i>faciem</i> veris elegi rigant <i>lacrimis</i>.</p> <p>3. Has saltem nullus potuit pervincere terror.
ne comites iter prosequerentur <i>meum</i>.</p> <p>4. Gloria felicitis olim <i>virentisque</i> juventae
nunc solantur <i>meum</i> maesti senis fatum.</p> <p>5. Venit enim properata malis inopina senectus
et <i>senilem</i> adesse dolor <i>fecit</i> aetatem.</p> <p>6. Intempestivi funduntur <i>in</i> vertice cani
et laxa <i>corrugatur in macro</i> corpore cutis.</p> <p>7. Mors hominum felix, quae se nec dulcibus inserit
annis et <i>a</i> maestis saepe vocata venit.</p> <p>8. <i>Ast a me</i> misero quam surda avertitur aure
Et flentes oculos claudere saeva negat.</p> |
|--|--|

DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE.

VOCABULARY

flebilis, 2 (fr. fleo, 3, -evi, -etum, to weep): lamentable, 56

[lacer, -ra, -rum: ragged, torn to pieces]

maestus, 3: mourning, sorry

modulus, 2: measure, melody, rhythm

2. lugubris, 2 (fr. lugeo, 2, luxi, luctum, to mourn): elegi, -orum: elegiac verses, elegies (mournful)

rigo, 1: to wet, moisten, bedew

[fletus, 4 (fr. fleo, 2, to weep): weeping, bewailing]

3. pervinco, 3, -vici, -victum: to conquer, prevail
comes, -mitis, c: companion, associate
prosequor, 3, -secutum: to follow, accompany, 124, a

4. (con)solor, 1: to console
vireo, 2, -rui, -;: to be green, blooming
juventa, 1, or juvenus, -tutis, f: youth

5. propero, 1; accelero, 1, neutral as in English:
to hasten, COLL. 11, 1
senilis, 2 (fr. senex, senis, old): senile

6. intempestivus, 3: untimely, inopportune
[tremo, 2, -mui, -;: to tremble]
fundo, 2, fudi, fusum: to pour, shed
vertex, -ticis, m: whirl, eddy, the crown of the head,
head
[effetus, 3: weakened by bearing]; macer, -cra, -crum:
lean

7. insero, 3, -serui, -sertum: to insert, place among
felix, -icis: happy

8. surdus, 3: deaf
auris, -is, f: ear; 88
saevus, 3: raging, fierce, cruel, 56

TRANSLATION

wrote odes, must now betake myself regretfully to
sorrowful rhymes,

ineo, 4: to enter, undertake, form 42, 3; 61, a

2. when the mournful Muses compel me to write,
and elegies bedew my face with truth-(telling) tears.

lacrima, 1: a tear, 93, a

3. Them, at least, no terror could frighten from
following (me) as companions on my way (to prison).

4. They now console the fate of my old age with the
(remembrance of the) glory of my former happy and
flourishing youth.

5. For hastened by misfortune, old age suddenly ar-
rived; sorrow brought it on.

6. Untimely has gray hair covered my head, and
loose skin is wrinkled on my lean body.

canus, 3: gray; cani, -orum: gray hair, hoar
corrugo, 1: to wrinkle up, shrink
cutis, is, f: skin

7. Happy is that death of men, which does not in-
trude on gay years, but often comes, summoned by
those who are sad.

8. But for me, an unfortunate, it turns away with
deaf ears, and cruelly refuses to close my weeping
eyes.

CONSOLATION OF PHILOSOPHY

9. Dum *levibus* malefida bonis fortuna faveret,
Paene caput tristis *merserat* hora meum.
9. Dum *vanis* malefida fortuna bonis faveret,
paene tristis hora *confecit* caput meum;
10. Nunc *quia* fallacem mutavit nubila vultum,
Protrahit *ingratas* impia vita moras.
10. O nunc, *cum fortuna* nubila fallacem mutavit vultum,
crudeli vita mors protrahit *impias* moras.
11. Quid me felicem *totiens* jactastis amici?
Qui cecidit, stabili non erat *ille* gradu.
11. Quid me felicem *toties* jactastis amici?
Qui cecidit, non erat *is* stabili gradu.
12. Haec dum mecum tacitus ipse reputarem querimoniamque lacrimabilem *stili officio* signarem, *astitisse* mihi supra verticem visa est mulier reverendi admodum vultus, oculis ardentibus et ultra communem *hominum valentiam* perspicacibus, *colore* vivido atque inexhausti vigoris, quamvis ita aevi plena *foret*, ut nullo modo nostrae crederetur aetatis; statura *discretionis* ambiguae.
12. Haec dum mecum tacitus ipse reputarem querimoniamque lacrimabilem *stilo* signarem, *assistere* mihi supra verticem visa est mulier reverendi admodum vultus, oculis ardentibus et perspicacibus ultra communem *captum humanum specieque* vivida atque inexhausti vigoris, quamvis ita aevi plena *esset*, ut nullo modo nostrae crederetur aetatis; statura *vero definitionis* ambiguae.
13. Nam nunc *quidem* ad communem sese hominum mensuram cohibebat, nunc vero pulsare caelum *summi verticis cacumine* videbatur; quae cum altius caput extulisset, ipsum *etiam* caelum penetrabat re-
13. Nam nunc ad communem se hominum mensuram cohibebat, nunc vero pulsare caelum *summo vertice* videbatur; quae cum altius caput extulisset, ipsum caelum penetrabat *aspicientisque hominis* frustra-

DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE.

VOCABULARY

9. malefidus, 3: *deceitful*
[mergo, 3, mersi, mersum: *to dip, plunge, merge*] 32, e
conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to bring to an end, destroy*
10. nubilus, 3 (*fr.* nubes, -bis, f, *cloud*): *cloudy, unfavorable*, 56
11. jacto, 1, (*frequ.* of jacio, 3, jeci, jactum): *to cast, boast*, 49, i
toties: *so often, so many times*
stabilis, 2 (*fr.* sto, 1, *to stand*): *firm, steadfast, stable*
12. taceo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to be silent*, 56
reputo, 1: *to think over, consider*, 120, c, 6
querimonia, 1 (*fr.* queror, 3, questum, *to complain*): *complaint*
lacrimabilis, 2 (*fr.* lacrima, 1, *tear*): *deplorable, woeful*, 49, i
assistere, 35, a (*ful*, 49, i)
perspicax, -cis (*fr.* perspicio, 3, *to penetrate by look*): *sharpsighted, acute*, 49, i; 86
[valentia, 1, *obsolete for*:] captus, 4: *catching, power of comprehension*
vividus, 3 (*fr.* vivo, 3, *to live*): *full of life, vigorous*, 86
exhaurio, 4, -hausi, -haustum: *to empty out, exhaust*, 67, d
13. cohibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to hold, maintain*
pulso, 1 (*fr.* pello, 3, pepuli, pulsum, *to chase*): *to knock, touch*, 49, i
[cacumen, -minis, n: *summit, top*]
effero, 3, extuli, elatum: *to bring out, lift up*, 125, a
penetro, 1: *to penetrate*

TRANSLATION

9. *While deceitful fortune favored me with her vain goods, a sad hour almost destroyed me:*
10. *now as unfavorable fortune changed her deceitful face, death prolongs her delay by a cruel life.*
11. *O my friends! why did you so often boast that I was happy? He who has fallen was not firm on his feet.*
gradus, 4 (*fr.* gradior, 3, gressum, *to step*): *step, foot*, 86
12. *Whilst I silently considered these things and jotted down with pencil my woeful complaints, a woman of very honorable mien seemed to stand over my head, with sharp eyes, and intelligent above common human capacity, with bright countenance, unabated vigor, and yet so full-aged that she could not at all be thought to be of our time, and with a stature impossible to be described.*
- definitio, -nis, (*fr.* definio, 4, *to determine*): *definition*, 67, d
13. *For sometimes she maintained the common human size, and sometimes she seemed to touch the heavens with her head; and when she lifted her head a little higher, she penetrated the heavens and dazzled*

CONSOLATION OF PHILOSOPHY

spicientiumque hominum frustrabatur intuitum.

Et dextera quidem ejus libellos, sceptrum vero sinistra gestabat.

14. Quae, ubi poeticas Musas vidit *nostro* assistentes *toro fletibusque* meis verba dictantes, commota paulisper ac torvis inflammata *luminibus*: "Quis," inquit, "has scenicas meretriculas ad hunc aegrum permisit accedere, quae dolores ejus non modo nullis remediis foverent, verum dulcibus insuper alerent venenis?"

15. Hae sunt enim, quae infructuosis affectuum spinis uberem fructibus rationis segetem *necant*, hominumque mentes assuefaciunt morbo, non liberant.

16. At si quem profanum, uti vulgo solitum vobis, blanditiae vestrae *detraherent*, minus moleste ferendum putarem, nihil *quippe* in eo nostrae operae laederentur.

17. *Sed* abite *potius*, Sirenes usque in exitum dulces,

bat intuitum.

Dextera ejus libellos, sinistra vero sceptrum gestabat.

14. Quae, ubi poeticae Musas vidit *meo* assistentes *lecto lacrimisque* meis verba dictantes, commota paulisper ac torvis inflammata *oculis*: "Quis," inquit, "has scenicas meretriculas ad hunc aegrum accedere permisit, quae dolores ejus non modo nullis foveant remediis, verum dulcibus insuper alant venenis?"

15. Hae sunt enim, quae infructuosis affectuum spinis uberem fructibus rationis segetem *enecent*, hominumque mentes assuefaciant morbo, *sed* non liberant.

16. At si quem profanum, uti vulgo solitum vobis, blanditiae vestrae *abstrahant*, minus moleste ferendum putem, nihil *enim* in eo nostrae operae laedantur.

17. *Nunc autem* abite, Sirenes usque in exitum dul-

DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE.

VOCABULARY

aspicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum: *to look at, behold*, 40
frustro, 1: *to cheat, deceive, trick*
intuitus, 4 (*fr. intueor*, 2, -tuitum, *to look at*): *to sight, view*, 49, a
gesto, 1, *frequ. of gero*, 3, gessi gestum: *to carry, bear*,

14. poetica, 1: *poetry*; poeticus, 3: *poetical*, 49, t [torus, 2: *couch*]; lectus, 2: *bed*
dicto, 1 (*fr. dico*, 3): *to dictate*, 49, j
paulisper: *for a little while*
torvus, 3: *wild, severe, grim, fierce*
meretricula, 1 (*fr. meretrix, -icis, harlot*): *little harlot*,
aeger, -gra, -grum: *sick, ill* (49, p
permisit, 100
remedium, 2 (*fr. medeor*, 2, *to heal*): *remedy*, 93, a
insuper: *over, moreover, in addition*

15. infructuosus, 3 (*fr. fructus*, 4, *fruit*): *fruitless*,
spina, 1: *thorn*, 88 (49, t
uber, -is: *fertile, full*
seges, -getis, f: *crop*
eneco, 1: *to kill*, 120, c, 3
assuefacio, 3, -feci, -factum: *to accustom*, 79

16. si, 109, b, not 109, c
vulgo: *commonly, generally, in public, openly*
soleo, 2, -, -litum: *to be accustomed*, 31, d; solitum
est, 48, e
blanditia, 1 (*fr. blandus*, 3: *flattering*); *flattery*, 49, u
molestus, 3 (*fr. moles, -is, f, mass, trouble*): *troublesome, irksome*

17. Siren, -enis, f: *Siren* (49, a
exitus, 4 (*fr. exeo*, 4, *to go out*): *exit, result, death*,
usque in, usque ad: *up to*

TRANSLATION

the sight of her beholder.

In her right hand she held books, and in her left hand, a sceptre.

wear, hold, 49, i

14. *When she saw the Muses of poetry surrounding my bed and suggesting words to my tears, being moved for a while and excited, she said with a severe countenance: "Who has permitted these theatrical harlots to approach this sick man? They do not only not heal his griefs with any remedies, but even nourish them with sweetened poisons.*

alo, 3, alui, alitum: *to nourish*, 120, c, 3
venenum, 2: *poison*, 93, a

15. *For, these are they who with the barren thorns of emotions kill the fruitful crop of reason and accustom men's minds to sickness, but do not cure them.*

morbus, 2: *disease, sickness*, 79

16. *However, if your flattery would seduce some profane man, as it commonly happens, I should think that it should not be taken so grievously, for in the latter case nothing of our work would be harmed.*

laedo, 3, laedi, laesum: *to hurt, injure*, 109, b

17. *But now, get you gone, you Sirens, sweet even to destruction,*

CONSOLATION OF PHILOSOPHY

meisque eum Musis curandum sanandumque relin-
quite.”

18. His *ille* chorus increpitus dejecit *humi* maestior
vultum confessusque rubore verecundiam limen tristis
excessit.

19. At ego, *cujus acies* lacrimis mersa caligaret, nec
dignoscere possem, quoniam haec esset mulier tam
imperiosae auctoritatis, obstupui visuque in terram de-
fixo, quidnam deinceps esset actura, expectare tacitus
coepi.

20. *Tum illa* propfius accedens in extrema lectuli
mei parte consedit meumque intuens vultum luctu
gravem atque in humum maerore dejectum. “Medici-
nae,” inquit, “tempus est quam quærelae.”

21. *Tum vero totis* in me intenta *luminibus*: “*Tunc*
ille es, ait qui nostro quondam *lacte* nutritus nostris
educatus alimentis in virilis animi robur evaseras?
Atqui talia contuleramus arma, quae nisi prior abje-

ces, meisque eum Musis curandum sanandumque relin-
quite.”

18. His *verbis* chorus increpitus *in humum* mae-
stus dejecit vultum confessusque rubore verecundiam
limen tristis excessit.

19. At ego, *cujus oculi* lacrimis mersi caligaret,
cum nec dignoscere possem, quoniam haec esset mulier
tam imperiosae auctoritatis, obstupui visuque in ter-
ram defixo, quidnam deinceps esset actura, expectare
tacitus coepi.

20. *Tunc* propfius accedens in extrema lectuli mei
parte consedit meumque intuens vultum luctu gravem
atque in humum maerore dejectum: “*Medicinae*,” in-
quit, “tempus est *magis* quam *querelae*.”

21. *Tum vero penetrantibus* in me intenta *oculis*:
“*Tu-ne* es,” ait, “qui nostro quondam *spiritu* nutritus
nostris educatus alimentis in virilis animi evaseras ro-
bur? *Nihilominus* talia conferebamus arma, quae nisi

DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE.

VOCABULARY

curandum sanandumque, COLL. 37, 3

18. increpo, 1, -pui or -pavi, -pitum: to rustle, chide
humus, 2 f: soil, ground, 21, f
rubor, -is m (fr. ruber, 3, red): rouge, blush, 88
verecundia, 1 (fr. vereor, 2, to revere): bashfulness,
shame, 49, h
limen, -minis, n: threshold

19. mergo, 3, mersi, mersum: to dip, plunge, im-
merse
caligo, 1: to be misty, to dim, 120, c, 6
dignosco, 3, -gnovi, -: to notice as different, distin-
guish, 125, b
imperiosus, 3 (fr. impero, 1, to command): powerful,
potent, 49, t

20. externus, 3: outermost, 27, f
consido, 3, -sedi, -cessum: to sit down
luctus, 4 (fr. lugeo, 2, luxi, luctum, to mourn): mourn-
ing, 84
maeror, -is, m (fr. maereo, -, -, to be sad): sadness,
grief, 88
querela, 1 (fr. queror, 3, questum, to complain): com-

21. intendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: to aim, direct
nutrio, 4: to nourish, nurse
educatio, 1: to educate, bring up
alimentum, 2 (fr. alo, 3, alui, alitum, to feed): food,
robur, -boris, n: strength (49, e; 93, a
evado, 3, -asi, -asum: to become, escape, result
[atqui: and yet, but]
nihilominus: nevertheless, even

TRANSLATION

and leave him to my Muses to be cured and healed.”

18. The company, rebuked with these words, cast
their eyes upon the ground with a blush and betraying
their shame, went sadly away.

excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go from; leave, 61, a

19. And, as I, whose eyes, steeped in tears, were
dimmed, could not discern who this woman of such
imperious authority might be, I was astonished, and
fixing my gaze upon the earth, began to await in
silence what she would afterwards do.

obstupesco, 3, -pui, -: to become astounded, amazed,
49, k

20. Then coming nearer, she sat down at the foot
of my bed, and beholding my countenance grave with
mourning and cast down upon the ground with grief,
she said: “It is the time of cure, rather than that of
complaining.”

plaint, 49, a

21. Further on, looking at me with penetrating
eyes she said: “Art thou, he who being long since
nourished by our spirit, and brought up with our food,
hast reached the strength of a manly character? We
even granted thee such weapons as would protect
thee with invincible firmness, if thou hadst not cast

confero, 3, contuli, collatum: to bring to, give, 32, b
(not e

52. ANICIUS MANLIUS SEVERINUS BOETHIUS

475-525 A.D.

Course 84

CONSOLATION OF PHILOSOPHY

cisses, invicta te firmitate tuerentur.

prius abjecisses, invicta te firmitate tuerentur.

22. Agnoscisne me? Quid taces? Pudore an stupore siluisti? Mallet pudore; *sed* te, ut video, stupor oppressit." Cumque me elinguem vidisset, admovit pectori meo leniter manum et: "Nihil," inquit, "periculi est; lethargum patitur communem illusarum mentium morbum. Sui paulisper oblitus est; sed recordabitur facile, si quidem nos ante cognoverit."

22. Agnoscis-ne me? Quid taces? Pudore an stupore siluisti? Mallet pudore; *ast* te, ut video, stupor oppressit." Cumque me elinguem vidisset, admovit pectori meo leniter manum et: "Nihil," inquit, "est periculi; lethargiam patitur illis mentibus communem morbum. Sui paulisper oblitus est; sed recordabitur facile, si quidem nos ante cognoverit."

DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE.

VOCABULARY

tueor, 2, tuitum: *to see, protect, guard*, 109, c, d

22. agnosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: *to recognize*
 taceo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to be silent*
 pudor, -is, m (*fr. pudet: be ashamed*): *shame*, 94
 stupor, -is, m (*fr. stupeo, 2, be stunned*): *senselessness*,
 sileo, 2, -lui, -: *to be still, be silent* (94)
 mallet, 103, b
 elinguis, 2 (*fr. lingua, 1, tongue*): *speechless*
 lenis, 2: *smooth, mild, gentle*
 (lethargus, 2), or lethargia, 1, *Greek: lethargy*; lethargic(us), 3: *lethargic*
 illudo, 3, -lusi, -lusum: *to mock, deceive*, 78
 recordor, 1: *to remember*, 72

TRANSLATION

them away.

22. *Dost thou know me? Why art thou silent? Hast thou become silent from shame or insensibility? I had rather (it were) by shame; but as I perceive, insensibility has overtaken thee.*" As she saw me speechless, she gently laid her hand on my breast saying: "There is no danger; he is in a stupor, the common disease of deceived minds. He has somewhat forgotten himself; but he will easily remember (us), if he knew us formerly."

cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: *to recognize, know*, 109, a, 3

53. SANCTUS BENEDICTUS

480-543 A.D.

Course 36

RULES

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Primus humilitatis gradus est obedientia sine mora. Haec convenit his, qui nihil sibi Christo carius existimant, *propter* sanctum servitium, quod professi sunt.

Sed haec ipsa obedientia tunc acceptabilis erit Deo, et dulcis hominibus, si, quod jubetur, non trepide, non tarde, non tepide, aut *cum* murmure vel *cum* responso

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Primus humilitatis gradus est obedientia sine mora. Haec convenit his, qui *per* sanctum servitium, quod professi sunt, nihil sibi Christo carius existimant.

Sed haec ipsa obedientia tunc acceptabilis erit Deo, et dulcis hominibus, si, quod jubetur, non trepide, non tarde, non tepide aut murmure vel responso *nolendi*

REGULAE.

VOCABULARY

1. humilitas, -tatis, f (*fr. humilis, 2, low, humble*): *lowness, humility*
 obedientia, 1 (*fr. obedio, 4, to obey*): *obedience*, 49, u
 gradus, 4 (*fr. gradior, 3, gressum, to step*): *step, grade*
 mora, 1 (*fr. moror, 1, to linger*): *delay*, 49, a
 convenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to come together, meet*,
 61, a; fit, 79
 existimo, 1: *to consider, esteem*
 servitium, 2 (*fr. servio, 4, to serve*): *slavery, service*,
 49, f
 profiteor, 2, -fessum: *to confess, take vows*, 31, c
 Christo, 87

TRANSLATION

1. *The first grade of humility is obedience without delay. This is becoming to those who by the means of the holy service for which they have taken vows, hold nothing dearer than Christ.*

However, this obedience will be acceptable to God and pleasing to men only if what is ordered, is done without fear, delay, sloth, murmuring, or a reply of

trepidus, 3 (*fr. trepido, 1, to fear anxiously*);
alarmed
 tardus, 3 (*fr. tardo, 1, to loiter*): *slow, tardy*
 murmur, -uris, n (*fr. murmuro, 1, to murmur*): *murmuring*, 117, c
(*murmuring*)

RULES

nolentis efficiatur; quia obedientia, quae majoribus praebetur, Deo exhibetur.

2. Ipse enim dixit: "Qui vos audit, Me audit." *Et cum* bono animo a discipulis praebere oportet, quia: "Hilarem datorem diligit Deus."

Nam *cum* malo animo si obedit discipulus, et non solum ore, sed etiam corde si murmuraverit, etsi impleat jussionem, *tamen* acceptus jam non erit Deo qui cor respicit murmurantis: et pro tali facto nullam consequitur gratiam.

Immo murmurantium poenam incurrit, *si non cum* satisfactione emendaverit. (C. V.)

3. Existimet se homo de caelis a Deo semper respici omni *hora*, et facta sua in omni loco *ab* aspectu Divinitatis *videri*, et ab Angelis omni *hora* Deo nunciari.

(C. VII.)

4. Frater, qui proprio vitio egreditur, aut *projicitur* de monasterio, si reverti *voluerit*, spondeat prius omnem emendationem vitii, *pro quo* egressus est, et sic in ultimo gradu recipiatur, ut ex hoc ejus humilitas comprobetur.

efficiatur; quia obedientia, quae majoribus praebetur, Deo exhibetur.

2. Ipse enim dixit: "Qui vos audit, Me audit." *Bonoque* animo a discipulis praebere oportet, quia: "Hilarem datorem diligit Deus."

Nam malo si *obedierit* animo, et non ore solum, sed si etiam corde murmuraverit, etsi impleat jussionem, acceptus jam non erit Deo, qui cor respicit murmurantis: et pro tali facto nullam consequitur gratiam.

Immo murmurantium poenam incurrit, *nisi* satisfactione emendaverit.

3. Existimet se homo de caelis a Deo semper respici omni *momento* et facta sua in omni loco aspectu Divinitatis *observari*, et ab Angelis omni *momento* nunciari.

4. Frater, qui proprio vitio egreditur, aut *ejicitur* de monasterio, si reverti *velit* spondeat prius omnem emendationem vitii, *propter quod* egressus est, et sic in ultimo gradu recipiatur, ut ex hoc ejus humilitas comprobetur.

REGULAE.

VOCABULARY

efficio, 3, effeci, effectum: *to effect, accomplish*, 109, b
 praebeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to offer, afford*
 exhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to produce, give*

2. hilaris, 2 *or* hilarus, 3: *cheerful, merry, gay*
 dator, -is, m (*fr.* do, 1, dedi, datum, *to give*): *giver*
 diligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to prize, love, esteem highly*
 ōs, ōris, n: *mouth*, 88 *or* 93, a
 cor, -rdis, n: *heart*, 22, e; 88
 obediērit, murmuraverit, 109, a, 3
 impleo, 2, -plevi, -pletum: *to fill up, complete*, 120, c, 2
 iussio, -nis, f (*fr.* jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum, *to command*): *command*, 49, a
 acceptus, 2 (*fr.* accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum, *to receive*): *welcome, pleasant*, 36, b

respicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum: *to look back or at*, 40
 consequor, 3, -cutum: *to pursue, attain, obtain, get*

3. caelum, 2: *sky*; caeli, -orum: *heavens*
 momentum, 2: *minute, moment*
 aspectus, 4 (*fr.* aspicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum, *to look at*): *look, sight*, 88
 nuntio, 1: *to announce, report*

4. vitium, 2: *fault, crime, vice*, 94
 [projicio: *to throw forth*]; ejicio: *to eject, expel*
 egredior, 3, -egressum: *to go, pass out, digress*, 40
 monasterium, 2 (*fr.* monas, -adis, f. *Greek*: unit): *convent, cloister, monastery*
 revertō, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to return (transitive)*
 velit, 109, b; 99, c, 1 (promise)
 spondeo, 2, spopondi, sponsum: *to pledge oneself*,

TRANSLATION

unwillingness. For the obedience rendered to superiors is rendered to God Himself.

2. *For the Lord Himself says: "He that heareth you, heareth Me." Moreover it must be performed with joy, for "God loveth a cheerful giver."*

Because, if a disciple obeys with ill will, murmuring not only with his mouth, but also in his heart, even though he performs the order, he cannot please God, who regards the heart of the murmurer; and so he gains no grace for such a deed.

Nay more, he incurs the penalty of murmurers, unless he expiate it with satisfaction.

incurro, 2, -curri, -cursum: *to run against, incur*, 61,
 emendo, 1: *to emend, correct*, 109, b (a)

3. *Let (every) man remember that at every moment he is watched by God from Heaven above, and that his deeds are seen in every place by the eye of the Divine majesty and are at every moment reported (to God) by the Angels.*

4. *If a brother, who through his own fault departs or is cast out of the monastery, wishes to return, he must first promise full amendment of the vice on account of which he left, and so let him be received in the lowest rank in order to test his humility.*

propter: *on account of*, 50, a
 comprobo, 1: *to prove fully*, 124, a

HYMN OF THE HOLY CROSS

2. *Quae vulnerata lanceae*
Mucrone diro, criminum
Ut nos lavaret sordibus,
Manavit unda et sanguine.

3. Impleta sunt, quae concinit
David fideli carmine,
Dicendo nationibus:
"Regnavit a Ligno Deus." (Ps. 95, 10)

4. Arbor decora et fulgida,
Ornata regis purpura,
Electa digno stipite
Tam sancta membra tangere!

5. Beata, cujus brachiis
Pretium pependit saeculi,
Statera facta corporis,
Tulitque praedam Tartari.

6. (O crux, ave, spes unica,
Hoc passionis tempore,

2. *Qui vulneratus lanceae*
mucrone diro, ut nos
criminum lavaret sordibus,
manavit unda et sanguine.

3. Impleta sunt, quae concinit
David fideli carmine,
dicendo nationibus:
En regnat a Ligno Deus.

4. Arbor decora et fulgida,
ornata Regis purpura,
electa digno stipite
tam sancta membra tangere!

5. Beata, cujus brachiis
pretium pependit saeculi;
statera facta corporis,
tulitque praedam Tartari.

6. (O crux, ave, spes unica,
hoc passionis tempore,

VEXILLA REGIS.

VOCABULARY

2. vulnero, 1: *to wound*
lancea, 1: *dart, 93, a*
mucro, -onis, m: *a sharp point or edge, 93, a*
dirus, 3: *fearful, horrible, dire, cruel*
crimen, -minis, n: *crime, 23, III*
lavo, 1, lavi, lotum: *to wash, 124, a*
sordes, -dis, f: *dirt, filth, stain, 23, II*
mano, 1: *to flow, give out, emit*
3. impleo, 2, -levi, -letum: *to fill up*
concino, 3, -cinui, -centum: *to sing (in chorus)*
natio, -nis, f: *nation, 23, II*
regno, 1: *to reign; regnavit, the Hebrew present, 6, a;*
lignum, 2: *wood, (the wood of the holy cross) (98, e*
4. decorus, 3: *beautiful, graceful, decorous, adorned*
fulgidus, 3: *glittering, resplendent*
orno, 1: *to adorn, 36, b*
purpura, 1: *purple dye or cloth, 93, a*
eligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to select, choose, 36, b*
dignus, 3: *worthy,*
stipes, -itis, m: *log, trunk of a tree, 88*
sanctus, 3: *holy, sacred*
5. brachium, 2: *arm, 93, a*
pretium, 2: *price*
pendeo, 2, pependi, -,; *to hang (intransitive)*
statēra, 1: *steelyard, balance, 59, B*
praeda, 1: *booty*
Tartarus, 2: *the underworld, hell*
6. spes, 5: *hope*
ave: *hail, 47*
unicus, 3: *sole, only, single*
passio, -nis f (fr. patior, 3, passum, *to suffer*): *passion,*

TRANSLATION

2. *Wounded by the cruel point of a lance,
He emitted water and blood
to cleanse us from the stains
of our crimes.*

unda, 1: *wave, water, 88*
sanguis, is, m: *blood, 23, I; 88*

3. *It is fulfilled what David
foretold, saying to the nations:
"God is reigning on the wood."*

4. *O beautiful and resplendent tree,
adorned with the purple (blood) of our King,
chosen to touch with thy worthy trunk
such holy limbs.*

membrum, 2: *member, limb, part*
tango, 3, tetigi, tactum: *to touch, 35, g*

5. *O blessed (tree) upon whose arms
hung the ransom of the world,
being made a support for His body,
took away the booty from Hell.*

6. (*Hail, O Cross, our only hope,
in this Passiontide*

tempus, -oris, n: *time, season, tide, 95 (23, I; 49, a*

54. VENANTIUS HONORIUS CLEMENTIANUS FORTUNATUS

530-569 A.D.

Course 12

HYMN OF THE HOLY CROSS

Piis adauge gratiam,
Reisque dele crimina!

7. Te, fons salutis Trinitas,
Collaudet omnis spiritus;
Quibus Crucis victoriam
Largiris, adde praemium.

Amen.**

piis adauge gratiam,
reisque dele crimina!

7. Te, fons salutis Trinitas,
collaudet omnis spiritus;
quibus Crucis victoriam
largiris, adde et praemium.

Amen.

VEXILLA REGIS.

VOCABULARY

pius, 3: *pious, just*, 79
adaugeo, 2, -auxi, -auctum: *to increase, augment*, 79
reus, 2: *culprit, the guilty, sinner*, 74
deleo, 2, -levi, -letum: *abolish, efface, blot out*

7. fons, -ntis, m: *fount*, 23, II, b
salus, -lutis, f: *welfare, salvation*
collaudo, 1: *to praise very much*
largior, 4, -itum: *impart or bestow abundantly*
addo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to give, add*, 34, a; 108, a

TRANSLATION

*increase grace in the just,
and blot out the sinners' crimes.*

7. *May all souls praise Thee, O Holy Trinity,
fount of our salvation,
and to whom Thou impartest the glory of
the Cross, grant them also its profit.*

praemium, 2: *prize, reward, profit*

55. CASSIODORUS MAGNUS AURELIUS

470- 583 A.D.

Course 64

COPYISTS AND SPELLING

Transcribed by Jordanes the Gothic bishop of Ravenna

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Ego tamen fateor *votum meum, quod inter vos quaecumque possunt corporeo labore compleri, antiquariorum mihi studia—si tamen veraciter scribant—non immerito forsitan plus placere, quod et mentem suam, relegendo scripturas divinas salubriter instruant.*

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Ego tamen fateor *ex eis, quae inter vos corporeo labore conficiuntur, antiquariorum mihi operam,—si quidem emendate scribatur,—non immerito maxime placere eo, quod et mens relegendo scripturas divinas*

DE ANTIQUARIIS ET ORTHOGRAPHIA.

VOCABULARY

1. fateor, 2, fassum: *to confess, say*
[votum, 2: *vow, wish, desire*]
corporeus, 3: *corporeal*, 49, s
labor, -is, m: *labor, achievement, hardship, fatigue*, 93, a
conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *accomplish, finish, consume, destroy*, 40
[compleo, 2, -plevi, -pletum: *to fill up, complete, antiquarius, 2: editor, copyist*, 49, m (finish)]
opera, 1: *effort, exertion, pain, service*
(opus, -eris, n: *work (finished), undertaking*)
[studium, 2: *study, zeal, assiduity*]
emendo, 1: *to correct*; emendatus, 3: *faultless*, 28, a
[verax, acis: *truthful*]
mereo(r), 2, merui, meritum: *to earn, deserve*
immerito: *undeservedly*, 28, a

TRANSLATION

1. *Well, I say that of all the things which are accomplished in your convent through manual labor, the copyists' work is truly the most pleasing to me—provided they copy without mistake,—because by re-reading the Holy Scriptures their mind is wholesomely*

non immerito: *truly*
[forsitan: *maybe*]
placeo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to please*, 80, m; eo, 93, a
mens, mentis, f: *mind*
relego, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to collect again; read or go over again*, 88; 117, e
scriptura, 1 (fr. scribo, 3, scripsi, scriptum, *to write: writing, scripture*, 49, a
divinus, 3: *divine, holy*

** Added by an unknown author.

COPYISTS AND SPELLING

et Domini praecepta scribendo longe lateque disseminant.

2. Felix intentio, laudanda sedulitas manu hominibus praedicare, digitis linguas *aperire*, salutem mortalibus tacitam dare et contra diaboli *subreptiones illicitas* calamo atramentoque pugnare.

Tot enim vulnera Satanas accipit, quot antiquarius Domini verba describit.

3. Uno itaque loco *situs operis sui* disseminatione per diversas provincias vadit.

In locis sanctis legitur labor ipsius; audiunt populi unde se a prava voluntate convertant et Domino pure mente deserviant. Operatur absens de opere suo.

salubriter instruat et Domini praecepta scribendo longe lateque disseminantur.

2. Felix intentio, laudanda sedulitas manu hominibus praedicare, digitis linguas *solvere*, salutem tacite inferre mortalibus et contra diaboli *illecebras* calamo atramentoque pugnare.

Tot enim vulnera Satanas accipit, quot antiquarius Domini verba describit.

3. Uno in loco itaque *constitutus opus suum* disseminando diversas peragravit provincias.

In locis sacris ejus opus legitur audiuntque populi quemadmodum a malo voluntatem avertant et Domino pure mente deserviant. Absens operatur opere suo.

DE ANTIQUARIIS ET ORTHOGRAPHIA.

VOCABULARY

salubris, 2: *healthy, sound, wholesome, serviceable*, 28, a
instruo, 3, -struxi, -uctum: *to build in, set up, arrange, teach, culture*, 131
praeceptum, 2 (*fr. praecipio*, 3, -cepi, ceptum, *to command*): *precept, command, rule*

2. felix, icis: *fortunate, lucky, successful, happy*
intentio, -nis, f (*fr. intendo*, 3, -ndi, -ntum, *to attend*): *attention, effort, intention*, 49, a
laudo, 1: *to praise*; laudandus, 3: *praiseworthy*, 111, c
sedulitas, -tatis, f (*fr. sedulus*, 3, *zealous*): *assiduity, zeal*, 49, u
praedico, 1: *to declare, speak, proclaim, teach, preach*
digitus, 2: *finger*, 93, a (117, a)
solvo, 3, solvi, -lutum: *to untie, loosen, release, solve*, [aperio, 4, -rui, -rtum: *to open*] (117, a)
salus, -lutis, f: *health, welfare, salvation*
tacitus, 3 (*fr. taceo*, 2, *to be silent*): *silent*, 28, a
infero, 3, intuli, illatum: *to carry -n, -to*, 43, 8; 117, a
mortalis, 2 (*fr. mors*, -rtis, f, *death*): *mortal, (man)*, 49, r; 26, f; 79
contra: *against*, 50, a
diabolus, 2 *Greek: intriguer, accuser, calumniator, devil, the prince of the devils*

3. constituo, 3, -stitui, -tutum: *to place, put, appoint*, 36, b
diversus, 3: *different*
peragro, 1: *to wander*
[vado, 3, vasi, vasum: *to go*]
provincia, 1: *province, country*
sacer, -cra, -crum: *sacred*; sanctus, 3: *holy*
quemadmodum, quomodo: *how, in which way*
[unde: *wherefrom*]
mālus, 3: *bad, wicked*
[pravus, 3: *crooked, perverse*]
voluntas, -tatis, f: *will, mind*

TRANSLATION

cultured, and by rewriting, the Lord's precepts are spread far and wide.

longe lateque: *far and wide*, 28, a
dissemino, 1: *to spread, disseminate*, 131

2. It is a happy intention, a praiseworthy zeal to preach to men by hand, to loosen tongues with the fingers, silently to carry salvation to men, and to fight against the allurements of the devil with pen and ink. For Satan receives as many wounds as the copyist writes words of the Lord.

illecebra, 1: *allurement, enticement, attraction*
[subreptio, -nis, f: *approaching*]
[illicitus, 3: *not allowed, illicit*]
calāmus, 2: *reed, pen*, 88
atramentum, 2 (*fr. ater*, 3, *dark*): *black fluid, ink*
pugno, 1: *to fight*, 117, a (117, a)
tot-quot indecl.: *as many—as*
vulnus, -neris, n: *wound*, 23, III
Satanas, 1 *Hebr.: opponent, enemy, accuser, Satan*
accipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to receive*, 40
describo, 3, -scripsi, -ptum: *transcribe, copy, write*

3. Thus remaining in one place, by disseminating his work, he travels through many countries. His work is read in holy places, and people hear how they may turn away their minds from evil and serve God with pure hearts. While absent he influences (many) by his work.

averto, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to turn away*
[converto, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to turn to*]
purus, 3: *pure*, 88
deservio, 4: *to serve*, 80, l; 132
operor, 1: *to work*
absum, -fui, -: *to be away, be absent*, 36, a

COPYISTS AND SPELLING

4. Sed ne tanto bono mutatis litteris *scriptores* verba vitiosa permisceant aut ineruditus emendator nesciat errata corrigere, orthographos antiquos legant, *id est* Veleium Longum, Curtium Valerianum, Papirianum, Adamantium Martyrium de V et B; ejusdem de primis, mediis atque ultimis syllabis; *ejusdem* de B littera trifariam in nomine posita, et Eutychen de aspiratione, *sed* et Focam de differentia generis. Quos ego, quantum potui, *studiosa* curiositate collegi.

5. Et, ne quempiam memoratorum codicum obscuritas *derelecta* turbaret,—quoniam antiquarum declinationum permixtione pro maxima parte confusi sunt,—magno studio *laboris* incubui, ut libro *sequestrato* at-

4. Sed ne tanto bono mutatis litteris *scribae* verba vitiosa permisceant aut ineruditus emendator nesciat errata corrigere, orthographos antiquos *necesse* legant, *ut* Veleium Longum, Curtium Valerianum, Papirianum, Adamantium Martyrium de V et B; *ejusdemque* librum de primis, mediis atque ultimis syllabis *et alterum* de littera B posita trifarie in *vocabulis*, *dein* Eutychen de aspiratione, *uti* et Phocam de generibus differenti-bus. Quos ego, quantum potui, *studio et cura* collegi.

5. At, ne quempiam memoratorum obscuritas *remanens* codicum turbet,—quoniam antiquarum declinationum permixtione pro maxima parte confusi sunt,—magno studio incubui, ut in libro *distincte* com-

DE ANTIQUARIIS ET ORTHOGRAPHIA.

VOCABULARY

4. tantus, 3: *such, so great, so big*, 79
muto, 1: *to change*, 114, b
littera, 1: *letter of alphabet; in pl.: epistle, literature, science, culture*
scriba, 1: *clerk, secretary, scribe, copyist*
[scriptor, -is, m: *writer, author*]
vitiosus, 3 (fr. vitium, 2, vice): *faulty, wicked*, 49, t
permisceo, 3, -miscui, -mistum or -mixtum: *to mix, mingle, confuse*, 79; 124, a
ineruditus, 3 (fr. erudio, 4, to instruct): *unlearned, illiterate, ignorant*
emendator, -is, m (fr. emendo, 1, to correct): *corrector*, 49, d
erratum, 2 (fr. erro, 1, to err): *fault, mistake*
corrigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: *to set right, correct, improve, amend*, 117, b
orthographus, 3, Greek: *grammarian*
antiquus, 3: *ancient, old*
necesse, COLL. 48, 5
Veleius Longus, a *grammarian of Trajan's time*
Curtius Valerius, a *grammarian earlier than Papirianus, a grammarian in the fourth century*
Adamantinus Martyrius, a *grammarian of uncertain age*
liber, -bri, 2: *the inner bark of a tree, book, writing, treatise*
syllaba, 1, Greek: *comprehension (of letters), syllable*
trifarius, 3 (fr. fari, to speak): *which can be said in three ways, of three kinds*, 28, a

5. quispiam, 2: *any one, some one*, 30, i
memoro, 1: *to mention, relate*
obscuritas, -tatis, f (fr. obscurus, 3, dark): *darkness, obscurity*, 49, u
[dereelinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: *to forsake, abandon*]
codex, -dicis, m: *waxen tablets, book*
turbo, 1: *to disturb*, 124, a
quoniam: *since, whereas, because, for*
declinatio, -nis f (fr. declino, 1, decline): *declension*, 49, a
confundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: *to pour together, mix, confuse*, 36, b

TRANSLATION

4. But in order that the copyists may not mingle faulty words with such a good work by misspelling, or that an illiterate corrector may be able to correct mistakes, it is necessary to peruse ancient grammarians, such as Veleius Longus, Curtius, Valerianus, Papirianus, Adamantinus Martyrius on the letter V and B; then the book of the latter on the first, middle, and last syllables; and his other book on the letter B placed three ways in words; further Eutyches on the pronunciation of the letter H: as well as Phocas on different genders. All these, as much as I could, I have collected with pain and care.

vocabulum, 2 (fr. voco, 1, to call): *name, a noun substantive, word*, 49, f
Eutyches, -chetis or -chis, a *grammarian of the sixth century A. D.*
aspiratio, -nis, f: *breathing, the pronunciation of the letter H, aspiration*, 49, a
Phocas, 1: *a grammarian of Cassiodorus' age*, 19, c
genus, -neris, n: *birth, nation, kind, sex, gender*
differo, 3, distuli, dilatam: *to carry, spread, differ*, 36, quantus, 3: *as much as* (a; 49, 2
[studiosus, 3 (fr. studium, 2, zeal): *diligent*], 49, t
cura, 1: *care, pain*, 88
[curiositas, -tatis, f (fr. curiosus, 3, inquisitive): *inquisitiveness*, 49, u
colligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to collect*

5. But lest some remaining obscurity of the authors mentioned above disturb one, for they are for a very great part confused by the mixing of archaic declensions, with great pains I have applied myself, so that in an especially prepared book, entitled ORTHOGRA-

incumbo, 3, -cubui, -cubitum: *to lie upon, apply oneself, take pains with*, 100
distinguo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to distinguish, make dis-*
[sequestro, 1: *to deposit, put aside*] (tinct, 78, a

COPYISTS AND SPELLING

que composito, qui inscribitur De Orthographia, ad vos *defloratae* regulae pervenirent, et *dubietate* sublata *liberior animus* viam emendationis incederet.

6. Diomedem quoque et Theoctistum aliqua de tali arte conscripsisse comperimus; qui si inventi fuerint, vos quoque eorum *deflorata colligite*. Forte et alios invenire *possitis*, per quos notitia vestra *potius instruat*ur.

posito, qui inscribitur DE ORTHOGRAPHIA, ad vos *collectae* regulae perveniant, et *dubio sublato animus* in emendandis *tutior* incedat.

6. Diomedem quoque et Theoctistum aliqua de tali arte conscripsisse comperimus; qui si inventi fuerint, vos quoque eorum *summam excerptote*. Forte et alios invenietis, per quos notitia vestra *porro augeatur*.

DE ANTIQUARIIS ET ORTHOGRAPHIA.

VOCABULARY

compono, 3, -posui, -positum: *to put together, com-*
inscribo, 3, -scripsi, -ptum: *to inscribe, entitle* (*pose*
orthographia, 1: *orthography*

[defloro, 1: *to take flowers, take the best parts, vio-*
regula, 1: *rule* (*late*]

pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to come to, reach, arrive*
at, 124, a

[*dubietas, -tatis, f, colloquial for:*] *dubium, 2 or du-*
bitatio, -nis, f: doubt

6. Diomedes, -dis, *a grammarian*
Theoctistus, 2, *unknown author*
talis, 2: *of such a kind, such*
ars, -rtis, f: *trade, art, skill, method, theory*
conscribo, 3, -scripsi, -ptum: *to write, compose, enroll,*
57. 4

comperio, 4, -peri, -rtum: *to discover, hear, learn*

invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to find, 32, f*

notitia, 1: *knowledge*

summa, 1: *the whole, summary*

TRANSLATION

PHY, *a collection of rules may reach you, and your*
watchful mind may proceed in correcting without any
hesitation.

tollo, 3, sustuli, sublato: *to lift, raise, take away,*
tutus, 3: *sure, watchful, cautious, 27, l; 56* (114, b
animus, 2: *spirit, mind, thought*
incedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to walk, proceed*

6. *We heard that Diomedes and Theoctistus wrote*
something of this art; if you come across them, make
a summary of them. Perhaps you will also find some
others, by which your knowledge may further be in-
creased.

excerpo, 3, -psi, -ptum: *to pick or gather out, 108, b*
porro: *further; [potius: rather]*
augeo, -xi, -ctum: *to augment, 120, c, 2*

56. GEORGIUS FLORENTIUS GREGORIUS

St. Gregory of Tours (Native Gaul)

544-593 A.D.

Course 65

HISTORY OF THE FRANKS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Decedente atque immo potius pereunte ab urbi-
bus Gallicanis liberalium cultura litterarum ingemisce-
bant saepius plerique dicentes: "Vae diebus nostris,
quia periit studium litterarum a nobis."

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Decedente atque immo potius pereunte ab urbi-
bus Gallicis liberalium cultura litterarum ingemiscebant
saepius plerique dicentes: "Vae diebus nostris, quia
periit studium litterarum a nobis."

EX HISTORIA FRANCORUM.

VOCABULARY

1. decedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to go forth, cease, de-*
immo: *even* (*decline, 114, a*

potius: *rather, 28, f*

pereo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to perish, 42, 3; 114, a*

urbs, -bis, f: *town, city*

Gall(ican) us, 3 (*fr. Gallus, 2, Gaul*): *Frank, Gaulish,*
liberalis, 2: *liberal, noble, generous* (*French, 49, t*

cultura, 1 (*fr. colo, 3, colui, cultum, to cultivate*):
culture, pursuist, 49, a

ingemisco, 3, -mui, -, (*fr. gemo, 3, -mui, -mitum, to*

TRANSLATION

1. *As the pursuit of the liberal sciences was de-*
clining and even perishing in the cities of the Franks,
very many often bewailed it, saying: "Woe to our
days, because the study of literature has perished
from our midst."

groan): *to sigh, groan, 49, k*

plerusque, 3: *very many; plerumque: mostly*

saepe: *often, 28, f*

vae: *woe, 52, c*

HISTORY OF THE FRANKS

2. Illicitus stimulis, quod a nostris fari plerumque miratus sum, scripturus bella prius veniam legentibus precor, si aut in litteris aut in syllabis grammaticam artem excessero, de qua adplene non sum imbutus.

2. Illectus stimulis, quod nostri me plerumque facundum mirentur, scripturusque bella prius veniam a legentibus precor, si aut in litteris aut in syllabis discedam a grammatica arte, qua non sum plene imbutus.

Attalus

3. Theudericus vero et Childebertus foedus inierunt et dato sibi sacramento, ut nullus contra alium moveretur, obsidesque ab invicem acceperunt, quo facilius firmarentur, quae fuerant dicta.

3. Theudericus et Childebertus foedus inierunt, et dato jurejurando, ut neuter contra alterum ageret, obsides, quo magis pacta firmarentur, invicem acceperunt.

4. Multi tunc filii senatorum in hac obsidione dati sunt; sed orto iterum inter reges scandalum, ad servitium publicum sunt addicti, et quicumque eos ad custodiendum accepit. Multi tamen ex eis per fugam lapsi in patriam redierunt, nonnulli in servitio sunt retenti.

4. Multi tunc filii senatorum obsides orta mox inter reges dissensione ad publicum addicti sunt servitium, et cives acceperunt eos custodiendos. Multi ex eis dilapsi in patriam redierunt nonnullis tantum in servitio retentis.

EX HISTORIA FRANCORUM.

VOCABULARY

2. illicio, 3, -lexi, -lectum: to allure, seduce, draw, [illicitus; illicit] (40)
stimulus, 2: goad, incentive
facundus, 3 (fr. fari; to say, speak, 44, 11): eloquent, 49, h
[miro, 1, obs. for:] miror, 1: to wonder, admire
prius, before, 27, g
venia, 1: grace, pardon, forgiveness
precor, 1: to beg, entreat, pray
aut—aut: either—or
[excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go away, exceed]

TRANSLATION

2. Moved by the thought that our people in general admire my eloquence, I (who am) about to describe our wars, first beg pardon of my readers, if either in orthography or in inflections I fail against the grammatical rules, in which I am not fully versed.

discedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to break the rank, fail against, 32, e
ars, artis, f: trade, art, discipline, rule, 90
plenus, 3: full, 28, a
inbuo, 3, -bui, -butum: to put on, endow, instruct

Attalus.

3. Theudericus, 2 and Childbertus, 2, sons of Clovis, the king of the Franks
foedus (-deris, n) inire: to make a treaty, enter into an alliance, 61, a
jusjurandum dare: to promise on oath, to swear, 114, b
[sacramentum, 2: engagement, oath; sacramentum dicere: to swear]
neuter, 3: neither of the two; alter, 3: the other; [alius, 3: an-other], 30, k

3. Theuderic and Childebert made a treaty, and having sworn not to act against one another, each took hostages to confirm their agreement still more.

4. senator, -is, m: senator
rior, 4, ortum: to rise, 114, b
dissensio, -onis, f (fr. dissentio, 4, -nsi, -nsum, disagree): disagreement, dissension, 49, a
[scandalum, 2, Greek: scandal]
servitium, 2 (fr. servio, 4, to serve, 80, l): service, addico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: to award, to assign (49, f) [quicumque, 3: whosoever]
civis, is, m: citizen
custodio, 4: to guard, watch, keep, 118
fuga, 1, (fr. fugio, 3, fugi, fugiturus, to flee): flight, 49, a

obses, -sidis, m: hostage; [obsidio, -nis, f: blockade]
pactum, 2 (fr. paciscor, 3, pactum, to agree, stipulate): agreement
firmo, 1: to strengthen, confirm, 130
invicem: mutually

4. Now, many of the senators' sons (who had become) hostages were assigned to public service after a dissension of the kings, and the citizens took them under their guard. Many of them, dispersed by flight, returned to their fatherland, and only a few remained in slavery.

dilabor, 3, -lapsum: to glide apart, disperse, (intransi-
patria, 1: fatherland (tive) 36, c
redeo, 4, -ire, -ivi, -itum: to go back, 42, 3
retineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to retain, 114, b

HISTORY OF THE FRANKS

5. Inter quos Attalus, nepos beati Gregorii Lingonici episcopi ad publicum servitium mancipatus est custosque equorum destinatus. Erat enim intra Trevirici termini territorio cuidam Barbaro serviens.

6. Denique beatus Gregorius ad inquirendum eum pueros destinavit, qui inventum obtulerunt homini munera. Sed respuit ea dicens: Hic tali generatione decem auri libras redimi debet.

7. Quibus redeuntibus Leo quidam ex coquina domini sui ait: Utinam me permitteres et forsitan ego poteram eum reducere de captivitate. Gavisus autem domino directus venit ad locum voluitque puerum clam abstrahere, sed non potuit.

8. Tunc locatum secum hominem quendam ait: "Veni mecum et venunda me in domo Barbari illius, sitque tibi lucrum pretium meum, tantum liberio rem"

5. Inter quos Attalus, nepos beati Gregorii, Lingonum episcopi ad privatum servitium mancipatus est custosque equorum destinatus. Eratque cuidam Barbaro serviens in territorio Trevirorum.

6. His cognitis beatus Gregorius ad eum inquirendum pueros constituit, qui eo invento munera hero ejus obtulerunt. Qui autem rejecit ea dicens eum tanti generis decem auri libris esse redimendum.

7. Pueris itaque reversis Leo coquus episcopi: Utinam me mittas, inquit; ego certissime reducere eum potero ex captivitate. Missusque a laeto episcopo venit coquus ad locum et clam voluit puerum abstrahere, sed non potuit.

8. Tunc conducens sibi hominem ait ei: Veni mecum et venunda me in domo Barbari istius, sitque tibi lucrum pretium meum, tantum liberum aditum

EX HISTORIA FRANCORUM.

VOCABULARY

5. Attalus, 2: uncle of St. Gregory of Tours
nepos, -potis, m: grandchild, nephew
Lingones, -num, m: the people of Langres
St. Gregorius, 2; the uncle of Attalus and great grandfather of the author
episcopus, 2, Greek: superintendent, bishop
mancipo, 1: to purchase
custos, -todis, m: guardian, watchman

6. cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: to perceive, notice, learn, 114, b
inquiero, 3, -isivi, -isitum: to seek for, search, find, 118
puer, 2: boy, servant
constituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: to place, establish, order
invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to find, 114, b
munus, -neris, n: office, gift
herus, 2: master, owner, lord
[respuo, 3, -pui, -putum: to spit back, reject, refuse]
genus, -neris, n: birth, nation, race, gender, 67, d

7. coquus, 2: cook
[coquina, 1, arch. for culina, 1: kitchen]
utinam: would that, 105
[forsitan: perhaps]
reduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to lead or bring back
captivitas, -tatis, f, (fr. captivus, 2, captive): captivity
laetus, 3: rejoicing, glad (ity, 49, u)
[gaudeo, 2, -, gavisum: to rejoice], 31, d
clam: secretly

8. [loco, 1: to place, let out, lend]
conduco, 3, -duxi, -ctum: to bring together, hire, 36, a
venundo, 1: to sell; sitque, 106
lucrum, 2: gain, profit
pretium, 2: price
liber, -era, -erum: free

TRANSLATION

5. Among them was Attalus the nephew of St. Gregory, the bishop of Langres, sold for private service and assigned as a watchman of horses. He served a Barbarian in the territory of Treves.

destino, 1: to fix firmly, destine, settle
territorium, 2: territory, land belonging to a town
Treviri, -rorum, m: inhabitant of Treves

6. Having learned this, St. Gregory ordered his servants to search for him. When (they) found him, they offered a gift to his owner, but he rejected it, saying that a man of such a race must be ransomed by ten pounds of gold.

[generatio, -nis, f: begetting, generation]
decem: ten, 29, a
libra, 1: balance, pound
redimo, 3, -emi, -emptum: to buy back, ransom, redeem, 111, c

7. After the bishop's servants (had) returned, Leo, his cook, said: "Would that you would send me; I certainly shall be able to bring him back from his captivity." (After) the cook (had been) sent by the joyful bishop, (he) came to that place, and tried to draw the youth away secretly; but he could not.

abstraho, 3, -traxi, -ctum: to draw away

8. Therefore, he hired a man saying to him: "Come with me and sell me in the house of that Barbarian; then keep the price of me for your reward; may I

aditus, 4 (fr. adire, to go to): access, entrance

56. GEORGIUS FLORENTIUS GREGORIUS

544- 593 A.D.

Course 65

HISTORY OF THE FRANKS

aditum habeam faciendi *id*, quod decrevi.

habeam faciendi, quod decrevi.

9. *Accepta vero sacramenta homo ille abiit et venditum duodecim aureis discessit. Sciscitatus autem emptor rudi famulo, quid operis sciret respondit: In omnibus, quae manducari debent in mensis dominorum, valde scitus sum operari.*

9. *Jurejurando accepto homo conductus adivit Barbarum et coquo duodecim aureis vendito discessit. Emptori tunc sciscitanti, quid operum nosset, rudis famulus respondit se omnibus praeparandis, quae ad mensam dominorum manducarentur, peritissimum esse.*

EX HISTORIA FRANCORUM.

VOCABULARY

habeam, 103

decerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum: *to decide, purpose, plan*

9. *jusjurandum* (2, n) *accipere*: *to take on oath, duodecim: twelve, 29, a* (114, b

aureus, 3 (*fr. aurum*, 2, *gold*): *golden; aureus (nummus): gold coin, 89*

vendo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to sell, 114, b*

discedo, 3. -cessi, -cessum: *to go asunder, or away, depart, leave*

emptor, -ris, m (*fr. emo*, 3, *emi, emptum, to buy*): *purchaser, buyer*

sciscitor, 1: *to inquire, interrogate*

rudis, 2: *rough, fresh*

famulus, 2: *servant*

respondeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: *to answer, 80, o; 57, 4*

TRANSLATION

have only a free access to accomplish what I have planned.

9. *Giving his oath, the hired man went to the Barbarian, and after selling the cook for twelve pieces of gold, he left. When the purchaser inquired what kind of work the new servant was familiar with, he answered that he was very expert in preparing all things which are to be eaten at the table of the masters.*

[*operor*, 1: *to work*]: *praeparo*, 1: *to prepare*

manduco, 1: *to eat, 133, a*

[*valde*: *very much*]

peritus, 3: *experienced, skillful, expert (with the gen.*

[*scitus*, 3 (*fr. scio*, 4, *to know*): *known*] (or *abl.*)

57. SANCTUS GREGORIUS MAGNUS

St. Gregory the Great

550-604 A.D.

Course 66

HOMILIES

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. *Sancti Evangelii, fratres carissimi, aperta vobis est lectio recitata; sed, ne aliquibus ipsa ejus planities alta fortasse videatur, eam sub brevitate transcurrimus, quatenus ejus expositio ita nescientibus fiat cognita, ut tamen scientibus non sit onerosa.*

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. *Sancti Evangelii, fratres carissimi, aperta vobis est lectio recitata; sed, ne aliquibus ipsa ejus planities alta fortasse videatur, eam sub brevitate transcurrimus, quatenus ejus expositio ita nescientibus fiat cognita, ut tamen scientibus non sit onerosa.*

HOMILIAE.

VOCABULARY

1. *Evangelium*, 2, *Greek: good tidings, Gospel aperio*, 4, -rui, -rum: *to uncover, open, 36, b lectio*, -nis, f (*fr. lego*, 3, -gi, -lectum, *to read*): *les-recito*, 1: *to read aloud, recite, 36, b* (son, 49, a *planities*, 5 (*fr. planus*, 3, *level*): *plane, 49, u brevitatis*, -tatis, f (*fr. brevis*, 2, *short*): *brevity, conciseness; sub brevi: briefly, 49, u*

transcurro, 3, -curri, -rsum: *to run or hasten or run over, peruse*

quatenus for ut eatenus: thus, so far, so that, 130, elegantly used for ut, when a second ut follows

expositio, -nis, f (*fr. expono*, 3, -sui, -ositum, *to expose*): *exposition, 49, u*

TRANSLATION

1. *The text of the Holy Gospel (quoted to you), my dear Brethren, is clear; yet, lest its tenor may perhaps seem too high for some, we peruse it in a brief manner, so that its exposition may be made known to those who did not grasp it, and yet not burdensome to those who have already perceived it.*

scio, 4: *to know, learn, 36, a*

nescio, 4: *not to know, not to perceive, 36, a* ...

cognosco, 3, -novi, -nitum: *to know, 36, b*

onerosus, 3 (*fr. onus*, -neris, n, *burden*): *burdensome, 49, t*

HOMILIES

2. Dominus dicit: Sint lumbi vestri praecincti. Lumbos enim praecingimus, cum carnis luxuriam per continentiam coarctamus.

Sed, quia *minus est* mala non agere, nisi etiam quisque studeat et bonis operibus insudare, protinus additur: Et lucernae ardentes in manibus vestris.

3. Lucernas quippe ardentes in manibus tenemus, cum per bona opera proximis nostris lucis exempla monstramus.

De quibus profecto operibus Dominus dicit: Luceat lux vestra coram hominibus, ut videant opera vestra bona et glorificent Patrem vestrum, qui in caelis est. (*Hom. XIII.*)

4. Lectio sancti Evangelii, fratres carissimi, sollicite considerare nos admonet, ne nos, qui plus ceteris in hoc mundo accepisse *aliquid* cernimur, ab Auctore mundi *gravius* inde judicemur.

Cum enim augentur dona, rationes etiam crescunt donorum.

5. Tanto ergo esse humilior atque ad serviendum

2. Dominus dicit: Sint lumbi vestri praecincti. Lumbos enim praecingimus, cum carnis luxuriam per continentiam coarctamus.

Sed, quia non *sufficit* mala non agere, nisi quisque etiam studeat et bonis operibus insudare, protinus additur: Et lucernae ardentes in manibus vestris.

3. Lucernas quippe ardentes in manibus tenemus, cum per bona opera proximis nostris lucis exempla monstramus.

De quibus profecto operibus Dominus dicit: Luceat lux vestra coram hominibus, ut videant opera vestra bona et glorificent Patrem vestrum, qui in caelis est.

4. Lectio sancti Evangelii, fratres carissimi, sollicite considerare nos admonet, ne nos, qui plus ceteris in hoc mundo accepisse cernimur, ab Auctore mundi *inde detrimento* judicemur.

Cum enim augentur dona, rationes etiam crescunt donorum.

5. Tanto ergo esse humilior atque ad serviendum

HOMILIAE.

VOCABULARY

2. lumbus, 2: *loin*; sint, 106
praecingo, 3, -nxi, -ctum: *to gird*, 36, b
luxuria, 1: *pleasure, luxury*
coar(c)to, 1: *to confine, repress*
continentia, 1: *continence, moderation*
sufficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to imbue, suffice, be sufficient*
insudo, 1: *to sweat at, apply oneself to*, 109, b, d; 79
protinus: *on the spot, without delay*

3. ardeo, 1, arsi, arsum: *to burn, glow*
teneo, 2, -nui, -ntum: *to hold*
proximus, 3: *near by, next, neighbor*, 27, g
lux, lucis, f: *light*
exemplum, 2: *example*
monstro, 1: *to show, point out; cum*, 126, d
profecto, *indeed, truly, really*
coram: *before*, 50, b
glorifico, 1: *to glorify*, 49, 1; 124, a

4. sollicitus, 3: *anxious, careful*, 28, a
ceterus, 3: *the other, the rest*
cerno, 3, crēvi, cretum: *to separate; in passive: to gravis*, 2: *heavy, severe* (*seem*)
judico, 1: *to judge*, 124, a
inde: *hence, thereupon*
detrimentum, 2 (*fr. detero*, 3, -trivi, -tritum, *to rub off*): *damage*
augeo, 2, auxi, auctum: *to cause increase, or en-*
crēscō, 3, crēvi, crētum: *to increasē* (*hance*, 126, d)

5. tanto—quanto: *as—so*
humilis, 2: *low, humble*

TRANSLATION

2. The Lord said: "Let your loins be girded;" for we gird our loins when we repress the luxury of the flesh by continence.

Furthermore, because to do no evil is insufficient unless one applies oneself to perform also good deeds, these words are immediately added: "And let burning lamps be in your hands."

lucerna, 1: *lamp*

3. Indeed, we hold burning lamps in our hands, when through good deeds we show the example of (divine) light to our neighbors.

In fact, concerning these deeds the Lord said: "Let your light shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in Heaven."

4. The lesson of the Gospel, dearly beloved Brethren, exhorts us to consider carefully, lest we who seem to have received more than others in this world, be judged for that reason with detriment by the Author of the world.

For as the gifts are enhanced, so the accounts also increase.

donum, 2: *gift*

5. Hence the more one sees himself indebted in render-

servio, 4: *to serve*, 80, l

GLASS

cet. Cujus origo haec fuit. In parte Syriae, quae Phoenice vocatur, finitima Judaeae circa radices montis Carmeli palus est, ex qua nascitur Belus amnis quinque milium passuum spatio in mare fluens iuxta Ptolomaidem, cujus arenae de torrente fluctu sordibus eluuntur.

2. Hic fama est pulsa nave mercatorum nitri, cum sparsim per litus epulas pararent, nec essent pro ad-tollendis vasis lapides, glebas nitri e nave subdiderunt; quibus accensis, permixta arena litoris, translucetes novi liquoris fluxisse rivos: et hanc fuisse originem vitri.

3. Mox, ut est, ingeniosa sollertia non fuit contenta

TRANslucet.* Cujus origo haec fuit. In parte Syriae, quae Phoenice vocatur, finitima Judaeae circa radices montis Carmeli est palus, ex qua Belus amnis nascitur trans quinque milium passuum spatium in mare iuxta Ptolomaidem fluens, cujus arena lento fluctu e sordibus eluitur.

2. Fama est nave mercatorum nitri appulsa, cum ibi sparsim per litus cibos pararent, nec pro suffulcendis vasis lapides haberent, et sic glebas nitri e nave subderent, in igne nitro fervente permixtaque arena littoris translucentem novi liquoris massam fluxisse fortuito quippe procreatam materiam vitri.

3. Mox, ut assolet, ingeniosa solertia non fuit con-

DE VITRO.

VOCABULARY

transluceo, 2, -luxi, -: to shine across, be translucent, be pervious, 79

origo, -ginis, f: origin, 23, II

Syria, 1, a country in Asia Minor

Phoenice, 1, (19, c) or Phoenica, 1 or Phoenicia, 1

finitimus, 3: neighboring, adjacent, 78

Judaea, 1, the native country of the Jews

circa: around, near, 50, a

radix, -icis, f: root, stem, foot

mons, -ntis, m: mount, 23, II, b

Carmelus, 2: Mount Carmel

palus, -udis, f: swamp, 23, II

Belus, 2: Belus, a slow river "lentus fluvius," (Pliny)

[torrens, -ntis: rushing]

amnis, -is, m: river, rivulet, 23, I

nascor, 3, natum: to be born

passus, 4: pace, two steps, five feet; mille passus: one spatium, 2: space, distance (mile)

2. fama, 1: talk, tradition, story, 57, 4

appello, 3, -puli, -pulum: to drive to, 114, b

navis, -is, f: ship; navem appello: to land

mercator, -is, m (fr. mercor, 1, to buy): merchant, nitrum, 2: natron, native soda (dealer

sparsim (fr. spargo, 3, -rsi, -rsum, to scatter): scattered, 28, c

lit(t)us, littoris, n: sea shore, coast, 23, III

per: through, over, along, 50, a

cibus, 2: food; [epula, 1: banquet, feast]

paro, 1: to prepare, 125, a

suffulcio, 4, -lsi, -ltum: to support, (under) prop, 118 [attollo, 3, -, -, to lift up]

vas, -sis, n, pl. vasa, -orum: vessel, vase, pot

gleba, 1: lump, clod

subdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to put or place under, 125, a

[accendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to kindle]

ignis, -nis, m: fire, 23, I

3. ut assolet, solitum est: as it is usual

ingeniosus, 3, (fr. ingenium, 2, talent): acute, ingenious, 49, t

* His queer inventiveness: VI-TRA (vitra) is the pl. of VITRUM

TRANSLATION

is pervious to the sight. Its origin is as follows: In the region of Syria which is called Phoenicia, adjacent to Judaea, at the foot of Mount Carmel, there is a swamp, out of which springs the rivulet Belus which flows through the distance five miles into the sea at Ptolemais; by its sluggish flow the sand of this river is washed out from the dirt.

mare, -is, n: sea, 22, f; 23, III

fluctus, 4 (fr. fluo, 3, fluxi, -uctum: to flow): flow juxta: at, 50, a

Ptolemais, -idis, f, a city name

arena, 1: sand

sordes, -dis, f: dirt, filth, 23, II

lentus, 3: slow

fluctus, 4, (fr. fluo): a flowing, 93, a

eluo, 3, -ui, -lutum: to wash out

2. The story has it, that, when (once upon a time) natron dealers landed there and scattered along the coast to prepare their food, (and as they) had no stone to prop up their pots, they placed under them natron lumps from their ships; now out of their lumps, glowing in the fire, and mingled with the river sand, there flowed a new translucent liquid mass, the material of glass, invented by chance.

ferveo, 2, -rbui, -: to boil, seethe, glow, 114, a

permisceo, 2, -miscui, -mistum or -mixtum: to mingle, 114, b

liquor, -ris, m (fr. liquor, 3, -, to be fluid): fluidity, massa, 1: mass (liquid, 49, a

[rivus, 2: river]

fortuito: by chance, by accident

procreo, 1: to produce, 36, b

materia, 1: matter, material, stuff

3. Soon, as is customary, ingenious inventiveness

sollertia: 1 (fr. sollers, -rtis, clever): cleverness, inventiveness

GLASS

solo nitro, sed et aliis mixturis hanc *artem condire* studeat.

Levibus enim aridisque lignis coquitur, adjecto cypro ac nitro *continuisque* fornacibus ut aes liquatur, massaeque fiunt.

4. Postea ex massis rursus funditur in officinis. et aliud flatu figuratur, aliud torno teritur, aliud argenti modo caelatur.

Tingitur etiam multis modis, ita ut iacinthos saphirosque et virides imitetur et onyches vel aliarum gemmarum colores.

5. Ferunt autem sub Tiberio Caesare quendam artificem excogitasse vitri temperamentum, ut flexibile esset et ductile.

Qui dum admissus fuisset ad Caesarem, porrexit phialam Caesari, quam ille indignatus in pavimentum

tenta solo nitro et arena, sed et aliis mixturis hanc materiam ornare studuit.

Levibus scilicet aridisque lignis in jugibus fornacibus arena coquitur et adjecto cupro ac nitro veluti aes liquatur, sicque massa fit.

4. Quae in officinis funditur, et sive flatu formatur, sive torno teritur, sive argenti modo caelatur.

Tingitur etiam multis modis, ita ut hyacinthos saphirosque et onyches et virides imitetur lapides vel aliarum gemmarum colores.

5. Fertur porro Tiberio Caesare quendam artificem invenisse vitri temperamentum, quo flexibile redderetur et ductile.

Hic cum admissus esset ad Caesarem, vitream phialam ei porrexit, qui indignatus eam in pavimentum

DE VITRO.

VOCABULARY

contentus, 3: satisfied, 93, a
 mixtura, 1 (fr. misceo, -scui, mixtum, or mistum, to mingle): mixture, blend, 49, a; 93, a
 orno, 1: to adorn
 studeo, 2, -dui, -: to strive, study
 levis, 2: light
 scilicet: namely, actually
 aridus, 3: dry
 lignum, 2: wood, pl. fuel, 93, a
 fornax, -acis, f: furnace
 coquo, 3, coxi, coctum: to cook, bake, heat
 adjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to add, 114, b
 4. officina, 1: workshop, manufactory, foundry
 fundo, 3, fudi, fustum: to pour, cast
 [rursus: again]
 sive—sive: either—or
 flatus, 4 (fr. flo, 1, to blow): blowing, 93, a
 formo, 1: to form
 [figuro, 1: to form (in imagination)]
 tornus, 2: lathe, 93, a
 tero, 3, trivi, tritum: to rub, turn
 argentum, 2: silver
 caelo, 1: to carve, engrave
 tingo, 3, tinxi, tinctum: to wet, moisten, dye, color
 hyacinthus, 2, m: hyacinth (dark red flower or gem)
 5. fertur, impers. fr. fero, 43, 8; 48, e
 artifex, -ficus, m: craftsman
 invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to find, invent, 57, 4
 temperamentum, 2 (fr. tempero, 1, regulate): blending, 49, e
 flexibilis, 2 (fr. fiecto, 3, flexi, flectum, to bend): flexible, 49, i
 ductilis, 2 (fr. duco, 3, duxi, ductum, lead): ductile, 49, i; redderetur, 120, c, 3
 admitto, 3, -misi, -missum: to admit, 125, a
 vitreus, 3 (fr. vitrum, 2, glass): of glass, 49, s

TRANSLATION

was not satisfied with sand and natron, but it strove to adorn this material with various blends.
 Actually the sand is heated with light and dry wood in ever-burning furnaces, and with the addition of copper and natron it melts as ore, and thus it becomes a mass.
 cuprum, 2: copper
 aes, aeris, n: ore, brass, bronze
 liquo, 1: to melt, liquify, strain
 jugis, 2: continuous, never failing
 4. This is cast in the foundry, and afterwards it is shaped by blowing, or turned on a lathe, or carved as silver.
 It is colored in many ways, so as to imitate hyacinth, sapphire, onyx, and green stones or the colors of gems.
 sapphirus, 2, f: sapphire (blue)
 onyx, -nychis, f: onyx (yellowish)
 lapis, -idis, m: stone, 23, I
 imitor, 1: to imitate, 124, b
 gemma, 1: bud, eye of a plant, gem
 color, -is, m: color
 5. Again it is related, that in the time of Tiberius Caesar, some craftsman invented a blending of glass by which it became flexible and ductile.
 This man, admitted into the presence of Caesar, reached him a cup made of glass, which he cast i-

phiala, 1, Greek: cup
 porrigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: to reach to
 indignor, 1, (fr. indignus, 3, unworthy): to be indignant, 49, l; 56; 36, c
 pavimentum, 2 (fr. pavio, 4, to pave): pavement, 49, e

GLASS

proiecit.

Artifex autem *sustulit* phialam de pavimento, quae *complicaverat* se tamquam vas aeneum; *deinde* malleolum de sinu protulit, et *phialam* correxit.

6. Hoc facto Caesar *dixit* artifice: Numquid alius *scit* hanc *condituram* vitrorum? Postquam *ille* iurans *negavit* alterum *hoc* scire, iussit *illum* Caesar decollari, ne *dum* *hoc* cognitum *fieret*, aurum pro luto haberetur et omnium metallorum *pretia* *abstraherentur*.

Et *revera*, quia si vasa vitrea non frangerentur, *melius* essent quam aurum et argentum.

(Lib. XVI. Etymolog. C. XVI.)

proiecit.

Artifex autem *tollens* de pavimento phialam et malleolum de sinu *proferens* eam *depressam* tamquam vas aeneum correxit.

6. Hoc facto Caesar artifice: "Numquid hanc *mixturam* vitri," *inquit*, "alio *novit*?" Postquam *faber* iurans *negasset* ab alio *eam* sciri, decollari *eum* Caesar iussit, ne *illa* cognita aurum pro luto haberetur et omnium metallorum *pretium* *diminueretur*.

Et *revera*, si vasa vitrea non frangerentur, *magis* *pretiosa* essent auro et argento.

DE VITRO.

VOCABULARY

tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: *to take or carry away, lift*
aeneus, 3: *of bronze, metal*
depressus, 3 (*fr.* deprimō, 3, -pressi, -pressum, *to press*
[complico, 1: *to fold up*] (*in*): *bent in*
malleolus, 2 (*fr.* malleus, 2, *hammer: little hammer*
[marculus, 2 (*archaic*): *hammer*]
sinus, 4: *bending, curve, bosom, bay, gulf*
profero, 3, -tuli, -latum: *to carry forth, take, 43, 8*

6. numquid, utrum, an, *interrogative particles, 51*
[conditura, 1: *seasoning*]

juro, 1: *to swear, affirm*
nego, 1: *to deny, 58*
decollo, 1: *to behead*
jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: *to order*
cognosco, 3, -novi, -notum: *to know*
lutum, 2: *mud*
metallum, 2: *metal*
pretium, 2: *price*
diminuo, 3, -nui, -nutum: *to diminish, 124, a*
[abstraho, 3: *to draw away*]

TRANSLATION

dignantly to the ground.

Now the mechanic lifting it up from the floor and taking a little hammer from his bosom, mended the (cup) bent in as would be a metal vessel.

corrigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: *to correct, amend, improve, mend*

6. *Then Caesar said to the artisan: Does any other one know this blending of glass?*

After the craftsman had denied on oath that any one else knew it, Caesar ordered him to be beheaded, lest gold be regarded as mud and the value of all metals diminished.

Surely, if the glass vessels could not be broken, they would be more precious than gold and silver.

pretiosus, 3 (*fr.* pretium, price): *precious, 49, t*
frango, 3, fregi, fractum: *to break, 109, c*

59. BEDA VENERABILIS

HOMILY

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Solent gentiles, qui contra Ecclesiam maledicta scripsere, impropere nostris, quod non habuerint

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Solent gentiles, qui contra Ecclesiam et maledicta scripserunt, improbrare nostris, quod non habuerint

HOMILIA.

VOCABULARY

1. soleo, 2, -, solitum: *to be accustomed, be wont,*
gentilis, 2: *of a gens, gentile, pagan* (31, d
contra: *against, 50, a*
ecclesia, 1, *Greek: assembly, church*
maledictum, 2, (*fr.* maledico, 3, -ixi, -ictum, *to curse*):
curse, disparagement
scribo, 3, -ipsi, -iptum: *to write, 32, d*

TRANSLATION

1. *The unbelievers who wrote also malicious things against the Church are wont to blame the faithful that they did not have full faith in God, for*

[impropero, colloquial for:] improbo, 1: *to blame, reproach, 79*
habuerint, 131, a; 120, c, 4

HOMILY

plenam fidem Dei, quia nunquam montes transferre potuerint.

Quibus respondendum est non omnia scripta esse, quae in Ecclesia sunt gesta, sicut etiam de factis ipsius Christi et Domini nostri Scriptura testatur.

2. Unde et hoc quoque fieri potuisset, ut mons ablatu de terra mitteretur in mare, si necessitas id fieri poposcisset, quomodo legimus factum precibus beati Patris Gregorii, Neocaesareae Ponti antistitis, viri meritis et virtutibus eximii, *ut* mons in terra tantum loco *cederet*, quantum incolae civitatis opus habebant

3. Cum enim volens aedificare ecclesiam in loco apto, videret eum angustiorem esse, quam res exigebat, eo quod ex una parte rupe maris, ex alia monte proximo coarctaretur, venit nocte ad locum et genibus flexis, admonuit Dominum promissionis *suae*, ut montem longius juxta fidem petentis ageret.

plenam fidem Dei, quia nunquam montes transferre possent.

Quibus respondendum est non omnia scripta esse, quae in Ecclesia sunt gesta, sicut etiam de factis ipsius Christi Domini nostri Scriptura testatur.

2. Unde et hoc quoque fieri potuisset, ut mons ablatu de terra mitteretur in mare, si necessitas id fieri poposcisset, quomodo legimus factum precibus beati Patris Gregorii, Neocaesareae Ponti antistitis, viri meritis et virtutibus eximii, *quod* mons in terra tantum loco *cessisset* quantum incolae civitatis opus habebant.

3. Cum enim volens aedificare ecclesiam in loco apto videret eum angustiorem esse, quam res exigebat, eo quod ex una parte rupe maris, ex altera *vero* monte proximo coarctaretur, venit nocte ad locum et genibus flexis admonuit Dominum promissionis, ut montem longius juxta fidem petentis ageret.

HOMILIA.

VOCABULARY

mons, -ntis, m: *mountain*, 23, II
 transfero, 3, -tuli, -latum: *to transfer*, 43, 8
 possent, 102, 2
 gero, 3, gessi, gestum: *to carry, accomplish*, 133, b
 Scriptura, 1 (*fr. scribo, to write*): *Scriptures, Holy*
 testor, 1: *to bear witness, testify* (Writ, 49, a

2. potuisset, 109, c
 aufero, 3, abstuli, ablatum: *to take away*, 43, 8
 mitto, 3, misi, missum: *to send, put, transfer*, 124, b
 necessitas, -tatis, f: *necessity*
 posco, 3, poposci, -: *to command, require*, 109, c
 Neocaesarea, 1, a *city in Pontus, a province on the southern shores of the Black Sea*
 antistes, -stitis, m, Greek: (*fr. antesto, 1, to stand before*): *chief priest, bishop*
 eximius, 3: *outstanding*
 cedo, 3, cessi, cessum: *to go, yield, require*, 131, c;
 tantum—quantum: *as much as* (99, c, 4

3. aedifico, 1: *to build*
 aptus, 3: *fitting, good, proper*
 angustus, 3: *narrow*
 exigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to drive out, exact, demand, re-*
si exigisset, 109, c (quire
 exigebat, 133, b
 eo (94) quod: *because*, 120, c, 6
 rupes, -pis, f (*fr. rumpo, 3, rupi, ruptum, to break*):
rock, cliff
 alius, 3: *another*; alter, 3, *the other*
 proximus, 3 (*fr. prope, near*): *next, near by*, 27, g
 coar(c)to, 1: *to confine, compress, make narrow*, 120,
 nox, noctis, f: *night*, 95 (c, 3
 genu, 4: *knee*
 flecto, 3, -exi, -ectum: *to bend*, 114, b

TRANSLATION

they were never able to move mountains.

We have to answer them that not all the things accomplished in our Church have been written, as the Scriptures testify concerning the deeds of our Lord Jesus Christ.

2. *Hence also it would have been possible that a mountain, having been removed from the earth, be cast into the sea, if necessity had required it; as we read that it happened through the prayers of the holy father St. Gregory, the bishop of Neocaesarea in Pontus, a man of outstanding merits and virtues, that the mountain withdrew as far as the inhabitants of that city needed.*

loco, 90
 incola, 1 (*fr. incolo, 3, -lui, -cultum, to inhabit*): *in-*
 opus, *indecl.*: *need, needed*, 83 (*habitant*, 49, a

3. *For, when he, wishing to build a church in a good place, saw it to be narrower than was required—the sea shore on the one side and the mountain near by on the other making it too narrow—he came at night to that place and on bended knees reminded the Lord of His promise, in order that He would remove the mountain some distance according to the faith of his suppliant.*

admoneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: *to remind*, 72
 juxta: *according to*, 50, a
 124, a
 promissio, -nis, f (*fr. promitto, 2, -misi, -missum, to promise*): *promise*, 49, a
 longe (*fr. longus, 3, long*): *far*; longe ago: *remove*,

HOMILY

4. Et mane facto reversus invenit montem tantum spatii reliquisse structoribus ecclesiae, quantum opus habuerant.

Poterat ergo hic, poterat alius quis ejusdem meriti vir, si opportunitas exigisset, impetrare a Domino, merito fidei, ut etiam mons tolleretur et mitteretur in mare. (Lib. III. Com. in Marc. C. XI.)

4. Et mane facto reversus invenit montem tantum spatii reliquisse structoribus ecclesiae, quanto opus erat.

Poterat ergo hic, poterat et alius quis ejusdem meriti vir, si opportunitas exigisset, impetrare a Domino, merito fidei, ut etiam mons tolleretur et mitteretur in mare.

HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH NATION

5. Dicunt die quadam, cum in forum multi ad emendum confluxissent, et ipsum Gregorium inter alios advenisse, ac vidisse inter alia pueros venales positos candidi corporis ac venusti vultus, capillorum quoque forma egregia.

Quos, cum aspiceret, interrogavit, ut aiunt, de qua regione vel terra essent allati.

6. Dictumque est quia de Britannia insula, cujus incolae talis essent aspectus. Rursus interrogavit, utrum iidem insulani Christiani an paganis adhuc erroribus essent implicati. Dictum est, quod essent pagani. "Heu, proh dolor" inquit. Rursus ergo interrogavit, quod esset vocabulum gentis illius. Respon-

5. Fertur die quodam, cum in forum multi ad emendum confluxissent, et ipsum Gregorium inter alios advenisse, ac vidisse inter alia venales pueros positos candidi corporis ac venusti vultus, capillorum quoque forma egregia.

Quos, cum aspiceret, interrogavit, ut aiunt, de qua regione vel terra essent allati.

6. Dictumque est eos esse de Britannia insula, cujus incolae talis essent aspectus. Rursus interrogavit, utrum iidem insulani Christiani an ethnicis adhuc essent erroribus implicati. Dictum est eos esse ethnicos. "Heu, proh dolor," inquit rursusque interrogavit, quod esset nomen gentis istius. Responsum est Anglos eos

HOMILIA.

VOCABULARY

4. mane, indecl.: morning, 114, b
revertō, 3, -rti, -rsum: to return (transitive)
spatium, 2: space, 67, b
relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: to leave
struo, 3, struxi, -uctum: to erect, build
opus habeo, (very rare), 32, e; 83
meritum; (fr. mereo, 2, -rui, -ritum: to merit): merit,
opportunitas, -tatis, f: convenience, occasion (67, d
impetro, 1: to obtain

EX HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

5. fertur, 48, e
emo, 3, emi, emptum: to purchase, buy, 117, b
confluo, 3, -fluxi, -uctum: to flow together, assemble,
venalis, 2: on sale (125, a
candidus, 3: (shining) white
venustus, (fr. venus, -eris, f: grace): charming
capillus, 2: hair
e(g)gregius, 3: admirable, distinguished, 84
aspicio, 3, -spexi, -ectum: to look, regard, view, 40;
125, a

6. insula, 1: island; insulanus, 3: islander, 49, t
rursus, rursum: again, further on
[paganus, 3: country man]
ethnicus, 3, Greek: gentile, pagan
implico, 1, -avi, or -cui, -atum, or -citur: to enfold,
heu, proh dolor: oh, alas, 52, c (endow
[vocabulum, 2: word]; nomen, -minis, n: name
Angli, -orum: Englishmen

TRANSLATION

4. And in the morning, returning to that place, he noticed that the mountain had left as much space for the builders as it was desired.

Now if he was able, so anyone else of the same merit could also obtain from God that a mountain might be raised and be put in the sea, if an occasion required it.

tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatus: to lift, raise, 124, a

5. It is related that on a certain day when many people were assembled in the forum for purchasing, among (many) others, Gregory* himself came and saw amidst other things put up for sale, boys of white skin, charming face, and remarkable also for the beauty of their hair.

Looking upon them he asked, so it is said, from which country or land they were brought there.

affero, 3, attuli, allatum: to bring (to), 43, 8; 132

6. He was told they were from the British Island, whose inhabitants had such features. Then he asked again whether those islanders were Christians or whether they were still imbued with pagan errors. He was told that they were gentiles. "Alas," he said, and he inquired further what the name of this nation was. The answer came that they were Angli (English-

* St. Gregory the Great, Pope.

59. BEDA VENERABILIS

673-735 A.D.

Course 68

HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH NATION

sum est, quod Angli vocarentur. At ille: "Bene," inquit, "nam et angelicam habent faciem, et tales angelorum in Caelis decet esse Cohaeredes."

vocari. At ipse: "Recte," inquit, "nam et angelicam habent faciem, et tales angelorum in caelis decet esse coheredes."

EX HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

VOCABULARY

angelicus, 3 (*fr.* angelus, 2, angel): *angelic*, 49, *t*
facies, 5: *face*, *figure*
talis, 2: *such*; decet, 48, *d*
coheres, -redis, *c*: *coheir*

TRANSLATION

men). Then he (*said*): All right! For they have angelical countenances, and it behooves that such should be coheirs with the angels in Heaven.

60. PAULUS DIACONUS (LONGOBARDUS), O. S. B.

735-798 A.D.

Course 39

ROSAMOND

1. Alboin rex postquam in Italia tres annos et sex menses regnavit, insidiis suae conjugis interemptus est. Causa autem interfectionis haec fuit. Cum in convivio, ultra quam oportuerat, apud Veronam laetus resideret, cum poculo quod de capite Cunimundi regis sui soceris fecerat, reginae ad bibendum vinum dari praecepit, atque eam, ut cum patre suo laetanter biberet, invitavit.

—Hoc ne cui videatur impossibile, veritatem in Christo loquor, ego hoc poculum vidi in quodam die festo Ratchis principem, ut illud convivis ostentaret, manu tenentem.—

1. Alboin rex Longobardorum postquam in Italia tres annos ~~et~~ sex menses regnavisset, insidiis suae conjugis interemptus est. Causa interfectionis fuit haec. Cum in convivio, ultra quam oportuerat, Veronae laetus resideret, in poculo, quod de calva Cunimundi regis Gepidarum sui socceri confici jusserat, reginae ad bibendum vinum dari praecepit, atque eam, ut cum patre suo laetanter biberet, invitavit.

—Hoc ne cui videatur impossibile fidem in Christo facio a me illud poculum quodam die festo in manu Ratchis principis visum esse, cum id convivis ostentaret.—

EX HISTORIA LONGOBARDORUM.

VOCABULARY

1. Alboin, *indecl.*: *Alboin*
Longobardus, 3 (*corrupt from* longibarbus, *long-bearded*): *Lombard*
postquam: *after*, 120, *c*, 6
sex: *six*, 29, *a*
mensis, -is, *m*: *month*, 23, *l*
regno, 1: *to reign*, 120, *c*, 6
insidiae, -arum: *ambush*, *snare*, *treachery*, 93, *a*
conjux, -ugis, *f* (*fr.* conjungo, 3, *to join*): *mate*, *wife*
interimo, 3, -emi, -emptum: *to destroy*, *annihilate*, *kill*
interfectio, -nis, *f* (*fr.* interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum, *to destroy*): *slaying*, *murder*
convivium, 2 (*fr.* convivor, 1, *revel*): *feast*, *banquet*
resideo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: *to sit*, *abide*, *stay*, *celebrate a festival*; (resido, 3, -sedi, -sessum: *to sit down*, *reside*) 125, *a*
ultra: *further beyond*; ultra quam: *more than*
Verona, 1, *city in northern Italy*, 21, *c*
laetus, 3 (*fr.* laetor, 1, *to rejoice*): *merry*, *joyful*, *glad*
poculum, 2: *goblet*, *drinking glass*
calva, 1: *skull*
Cunimundus, 2: *Cunimond*, *the father of Rosamond*, *the queen*
Gepidae, -arum, *m*: *Gepids*, *a Scythian people*
socer, -ceris, *m*: *father-in-law*
ostento, 1, (*fr.* ostendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum, *to show*): *to*

TRANSLATION

1. Alboin, king of the Lombards, was slain through the intrigues of his wife after he had reigned for three years and six months in Italy. The reason for the murder was this. During a banquet at Verona while he was gaily celebrating in a manner far beyond what was proper, he ordered that wine be given to the queen to drink in a goblet which he had fashioned from the skull of Cunimond, the king of the Gepids, his father-in-law, and he invited her to drink merrily with her own father.

—Lest this should seem impossible to anyone, I swear by Christ that on a certain feast-day I saw this goblet in the hands of Prince Ratchis when he showed it to his guests.—

show boastingly, 49, *j*; 125, *a*
bibo, 3, bibi, bibitum: *to drink*
cui for alicui, 30, *i*; videatur, 124, *a*
fides, 5: *faith*
quidam, 3: *some*, *certain*, *a*, 30, *i*
dari, 57, *b'*; biberet, 57, *b*
Ratchis, *indecl.*: *Ratchis*
princeps, -cipis, *adj.*: *prince*, 26, *d*
conviva, 1, (*fr.* convivor, 1, *to enjoy a banquet*): *guest*, 49, *a*

ROSAMOND

2. *Igitur* Rosemunda ubi rem animadvertit altum concipiens in corde dolorem, *quem* compescere non valens, mox in mariti necem patris funus vindicatura exarsit, consiliumque *mox* cum Helmechis, qui regis scilpor, hoc est armiger, et collactaneus erat, ut regem interficeret, inivit.

3. *Tunc* Rosemunda, dum *se* Alboin in meridie sopori dedisset, magno in palatio silentium fieri praeci- piens omnia alia arma subtrahens spatham *illius* ad lectuli caput, ne tolli aut evaginari possit, fortiter col- ligavit et juxta consilium P. Helmechis interfectorem omni bestia crudelior introduxit.

4. Alboin de sopore experrectus malum, quod im- minebat, *intelligens* manum citius ad spatham *porre- xit*; quam strictius religatam abstrahere non valens apprehenso *tamen* scabello *subpedaneo* se *cum eo* per aliquod *spatium* defendit. *Sed heu* pro dolor, vir belli-

2. Rosamunda ubi rem animadvertit altum con- cipiens in corde dolorem, *eumque* compescere non va- lens, in mariti necem funus patris vindicatura exarsit, consiliumque cum Helmechis, qui regis *patris* "scilpor," hoc est armiger, et collactaneus erat, ut regem inter- ficeret, inivit.

3. *Itaque* Rosamunda, dum Alboin meridie sopori *debitus* esset, magnum in palatio silentium fieri praeci- piens *et* omnia alia arma subtrahens spatham *ejus* ad lecti caput, ne tolli aut evaginari posset, fortiter *alligavit* et juxta consilium Peredeo Helmechis inter- fectorem omni bestia crudelior introduxit.

4. Alboin de sopore experrectus malum, quod im- minebat, *animadvertens* manum cito ad spatham *misit*; quam stricte religatam abstrahere non valens appre- hensio scabello *pedum* se per aliquod *tempus* defendit. *Ast*, *proh* dolor, vir bellicosissimus *ac* summae auda-

EX HISTORIA LONGOBARDORUM.

VOCABULARY

2. Rosamunda, 1: *Rosamond, queen, the daughter of Cunimond*
 altus, 3: *high, deep, deep-seated*
 compesco, 3, -scui, -: *to restrain, check, curb*
 valeo, 2, -lui, -liturus: *to be strong, able, healthy*
 maritus, 2: *husband*
 nex, necis, f: *violent death*
 funus, -neris, n: *funeral, death, ruin*
 vindico, 1: *to claim, assume, avenge, 111, a*
 exardesco, 3, -rsi, -rsum (fr. ardeo, 2, to burn): *to glow, 49, k*
 consilium, 2: *counsel, plan, consultation*
3. meridies, 5, m: *noon*
 sopor, -is, m (fr. sopio, 4, to put asleep): *deep sleep*
 dedo, 3, dedidi, deditum: *to surrender, devote, 125, a;*
 palatium, 2: *palace* (99, c, 4
 silentium, 2 (fr. sileo, -lui, -, to be silent): *silence, 49, f*
 praecipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to order, command, 57, b'*
 subtraho, 3, -traxi, -tractum: *to remove, take away*
 spatha, 1: *broad two-edged sword*
 lectulus, 2 (fr. lectus, 2, bed): *little bed, couch, 49, p*
 tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: *to take away, lift*
 evagino, 1: *to unsheathe*
 alligo, 1: *to bind to; (colligo, 1: to bind together)*
4. expergisco, 3, experrexi, experrectum: *to awake*
 immineo, 2, -nui, -: *to hang over, threaten*
 citus, 3: *quick, 28, a*
 strictus, 3 (fr. stringo, 3, -nxi, -strictum, to draw to-
 gether): *strict, strong, 36, b; 28, a*
 abstraho, 3, -traxi, -tractum: *to draw away*
 apprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to seize, lay hold of, 93, a*
 scabellum, 2 (fr. scamnum, 2, bench): *little stool,*
 aliqui, -qua, -quod: *some, an, 31, i* (93, a
 audacia, 1 (fr. audax, -acis, courage): *bold, 67, d*

TRANSLATION

2. *Rosamond, as soon as she realized (what had been done), conceived a deep grief in her heart; unable to overcome this, she burned with the desire to avenge her father's death through the murder of her husband, and to kill him she entered a plot with Helmechis who was the armor-bearer and foster-brother of her father, the king.*
- Peredeo Helmechis, *indecl. Lombard name*
 armiger, -geri, m: *shield-bearer*
 collact(an)eus, 3: *foster brother or sister*
 ineo, 4, inivi, initum: *to enter, 42, 3; 61, a*
3. *Thus, while Alboin was sleeping at mid-day Rosamond ordered a great silence in the palace and removing all other weapons, tightly fastened his sword to the head of his bed so that it could not be released or unsheathed, and according to the plan of Peredeo Helmechis, she, crueller than any beast, brought in the murderer.*
- interfector, -is (fr. interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to
 slay): *murderer, slayer, 49, d*
 bestia, : *beast, 87*
 crudelis, 2: *cruel*
 introduco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: *to lead or bring in*
4. *Alboin, awakening from his nap and realizing the danger which threatened, quickly stretched out his hand for his sword. Not being able to release it, tightly bound (as it was), he defended himself with his footstool for some time. But alas, this very warlike*
- ast, at: *but, however*
 proh dolor, *alas, 52, c*
 bellicosus, 3 (fr. bellum, 2, war): *warlike*

ROSAMOND

cosissimus et summae audaciae nihil contra hostem praevaleo quasi unus de inertibus interfectus est, uniusque mulierculae consilio periit, qui per tot hostium strages bello famosissimus exstitit. (II. 28)

ciae, inermis sicque contra hostem impotens interfectus unius mulierculae ultione periit, qui per tot hostium strages bello famosissimus exstitit.

My Genealogy

Eo denique tempore, quo Longobardorum gens de Pannoniis ad Italiam venit, Leupchis abavus meus ex eodem Longobardorum genere cum iis pariter adventavit. Proavus nomine Lopichis genuit avum meum Arichis; Arichis vero patrem meum Warnefrit, Warnefrit autem ex Theudelinda conjuge genuit me Paulum.

Eo tempore, quo Longobardorum gens ex Pannonia in Italiam venit, Leupchis abavus meus ex eodem Longobardorum genere cum iis simul adventavit. Proavus nomine Lopichis genuit avum meum Arichis; Arichis vero patrem meum Warnefried, Warnefried autem ex Theudelinda conjuge genuit me Paulum.

EX HISTORIA LONGOBARDORUM.

VOCABULARY

inermis, 2 (fr. arma, -orum, *weapon*): unarmed, 56
 praevaleo, -lui, -liturus: to prevail
 ultio, -nis, f (fr. ulciscor, 3, ultum, to avenge): revenge, 93, a
 muliercula, 1 (fr. mulier, -ëris, woman): little woman,
 pereo, 4, perivi, peritum: to pass away, perish (49, p
 strages, -gis, f: downfall, defeat; bello, 84
 famosus, 3 (fr. fama, 1, fame, renown): famous, re-

TRANSLATION

and eminently valorous man, who had become greatly renowned through so many defeats inflicted upon his enemies, (now) unarmed, and thus powerless against his foe, perished through the revenge of a single woman.

renowned

exsto, 1, exsiti, exstitum: to stand-out, exist, be, 32, e

Ex Mea Genealogia.

gens, -ntis, f: clan, tribe, people, nation
 Leupchis, Lopichis, Arichis, indecl. Lombard names
 abavus, 2: great-great-grandfather
 [pariter: likewise]
 simul: together
 proavus, 2: great-grandfather
 avus, 2: grandfather
 Theudelinda, 1: Theudelinda

At the time, when the nation of the Lombards passed from Pannonia into Italy, Leupchis, my great-great grandfather, of the same nation of the Lombards, came along with them. My great-grandfather, Lopichis by name, begot my grandfather, Arichis and Arichis (begot) my father, Warnefried, and Warnefried, by his wife Theudelinda, (begot) me, Paul.

61. ANONYMUS

IX Century?

Course 2

HYMN TO THE HOLY VIRGIN*

Original

1. Ave maris stella,
 Dei mater alma
 Atque semper virgo,

In prose

1. Ave maris stella,
 Dei mater alma
 atque semper virgo,

AVE MARIS STELLA.

VOCABULARY

1. ave (*Punic verb*): Hail! 47
 mare, -aris, n: sea, 22, f
 stella, 1: star
 Deus, 2: God, 20, d; in pl. dii and diis are used for:
 mater, -tris, f: mother, 22, b (dei and deis
 almus, 3: nourishing, gracious, mighty
 atque: and, and also

TRANSLATION***

1. Hail, Star of the sea,
 God's gracious Mother
 and Ever-Virgin,

semper: always, ever
 virgo, -ginis, f: virgin

* SIX-SYLLABLED TROCHAIC or tripod, accentual: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪; cf. 139, 4, c

HYMN TO THE HOLY VIRGIN

Felix caeli porta.

2. Sumens illud "Ave"

Gabrielis ore

Funda nos in pace

Mutans Evae nomen.

3. Solve vinc'la reis,

Profer lumen caecis,

Mala nostra pelle,

Bona cuncta posce.

4. Monstra te esse matrem.

Sumat per te preces,

Qui pro nobis natus

Tulit esse tuus.

5. Virgo singularis,

Inter omnes mitis

Nos culpis solutos

Mites fac et castos.

felix caeli porta.

2. Sumens illud "Ave"

Gabrielis ore

funda nos in pace

mutans Evae nomen.

3. Solve vincula reis,

profer lumen caecis,

mala nostra pelle,

bona cuncta posce (nobis).

4. Monstra te esse matrem.

Sumat per te preces (nostras),

Qui pro nobis natus

tulit esse tuum (filium).

5. Virgo singularis,

inter omnes mitis

nos culpis solutos

mites fac et castos.

AVE MARIS STELLA.

VOCABULARY

felix, -licis, 2: *happy*caelum, 2, n: *sky, heaven; in pl. caeli, -orum, m: (heavens)*2. sumo, 3, sumpsi, sumptum: *take, receive, 36, a ille, 3: that (demonstrative pronoun), 30, f ave, here as indecl. noun: greeting, ave, 16, c Gabriel, -is m, Hebrew: Gabriel, man of God, one of the seven archangels*ōs, ōris, n: *mouth, 90, or 93, a*fundo, 1: *to establish, found, 31; 108, a pax, pacis, f: peace*3. solvo, 3, solvi, solutum: *to untie, solve, 108, a vinculum, 2: bond, band, fetter profero, 3, -tuli, -latum: to bring, 43, 8, c; 34, c; 79 caecus, 3: blind*mālus, 3: *bad, evil, 26, f; (mālus, i, f: apple tree; mālum, 2: apple, fruit)*noster, -tra, -trum: *our, 30, e*pello, 3, pepuli, pulsum: *to drive away, chase, 108, a*4. monstro, 1: *to show, 108, a*

sumat from sumo, 3, see above, 106

per: *through, by, 50, a*(prex), precis, f, mostly in pl.: *prayer*qui, 3: *who, what, 30, g*pro: *for, 50, b*nascor, 3, natum: *be born, 36, c*5. singularis, 2: *single, distinguished, extraordinary*inter: *between, among, above, 50, a*omnis, 2: *all, the whole*mitis, 2: *meek*ego: *I, 30, a*culpa, 1: *sin, 90*

solutos, from solvo, see above, 36, b

TRANSLATION

*propitious gate of Heaven.*2. *Receiving that AVE from the mouth of Gabriel, establish us in peace, reversing the name of EVA .*muto, 1: *to change, reverse, 36, a*

EVA, reversed is AVE

nomen, -minis, n: *name, 23, III*3. *Loose the fetters from sinners, bring light to the blind, drive away our evils, and implore (for us) all good.*bonus, 3: *good, 26, f*cunctus, 3: *all collectively, the whole*posco, 3, poposci, -: *to demand, implore, 108, a*4. *Show thyself our Mother; through thee may He receive our prayers Who, born for us, deigned to be thy (son).*fero, 3, tuli, latum: *to bear, carry, deign, 43, 8; 57, 4*5. *Virgin without equal, meek amongst all, free us from sin, make us meek and chaste.*facio, 3, feci, factum: *to make, 34, c; 40*castus, 3: *chaste, 59, A*

61. ANONYMUS

IX Century?

Course 2

HYMN TO THE HOLY VIRGIN

6. Vitam praesta puram,
 Iter para tutum,
 Ut videntes Jesum
 Semper collaetemur.

7. Sit laus Deo Patri,
 Summo Christo, decus
 Spiritui Sancto;
 Tribus honor unus.

Amen.

6. Vitam praesta puram,
 inter para tutum,
 ut videntes Jesum
 semper collaetemur.

7. Sit laus Deo Patri,
 Summo Christo, decus
 Spiritui Sancto;
 tribus honor unus.

Amen.

AVE MARIS STELLA

VOCABULARY

6. vita, 1: *life*
 praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to stand before, give, secure,*
 purus, 3: *pure* (108, a)
 iter, -tineris, n: *way, 23, I, b*
 paro, 1: *to prepare, furnish, make, 108, a*
 tutus, 3: *secure*
 ut: *that, 124, a*
 video, 2, vidi, visum: *to see*

7. sit, *from esse, to be, 41; 106*
 laus, laudis, f: *praise, 23, II*
 summus, 3 (*fr. superus, 3*): *most high, 27, f*
 decus, decoris, n: *ornament, glory, 23, III*
 tres, tria: *three; gen. pl.: trium; dat. and abl.: tribus*
 honor, -is, m: *honor, 23, I*
 unus, 3: *one, 29, a; 30, k*

TRANSLATION

6. *Grant (us) a pure life,
 make (our) ways secure
 that we seeing Jesus
 may forever rejoice together.*

JESUS, *Hebrew, acc. Jesum, all other cases, Jesu:
 Jesus, God of Salvation, 24, d*
 collaetor, 1: *to rejoice together, 31, c*

7. *Praise to God the Father
 and to Christ most high;
 glory to the Holy Spirit:
 to the three one honor.*

Amen.

Christus, 2, *Greek: Christ, anointed*

62. ALCUIN, ABBOT OF TOURS

735-804 A.D.

Course 40

TO CHARLEMAGNE

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Domino piissimo et praestantissimo et omni honore dignissimo David regi Flaccus Albinus verae beatitudinis aeternam in Christo salutem.*

2. Ego vero Flaccus vester** secundum exhortatio-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Domino piissimo et praestantissimo et omni honore dignissimo David regi Flaccus Albinus verae beatitudinis aeternam in Christo salutem.*

2. Ego Flaccus vester** secundum exhortationem

ALBINUS FLACCUS AD CAROLUM MAGNUM.

VOCABULARY

1. pius, 3: *devout, devoted, pious*
 praesto, 1, praestiti, praestitum: *to stand before, excel,
 prove, show*
 David, indecl. (or -idis), Albinus Flaccus, *assumed
 names fashionable at Charlemagne's court.*
 Alcuin(us), 2, *Latinized from Ealchwine, an Anglo-Saxon
 name: Alcuin*

2. vester, *majestic plural, which became a form of
 polite speech also in common life*

* *Archaic form of starting a letter.*

** *Plural of majesty, transferred in the mediaeval times to persons addressed, and retained in French as a form of courtesy. Into the English language, it was introduced from ^{the} French in the time of William, the Conqueror.*

TRANSLATION

1. *To the most devoted, most excellent, and most
 worthy king Charlemagne, Ealchwine (wishes) un-
 ceasing bliss of true happiness in Christ.*

verus, 3: *true, real*
 beatitudo, -dinis, f (*fr. beatus, 3, happy*): *happiness*
 salus, -lutis, f: *welfare, salvation*

2. *According to your advice and good pleasure, I,
 secundum: according to, 50, a*

TO CHARLEMAGNE

nem et bonam voluntatem vestram aliis per *tecta* Sancti Martini sanctorum mella scripturarum ministrare satago, alios vetere antiquarum disciplinarum mero inebriare studeo, alios grammaticae subtilitatis enutrire pomis *incipiam*, quosdam stellarum ordine, seu pictor *cujuslibet* magnae domus *culmina* illuminare gestio.

3. Plurima plurimis factus, ut plurimos ad profectum sanctae Dei Ecclesiae et ad decorem *imperialis regni* vestri erudiam, ne sit vacua Dei omnipotentis in me gratia nec vestrae bonitatis largitio inanis.

4. *Sed* ex parte desunt mihi servulo vestro exquisitiores eruditionis scholasticae libelli, quos habui in patria per *bonam* et devotissimam magistri mei industriam, vel etiam *mei* ipsius *qualemcumque* sudorem.

5. Ideo haec vestrae *excellantiae* dico, ne forte ve-

et bonam voluntatem vestram aliis per *cellas* Sancti Martini sanctorum mella scripturarum ministrare satago, alios vetere antiquarum disciplinarum mero inebriare studeo, alios pomis grammaticae subtilitatis enutrire *incipio*, quosdam *vero* stellarum ordine, seu pictor *laquearia* magnae domus illuminare gestio.

3. Plurima plurimis factus *sum*, ut plurimos ad profectum sanctae Dei Ecclesiae et ad decorem *imperii* vestri erudiam, ne vacua sit Dei omnipotentis in me gratia nec vestrae bonitatis largitio inanis.

4. Ex parte *autem* desunt mihi servulo vestro exquisitiores eruditionis scholasticae libelli, quos habui in patria *mea* per *magnam* et devotissimam magistri mei industriam, vel etiam *per meum* ipsius sudorem.

5. Ideo haec vestrae *Majestati* dico, ne forte *displi-*

ALBINUS FLACCUS AD CAROLUM MAGNUM.

VOCABULARY

voluntas, -tatis, f (fr. volo, 3, to be willing): will, wish
mel, mellis, n: honey

Sacra Scriptura, 1: Holy Writ, Bible

sat ago, or satago, 3, -egi, -actum: to be very busy, satisfy

merum, 2 (fr. merus, 3, mere, only): pure, unmixed
disciplina, 1: knowledge, science, system (wine, 93, a
inebrio, 1: to intoxicate, fill full

studeo, 2, -dui, -: to strive, study, 80, p

subtilitas, -tatis, f (fr. subtilis, 2, subtle): subtlety

enutrio, 4: to nourish, bring up

pomum, 2: fruit (of a tree), 93, a

stella, 1: star

ordo, -dinis, m: series, line, row, order, 93, a

seu: as, i. e.

pictor, -is, m (fr. pingo, 3, pinxi, pictum, to paint):

3. plurimus, 3 (fr. multus, 3, much): the most, 27, e; 78

profectus, 4 (fr. proficio, 3, -feci, -fectum, to make progress): progress

decor, -is, m: grace, elegance, beauty

[imperialis, 2 (fr. imperium, 2, empire): belonging to an empire]

regnum, 2 (fr. regno, 1: to reign): royal power, 49, f
erudio, 4: to instruct, teach, educate, 124, a

4. ex parte: to some extent, a little

desum, defui, -: to be absent, be wanting, 41, 1; 79

servulus, 2, *diminit*. of servus, 2: servant, 49, p

exquisitus, 3 (fr. exquiro, 3, -sivi, -situm, to seek out):
exquisite

eruditio, -nis, f (fr. erudio, 4, to teach): instruction

devotus, 3 (fr. devoveo, 2, -vovi, -votum, to devote):

industria, 1: industry, diligence, energy (devout

5. ideo: therefore

displiceo, 2, -cui. -citur: to displease, 80, m; 124, a

TRANSLATION

your Flaccus, in the cells of St. Martin am busily occupied in providing for some the honey of Holy Writ; others I endeavor to inebriate with the wine of the ancient sciences; still others I am beginning to nourish with the fruit of grammatical subtility; while some I long to enlighten in astronomy just as a painter (adorns) the ceiling of a great hall.

painter

quilibet, 3: whoever, whatever, 30, i

[culmen, -minis, n: summit]

laquear(e), -is, n (fr. laqueus, 2, snare): panel in ceiling, ceiling, 49, r; 22, f

illumino, 1: to illumine

gestio, 4: to desire passionately

3. I have adapted myself to (very) many that I might instruct them for the advancement of God's holy Church and for the glory of your empire, lest the grace of God granted to me and your lavish kindness prove to be barren.

omnipotens, -ntis: omnipotent

largitio, -nis, f (fr. largior, 4, to impart): granting, inanis, 2: vain, useless (liberality

4. But I, your servant, lack to some extent the books of higher scholastic education which I possessed in my own country, through the kind and devoted energy of my teacher and also my own sweaty labor.

[qualiscumque, 2: of whatever kind]

sudor, -is, m (fr. sudo, 1, to sweat): sweat, perspiration; ipsius, 30. c"

5. I tell this to your Majesty lest it be not in ac-

TO CHARLEMAGNE

stro *placeat totius* sapientiae desiderantissimo consilio, *ut aliquos* ex pueris nostris remittam, qui excipiant inde nobis necessaria quaeque et revehant in Franciam flores Britanniae, *ut non sit tantummodo in Eborica* hortus conclusus, sed *in Turonica* emissiones paradisi cum *pomorum* fructibus.

6. Mane florentibus per aetatem studiis seminavi in Britannia, nunc vero frigescente sanguine quasi vespere, in Francia *seminare* non cesso, utraque enim Dei gratia donante oriri optans. Mihi, fracto corpore, solatio est sententia Sancti Hieronymi, qui *ait* in epistula ad Nepotianum:

7. Omnes paene *virtutes* corporis mutantur in senibus, et crescente sola sapientia decrescunt cetera. Et *post paululum*: Senectus vero eorum, qui adulescentiam suam honestis artibus instruxerunt et "*in lege Do-*

ceat vestro *omnis* sapientiae desiderantissimo consilio, *si quos* ex pueris nostris remittam, qui excipiant inde nobis quaeque necessaria, et revehant in Franciam flores Britanniae, *ne Eboraci* tantummodo sit hortus conclusus, sed *Turonii quoque sint* paradisi emissiones cum *arborum* fructibus.

6. Mane florentibus per aetatem studiis seminavi in Britannia, nunc vero frigescente sanguine quasi vespere, in Francia *eadem facere* non cesso, Dei enim gratia donante *in* utraque optans oriri *fructus*. Mihi *demum* fracto corpore solatio est sententia Sancti Hieronymi, qui in epistola ad Nepotianum:

7. "Omnes," *inquit*, "paene vires corporis in senibus mutantur, et crescente sola sapientia decrescunt cetera." Et *iterum*: "Senectus," *inquit*, "eorum, qui adulescentiam suam honestis instruxerunt artibus et '*de*

ALBINUS FLACCUS AD CAROLUM MAGNUM.

VOCABULARY

desidero, 1: *to desire*, 36, a
consilium, 2: *counsel, foresight, plan*
remitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to send back, allow*, 109, b
excipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to except, take up, receive*, 120, c, 1
reveho, 3, -vexi, -vectum: *to carry or bring back*, 120, Francia, 1 (*fr. Francus*, 3, *French*): *France* (c, 1 flos, floris, m (*fr. floreo*, 2, -rui, -, *to bloom*): *flower* Britannia, 1: *England*
Eboracum, 2: *York*; [Eboracius, 3: *of York*], 21, c
Turonium, 2: *Tours*: [Turonus, 3: *of Tours*], 21, c
emissio, -nis, f (*fr. emitto*, 3, -misi, -missum, *to emit*):

6. mane, *indecl. noun or adj.*: *morning, in the morning, tomorrow*, 16, c
aetas, -tatis, f: *age*
semino, 1: *to sow*
studium, 2: *zeal, study*, 88
frigesco, 3 (*fr. frigeo*, 2, -gui, -, *to be cold*): *to become cold*, 114, a
sanguis, -inis, m: *blood*, 114, a
vespere (*fr. vesper*, -is, m, *evening star*): *in the evening*, 3: *each of two*, 30, k; 96 (ning, 95
dono, 1: *to present, donate*, 114, a
orior, 4, ortum: *to rise*, 35, g; 57, b'

7. paene: *nearly, almost*
virtus, -utis, f: *virtue, power*
muto, 1: *to change*
senex, senis: *old*, 26, a
cresco, 3, crevi, cretum: *to grow up*, 114, a
solus, 3: *alone*
decresco, 3, -crevi, -cretum: *to decrease, lessen*
ceteri, 3: *the others, the rest*
[paulus, 3: *little*; paululus, 3: *very little*, 26, f]
senectus, -tutis, f (*fr. senex*, *old*): *old age*

TRANSLATION

cord with your intention eager for all wisdom, if I send some of our scholars to fetch us whatever we need and to introduce into France the flowers of England that there may be an "enclosed garden" (Cant. 4, 12) not only in York, but that there may be in Tours also paradise plants (Cant. 4, 13) with orchard fruits.

sending forth
Paradisus, 2: *Paradise*
[pomum, 2: *fruit of a tree*]
arbör, i-, f: *tree*, 23, I, a

6. *As in the morning (of my life) I sowed in England by my flourishing studies, now in the evening as my blood cools I do not cease to do the same in France, hoping by the grace of God to bring forth fruits in both. Finally, broken down in body (as I am), I find solace in the words of St. Jerome who in his letter to Nepotian says:*

frango, 3, fregi, fractum: *to break*, 114, b
solatium, 2 (*fr. consolor*, 1, *to console*): *solace*, 77
epistola, 1, *Greek: letter, epistle*

7. "Nearly all the faculties of the body undergo change in old men and while wisdom alone increases, all else decreases." And again he says: "The old age of those who spent their youth in profitable studies and meditated upon the law of the Lord day and night

adolescencia, 1 (*fr. adolescor*, 3, *to grow*): *youth*
honestus, 3: *honest*
ars, artis, f: *trade, art*, 93, a
instruo, 3, -uxi, -uctum: *to instruct, teach*

62. ALCUIN, ABBOT OF TOURS

735-804 A.D.

Course 40

TO CHARLEMAGNE

mini meditati sunt die ac nocte," aetate fit doctior, usu tritior, processu vero temporis sapientior.

lege Domini meditati sunt die ac nocte,' aetate fit doctior, usu tritior, processu vero temporis sapientior."

ALBINUS FLACCUS AD CAROLUM MAGNUM.

VOCABULARY

meditor, 1, aliquid de aliqua re: *to meditate on*
 dies, diei, m and f: *day*, 25, a; 95
 nox, noctis, f: *night*, 22, c; 95
 aetate, 84
 doctus, 3 (*fr. doceo*, 2, -cui, -ctum, *to teach*): *learned*;
 tero, 3, trivi, tritum: *to rub, smoothe, use, adorn*
 processus, 4 (*fr. procedo*, 3, -cessi, -cessum, *to pro-*

TRANSLATION

becomes with the passage of years more learned, more accomplished with usage, and more wise with the progress of time."

ceed): *advance, progress*, 84
 sapiens, -ntis (*fr. sapio*, 3, -pui, -, *to taste*): *wise*, 26, c

63. HRABANUS MAURUS (?)

776-856 A.D.

Course 23

HYMN TO THE HOLY GHOST*

1. Veni, Creator Spiritus,
 Mentis tuorum visita,
 Imple superna gratia,
 Quae tu creasti pectora.

2. Qui diceris Paraclitus
 Altissimi donum Dei,
 Fons vivus, ignis, caritas
 Et spiritalis unctio.

3. Tu septiformis munere
 Digitus paternae dexteræ,
 Tu, rite promissum Patris
 Sermone ditans *guttura*.

1. Veni, Creator Spiritus,
 mentes tuorum visita,
 imple superna gratia,
 quae tu creasti pectora.

2. Qui diceris Paraclitus
 Altissimi donum Dei; (*Acts* 2, 38)
 fons vivus, ignis, caritas (*Luk.* 12, 49; *Rom.*
 et spiritalis unctio. (*I. John* 2, 20-27) (5, 5)

3. Tu septiformis munere (*Is.* 11, 2-3)
 digitus paternae dexteræ, (*Luk.* 11, 20)
 Tu, rite promissum Patris
 sermone ditans *os nostrum*

VENI, CREATOR SPIRITUS.

VOCABULARY

1. creator, -is m (*fr. creo*, 1, *to create*): *creator*,
 mens, -ntis, f: *mind, soul*, 22, c; 23, II (49, d)
 visito, 1: *to see often, visit*, 49, j; 108, a
 impleo, 2, -vi, -tum: *to fill up*, 108, a
 supernus, 3: *above, celestial, heavenly*
 gratia, 1: *grace*, 83

2. paracletus, 2 *Greek: consoler, teacher*, 59, B
 donum, 2: *gift*
 fons, -ntis, m: *fount*, 23, II, b
 vivus, 3: *living*
 ignis, -is, m: *fire*
 caritas, -tatis, f: *love, charity*, 23, II
 spirit(u)alis, 2: *spiritual*, 149, r

3. septiformis, 2: *sevenfold*
 munus, -neris, n: *gift, charge, office*, 84
 digitus, 2: *finger, skill*; d. transversus: *inch*
 rite: *properly, duly, fitly, rightly*
 promissum, 2 (*fr. promitto*, 3, -misi, -missum, *to promise*): *promise*, 26, f
 sermo, -nis, m: *speech*, 83

TRANSLATION

1. *Come, Creator Spirit,*
visit the souls of Thy (faithful);
fill up with heavenly grace
the hearts which Thou hast made.

pectus, -oris, n: *breast, heart*

2. *Thou art called the Paraclete,*
the gift of God most high,
the living fount, fire, love,
and spiritual unctio.

unctio, -nis, f: *unction, anointing*

3. *Thou art by the sevenfold gift*
the power of the Father's right hand;
Thou art the true promise of the Father,
endowing our mouths with speech:

dito, 1: *to enrich, endow*
 [guttur, -is, n: *throat, mouth*]

* IAMBIC DIMETER (*tetrapody*), quantitative: ♩ — | ♩ — | ♩ || — | ♩ ♩; cf. 139, 4, c

63. HRABANUS MAURUS (?)

776-856 A.D.

Course 23

HYMN TO THE HOLY GHOST

4. Hostem repellas longius,
Pacemque dones protinus:
Ductore sic te praevio
Vitemus omne noxium.

5. Accende lumen sensibus,
Infunde amor^{em} cordibus
Infirma nostri corporis
Virtute firmans perpeti.

6. Per te sciamus, da, Patrem,
Noscamus atque Filium,
Teque utriusque Spiritum
Credamus omni tempore.

7. Deo Patri sit gloria
Et Filio, qui a mortuis
Surrexit, ac Paraclito
In saeculorum saecula.

Amen.

4. Hostem repellas longius,
pacemque dones protinus:
ductore sic to praevio
vitemus omne noxium.

5. Accende lumen sensibus,
infunde amorem cordibus
infirma nostri corporis
virtute firmans perpeti.

6. Per te sciamus, da, Patrem,
noscamus atque Filium,
Teque utriusque Spiritum
credamus omni tempore.

7. Deo Patri sit gloria
et Filio, qui a mortuis
surrexit, ac Paraclito
in saeculorum saecula.

Amen.

VENI, CREATOR SPIRITUS.

VOCABULARY

4. hostis, -is, m: *enemy*
repello, 3, repuli, -lsum: *to drive back or away*, 106
longe, (fr. longus, 3, long): *far*; longius: *farther*
pax, pacis, f: *peace*
dono, 1: *to grant*, 106
protinus: *forthwith, immediately*
ductor, is, m (fr. duco, 3, -xi, -ctum: *to lead*): *leader, guide*, 49, d; 115

5. accendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to enkindle*, 108, a
lumen, -minis, n: *light*, 23, III
sensus, 4: *mind, feeling, sense, meaning*, 79
infundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: *to pour in, infuse*, 108, a
amor, is, m (fr. amo, 1: *to love*):, 49, a
cor, -rdis, n: *heart*, 22, e; 79
infirmus, 3: *weak*, 26, f
corpus, -poris, n: *body*, 23, III

6. per: *through*, 50, a
(nosco, 3) novi, notum: *to be acquainted with, understand*
atque: *and (emphatic)* (*understand*, 45, 14; 106
uterque, 3: *each of two, both of two*, 30, k
spiritus, 4: *breath, air, spirit, soul*
credo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to believe (in)*, 106
omnis, 2: *in sing: the whole; in pl.: all*

7. morior, 3, mortuum: *to die*, 40
surgo, 3, -rrexi, -rrectum: *to rise*
saeculum, 2: *age, century*

TRANSLATION

4. Drive afar our enemy,
and forthwith grant us peace;
thus with Thee, our Guide, preparing the way,
let us shun all harm.

praevius, 3: *preceding, going before*
vito, 1: *to avoid, shun*, 106
noxius, 3: *harmful*, 26, f

5. Enkindle Thy light in our minds,
infuse Thy love into our hearts,
strengthening our body's weakness
by Thy eternal power.

firmitas, 1: *to strengthen*, 108, a
virtus, -tutis, f: *virtue, power*, 93, a
perpes,- petis: *continuous, throughout, eternal*, 26, d
tempus, -poris, n: *time*, 23, III; 95

6. Grant that through Thee we may know
the Father and understand the Son;
and let us ever believe in Thee,
the Spirit of them both.

7. Glory be to the Father
and to the Son who rose
from death, and to the Paraclete
for centuries of centuries.

Amen.

SENDS GREETINGS TO HIS FRIEND R.

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Desideramus quidem adventum vestrum, ut dignum est, quem jam certae litterae sponponderunt; sed suademus vigilantissima cautione tutum iter eligendum propterea, quod in regno Caroli regis nostri, novis exortis rebus impune latrocinia committuntur, et nihil securius atque constantius quam rapinarum violentia frequentatur.

2. Talis igitur est commeantium quaerenda societas, quorum numero atque virtute improborum factio evitetur, aut si necesse fuerit, repellatur. CATILINARIUM et JUGURTHINUM SALLUSTI librosque VERRINARUM, et si quos alios vel corruptos nos habere vel penitus non habere cognoscitis, nobis afferre dignemini, ut vestro beneficio et vitiosi corrigantur, et non habiti nunquamque nisi per vos habendi hoc gratius quo insperatus acquirantur. Cupio vos valere feliciter.

Loup Greets His Beloved Friend Ansbald

1. Molesti tui, quod tanta opportunitate comperta,

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Desideramus quidem adventum vestrum, ut dignum est, quem jam certae litterae sponponderunt; sed suademus vigilantissima cautione tutum iter eligendum propterea, quod in regno Caroli regis nostri, novis exortis rebus impune latrocinia committuntur, et nihil securius atque constantius quam rapinarum violentia frequentatur.

2. Talis est igitur commeantium quaerenda societas, quorum numero atque virtute improborum actio evitetur, aut si necesse sit, repellatur. CATILINARIUM et JUGURTHINUM SALLUSTII librumque VERRINUM, et si quos alios vel corruptos nos habere vel penitus non habere cognoscitis, nobis afferre dignemini, ut vestro beneficio et vitiosi corrigantur, et non habiti nunquamque nisi per vos habendi eo gratius quo insperatus acquirantur. Cupio vos valere feliciter.

1. Molesti tui, quod tanta opportunitate comperta,

CARISSIMO SUO R. IN DOMINO SALUTEM.

VOCABULARY

1. Lupus Servatus, 2: Loup, a Benedictine abbot
spondeo, spondo, sponsum: to pledge oneself, promise
suadeo, 2, suasi, suatum: to suggest (ise
vigilo, 1: to be awake, be careful, 36, a
cautio, -nis, f (fr. cautus, 3: wary): precaution, foresight, bail, 88
Carolus, 2: Charles (the Bald)
exorior, 4, ortum: to rise, rise up, 114, b
latrocinium, 2 (fr. latrocinor, 1: to practise robbery): robbery, 49, f
impunis: unpunished, 28, e
committo, 3, -misi, -missum: to connect, bring about

2. commeo, 1: to go and come, journey, travel [factio, -nis, f: making]; actio, -nis, doing, action
evito, 1: to avoid, shun, 130
aut si sit, 135, a; [si fuerit, dir. discourse, 109, a, 3]
Catilinarium, 3 (fr. Catilina,): of Catiline
Jugurthinus, 3 (fr. Jugurtha, 1): of Jugurtha
Verrinus, 3 (fr. Verres, -ris): belonging to Verres
penitus: internally, thoroughly, entirely
dignor, 1: to consider worthy, deign, be kind, 106
vitiosus, 3 (fr. vitium, 2: fault, defect): faulty, de hoc—quo: the more—the more, 87 (fective
insperatus, 3, (fr. spero, 1: to hope): un hoped for, unexpected
acquiror, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum: to acquire, get

Dilecto Suo Ansbaldo Lupus Salutem.

1. molestus, 3: burdensome, irksome, 28, a

TRANSLATION

1. As it is proper we are truly longing for your visit, which an assuring letter has already promised; but we advise that a safe way of travel be chosen with the utmost caution, due to the fact that in the realm of king Charles, after uprisings in state affairs, robberies are being boldly perpetrated and nothing is more freely and repeatedly occurring than the outrage of pillaging.

rapina, 1 (fr. rapio, 3, rapui, raptum, to snatch): pilfering, 1: to repeat constantly (lage, 49, a

2. Therefore, seek such a group of traveling companions that by their number and strength the attack of outlaws may be avoided, or if it should be necessary, be repelled. Be so kind as to bring to us the CATILINARIAN and JUGURTHINE (books) of Sallust and that against VERRES, and, if you know that we have any faulty (books) or that we lack some entirely, (bring) also other (books), that by your kindness both the faulty books may be corrected and those not had and never to be had except through you, may be so much the more gratefully, as unexpectedly copied (for us). I wish you wealth and happiness.

1. To put it mildly, I took it amiss that when such comperio, 4, -peri, comperitum: to find out, discover, (114, b

Loup Greet His Beloved Friend Ansbald

ut parcissime dicam, nihil mihi vel mandare vel scribere voluisti. *Tamen*, quamquam curam nostri tam facile deposueris, quod in te reprehendo, ipse nequamquam imitabor, sed me aspernantem pio complector alloquio.

2. Tullianas epistolas, quas misisti cum nostris conferri faciam, ut ex utrisque, si possit fieri, veritas exsculpatur. Tu *autem* huic nostro cursori TULLIUM *IN* ARATO trade, ut ex eo, quem me impetraturum credo, quae deesse *illi* Eigil noster aperuit, suppleantur. Bene vale, et tuis me semper orationibus protege.

ut parcissime dicam, nihil mihi vel mandare vel scribere voluisti. *Attamen*, quamquam curam nostri tam facile desposueris, quod in te reprehendo, ipse nequamquam imitabor, sed me aspernantem pio complector alloquio.

2. Tullianas epistolas, quas misisti cum nostris conferri faciam, ut ex utrisque, si possit fieri, veritas exsculpatur. Tu *vero* huic nostro cursori TULLIUM *DE* ARATO trade, ut ex eo, quem me impetraturum credo, quae deesse *nostro* Eigil noster aperuit, suppleantur. Bene vale, et tuis me semper orationibus protege.

To Altsig, Abbot

1. Venerabili Altsigo abbati Lupus monasterii Bethlehemitici *sive* Ferrariensis in Domino salutem.

Ingenti clementia Dei nostri discordiae peste mitigata foedus, quod inter nostram vestramque olim fuit ecclesiam, directis ad reverentissimum Guigmundum episcopum litteris studui renovare.

1. Venerabili Altsigo abbati Lupus monasterii Bethlehemitici *seu* Ferrariensis in Domino salutem.

Ingenti clementia Dei nostri discordiae peste mitigata foedus, quod inter nostram vestramque olim fuit ecclesiam, directis ad reverentissimum Guigmundum episcopum litteris studui renovare.

Dilecto Suo Ansaldo Lupus Salutem.**VOCABULARY**

mando, 1: *to entrust, order*
 parcus, 3: *sparing, moderate, 28, a*
 (velim), ut parcissime or ut ita dicam or ut dixerimus, *interjected sentence: (I wish) to put it mildly, so to say, 103; 124, a*
 reprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to catch, blame*
 nequaquam: *not at all, in no wise*
 aspernor, 1: *to despise, contemn, spurn, 36, a*
 complector, 3, -plexum: *to encircle, embrace*

2. Tullianus, 3 (*fr.* Tullius): *of Cicero*
 si possit, 135, a; si potuerit, *dir. discourse*
 exsculpo, 1: *to scratch, carve, cull out, 127, a*
 cursor, -is, m (*fr.* curro, 3, cucurri, cursum: *to run*): *messenger*
 Aratus, 2, *Greek poet, whose "Phaenomena" Cicero*
 impetro, 1: *to get, obtain upon request (translated*
 Eigil, -is, *predecessor of Ansbald*
 aperio, 4, aperui, apertum: *to open, reveal, discover,*
 suppleo, 2, -plevi, -pletum: *to supply, 124, a (120, d*

Ad Altsigum Abbatem.

1. Altsigus, 2: *Altsig, the abbot of York*
 Bethlehemiticus, 3: *belonging to Bethlehem*
 [sive: or if]; seu: *namely, i. e.*
 discordia, 1 (*fr.* discordo, 1: *to be at discord*): *dis-*
 pestis, is, f: *pest, plague, scourge (sension, 49. a*
 mitigo, 1: *to make mild, soothe, alleviate, 114, b*
 foedus, -deris, n: *league, agreement*
 ecclesia, 1, *Greek: assemblage, community*

TRANSLATION

a great opportunity was presented, you did not care to ask or write anything to me. Still, though you have so easily set aside your interest in us—which thing I reprove in you—I shall by no means do the same, but I embrace with a loving word you who are spurning me.

alloquium, 2 (*fr.* alloquor, 3, -locutum: *to accost*): *address, 88*

2. *I shall have the Letters of Cicero which you have sent me compared with ours in order that the authentic text may be culled out of both, if it be in any way possible. Now, give our messenger ARATUS as translated by Cicero, so that from this, which I trust I shall receive, those things may be supplied which Eigil has found to be missing in our (copy). Farewell, and aid me always by your prayers.*

protego, 3, -texi, -tectum: *to cover, protect, 108, a*

1. *To the Venerable Abbot Altsig, Loup, of the monastery Bethlehem in Ferrieres sends greetings.*

Now that the evil of discord has been removed through the abounding mercy of God, I have striven by letters addressed to Bishop Guigmond to renew the contact which formerly existed between our community and yours.

Guigmundus, 2: *Guigmond, a bishop of York*

To Altsig, Abbot

2. Quia vero vos amore sapientiae, cujus et ego sum avidus, flagrare comperi, *vel* secundum illud Tullii, "pares ad pares facile congregantur," et juxta *receptae* Scripturae *assertionem*," omne animal diligit sibi simile, sic omnis homo," hac epistola meam offero et vestram expeto amicitiam, ut nobis vicissim cum in sacris orationibus tum etiam in quibuslibet aliis utilitatibus prodesse curemus.

3. *Atque ut*, quod polliceor, vos exsequamini priores, enixe flagito, ut QUAESTIONES beati Hieronymi et EXPLANATIONES, praeterea Quintiliani INSTITUTIONUM ORATORIARUM LIBROS XII per certissimos nuntios ad Cellam Sancti Jodoci dirigatis exscribendos vobisque, quam poterit *celerius*, remittendos. Quos si omnes non potueritis, *et* aliquos ne gravemini destinare recepturi a Deo praemium impletae charitatis, a nobis *autem* quamcumque possibilem dumtaxat jusseritis, vicem tanti laboris.

Valete, nosque mox, ut se opportunitas obtulerit, exoptabili responso laetificate.

2. Quia vero vos amore sapientiae, cujus et ego sum avidus, flagrare comperi, *ideo* secundum illud Tullii, pares ad pares facile congregantur," et juxta *accepta* Scripturae *verba*, "omne animal diligit sibi simile, sic omnis homo," hac epistola meam offero et vestram expeto amicitiam, ut nobis vicissim cum in sacris orationibus tum etiam in quibuslibet aliis utilitatibus prodesse curemus.

3. *Nunc autem*, quod *vicissim praestandum* polliceor, vos exsequamini priores; enixe *quippe* flagito, ut QUAESTIONES beati Hieronymi et EXPLANATIONES, praeterea Quintiliani INSTITUTIONUM ORATORIARUM LIBROS DUODECIM per certissimos nuntios ad Cellam Sancti Jodoci dirigatis exscribendos vobisque, quam poterit *celerrime*, remittendos. Quod si omnes non potueritis, *attamen* aliquos ne gravemini destinare recepturi a Deo praemium impletae charitatis, a nobis *vero*, quamcumque possibilem dumtaxat jusseritis, vicem tanti laboris.

Valete, nosque mox, ut se opportunitas obtulerit, exoptabili responso laetificate.

Ad Altsigum Abbatem.

VOCABULARY

2. flagro, 1: *to burn, glow*
 congreo, 1: *to collect, gather together*
 [assertio, -nis, f (fr. assero, 3, -serui, -sertum: *to join, assert*): *assertion*]
 animal, -lis, n: *animal, 22, f*
 expeto, 3, -petii, -petitum: *to desire, long for*
 vicissim: *in turn, mutually*
 prosum, prodesse, profui, -: *to be useful, advantage*
 curo, 1: *to care for, cure, 124, a (geous 41, 1*

3. polliceor, 2, -licitum: *to offer, promise*
 exsequor, 3, -secutum: *to follow, accomplish, execute, 106*
 enixus, 3 (fr. enitor, 3, enixum: *to struggle*): *strenuous, eager*
 flagito, 1: *to entreat, ask, demand,*
 nuntius, 2: *messenger, message*
 cella, 1: *cell, the dwelling place of a monk*
 Jūdocus, 2: *Josse*
 exscribo, 3, -scripsi, -scriptum: *to copy, 111, b*
 quam celerrime: *as fast as possible, 27, b, k*
 quod si or (si autem): *if or but if, 109, a, e*
 gravo, 1: *to load, burden; in passive: to decline, 106*
 destino, 1: *to destine, resolve to do*
 quicumque, 3: *whoever, whatever, 31, i*
 dumtaxat: *only, just, in so far*
 jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: *to order, demand, 32, f; 109, a, 3*
 (vicis), -is, f: *turn, requital, retaliation, compensation*

TRANSLATION

2. *And because I have found out that you burn with the love for learning, of which I myself am very fond, so, according to the saying of Cicero, "equals are easily joined," and along with the words taken from the Scriptures, "every animal likes its like, and so do also men," in this letter I offer my friendship and seek yours that we may be of mutual help both in holy prayers and also in any other useful way.*

3. *But now, I earnestly entreat you that you be the first to carry out what I am promising for our mutual help, namely, to send to the convent of St. Josse by very reliable messengers, St. Jerome's QUESTIONS and EXPLANATIONS, likewise Quintilian's XII BOOKS ON INSTITUTIONS OF ORATORY, in order that they may be copied and, as quickly as can, be returned to you. But, if you cannot send all, don't fail at least to forward some (and you will receive from God the reward of your performed charity, and from us for so much trouble any possible return just as you bid.*

Good-by, and as soon as an opportunity presents itself, gladden us with (your) hoped for reply.

mox, ut: *as soon as*
 ut, uti, prout, prouti: *as*
 laetifico, 1: *to gladden, cheer up*

WATCHSONG OF MODENA*

Original

1. O tu, qui servasarmis ista moenia,
Noli dormire,moneo, sed vigila.
Dum Hector vigilexstitit in Troja,
Non eam cepitfraudulenta Graecia.
Prima quiete,dormiente Troja
Laxavit Simonfallax claustra perfida.
2. Per funem lapsa,occultata agmina
Invadunt urbemet incendunt Pergama.
Vigili voceavis anser candida
Fugavit Gallosex arce Romulea.
Pro qua virtutefacta est argentea,
Et a Romanisadorata ut dea.
3. Nos adoremusCelsa Christi numina;
Illi canorademus nostra júbila.

In prose

1. O tu, qui servasarmis ista moenia,
noli dormire,moneo, sed vigila.
Dum Hector vigilexstitit in Troja,
non eam cepitfraudulenta Graecia.
Prima quiete,dormiente Troja
laxavit Simonfallax claustra perfida
2. Per funem lapsa,occultata agmina
invadunt urbemet incedunt Pergama.
Vigili voceavis anser candida
fugavit Gallosex arce Romulea.
Pro qua virtutefacta est argentea,
et a Romanisadorata ut dea.
3. Nos adoremuscelsum numen Christi
Ei canorademus nostra cantica.

CARMEN VIGILUM.

VOCABULARY

1. servo, 1: *to keep, hold*
arma, -orum, n (*used only in pl.*): *tools, arms, weapon*,
moenia, -nium, n (*used only in pl.*): *city walls* (93, a
nolo, 3, nolle, -lui, -: *not to wish*, 42, 5; 108, a
dormio, 4: *to sleep*
moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: *to admonish*
vigilo, 1: *to be awake, keep awake, watch*, 108, a
Hector, is, m: *Hector, son of Priam*
vigil, is: *wakeful, watchman*
exsto, 1, exstiti, -stitum: *to stand out, exist*
exsisto, 3, exstiti, -stitum: *to rise, appear, be*
Troja, 1: *Troy*, 21, c
capio, 3, cepi, captum: *to take, seize*, 40
fraudulentus, 3: *deceitful*; *adv.*: *fraudulenter*
Graecia, 1: *Greece*
2. funis, is, m: *rope*, 93, a
labor, 3, lapsum: *to glide, slip, fall*, 36, c
occulto, 1: *to hide, conceal*, 36, b
agmen, -minis, n: *troop, army (on march)*
invado, 3, -vasi, -vasum: *to enter, invade*
incendo, 3, -nli, -nsum: *to set fire to*
Pergamus, Pergamum, Pergama, -morum: *the citadel*
of Troy, fortress
vox, vocis, f: *voice*, 93, a
avis, -is, f: *bird*
anser, -is, m: *goose*
fugo, 1: *to put to flight, chase away*
Gallus, 2: *Gaul*
arx, arcis, f: *stronghold*
Romuleus, 3 (*fr. Romulus*): *of Romulus*, 49, s
3. celsus, 3: *high, lofty*
numen, -minis, n: *divine will, divinity*, 49, e
Christus, 2, *Greek*: *Christ, anointed*
canorus, 3: *melodious*
do, 1, dedi, datum: *to give*

TRANSLATION

1. O thou who guardest these walls by arms,
sleep not I admonish thee, but be vigilant.
Whilst Hector kept watch in Troy,
Deceitful Greece did not take it.
But at the first relaxation when Troy slept,
the treacherous Simon, opened the unreliable gates.
- primus, 3: *first*, 29, b
quies, -etis, f: *rest, quiet*, 49, u; 95
dormiente, 114, a
laxo, 1: *to widen, relax*
Simon, -is, m: *Simon*
fallax, -acis: *deceitful, treacherous*
claustrum, 2 (*fr. claudo, to lock*): *bolt, bar, lock*, 49, f
perfidus, 3: *false, unreliable*
2. Sliding down by a rope the hidden troops
entered the city and set fire to the fortress.
By her vigilant voice a bird, the white goose,
drove the Gauls out of Romulus's stronghold.
For this victory a silver goose was made
and adored as a goddess by the Romans.
- pro: *for*, 50, b
virtus, -rtutis, f: *virtue, strength*
facio, 3, feci, factum: *to make*, 40; 32, d
argenteus, 3 (*fr. argentum, 2, silver*): *of silver*, 49, s
Romanus, 3 (*fr. Roma, 1, Rome*): *Roman*
dea, 1: *goddess*, 19, b
adoro, 1: *to adore*, 31, b

3. But let us adore the sublime Divinity of Christ;
let us render our melodious hymns for Him,
canticum, 2: *canticle, song*, 49, p; [jubilum, 2: *shout-*
(ing)]

* IAMBIC TRIMETER, accentual; hemistichs and rhymes in -a: ∪ — | ∪ — | ∪ || — | ∪ — | ∪ — | ∪ ∪; cf. 139, 3

65. ANONYMUS

892 A.D.

Course 24

WATCHSONG OF MODENA

Et sis in armisalterna vigilia,
 Ne fraus hostilishaec invadat moenia.
 Resultet echo“comes, eja, vigila,”
 Per muros, “eja.”dicat, echo, “vigila.”

Et sis in armis alterna vigilia,
 ne fraus hostilishaec invadat moenia.
 Resultet echo“comes, eja, vigila,”
 Per muros, “eja,”dicat, echo, “vigila.”

CARMEN VIGILUM.

VOCABULARY

alternus, 3: *alternate, by turns*
 fraus, -udis, f: *deceit, fraud*
 hostilis, 2 (*fr. hostis, enemy*): *hostile, of enemy*, 49, r
 resultado, 1: *to spring back, resound*, 106
 echo, f *Greek, gen., echus*; *all other cases, echo: echo*
 comes, -mitis, c: *companion, comrade, fellow*
 eja: *go it, come on, now for it, hurrah*, 52, e

TRANSLATION

*Keep watch in arms alternately,
 lest the enemy's fraud seize these bulwarks.
 Let the echo resound, "Comrade, hail, stand guard."
 Along the walls may the echo reverberate, "Hail, stand
 guard."*

dico, 3, -xi, -ctum: *to say*, 106

66. CHRONICON OF REGINO OF PRUEM

Died 915 A.D.

Course 42

CHARLEMAGNE AS A MONK

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Anno Dominicæ Incarnationis DCCXLV. Carolomannus confessus est suo germano Pippino, quod mente disposuisset mundum relinquere et pro amore Dei regnum terrenum deserere, ut in futura vita centuplicatam reciperet possessionem.

2. Timens Deo plenus favorem laudis humane ad Cassinum montem venit; se homicidam esse, se reum omnium criminum protestans misericordiam exposcit

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Anno Dominicæ Incarnationis septingentesimo quadragesimo quinto Carolus Magnus confessus est suo germano Pippino se mente disposuisse, ut mundum relinqueret et pro amore Dei regnum terrenum desereret in futura vita centuplam recepturus possessionem.

2. Deo plenus timens favorem laudis humane ad Cassinum montem venit; se homicidam esse, se reum omnium criminum protestans misericordiam exposcit

CAROLUS MAGNUS QUA MONACHUS.

VOCABULARY

1. qua: *as* (49, 1, a
 incarnatio, -nis, f (*fr. caro, -rnis, f, flesh*): *incarnation*,
 Dominicus, 3 (*fr. Dominus, 2, Lord*): *of the Lord*,
 49, t
 [Carolomannus, for:] Carolus Magnus, 2: *Charle-*
magne
 confiteor, 2, -fessum: *to confess, acknowledge*, 57, 4
 germanus, 3: *blood brother or blood sister*
 Pippinus, 2: *Pippin*
 mens, -ntis, f: *mind*, 88
 dispono, 3, -posui, -positum: *to arrange, dispose*
 mundus, 2: *world*; (mundus, 3: *clean, neat*)

2. plenus, 3: *full, complete*, 83
 laus, -udis, f: *praise*, 66
 favor, -is, m (*fr. faveo, m, to favor*): *inclination, at-*
tention
 Cas(s)inus, 3 (*fr. Casinum, 2, a town in Italy, now*
San Germano): *of Casinum, the name of the most*
famous monastery of St. Benedict, founded 529,
 mons, -ntis, m: *mount*
 homicida, 1: *murderer, homicide*

TRANSLATION

1. *In the seven hundred and forty-fifth year of (our) Lord's Incarnation, Charlemagne revealed to his brother Pippin that he had made up his mind to leave the world and out of love of God to abandon his earthly kingdom in order to obtain the hundred-fold reward in the next life.*

relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: *to leave behind, abandon*, 124, a

desero, 3, -rui, -rtum: *to desert, forsake, leave*, 124, a
 [centuplicatus, 3, for:] centuplus, 3: *hundredfold*

2. *Wholly given to God (and) fearing his inclination to human praise, he went to Monte Cassino; asserting that he was a murderer and was guilty of every crime, he begged for mercy and asked for a place in*

reus, 3: *guilty*, 66, b

crimen, -minis, n: *crime, fault, guilt*

protesto, 1: *to bear witness publicly*

exposco, 3, -poposci, -: *to demand vehemently*, 101

CHARLEMAGNE AS A MONK

paenitentiae locum exquirat. Probatus in omni patientia sociatus est congregationi una cum *collega*, post emensum anni circulum professus stabilitatem, conversionem morum et obedientiam secundum regulam sancti Benedicti.

3. Coepit *autem* inreprehensibiliter inter fratres conversari omnibus virtutibus pollens. Accidit autem, ut iuxta *quod mos est*, ad coquinae officium hebdomadarius deputaretur; quod cum libenter *quidem* faceret, sed in multis ignoranter offenderet, coquus vino exaestuans ei alapam dedit dicens: "Ita te fratribus deservire oportet?"

4. Cui *ille motus* placido vultu respondit: "Indulgeat tibi Dominus, frater, et Carolomannus." Neque enim cuiquam nomen suum prodiderat, ne ex *vocabulo* agnosceretur.

paenitentiaeque locum exquirat. Probatus in omni patientia associatus est congregationi una cum *comite suo inseparabili*; postque emensum anni circulum professus est stabilitatem, conversionem morum et obedientiam secundum regulam Sancti Benedicti.

3. Coepit *dein* inreprehensibiliter inter fratres conversari omnibus virtutibus pollens. Accidit autem iuxta *consuetudinem*, ut in coquinae servitio hebdomadarius constitueretur; quem cum libenter ageret, sed in multis ignoranter offenderet, coquus vino exaestuans alapam ei dedit dicens: "Itane te fratribus deservire oportet?"

4. Cui *is permotus* placido vultu respondit: "Indulgeat tibi Dominus, frater, et Carolus Magnus." Neque enim cuiquam nomen suum prodiderat, ne ex *eo* agnosceretur.

CAROLUS MAGNUS QUA MONACHUS.

VOCABULARY

paenitentia, 1 (*fr.* paeniteo, 2, *to repent*): *penance*, 49, *u*
 exquiro, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum: *to seek out, inquire*, 101
 proba, 1: *to prove, test*, 36, *b*
 associio, 1 (*fr.* socius, 2, *companion*): *to unite, associate*, 79
 [collega, 1: *colleague*]; comes, -mitis, c: *companion, associate*
 inseparabilis, 2 (*fr.* separo, 1, *to separate*): *inseparable*, 49, *A*, 1, *i*
 emetior, 4, emensum: *to measure out, pass over*, 100, *b'*
 circulus, 2: *circle, orbit, time*
 profiteor, 2, -fessum: *to acknowledge, confess, profess*

3. coepi, -pisse, -ptum: *to begin*, 45, 12
 inreprehensibilis, 2 (*fr.* reprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum, *to blame*): *blameless*, 28, *e*; 49, *r*
 polleo, 2, -lui, -: *to be powerful, able*, 83
 conversor, 1: *to converse, have conversation*
 iuxta: *according to*, 50, *a*
 consuetudo, -idinis, f (*fr.* consuesco, 3, *to accustom*): *custom*, 49, *u*
 coquina, 1; culina, 1; (cocina, 1): *kitchen*
 servitium, 2 (*fr.* servio, 4, *to serve*): *service*
 [officium, 2: *office*]
 hebdomadarius, 3 (*fr.* hebdoma, adis, f, *week*): *appointed in turns of a week*
 constituo, 3, -stitui, -stitutum: *to place, appoint*, 124,
 offendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to offend, fail* (b)

4. permoveo, 2, -movi, -motum: *to move or stir up, move*
 placidus, 3 (*fr.* placeo, 2, *to please*): *quiet, still, placid*, 4: *countenance, mien*, 88 (xid, 49, *t*)
 indulgeo, 2, -dulsi, -litum: *to be forbearing, forgive*, 106
 prodo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to put forth, give up, betray*
 agnosco, 3, -gnovi, -gnitum: *to perceive, recognize*,

TRANSLATION

which to do penance. Having been tried in every suffering, he was admitted to the community, together with his companion (who would) never leave (him); after the lapse of a year he made the vows of stability, conversion of morals, and obedience according to the rule of St. Benedict.

probitas, -tatis, f (*fr.* probus, 3, *virtuous*): *uprightness honesty*, 49, *u*
 conversio, -nis, f (*fr.* converto, 3, -rti, -rsum, *to return*): *return, change*, 49, *a*
 mos, moris, m: *custom, manner, wont; pl. morals, manners*
 obedientia, 1 (*fr.* obedio, 4, *to obey*): *obedience*

3. *Thus, he began to live blameless among his brethren, growing strong in all virtues. It came to pass, as was the custom, that he was appointed for a week to service in the kitchen; although he performed this (service) with good will, yet through ignorance failed in many things, (and) the cook, who was overheated with wine, struck him in the face, saying "Is that the way to serve your brethren?"*

[deputo, 1: *to cut, consider, destine*]
 ignoro, 1: *not to know, be ignorant*, 28, *a*
 coquus, 2 (*fr.* coquo, 3, coxi, coctum, *to cook*): *cook*,
 exaestuo, 1: *to boil up*, 36, *a* (49, *i*)
 alapa, 1: *box on the ear*
 deservio, 4: *to serve zealously*

4. *To whom he, (Charlemagne) (though) deeply moved, replied with a calm countenance: "May the Lord and Charlemagne forgive you, Brother." For he had not given away his own name to anyone, lest he be recognized by it.*

124, *a*

CHARLEMAGNE AS A MONK

5. Et cum jam tertio a coquo crudeliter caederetur, indignatus ille comes *individius*, quod tantus vir a tam vili persona tam contumeliose afficeretur, iam ferre non valens arripuit pilum, unde panis in holera fratrum mittendus conterebatur, et cum omni annisu percussit dicens: "Nec tibi Deus parcat, serve nequam, nec Carolomannus indulgeat."

6. Percunctatus, cur manus extendere in fratrem ministrum ausus fuisset, respondit: "Quia," inquit, vidi servum nequiores omnibus, virum meliorem et nobiliorem omnium, quos in terra conversari scio, non solum verbis dehonestari, sed etiam plagis affici. Iste enim est Carolomannus, quondam rex Francorum, qui pro Christi amore regnum et gloriam mundi dereliquit." Quid plura? Cognitus ab omnibus cum magna reverentia observatus est. (Chronicon)

5. Et cum jam tertio a coquo crudeliter caederetur, indignatus comes *ejus inseparabilis*, quod tantus vir a tam vili persona tam contumeliose afficeretur, iam ferre non valens, arripuit pilum, quo panis *siccus* in olera fratrum mittendus conteri solebat, et omni annisu *coquum* percussit dicens: "Nec Deus tibi parcat, serve nequam, nec Carolus Magnus indulgeat."

6. Percunctatus, cur manus extendere in fratrem ministrum ausus esset: "Quia," inquit, "vidi a servo omnium nequissimo virum optimum et nobilissimum omnium, quos in terra conversari scirem, non solum verbis dehonestari, sed etiam plagis affici. Iste enim est Carolus Magnus, quondam rex Francorum, qui pro Christi amore regnum et gloriam mundi dereliquit." Quid plura? Cognitus ab omnibus magna reverentia observatus est.

CAROLUS MAGNUS QUA MONACHUS.

VOCABULARY

5. tertius, 3: *third*, 28, a; 88
 crudelis, 2: *cruel*, 28, a
 indignatus, 3 (*fr. indignor*, 1, *to take as an indignity*):
offended
 [individius, 3 *fr. divido*, 3, *to divide*): *indivisible*
 vilis, 2: *cheap, worthless, villain*
 contumeliosus, 3 (*fr. contumelia*, 1, *insult*): *abusive*,
 49, t
 caedo, 3, cecidi, caesum: *to hew, strike, beat*, 125, a
 afficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to affect, punish, afflict*, 131,
 a; 120, c, 6
 arripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum: *to seize on, grasp*, 40
 valeo, 2, -lui, -liturus: *to be healthy, be able*
 pilum, 2: *pestle, javelin*
 siccus, 3: *dry*
 [h]olus, -leris, n: *vegetable, cabbage*

6. percunctor, or percontor, 1: *to ask, inquire*
 extendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum or -ntum: *to stretch out, ex-*
minister, -tri, m: servant, serving person (pand
 audeo, -, ausum: *to dare*, 31, d; 132
 nequam, indecl. in the positive degree: *good for noth-*
 optimus, 3 (*fr. bonus*, 3, *good*): *best*, 27, e (ing
 nobilis, 2: *noble*, 27, a
 scirem, 133, a
 verbum, 3: *word, verb*, 88
 dehonesto, 1: *to dishonor*
 plaga, 1: *blow, stroke, plague*, 88
 quondam: *once upon a time, formerly*
 Francus, 3: *Frenchman*
 Quid plura opus est, words of Cicero: *what more was*
needed

TRANSLATION

5. And when again for the third time he had been cruelly struck, his inseparable comrade, indignant that such a great man should be treated so insolently by such a wretch, (and) not being able to bear it any longer, grabbed the pestle with which the dry bread, put into the vegetables of the brethren, was accustomed to be ground, and struck him (the cook) with all his might, saying: "May God not spare you, wicked servant, nor Charlemagne forgive you."

contero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: *to rub away, smash*, 35, f
 soleo, 2, -, solitum: *to be accustomed, be wont*, 31, d
 annisus, 4 (*fr. annitor*, 3, -nisum, *to lean, strive*):
vigor, swing, 88
 percutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum: *to strike, beat, hit*, 40
 parco, 3, peperci, parsum: *to spare*, 106

6. When asked why he dared to lay his hand upon a serving brother, he answered: "Because I saw a man the best and noblest of all whom I know to dwell on earth not only dishonored by words, but even punished with blows by the most evil servant of all. (For) this is Charlemagne, formerly King of the Franks, who out of love for Christ forsook his throne and the glory of the world. What more (was needed)? (Now that he was) known, he was honored by all with great respect.

cognosco, 3, -gnovi, -gnitum: *to become acquainted*
 observo, 1: *to watch, keep, honor, esteem* (with
 observo, 1: *to watch, keep, honor, esteem*

CHRISTIAN DRAMA

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. DULCITIUS *sive* PASSIO SANCTARUM VIRGINUM AGAPIS, CHIONIAE ET HIRENAE, quas sub nocturno silentio Dulcitus praeses clam adiit, cupiens earum amplexibus saturari; sed mox, ut intravit, mente captus ollas et sartagine pro virginibus amplectendo osculabatur, donec facies et vestes *horribili nigredine* inficiebantur. Deinde Sisinnio comiti jus *super* virgines puniendas cessit; qui etiam miris modis illusus tandem Agapem et Chioriam concremari et Hirenam jussit perfodi.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. DULCITIUS *seu* PASSIO SANCTARUM VIRGINUM AGAPES, CHIONES, ET IRENES, quas sub nocturno silentio Dulcitus praeses clam adiit cupiens earum amplexibus saturari; sed mox, ut intravit, mente captus ollas et sartagine pro virginibus amplectendo osculabatur, donec facies et vestes *inopinato multa fuligine* inficiebantur. Deinde Sisinnio comiti jus *in* virgines puniendas cessit; qui etiam miris modis illusus tandem Agapem et Chionen concremari Irene vero confodi jussit.

SCENE I

Diocletianus, Agapes, Chionia, Hirena, Dulcitus, milites.

Diocletianus, Agape, Chione, Irene, Dulcitus et milites.

2. DIOCLETIANUS: Parentelae claritas ingenuitatis vestrumque serenitas pulchritudinis exigit vos nuptiali lege primis in palatio copulari; quod nostri jussio annuerit fieri, si Christum negare nostrisque diis sacrificia velitis ferre.

2. DIOCLETIANUS: Parentelae claritas ingenuitatis vestraeque serenitas pulchritudinis exigit vos nuptiali lege primis in palatio copulari, quod nostra jussio annuet, si Christum negare nostrisque diis sacrificia offerre volueritis.

DULCITIUS.

VOCABULARY

1. [sive: or]; seu: *i. e.*
 Agapē, 1 (Agapes, -is): *Charity*; Chionē, 1 (Chionia): *Snowdrop*; Irēnē, 1 (Hirena): *Peace*; *virgins, suffered martyrdom in Greece*
 Dulcitus, 2 (*fr. dulcis, 2, sweet*): *sweetly, 49, t*
 clam: *secretly*
 adeo, -ire, 4: *to go or come to, 42, 3; 61, a*
 amplexus, 4 (*fr. amplector, 3, -plexum, to embrace*): *embrace, 117, e*
 saturo, 1: *to satiate, fill; pass, satisfy, enjoy, 83*
 mente captus, 3: *insane; (oculis captus, 3: blind), 84*
 olla, 1: *pot, caldron*
 sartago, -ginis, f: *frying pan*
 osculor, 1: *to kiss*
 inopinato: *unexpectedly; or inopinatus, 3: unexpectedly, 73*
 [nigredo, -dinis, f (*fr. niger, 3, black*): *blackness*];
 fuligo, -ginis, f: *soot, 88*
 inficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to infect, taint, 40*
 comes, -mitis, c: *associate, retinue, companion*

TRANSLATION

1. *The Martyrdom of the Holy Virgins Agape, Chione, and Irene whom the governor (of Greece) Dulcitus secretly in the silence of night approached, desiring to gratify himself with their embraces, but as soon as he entered, deprived of his senses, he began kissing the pots and pans by embracing them instead of the virgins, whilst his face and clothing were unexpectedly soiled by soot. Thereupon he transferred the charge of punishing the virgins to his colleague Sisinnius; he, also being foiled in many ways, at last commanded Agape and Chione to be burned, and Irene to be pierced to death.*

cedo, 3, cessi, cessum: *to leave, yield*
 mirus, 3: *wonderful, great, 88*
 illudo, 3, -lusi, -lusum: *to mock, deride*
 concremo, 1: *to burn up, 57, b*
 confodio, 3, -fossi, -fossus: *to dig, stab, slay*
 [perfodio, 3: *to dig or pierce through*]

Scena I.

Diocletian, Agape, Chione, Irene, Dulcitus and Soldiers.

2. Diocletianus, 2, *the cruel Roman emperor, (visiting Greece)*
 parentela, 1 (*fr. pario, 3, to bring forth*): *relationship,*
 ingenuitas, -tatis, f: *free-birth, nobility, 49, u (49, a [vestrum, 67, c])*
 serenitas, -tatis, f (*fr. serenus, 3, serene*): *clearness, brightness, 49, u*
 exigo, 3, -egi, -actum: *to drive out, require, claim,*
 palatium, 2: *palace (57, b)*
 annuo, 3, -nui, -nutum: *to assent, grant, 109, a, 3*

2. DIOCLETIAN: *The fame of your noble family and the splendor of your beauty demand that you be joined in marriage to the princes of my court, which thing our command shall give voice to, if you shall be willing to deny Christ and to offer sacrifices to our gods.*

[nostri, 66, a]
 jussio, -nis, f (*fr. jubeo, 2, jussi, jussus, to order*): *command, 49, a*

67. HROTHSVITHA, NUN OF GANDERSHEIM

935-985 A.D.

Course 55

CHRISTIAN DRAMA

3. AG.: Esto securus curarum, nec te gravet nostrum praeparatio nuptiarum, quia nec ad negationem confitendi nominis, nec ad corruptionem integritatis ullis rebus compelli poterimus.

4. DI.: Quid sibi vult *ista*, quae vos agitat, fatuitas?

AG.: Quod signum fatuitas nobis inesse deprehendis?

DI.: Evidens magnumque.

AG.: *In quo?*

DI.: *In hoc praecipue, quod relicta vetustae observantia religionis inutilem Christianae novitatem sequimini superstitionis.*

5. AG.: Temere calumpniaris statum Dei omnipotentis. Periculum.

DI.: *Cujus?*

AG.: *Tui* reique publicae, quam gubernas.

DI.: *Istae contumaces nostrisque decretis contra luctantes catenis irretiantur et ad examen Dulciti praesidis sub carcerali squalore serventur.*

3. AGAPE: Esto securus curarum, nec te gravet nostrarum praeparatio nuptiarum, quia nec ad negationem confitendi nominis, nec ad corruptionem integritatis ullis rebus compelli poterimus.

4. DIOCLETIANUS: Quid sibi vult *haec*, quae vos agitat, fatuitas?

AGAPE: Quod signum fatuitatis nobis inesse deprehendis?

DIOCLETIANUS: Evidens *quippe*, magnumque.

AGAPE: *Quid tandem?*

DIOCLETIANUS: *Hoc praecipue, quod reliquentes vetustae religionis observantiam, inutilem Christianae superstitionis sequimini novitatem.*

5. AGAPE: Temere *omnino* calumpniaris statutum Dei omnipotentis: *ideoque* periculum *imminet magnum*.

DIOCLETIANUS: *Cuinam?*

AGAPE: *Tibi* reique publicae, quam gubernas.

DIOCLETIANUS: *Istae contumaces nostrisque decretis reluctantes catenis colligentur et ad examen Dulciti praesidis in carceris squalore serventur.*

DULCITIUS.

VOCABULARY

3. securus, 3, *with gen.*: safe, 66
gravo, 1: *of load, burden, trouble*, 106
nuptiae, -arum: *marriage, nuptials*
compello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: *to compel, force*

4. fatuitas, -atis, f (*fr. fatuus, 3: foolish*): *folly*,
deprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to seize, detect* (49, u
quippe: *certainly, indeed, by all means, to be sure*
tandem: *at last, at length, then*
praecipuus, 3: *peculiar, especial*, 28, a
vetustus, 3 (*fr. vetus, -teris: old*): *ancient*, 49, t
relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: *to abandon, forsake*, 114
inutilis, 2: *useless*, 49, A
novitas, -tatis, f (*fr. novus, 3: new*): *novelty*
sequor, 3, secutum: *to follow*

5. temere: *rashly, daringly*
omnino: *in all, at all, altogether*
calumnior, 1: *to slander*
[status, 4 (*fr. sto, 1, steti, statum: to stand*): *standing, position*]
statutum, 2 (*fr. statuo, 3, -tui, -tutum: to set up*):
establishment, reign
immineo, 2, -minui, -: *to be imminent, threaten*, 79
quinam, 3: *who or what then?* 30, h
gubernare, 1: *to govern, steer, direct*
contumax, -acis: *stubborn, obstinate*
decretum, 2 (*fr. decerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum: to decide*): *decree*, 26, f

TRANSLATION

3. AGAPE: *Spare yourself this trouble, and do not let the arrangement of marriages for us bother you, because we cannot be forced to the denial of a name which should be praised, nor to the defiling of our virginity by any means.*

4. DIOCLETIAN: *What does this folly which has taken hold of you want for itself?*

AGAPE: *What sign of folly do you find in us?*

DIOCLETIAN: *An evident and great one, indeed!*

AGAPE: *In what way?*

DIOCLETIAN: *Chiefly in this, that abandoning the observance of (our) ancient religion you follow the unprofitable God of Christian superstition.*

5. AGAPE: *You are boldly censuring the ordinance of Almighty God. Therefore ruin is at hand!*

DIOCLETIAN: *Whose ruin?*

AGAPE: *Your own and that of the empire you govern.*

DIOCLETIAN: *Let these contemners and opponents of our decrees be bound in chains and placed in the filth of the prison until their trial before the governor, Dulcitus.*

reductor, 1: *to strive against*, 79 (tie
[irretio, 4: *to entangle with a net*]; colligo, 1: *to bind*,
carcer, -is, m: *prison, jail*
squalor, -is, m (*fr. squalo, 2: be dirty*): *dirt*, 49, a

CHRISTIAN DRAMA

SCENE II

6. DU.: Producite, milites; producite, quas tenetis in carcere!

MI.: Ecce, quas vocasti.

DU.: Papae! Quam pulchrae, quam venustae, quam egregiae puellae!

MI.: Perfecte decorae.

DU.: Captus sum *illarum* specie.

MI.: Credibile.

7. DU.: Exaestuofuo *illas* ad mei amorem trahere.

MI.: Diffidimus te *praevalere*.

DU.: Quare?

MI.: Quia stabiles fide.

DU.: Quid, si suadeam blandimentis?

MI.: Contemnunt.

DU.: Quid, si terream suppliciiis?

MI.: Parvi pendunt.

8. DU.: Ponite *illas* in custodiam in interiorem officinae aedem, in cuius *proaulio* ministrorum servantur vasa.

6. DULCITIUS: *Actutum* producite, milites, quas tenetis in carcere!

MILITES: Ecce, quas vocasti.

DULCITIUS: Papae! Quam pulchrae, quam venustae, quam egregiae puellae!

MILITES: Perfecte *quippe* decorae

DULCITIUS: *Hercle*, captus sum *earum* specie.

MILITES: Credimus *quidem*.

7. DULCITIUS: *Pol*, exaestuo *has* ad mei amorem trahere.

MILITES: Diffidimus te *voti compotem fore*.

DULCITIUS: Quare?

MILITES: Quia fide *Dei sui sunt* stabiles.

DULCITIUS: Quid, si suadeam blandimentis?

MILITES: Contemnunt.

DULCITIUS: Quid, si terream suppliciiis?

MILITES: Parvi pendunt.

8. DULCITIUS: Ponite *eas* in custodia in interiore officinae aede, in cuius aulio vasa servantur *servorum*.

DULCITIUS.

Scena II.

VOCABULARY

6. *actutum, adv.*: *forthwith, at once*
produco, 3, -*duxi*, -*ductum*: *to lead forth, bring forth*,
papae: *Heavens, wonderful, woo*, 52, *e*
venustus, 3 (*fr. venus, -neris, n*: *charm*): *charming, graceful*, 40, *t*
egregius, 3 (*fr. grex, gregis*: *herd, flock*): *admirable, excellent*, 49, *v*
decorus, 3 (*fr. decor, -is, m*: *grace, elegance*): *grace-Hercle*: *by Hercules*, 52, *d* (*ful*, 49, *t*
captus, 3, *oculis*: *blind*; *captus oculis ejus*; *captivated by his eyes*
species, 5: *sight, form, beauty*

7. *exaestuo*, 1: *to boil up*, 35, *g*
diffido, 3, -, -*fisum*: *to mistrust*, 31, *d*; 57, 4
 [*praevalleo*, 2, -*lui*, -*lirus*: *to prevail, conquer*]; *voti compos*, -*otis*: *successful*
stabilis, 2 (*fr. sto*, 1: *to stand*): *steadfast, firm*, 84
blandimentum, 2 (*fr. blandior*, 4: *to flatter*): *allure-contemno*, 3, -*tempsi*, -*mptum*: *to contemn* (*ment*, 88
terreo, 2, -*rui*, -*ritum*: *to frighten, scare*
supplicium, 2 (*fr. supplex, -licis*: *suppliant*): *torture, capital punishment*, 49, *f*; 88
pendo, 3, *pendi*, *pensum*, (*transitive*): *to hang, weigh, esteem*, 68, *b*
 (*pendeo*, 2, *pendi*, -, (*intransitive*): *to hang*)

8. *officina*, 1: *workshop*; *pono*, 50, *c'*
aedes, -*dis*, *f*: *building, room, temple*; *pl. houses aulium*, 2 (*fr. aula, v, courtyard*): *vestibule, porch*
vas, *vasis*, *n*, *pl. vasa, -orum*: *vessel, vase*

TRANSLATION

6. DULCITIUS: *Forthwith bring out, soldiers, (the women) you hold in prison.*
 SOLDIERS: *Well, here are the ones you called for.*
 DULCITIUS: *Heavens! How beautiful, how charming, how peerless these maidens are!*
 SOLDIERS: *Beautiful, indeed!*
 DULCITIUS: *By Jove, I am captivated by their charm.*
 SOLDIERS: *That's easy to believe.*

quidem: indeed, even, of course

7. DULCITIUS: *Why, I am burning to gain them for my love.*
 SOLDIERS: *We doubt whether you will be able to.*
 DULCITIUS: *Why?*
 SOLDIERS: *Because they are staunch in the faith of their God.*
 DULCITIUS: *What if I should allure them by flattery?*
 SOLDIERS: *They will despise you.*
 DULCITIUS: *What if I should terrify them by torture?*
 SOLDIERS: *They will consider it a trifle.*

8. DULCITIUS: *Put them under guard in the inner part of the work-shop, in the vestibule of which the cooking pans of the slaves are kept.*

67. HROTHSVITHA, NUN OF GANDERSHEIM

935-985 A.D.

Course 55

CHRISTIAN DRAMA

MI.: Utquid eo loci?

MILITES: Utquid *in* eo loco?

DU.: Quo a me saepiuscule possint visitari.

DULCITIUS: *Ut* quo saepiuscule a me visitari possint.

MI.: Ut jubes.

MILITES: Ut jubes.

SCENE III

9. DU.: Quid agant captivae sub hoc noctis tempore?

9. DULCITIUS: Quid agunt captivae sub hoc noctis tempore?

MI.: Vacant hymnis.

MILITES: Hymnis vacant.

DU.: Accedamus propfius.

DULCITIUS: Accedamus propfius, *militēs*.

MI.: Tinnulae sonitum vocis a longe audiemus.

MILITES: *Tunc* mox tinnulae sonitum vocis longe audiemus.

DU.: Observate pro foribus cum lucernis, ego *autem* intrabo et vel optatis amplexibus me saturabo.

DULCITIUS: Observate pro foribus cum lucernis, ego *vero* intrabo et vel optatissimis amplexibus me saturabo.

MI.: Intra, praestolabimur.

MILITES: Intra; praestolabimur.

SCENE IV

10. AG.: Quid strepat pro foribus?

10. AGAPE.: Quidnam strepit pro foribus?

HIR.: Infelix Dulcitus ingreditur.

IRENE: *Sine, videam. Horrendum; en, infelix Dulcitus ingreditur.*

CHI.: Deus nos tueatur!

CHIONE: Deus nos tueatur!

AG.: Amen.

AGAPE: Amen.

CHI.: Quid sibi vult collisio ollarum cacaborum et sartaginum?

CHIONE: *Ast* quid sibi vult collisio ollarum, cacaborum et sartaginum?

DULCITIUS.

VOCABULARY

utquid?: *why?*
[loci, 67, c'; but in pl. used: ubique locorum]
saepi(us)cule: *pretty often, very frequently, 28, l*
quo means: ut eo, 130

TRANSLATION

SOLDIERS: *Why in that place?*
DULCITIUS: *In order that I may visit them very frequently.*
SOLDIERS: *As you say!*

Scena III.

9. vaco, 1: *to have leisure for (with dat.); be free from (abl.)*
accedo, 3, cessi, cessum: *to go to, 106*
prope: *near, 27, g*
mox: *soon (49, t*
tinnulus, 3 (*fr. tinnio, 4: jingle*): *tinkling, jingling,*
sonitus, 4 (*fr. sono, 1, -nui, -nitum: to sound*): *sound,*
longe or a longinquo: *from afar (49, a*
observo, 1: *to watch*
lucerna, 1: *lamp, lantern*
foris, -is, f: *door with one leaf; pl., door with two*
intro, 1: *to enter (leaves*
praestolor, 1: *to wait for, expect*

9. DULCITIUS: *What are the prisoners doing at this time of the night?*
SOLDIERS: *They are whiling away the hours with songs.*
DULCITIUS: *Let us go closer, soldiers.*
SOLDIERS: *Then we shall soon hear the sound of their treble voices away off.*
DULCITIUS: *Watch outside the door with your lanterns, and I shall enter and satisfy myself in their embraces.*
SOLDIERS: *Go on in; we shall stand on guard.*

Scena IV.

10. strepo, 3, -pui, -pitem: *to rattle, creak, make a noise*
sino, 3, sii, or sivi, situm: *to place, permit, let, 108, a*
ingredior, 3, -gressum: *to enter, 40*
en, ecce: *lo, behold, 52, a*
tueor, 2, tuitum: *to regard, protect, 106*
collisio, -nis, f (*fr. collido, 3, -lisi, -lisum: to dash together*): *collision*

10. AGAPE: *What is that knocking at the door?*
IRENE: *Let me see. Horrible! Lo, the unfortunate Dulcitus is coming in.*
CHIONE: *May God protect us!*
AGAPE: *Amen.*
CHIONE: *But what does that clashing together of pots, kettles, and pans mean?*
cacabus, 2: *pot, caldron*

CHRISTIAN DRAMA

HIR.: Lustrabo. Accedite, quaeso, per rimas perspicite!

11. AG.: Quid est?

HIR.: Ecce, iste stultus, mente alienatus aestimat se nostris uti amplexibus.

AG.: Quid facit?

HIR.: Nunc ollas molli fovet gremio, nunc sartagine et cacabos amplectitur mitia libans oscula.

12.:CHI.: Ridiculum.

HIR.: Nam facies, manus ac vestimenta adeo sordidata, adeo coinquinata, ut nigredo, quae inhaesit, similitudinem Aethiopsis exprimit.

13. AG.: Decet, ut talis appareat corpore, qualis a diabolo possidetur in mente.

HIR.: En, parat regredi. Intendamus, quid illo egrediente agant milites pro foribus expectantes.

IRENE: Expectate: lustrabo. Accedite, quaeso, et per rimulas aspicate!

11. AGAPE: Quid ibi fit?

IRENE: En, iste stultus, mente alienatus aestimat se nostris frui amplexibus.

AGAPE: Quidnam facit?

IRENE: Ecce, nunc ollas molli fovet gremio, ecce, nunc sartagine et cacabos amplectitur mitia libans oscula.

12. CHIONE: O, quam ridiculum!

IRENE: Eo magis, nam facies, manus ac vestimenta adeo sordidata, adeo coinquinata sunt, ut fuligo, quae inhaesit, similem Aethiopsis eum exhibeat.

13. AGAPE: Recte fit; hoc enim eum decet, ut talis appareat corpore, qualis a diabolo possidetur in mente.

IRENE: Sed, quid nunc? En, parat regredi. Attendamus, quid eo egrediente agant milites pro foribus expectantes.

DULCITIUS.

VOCABULARY

lustrare, 1: to look at
rimula, 1 (fr. rima, 1, crack, cleft): chink, 49, p
[perspicio, 3, -spexi, -pectum: to look, examine];
aspicio, 3: to look at, 108, a

11. alieno, 1: to take away, remove; mente alienor:
to go out of one's mind
[utor, 3, usum: to use]
fruor, 3, fruiturus: to enjoy, 93, b
foveo, 2, fovi, fotum: to warm, cherish
mollis, 2: soft, graceful, sensitive
gremium, 2: lap, hug
mitis, 2: mild, gentle
libo, 1: to offer, deal out

12. ridiculus, 3: ridiculous, 26, f
quam before adj. and adv.: how
eo magis: the more so, 87
vestimentum, 2 (fr. vestio, 4: to clothe): garment,
sordido, 1: to defile, stain, 36, b (49, e)
inhaero, 2, -haesi, -haesum: to adhere, stick in, cleave
Aethiops, -opis, m: Aethiōp, Aethiopian, negro (to

13. talis, 2,—qualis, 2: such—as, as
decet, 2, decuit: it becomes, it fits, 48, d
appareo, 2, -rui, -riturus: to appear, be visible, 124, b
diabolus, 2: devil, 93
possideo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: to possess
paro, 1: to prepare, get
regredior, 3, -gressum: to go back, 40

TRANSLATION

IRENE: Wait, I shall find out. Come here, I beg you, and look through the chinks.

11. AGAPE: What is going on there?
IRENE: See, the fool (is) out of his mind (and) thinks he is delighting himself with our caresses.
AGAPE: What is he doing?
IRENE: Behold, now he is affectionately hugging the pots, now he clasps the pans and kettles, giving them tender kisses.

osculum, 2 (fr. ōs, ōris, n, mouth): kiss, 49, p

12. CHIONE: O how ridiculous!
IRENE: The more so, since his face and hands and clothing have become so dirty (and) so soiled that the soot smeared on him makes him like a negro.

[exprimo, 3, -pressi, -pressum: to press out, express,]
exhibeo, 2, -ui, -bitum: to hand over, show, present, 124, b

13. AGAPE: It is right and fitting that he should appear in body as he is possessed in soul by the devil.
IRENE: But, what now? Behold, he's starting to leave. Let us see what the soldiers (who are) waiting before the door will do when he goes out.

[intendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: to extend, aim, be on the watch]; attendo, 3: to watch

67. HROTHSVITHA, NUN OF GANDERSHEIM

935-985 A.D.

Course 55

CHRISTIAN DRAMA

SCENE V

14. MI.: Quis egreditur? Daemoniacus. Vel magis ipse diabolus. Fugiamus!

DU.: Milites, quo fugitis? State, expectate; ducite me cum lucernis ad cubile.

14. MILITES: *Dii immortales! Quisnam est, qui egreditur? Ecce, daemoniacus. Vel magis ipse diabolus. Milites, fugiamus!*

DULCITIUS: *Heus, milites, quo fugitis? State, expectate; ducite me lucernis ad cubile meum.*

SCENE VI

15. DU.: Ostiarii, inducite me in palatium, quia ad imperatorem habeo secretum.

OS.: Quid hoc vile ac detestabile monstrum, scissis et nigellis panniculis obsitum? Pugnis tundamus, de gradu praecipitemus, nec ultra huc detur liber accessus.

15. DULCITIUS: Ostiarii, inducite me illico in palatium, quia ad imperatorem habeo secretum referendum.

OSTIARII: *Phu! Quid hoc, amici, vile ac detestabile monstrum, scissis et nigellis panniculis obsitum? Agite dum, pugnis tundamus, de gradibus praecipitemus, ne ultra huc detur liber ei accessus.*

DULCITIUS.

Scena V.

VOCABULARY

14. egredior, 3, -gressum: to step out, 40
daemoniacus, 3 (fr. daemon, -ōnis, m, (Greek), daemon): possessed
heus, eho: hey, hallo, 52, f
quo: where to? 51 f
sto, 1, steti, statum: to stand, remain, 108, a
cubile, -lis, n (fr. cubo, 1, to lie down): room, 49, r

15. ostiarius, 2 (fr. ostium, 2, entrance): doorkeeper, 49, v
illico, actutum, confestim, statim, extemplo, protinus: right away, at once
induco, 3, -duxi, -ductum: to lead in, 108, a
refero, 3, retuli, relatum: to bring back, relate, 43, 8;
phu: pshaw, 52, c (111, b; 26, f)
scindo, 3, scīdi, scissum: to tear, 36, b
vilis, 2: villain
detestabilis, 2 (fr. detestor, 1: to detest): abominable, monster, 2: monster (49, i)
nigellus, 3 (fr. niger, 3: black): blackish, 49, p
panniculus, 2 (fr. pannus, 2: piece of cloth): little rag, 49, p; 88
obsero, 3, -sēvi, -sītum: to cover with, sow, 36, b
age, agite: come, hurrah, 52, e

TRANSLATION

14. SOLDIERS: *Heavens! Who is this coming out? Behold a possessed person. Or rather the devil himself. Comrades, let us get out (of here).*

DULCITIUS: *Hello! Where are you soldiers running? Stop! Wait a minute! Lead me to my chamber with your lanterns.*

Scena VI.

15. DULCITIUS: *Porters, guide me immediately into the palace because I have a secret message to be given to the emperor.*

PORTERS: *Pshaw! What is this villainous and ugly monster, covered with torn and dirty rags? Come on, friends, let us hit him with our fists, and toss him down the stairs lest free entrance be given him again.*

tundo, 3, tutudi, tusum: to beat, strike repeatedly, 106
pugnus, 2: fist, 88
gradus, 4 (gradior, gressum: to step): step, stairs
praecipito, 1: to cast down headlong, 106
ultra: anymore
accessus, 4 (fr. accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to approach): admittance, entrance, 49, a

68. RICHER, THE MONK OF ST. REMY

Died 980? A.D.

Course 59

FOUR HISTORY BOOKS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Lotharius interea apud suos deliberabat, utrum

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Lotharius interea apud suos deliberabat, utrum

EX RICHERII REMIGII MONACHI Historiarum Libris Quattuor.

VOCABULARY

1. Lotharius, 2: Lothair, the king of France
delibero, 1: to consider, resolve

TRANSLATION

1. Meanwhile Lothair was discussing with his

FOUR HISTORY BOOKS

potius foret sese ulterius ire, armisque et viribus totam Belgicam sibi subiugare, an residendo Viriduni per legatos habitis suasionibus mores hostium ad suum animum informare.

2. Dum haec multa consultatione ventilaret, Belgicae dux Theodericus, nec non et vir nobilis ac strenuus Godefridus, Sigefridus quoque vir illustris, Bardo etiam et Gozilo fratres clarissimi et nominatissimi, aliique principes nonnulli latenter pertemptant Viridunum irrumpere, eamque a Gallis evacuare.

3. Factisque insidiis, negotiatorum claustrum, muro instar oppidi exstructum, ab urbe quidem Mosa interfluente sejunctum, sed pontibus duobus interstratis ei annexum, cum electis militum copiis ingressi sunt. Annonam omnem circumquaque milites palan-

potius foret ulterius ire, armisque et viribus totam Belgicam subjugare, an residendo Viriduni per legatos habitis suasionibus mores hostium ad suum animum conformare.

2. Dum haec multa consultatione pertractaret, Belgicae dux Theodericus, nec non et vir nobilis ac strenuus Godfridus, Sigfridus quoque vir illustris, etiam Bardo et Gozilo fratres clarissimi et nominatissimi, aliique principes nonnulli latentur pertemptant Viridunum irrumpere, idque a Gallis evacuare.

3. Factisque insidiis, negotiatorum claustrum, muro instar oppidi exstructum, ab urbe quidem Mosa interfluente sejunctum, sed pontibus institutis ei annexum, cum electis militum copiis ingrediuntur. Annonam omnem milites palantes undique advectari faciunt.

EX RICHERII REMIGII MONACHI
Historiarum Libris Quattuor.

VOCABULARY

potius: *rather, preferable*, 28, f
ulterius ire: *to advance*, 27, g; 42, c
Belgica, 1 or Gallia Belgica: *North-Eastern France*
resideo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: *to remain sitting, stay*, 88
subjugo, 1: *to subjugate, subdue*
Viridunum, 2: *Verdun*, 21, c
suasio, -nis, f (fr. suadeo, 2, suasi, suasum, *to suggest*): *persuasion*, 114, b
mos, moris, m: *will, custom; pl., manners*

2. Pertracto, 1: *to handle, discuss*
[ventilo, 1: *to fan, winnow*]
Bardo, -nis, Gozilo, -nis, *Belgians*
nominatus, 3 (fr. nomino, 1, *to mention*): *well known, celebrated*
pertempto or pertento, 1: *to try, attempt*, 101
irrumpo, 3, irrupi, irruptum: *to break or rush in*
lateo, 2, latui, -titum: *to be hid, concealed*, 28, a
evacuo, 1: *to empty*

3. insidiae, -arum: *ambush, snare, trap*, 114, b
negotiator, -is, m (fr. negotior, 1, *to carry on business*): *merchant, banker*, 49, d
claustrum, 2 (fr. claudio, 3, -usi, -usum: *to close*):
bar, enclosure, 49, f
instar, indecl. with gen.: *like, likeness*, 16, c
oppidum, 2: *town*
Mosa, f, 1: *the River Meuse in Gallia Belgica*
interfluo, 3, -fluxi, -fluxum: *to flow between*, 114, a
sejungo, 3, -junxi, -nctum: *to separate, sever*
pons, -ntis, m: *bridge*, 93, a
[interstrateno, 3, -stravi, -stratum: *to spread between*]
instituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to place, build, instruct*
annecto, 3, -nexi, -nexum: *to connect with*, 36, b
copia, 1: *plenty, opportunity; pl.: troops*

TRANSLATION

friends whether it would be better to advance and conquer entire Belgium by force of arms, or to stay in Verdun and by the diplomacy of his legates win over the hostile Belgians' attitude to his own way of thinking.

[informo, 1: *to instruct, form*]
conformo, 1: *to form fittingly*

2. *While he was seriously deliberating upon this policy, Theodoric, the chief of the Belgic country, and the very noble and energetic Godfrid, and the illustrious Sigfrid, together with Bardo and Gozilo, famous and distinguished brothers, and some other chieftains, secretly attempted to break into Verdun and drive out the Gauls.*

3. *After laying ambushes, with selected troops they entered the merchants' suburb which was surrounded with a wall like a city, (and) though separated from Verdun by the Meuse flowing through, yet (was) connected with the city by two bridges built across the river. Their soldiers scouting about had all the grain brought in from all around. Besides they requis-*

annona, 1: *grain, corn, provision*
[circumquaque for:] undique: *from everywhere, or*
ubique: *wherever*
palor, 1: *to wander, stray about*
advecto, 1 (fr. adveho, 3, -vexi, -vectum, *to carry*):
to convey, 49, l; 55

FOUR HISTORY BOOKS

tes, advectare fecerunt. Negotiatorum quoque victus in usum bellicum acceperunt.

4. Lignorum trabes ex Argonna aggregari jusserunt, ut, si ab hostibus extra machinae muris applicarentur, ipsi quoque interius obtinentibus machinis obstare molirentur. Crates quoque viminibus et arborum frondibus validas intexuerunt, machinis erectis, si res exposceret, supersternendas.

5. Missilia varii generis per fabros expedire. Funnium millena volumina ad usus diversos convexerunt. Clipeos quoque habendae testudini ordinandos instituerant. Praeterea centena mortis tormenta non defuere. (Hist. III)

6. Diebus ferme XIV, cum aviditate discendi logicam Hippocratis Choi, de studiis liberalibus saepe et multum cogitarem quadam die equidem Carnotinum

Negotiatorum quoque victum in usum bellicum requirunt.

4. Lignorum trabes ex Argonna convehi jubent, ut, si extra ab hostibus tormenta muris applicarentur, ipsi quoque intus constructis catapultis obstare molirentur. Crates quoque viminibus et arborum frondibus validas texunt ad machinas erectas, si res exposceret, protegendas.

5. Missilia varii generis per fabros expediunt. Funnium millena volumina ad usus diversos convehunt. Clipeos quoque construendae testudini faciendos instituant. Praeterea centena mortis tormenta non defuere.

6. Cum in urbe Remorum positus diebus ferme quattuordecim aviditate discendi logicam Hippocratis Coi de studiis liberalibus saepe et multum cogitarem,

EX RICHERII REMIGII MONACHI
Historiarum Libris Quattuor.

VOCABULARY

victus, 4 (fr. vivo, 3, vixi, victum, to live): livelihood, food
requiro, 3, -sivi, -situm: to seek or search for, demand,

4. lignum, 2: wood
trabs, -bis, f: beam
Argonna, 1: the Forest of Argonne
[aggrego, 1: to add, join]
conveho, 3, convexi, -vectum: to carry, bring together, si applicarentur, 135, a (101)
tormentum, 2 (fr. torqueo, -rsi, -rtum, to twist): torment, military instrument to hurl missiles
machina, 1, Greek: machine; catapulta, 1, Greek: murus, 2: wall (catapult)
cratis, -is, f: hurdle
vimen, -minis, n: osier, willow, 92
frons, -dis, f: foliage, leafy twig or branch, 92
texo, 3, texui, textum: to weave, twine together, 101

5. missile, -is, n (fr. mitto, 3, misi, missum, to send, throw): missile, weapon to be thrown
faber, -bri, m: mechanic
expedio, 4: to disengage, bring forth, provide, discover, funis, -is, m: rope, 67, b (32, d; 101)
mille: thousand; milleni, 3: thousands of, 29, a
volumen, -minis, n: roll, volume
clipeus, 2: shield
[ordino, 1: to arrange]
testudo, -dinis, f: tortoise, vaulted roof, protecting

6. ferme, superlative of fere: almost, nearly
Hippocrates (, -tis) Cous: Hippocrates, famous physician of the island C(h)os in the Aegean Sea, born 460, B. C.
liberalia studia: arts and sciences
[equidem: just, exactly, indeed]

TRANSLATION

tioned food from the merchants for military use.

require, inquire, 101

4. They ordered logs to be brought in from the Argonnes in order that they might undertake a defense from within with their erected catapults, if storming machines should be applied to the walls from without by the enemy. They also constructed strong hurdles of osiers and tree branches to protect the erected military machines, if (such protection) should be required.

erigo, 3, erexi, erectum: to set up, lift up, erect
exposco, 3, -poposci, -: to demand vehemently, 109, b [supersterno, 3, -stravi, -stratum: to strew or spread over]

5. They had projectiles of various kinds forged by mechanics. They gathered together thousands of rope coils for different purposes. Moreover, they ordered shields to be made for the sheds to be built. Besides there were not wanting hundreds of death-dealing military instruments.

shed, 118; 78
centeni, 3: by hundred, hundreds of, 29, c
desum, -esse, -fui, -: to be absent, be wanting, fail, 41, 1; 32, d

6. Once when stationed at Rheims, while I spent nearly a fortnight thinking seriously about art and science, (being overtaken) by a great desire to learn Hippocrates' explanations of cause, I encountered a

FOUR HISTORY BOOKS

in urbe Remorum positus offendi.

quodam die quendam Carnotinum offendi.

7. Qui a me interrogatus, quis et cujus esset, cur et unde venisset, Heribrandi clerici Dartonensis legatum sese, et Richero Sancti Remigii monacho se velle loqui respondit. Ego mox amici nomen et legationis causam advertens, me quem quaerebat, indicavi, datoque osculo semotim secessimus. (Hist. IV.)

7. Qui a me interrogatus, quis et cujas esset, cur et unde venisset, Heribrandi clerici Dartonensis legatum se esse et cum Richero Sancti Remigii monacho loqui velle respondit. Ego mox amici nomen et legationis causam advertens, me, quem quaerebat, indicavi, datoque osculo semotim secessimus.

EX RICHERII REMIGII MONACHI
Historiarum Libris Quattuor.

VOCABULARY

quidam, 3: *a, certain one*, 30, *i*
Carnotinus, 3 (*fr. Carnutum*, 2, *Chartres*): *Chartrian*
urbs Rhemorum: *Rheims*

7. *cujas, -atis: of what country*
clericus, 2: *clergyman, priest*
Dartonensis, 2, (*fr. Darton, a town in England*): *of Darton*
adverto, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to perceive, notice*
indico, 1: *to disclose, declare*
osculum, 2 (*fr. ōs, ōris, n, mouth*): (*little mouth*), *kiss*
semotim (*fr. semoveo*, 2, -movi, -motum, *to separate*): *confidently*, 28, *c*

TRANSLATION

gentleman of Chartres.

offendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to offend, make a mistake, hit upon a person, encounter*

7. *When I asked him who he was and to which country he belonged, why and whence he came, he answered that he was a messenger of Heribrand, a priest of Darton, and wished to speak with Richer, the monk of St. Remy. Now then, hearing the name of my friend and the purpose of his mission, I made myself known as the one he sought, and after mutual embraces we went aside confidentially.*

secedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to go away or aside*

69. GERBERT (SYLVESTER II), THE GREATEST HUMANIST

Died 1003 A.D.

Course 115

THE FORMER TEACHER WITH GREETINGS TO AYRARD HIS FRIEND

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Petitionibus tuis annuimus, nostra ut exsequaris negotia velut propria, monemus. Plinius emendetur, Eugraphius recipiatur; qui Orbacis et apud sanctum Basolum sunt, perscribantur. Fac, quod oramus, ut faciamus, quod oras.

To Ebrard the Abbot of Tours, Greetings

2. Cum mei memoriam frequentem habeatis inter

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Petitionibus tuis annuimus, nostra ut exsequaris negotia velut propria, monemus. Plinius emendetur, Eugraphius recipiatur; qui Orbacis et apud sanctum Basolum sunt, perscribantur. Fac, quod oramus, ut faciamus, quod oras.

2. Cum mei memoriam frequentem habeatis inter

GERBERTUS (SYLVESTER II.)

Quondam Scholasticus Ayrardo Suo Salutem.

VOCABULARY

1. annuo, 3, -nui, -nutum: *to nod to, assent*
velut: *as, as if*
exsequor, 3, -secutum: *to follow, execute, accomplish*
emendo, 1: *to improve, amend, correct*, 106 (124, *a*)
Orbaci, -orum, m: *Orbais, near Soissons*
Basolus, 2: *Basle, near Rheims*
perscribo, 3, -scripsi, -ptum: *to describe, copy*, 106
oro, 1: *to speak, beg, pray*

TRANSLATION

1. *We grant your request and advise you to conduct our affairs, as if they were your own. Let Pliny be corrected; let Eugraphius be taken back; let the books be copied, which are in Orbais and at St. Basle. Do what we ask, in order that we may do what you request.*

Ebrardo Abbati Turonensi Salutem.

2. abbas, -atis, m, *Hebrew: abbot*

2. *Since you keep the constant, honorable remem-*

69. GERBERT (SYLVESTER II), THE GREATEST HUMANIST

Died 1003 A.D.

Course 115

To Ebrard the Abbot of Tours, Greetings

honesta, ut e plurimis accepi legatis, magnamque af-
finitatis jure amicitiam efferatis, existimatione vestra
beatum me fore puto, si modo is sum, qui iudicio tanti
viri inveniar dignus amari.

3. Sed quia non is sum, qui cum Panaetio interdum
ab utili sejungam honestum, sed potius cum Tullio om-
ni utili admisceam, *has* honestissimas atque sanctis-
simas amicitias nulla ex parte suo cuique utili vacare
volo.

4. Cumque ratio morum dicendique ratio a philoso-
phia non separentur, cum studio bene vivendi semper
conjunctum studium benedicendi, quamvis solum bene vi-
vere, praestantius sit eo, quod est bene dicere, curisque
regiminis absoluto alterum satis sit sine altero.

5. At nobis in republica occupatis utraque necessa-
ria. Nam et apposite dicere ad persuadendum et ani-
mos furentium suavi oratione ab impetu retinere, sum-
ma utilitas. Cui rei praeparandae bibliothecam assi-
due comparo.

6. Et sicut Romae dudum ac in aliis partibus Ita-

honesta, ut e plurimis accepi legatis, magnamque af-
finitatis jure amicitiam efferatis, existimatione vestra
beatum me fore puto, si modo is sum, qui iudicio tanti
viri inveniar dignus amari.

3. Sed quia non is sum, qui cum Panaetio interdum
ab utili sejungam honestum, sed potius cum Tullio om-
ni utili admisceam, *hanc* honestissimam atque sanctis-
simam amicitiam nulla ex parte suo cuique utili vacare
volo.

4. Cumque ratio morum dicendique ratio a philoso-
phia non separentur, cum studio bene vivendi semper
conjunctum studium bene dicendi, quamvis solum bene vi-
vere, praestantius sit eo, quod est bene dicere, curisque
regiminis absoluto alterum satis sit sine altero.

5. At nobis in republica occupatis utraque *est* neces-
saria. Nam et apposite dicere ad persuadendum et
animos furentium suavi oratione ab impetu retinere,
summae est utilitatis. Cui rei praeparandae bibliote-
cam assidue comparo.

6. Et sicut Romae dudum ac in aliis partibus Ita-

GERBERTUS (SYLVESTER II.)

Ebrardo Abbati Turonensi Salutem.

VOCABULARY

honestus, 3: *honorable, reputable*, 26, f
legatus, 2 (*fr. lego*, 1, *to send an ambassador*): *legate, messenger*
affinitas, -tatibus (*fr. affinis*, 2, *neighboring, related*):
affinity
effero, 3, extuli, elatum: *to carry out, extol*, 125, a
existimatio, -nis, f (*fr. existimo*, 1, *to deem*): *opinion*,
invenio, 4, inveni, inventum: *to find*, 129 (*honor*, 88)

3. Panaetius, a Stoic philosopher, teacher of Scipio,
interdum: *some time, now and then, occasionally* (*fr. sejungo*, 3, *sejunctum*: *to separate, sever*, 129
utilis, 2: *useful, advantageous*, 26, f (29)
admisceo, 2, -miscui, -mixtum: *to mix with, join to, cuique suum: one's own, proper to each*, 30, e'

4. ratio, (fr. reor, 2, ratum: *to think*): *reason, account, art, theory, doctrine, system*, 49, a
conjungo, 3, -junxi, -junctum: *to bind together*,
praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to stand before, excel*, 36, a
alter—alter: *one—and the other, former—and latter*
absolvo, 3, -solvi, -solutum: *to free, complete, finish*

5. respublica, 5, 1: *public affairs, politics*
apposite (*fr. appono*, 3, -posui, -positum, *to put to*):
appropriately, aptly, fittingly, 28, a
furo, 3, rui, -, : *to rage, be mad*, 36, a
impetus, 4 (*fr. impeto*, 3, -ivi, -itum, *to rush upon*):
violence
comparo, 1: *to prepare, procure*

6. dudum: *a little while ago*; jam dudum: *long since*

TRANSLATION

brance of me as I have learned from many messengers,
and since you regard our friendship highly by the
right of our affinity, I think that I shall be happy by
your esteem for me, if I am but he who, in the judg-
ment of so great a man, should be found worthy to
be loved.

3. However, since I am not a man who like Panae-
tius would at times separate the beautiful from the
useful, but rather (one who) like Cicero would join
it with every useful thing, I wish that this most
honorable and holy friendship of ours should lack in
no way (anything) useful to each (of us).

4. Then, since morals and oratory are not to be
separated from philosophy, I have ever connected the
study of speaking well with the pursuit of living cor-
rectly, although living well by itself is more excellent
than speaking well, and the former without the latter
is sufficient for one free from the cares of governing.

5. Nevertheless, both are necessary for us since we
are engaged in public affairs. For to speak aptly in
order to convince a person, and to restrain the minds
of the furious from violence by agreeable speech, are
of the greatest usefulness. To acquire this ability I
am diligently collecting books.

6. And as formerly at Rome and in other parts of

To Ebrard the Abbot of Tours, Greetings

liae, in Germania quoque et Belgica scriptores auctorumque exemplaria *multitudine* nummorum redemi, adjutus benevolentia ac studio amicorum comprovincialium, sic identidem apud vos fieri ac per vos sinite, ut exorem.

7. Quos scribi velimus, in fine epistolae designabimus. Scribentibus membranas sumptusque necessarios ad vestrum imperium dirigemus vestri insuper beneficii non immemores.

8. Denique ne plura locuti legibus epistolae abutamur, causa tanti laboris contemptus malefidae fortunae. Quem contemptum nobis non parit sola natura, ut multis, sed elaborata *doctrina*. Proinde in otio, in negotio et docemus, quod scimus, et addiscimus, quod nescimus.

To the Abbot Gisalbert, with Greetings

9. Si bene valetis, gaudemus. Indigentiam vestram nostram putamus. Quam patimur, ut reveletis, rogamus. De morbis ac remediis oculorum Demosthenes

liae, in Germania quoque et Belgica scriptores auctorumque exemplaria *vi magna* nummorum coëmi, adjutus benevolentia ac studio amicorum comprovincialium, sic identidem apud vos ac per vos fieri sinite, exorem.

7. Quos scribi velimus, in fine epistolae designabimus. Scribentibus membranas sumptusque necessarios ad vestrum imperium dirigemus vestri insuper beneficii non immemores.

8. Denique ne plura loquentes legibus epistolae abutamur, causa tanti laboris *est* contemptus malefidae fortunae. Quem contemptum nobis non parit sola natura, ut multis, sed elaborata *disciplina*. Proinde in otio, in negotio et docemus, quod scimus, et addiscimus, quod nescimus.

9. Si bene valetis, gaudemus. Indigentiam vestram nostram putamus. Quam patimur, ut reveletis, rogamus. De morbis ac remediis oculorum Demosthenes

GERBERTUS (SYLVESTER II.)
Ebrardo Abbati Turonensi Salutem.

VOCABULARY

exemplar, -ris, n: *copy*
nummus, 2: *money, coin*
[redimo, 3, -emi, -emptum: *to buy back, buy, ransom*]
coëmo, 3, -emi, -mptum: *to buy in large quantities, buy up*
comprovinciales, -ium, m: *fellow provincials, inhabitants of the provinces*
identidem: *repeatedly, again and again*

7. scribi, 57, b'
designo, 1: *to designate, mark out, signify*
membrana, 1: *membrane, parchment*
sumptus, 4 (fr. sumo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum, *to take*): *expense*
imperium, 2 (fr. impero, 1, *to command*): *order, em-*
insuper: *besides, over, in addition* (pire)

8. abutor, 3, -usum: *to abuse*, 93, b
lex, legis, f: *form, rule, bill, nature, kind*
contemptus, 4 (fr. contemno, 3, -mpsi, -mptum, *to despise*): *contempt*
malefidus, 3 (fr. fido, 3, -, fisum, *to trust*): *deceitful*
pario, 3, peperit, partum: *to bring forth, produce*
elaboro, 1: *to work out*, 36, b
proinde: *just as, therefore, hence, accordingly*

9. valeo, 2, -lui, -litorus: *to be strong, able*, 109, a
indigentia, 1 (fr. indigeo, 2, -gui, -: *to need*): *need*,
revelo, 1: *to unveil, reveal* (want, 59, A
morbus, 2: *sickness*
remedium, 2 (fr. medeor, 2, -, -, *to heal*): *remedy*,

TRANSLATION

Italy, as also in Germany and Belgium, I purchased authors and their copies at great expense, aided by the kindness and endeavor of fellow provincials, my friends, so let me ask the same to be done at your home and by you(r help).

sino, 3, sivi, situm: *to place, let, allow*, 108, a
exoro, 1: *to entreat, obtain*, 124, a

7. *At the end of our letter we shall designate what we want to be transcribed. At your bidding we shall forward the parchments and the money necessary for the copyists; moreover, we shall not be unmindful of your kindness.*

immemor, -is: *unmindful*, 66, b

8. *But, lest we violate the laws of letter writing by saying too much, the purpose of such a work of mine is the contempt of deceitful worldly welfare. Nature alone does not afford us this contempt as to many others, but a carefully elaborated system (does). Therefore in our leisure and labor, we teach what we know, and seek to learn what we do not know.*

otium, 2: *leisure, ease, repose*

Gisalberto Abbati Salutem.

9. *If you are well, we are glad. Your needs we consider our own. We ask you to make known the needs which we suffer. The philosopher Demosthenes published a book on the diseases of the eyes and their*

medicine

69. GERBERT (SYLVESTER II), THE GREATEST HUMANIST

Died 1003 A.D.

Course 115

To the Abbot Gisalbert, with Greetings

philosophus librum edidit, qui inscribitur "Ophthalmicus." Ejus principium si habetis, habeamus, simulque finem Ciceronis "Pro rege Dejotaro."

philosophus librum edidit, qui inscribitur "Ophthalmicus." Ejus initium, si habetis, habeamus, simulque finem Ciceronis "Pro rege Dejotaro."

To Adalbero the Archbishop of Rheims, Greetings

10. Mantuae quid egerim super negotiis vestris, praesens melius explicabo verbis quam absens scriptis. Claves librorum, quas mitterem, ignoravi propter communem usum similium serarum.

10. Mantuae quid egerim in negotiis vestris, praesens melius explicabo verbis quam absens scriptis. Claves librorum, quas mitterem, ignoravi propter communem usum similium serarum.

11. Historiam Julii Caesaris a domno Azone abbate Dervensi ad rescribendum acquirite, ut, quos penes vos habemus, habeatis; et, quos post reperimus, speretis, id est VIII volumina Boëthii de astrologia, praeclarissima quoque figurarum geometriae, aliaque non minus admiranda. Fortunam nostram sola vestra conturbat absentia noctesque diesque.

11. Historiam Julii Caesaris a domino Azone abbate Dervensi ad rescribendum acquirite, ut, quos penes vos habemus, habeatis; et quos post reperimus, speretis, id est octo volumina Boëthii de astrologia, praeclarissima figuris quoque geometriae, aliaque non minus admiranda. Res secundas nostras sola vestra conturbat absentia noctesque diesque:

To Rainard the Monk, with Greetings

12. Non existimes, dulcissime frater, vitio meo fieri, quod tam diu fratrum meorum praesentia careo. Nulli jure rependitur sua fides. Ego tamen, cum sciam omnia ex Dei pendere sententia, exitum rerum patienter expecto.

12. Non existimes, dulcissime frater, vitio meo fieri, quod tam die fratrum meorum praesentia careo. Nullius fides a mundo jure rependitur. Ego tamen, cum sciam omnia ex Dei pendere providentia, exitum rerum patienter expecto.

GERBERTUS (SYLVESTER II.) Gisalberto Abbati Salutem.

VOCABULARY

inscribo, 3, -scripsi, -ptum: to inscribe, give a title
ophthalmicus, 3, Greek: of eye, belonging to the eye
principium, 2 (fr. primum capio): beginning, origin,
Dejotarus, 2, one of the tetrarchs of Galatia (49, f

VOCABULARY TRANSL.

remedies, which is entitled, "Ophthalmicus." Let us have the beginning of this (book), if you have it, and also the end of Cicero's "In Behalf of the Ruler Dejotarus."

Adalberoni Rhemorum Archiepiscopo Salutem.

10. Mantua, 1, a town in North Italy
negotium, 2: business, affair
clavis, -is, m: key
liber, -bri, m: book (can be taken for librarium, 2:
ignoro, 1: not to know (bookcase)
sera, 1: bolt, lock

10. In your presence I shall explain by word (of mouth) better than by writing while away from you what I did at Mantua about your affairs. I did not know which keys for the books to send because of the indistinguishable form of similar books.

11. [domnus, abridged form of Dominus, used only in monasteries O. S. B., 2: Master, Reverend, Father]
rescribo, 3, -ipsi, -ptum: to write again, anew or back
volumen, -minis, n (fr. volvo, 3, to revolve): roll,
astrologia, geometria, Greek words (volume
praeclarus, 3: very bright, excellent, famous, 84
admiror, 1: to admire, be astonished, 111, b
diesque noctesque, for die nocteque, Graecism in Ennius' poem, quoted also by Cicero.

11. Obtain for copying the history of Julius Caesar from the Dervian Father Abbot Azo so that you may keep what we loaned to you; you may expect other books also, after we have found them, namely, the eight volumes of Boëthius on Astrology, very famous also for their geometrical figures, and other (volumes) not less admirable. Your absence alone spoils our happiness day and night.

reperio, 4, reperi, repertum: to find, 32, f

Rainardo Monacho Salutem.

12. vitium, 2: fault, crime, 88
diu: a long time, (for) a long while
careo, 2, -rui, -, to want, be destitute of, be without, 83
rependo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to weigh again, repay, requite,
fides, 5: trust, credence, reliance, faith (79
exitus, 4 (fr. exeo, 4, to go out): result, consequence

12. Do not imagine, dearest brother, that it is my fault that I am deprived of the company of my brethren for so long a time. No ones' trust is justly repaid in this world. Yet because I know that all things depend upon the disposition of God, I patiently await the outcome of events.

To Rainard the Monk, with Greetings

13. Idem quoque *facere te*, frater, et moneo et hortor. Unum a te interim plurimum exposco, quod et sine periculo ac detrimento *tui* fiat et me tibi quam maxime in amicitia constringat. Nosti, quanto studio librorum exemplaria undique conquiram.

14. Nosti, quot scriptores in urbibus ac in *agris* Italiae passim habeantur. Age ergo, ut mihi scribantur *M. Manlius* de astrologia, *Victorius* de rhetorica, *Demosthenis Ophthalmicus*. Spondeo tibi, frater, quidquid *erogaveris*, cumulatam remittam. Frequentius nos tuis litteris laetifica.

13. Idem quoque *a te fieri*, frater, et moneo et hortor. Unum a te interim plurimum exposco, quod et sine periculo ac detrimento *tuo* fiat et me tibi quam maxime in amicitia constringat. Nosti, quanto studio librorum exemplaria undique conquiram.

14. Nosti, quot scriptores in urbibus ac in *villis* Italiae passim habeantur. Age ergo, ut mihi scribantur *Marcus Manlius* de astrologia, *Victorius* de rhetorica *et Demosthenis Ophthalmicus*. Spondeo tibi, frater, quidquid *eroges a me* cumulatam remissum *iri*. Frequentius nos tuis litteris laetifica.

GERBERTUS (SYLVESTER II.)

Rainardo Monacho Salutem.

VOCABULARY

13. fieri, 57, *b'*; *in good English: I ask you to do the same*
 exposco, 3, -poposci, -; *to demand vehemently*; quod, 120, *c*, 2; 131, *a*
 detrimentum, 2 (*fr. detero*, 3, -trivi, -tritum: *to rub off*): *damage, injury*
 constringo, 3, -nxi, -trictum: *to draw, bind together, fetter*, 120, *c*, 2; 131, *a*

14. passim: *here and there, far and wide*
 [ager, agri, *m*: *field, land, country*]; villa, 1: *country house or rest, farm*
 spondeo, 2, sponendi, sponsum: *to pledge oneself, promise*, 57, 4
 erogo, 1: *to pay*, 99, *c*, 1; 133, *a*; (*in dir. disc. quidquid erogaveris, remittam*, 109, *a*, 3
 cumulo, 1: *to heap or pile up*; remissum iri, 35, *d*; 55
 frequens, -ntis: *frequent, numerous*, 28, *a*, 1

TRANSLATION

13. *Brother, I advise and exhort that the same be done also by you. In the meantime I earnestly ask one thing of you which will be without danger and detriment to you and will bind me to you in the most intimate friendship. You know with what zeal I collect copies of books from everywhere.*

conquiro, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum: *to seek for, bring together*, 132

14. *You know how many authors are scattered in the towns and country places of Italy. See to it, therefore, that Marcus Manlius on astrology, Victorius on oratory and the "Ophthalmicus" of Demosthenes are copied for me. Whatever expense you will entail, I pledge myself to repay you. Gladden us with your letters more frequently.*

laetifico, 1: *to cheer, gladden, delight*, 108, *a*

70. FULBERTUS DE CHARTRES

Died 1027 A.D.

Course 19

THE LAZY ABBOT*

Cambridge Song

Original

1. In vitis patrum veterum
 Quiddam legi ridiculum,
 Exemplo tamen habile,

In prose

1. In vitis patrum veterum
 quiddam legi ridiculum,
 exemplo tamen habile,

CANTICUM CANTABRIGIENSE

De Joanne Abbate.

VOCABULARY

1. vita, 1: *life*, 96
 vetus, -teris: *old*, 26, *a*
 quisdam, quiddam: *something*, 30, *i*
 ridiculus, 3 (*fr. rideo*, 2, *to laugh*): *ridiculous*
 exemplum, 2: *example*, 84

TRANSLATION

1. *Among the lives of the ancient fathers I read a certain ridiculous thing, yet fitting for an example,*

habilis, 2: *handy, fitting,*

* IAMBIC DIMETER (tetrapody), rhyming: ♪ — | ♪ — | ♪ || — | ♪ ♪; cf. 139, 4

70. FULBERTUS DE CHARTRES

Died 1027 A.D.

Course 19

THE LAZY ABBOT

Quod vobis dico rhytmice.

2. Joannes abbas parvulus
Statura, non virtutibus,
Ita majori socio,
Quicum erat in heremo:

3. "Volo," dicebat, "vivere
Secure sicut angelus,
Nec veste nec cibo frui,
Qui laboretur manibus."

4. Respondit frater: "Moneo,
Ne sis incepti properus,
Frater, quod tibi postmodum
Sit non coepisse satius."

5. At ille: "Qui non dimicat,
Non cadit neque superat."
Ait, et nudus heremum
Inferiorem penetrat.

6. Septem dies gramineo

quod vobis dico rhytmice.

2. Joannes abbas parvulus
statura, non virtutibus,
ait majori socio,
quocum erat in eremo:

3. "Volo vivere securus
ita sicuti angelus,
nec veste nec cibo frui,
qui conficitur manibus."

4. Respondit frater: "Moneo,
ne sis incepti properus,
Frater, quod tibi postmodum
sit non coepisse satius."

5. At ille: "Qui non dimicat,
non cadit neque superat."
Ait et nudus eremum
inferiorem penetrat.

6. Septem dies gramineo

De Joanne Abbate.

VOCABULARY

rhythmicus, 3 (fr. rhythmus, 2, rhyme): in rhymes,
28, a

2. Joannes, -nis, m: John
abbas, -atis, m, Hebrew: abbot
parvulus, 3 (fr. parvus, 3, little): little, short, 49, p
statura, 1: stature, size (of a man), 84
virtus, -rtutis, f: virtue, 23, II
aio: to say, 44, 9
major, 2 -oris (fr. magnus, 3, great, big): greater,
bigger, 27, e

3. securus, 3: safe, 56
angelus, 2, Greek: angel
vestis, -is, f: clothes
cibus, 2: food
fruor, 3, -, fruiturus: to enjoy, use, 93, b

4. moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: to remind, admonish,
ne sis, 124, a (advise)
incipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to start, begin, 26, f
properus, 3: quick, hasty, 66, a
postmodum: afterwards, later
coepi, coeptum: to start, 45, 12; 55, a, 5

5. dimico, 1: to fight, struggle, strive
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: to fall
supero, 1: to overcome, conquer
nudus, 3: naked, 56
inferior, 2: lower, deep, 27, f

6. septem: seven, 29, a
dies, 26, a; 64 (49, s)
gramineus, 3 (fr. gramen, -minis: grass): herbaceous,

TRANSLATION

which I shall tell to you in rhymes.

2. Abbot John, a little man,
not in virtue, (but) in stature
said to (one of his) greater companion(s)
with whom he lived in the desert:

socius, 2: companion, fellow, brother
quocum: with whom, 50, b; [quicum is archaic]
eremus, 2, Greek: desert

3. "I wish to live
as carefree as an angel;
neither to use the clothing and food
which are produced by hands."

conficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to make ready, produce, 40

4. His brother replied: "I suggest,
brother, be not rash in starting,
what afterwards for you
may be better not to have begun."

quod sit, 130
satis: enough; satius: preferably, rather, better, 28, f

5. But, he replied: "He who does not fight,
does not fall, and neither does he overcome."
Saying this, stripped of all his clothing,
he retired farther into the desert.

penetro, 1: to draw into, enter, penetrate

6. For seven days on food from herbs

THE LAZY ABBOT

Vix ibi durat pabulo;
Octava fames imperat,
Ut ad sodalem redeat.

7. Qui sero, clausa janua,
Tutus sedet in cellula,
Cum *minor* voce debili
Appellat: "Frater, aperi:

8. Joannes opis indigus,
Notis assistit foribus;
Nec spernat tua pietas,
Quem redigit necessitas."

9. Respondit ille *deintus*:
"Joannes factus angelus
Miratur caeli cardines;
Ultra non curat homines."

10. Foris Joannes excubat
Malamque noctem tolerat,

vix ibi durat pabulo;
octavo fames imperat,
ut ad sodalem redeat.

7. Qui sero clausa janua
tutus sedet in cellula,
cum *abbas* voce debili
appellat: "Frater, aperi:

8. Joannes opis indigus,
notus assistit foribus;
non spernat tua pietas,
quem redigit necessitas."

9. Ille *autem internus*:
"Joannes," inquit, "factus angelus
miratur caeli cardines;
ultra non curat homines."

10. Foris Joannes excubat
malamque noctem tolerat,

De Joanne Abbate.

VOCABULARY

vix: *scarcely*

duro, 1: *to make hard, endure, live*

pabulum, 2: *food, nutriment, 93, a*

octavus, 3: *eighth, 95*

fames, -mis, f: *famine, hunger*

impero, 1: *to order, force*

7. sero (*fr. serus, 3, late*): *late, 28, a*

claudio, 3, clausi, -sum: *to close, 114, b*

janua, 1: *door, gate*

tutus, 3: *safe, safely, 56*

sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: *to sit*

cellula (*fr. cella, 1, cell*): *a modest cell, 49, p*

vox, vocis, f: *voice, 88*

debilis, 2: *feeble*

8. (ops), -pis, f: *might, power, help*

indigus, 3: *needy, in want of, 83, a*

novi, nosse, notum: *to know, 45, 14;; 36, b*

assisto, 3, astiti, -: *to stand by, help, 79*

foris, -is, f: *leaf of folding door; fores, pl.: (folding)*

(door)

sperno, 3, sprevi, spretum: *to despise, spurn, 103*

pietas, -tatis, f: *piety, kindness*

9. internus, 3: *inward, internal, 56*

[*deintus, colloquial: from inside*]

miror, 1: *to wonder, admire, contemplate*

cardo, -dinis, m: *hinge, cardinal point, pole, 23, 1*

ultra: *any more*

curo, 1: *to care for*

10. foris, *adv.: outside*

excubo, 1: *to lie or sleep outside, keep watch*

tolero, 1: *to bear, endure*

TRANSLATION

*he managed with difficulty (to survive there);
on the eighth day hunger forced him
to return to his companion.*

sodalis, -is, m: *companion, comrade, mate, associate*
redeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to return, 42, 3; 124, a*

7. *Late (after) the door (had) been closed,
the latter*

*comfortably sits inside his cell,
while the abbot with a feeble voice
pleads: "Brother, open (the door):*

appello, 1: *to appeal, address*

aperio, 4, -perui, -pertum: *to open (the door), 108, a*

8. *John, well known (to you), in need of aid
stands outside (your) doors.*

*Let not your kindness ignore him
whom want has made return."*

redigo, 3, redēgi, redactum: *to drive back*

necessitas, -tatis, f: *need, necessity*

9. *The other from the inside answers:*

*"John, now become an angel,
contemplates the poles of the heavens;
he no longer cares for men."*

10. *John has to lie outside
and endure an ugly night,*

70. FULBERTUS DE CHARTRES

Died 1027 A.D.

Course 19

THE LAZY ABBOT

Et praeter voluntariam
Hanc agit poenitentiam.

11. Facto mane recipitur,
Satisque verbis uritur,
Sed intentus ad crustula
Fert patienter omnia.

12. Refocillatus Domino
Grates agit et socio;
Dehinc rastellum brachiis
Temptat *movere* languidis.

13. Castigatus angustia
De levitate nimia
Cum angelus non potuit,
Vir bonus esse didicit.

et praeter voluntariam

hanc agit poenitentiam.
11. Facto mane recipitur,
satisque verbis uritur,
sed intentus ad crustula
fert patienter omnia.

12. Refocillatus Domino
grates agit et socio;
abhinc rastellum brachiis
temptat *exercere* languidis.

13. Castigatus angustia
de levitate nimia
cum angelus esse non potuit,
ut esset vir bonus, didicit.

De Joanne Abbate.

VOCABULARY

praeter: *beside*, 50, a
voluntarius, 3: *voluntary*
ago, 3, egi, actum: *to make, act*
poenitentia, 1: *repentance, penance*

11. fio, fieri, -, factum: *to be made*, 43, 7; 114, b
mane, *indecl.*: *morning*, 16, c
recipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to receive*
sat(is): *enough*
uro, 3, ussi, ustum: *to burn*
intendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: *to stretch, apply the mind*,
crustulum, 2: *crust, cake, fine food* (think)

12. refocillo, 1: *refresh, recreate*, 36, b
grates, gratibus, f: (*used only in pl. except the gen.*):
thanks
grates agere, referre, rependere, habere, dicere, per-
solvere alicui: *to thank some one*
socius, 2: *companion, brother*
abhinc, (dehinc less used): *henceforth*
rastellum, 2 (*fr. rastrum*, 2, *hoe*): *little hoe, hoe*, 49, p
brachium, 2 (*Greek*): *fore-arm, arm*, 93, a
tempto, 1: *to try, tempt*

13. castigo, 1: *to chastise*, 36, b
angustia, 1 (*fr. angustus*, 3, *narrow*): *narrowness, dis-
tress, need*, 49, u; 93, a
levitas, -tis, f (*fr. levis*, 2, *light*): *lightness, levity,
fickleness*, 49, u
nimius, 3: *too great, too much, excessive*
vir, 2: *man, husband*

TRANSLATION

*This penance he does
besides the voluntary one.*

11. *When morning comes he is received
and duly chided with words,
but thinking of fine food
he patiently bears all things.*

patior, 3, passum: *to suffer*, 31, c; 40

12. (*When he has been*) *refreshed he gives
thanks
to the Lord and to his brother.
Afterwards he tries to work the hoe
with his weakened arms.*

[*moveo*, 2, *movi*, *motum*: *to move (transitive)*]
exerceo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to, work, employ in work*,
languidus, 3: *faint, weak, languid* (117, a)

13. *Being corrected by painful experience,
from his great foolishness,
he learned to be a good man,
as he could not be an angel.*

ut esset, 124, a
disco, 3, *didici*, -: *to learn*

BOOK OF MIRACLES

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Narravit abbas Johannes, qui manebat in loco qui dicitur Petra, de abbate Daniele Aegyptio dicens, quia cum ascendisset senex in locum qui dicitur Terenuthi, ut venderet opus manuum suarum, juvenis quidam accessit deprecans eum dicens: Propter Deum te rogo, pater, ut venias in domum meam et facias orationem super uxorem meam, quia sterilis est."

2. Senex autem victus a prece juvenis, eo quod per nomen Domini eum adjuraverat, abiit cum eo. Et facta oratione super uxore ejus recessit et abiit in cellam suam.

3. Non post multum vero tempus concepit mulier. Quod ut viderunt pravi homines Deum non timentes, detrahebant seni dicentes: "Vere scimus quia juvenis ingenerabilis est et non generat, sed de abbate Daniele concepit mulier." Devenit autem haec fama usque ad senem. Quod cum audisset, misit ad virum mulieris dicens: "Cum genuerit uxor tua notifica illud mihi."

4. Quando vero genuit mulier, nuntiatum est a ju-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Narravit abbas Joannes, qui habitabat in vico, qui dicitur Petra, de abbate Daniele Aegyptio, ut sequitur. Cum ascendisset senex in oppidum, qui dicitur Terenuthis, ut venderet opus manuum suarum, juvenis quidam accessit deprecans eum: "Per Deum," inquit, "te rogo, pater, ut venias in domum meam et ores super uxorem meam, quia sterilis est."

2. Senex tum victus rogatu juvenis, eo quod per nomen Domini eum adjurasset, abiit cum eo, Et facta oratione super uxorem ejus recessit et rediit in cellam suam.

3. Non multo post dein tempore concepit mulier. Quod ut viderunt pravi homines Deum non timentes, detrahebant seni dicentes: "Vere scimus juvenem generandi incapacem, ideoque de abbate Daniele mulierem concepisse." Mox pervenit fama haec usque ad senem. Quod cum audisset, misit ad virum mulieris dicens: "Cum genuerit uxor tua, notum fac mihi."

4. Postquam vero mulier genuerat, nuntiatum est

JOANNIS MONACHI

Liber de Miraculis.

VOCABULARY

1. abbas, -atis, m, Hebrew: abbot
[maneo, 2, mansi, mansum: to stay, wait for]
habito, 1: to inhabit, dwell
vicus, 2: district of a town, village, settlement
Daniel, -is, Hebrew name, means: God my judge
Aegyptius, 3 (fr. Aegyptus, f, Egypt): Egyptian, 49, z
ascendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to mount, ascend, go up,
Terenuthis, town in Egypt (125, a
vendo, 3, -didi, -ditum, to sell, 124, a
accedo, 3, -cessi, -ssum: to approach, come to

2. vinco, 3, vici, victum: to conquer, overcome
rogo, 1: to ask, request, 116
adjuro, 1: to swear, conjure, 131
eo, (fr. is, 3): on account, 31, f; 94
recedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to go back, retire
cella, 1: cell, room in a house

3. pravus, 3: crooked, wicked, perverse
detraho, 3, -traxi, -ctum: to take down, calumniate,
genero, 1: to beget, generate (slander
incapax, -acis: incapable, unfit for, unable, 49, A, 1;
66, b
pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to arrive, come to, reach
usque, an emphasis for ad
gigno, 3, genui, genitum: to beget, bring forth, bear
notum facio, 3, feci, factum: to notify
cum with the fut. perf: after, 32, f

4. nuntio, 1: to announce, report

TRANSLATION

1. The abbot, John, who dwelt in the settlement, which was named Petra, related the story about the Egyptian abbot, Daniel. When this old man went up to a town called Terenuthis to sell his handiwork, a young man approached, beseeching him, "For God's sake," said he, "I ask you to come to my home, to pray over my wife, because she is barren."

deprecor, 1: to pray, beg for, entreat
sterilis, 2: sterile, barren

2. Forced by the request of the young man, for he had adjured him in the name of God, the old man went with him. After he had said a prayer over the woman, he went away and returned to his cell.

3. Not long after, the woman conceived. When some wicked men who did not fear God, observed this, they calumniated the old man saying: "We know for sure, that the young man is incapable of begetting; hence his wife conceived from Daniel, the abbot." Soon this rumor reached the old (abbot), and when he had heard it, he sent word to the husband of the woman, saying: "After your wife has brought forth her child, let me know."

4. After she had brought forth her child, the young

71. JOHN, THE MONK'S

950-1050 A. D.

Course 52

BOOK OF MIRACLES

vene abbati Danieli in Cithi, *quia cum Dei adjutorio et orationibus tui genuit mulier*. Tunc abiit abbas Daniel dixitque juveni: "Fac prandium et invita omnes *parentes* et amicos tuos."

5. Cum *autem* omnes pranderent, accepit senex infantem in manus suas et coram omnibus *dixit ei*: "Quis est pater tuus, o infans?" *Dixit puer*: "Iste est, domine mi," demonstrans juvenem digito manus suae. Erat autem puer dierum viginti quinque. Quod videntes, qui aderant, glorificaverunt Deum. Ex tunc obtusa sunt labia loquentium iniqua, qui Dei homini detraxerant.

a juvene abbati Danieli in Cithi *uxorem* adjutorio Dei et orationibus *ejus* genuisse. Tunc *adiit* abbas Daniel dixitque juveni: "Fac prandium et invita omnes *propinquos* et amicos tuos."

5. Cum *dein* pranderent, accepit senex infantem in manus suas et coram omnibus *interrogavit*: "Quis est pater tuus, o infans?" *Quive*: "Hicce est," *inquit*, "domine mi," demonstrans juvenem digito manus suae. Erat autem puer dierum viginti quinque. Quod videntes, qui aderant, glorificaverunt Deum. Ex tunc obtusa sunt labia loquentium iniqua, qui Dei homini detraxerant.

Liber de Miraculis.

VOCABULARY

adjutorium, 2 (*fr. adjuvo, 1, to help*): *help, aid, 93, a*
prandium, 2 (*fr. prandeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum, to take*
[*parens, -ntis, c: parent*] (*lunch*): *lunch*
propinquus, 3: *neighboring, relative*

5. infans, -ntis (*fr. for, 1, fatum, to speak*): *speechless, baby, 49, A, 1; 36, a*
coram: *in the presence of, before, 50, b*
-ce, *emphatical enclitic, 30, a, 3*
demonstro, 1: *to show, indicate, point out, 36, a*
digitus, 2: *finger, 88 or 93, a*
viginti quinque: *twenty-five, 29, a*
glorifico, 1: *to glorify*
obtundo, 3, -tudi, -tutum: *to beat upon, thump, make*
labium, 2: *lip; pl. lips, mouth* (*blunt*

TRANSLATION

man reported to the abbot Daniel in the town of Cithi that by the help of God and his prayers his wife had borne a child. Now Abbot Daniel came and told the young man, "Make a dinner and invite all your relatives and friends."

5. *Then during the meal the old man took the child into his arms, and in the presence of all he asked, "Who is your father, baby?" And the infant, though only twenty-five days old, said, "This is he," pointing with the finger of his hand to the young man. Seeing this, those present glorified God. From that time on the lips of the slanderers, who had calumniated the man of God, were struck dumb.*

iniquus, 3: *uneven, unjust, unfair*

72. A BENEDICTINE ABBESS (?)

Died 1070 A. D.

Course 3

HYMN TO OUR SAVIOR*

Attributed by many to St. Bernard of Clairvaux

Original

1. Jesu dulcis memoria
Dans vera cordis gaudia:
Sed super mel et omnia
Ejus dulcis praesentia.

In prose

1. Jesu dulcis memoria
dans vera cordis gaudia:
sed super mel et omnia
Ejus dulcis praesentia (*in Eucharistia*).

ABBATISSA BENEDICTINA.

Jesu Dulcis Memoria.

VOCABULARY

1. memoria, 1: *memory, remembrance*
verus, 3: *true*
sed: *but, 119*
super; *above, 50, c*
mel, mellis, n: *honey*
is, ea, id: *that, he, she, it, 30, a; 1, f*

TRANSLATION

1. *The sweet remembrance of Jesus gives true joy to the heart, but His presence is sweet (in the Eucharist) above honey and all else.*

praesentia, 1: *presence*

* IAMBIC DIMETER (tetrapody), accentual: ♪ — | ♪ — | ♪ || — | ♪ ♪; cf. 139, 4

HYMN TO OUR SAVIOR

2. Nil canitur suavius;
Auditur nil jucundius;
Nil cogitatur dulcius,
Quam Jesus, Dei Filius.

3. Nec lingua valet dicere,
Nec littera exprimere,
Expertus potest credere,
Quid sit Jesum diligere.

4. Jesu, dulcedo cordium,
Fons vivus, lumen mentium,
Excedens omne gaudium,
Et omne desiderium.

5. Jesu, Rex admirabilis
Et triumphator nobilis,
Dulcedo ineffabilis,
Totus desiderabilis.

6. Jesu, spes poenitentibus,
Quam pius es petentibus!
Quam bonus Te quaerentibus!

2. Nil canitur suavius;
auditur nil jucundius;
nil cogitatur dulcius,
quam Jesus, Dei Filius.

3. Nec lingua valet dicere,
nec littera exprimere,
expertus potest credere,
quid sit Jesum diligere.

4. Jesu, dulcedo cordium.
fons vivus, lumen mentium,
excedens omne gaudium,
et omne desiderium.

5. Jesu, Rex admirabilis
et triumphator nobilis,
dulcedo ineffabilis,
totus desiderabilis.

6. Jesu, spes poenitentibus,
quam pius es petentibus!
Quam bonus Te quaerentibus!

Jesu Dulcis Memoria.

VOCABULARY

2. cano, 3, cecini, cantum: *to sing*, 31, a; 32, a
suavis, 2: *lovely*, 27, a; 28, a
audio, 4: *to hear*, 31, a; 32, a
cogito, 1: *to think of*, 31, a; 32, a
quam: *than*
filius, 2: *son*,

3. nec: *and not, nor*; nec—nec: *neither—nor*
lingua, 1: *language*
valeo, 2, -lui, -liturus: *to be healthy or well or able*,
dico, 3, dixi, dictum: *to say, tell*, 35, a (35, f)
littera, 1: *a character of abc; in pl: epistle, science*
exprimo, 3, -pressi, -pressum: *to express*, 35, a
experior, 4, -pertus: *try, experience, know by experi-*
quis, quid: *who, what?* 30, h (ence, 36, c

4. dulcedo, -dinis, f: *sweetness*, 23, II
fons, -ntis, m: *fount(ain), source*, 23, II, b
vivus, 3: *living*
mens, -ntis, f: *intellect, mind*, 23, II
excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to go out, surpass*, 36, a
desiderium, 2 (*fr. desidero*, 1, *to desire*): *desire*, 49, f

5. rex, regis, m: *king*
admirabilis, 2: *admirable, wonderful*, 49, i
triumphator, -is, m (*fr. triumpho*, 1, *to triumph*):
triumpher, conqueror, 49, d
ineffabilis, 2: *unutterable, ineffable*, 49, A; 49, i
desiderabilis, 2: *desirable, desired*, 49, i

6. spes, 5: *hope*, 25
poenitens, -ntis (*fr. poeniteo*, 2, -ui, -, *regret*): *peni-*
quam bonus, 3: *how good* (tent, 35, a; 73
pius, 3: *pious, loving*

TRANSLATION

2. *Nothing more lovely can be sung,
nothing more joyful can be heard,
nothing more charming can be thought of
than Jesus, the Son of God.*

jucundus, 3: *joyful*, 27, a; 28, a

3. *No tongue can tell,
nor letter express it,
only by experience can one believe
what it means to love Jesus.*

diligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to prize, love*, 35, a
sit: 132

4. *Jesus, Thou the sweetness of hearts,
living fount, light of intellects,
surpassing all joys
and every desire.*

5. *Jesus, Thou admirable King
and noble conqueror,
sweetness ineffable,
wholly to be desired.*

6. *O Jesus, hope of penitents,
How kind art Thou to suppliants!
How good to those who seek (Thee)!*

quaero, 3, quaesi(v)i, -situm: *to seek, ask*, 36, a

72. A BENEDICTINE ABBESS (?)

Died 1070 A. D.

Course 3

HYMN TO OUR SAVIOR

Sed quid invenientibus?

7. Qui Te gustant, esuriunt,
Qui bibunt, adhuc sitiunt;
Desiderare nesciunt
Nisi Jesum, quem diligunt.

8. Sis, Jesu, nostrum gaudium,
Qui es futurus praemium:
Sit nostra in te gloria
Per cuncta semper saecula.

Amen.

Sed quid invenientibus?

7. Qui Te gustant, esuriunt.
qui bibunt, adhuc sitiunt;
desiderare nesciunt
ni Te Jesum, quem diligunt.

8. Sis, Jesu, nostrum gaudium,
Qui futurus es praemium:
sit nostra in te gloria
per cuncta semper saecula.

Amen.

Jesu Dulcis Memoria.

VOCABULARY

invenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to find*, 36, a
qui, 3: *who, which, that*, 30, g

7. gusto, 1: *to taste*, 32, a
esurio, 4: *to hunger*, 32, a
bibō, 3, bibi, bibitum: *to drink*, 32, a
sitio, 4: *to thirst*, 32, a
desidero, 1: *to desire*, 35, a
nescio, 4: *not to know, to know nought*, 32, a

8. futurus, 3: *future*
praemium, 2: *reward; used as secondary complement*,
per: *through*, b, 50, a (cf. 59, B)
saeculum, 2: *age, century*

TRANSLATION

Yet what art Thou to those who find (Thee)!

7. *Those who taste Thee still hunger,
those who drink Thee still thirst for Thee;
they have no desire
except Thee, O Jesus, whom they love.*

ni or nisi: *unless, except, if not*, 109, d

8. *Jesus, be our joy,
who wilt be (our) reward:
may our glory be in Thee,
through all ages forever.*

Amen.

73. ADAM OF BREMEN

Died 1076 A. D.

Course 53

THE NORSEMEN DISCOVER AMERICA

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Praeterea unam adhuc insulam recitavit a mul-
tis in eo repertam oceano, quae dicitur Winland, eo
quod ibi vites sponte nascantur vinum optimum feren-
tes. Nam et fruges ibi non seminatās abundare non
famulosa opinione sed certa comperimus relatione Da-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Praeterea unam adhuc insulam memoravit (Da-
ⁿorum rex) ex multis in eo repertam Oceano, quae
Winland dicitur, cum ibi vites sponte nascantur vi-
num optimum ferentes. Nam et fruges ibi non satas
abundare non fabulosa opinione sed certa comperimus

ADAM BREMENSIS.

Norvegi Inveniunt Americam.

VOCABULARY

1. adhuc: *moreover, more*
[recito, 1: *to recite*]; memoro, 1: *to mention*
Danus, 2: *Dane*
reperio, 4, reperi, repertum: *to find, discover, reveal*
Oceanus, 2: *the sea which encompasses the earth*,
Winland, *the region of Nova Scotia in North America*
vitis, -is, f: *vine*; vinum, 2: *wine*
sponte, *feminine abl.: of itself, of one's own accord*
[semino, 1: *to beget, sow*]; sero, 3, sevi, satum: *to*
sow, plant

TRANSLATION

1. *In addition, from among the many islands found
in that ocean (the king of the Danes) mentioned yet
one more, which is named Winland, because vines
yielding the best wine thrive there without cultivation.
Not from exaggerated beliefs, but from the reliable
report of the Danes we learn that fruits also abound*

frux, frugis, f: *fruit, produce of the fields*
nascor, 3, natum: *to be born, spring forth*, 125, b
comperio, 4, -peri, -pertum: *to find out, discover*

THE NORSEMEN DISCOVER AMERICA

norum.

2. Item nobis retulit beatae memoriae pontifex Adalbertus in diebus antecessoris sui quosdam nobiles de Fresia viros causa pervagandi maris in Boream vela tetendisse. Relinquentes hinc Daniam, inde Britanniam, pervenerunt ad Orchadas. Quibus a laeva dimissis, cum Nordmanniam in dextris haberent, longo trajectu Glacialem Island collegerunt.

3. A quo loco maria sulcantes in ultimum septentrionis axem subito collapsi sunt, in illam tenebrosam rigentis oceani caliginem, quae vix oculis penetrari valeret. Et jam periculum caliginis et provinciam frigoris evadentes, insperate appulerunt ad quandam insulam altissimis in circuitu scopulis ritu oppidi munitam.

4. Huc visendorum gratia locorum egressi, reppere-

relatione Danorum.

2. Item nobis retulit beatae memoriae pontifex Adalbertus quosdam praedecessoris sui diebus nobiles de Frisia viros causa pervagandi maris in Boream vela tetendisse. Relinquentes hinc Daniam, inde Britanniam, ad Orchades pervenerunt. Quibus a laeva dimissis, cum Norvegiam a dextris haberent, longo trajectu Glacialem Insulam attigerunt.

3. A quo loco maria sulcantes in extremum septentrionis axem ex improviso illapsi sunt, in illam tenebrosam rigentis Oceani caliginem, quae vix oculis penetrari posset. Et jam periculum caliginis et plagam frigoris evadentes insperanter appulerunt ad quandam insulam altissimis in circuitu scopulis ritu oppidi munitam.

4. Huc visendorum gratia locorum egressi repere-

Norvegi Inveniunt Americam.

VOCABULARY

relatio, -nis, f (fr. refero, 3, retuli, relatum, to report, relate): report, reference, 49, a

2. item: likewise, in like manner, also
Frisia, 1: Friesland

pervagor, 1: to wander, rove about, 118

Bōrēas, 1, m: the north wind, the North, 19, c

velum, 2: sail

tendo, 3, tetendi, tentum: to stretch

relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: to leave (behind), abandon

hinc—inde: hence—thence, on this side—on the other

Orchades, -dum, f: the Orkney Isles; -as, Greek acc.

[Nordmannia, for:] Norvegia, 1: Norway

trajectus, 4 (fr. trajicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum, to throw across): crossing, passage, 49, a

glacialis, 2 (fr. glacies, 5, ice): icy, 40, r

3. sulco, 1: to furrow, plough

extremus, 3 (fr. exter, 3, outward): outermost, the extreme end, 27, j,

septemtrio, -nis, m: the Great Bear, Ursa, Dipper, (Charles' wain of seven stars; above its rear axle is the polar star, and below, the north pole), north

axis, -is, m: axle, earth pole

[subito: suddenly]

ex improviso: unexpectedly

[collabor, 3, -lapsum: to collapse]

illabor, 3, -lapsum: to fall, glide into

tenebrosus, 3 (fr. tēnebrae, -rarum, darkness): dark

rigeo, -gui, -: to be stiff, freeze

caligo, -ginis, f: fog, mist, vapor

penetro, 1: to pass into, penetrate; posset, 120, c, 6

periculum, 2 (fr. pereo, 4, -īvi, -itum, to perish): peril

4. viso, 3, visi, visum: to go to see, see often, visit, gratia: for the sake of, 50, d

TRANSLATION

there without being planted.

2. Likewise, Bishop Albert of blessed memory related that in the time of his predecessor noble men of Friesland (under Leif Ericson, the Viking, 1000 A. D.) set sail for the North to explore the seas. Leaving behind now Denmark, now England, they reached the Orkney Islands. Then passing by these at the left, and by Norway at the right, after a long voyage they reached Iceland.

insula, 1: island

[colligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: to bring together, collect]
attingo, 3, -igi, -tactum, (tr.): to arrive at, touch upon

3. From this place they kept sailing the seas and unexpectedly fell upon the extreme end of the north pole, into that dark mist of the freezing ocean, which the eyes can hardly pierce. Soon escaping the peril of fog and the region of the frost, unexpectedly, they approached a certain island, fortified like a city with very high rock walls.

frigus, -oris, n: cold, frost

insperatus, 3 (fr. spero, 1, to hope): un hoped for, unexpected

appello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: to drive, bring to, arrive at
circuitus, 4 (fr. circumeo, 4, to go around): circuit, scopulus, 2: rock, crag, cliff, 93, a (49 a,

ritus, 4: usage, ceremony, rite, manner, 88

munio, 4: to build, fortify

4. In order to explore the region, they disembarked
egredior, 3, -gressum: to go out, disembark, 40; 36, c (118

THE NORSEMEN DISCOVER AMERICA

runt homines in antris subterraneis meridiano tempore latitantes; pro quorum foribus *infinita* jacebat copia vasorum aureorum et ejusmodi metallorum, quae rara mortalibus et pretiosa putantur.

5. Itaque sumpta parte gazarum, quam sublevare poterant, laeti remiges festine remeant ad naves, cum subito *retro se videntes contemplati sunt* homines mirae altitudinis, quos nostri appellant Cyclops; eos antecedeant canes magnitudinem solitam excedentes.

6. Quorum incurso raptus est unus de sociis et in momento *laniatu* est coram eis; reliqui vero suscepti ad naves evaserunt periculum, gygantibus ut referebant, *pene* in altum vociferando sequentibus.

7. Tali fortuna comitati Fresones Bremam perveniunt, ubi Alebrando pontifici *ex ordine* cuncta nar-

runt homines in antris subterraneis meridiano tempore latitantes; pro quorum foribus *magna* jacebat copia vasorum aureorum et ejusmodi metallorum, quae *sunt* mortalibus et pretiosa putantur.

5. Itaque sumpta parte gazarum, quam sublevare poterant, laeti remiges festine remeantes ad naves, at subito *respicientes animadverterunt* homines mirae altitudinis, quos nostri appellant Cyclopes; ante eos *currebant* canes magnitudinem solitam excedentes.

6. Quorum incurso raptus est unus de sociis et momento *dilaniatus*; reliqui vero recepti ad naves periculum evaserunt gygantibus, ut referebant, *paene* in altum vociferando sequentibus.

7. Tali fortuna comitati Frisii Bremam pervenerunt, ubi Alebrando pontifici ordine cuncta narrantes

Norvegi Inveniunt Americam.

VOCABULARY

antrum, 2: *cave, grotto*
 subterraneus, 3 (fr. terra, 1, earth): *underground, subterranean*
 meridianus, 3 (fr. meridies, 5, m, noon): *of midday*
 latito, 1 (frequ. of laeto, 2, -tui, -): *to be hidden*
 foris, -is: *door; pro: for, at, 50, b*
 jaceo, 2, -cui, -citurus: *to lie, be placed*
 copia, 1: *plenty, opportunity, chance*

5. gaza, 1, a Pers. word used also by Cicero: *treasure*
 sublevo, 1: *to lift up* (ure)
 laetus, 3: *joyful, glad*
 festinus, 3 (fr. festino, 1, to make haste): *hastening*
 remeo, 1: *to go back, return* (hasty)
 remex, -migus, *rower, sailor*
 [retro: *backwards, back, behind*]
 respicio, 3, -pexi, -pectum: *to look back, 40*
 [contemplor, 1: *to consider carefully*]
 animadverto, 3, -rti, -rsum: *to take notice*
 mirus, 3: *wonderful*

6. incursum, 4 (fr. incurro, 3, -curri, -cursum, to run against): *attack, assault, 93, a*
 momentum, 2: *moment, 95*
 dilanio, 1: *to tear to pieces*
 [coram: *in the presence of, before, 50, b*]
 reliquus, 3 (fr. relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum, to leave): *rest*
 [suscipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to take up*]
 recipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: *to receive, withdraw*
 evado, 3, evasi, evasum: *to go out, escape*

7. comitor, 1: *to accompany, follow, 36, d*
 [Fresones for:] Frisii, -orum: *Frisians*
 Brema, 1: *Bremen, 21, a*
 pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to arrive*
 pontifex, -ficus: *high priest, bishop, archbishop, pontiff*

* Newfoundland dogs.

TRANSLATION

and at noon found men hiding in underground caves; at the entrance of these caves there was lying an abundance of vessels of gold and of those metals which are rare among men and are considered precious.

metallum, 2: *metal*
 rarus, 3: *rare*
 pretiosus, 3 (fr. pretium, 3, price): *precious*

5. Then the joyful oarsmen, taking along as much of (that) treasure as they could carry, (as) they (were) hastily returning to their galleys, and suddenly look(ed) backwards, saw men of marvelous height, whom our people call cyclops. Ahead of them ran dogs* much larger than usual.

Cyclops, -pis, m: *cyclops, one-eyed giant*
 [antecedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to go before, precede*]
 soleo, 2, -, solitum: *to be accustomed, be used to, 31, d*
 excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to pass out, exceed*

altitudo, -dinis, f (fr. altus, 3, high, deep): *height, 67, d*

6. One of the fellow-pirates was attacked by the dogs and in a moment torn to pieces. The rest withdrew to their ships and escaped the danger amid the shouts, so they said, of the giants who pursued them almost to the deep sea.

gigas, -gantis, m: *giant, 114, a*
 altum, 2 (fr. altus, 3, high, deep): *deep sea, 26, f*
 vociferor, 1: *to cry, shout, 117, e*

7. With (good) fortune (at their side), the Frisians arrived at Bremen, where they reported all their adventures to Alebrand, their bishop, and offered sacri-
 cunctus, 3: *all, the whole*
 narro, 1: *to relate, tell, narrate*

73. ADAM OF BREMEN

Died 1076 A. D.

Course 53

THE NORSEMEN DISCOVER AMERICA

rantes reversionis et salutis suae hostias immolarunt. reversionis et salutis hostias immolarunt.
(Gesta Pontificum Hamburgensis Ecclesiae)

Norvegi Inveniunt Americam.

VOCABULARY

reversio, -nis, f (fr. revertio, 3, -rti, -rsum: to return):
salus, -utis, f: health, safety, salvation (return
hostia, 1: sacrifice

TRANSLATION

lices for their safe return.
immolo, 1: to sacrifice, offer

74. WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY

1095-1143 A. D.

Course 95

HISTORY OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Verumtamen sunt quaedam de rege (Willelmo Rufo) praeclarae magnanimitatis exempla, quae posteris non inuidebo.

Venationi in quadam silva intentum nuntius detulit ex transmarinis partibus, obsessam esse civitatem Cenomanis, quam nuper fratre profecto suae potestati adjecerat.

2. Statim ergo ut expeditus erat retorsit equum iter ad mare convertens. Admonentibus ducibus exercitum advocandum, paratos componendos, "Videbo, ait, quis me sequetur; putatis me non habiturum homines? Si cognovi juventutem meam, etiam naufragio ad me venire volet."

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Verumtamen sunt quaedam regis (Guilielmi Rufi) praeclarae magnanimitatis exempla, quae nec posteris dissuadeo.

Venationi in quadam silva dedito nuntius detulit ex transmarinis partibus obsessam esse a Cenomanis civitatem, quam nuper fratre profecto suae ditioni adjecerat.

2. Statim ergo, ut rem expertus est, retorsit equum iter ad mare convertens. Admonentibus ducibus exercitum prius esse componendum paratosque convocandos, "Videbo," respondit, "quis me sequatur; putatisne me non habiturum homines? Sicut novi juventutem Anglicam, etiam naufragio post me veniet."

WILLELMUS MALMESBIRIENSIS.

Gesta Regum Anglorum.

VOCABULARY

1. verumtamen: but yet, nevertheless
magnanimitas, -tatis, f (fr. magnanimus, 3: high-minded): greatness of soul, 49, u
posterus, 3: subsequent; posterus, -orum: posterity
[invideo, 2, -visi, -visum: to envy, grudge]
dissuadeo, 2, -suasi, -suasum: to speak, exhort against,
venatio, -nis, f (fr. venor, 1: to hunt): hunting (78
[intentus, 3: attentive, ready for, anxious for]
deditus, 3: devoted, addicted, engaged in, 78
[detineo, 2, -tinui, -tentum: to hold back, detain]
defero, 3, -detuli, -delatum: to carry down, report, inform
transmarinus, 3: from beyond the sea, transmarine

2. [expedio, 4: to set free, dispatch]
experior, 4, expertum: to test, find, prove, know
retorqueo, 2, -torsus, -torsum: to twist, bend, turn back
converto, 3, -rti, -rsum: to turn to, convert
naufragium, 2: (fr. navis, frango, 3, fregi, fractum):
shipwreck, 49, f
[cognosco, 3, -gnovi, -gnitum: to become acquainted with]

TRANSLATION

1. There are, however, certain examples of the wonderful courage of William the Red which I recommend (even) to posterity. While he was busy hunting in some forest, a messenger from across the sea informed him that the city which he had recently added to his realm after his brother left, had been besieged by the Cenomanians.

obsideo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: to besiege, blockade
Cenomani, -orum: a Celtic people, Cenomanians
ditio, -nis, f: sovereignty, reign
adjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to throw to, to add, 40; 133, b

2. As soon, therefore, as he heard of the affair, he whirled his horse around turning his path to the sea. Although his generals advised him to recruit an army and to call those who were ready, he replied: "I shall see who follows me. Do you think that I shall not have men. As I know the English youth, they will follow me even through shipwreck."

prius: before (that), formerly, 27, g

HISTORY OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND

3. Hoc *igitur modo* paene solus ad mare pervenit. *Illum* statim transfretare volentem nautae exorant, ut pacem pelagi et ventorum clementiam *operiatur*. Atqui, inquit rex, "nunquam audivi regem naufragio interiisse. Quin potius solvite retinacula navium, videbitis elementa *jam conspirata* in meum obsequium."

4. Ponto transito obsessores ejus audita fama dissiliunt. Auctor turbarum Helias *quidam* capitur; cui ante se adducto rex *ludibundus*: "Habeo te, magister," dixit. At vero *illius* alta nobilitas, quae nesciret in tanto etiam periculo humilia sapere, humilia loqui:

5. "Fortuitu," inquit, "me cepisti; sed si possem evadere, *novi* quid facerem." Tunc *Willelmus* praefurore fere extra se *positus* et obuncans Heliam: "Tu," inquit, "nebulo! Tu quid faceres? Discede, abi, fuge! Concedo tibi, ut facias, quidquid poteris; et per vultum *de Luca*," sic enim jurabat, "nihil, si me viceris, pro hac venia tecum paciscar."

6. Nec *inferius* factum verbo fuit, sed continuo di-

3. Hoc *dicto* paene solus ad mare pervenit. *Eum* statim transfretare volentem nautae exorant, ut pacem pelagi et ventorum clementiam *expectaret*. "At," inquit rex, "nunquam audivi regem naufragio interiisse. *Quinimo* solvite retinacula navium, et videbitis elementa conspirare in meum obsequium."

4. Ponto transito obsessores audita ejus fama dissiliunt. Auctor turbarum *nomine* Helias capitur; cui ad se adducto rex *illudens*: "Habeo te," inquit, "magister!" At vero *ille* alta nobilitate, quae nesciret in tanto etiam periculo humilia sapere et loqui *humiliter*:

5. "Fortuito me," inquit, "cepisti: sed, si possem evadere, *novi*, quid *facturus sim*." Tunc *Gulielmus* praefurore fere extra se *raptus* et obtrectans Heliam: "Tu," inquit, "nebulo; Tu quid faceres? Discede, abi, fuge! Concedo tibi, ut facias, quidquid poteris; et per vultum *Sancti Lucae*," sic enim jurare *solebat*," nihil, si me viceris, pro hac venia tecum paciscar."

6. Nec fuit verbo *minus* factum et continuo dimisit

Gesta Regum Anglorum.

VOCABULARY

3. paene: *almost, nearly*
transfretio, 1 (*fr. fretum, 2, strait, sea*): to cross a sea, pervenit, exorant, 101 (49, l)
pelagus, 2, n: *sea, ocean*
[operio, 4, -rui, -rtum: to cover]
intereo, 4: *to perish, 42, 3*
[potius: *rather, 28, f*]: *quinim(m)o: nay more, even*
retinaculum, 2 (*fr. retineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: to retain*):
band, rope, cord, 49, f
conspiro, 1: *to blow together, agree, conspire*

4. pontus, 2: *depth, deep sea*
obsessor, -is, m (*fr. obsideo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: to besiege*): *besieger, 49, d*
dissilio, 4, -lui, -sultum: *to leap apart, 101*
[*ludibundus, 3: playful, sportive*], 49, h
illudo, 3, -lusi, -lusum: *to mock at, deride, 79*
humile sapio, 3, -pui, or -ii, -: *to be humble, 63*

5. fortuitus, 3: *accidental, 28, a*
evado, 3, -vasi, -vasum: *to go out, escape; possem, 135, d*
novi, -visse, -notum: *to know, 45, 14; (in pres. meaning it is of primary tense)*
furor, -is, m (*fr. furo, 3: to rage*): *madness*
obtrecto, 1: *to disparage*
[obunco, 1 (*fr. obuncus, 3: bent inwards*): *to bend*]
nebulo, -nis, m (*fr. nebula, 1: fog*): *good for nothing, wretch, 49, z*
faceres, 103, b

6. [inferior, 2 (*fr. inferus, 3: low*): *lower, 27, f*]
continuo: *immediately, at once, 28, a*

TRANSLATION

3. *After saying this, he arrived at the sea almost alone. Since he wanted to sail across immediately, the sailors begged him to wait for the calm of the sea and a favorable wind. But the king declared: "I have never heard that a king suffered shipwreck. Nay more, just loose the anchors of the ships, and you will see the elements conspire to my aid.*

obsequium, 2 (*fr. obsequor, 3, -secutum: to comply*):
compliance, deference, 49, f

4. *When he had crossed the sea, the besiegers had heard of it, and fled away. The leader of the rebels, Helias by name, was seized; the (king) in a jeering way said to him (after he had been) brought to him: "I have you, O Master!" But because of his high nobility which did not know how to think or to speak humbly even in such great danger, Helias said:*

5. *"By luck you captured me; but if I could escape, I know what I should do." Then William almost beside himself with rage, said disparagingly: "You wretch! What would you do? Go on, run, flee! I let it up to you to do whatever you can, and by the face of St. Luke,—thus he used to swear—I shall never seek terms with you, if you conquer me."*

concedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to cease, yield, allow*
venia, 1: *grace, favor, indulgence*
paciscor, 3, pactum: *to make a bargain, stipulate*

6. *Nor was his deed smaller than his word, and he*

74. WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY

1095-1143 A. D.

Course 95

HISTORY OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND

misit evadere miratus potius quam insectatus fugientem. Quis talia de illiterato homine crederet? Et fortassis erit aliquis, qui Lucanum legens opinetur Willelmum haec exempla de Julio Caesare mutuatum esse.

eum spernens minimeque insectans fugientem. Quis talia de illiterato homine crederet? Et fortasse aliquis Lucanum legens opinetur Gulielmum hoc exemplum a Julio Caesare mutuatum esse;

7. Sed non erat ei tantum studii vel otii ut litteras unquam audiret. Si Christianitas nostra pateretur, ita possit dici, quod anima Caesaris transierit in regem Willelmum.

7. ast non ei erat tanta studiorum neque otii oportunitas, ut litterarum institutionem unquam audiret. Si Christiana doctrina admitteret, non esset dubium, quin anima Caesaris transisset in regem Gulielmum.

Gesta Regum Anglorum.

TRANSLATION }>

sperno, 3, sprevi, spretum: to reject, scorn, spurn
minime (*superl. of parum, a little*): least of all
insector, 1 (*fr. insequor, -secutum*): to pursue, 49, j;
36, c
illiteratus, 3 (*fr. litterae, -arum: science*): illiterate,
49, l
crederet, 103, d
Marcus Annaeus Lucanus, author of Pharsalia, epic

7. institutio, -nis, f (*fr. instituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: to arrange, settle, instruct, teach*): instruction
[patior, 3, passum: to suffer, endure, bear]
admitto, 3, -misi, -missum: to let go, allow, admit, 109,
transeo, 4: to go over, pass through, 99 (c

<< VOCABULARY

released him immediately with scorn not pursuing him at all (when he) fled. Who could believe such things of an unlearned man? And perhaps someone in reading Lucanus, would think that William borrowed this example from Julius Caesar.

poem of the civil war between Caesar and Pompey; died 65, A. D.
mutuor, 1: to borrow

7. But he did not have such opportunity for study or leisure even to hear literary instruction. If the Christian teaching would permit, there should be no doubt that the soul of Caesar had entered into King William?

75. ST. BERNARD OF CLAIRVAUX

of Clear, Classical and Voluble Style

1090-1153 A. D.

Course 85

HOMILY

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Quae est haec virgo tam venerabilis, ut salutetur ab Angelo, tam humilis, ut desponsata sit fabro?

Pulchra permixtio virginitatis et humilitatis; nec mediocriter placet Deo illa anima, in qua et humilitas commendat virginitatem, et virginitas exornat humilitatem.

Sed quanta putas veneratione digna est, in qua hu-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Quae est haec virgo tam venerabilis, ut salutetur ab Angelo, tam humilis, ut desponsata sit fabro?

Pulchra permixtio virginitatis et humilitatis; nec mediocriter placet Deo ea anima, in qua et humilitas commendat virginitatem, et virginitas exornat humilitatem.

Sed quanta putas veneratione dignam esse, in qua

SANCTUS BERNARDUS CLARAVALLENSIS.

Homilia.

VOCABULARY

1. saluto, 1: to greet, salute, 124, b
desponso, 1 (*fr. spondeo, 2, sponondi, sponsum, to promise*): to betroth, espouse, 124, b
faber, -bri, m: craftsman
permixtio, -nis f (*fr. permisceo, -cui, -mixtum, to mix*): a blending, 49, a
mediocris, 2: moderate, middling, mediocre, 28, a
commendo, 1: to recommend
exorno, 1: to provide plentifully, adorn, ornament

TRANSLATION

1. Who is this Virgin, so venerable that she is saluted by an Angel, so humble that she is espoused to a carpenter?

O exquisite union of virginity and humility. That soul is indeed not a little pleasing to God, in which humility graces virginity and virginity adorns humility.

But of what great honor do you not deem her worthy

HOMILY

militatem exaltat, fecunditas, et partus consecrat virginitatem.

2. Audis virginem, audis humilem. Si non potes imitari virginitatem humilis, imitare humilitatem virginis.

Laudabilis virtus virginitas, sed magis necessaria humilitas: illa consulitur, ista praecipitur: ad illam invitari, ad istam cogeri.

De illa dicitur: "Qui potest capere, capiat;" de ista dicitur: "Nisi quis efficiatur sicut parvulus iste, non intrabit in regnum caelorum."

3. Potes denique sine virginitate salvari; sine humilitate non potes. Potest, inquam, placere humilitas, quae virginitatem deplorat amissam; sine humilitate autem, audeo dicere, nec virginitas Mariae placuisset. "Super quem," inquit, "requiescet Spiritus meus, nisi super humilem et quietem?" Super humilem dixit, non super virginem.

4. Patet itaque, quia, *ut* de Spiritu sancto conciperet, sicut ipsa perhibet: "Respexit humilitatem ancillae suae Deus," potius quam virginitatem.

humilitatem exaltat fecunditas, et partus consecrat virginitatem?

2. Audis virginem, audis humilem. Si non potes imitari virginitatem humilis, imitare humilitatem virginis.

Laudabilis virtus *est* virginitas, sed magis necessaria humilitas: illa consulitur, ista praecipitur: ad illam invitari, ad istam cogeri.

De illa dicitur: "Qui potest capere, capiat;" de ista dicitur: "Nisi quis efficiatur sicut parvulus iste, non intrabit in regnum caelorum."

3. Potes denique sine virginitate salvari; sine humilitate non potes. Potest, inquam, placere humilitas, quae virginitatem deplorat amissam; sine humilitate autem, audeo dicere, nec virginitas Mariae placuisset. "Super quem," inquit, "requiescet Spiritus meus, nisi super humilem et quietem?" Super humilem dixit, non super virginem.

4. Patet itaque de Spiritu sancto *concepisse*, quia, sicut ipsa perhibet: "Respexit humilitatem ancillae suae Deus," potius quam virginitatem.

Homilia.

VOCABULARY

exalto, 1 (*fr.* altus, 3, *high*): to lift up, extol, 133, b
fecunditas, -tatis, f (*fr.* fecundus, 3, *prolific*): fruitfulness

2. imitor, 1: to imitate, 108, a

consulo, 3, -lui, -ltum, alicui: to counsel; consulo
aliquem: to consult, 81

praecipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to instruct, prescribe,
invito, 1: invite (command, 48, e

cogo, 3, coëgi, coactum: to bring together, compel

capio, 3, cepi, captum: to seize, catch, comprehend

efficio, 3, effeci, effectum: to produce, effect, build,
109, b, d

parvulus, 3 (*fr.* parvus, 3, *little*): very little or small,
49, p

intro, 1: to go in, enter, (with or without in and acc.)
61, a

3. denique: at last, in short, then indeed

salvo, 1: to save

deploro, 1: to lament, bewail, deplore

amitto, 3, amisi, amissum: to let go, lose

requiesco, 3, -quievi, -quietum: to rest, repose

quietus, 3: quiet, peaceful

4. pateo, 2, patui, -: to be open, clear, 57, 4

concupio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to conceive, comprehend,

perhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: to propose, speak, tell (grasp

respicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum: to look at or back

ancilla, 1: maid servant, handmaid

TRANSLATION

in whom (divine) fecundity exalts humility and the birth (of a divine child) consecrates virginity?

partus, 4 (*fr.* pario, 3, peperi, partum, to bear): birth

2. You hear her called a virgin, you hear her called humble. If you cannot imitate the virginity of the humble, imitate the humility of the virgin.

The virtue of virginity is praiseworthy, but humility is more necessary. The former is of counsel, the latter of precept. You are invited to the former, to the latter you are compelled.

Of the former, ~~is~~ said: "Let him take it who can take it;" about the latter it is declared: "Unless a man become as this little child he cannot enter the kingdom of heaven."

caelum, 2: sky, air, weather; caeli, -orum: heaven

3. Moreover, you can be saved without virginity, without humility you cannot. I say, humility which sorrows over lost virginity can be pleasing, but, I dare say, without humility not even the virginity of Mary would have been pleasing. (For) He has said: "Upon whom shall my Spirit rest unless (it be) upon the humble and meek?" He has said "upon the humble," not "upon the virgin."

4. It is manifest that she conceived by the Holy Ghost, because, as she herself says, "He regarded the humility of His handmaid" rather than her virginity.

HOMILY

Et si placuit ex virginitate, tamen ex humilitate concepit. Unde constat, *quia etiam*, ut placeret virginitas, *humilitas* procul dubio fecit.

5. Et erat subditus *illis*. Quis quibus? Deus hominibus; Deus, inquam, cui Angeli subditi sunt, cui Principatus et Potestates obediunt, subditus erat Mariae, nec tantum Mariae, sed etiam Joseph propter Mariam.

6. Mirare ergo utrumlibet, et elige, quid amplius mireris: sive Filii benignissimam dignationem, sive parentum excellentissimam dignitatem. Utrumque stupor, utrimque miraculum.

(*Hom. I. super "Missus est."*)

Etsi placuit virginitate, tamen humilitate concepit. Unde constat *humilitatem* procul dubio fecisse, ut placeret etiam virginitas.

5. Et erat subditus *eis*. Quis quibus? Deus hominibus; Deus, inquam, cui Angeli subditi sunt, cui Principatus et Potestates obediunt, subditus erat Mariae, nec tantum Mariae, sed etiam Joseph propter Mariam.

6. Mirare ergo utrumlibet, et elige, quid amplius mireris: sive Filii benignissimam dignationem, sive parentum excellentissimam dignitatem. Utrumque stupor, utrimque miraculum.

Homilia.

VOCABULARY

consto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to consist, be certain, cost*,
procul: *afar off, far away*, 50, b (57, 4)

5. subdo, 3, subdidi, subditum: *to set under, subject*, 78 or 79

principatus, 4: *princely rank*; potestas, -tatis, f: *power* (high rank in angels' choir)

obedio, 4: *to obey*, 80, l

Joseph, *Hebrew, indecl.*: *the husband of the Blessed Virgin Mary*

6. uterlibet, 3 (*fr. uter, 3, and libet, it pleases; the latter indecl.*): *which ever of the two you please*, 30, k

eligo, 3, elegi, electum: *to pick out, choose, select*, amplius (*fr. amplius, 3, large*): *more, rather* (108, a mireris, 132)

dignatio, -nis, f (*fr. dignor, 1, to deign*): *benignity, condescension*

TRANSLATION

And though she pleased by her virginity, she conceived by her humility. Wherefore it is evident beyond doubt that her humility made also her virginity pleasing.

5. *"And He was subject to them." Who was subject to whom? God, to men. God, I say, He to Whom the angels are subject, Whom the angelical ranks of Principalities and Powers obey, was subject to Mary, and not only to Mary, but also to Joseph because of (his relationship to) Mary.*

6. *Admire either of these two; and select which you should admire more: the benign condescension of the Son, or the supreme dignity of the parents. On both sides amazement, on both sides a marvel.*

dignitas, -tatis, f (*fr. dignus, 3, worthy*): *worth, dignity*
utrimque: *on or from both sides* (ty
stupor, -is, m (*fr. stupeo, -ui, -, to be stunned*):
amazement

76. BERNARDUS DE MORLAIX (CLUNY)

XII. Century

Course 9

HYMN TO THE HOLY VIRGIN*

Original

1. Omni die dic Mariae
Mea laudes anima.

In prose

1. Omni die dic Mariae
laudes, mea anima.

BERNARDUS CLUNIACENSIS.

Omni Die Dic Mariae.

VOCABULARY

1. dico, 3, dixi, dictum: *to say*, 34, c
Maria, 1: *Mary, the Virgin Mother of the Savior*
laus, -dis, f: *praise*, 23, II

* TROCHAIC DIMETER or tetrapody, accentual: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | — ∪; every second line catalectic and rhyming: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | ∪; cf. 139, 4, c

TRANSLATION

1. *Sing daily to Mary
praises, O my soul;*

76. BERNARDUS DE MORLAIX (CLUNY)

XII. Century

Course 9

HYMN TO THE HOLY VIRGIN

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>Ejus festa, ejus gesta
Cole devotissima.</p> <p>2. Contemplare et mirare
Ejus celsitudinem;
Dic felicem genitricem,
Dic beatam Virginem.</p> <p>3. Sine fine dic reginae
Mundi laudem, cantica.
Ejus bona semper sona;
Semper <i>illam</i> praedica.</p> <p>4. Quamvis sciam, quod Mariam
Nemo digne praedicet,
Tamen vanus et insanus
Est, qui <i>illam</i> reticet.</p> <p>5. O cunctarum feminarum
Decus atque gloria!
Quam electam et evectam
Scimus super omnia.</p> <p>6. Reparatrix, consolatrix</p> | <p>Ejus festa, ejus gesta
cole devotissima.</p> <p>2. Contemplare et mirare
ejus celsitudinem;
dic felicem genitricem,
dic beatam Virginem.</p> <p>3. Sine fine dic reginae
mundi laudem, cantica.
Ejus bona semper sona;
semper <i>ipsam</i> praedica.</p> <p>4. Quamvis sciam, quod Mariam
nemo digne praedicet,
tamen vanus et insanus
est, qui <i>eam</i> reticet.</p> <p>5. O cunctarum feminarum
decus atque gloria!
Quam electam et evectam
scimus super omnia.</p> <p>6. Reparatrix, consolatrix</p> |
|--|--|

Omni Die Dic Mariae.

VOCABULARY

festum, 2: *feast*
gestum, 2: *deed, achievement*
colo, 3, -lui, -cultum: *cultivate, honor, venerate, 34, a*
devotus, 3: *devout, devoted, 27*

2. contemplor, 1: *to consider, contemplate, 31, c;*
miror, 1: *to admire, 31, c; 34, a* (34, a
celsitudo, -dinis, f (fr. celsus, 3, *high, 49, u*): *high-*
ness, excellence, 23, II
felix, -licis: *happy*
genitrix, -ricis, f (fr. gigno, 3, genui, genitum, *to be-*

3. sine, *prep.: without, 50, a*
finis, -is, m: *end, 23, I*
mundus, 2: *world*
canticum, 2 (fr. canto, 1, *to chant*): *song, hymn, 49, f*
bonus, 3: *good, 26, f*
praedico, 1: *to proclaim, praise, glorify, 34, a*

4. quamvis: *though, 120, c, 3*
quod: *that, 131; even Cicero used quod instead of*
vanus, 3: *vain* (acc. w. inf.: *admirantes, quod . . .*
insanus, 3: *insane*
reticeo, 2, -cui, -: *to be silent, conceal; (in Latin*
transitive); 120, c, 3

5. femina, 1: *the female, woman*
eligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to select, 35, b*
eveho, 3, -vexi, -vectum: *to carry out, raise, 36, b*
scio, 4: *to know, 57, 4*

6. reparatrix, -icis, f (fr. reparo, 1, *to repair*): *re-*
pairer, restorer, 49, d (soler, 49, d
consolatrix, -icis, f (fr. consolor, 1, *to console*): *con-*

TRANSLATION

*venerate her feasts
and her most holy deeds.*

2. *Contemplate and admire
her excellence;
call her a happy mother,
call her a blessed virgin.*

(get): *one who bears, mother, 49, d*

3. *Without end give praise, sing songs
to this Queen of the world.
Proclaim her goodness forever;
glorify her always.*

4. *Though I know that no one
can praise Mary worthily,
yet he is vain and foolish
who is silent about her.*

5. *Ornament and glory
of all women,
whom we know was selected
and raised above all.*

6. *O healer and consoler*

HYMN TO THE HOLY VIRGIN

Desperantis animae,
A pressura, quae ventura
Malis est, me redime.

7. Commendare me dignare
Christo tuo Filio,
Ut non cadam, sed evadam
De mundi naufragio.
Amen.

desperantis animae,
A pressura, quae ventura
malis est, me redime.

7. Commendare me dignare
Christo tuo Filio,
ne fors cadam, sed evadam
de mundi naufragio.
Amen.

Omni Die Dic Mariae.

VOCABULARY

despero, 1: *to despair*, 36, a
pressura, 1: *pressure, affliction, trial*
venio, 4, veni, ventum: *to come*, 36, f; 111, c
redimo, 3, -demi, -demptum: *to ransom, save*, 34, a

7. commendo, 1: *recommend*, 57, 3
dignor, 1: *to disdain*, 34, a
cado, 3, cecidi, casum: *to fall*, 124, a
evado, 3, -vasi, -vasum: *to go out, escape*, 124, a
naufragium, 2: *shipwreck*, 90

TRANSLATION

*of the despairing soul:
from the misfortune which is to befall
the wicked, preserve me.*

*7. Deign to recommend me
to Christ, thy Son,
that I may not fall, but escape
from the shipwreck of the world.*

77. ADAM OF SAINT VICTOR

Died 1182 A. D.

Course 5

HYMN TO ST. STEPHEN*

Original

1. Heri mundus exultavit
Et exsultans celebravit
Christi natalitia;
Heri chorus angelorum
Prosecutus est caelorum
Regem *cum* laetitia.

2. Protomartyr et Levita
Clarus fide, clarus vita,

In prose

1. Heri mundus exultavit
et exsultans celebravit
Christi natalitia;
heri chorus angelorum
prosecutus est caelorum
Regem *in* laetitia.

2. Protomartyr et Levita
clarus fide, clarus vita,

ADAM DE SANCTO VICTORE.

De Sancto Stephano.

VOCABULARY

1. heri: *yesterday*
mundus, 2: *world*; (mundus, 3: *clean, neat, elegant,
refined*)
exulto, 1: *to leap up, rejoice exceedingly*, 32, d
celebro, 1: *to celebrate*, 32, d
natalitia, -orum: *birthday, festival*, 20
chorus, 2: *choir, troop*, 20
angelus, 2: *angel*, 26
prosequor, 3, secutum: *to follow, honor, adorn*, 32, d

2. protomartyr, -tyris, m: *the first martyr*, 22
Levita, 1: *Levite (descendant of Levi), deacon*, 19
clarus, 3: *clear, bright, renowned*, 26

TRANSLATION

1. *Yesterday, the world rejoiced
and in its joy celebrated
the festival of the birth of Christ.
Yesterday, the choirs of angels
paid homage to the King of heaven
in excessive delight.*

[cum: *together with*]
laetitia, 1: *joy, delight, pleasing appearance, joyous
song*, 19

2. *The Protomartyr and Levite,
glorious in his faith, glorious in his life,*

fides, 5: *faith*, 25; 84

* TROCHAIC DIMETER or tetrapody, ^{with four} accentual and ^{es} rhythmic _{cross}: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | — ∪ ; every third line
catalectic: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | ∪ ; cf. 139, 4, c.

77. ADAM OF SAINT VICTOR

Died 1182 A.D.

Course 5

HYMN TO ST. STEPHEN

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p style="text-align: center;">Clarus et miraculis
Sub hac luce triumphavit
Et triumphans insultavit
Stephanus incredulis.</p> <p>3. Fremunt ergo tamquam ferae,
Quia victi defecere
Lucis adversarii:
Falsos testes statuunt
Et linguas exacuunt
Viperarum filii.</p> <p>4. En a dextris Dei stantem
Jesum pro te dimicantem
Stephanē, considera:
Tibi caelos reserari,
Tibi Christum revelari
Clama voce libera.</p> <p>5. Ne peccatum statuatur,
Genu ponit et precatur
Condolens insaniae:</p> | <p style="text-align: center;">clarus et miraculis
sub hac luce triumphavit
et triumphans insultavit
Stephanus incredulis.</p> <p>3. Fremunt ergo tamquam ferae,
quia victi defecere
lucis adversarii:
falsos testes statuunt
et linguas exacuunt
viperarum filii.</p> <p>4. En a dextris Dei stantem
Jesum pro te dimicantem
Stephane, considera:
tibi caelos reserari,
tibi Christum revelari
clama voce libera.</p> <p>5. Ne peccatum statuatur,
genu ponit et precatur
condolens insaniae:</p> |
|--|--|

De Sancto Stephano.

VOCABULARY

miraculum, 2: *miracle*, 20; 84
sub: *under*, 50, c
hic, 3: *this*, 30, f
triumpho, 1: *to triumph*, 36, a
insulto, 1: *to leap at, scoff at, revile, insult*, 32, d; 79
Stephanus, *Greek*, 2: *Stephen, (wreath(ed))*, 20

3. fremo, 3, -mui, -mitum: *rage, snort, growl*, 32, a
ergo: *therefore*
tamquam: *as, like (as), just as, as if*
fera, 1: *wild beast*, 19
quia: *because, for*
vinco, 3, vici, victum: *to conquer, defeat*, 36, b
deficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: *to fail, fall away*, 32, d
adversarius, 2: *opponent, adversary, enemy*, 26
falsus, 3: *false*, 26
testis, -is, m: *witness*, 22

4. en: *behold*, 52
dexter, -tra, -trum: *right, skilful*; dextra, 1: *right hand*; dextra, -orum, n: *right side*; a dextris: *at the right side of*, 26, f
sto, 1, steti, statum: *to stand*, 36, a
dimico, 1: *to fight*, 36, a
considero, 1: *to realize, consider*, 34, a
resero, 1: *to disclose, open*, 31, b; 35, a
revelo, 1: *to reveal*, 31, b; 35, a

5. ne, *conjunction*: *lest*, 124, a
peccatum, 2: *sin*, 20
statuo, 3, *see above*: *to state*, 32, a
genu, 4: *knee*, 24; genu pono: *kneel down*, 24
pono, 3, posui, positum: *to put, place*, 32, a
precor, 1: *to pray*, 31, c; 32, a
condoleo, 2, -lui, -, *to pity*, 36, a; 79

TRANSLATION

*and glorious in his miracles,
triumphed within this Light
and by triumphing Stephen
heaped insult upon the infidels.*

incredulus, 3: *incredulous, unfaithful*, 26; 79

*3. Therefore do they howl as wild beasts,
for they have stunk down defeated,
enemies of the Light
False witnesses they bring forth,
and, offspring of vipers,
they sharpen their tongues.*

statuo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to put, establish, decide*, 32, a
exacuo, 3, -cui, -cutum: *to sharpen*, 32, a
vipera, 1: *viper, adder*

*4. Behold; standing at the right of God,
Jesus fighting for thee,
O Stephen, and consider,
That to thee the heavens are open,
to thee Christ is revealed;
Proclaim it with unchecked voice.*

clamo, 1: *to shout or cry aloud, proclaim*, 34, a; 57, 4

*5. Lest (his death) be fore sin imputed,
He kneels down and prays
In pity of their folly.*

insania, 1: *madness, insanity*, 19; 79
sic: *thus, so, this way*

HYMN TO ST. STEPHEN

In Christo sic obdormivit
Et cum Christo semper vivit
Martyrium primitiae.

In Christo sic obdormivit
et cum Christo semper vivit
Martyrium primitiae.

De Sancto Stephano.

VOCABULARY

obdormio, 4: *to fall asleep, die, succumb*, 32, *d*
vivo, 3, vixi, victum: *to live*, 32, *a*
primitiae, -arum, f: *the first fruit*, 19; *used as ap-
positive*

TRANSLATION

*Thus he fell asleep in Christ
and with Christ lives eternally,
the first (flower) of the martyrs.*

78. WILLIAM, THE ARCHBISHOP OF TYRE

of Excellent Classical Style

1130-1190 A. D.

Course 79

EXHORTATION OF URBAN II TO THE FIRST CRUSADE (1095)

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Nostis, fratres dilectissimi, et vestram nosse id expedit charitatem, quomodo humani generis Reparator, pro nostra omnium salute carnem assumens, et homo inter homines conversatus terram promissionis, quam pridem patribus promiserat, propria illustravit praesentia, et assumptae dispensationis operibus et crebra simul miraculorum exhibitione reddidit specialiter insignem.

2. Id enim et Veteris et Novi, paene in omnibus syllabis, docet series Testamenti. Quadam sane dilectionis praerogativa certum est eam dilexisse, *illa*, quod eam orbis partem, imo particulam, haereditatem suam dignatus est appellare, cum "ejus sit omnis terra et plenitudo."

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Nostis, fratres dilectissimi, et vestram nosse id expedit charitatem, quomodo humani generis Reparator, pro nostra omnium salute carnem assumens, et homo inter homines conversatus terram promissionis, quam pridem patribus promiserat, propria illustraverit praesentia, et assumptae dispensationis operibus et crebra simul miraculorum exhibitione reddiderit specialiter insignem.

2. Id enim et Veteris et Novi paene omnibus syllabis docet series *librorum* Testamenti. Quadam sane dilectionis praerogativa certum est eam dilexisse, *quia* eam orbis partem, imo particulam, dignatus est haereditatem suam appellare, cum "ejus sit omnis terra et ejus plenitudo."

GULIELMUS TYRENSIS ARCHIEPISCOPUS.

Ex Historia Crucigerorum.

VOCABULARY

1. expedio, 4: *to free, help; as impersonal: be expedient, useful*, 48, *d*
Reparator, -is, m (fr. reparo, 1, *to restore*): Redeemer
assumo, 3, asumpsi, assumptum: *to take on*
conversor, 1: *to be in contact with, converse*, 36, *c*
pridem: *long ago, long since*
illustro, 1: *to enlighten, explain, elucidate*, 132
creber, -bra, -brum: *thick, crowded, frequent*
exhibitio, -nis, f (fr. exhibeo, 2, -bui, -bitum, *to show*): *to display*, 93, *a*
reddo, 3, reddidi, redditum: *to give back, fulfill, render*, 132

2. testamentum, 2: *last will, testament*
syllaba, 1: *syllable*
series, 5: *row, line, lineage, succession*
sane: *really, indeed, certainly*
orbis, -is, m: *circle, circle of the world, disk*
haereditas, -tatis, f (fr. haeres, -redis, c, *heir*): *inherit-
dignor, 1: to regard as worthy of oneself, deign* (ance-
cum, 125, *b*

TRANSLATION

1. You know well, dearly beloved brethren, and it behooves your charity to know how the Redeemer of the human race, assuming flesh for the salvation of us all and dwelling as a man among men, graced with His presence the land which He had long ago promised to our fathers, and which He signally favored by His own mission work, and by a frequent manifestation of miracles.

insignis, 2 (fr. signum, 2, *sign*): *remarkable, eminent*, 59, *A*

2. All the books of the Old and the New Testament manifest this fact in almost every word. He surely loved that earth with a certain predilection, because He deigned to name that portion of the earth as His inheritance, although "He possessed the whole world and the fulness thereof."

plenitudo, -dinis, f (fr. plenus, 3, *plain, full*): *fulness, completeness*, 49, *u*

EXHORTATION OF URBAN II TO THE FIRST CRUSADE (1095)

3. Unde per Isaiam ait: "Haereditas mea Israel;" et item: "Vinea Domini Sabaoth domus Israel est." Et licet totam in partem praecipuam sibi dedicaverit ab initio, peculiarem tamen Urbem sanctam sibi adoptavit in propriam, testante Propheta, qui ait: "Diligit Dominus portas Sion super omnia tabernacula Jacob."

4. De qua gloriosa dicuntur, videlicet quod in ea docens, *passus* et resurgens Salvator salutem operatus est in medio terrae; ad hoc a saeculis praelecta, ut tantorum esset conscia et *cella* familiaris mysteriorum. Electa nimirum, *quod* ipse qui elegit, testatur dicens: "Et de Hierusalem civitate, quam elegi, veniet vobis Salvator."

5. Haec igitur salutis nostrae incunabula, Domini patriam, religionis matrem, populus absque Deo, ancillae filius Aegyptiae, possidet violenter; captivatis liberae filiis extremas imponit condiciones, quibus versa vice merito servire tenebatur. Sed quid scriptum

3. Unde per Isaiam ait: "Haereditas mea Israel;" et item: "Vinea Domini Sabaoth domus Israel est." Et licet totam sibi in partem praecipuam dedicaverit ab initio, peculiariter tamen Urbem sanctam sibi adoptavit in propriam testante Propheta, qui ait: "Diligit Dominus portas Sion super omnia tabernacula Jacob."

4. De qua gloriosa dicuntur, videlicet quod in ea docens, *patiens* et resurgens Salvator salutem operatus est *quasi* in medio terrae; ad hoc a saeculis praelecta, ut tantorum esset conscia et *locus* familiaris mysterium. Electa nimirum, *quia* ipse, qui elegit, testatur dicens: "Et de civitate Jerusalem, quam elegi, veniet vobis Salvator."

5. Haec igitur salutis nostrae incunabula, Domini patriam, religionis matrem, populus absque Deo, ancillae filius Aegyptiae, possidet violenter; captivatis liberae filiis extremas imponit condiciones, quibus versa vice merito servire teneatur. Sed quid est scrip-

Ex Historia Crucigerorum.

VOCABULARY

3. Isaias, 1: *Isaias, (the prophet), 19, c*
vineam, 1: *vineyard*
Sabaoth, Hebrew, indecl.: *hosts, armies; (here in the gen.)*
Israel, indecl. or -elis, *surname of Jacob and his offspring, 120, b (spring, (here in the gen.))*
praecipuus, 3: *peculiar, especial*
dedico, 1: *to consecrate, dedicate*
peculiaris, 2: *proper, special, peculiar, 28, a*
adopto, 1: *to adopt, 100*
testor, 1: *to bear witness, give evidence, 114, a*
diligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum: *to prize, love, esteem*
porta, 1: *gate*

4. resurgo, 3, resurrexi, resurrectum: *to rise up medium, 2: the middle (again)*
saeculum, 2: *age, century*
praeeligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: *to select before; ut, 124, a*
consciis, 3: *privy to, cognizant of, 66, b*
[cella, 1: *cell, room*]
mysterium, 2, Greek: *mystery*
nimirum (*i. e. non est mirum*): *no wonder, of course*
testor, 1: *to bear witness, 131*
Jerusalem, indecl. or *Jerusolyma, -orum: Jerusalem*

5. incunabula, -orum: *swaddling clothes, birth place*
absque: *without, 50, b*
ancilla, 1: *handmaid, bond-woman*
Aegyptius, 3 (*fr. Aegyptus, 2, f, Egypt, 16, b*):
Egyptian
violens, -ntis: *vehement, violent, 28, a*
captivo, 1 (*fr. captivus, 2, captive*): *to capture, 49, l*
extremus, 3 (*fr. exter, 3, outside*): *outermost, extreme*
vice versa: *conversely, on the contrary, vice versa, 114, b*
merito (*fr. meritum, 2, reward*): *deservedly, with*

TRANSLATION

3. Hence, He says by (the mouth of) Isaias, "Israel is my inheritance," and again, "The vineyard of the Lord of Sabaoth is the house of Israel." And though from the beginning He dedicated the whole (country) to Himself as a special portion, yet He particularly adopted the Holy City as His own, according to the testimony of the prophet who says,

Sion, indecl. or -onis, *the mount of the temple of Jerusalem, (here in the gen.)*
tabernaculum, 2 (*fr. taberna, 1, booth, hut, tavern*):
hut, tent, 49, p

4. "The Lord loves the gates of Sion above all the tabernacles of Jacob." Glorious things are said about it; namely, that our Saviour taught in that city, suffered and rose again, worked out our salvation in it as in the center of the world; for this was it selected from all ages that it might be the recognized and familiar place for those great mysteries. Selected, of course, because He Who selected it bears witness in these words, "And from the city of Jerusalem, which I have selected, the Savior will come to you."

5. But now, a people without God, the sons of the Egyptian bond-woman by violence possess this birth place of our salvation, this land of the Lord, this mother of our religion; nay more, they are imposing heavy burdens upon the captured sons of the free woman, when, on the contrary, they are obliged to serve them. But what is written, "Cast out the bond-
reason, 28, a
teneatur, 120, c, 3

78. WILLIAM, THE ARCHBISHOP OF TYRE

1130-1190 A. D.

Course 79

EXHORTATION OF URBAN II TO THE FIRST CRUSADE (1095)

est? Ejice ancillam et filium ejus."

tum? "Ejice ancillam et filium ejus."

6. Cujus non liquefiat anima? Cujus non tabescant praecordia his ad animum recurrentibus? Quis haec siccis oculis audire potest, fratres charissimi? Templum Domini factum est sedes daemoniorum.

6. Cujus non liquefiat anima? Cujus non tabescant praecordia his ad animum recurrentibus? Quis haec siccis oculis audire potest, fratres charissimi? Templum Domini factum est sedes Daemoniorum.

Ex Historia Crucigerorum.

VOCABULARY

ejicio, 3, ejeci, ejectum: *to throw or cast out*, 108, a

6. liquefio, fieri, factum: *to melt, be dissolved*, 43, 7; 104

tabesco, 3, -bui, -: *to waste away, be consumed*, 104

praecordia, -orum: *midriff, heart, breast*

siccus, 3: *dry*

charus, 3, Greek: *beloved*; carus, 3, Latin: *dear*

TRANSLATION

woman and her son."

6. Whose heart would not melt, whose soul would not languish, when this recurs to mind? Who is able to listen to this with eyes dry? Dearly beloved brethren, the house of God is become the abode of devils.

daemon, -is, m, Greek: *demon*

79. INNOCENT III (?)

1161-1216 A. D.

Course 1

HYMN TO THE HOLY GHOST*

Original

1. Veni Sancte Spiritus,**

Et emitte caelitus

Lucis tuae radium.

Veni pater pauperum,

Veni dator munerum,

Veni lumen cordium.

2. Consolator optime,

In prose

1. Veni Sancte Spiritus,

et emitte caelitus

lucis tuae radium.

Veni dator ^{pater pauperum,} munerum,

Veni dator munerum,

veni lumen cordium.

2. Consolator optime,

INNOCENTIUS TERTIUS.

Veni Sancte Spiritus.

VOCABULARY***

1. venio, 4, veni, ventum: *to come*, 31, a; 34

sanctus, 3: *holy*, 26; 20, b

spiritus, 4: *breath, spirit, soul, ghost*, 24

et, conjunction: *and, also, too*, 119

emitto, 3, emisi, emissum: *to send forth, -out*, 31, a;

caelitus, adv.: *in a celestial way*, 28, c (34)

lux, lucis, f: *light*, 22; 22, d

radius, 2: *ray*, 20; 20, d

pater, -tris, m: *father*, 22, b

pauper, -is: *poor*, 26; 26, d

dator (fr. do, 1, dedi, datum, to give): *giver*, 49, d

2. consolator (fr. consolor, 1, to console): *consoler*

TRANSLATION****

1. Come, Holy Ghost,
and send forth in celestial beams
a ray of Thy light.

Come, Father of the poor,
come, Giver of gifts,
come, light of hearts!

munus, -neris, n: *office, gift*, 22, a

lumen, -minis, n: *clearness, light*, 22; 23, III

cor, cordis, n: *heart*, 22, e; 23, I, a

2. Thou, the best Consoler,

* TROCHAIC DIMETER, catalectic and accentual with pair and cross rhymes: — ∪ { — ∪ || — ∪ | ∪; cf. 139, 4, c

** It is of great importance to recite ACCENTUAL hymns in choir or by heart to acquire a good pronunciation and a rich vocabulary in the easiest way.

*** Numbers after NOUNS and VERBS denote the declension or conjugation, (regular principal parts in the first conjugation: -āvi, ātum; in the fourth: -ī(v)i, -ītum); after ADJECTIVES they indicate the endings; other numbers refer to the sections of the GRAMMAR, but numbers preceded by "COLL." to the CONVERSATIONS.

Words in brackets [] are not properly used.

**** Words in parentheses () are only for the sake of clearness.

79. INNOCENT III (?)

1161-1216 A. D.

Course 1

HYMN TO THE HOLY GHOST

Dulcis hospes animae,
Dulce refrigerium.
In labore requies,
In aestu temperies,
In fletu solatium.

3. O lux beatissima,
Reple cordis intima
Tuorum fidelium!
Sine tuo numine
Nihil est in homine,
Nihil est innoxium.

4. Lava, quod est sordidum,
Riga, quod est aridum,
Sana, quod est saucium;
Flecte, quod est rigidum,
Fove, quod est frigidum,
Rege, quod est devium.

5. Da tuis fidelibus
In te confidentibus

dulcis hospes animae,
dulce refrigerium.
In labore requies,
in aestu temperies,
in fletu solatium.

3. O lux beatissima,
reple cordis intima
Tuorum fidelium!
Sine tuo numine
nihil est in homine,
nihil est innoxium.

4. Lava, quod est sordidum,
riga, quod est aridum,
sana, quod est saucium;
flecte, quod est rigidum,
fove, quod est frigidum,
rege, quod est devium.

5. Da tuis fidelibus
in te confidentibus

Veni Sancte Spiritus.

VOCABULARY

bonus, 3: *good*, 27, *e*
dulcis, 2: *sweet*, 26
hospes, -pitis, c: *guest*, 22
anima, 1: *soul*, 19
refrigerium, 2: *refreshment*, 20; 20, *d*
in, *prep.*: *in, on*, 50, *c*
labor, -is, m: *labor*, 22; 23, *I*
requies, 5: *rest*, 25
aestus, 4: *heat, fervor*, 24

3. beatus, 3: *happy, blessed*, 26
repleo, 2, -plevi, -pletum: *to fill*, 31, *a*; 34
intimus, 3: *inmost*, 27, *g*
intimum, 2: *interior part, the interior*, 20; 26, *f*
tuus, 3: *thy, thine*, 30, *e*
fidelis, 2: *faithful*, 26
sine, *prep.*: *without*, 50, *b*
numen, -minis, n: *divine will, divinity*, 22; 23, *III*
nihil, or nil (*the acc. with prep. nihilum*, 2, n; *gen.*: -,; *dat, abl.*: o): *nothing; pl. taken from nullus*, 3

4. lavo, 1, la(va)vi, lavatum, or lotum: *to wash*, 31,
qui, 3: *which, what*, 30, *g* (a; 34)
sordidus, 3: *dirty*; aridus, 3: *dry*, 26, 54
rigo, 1: *to water*, 31, *a*; 34
sano, 1: *to heal*, 31, *a*; 34
flecto, 3, flexi, flexum: *to bend*, 31, *a*; 34
rigidus, 3: *rigid*; saucius, 3: *wounded*, 26; 54
foveo, 2, fovi, fotum: *to warm*, 34
frigidus, 3: *cold*; devius, 3: *astray*

5. do, I dedi, datum: *to give, grant*, 34
tu: *thou*, 30, *a*
confido, 3, -, -fisum: *to trust*, 31, *d*

TRANSLATION

*delightful guest of the soul,
and sweet refreshment.
In labor, (our) rest,
in heat, (our) relief,
in tears, (our) solace.*

temperies, 5: *moderation, relief*, 25
fletus, 4: *weeping, bewailing, tears*, 26
solatium, 2: *solace*, 20; 20, *d*

3. O most blessed Light,
(do Thou) fill the inmost hearts
of Thy faithful.
(For) without Thy divinity
nothing is in man
that is harmless.

esse: *to be*, 41, 1
homo, -minis, m: *man*, 22, 23, *I*
innoxius, 3: *harmless*, 26

4. Wash what is soiled,
water what is dry,
heal what is wounded;
bend what is rigid,
warm what is cold,
guide what is astray.

rego, 3, rexi, -ctum: *to guide*, 34

5. Grant to Thy faithful
(who) trust in Thee

HYMN TO THE HOLY GHOST

Sacrum septenarium;
Da virtutis meritum,
Da salutis exitum,
Da perenne gaudium.
Amen.

sacrum septenarium;
da virtutis meritum,
da salutis exitum,
da perenne gaudium.
Amen.

Veni Sancte Spiritus.

VOCABULARY

sacer, -cra, -crum: *sacred, holy*, 26
septenarius, 3: *sevenfold*, 29, e; *in neuter: a sevenfold thing, gift*, 26, f
virtus, -tutis, n: *virtue*, 23, II
meritum, 2: *reward*
salus, -utis, n: *welfare, salvation*, 23, II
exitus, 4: *exit, end, result, success*
perennis, 2: *perennial*, 26

TRANSLATION

*Thy sevenfold gift;
give the reward of virtue,
give a happy death,
give eternal joy.*

Amen.

gaudium, 2: *joy*
amen, *Hebrew, adv.: indeed, certainly, be it so*

80. GIRALD OF BARRI

ECCLESIASTICAL GEMS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Non solum in minoribus sacerdotibus, sed etiam in majoribus, abbatibus *scilicet*, prioribus, magnis ecclesiarum *decanis*, episcopis, et archiepiscopis interdum defectus invenies.

2. Audivi auribus meis quendam abbatem verba Domini ad mulierem Samaritanam sic recitantem: "Quinque viros habuisti et qui nunc habes, non est tuum vir." Et iterum cuidam clerico pauperi Hibernico eleemosynam petenti sic respondentem *audivi*: "Ubi sunt vassas tuas?"

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Non solum in minoribus sacerdotibus, sed etiam in majoribus, *nempe in* prioribus, abbatibus, magnis ecclesiarum *praelatis*, episcopis et archiepiscopis interdum defectus *Latinae linguae* invenies.

2. Audivi auribus meis quendam abbatem verba Domini ad mulierem Samaritanam sic recitantem: "Quinque viros habuisti, et *quem* nunc habes, non est vir tuus." Et iterum cuidam clerico pauperi Hibernico eleemosynam petenti sic respondentem: "Ubi sunt vaccae tuae?"

GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS.

Gemmae Ecclesiasticae.

VOCABULARY

1. sacerdos, -dotis, c: *priest*
abbas, -atis, *Hebrew*, m: *abbot*
[*scilicet (fr. scire licet): to wit, i. e.*]; *nempe: namely*,
praelatus, 2: *prelate, monsignor* (i. e.)
[*decanus*, 2: *the head of ten men; archidiaconus*, 2:
dean]
episcopus, *Greek: bishop*; *archiepiscopus*, 2: *archbishop*-
interdum: occasionally, now and then (op)

2. auris, -is, f: *ear*
mulier, -ēris, f: *woman*
Samaritanus, 3 (*fr. Samaria*, 1, *a district of Palestine*): *Samaritan*
recito, 1: *to read aloud, recite, quote*, 35, a'
vir, 2: *man, husband*
iterum: again
clericus, 2, *Greek (fr. Clerus*, 2, *clergy)*: *clergyman*
vacca, 1: *cow*

TRANSLATION

1. *Not only in the lower, but also in the higher ranks of the clergy, i. e. among priors, abbots, great prelates, bishops and archbishops you will occasionally find defects in their Latin speech.*

defectus, 4 (*fr. deficio*, 3, -feci, -fectum, *to fail*): *desermonis*, -onis, m: *speech* (fect, 49, a)

2. *With my own ears I heard an abbot quoting Our Lord's words to the Samaritan woman thus: "You had five husbands, and qui you have now is not tuum husband." And again, I heard him answer a poor Irish priest, who asked for alms: "Where are vaccas tuas?"*

Hibernicus, 3 (*fr. Hibernia*, 1, *Ireland*): *of Ireland*;
Hibernus, 2: *Irish*
elēmosina, 1, *Greek: alms*

ECCLESIASTICAL GEMS

3. Item exemplum de archiepiscopo sermonem *su-um* sic inchoante: "Audite et intelligite vos omnes, qui estis in isto sacro synodo;" sed quodam suorum submurmurante "a, a," non impatiens correctionis subjunxit: "in ista sacra synoda," et murmurante adhuc quodam "o, non a," tertio repetiit: "in isto sacro synoda"

4. Item exemplum de eodem sedente *apud Oxoniam* pro tribunali praesentibus *scholaribus* multis et jurisperitis ac dicente quibusdam: "Vultis stare isto compromisso?" *qui etiam*, quodam murmurante "isti," reiteravit: "Vultis stare isti compromissi?"

5. *Et* murmure quodam subsecuto quidam considerentium, cui nomen Martinus, in haec verba prorupit: "Quid murmuratis inter vos? Antiqua *grammatica* est." Item exemplum de archiepiscopo, qui stans coram summo pontifice Alexandro III. *In magna multorum* et *magnorum* *audientia* dixit:

6. "Domine dignetis me audire, si placet." Cui

3. Item exemplum de archiepiscopo sermonem sic inchoanti: "Audite et intelligite vos omnes, qui estis in ista sacra synodo;" sed quodam suorum submurmurante "a, a," non impatiens correctionis subjunxit: "in ista sacra synodo," et murmurante adhuc quodam "o, non a," tertio repetiit: "in ista sacra synodo."

4. *Simile* traditur exemplum de eodem sedenti *Oxoniae* pro tribunali praesentibus *scholasticis* multis et jurisperitis ac dicenti quibusdam: "Vultisne stare isto compromisso?" *cum similiter* quodam *per errorem* murmurante "isti" reiteravit: "Vultisne stare isto compromisso?"

5. *Tunc* murmure quodam subsecuto quidam considerentium, cui nomen Martinus, in haec verba prorupit: "Quid murmuratis inter vos? Antiqua *Latinitas* est." *Hujus consimile* exemplum est de archiepiscopo, qui stans coram summo pontifice Alexandro *Tertio* multis et *magnis dignitariis* *audientibus* dixit:

6. *Sanctitatem* *rogo Vestram*, si ita vobis placet,"

Gemmae Ecclesiasticae

VOCABULARY

3. item: *likewise*
inchoo, 1: *to begin, start*, 26, c
synodus, 2, f, *Greek: assembly*
impatiens, -ntis (*fr. patior*, 3, *passum, to suffer*):
impatient, 66, a
correctio, -nis, f (*fr. corrigo*, 3, -rexi, -rectum, *to set right*): *improvement*
subjungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to join with*
(sub)murmuro, 1: *to whisper (in a subdued voice)*

4. tribunal, -is, n: *tribunal, lawsuit*
Oxonia, 1: *Oxford*, 21, c
scholasticus, 3: *scholar*
sto, 1, steti, -tatum, *with abl.: to stand by, as: eo consilio stabitur, Livy; opinione standum est, Cicero.*
jurisperitus, 3: *jurist*, 66. b
compromissum, 2: *mutual agreement, compromise*
reitero, 1: *to repeat*

5. subsequor, 3, -secutum: *to follow*
consido, 3, -sedi, -sessum: *to sit down*
subsequor, 3, -secutum: *to follow*
prorumpo, 3, -rupi, -ruptum: *to burst forth*
Latinitas, -tatis, f: *pure Latin style*
antiquus, 3: *old, ancient, precious*
49, m

[audientia, 1 (*fr. audio*, 4, *to hear*): *hearing, attention*]

6. dignor, 1: *to deign; Vestram Sanctitatem is a Gallicism. The archbishop should have said: Placeat, quaeso, Sanctitati Tuae audire me, which is the most polite form also in English.*

TRANSLATION.

3. *There is also an example of an archbishop, who began his speech thus: "All in isto sacro synodo, please listen and perceive," but after one of his suite whispered "a, a," not impatient of correction, he repeated: "in ista sacra synoda;" as still another whispered: "o, not a," for the third time he said: "in isto sacro synoda."*

4. *Likewise in another instance the same archbishop, presiding over a lawsuit in the presence of many scholars and jurists at Oxford, said: "Do you wish to stand isto compromisso?" Then as some one whispered (wrongly) "isti," he repeated: "isti compromissi."*

5. *Then after more murmuring, one of those in attendance, by name, Martin, observed, "Why are you murmuring among yourselves? It is an archaic phrase.." Furthermore, an example is cited about another archbishop, who in the presence of Pope Alexander III in an audience of many great dignitaries, said,*

dignitarius, 3, (*fr. dignitas, -tatis, dignity*): *dignitary*,

6. *"I beg Your Holiness, if it pleases you, dignetis placeo, 2, placui, placitum: to please, 80, m*

ECCLESIASTICAL GEM§

archidiaconus quidam assistens submurmuravit: "nemini, nemini." Sed quoniam incassum, archidiacono eidem miserabilem antistitem illum juvare volenti nec valenti quidam astantium satis facete subintulit: "Noli dicere: "nemini" sed "nemo," quia non est in mundo "nemior" aut "nullior" illo."

dignemini me audire. Cui archidiaconus quidam assistens submurmuravit: "nemini," "nemini." Sed, quoniam incassum, archidiacono miserabilem antistitem juvare volenti nec valenti quidam astantium satis facete subiecit: "Noli dicere: "nemini," sed "nemo," quia non est in mundo "nemior" aut "nullior" eo."

Gemmæ Ecclesiasticæ

VOCABULARY

assisto, 3, astiti, -: to stand by
incassum, (fr. cassus, 3, empty, hollow): in vain
miserabilis, 2: miserable, lamentable, wretched
antistes, -titis, m, Greek: president, high-priest, overseer
facetus, 3: fine, joking, quibbling, pretty, witty
subjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to throw to
nemior and nullior, are coined, witty comparative

TRANSLATION

hear me." Then an arch-dean whispered: "nemini, nemini." But since this was all in vain a certain bystander facetiously remarked to the archdeacon, willing but unable to help the pitiable highpriest, "Say not, 'nemini,' but 'nemo,' because there is no one on earth more nothing or less anything than he."

forms of the pronouns nemo and nullus.

81. CAESARIUS OF HEISTERBACH

RECORDS OF WONDERFUL THINGS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Abbas quidam nigri ordinis, vir bonus et disciplinatus monachos habebat satis mirabiles ac dissolutos. Die quadam quidam ex eis praeparaverunt sibi diversi generis carnes et vina delicta. Quibus cum uti non auderent in aliqua officina timore abbatis, congregati sunt in vas vinarium maximum et vacuum, quod vulgo dicitur tunna, illuc deferentes praeparata.

2. Dictum est abbati, quod tales monachi in vase

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Abbas quidam O(rdinis) S(ancti) B(enedicti) vir bonus et religioni devotus monachos habebat moribus satis dissolutos. Die quodam quidam ex eis comparaverunt sibi diversi generis carnes et vina delicata. Quibus cum frui non auderent in aliqua monasterii officina, prae timore abbatis congregati sunt in dolio vinario vacuo maximoque, quod vulgo "tunna" dicitur, illuc deferentes praeparata.

2. Relatum est autem abbati a praejati generis mo-

CAESARIUS DE HEISTERBACH.

Dialogus Miraculorum.

VOCABULARY

1. O. S. B.: of the Order of St. Benedict, 67, d [niger, -gra, -grum: black]
[disciplinatus, 3: disciplined]
devoveo, 2, -vovi, -votum: to consecrate, devote, 79
monachus, 2, Greek: monk; moribus, 84
dissolutus, 3 (fr. dissolvo, 3, -lvi, -lutum, to dissolve):
profligate, dissolute
paro, 1: to make ready, get, obtain
comparo, 1: to compare, prepare something with zeal
or care, provide
praeparo, 1: to prepare
vinum, 2: wine
delicatus, 3: delightful, luxurious, delicate

2. [talis, 2: such]
praefor, 1, -fatum: to foretell, 44, 11

TRANSLATION

1. An abbot of the Order of Saint Benedict, a good man devoted to religion, had monks of quite dissolute character. One day they acquired for themselves flesh meats of divers kinds and fine wines. As they did not dare to eat them in any office of the monastery, for fear of the abbot, they assembled in a very large empty wine vat commonly named "tunna," carrying thither what they had prepared.

fruur, 3, fruiturus: to enjoy, take delight in 93, b
dolum, 2: barrel, cask
[vas, vasis, n, pl. vasa, -orum: vase, vessel]
vacuus, 3: empty, hollow

2. However, it was reported to the abbot that the genus, -neris, n: birth, origin, sort, kind, 67, d

RECORDS OF WONDERFUL THINGS

tali convivium celebrarent. Qui statim cum magno maerore animi accurrens et introspiciens, convivantium laetitiam sua praesentia convertit in tristitiam. Quos cum territos aspiceret jucunditatem simulans intravit ad illos et ait: "Eja fratres, voluistis sic sine me comedere et bibere? Non hoc arbitror justum. Credite mihi, ego vobiscum prandebo." Lavitque manus, cum illis comedens et bibens exemplo *tali* territos confortans.

3. Die sequenti, priore tamen praemonito et, quid facere deberet, instructo abbas monachis illis praesentibus in capitulo coram illo surgens et veniam petens cum multa humilitate, tremorem et timorem simulans in haec verba prorupit: "Confiteor vobis, domine prior, fratribusque meis universis, quod vitio gulae victus ego peccator heri absconso loco et quasi furtive in vase vinario contra praeceptum et regulam patris mei sancti Benedicti carnes manducavi."

nachis in dolio certo convivium celebrari. Qui statim magno animi maerore accurrens et introspiciens sua praesentia convivantium laetitiam convertit in tristitiam. Quos cum territos aspiceret, jucunditatem simulans intravit ad eos et: "Eja fratres," inquit, "voluistis sic sine me comedere et bibere? Hoc non arbitror justum. Confidite mihi; ego vobiscum prandebo." Lavitque manus, et cum eis comedens et bibens suo confortavit perterritos exemplo.

3. Die sequenti priore *monasterii* praemonito et, quid faciendum esset, instructo abbas monachis iisdem praesentibus in capitulo coram priore surgens et veniam petens et multa humilitate tremorem et timorem simulans in haec verba prorupit: "Confiteor tibi, admodum reverende prior, fratribusque meis universis me vitio gulae peccatorem victum heri absconso in loco et quasi furtive in *dolio* vinario contra praeceptum et regulam patris mei sancti Benedicti carnes manducasse."

Dialogus Miraculorum.

VOCABULARY

convivium, 2 (*fr.* convivor, 1, to eat and drink in company): banquet, 49, f
statim: immediately, right away
maeror, -is, m (*fr.* maereo, -, -, to be sad): mourning, grief, 88
accurro, 3, accurri, accursum: to run to, hasten
introspectio, 3, -spexi, -ctum: to look in, 40
terreo, 2, -rrui, -rritum: to frighten, terrify
simulo, 1: to make like, imitate, simulate
jucunditas, -tatis, f (*fr.* jucundus, 3, pleasant): pleasure: hello, well then, 52, e (antness, 49, u
comedo, 3, -edi, -esum: to eat, consume
bibor, 3, bibi, bibitum: to drink
arbitror, 1: to think, judge, 59, A
justus, 3: just, upright

3. prior, -is, m: prior, the first dignitary after the abbot in a monastery
praemoneo, 2, -nui, -nitum: to warn, advise beforehand, 114, b
instruo, 3, -uxi, uctum: to set up, prepare, teach, 114, b
praesens, -ntis (*fr.* praesum, -fui, -, to be at or before): present, 114, a
capitulum, 2 (*fr.* caput, -pitis, n, head): little head, general meeting
surgo, 3, surrexi, surrectum: to rise up
venia, 1: grace, indulgence, permission
tremor, -is, m (*fr.* tremo, 3, -mui, -, to tremble): trembling, fear
timor, -is, m (*fr.* timeo, 2, -mui, -, to fear): fear, dread
prorumpo, 3, -rupi, -ruptum: to break forth
vitium, 2: fault, vice, 93, a
gula, 1: gullet, greediness, gluttony

TRANSLATION

monks of the above mentioned type were celebrating a banquet in a certain vat. With great affliction of spirit, he immediately hastened to the place, and looking in, turned the joy of the merry-makers into dismay by his presence. Then, as he saw those terrified men, feigning joy, he entered (into the vat) saying: "Well, brothers, you wished to eat and drink without me. I don't think that is right; trust in me: I shall join you in the luncheon." Then having washed his hands, eating and drinking with them he encouraged the frightened monks by his example.

confido, 3, -, fisum: to trust, confide, 31, d; 79
prandeo, 2, -ndi, -nsum: to lunch
lavo, 1, lavi, lotum: to wash
perterreo, 2, -rrui, -rritum: to scare, frighten

3. The next day, having previously advised the prior of the monastery and instructed him what he should do at the general chapter, in the presence of the same monks, the abbot rising before the prior and begging pardon and pretending dread and fear, with great humility broke into these words, "I confess to you, very reverend prior, and to all the brethren, that yesterday, I, a sinner, overcome by gluttony, ate flesh meat secretly in a hidden wine vat, contrary to the rules and precepts of my Father St. Benedict."

vinco, 3, vici, victum: to overcome, conquer
abscondo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to conceal
furtivus, 3 (*fr.* furtum, 2, theft): furtive, secret, 28, a
manduco, 1 (*fr.* mando, 3, mandi, -nsum, to chew): to eat, 49, j

81. CAESARIUS OF HEISTERBACH

1180-1240 A. D.

Course 57

RECORDS OF WONDERFUL THINGS

4. Qui cum, accepta *disciplina* nec non et paenitentia reversus fuisset in locum suum, *praedicti* monachitantes ab eo *proclamari*, si dissimularent, ultro surgentes *eundem* confessi sunt *excessum*. Quibus abbas a monacho ad hoc praeordinato dari iussit *bonas ac fortes disciplinas*, durius illos corripiens *et, ne unquam de cetero talia praesumerent, sub interminatione magnae vindictae praecipiens*.

Sic prudens medicus, quod verbo minus emendare potuit, exemplo correxit.

4. Qui cum accepta *poena* nec non et poenitentia in locum suum reversus fuisset, *supradicti* monachitantes ab eo *prodi*, si dissimularent, ultro surgentes *idem delictum* confessi sunt. Quibus abbas a monacho ad hoc praeordinato jussit dari *graves et salubres poenas*, durius eos corripiens *severam vindictam eis comminando, si unquam alias talia praesumerent*.

Sic prudens medicus, quod verbo minus emendare potuerat, correxit exemplo.

Dialogus Miraculorum.

VOCABULARY

4. supradictus, 3 (*fr. dico, 3, dixi, dictum, to say*):
above said
prodo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to publish, reveal, betray*
dissimulo, 1: *to conceal, disguise*
delictum, 2 (*fr. delinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum, to fail*):
fault, crime
praeordino, 1: *to arrange or dispose beforehand*
durus, 3: *hard, rough, severe*
corripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum: *to seize, accuse, rebuke, 40*
comminor, 1: *to threaten*
praesumo, 3, -sumpsi, -sumptum: *to take beforehand,*
presume, 109, b
corrigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum: *to set right, correct*

TRANSLATION

4. And so when he returned to his place, having received his chastisement and penance, the above mentioned monks, afraid of being betrayed by him, if they concealed (the fact), voluntarily rising, confessed the same fault. The abbot, through a monk prepared beforehand for this commanded that severe and beneficial penances be given to them, correcting them very sternly with the threat of heavy punishment, should they presume (to do) such things again.

In this way the wise physician corrected by his example those whom he could not cure by his word.

82. THOMAS OF CELANO, O. F. M.

1185-1255 A. D.

Course 6

DIES IRAE*

Original

1. Dies irae, dies illa
Solvat saeculum in favilla
Teste David cum Sibylla.
2. Quantus tremor est futurus,
Quando iudex est venturus

In prose

1. Dies irae, dies illa
solvat saeculum in favilla
teste David cum Sibylla.
2. Quantus tremor est futurus,
quando iudex est venturus

THOMAS DE CELANO, O. F. M.

Dies Irae.

VOCABULARY

1. dies, 5: *day, 25; 25, a*
ira, 1: *anger, wrath, 19*
ille, 3: *that, 30, f*
favilla, 1: (*glowing*) *ashes*
testis, -is, e: *witness, 115; 114, c*
David, m, *indecl.: David, 115*
2. quantus, 3: *how great, what, 19-20*
tremor, -is, m: *terror, 22*
futurus, 3: *future, one to come, 41, 1; 19-20*
quando, cum: *when, when?*
iudex, -dicis, m: *judge, 22*

TRANSLATION

1. The day of wrath, that dreadful day will reduce the world to ashes,
As declared by David and the Sibyl.

cum: *together with, 60, b*
Sibylla, 1: *Sibyl (a prophetess and priestess of Apollo)*

2. What a terror is to come,
when the judge will arrive

venio, 4, veni, ventum: *to come, 36, f; 111, c*

* TROCHAIC DIMETER (tetrapody), accentual: — ∽ | — ∽ || — ∽ | — ∽, 139, 4, c.

DIES IRAE

Cuncta stricte discussurus!

3. Tuba mirum spargens sonum
Per sepulchra regionum
Coget omnes ante thronum.

4. Mors stupebit et natura,
Cum resurget creatura
Judicanti responsura.

5. Liber scriptus proferetur,
In quo totum continetur,
Unde mundus judicetur.

6. Judex ergo cum sedebit,
Quidquid latet, apparebit;
Nil inultum remanebit.

7. Quid sum miser tunc dicturus,
Quem patronum rogaturus,

cuncta stricte discussurus!

3. Tuba mirum spargens sonum
per sepulchra regionum
coget omnes ante thronum.

4. Mors stupebit et natura,
cum resurget creatura
Judicanti responsura.

5. Liber scriptum proferetur,
in quo totum continetur,
unde mundus judicetur.

6. Judex ergo cum sedebit,
quidquid latet, apparebit;
nil inultum remanebit.

7. Quid sum miser tunc dicturus,
quem patronum rogaturus,

Dies Irae.

VOCABULARY

strictus, 3 (*fr.* stringo, 3, -nxi, -ctum, *to draw together*): *close, severe, strict*, 26; 28, *a*
discutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum, *to shatter, frustrate, in-*

3. tuba, 1: *trumpet*, 19
mirus, 3: *marvelous*, 19-20
spargo, 3, -rsi, -rsum: *to scatter, strew, sprinkle*, 36, *a*
sonus, 2: *sound, tone*
per: *through*, 50, *a*
regio, -nis, f: *direction, region, country, territory*, 22;
23, *II*

4. mors, -rtis, f: *death*, 22, *c*; 23, *II*
stupeo, 2, -pui: *to be stunned astounded, amazed*, 32, *c*
natura, 1: *nature*, 19
cum: *when*, 126, *a*
resurgo, 3, -surrexi, -rectum: *to arise*, 32, *c*
creatura, 1: *creature*, 19

5. liber, -bri, m: *book*; (liberi, -berorum: *children*;
liber, -a, -um: *free*), 20
scribo, 3, scripsi, -ptum: *to write*, 36, *b*
profero, 3, protuli, prolatum: *to carry, bring forth*,
totus, 3: *whole, all*, 36, *f* (43, 8, *a*; 32, *c*
contineo, 2, -nui, -ntum: *to contain*, 32, *a*

6. sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: *to sit, to be seated*, 32, *c*
quisquid, quidquid: *whosoever, whatever*, 30, *i*
lateo, 2, -tui: *to be hid, concealed*, 32, *a*
appareo, 2, -rui, -riturus: *to appear*, 32, *c*
inultus, 3 (*fr.* ulciscor, 3, -, ultum, *avenge*): *un-*
avenged, 36, *d*

7. quis, quid, or qui, quae, quod?: *who, what, which?* 30, *h*
miser, -a, -um: *miserable, wretched, frail, unfortunate*,
tunc: *then*
dico, 3, dixi, dictum: *to say*, 36, *f*; 111, *c*

TRANSLATION

demanding a strict account of all things.

investigate, judge, 36, *f*; 111, *a*

3. *The trumpet sending its awful peal through graveyards of the land gathers all men before the throne.*

cogo, 3, coëgi, coactum: *to drive, force*, 32, *c*
ante: *before*, 50, *a*
thronus, 2: *throne*, 20

4. *Death and nature will stand aghast when the creature arises to give answer to the Judge.*

judico, 1: *to judge*, 36, *a*
respondeo, 2, -di, -nsum: *to answer*, 36, *f*, 111, *a*; 80, *o*

5. *The written book will be brought forth wherein all things are contained, from which the world shall be judged.*

unde: *whence*; *judicetur, subj.* 120, *c*, 1

6. *When the Judge shall be seated, whatever is hidden will appear; nothing will remain unavenged.*

remaneo, 2, -nsi, -nsum: *to remain*, 32, *c*

7. *What then shall I, a frail man, say, what advocate shall I invoke,*

patronus, 2: *patron*, 20
rogo, 1: *to ask, entreat, beseech, request*, 36, *f*; 111, *c*

DIES IRAE

Cum vix justus sit securus?

8. Ingemisco tamquam reus;
Culpa rubet vultus meus:
Supplicanti parce Deus.

9. Rex tremendae majestatis,
Qui salvandos salvas gratis,
Salva me fons pietatis.

cum vix justus sit securus?

8. Ingemisco tamquam reus;
culpa rubet vultus meus:
supplicanti parce Deus.

9. Rex tremendae majestatis,
qui salvandos salvas gratis,
salva me fons pietatis.

Dies Irae.

VOCABULARY

vix: *scarcely*
justus, 3: *just*, 19-20
securus, 3: *secure*, 19-20

8. ingemisco, 3, -gemui, -: *to sigh, groan*, 32, *a*
tamquam: *just as, like as, as if, as it were, as*
reus, 2, rea, 1: *culprit, guilty (one)*, 19-20
culpa, 1: *sin*, 94
rubeo, 2, -bui, -: *to be red, blush, ashamed*, 32, *a*
vultus, 4: *countenance, look, face, aspect*, 24
supplico, 1: *to entreat humbly or suppliantly, be sup-*

9. tremo, 3, tremui, -: *to tremble*; tremendus, 3:
majestas, -tatis, f: *majesty*, 67, *d* (*dreadful*, 111, *b*
salvo, 1: *to save*, 111, *b*; 32, *a*, and 34
gratis, adv.: *by charity, for nothing*

TRANSLATION

when scarcely the just man is secure?

8. *I groan as guilty;*
my face reddens with shame at my sin:
O God, spare (me), the suppliant.

pliant, 36, *a*
parco, 3, peperci, or parsi, -rsum: *to spare*, 80, *j*; 34

9. *O King, of dreadful majesty,*
who freely savest those who are to be saved,
save me, O Fount of Mercy.

pietas, -tatis, f: *piety*, 22

83. ST. BONAVENTURE

THE STORY OF ST. FRANCIS

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Fidelis revera famulus et minister Christi Franciscus biennio antequam spiritum redderet caelo, cum in loco excelso seorsum, qui mons Alverniae dicitur, quadragenarium ad honorem Archangeli Michaëlis jejunium inchoasset, supernae contemplationis dulcedine abundantius solito superfusus ac caelestium desideriorum ardentiori flamma succensus supernarum coepit

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Fidelis revera famulus et minister Christi Franciscus biennio antequam spiritum redderet caelis, cum seorsum in loco excelso, qui mons Alverniae dicitur, quadragenarium ad honorem Archangeli Michaëlis jejunium inchoasset, supernae contemplationis dulcedine solito abundantius superfusus ac caelestium desideriorum ardentiore flamma succensus supernarum coepit

SANCTUS BONAVENTURA.

Legenda Sancti Francisci.

VOCABULARY

1. revera, re vera: *indeed, in truth, truly*
biennium, 2: *space of two years, two years*, 85
reddo, 3, reddidi, redditum: *to give back*; caelo redde-
re often used by pagan authors; more correctly:
caelis reddere, 79
seorsum: *apart from*
Alverniae mons, -ntis, m: *Mount Alverno*
quadragenarius, 3: *quarantine*
inchoo, 1: *to start, begin*, 125, *a*
abundo, 1: *to abound*, 28, *a*; solito, 26, *f*; 85
superfundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: *to pour over or upon*

TRANSLATION

1. *Two years before St. Francis the truly faithful servant and minister of Christ breathed forth his soul to Heaven, when, far off in a high place named Mount Alverno, he started a forty days' fast in honor of St. Michael the Archangel, and being overwhelmed more than usual with the sweetness of supernatural contemplation and inflamed with a very great ardor of heavenly desires, he began to experience tokens of*

ardeo, 2, arsi, arsum: *to burn*, 26, *l*
succendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to kindle, set on fire, inflame*

THE STORY OF ST. FRANCIS

immissionum cumulatius dona sentire.

2. Dum igitur seraphicis desideriorum ardoribus sursum ageretur in Deum, et affectus compassiva teneritudine in eum transformaretur, cui ex caritate nimia crucifigi complacuit; quodam mane circa festum Exaltationis sanctae Crucis in latere montis orans, vidit quasi speciem unius ex Seraphim, sex alas tam fulgidas quam ignitas habentem, de caelorum sublimitate descendere.

3. Qui volatu celerrimo ad aëris locum viro Dei propinquum perveniens, non solum alatus, sed et crucifixus apparuit, manus quidem et pedes habens extensos et cruci affixos, alas vero sic miro modo hinc inde dispositas, ut duas supra caput erig^{er}et, duas ad volandum extenderet, duabus vero reliquis totum corpus circumplectendo velaret.

4. Hoc videns vehementer obstupuit, mixtumque dolori gaudium mens ejus incurrit, dum et in gratioso aspectu *sibi* tam mirabiliter quam familiariter apparentis excessivam quandam concipiebat laetitiam, et

immissionum dona cumulatius sentire.

2. Dum igitur seraphicis desideriorum ardoribus sursum ageretur in Deum, et affectus compassiva teneritudine in eum transformaretur, cui ex caritate nimia crucifigi complacuit; quodam mane circa festum Exaltationis sanctae Crucis in latere montis orans, vidit quasi speciem unius ex Seraphim, sex alas tam fulgidas quam ignitas habentem, de caeli sublimitate descendere.

3. Qui volatu celerrimo ad aëris locum viro Dei propinquum perveniens, non solum alatus, sed et crucifixus apparuit, manus quidem et pedes habens extensos et cruci affixos, alas vero sic miro modo hinc inde dispositas, ut duas supra caput erig^{er}et, duas ad volandum extenderet, duabus vero reliquis totum corpus circumplectendo velaret.

4. Hoc videns vehementer obstupuit, mixtumque dolori gaudium mens ejus incurrit, dum et in gratioso aspectu tam mirabiliter quam familiariter apparentis excessivam quandam concipiebat laetitiam, et dira

Legenda Sancti Francisci.

VOCABULARY

immissio, -onis, f (fr. immitto, -misi, -missum, to send in): letting in, granting to
cumulo, 1: to heap up, overhead, 36, b; 28, a; 27, l

2. Seraphicus, 3 (fr. Seraph, pl. Seraphim, indecl., angel of highest rank, burning with love): seraphic, 88

teneritudo, -dinis, f (fr. tener, 3, tender): tenderness, 88

complaceo, 2, -cui, -citur: to please exceedingly
mane, indecl. noun and adj.: morning, 95; 16, c
fulgidus, 3 (fr. fulgeo, -lsi, -,to gleam): shining, 49, t
ignitus, 3 (fr. ignis, -is, m, fire): fiery, 49, l
sublimitas, -tatis, f (fr. sublimis, 2, lofty): loftiness, 49, u

3. volatus, 4 (fr. volo, 1, to fly): flying, flight, 49, celer, -is, -e: swift, quick, rapid (a; 88 aër, -is, m: air

alatus, 3 (fr. ala, 1, wing): winged, 49, l
crucifigo, 3, -fixi, -fixum: to crucify
appareo, 2, -rui, -riturus: to appear
extendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to stretch, expand, extend
erigo, 3, erexi, erectum: to lift up, erect
affigi, 3, -ixi, -ictum: to fix or nail to, adapt, 79
hinc et hinc, hinc inde, utrimque: on both sides
circumplector, 3, -plectum: to embrace, 117, e

4. obstupesco, 3, -stupui, -: to be stupified, amazed
incurro, 3, -curri, -cursum: to run against, assault, ingratiosus, 3 (fr. gratia, 1, grace): graceful (incur aspectus, 4 (fr. aspicio, 3, -spexi, -ectum, to look at): dirus, 3: fearful, horrible, dire (sight

TRANSLATION

supernatural favor in great abundance.

2. Then, one morning, about the feast of the Exaltation of the Holy Cross, while praying on the side of the mount, he was drawn with a seraphic ardor towards God and, while his affection was transformed with passionate tenderness into Him Who was pleased to be crucified out of excessive charity, he saw, as it were, the form of one of the Seraphs, with six wings radiant and flaming, descending from the height of Heaven.

descendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to come down, descend, 57, 4

3. Approaching in the air, with a very speedy flight, to a short distance from the servant of God, he appeared not only winged, but also crucified, having his hands and feet extended and nailed to the cross, while his wings were so marvelously arranged on both sides, that two were erected above his head, two were extended with which to fly, and with the remaining two his entire body was covered.

velo, 1: to cover, veil

4. Seeing this, he was exceedingly amazed, and compassion mingled with joy seized his mind, and while on the one hand, from the graceful aspect of Him Who appeared in so wonderful and familiar a manner he conceived an excessive joy, on the other

THE STORY OF ST. FRANCIS

dira conspecta crucis affixio ipsius animam compassivi doloris gladio pertransivit.

5. Intellexit *quidem illo* docente interius, qui et apparebat exterius, *quod*, licet passionis infirmitas cum immortalitate spiritus seraphici nullatenus conveniret, ideo tamen hujusmodi visio *suis fuerat* praesentata conspectibus, ut amicus ipse Christi praenosceret se non per martyrium carnis, sed per incendium mentis, totum in Christi Jesu crucifixi expressam similitudinem transformandum.

(C. XIII)

conspecta crucis affixio ipsius animam compassivi doloris gladio pertransivit.

5. Intellexit *nempe eo* docente interius, qui et apparebat exterius, licet passionis infirmitas cum immortalitate spiritus seraphici nullatenus conveniret, ideo tamen hujusmodi *visionem suo esse* praesentatam conspectui, ut amicus ipse Christi praenosceret se non per martyrium carnis, sed per incendium mentis, totum in Christi Jesu crucifixi expressam similitudinem esse transformandum.

Legenda Sancti Francisci.

VOCABULARY

conspicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum: *to look at, perceive*
compassivus, 3 (*fr. compator, 3, -passum, to suffer together*): *compassionate, sympathetic*
pertranseo, 4: *to go or pass through, 61, a*

5. *nempe: namely, i. e., certainly, truly*
interior, 2: *inner, interior, 27, f; 28, a*
exter(us), 3: *outward, 27, f; 28, a*
infirmitas, -tatis, f (*fr. infirmus, 3, weak*): *weakness, 49, u*
nullatenus, nullo modo: *by no means, not at all*
convenio, 3, -veni, -ventum: *to come together, meet, agree,*
praesento, 1: *to make present, present, 79*
praenosco, 3, -novi, -notum: *to foreknow, become acquainted beforehand, 124, a*
martyrium, 2 (*fr. martyr, -is, c, martyr*): *martyrdom*

TRANSLATION

hand, the nailing to the cross pierced his soul with a sword of compassionate sorrow.

5. *Being thus instructed interiorly in this manner by Him Who appeared to him exteriorly, he understood that although the immortality of a seraphic spirit did not admit any possibility of suffering, yet this kind of vision was represented to his view in order that, as a friend of Christ, he might understand that he was to be fully transformed into the visualized likeness of the crucified Christ, not by the martyrdom of his flesh, but by the glowing fire of his soul.*

incendium, 2 (*fr. incendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to kindle*): *fire, conflagration*

ST. THOMAS AQUINAS, O. P.

HYMN OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT*

Original

1. Pange lingua gloriosi
Corporis mysterium
Sanguinisque pretiosi,
Quem in mundi pretium
Fructus ventris generosi

In prose

1. Pange lingua gloriosi
corporis mysterium
sanguinisque pretiosi,
quem in mundi pretium
fructus ventri^s generosi

Pange Lingua.

VOCABULARY

1. pango, 3, pepigi, (panxi, pegi), pactum: *to fix, compose, contract, sing*
lingua, 1: *tongue, 88*
gloriosus, 3: *glorious*
corpus, -poris, n: *body*
mysterium, 2: *mystery*
sanguis, -inis, m: *blood, 23, I*
pretiosus, 3: *precious*
mundus, 2: *world*

TRANSLATION

1. *Sing, O my tongue, the mystery of the glorious Body and the Precious Blood, which the King of nations the fruit of a noble womb,*

pretium, 2: *price, redemption*
fructus, 4: *fruit*
venter, -tris, m: *belly, womb*
generosus, 3: *noble, well-bred, 49, t*

* TROCHAIC DIMETER (tetrapody), accentual: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | — ∪; every second verse catalectic: — ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪ | ∪. Cf. 139, 4 c

HYMN OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT

Rex effudit gentium.
 2. Nobis datus, nobis natus
 Ex intacta Virgine
 Et in mundo conversatus
 Sparso verbi semine
 Sui moras incolatus
 Miro clausit ordine.
 3. In supremæ nocte cenæ
 Recumbens cum fratribus
 Observata lege plene
 Cibis in legalibus
 Cibum turbae duodenæ
 Se dat suis manibus.
 4. Verbum caro panem verum
 Verbo carnem efficit,
 Fitque sanguis Christi merum,
 Etsi sensus deficit;
 Ad firmandum cor sincerum
 Sola fides sufficit.

Rex effudit gentium.
 2. Nobis datus, nobis natus
 ex intacta Virgine
 et in mundo conversatus
 sparso verbi semine
 sui moras incolatus
 miro clausit ordine.
 3. In supremæ nocte cenæ
 recumbens cum fratribus
 observata lege plene
 cibis in legalibus
 cibum turbae duodenæ
 Se dat suis manibus.
 4. *Incarnatum* Verbum panem
 voce carnem efficit,
 fitque sanguis Christi merum,
 etsi sensus deficit;
 ad firmandum cor sincerum
 sola fides sufficit.

Pange Lingua.

VOCABULARY

effundo, 3, -fudi, -usum: to pour out, shed
 gens, -ntis, f: race, people, gentile
 2. nascor, 3, -, natus: to be born
 intactus, 3, (fr. tango, 3, tetigi, tactum, to touch): un-
 touched
 conversor, 1: to turn round frequently, converse, dwell
 spargo, 3, sparsi, -rsum: to scatter, spread, sow, 114, b
 semen, -minis, n: seed, 114, b
 mora, 1: delay, pause, day
 incolatus, 4 (fr. incolo, 3, -lui, -ltum, inhabit): so-
 mirus, 3: wondrous (journ, 49, a)
 3. supremus, 3 (fr. superus, 3, upper): highest, last,
 nox, -noctis, f: night, 22, d (27, f)
 cena, 1: supper
 recumbo, 3, -cubui, -cubitum: to recline (at table)
 observo, 1: to observe, 114, b
 lex, legis, f: law
 plenus, 3: full, entire
 cibus, 2: food meal
 legalis, 2, (fr. lex, legis, f, law) legal, 49, r
 turba, 1: uproar, crowd, people
 4. incarno, 1: to incarnate
 vox, -ocis, f: voice, word, 88
 caro, -rnis, f: flesh, 22, a
 efficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to make, effect, change
 merum, 2: pure wine, wine
 sensus, 4, (fr. sentio, 4, -nsi, -nsum, to feel): percep-
 tion, feeling, sense, intellect, 49, a
 deficio, -feci, -fectum: to fail, cease, be short for
 firmo, 1: to firm, make sure, 118

TRANSLATION

shed for the redemption of the world.

2. Given to us and born for us
 of a pure virgin,
 and dwelling on the earth,
 when the seed of the word was sown,
 He closed in a wondrous manner
 the days of His sojourn.

claudio, 3, -ausi, -ausum: to close
 ordo, -dinis, m: order, manner, 88

3. On the night of the Last Supper,
 reclining with His brethren,
 observing the Law fully
 with legal foods,
 by His own hands He gives Himself
 as food to the group of twelve.

duodeni, -ae, -a: twelve each, twelve, of twelve
 manus, 4: hand, 24, b; 88

4. The Incarnate Word changes bread
 by His word into His Flesh,
 and wine becomes the Blood of Christ,
 though the senses do not perceive it;
 faith alone suffices
 to convince a sincere heart.

sincerus, 3: sincere
 solus, 3: alone, only, 30, k

HYMN OF THE BLESSED SACRAMENT

5. Tantum ergo Sacramentum
Veneremur cernui,
Et antiquum documentum
Novo cedat ritui:
Praestet fides supplementum
Sensuum defectui.

6. Genitori Genitoque . . .
Procedenti ab utroque
Compar sit laudatio.
Amen.

5. Tantum ergo Sacramentum
veneremur cernui,
et antiquum documentum
novo cedat ritui:
praestet fides supplementum
sensuum defectui.

6. Genitori Genitoque . . .
Procedenti ab utroque
Compar sit laudatio.
Amen.

Pange Lingua.

VOCABULARY

5. tantus, 3: *so great*
sacramentum, 2: *sacrament, 49, e*
veneror, 1: *to venerate, reverence, adore, 106*
cernuus, 3: *falling headlong, prostrate*
antiquus, 3: *old*
documentum, 2: *warning, proof, (faith), Testament,*
cedo, 3, cessi, -ssum: *to go, give up, yield (49, e*
ritus, 4: *rite, ceremony, 78*
praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to stand before, afford, give,*
supplementum, 2: *supplement, 49, e (79*

6. genitor, -is, m (*fr. gigno, 3, genui, genitum, be-*
get, bring forth): begetter, father, 49, d
genitus, 2: *son, 26, f*
procedo, 3, -cessi, -ssum: *to procede*
laudatio, (*fr. laudo, 1, to praise): praise, 49, a*

TRANSLATION

5. Prostrate let us then adore
so great a Sacrament,
and let the old Law
yield to the new rite:
let our faith supplement
the weakness of our senses.

defectus, 4, (*fr. deficio, 3, -feci, -fectum, to fail):*
failing, weakness, defect, 49, a

6. To the Father and to the Son,
and to Him Who proceeds from both,
let there be equal praise . . .
Amen.

compar, -is: *equal*

85. WANDERING STUDENTS' SONGS

XIII Century

Course 10

THIS VAIN WORLD*

Original

1. Iste mundus
Furibundus
Falsa praestat gaudia,
Quae defluunt
Et decurrunt
Seu campi lilia.

In prose

1. Iste mundus
furibundis
falsa praestat gaudia,
quae defluunt
et decurrunt
sicut campi lilia.

CARMINA BURANA.

Omnia Vanitas.

VOCABULARY

1. mundus, 2: *world*
furibundus, 3: *furious, raging, insane*
falsus, 3: *false*
praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: *to excel, afford, give*
gaudium, 2: *joy*
defluo, 3, -xi, -ctum: *to flow away*
decurro, 3, -curri, -rsum: *to run away*

TRANSLATION

1. This mad world
offers deceitful joys,
which fade and perish
as lilies of the field.

[*seu: namely, i. e.*]; sicut, prout, velut: *as*
campus, 2: *meadow, field*

* TROCHAIC DIMETER (tetrapody), accentual and rhyming: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | — ∪; every second verse catalectic: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | ∪; cf. 139 4 c.

85. WANDERING STUDENTS' SONGS

XIII Century

Course 10

THIS VAIN WORLD

2. Res mundana,
Vita vana
Vera tollit praemia,
Nam impellit
Et submergit
Animas in Tartara.

3. Quod videmus
Vel tacemus
In praesenti patria,
Dimitemus
Vel perdemus
Quasi quercus folia.

4. Res carnalis,
Lex mortalis
Valde transitoria;
Frangit, transit
Velut umbra,
Quae non est corporea.

5. Conteramus,
Confringamus
Carnis desideria,

2. Res mundana,
et vita vana
vera tollit praemia,
nam impellit
et submergit
animas in Tartara.

3. Quod videmus
vel audimus
in praesenti patria,
dimitemus
vel perdemus
quasi quercus folia.

4. Res carnalis
et lex mortalis
valde transitoria,
frangit, transit
velut umbra,
quae non est corporea.

5. Conteramus,
confringamus
carnis desideria,

Omnia Vanitas.

VOCABULARY

2. mundanus, (*fr.* mundus, 2, world): worldly, 49, t
vita, 1: life
vanus, 3: vain
verus, 3: true
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: to lift up, take away,
carry off
praemium, 2: prize

3. [taceo, 2, -cui, -citur: to be silent]
audio, 4: to hear
praesens, -ntis: present
patria, 1: country
dimitto, 3, -misi, -missum: to dismiss, send forth,
leave, 32, c
perdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to lose, 32, c

4. carnalis, 2: belonging to the body, carnal
valde: very
transitorius, 3 (*fr.* transitum, *supine* of transire, to
pass by, or away): transitory, 49, t
frango, 3, fregi, fractum: to break
velut(i): as

5. contero, 3, -trivi, -tritum: to crush, 33, a
confringo, 3, -fregi, -fractum: to break (to pieces),
caro, -rnis, f: flesh, 23, a (33, a
desiderium, 2: desire

TRANSLATION

2. Worldly things and a foolish life
Deprive one of the true rewards,
for they plunge
and sink souls into hell.

impello, 3, -puli, -pulsum: to push, drive, urge on
submergo, 3, -mersi, -rsum: to plunge, immerse
Tartarus, or Tartara, -orum: infernal region, hell

3. All that we see and hear
in the present life,
we shall give up or lose
as the oak, its leaves.

quasi: as if, like
quercus, 4, f: oak, 16, b
folium, 2: leaf

4. A carnal thing and mortal law
are very transitory;
it breaks and passes away like a shadow,
which has no body.

umbra, 1: shadow
corporeus, 3 (*fr.* corpus, body): corporal, 49, s

5. Let us crush and break
the desires of the flesh,

cum, prep.: with, together 50, b
justus, 3: just

THIS VAIN WORLD

Ut cum justis
Et electis
Caelestia gaudia
Gratulari
Mereamur
Per aeterna saecula.

ut cum justis
et electis
caelestia gaudia
gratulari
mereamur
per aeterna saecula.

THE BEGGAR STUDENT*

Original

1. Exul ego clericus
Ad laborem natus
Tribulor multoties
Paupertati datus.

2. Litterarum studiis
Vellem insudare,
Nisi quod inopia
Cogit me cessare.

3. Ille meus tenuis
Nimis est amictus,
Saepe frigus patior

In prose

1. Exsul ego clericus
ad laborem natus
tribulor multoties
paupertati datus.

2. Litterarum studiis
velim insudare,
nisi quod inopia
cogat me cessare.

3. Ecce meus amictus
nimis est tenuis,
saepe frigus patior

Omnia Vanitas.

VOCABULARY

eligo, 3, elegi, electum: to choose, select; selectus:
elect, 36, b
caelestis, 2 (fr. coelum, 2, heaven): celestial, 49, r
gratulor, 1: alicui aliquid: to congratulate, rejoice
mereo(r), 1: to merit, be worthy, may, 33, a

TRANSLATION

that we may merit to rejoice
with the just and the elect in heavenly joys
through the eternal ages.

aeternus, 3: eternal
saeculum, 2: age, century

Goliardus.

1. exsul, -is, c: banished, exiled
clericus, 2: student, cleric preparing for priesthood
labor, -is, m: labor, 23, I
nascor, 3, -, natum: to be born
tribulo, 1: to trouble, press
multoties, adv.: many times, often

2. littera, 1: letter; litterae, -arum: learning
studium, 2: pursuit, zeal; studia, -orum: study,
science
insudo, 1: to sweat in or at, take pains with; velim,
103, a
nisi quod or nisi acciderit, quod: unless it would have
happened that, or were it not that, 109, e

3. ecce, lo, behold, 52
tenuis, 2: thin
amictus, 4, (fr. amicio, 4, amicui or amixi, amictum,
to clothe): garment, 49, a
nimis, adv: overmuch, excessively
saepe: often

1. I am an exiled cleric,
born to labor;
I suffer very much
being poor.

paupertas, -tatis, f, (fr. pauper, -is, poor): poverty,
do, 1, dedi, datum: to give, hand over (dearth)

2. I should like to work
at the study of sciences,
were it not that poverty
forced me to discontinue it.

cogo, 3, coegi, coactum: to force, 109, b, d
cesso, 1: to cease, desist

3. Behold, my clothes
are too light,
I often suffer from the cold

frigus, -oris, n: cold, 23, III
patior, 3, -, passum: to suffer, 40

* TROCHAIC DIMETER (tetrapody), accentual, catalectic, with rhymes: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | — ∪;
— ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | ∪; cf. 139, 4, c.

85. WANDERING STUDENTS' SONGS

XIII Century

Course 10

THE BEGGAR STUDENT

Calore relictus.

4. Interesse Laudibus
Non possum divinis,
Nec Missae nec Vesperae,
Dum cantetur finis.

5. Decus *N* (*name of the city*)
Dum sitis insigne
Postulo suffragia
De vobis jam digne.

6. Ergo mentem capite
Similem Martini,
Vestibus induite
Corpus peregrini,

7. Ut vos Deus transferat
Ad regna *polorum*,
Ibi dona conferat
Vobis beatorum.

calore relictus.

4. Interesse Laudibus
non possum divinis,
nec Missae nec Vesperis,
dum cantetur finis.

5. *Dayton** volatoribus
decorum est valde:
quaero auxilia
a vobis en digne.

6. Ergo mentem capite
similem Martini,
vestibus induite
corpus peregrini,

7. Ut vos Deus transferat
ad regna *Caelorum*,
et ibi dona conferat
vobis beatorum.

Goliardus.

VOCABULARY

calor, -is, m: *heat, warmth*, 23, I; 90 (36, b
relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: *to leave behind, abandon*,

4. intersum: *to be present*, 41, 1; 79
laus, laudis, f: *praise*, 23, II; Laudes, in *pl.*: *Lauds, a devotional service*
Missa, 1: *Mass*
vesperus, 3: *of evening*; Vesperae (preces): *Vespers, eccl. evening devotion*; (vespera, 1: *evening*)

5. Dayton, indecl.: *Dayton, Ohio*, 16, c
volator, -is, m, (*fr. volo*, 1, *to fly*): 49, d; 84
[decus, -oris, n: *ornament*, 23, III]; decorus, 3: *graceful, adorned*
[insignis, 2: *remarkable, eminent, distinguished*]
[postulo, 1: *to demand*]
quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: *to ask*
en, *enterj*: *lo, behold, see, therefore*, 52

6. Ergo: *therefore*
mens, -ntis, f: *mind*, 22, c; 23, II
capio, 3, cepi, captum: *to catch, get*, 40
similis, 2: *like, similar, such as*,
Martinus, 2: *Martin, (St. Martin of Tours who gave the half of his cloak to a beggar), from Mars, -rtis*, 49, o
similem (*menti understood*) Martini, 78

7. transfero, 3, -tuli, -latum: *to transport*, 43, 8;
ibi: *there*; regnum, 3: *realm, reign* (124, a
[polus, 2: *the pole of the earth*]; caeli, -orum: *Heaven*
confero, -tuli, collatum: *to collect, compare, grant*,
43, 8; 124, a; donum, 2: *gift*

* Adapted for a lecture given in Dayton, Ohio.

TRANSLATION

and am devoid of warmth.

4. I can't even remain
at the divine Office,
or at Mass or Vespers,
until the end is sung.

finis, -is, m: *end*, 23, I
canto, 1: *to sing, chant*, 120, c, 3

5. *Dayton** is well renowned
for its Flyers,
hence I courteously request
an alms worthy of you.

[jam: *already, now*]
auxilium, 2, (*fr. auxilior*, 1, *to help*): *help*, 49, f
[suffragium, 2, (*fr. suffragor*, 1, *to vote, support*):
vote, suffrage], 49, f

6. Therefore have a spirit
like to Martin's,
and clothe the body
of a stranger with a garment,

vestis, -is, f: *clothes, garment*, 22, a; 23, II; 93, a
induo, 3, -dui, -dutum: *to put on, to clothe*
corpus, -oris, n: *body*, 23, III
peregrinus, 3: *foreign, strange, pilgrim*

7. so that God may take you
to the kingdom of heaven,
and there confer upon you
the rewards of the Blessed.

beatus, 3: *happy*; beatus, 2: *a saint*

WITTY SAYINGS AND PLEASANTRIES

1. Chastity

Quid facies, facies cum Veneris veneris ante?
Ne sedeas, sed eas, ne pereas per eas. (*Distich*)

3. Cornix

Est avis in silva nigro vestita colore:
Si cor sustuleris, res erit alba nimis. (*Distich*)

5. Palindrome

Signa te, signa: temere me tangis et angis.

2. Sloth

Daemon languebat, monachus tunc esse volebat:
Ast ubi convaluit, mansit, ut ante fuit. (*Distich*)

4. Redemption

Mors mortis morti mortem nisi dedisset,
Caelorum nobis janua clausa foret.

6. Palindrome

Sumitis a vestitis: sitit is, sitit Eva, sitimus.

ANONYMORUM SALES ET LEPORES.

TRANSLATION VOCAB.

Sal, -is, m or n, in pl. m: salt, wit
lepos or lepor, -oris, m: *pleasantry*: (lepus, -oris, m,;
hare, 23, III)

facio, 3, feci, factum: *to make, act*, 32, c
facies, 5: *figure, face, complexion*
Venus, -neris, f: *the goddess of beauty, charm, and
lust*

daemon, -is, m, *Greek: devil*
langueo, 2, -gui, -: *to be sick*
monachus, 2, *Greek: monk*
convalesco, 3, -lui, -: *to recover*
maneo, 2, -nsi, -nsum: *to remain*

cornix, -icis, f: *raven, crow*
cor, -rdis, n: *heart*, 22, e; 23, I
nix, nivis, f: *snow*, 22, d
avis, -is, f: *bird*
silva, 1: *forest*
niger, -gra, -grum: *black*
vestio, 4: *to clothe*

Mors, mortis: *our Redeemer*
mors, -rtis, f: *death*
janua, 1: *gate, door*
claudio, 3, -ausi, -ausum: *to close*

palindromus, 2, *Greek: palindrome, same reading
forward and backward*
signo, 1: *to sign, observe, behave*, 108, a
temere: *rashly*
te, me, *accusatives*, 30, a

sumo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: *to take*
veto, 1, -tui, -titum: *to forbid*, 36, b; 26, f
sitio, 4: *to thirst*

TRANSLATION

1. Castitas.

*What will you do should you encounter a charming
countenance?
Don't stay, but run away, lest you perish by it.*

antevenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to come before, meet*,
61, a; 125, a
sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: *to sit, remain, stay*, 106
pereo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to perish*, 42, 3; 124, a

2. Desidia.

*Whilst the devil was sick he wished to be a monk:
but when he recovered, he remained as he was
before.*

ante(a): *before*

3. Enigma Cornicis.

*There is a bird in the forest clad in black color:
if you take away his heart, he will be a thing ex-
ceedingly white.*

color, -is, m: *color*, 23, I
tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatus: *to take, carry away*, 109,
albus, 3: *white*; nimis: *exceedingly*

4. Redemptio.

*Had not the Death of death consigned death to death,
the gate of heaven would have been closed to us?*

dedisset, 109, c, d

5. Palindromus.

*Behave yourself, behave; rashly you touch me and
grieve me.*

tango, 3, tetigi, tactum: *to touch*
ango, 3, -nxi, -nctum: *to press, throttle, torture*

6. Idem et Retrorsum.

*You partake of forbidden things: he thirsts, Eve
thirsts, we all thirst.*

Eva, 1: *Eve*

86. BY ANONYMS

Age Uncertain

Course 22

WITTY SAYINGS AND PLEASANTRIES

7. Original Sin

Mala malae malo mala contulit omnia mundo.

(Hexameter)

8. Against Putting One's Name Everywhere

Nomina stultorum jacent ubique locorum.

(Hexameter)

9. Alarm

Mea pater, suum matrem lupus est in silva.

10. Disillusion.

Fari rebar scio, et fabar nescio.

11. On a Sun Dial

SOL ME, VOS UMBRA REGIT.

12. On Napoleon's Triumphal Arch in Rome

SOLI SOLI SOLI.

13. Necrology

Obit anus, abit onus.

14. Oracle

Ibis redibis nunquam morieris in armis.

SALES ET LEPORES.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

7. Peccatum Originale.

māla, 1: jaw, cheek
mālus, 3: bad, weak; mālus: a bad man
māla: a bad woman; mālum: a bad thing, 26, f
mālum, 2: apple
confero, 3. -tuli, -latum: to bring to, 79

The mouth of a weak woman with an apple brought
all evils into the world.

omnis, 2: all, every
mundus, 2: world

8. Nomina Non Sunt Ubique Ascribenda.

stultus, 3: foolish, unlearned
jaceo, -cui, -citurus: to lie, recline
ubique: everywhere, 67, c

Fools' names are displayed in all places.

locus, 2: place; in pl. loca, -orum

9. Terror.

meo, 1: go, pass, 108, a
sus, suis, c: swine, pig
ēdo, 3, ēdi ēsum: to eat, 46
silva, 1: forest, woods

Go, father, the wolf is eating the mother of the pigs in
the woods.

lupus, 2: wolf

10. Spe Fraudatus.

fari: to speak, 44, 11
reor, 2, ratus: to think, suppose
scius, 3: cognizant, intelligent

I thought I was speaking to an intelligent person, but
I was speaking to an ignorant one.

nescius, 3: ignorant

11. Solarium.

sol, -is, m: sun
umbra, 1: shadow
me, vos, fr. ego, 30, a

I am ruled by the sun, and you by the shadow.

rego, 3, rexi, rectum: to guide, direct, rule

12. Romae in Arcu Napoleonis Triumphantis.

solus, 3: only, 30, k
sol, -is, m: sun

To the Only Sun of the Earth.

solum, 2: floor, ground, country, earth

13. Nuntius Tristis.

obeo, 4, -ii or -ivi, itum: to go against, die, 42, 3
abeo, 4: to go away, 42, 3; obit, abit, colloquial per-
anus, 4, f: old woman

The old woman died; the trouble is gone.

(fects) onus, -neris, n: burden, trouble

14. Oraculum.

redeo, 4: to return, 42, 3
numquam: never
moriōr, 3, -, -rtum: to die, 40
arma, -orum, 2: tools, weapon, war

With punctuation before numquam: You will go and
return and will never die in war.

With punctuation after numquam: You will go and
never return; you will die in war.

WITTY SAYINGS AND PLEASANTRIES

15. Maxim

Deo et fratribus omni tempore serviendum est amore, more, ore, re.

16. *The Sly Dodge Concerning the Murder of St. Elizabeth's Mother in Hungary*
Reginam occidere nolite timere bonum est: si omnes consenserint ego non contradico.

17. Alaric's Inscription

TE-TE RO-RO MA-MA NU-NU DA-DA TE-TE LA-LA TE-TE. (Te tero, Roma, manu nuda; date tela; latete.)

18. Haughtiness

O quid Tua te
be, bis? bia abit. RA RA RA es et in RAM RAM RAM I I.

(O superbe, quid superbis? Tua superbia te superabit. TerRA es et in terRAM Ibis.)

SALES ET LEPORES.

VOCABULARY

lex, legis, f: law, maxim, principle
servio, 4: to serve, 80, l, 111, c
amor, -is, m: love
mos, moris, m: will, wont, custom, (virtue); in pl.:
manners, character, morals

occido, 3, -cidi, -cisum: to kill
regina, 1: queen
nolo, -lui, -: not to want, 42, 5, c; 108, a
timeo, 2, -mui, -: to fear
consentio, 4, -nsi, -nsum: to agree, 109, b
contradico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: to contradict, oppose

terro, 3, trivi, tritum: to rub, wear, crush
nudus, 3: naked, bare
telum, 2: arms. weapon
lateo, 2, -tui, -titum: to be hidden from, hide. 108, a

super, prep.: above, on, 50, c
be, bia, ra, ram: syllables without meaning
quid: what, why
bis: twice, 29, d; tuus, 3: thine, thy, (your), 30, e
tu: thou, (you), 30, a
abit, future suffix of supero
ter: thrice

TRANSLATION

15. Lex Vitae.

At all times we must serve God and our brethren,
with love, with virtue, in word, in deed.

ōs, ōris, n: mouth
res, 5: thing, deed

16. Anceps Sententia.

With punctuation after nolite and non: Do not kill
the queen; to fear is advisable: if all should consent,
I do not: I oppose it.

With punctuation after timere and consenserint:
Do not fear to kill the queen; it is all right; if all
agree, I do not contradict.

17. Hexametron Alarici Ad Portas Romae.

I crush you, Rome, with my bare hand; surrender
your arms; go into hiding.

Alaricus, 2, king of the Visigoths, d. 408 A. D.

18. Superbia.

O haughty man, why are you haughty? Your
haughtiness will overcome you. You are dust and you
will return into dust.

superbus, 3: haughty, 20, b
superbio, 4: to be haughty
supero, 1: to overcome, 32, c

87. JOHN OF ALTA SILVA

Died 1300 A. D.

Course 56

STORY OF SEVEN WISE MEN

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Praecipit rex (Dolopathus) filium in flammas

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Praecipit rex filium in flammas projici. Cum

JOANNES DE ALTA SILVA.

Ex Historia Septem Sapientum.

VOCABULARY

1. praecipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum: to order, command,
flamma, 1: flame, blaze, blazing fire (40; 57, b')

TRANSLATION

1. The king ordered his son to be cast into the

87. JOHN OF ALTA SILVA

Died 1300 A. D.

Course 56

STORY OF SEVEN WISE MEN

projici. Cum igitur instaret rex jubendo omnesque jussionem declinarent, ecce senex reverendi vultus prolixaeque barbae et cani capitis, ramum olive in signum pacis manu dextera ferens, mula candida vectus ad regem usque, populis sibi iter praebentibus pervenit.

2. Qui desiliens de mula regem omnesque, qui cederant, reverenter salutat. Resalutato eo a rege, ut decebat, querit rex patriam gentemque et casum adventus, unde veniat et quo vadat. At ille: "Ego," ait, "o rex, et gente et natione Romnaus sum unusque de septem sapientibus dicor."

3. Est autem mos mihi circuire orbem et perambulare terras, urbes, castella vicosque pertransire, adire curias regum nobiliumque personas judicia exempla ac causas antiquorum ad vivorum notitiam perferendo; libenter, quod nescio, disco et doceo, quod didici.

4. Rex Dolopathus respondit: "En nunc consilio mihi et auxilio opus est sapientum, quia hodie pr-

autem instaret rex jubendo omnesque jussionem declinarent, ecce senex reverendi vultus prolixaeque barbae et cani capitis, ramum olivae in signum pacis manu dextera ferens, mula candida vectus ad regem usque populo ei iter praebente pervenit.

2. Qui desiliens de mula regem omnesque, qui aderant, reverenter salutat. A resalutato sene, ut decebat, quaerit rex patriam gentemque et casum adventus, unde veniret et quo vaderet. At ille: "Ego," inquit, "o rex, et gente et natione Romanus sum unusque de septem sapientibus dicor."

3. Est enim mos mihi circuire orbem et perambulare terras; urbes, castella vicosque pertransire, adire curias regum nobiliumque personas judicia exempla ac causas antiquorum ad vivorum notitiam perferendo; libenter, quod nescio, disco et doceo, quod didici."

4. "Recte nunc consilio mihi et auxilio opus est sapientum," respondit rex Dolopathus, "quia hodie

Ex Historia Septem Sapientum.

VOCABULARY

insto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: to stand on, urge, persevere, 125, a
jubeo, 2, jussi, jussum: to order, command, 117, e
declino, 1: to bend aside, turn away, avoid, shun, 125, a
revereor, 2, reveritum: to feel awe, revere, 111, b
vultus, 4: look, mien, countenance, 67, d
prolixus, 3: widely extended, wide, long, 67, d
canus, 3: grey; pl. grey hair, 67, d
ramus, 2: bough, branch, twig
oliva, 1: olive, olive tree

2. desilio, 4, -silui, -sultum: to leap down
resaluto, 1: to return a greeting, 90, no 114
deceat, decuit: it becomes, it fits, it suits, 48, d
quaero, 3, quaesivi, quaesitum: to seek for, inquire, casus, 4: fall, case, event, opportunity (101)
quo: whereto; unde: whence, wherefrom, 51, f
vado, 3, vasi, vasum: to go, walk, 99, c, 3; 132

3. circumeo, 4: to go, walk, travel round, 42, 3; 61, perambulo, 1: to go, pass, travel through, 61, a (a castellum, 2, (fr. castra, -orum, camp): castle, fortress
vicus, 2: quarter, district of a town, village
pertranseo, 4: to go, pass through, 42, 3; 61, a
adeo, 4: to go, come to, 42, 3; 61, a
curia, 1: the house of the senate, court
notitia, 1 (fr. novi, novisse, to know): idea, knowledge notion

4. opus, indecl: need, 83

TRANSLATION

flames. While then the king stood firm in his command and the people withheld obedience, behold, an old man of venerable mien, with a long beard and white hair, carrying an olive branch in his right hand as a sign of peace, came riding on a white mule up to the king as the people made a passage way for him.

candidus, 3: shining white, candid, 93, a
veho, 3, vexi, vectum: to carry; passive: to ride
praebeo, 3, -bui, -bitum: to offer, hold out, afford, 114, a

2. Dismounting, he courteously saluted the king and all those present. When he in turn had been greeted, as was becoming, the king asked about his fatherland, his nation, and the reason of his coming, whence he came, and whither he was going. Then he said: "O king, I am by nation and birth a Roman, called one of the seven wise men."

3. "It is my wont to journey around the world, and walk through countries and cities, and go to castles and villages, and see the courts of kings and the homes of noble men, bringing down to the present generations the sayings and examples of the ancients; gladly do I learn what I do not know, and teach what I have learned."

perfero, 3, pertuli, perlatum: to carry to, convey, suffer, 117, e

4. "Behold, just now I need the counsel and aid of wise men," said King Dolopathus, "since today pr-

STORY OF SEVEN WISE MEN

dentis in regno Siciliae defecere." At sapiens: "Verum quoniam mei juris est, ut tibi de thesauro cordis mei vetus exemplum proferam—sic enim omnibus regibus et principibus, ad quos venire contigerit, soleo facere—jube circumstantibus populis, ut me patienter auscultent."

5. Imperante autem rege "Conticuere omnes intente ora tenebant," (Virgil) oculis tantum et auribus in illum intuentes. Sapiens vero in eminenti loco se statuens sic incipit: "Fuit, o rex, quidam juvenis secundum mortalium dignitatem nobilem ortus natalibus."

6. Qui avaritiam, ne suae derogaret generositati, vitare volens, immo potius famam suam latius extendere summisque adaequare cupiens, res a parentibus sibi successione relictas prodige magis quam large dilapidare coepit. Ipse enim, ut moris est juvenum,

"Cereus in vitium flecti, monitoribus asper,

prudentes in regno Siciliae defecere." At sapiens: "Verum quoniam mei juris est, ut tibi de thesauro cordis mei vetus exemplum proferam—sic enim omnibus regibus et principibus, ad quos me venire contigerit, soleo facere,—jube circumstanti populo, ut me patienter auscultet."

5. Imperante ergo rege "Conticuerunt omnes intente ora tenebant," oculis et auribus in senem intuentes, qui in eminenti loco consistens incipit sic: "Fuit, o rex, quidam juvenis secundum mortalium dignitatem nobilem ortus natalibus."

6. Qui avaritiam, ne suae derogaret generositati, vitare volens, atque famam suam latius extendere, nec non summis adaequare cupiens, res a parentibus sibi successione relictas prodige magis quam large dilapidare coepit. Ipse enim, ut moris est juvenum,

"Cerae instar in vitium flecti, esseque asperum in monitores,

Ex Historia Septem Sapientum.

VOCABULARY

prudens, -ntis, m: a wise man
deficio, 3, defeci, defectum: to fail, become less, go
verum: truly, really, but (out, 32, d
jus, juris, n: right, law, 71
thesaurus, 2: treasure
contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: to touch, happen, befall,
120, c, 3; 57, 4
soleo, 2, -, solitum: to be accustomed, 31, d
ausculto, 1, with acc. or dat.: to listen to, overhear,
5. impero, 1: to order, command, 114, a
conticesco, 3, -ticui, -: to become silent, 32, d; 100
ōs, ōris, n: mouth, lip
auris, -is, f: ear
intueor, 2, -tutum: to look at, gaze at
[statuo, 3, -statui, statutum: to place, erect, decide]
orior, 4, ortum: to rise, arise, be born
natales, -ium, m: birth, origin, 91

6. avaritia, 1: avarice, cupidity, covetousness
derogo, 1: to repeal, restrict, diminish, 79
vito, 1: to avoid, shun
fama, 1: talk, report, renown
extendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to stretch out, expand, extend
adaequo, 1: to make equal with, equal to, 79
successio, -nis, f (fr. succedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum, to
follow, succeed): succession, inheritance, 93, a
relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum: to leave (behind)
prodigus, 3: prodigal, 28; a
largus, 3: abundant, copious, rich, large, 28, a
dilapido, 1: to squander, destroy
coepi, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, commence, 45, 12
[cereus, 3: waxen]: cera, 1: wax

TRANSLATION

dent men are wanting in the kingdom of Sicily." Then the wise man replied: "As it is truly my duty to offer you an ancient example from the treasure of my heart,—for so I am accustomed to do before all the kings and princes to whom I happen to come,—command the people (who are) standing around, to listen to me with patience."

124, a

5. When the king gave the order they became silent, and held their tongues, giving the old man their attention with eyes and ears, who, standing in a conspicuous place began as follows: "There was, O king, (once upon a time) a young man, born of an illustrious family according to the dignity of mortal beings."

6. Wishing to shun avarice, lest it check his generosity, nay rather, desirous to extend his reputation more widely and to make it equal to that of the greatest men, he began to lavish the substance, bequeathed to him as an inheritance by his parents, in a prodigal rather than in a munificent manner. For he, as is the nature of youth,

"to be bent as wax to crime, harsh to counselors, sluggish in providing useful things, but being prodigal, boastful, passionate, and

flecto, 3, flexi, flexum: to bend, 55, a, 5; COLL. 36, 3
monitor, -is, m (fr. moneo, 2, -nui, -nitum, to admonish): advise

87. JOHN OF ALTA SILVA

Died 1300 A. D.

Course 56

STORY OF SEVEN WISE MEN

*Utilium tardus provisor, prodigus eris,
Sublimis cupidusque et amata relinquere per-
nix," (Horace) sua absque modo distribu-
ebat.*

*utilia providere tardum, sed fieri prodigum,
elatum cupidumque atque pernicem reli-
quendi amata," sua absque modo distribu-
ebat.*

Ex Historia Septem Sapientum.

VOCABULARY

asper, 3: *rough, harsh*
provideo, 2, -visi, -visum: *to foresee, provide, care for,*
COLL. 36, 3
effero, 3, extuli, elatum: *to carry out, utter, extol, 36, b*

TRANSLATION

*quick to forsake the things he loved," (Horace)
was distributing his goods beyond due measure."*
pernix, -nicis: *swift, nimble, agile, active, COLL. 36, 3*

88. JACOPONE DA TODI

Died 1306 A. D.

Course 18

STABAT MATER*

Original

1. Stabat Mater Dolorosa
Juxta crucem lacrimosa,
Dum pendebat Filius;
Cujus animam gementem,
Contristatam et dolentem
Pertransivit gladius.

2. O quam tristis et afflicta
Fuit illa benedicta
Mater Unigeniti;
Quae maerebat et dolebat
Pia Mater, dum videbat
Nati poenas inclyti.

In prose

1. Stabat Mater Dolorosa
juxta crucem lacrimosa,
dum pendebat Filius;
cujus animam gementem,
contristatam et dolentem
pertransivit gladius.

2. O quam tristis et afflicta
fuit illa benedicta
Mater Unigeniti;
quae maerebat et dolebat
Pia Mater, dum videbat
Nati poenas inclyti.

JACOPONUS TUDERTINUS, O. F. M. STABAT MATER.

VOCABULARY

1. mater, -tris, f: *mother, 22, b*
dolorosus, 3 (fr. dolor, -is, m, *pain*): *sorrowful, 49, t*
juxta, prep.: *beside, 50, a*
crux, crucis, f: *cross*
lacrimosus, 3 (fr. lacrima, 1, *tear*): *tearful, weeping,*
pendeo, 2, pependi, -: *to hang, (intransitive) (49, t*
gemo, 3, -muli, -mitum: *to sigh, groan*
contristo, 1: *to sadden, grieve*
doleo, 2, -lui, -: *to ail, suffer*

2. tristis, 2: *sorry, mournful*
affligo, 3, -flixi, -ctum: *to afflict*
benedico, 3, -dixi, -ctum: *to bless*
unigenitus, 3: *only-begotten, 49, A*
maereo, -, -: *to grieve*
pius, 3: *pious, loving*
poena, 1: *punishment, pain*
inclytus, 3, (Greek): *renowned, famous,*

TRANSLATION

1. *The sorrowful Mother stood,
weeping beside the cross,
whilst her Son was hanging there;
and her soul, grieving,
saddened, suffering,
the sword has pierced.*

pertranseo, 4, --ivi, -itum: *to go through the middle,
pierce across, 61, a*

2. *O how sorrowful and afflicted
was that dear blessed Mother
of the Only-Begotten Son;
(and) what did that devoted Mother
grieve and suffer, when she beheld
the pains of her Divine Son.*

natus, 3 (fr. nascor, natus, *to be born*): *son*

* TROCHAIC DIMETER, accentual: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | — ∪; every third verse catalectic: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | ∪;
cf. 139, 4, c.

STABAT MATER

3. *Quis est homo, qui non fleret,*
Matrem Christi si videret
In tanto supplicio?
Quis non posset contristari,
Piam Matrem contemplari,
Dolentem cum Filio?

4. Pro peccatis suae gentis
Vidit Jesum in tormentis
Et flagellis subditum;
Vidit suum dulcem Natum
Moriendo, desolatum,
Dum emisit spiritum.

5. Eja Mater, fons amoris,
Me sentire vim doloris
Fac, ut tecum lugeam;
Fac, ut ardeat cor meum
In amando Christum Deum,
Ut *sibi* complaceam.

6. Christe, cum sit hinc exire,
Da per Matrem me venire
Ad palmam victoriae.

3. *Esset homo, qui non fleret,*
Matrem Christi si videret
in tanto supplicio?
Quis non posset contristari,
Piam Matrem contemplari,
dolentem cum Filio?

4. Pro peccatis suae gentis
vidit Jesum in tormentis
et flagellis subditum;
vidit suum dulcem Natum
moriendo desolatum,
dum emisit spiritum.

5. Eja Mater, fons amoris,
me sentire vim doloris
fac, ut tecum lugeam;
fac, ut ardeat cor meum
in amando Christum Deum,
ut *ei* complaceam.

6. Christe, cum sit hinc exire,
da per Matrem me venire
ad palmam victoriae.

STABAT MATER.

VOCABULARY

3. fleo, 2, flevi, -tum: *to weep; either quis est, qui non fleat, si videat, 99; or esset homo, (main sentence), 103*
supplicium, 2: *capital punishment, torture, pain*
contristo, 1: *to make sad; in passive: to grieve*
contemplor, 1: *to look at attentively, see; posset, 103*
4. gens, -ntis, f: *nation, 23, II*
tormentum, 2: *torment, anguish*
flagellum, 2: *lash, whip, scourge, 79*
dulcis, 2: *sweet*
morior, 3, mortuum: *to die, 40; 117, e*
desolo, 1: *to forsake*
emitto, 3, -misi, -missum: *to send or give out, or up*
5. eja: *alas, ah, 52*
fons, -ntis, m: *fount*
amor (*fr. amo, to love*): *love, 49, a*
dolor, -is, m (*fr. doleo, 2, -lui, -, to ail*): *pain, grief*
fac, *imp. of facio, to make, 34, c*
tecum: *with thee, 50, b*
lugeo, 2, -, -: *to mourn, 124, a*
ardeo, 2, arsi, arsum: *to burn, 124, a*
6. hinc: *hence*
exeo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to go out, depart, 42, 3; 125, a*
do, 1: *to grant, 57, b'*
palma, 1: *palm*

TRANSLATION

3. *Who is there that would not weep,*
were he to see Christ's Mother
in such great anguish?
Who would not grieve
to see the loving Mother
suffering with her Son?
4. *For the sins of her nation,*
she saw Jesus in dire anguish
subjected to scourging.
She beheld her beloved Son
dying, desolate,
as He gave up His spirit.
5. *Ah, Mother, fount of love,*
make me feel thy own grief's force
that I may mourn with thee.
Make my heart burn
with love for Christ, my God
that I may be pleasing to Him.
6. *And, O Christ, at my departure*
Grant me to come, through Thy Mother,
to the palm of victory...

complaceo, or placeo, 2, -cui, -citur: *to please some one, 80, m; 124, a*

victoria, 1: *victory*

89. DANTE ALIGHIERI

1265-1321 A. D.

Course 87

ON MONARCHY

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Satis igitur declaratum est, quod proprium opus humani generis totaliter accepti est actuare semper totam potentiam intellectus possibilis per prius ad speculandum et secundario propter hoc ad operandum per suam extensionem.

2. Et quia, quemadmodum est in parte, sic et toto, et in homine particulari contingit, quod sedendo et quiescendo prudentia et sapientia ipse perficitur, patet, quod genus humanum in quiete sive tranquillitate pacis ad proprium suum opus quod fere divinum est (juxta illud: "Minuisti eum paulo minus ab angelis") liberrime atque facillime se habet.

3. Unde manifestum est, quod pax universalis est optimum eorum, quae ad nostram beatitudinem ordinantur. Hinc est, quod pastoribus de sursum sonuit, non divitiae, non voluptates, non honores, non longitudo vitae, non sanitas, non robur, non pulchritudo, sed pax.

4. Hinc etiam "Pax vobis" Salus hominum salutabat. Decebat enim summum Salvatorem summam salutationem exprimere. Quem quidem morem servare

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Satis igitur clarum est, humani generis esse omnem intellectus potentiam prius considerando dein agendo extendere.

2. Et quia quemadmodum uni homini sic et toti generi humano contigit pace et quiete perfici, patet juxta verba: "Minuisti eum paulo minus ab angelis" opus hoc fere divinum quiescendo in pace optime se habere.

3. Unde manifestum est pacem universalem optimum esse eorum, quae ad nostram prosperitatem ordinantur. Hinc est, quod pastoribus in Bethlehem voce angelica desuper sonuerunt non divitiae, non voluptates, non honores, non longitudo vitae, non sanitas, non robur, non pulchritudo, sed pax.

4. Hinc etiam voce: "Pax vobis" Salvator hominum suos salutabat. Decebat enim summum Salvatorem summam salutationem inducere. Quem quidem

DANTE ALIGHIERI.

De Monarchia.

VOCABULARY

1. [declaro, 1: to make clear, reveal, declare], 57, 4 [totaliter, slang for:] ex toto, omnino: altogether, entirely
[actuo, 1: slang for:] ago, 3, egi, actum: to act, 117, a [specular, 1: to spy, watch, explore]

2. quem ad modum: in what manner, as, just as [particularis, 2: single, individual]
contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum: to touch, happen, befall, 79 [sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum: to seat]
[quiesco, 3, quievi, quietum: to rest]
perficio, 3, -feci, -fectum: to accomplish, make perfect
quies, -etis, f: repose, rest, 88
[tranquillitas, -tatis, f (fr. tranquillus, 3, calm): calmness]

3. manifestus, 3: clear, visible, evident
eorum, 67, c
ordino, 1: to set in order, arrange, 133, a [sursum: upwards]; deorsum, desuper: from above
divitiae, -arum (fr. dives, -vitis, rich): riches
voluptas, -tatis, f: delight, pleasure
longitudo, -dinis, f (fr. longus, 3, long): length
sanitas, -tatis, f (fr. sanus, 3, sound): health

4. [salus, -lutis, f: welfare, safety]
saluto, 1: to greet, salute
[exprimo, 3, -pressi, -pressum: to press out, express]
decet, decuit: it becomes, it fits, it suits, 48, d

TRANSLATION

1. It is, therefore, clear enough that it is the duty of mankind to develop the power of its intellect by reflection, then by action.

extendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to stretch out, expand, extend

2. And because it happens that in the same manner as the individual, so also the entire human race, arrives at perfection in peace and quiet, from the words, "Thou hast made him a little less than the angels" (Ps. 8, 6), it is plain that this task—an almost divine one—prosper most in a state of peaceful repose.

juxta, according to, 50, a
minuo, 3, -nui, -nutum: to lessen, diminish

3. It is, then, manifest that of all the things ordained for our advancement, universal peace is the best. Hence to the shepherds at Bethlehem there did not sound forth from on high through the voice of the angel riches, nor pleasures, nor honors, nor length of life, nor health, nor strength, nor beauty, but peace.

robur, -boris, n: strength

4. Hence also the Savior of men addressed His own with the greeting, "Peace be to you." For it behooved our Divine Savior to use the highest form of

ON MONARCHY

voluerunt discipuli ejus et Paulus, in salutationibus suis, ut omnibus manifestum esse potest.
~~ut omnibus manifestum esse potest.~~

5. Ex iis ergo, quae declarata sunt, patet, per quod melius, imo per quod optime genus humanum pertingit ad opus proprium. Et per consequens visum est propinquissimum medium per quod itur ad illud, ad quod velut in ultimum finem omnia opera nostra ordinantur, quod est pax universalis, quae pro principio rationum subsequentium supponatur; quod erat necessarium, ut dictum fuit, velut signum praefixum, in quo quidquid probandum est resolvatur, tamquam in manifestissimam veritatem.

(His style is a perfect imitation of Cicero's tedious tautology in "Pro Archia," cf. page 79, 4.)

morem servare voluerunt et discipuli ejus, nec non et Paulus, in salutationibus suis, ut omnibus manifestum esse potest.

5. (Ex iis ergo, quae disserta sunt, patet, per quid melius, immo per quid optime genus humanum perveniat ad opus proprium. Et per consequentiam id videtur aptissimum medium, per quod illud obtineatur, ad quod velut in ultimum finem omnia opera nostra necesse ordinantur, quodve est pax universalis, quae pro principio rationum subsequentium supponitur; hoc est necessarium, ut dictum est, velut signum praefixum, in quo quidquid probandum est, resolvatur tamquam in manifestissima veritate.*)

This fifth section in classical clearness: Ex his ergo patet omnem actionem humanam mente Christi in communi pace tamquam in manifestissima ratione esse resolvendam.

De Monarchia.

VOCABULARY

mos, moris, m: habit, custom

5. dissero, 3, -rui, -rtum: to examine, discuss
immo: yea, yes, nay, rather, even
pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: to arrive, reach, 132
[pertingo, 3, -tigi, -: to reach to]
consequentia, 1 (fr. consequor, 3, to follow after):
consequence
[propinquus, 3: neighboring, kinsman]
aptus, 3: appropriate, fitting
subsequor, 3, -secutum: to follow after
suppono, 3, -posui, -positum: to put, lay under, substitute
resolvo, 3, -lvi, -lutum: to unbind, solve
according to the mind of Christ, is to be based on universal peace as its fundamental purpose.

TRANSLATION

salutation. This custom, likewise, His disciples wished to preserve, and Paul, too, in their salutations, as is evident to everyone.

5. [From what has been discussed it is clear how mankind can better, nay more, best achieve its proper task. Consequently that seems to be the means best suited for attaining that end, to which as to their final end all our works should be directed, namely, universal peace, which is set down as a principle for all subsequent reasonings. This principle, as was stated, is necessary as an established norm according to which whatever work is to be discussed must be solved in (the light of) this fundamental truth.]

Haec pars quinta classica claritate sic dicitur: From all this it is plain that every human action, according to the mind of Christ, is to be based on universal peace as its fundamental purpose.

90. FRANCIS PETRARCH

Excellent Latin Scholar

WITH GREETINGS TO CICERO

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Si te superior offendit epistola, verum enim, ut ipse soles dicere, quod ait familiaris tuus in Andria:

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Si te superioris offendit epistola,—verum enim, ut ipse soles dicere, quod familiaris fatetur tuus in An-

FRANCISCUS PETRARCHA.

Tullio Ciceroni Salutem.

VOCABULARY

1. superus, 3, superior, 2: upper, higher, 27, f
offendo, -ndi, -nsum: to offend, 109, a
verum, 57, 4; COLL. 36, 2

* Cf. REMARK II in Preface.

TRANSLATION

1. If this letter (of mine), signed above, offends you,—since it is true as you are wont to say what fateor, 2, fassum: to confess, make known

90. FRANCIS PETRARCH

1304-1374 A. D.

Course 89

WITH GREETINGS TO CICERO

"Obsequium amicos, veritas odium parit," accipe, quod offensum animum ex parte mulceat, nec semper odiosa sit veritas, quoniam veris reprehensionibus irascimur, veris laudibus delectamur. Tu quidem, Cicero, quod pace tua dixerim, ut homo vixisti, ut orator dixisti, ut philosophus scripsisti.

2. Vitam ego tuam carpsi, non ingenium aut linguam, ut, qui illud mirer, hanc stupeam. Neque tamen in vita tua quidquam praeter constantiam requiro, et professioni philosophicae debitum quietis studium, et a civilibus bellis fugam, extincta libertate ac sepulta jam et complorata Republica.

3. Vide, ut aliter tecum ago, ac tu cum Epicuro multis in locis, sed expressius in libro De Finibus agebas. Ejus enim ubilibet vitam probas, rides ingenium. Ego nihil in te rideo, vitae tamen compatiar, ut dixi ingenio gratulor eloquiove.

dria, "obsequio amicos, veritate vero odium pari,"—accipe, etiam quod offensum animum ex parte mulceat; nec semper odiosa sit veritas, quamquam veris reprehensionibus irascimur, veris vero laudibus delectamur. Tu enim, Cicero, pace tua dixerim, ut homo vixisti, ut orator dixisti, ut philosophus scripsisti.

2. Vitam ego tuam carpo, non ingenium aut linguam, cum, qui illud mirer, hanc stupeam. Neque tamen in vita tua quidquam praeter constantiam requiro et professioni philosophicae debitum quietis studium, et a civilibus bellis fugam extincta libertate ac sepulta jam et complorata Republica.

3. Vide, quemadmodum aliter tecum agam, quam tu cum Epicuro multis in locis, sed expressius in libro De Finibus agebas. Ejus enim ubilibet vitam probas, rides ingenium. Ego nihil in te rideo, vitae tamen compatiar; ast ut dixi, de ingenio gratulor tibi eloquioque.

Tullio Ciceroni Salutem.

VOCABULARY

familiaris, 2 (fr. familia, 1, family): familiar, intimate
obsequium, 2 (fr. obsequor, 3, -secutum, to obey):
compliance

pario, 3, -rui, -ritum: to bear, bring forth, COLL. 36, 2
mulceo, 2, -lsi, -lsum: to stroke, soothe, appease, 120,
odiosus, 3 (fr. odium, 2, hatred): hateful (c, 2
irascor, 3, iratum: to be angry with, 80, f
[quidem: indeed, at last, in truth]
dixerim: I would say, 103

2. carpo, 3, -psi, -ptum: to pluck off, blame, slander; carpsi, Ciceronian obsolete letter style
ingenium, 2: nature, character, genius
miror, 1: to admire, 120, c, 3
stupeo, 3, -pui, -, with abl. or acc.: to be stunned, amazed, 125, a
constantiam: Cicero, the great defender of the Roman Constitution, was a fiery partisan of Caesar, who destroyed it entirely; hence, as a punishment, Cicero's head and hands were cut off and nailed to the Rostrum in the Roman Forum, where he had abused them for Caesar.

3. ago, 3, egi, actum: to act, 132; aliter quam, 87
Epicurus, 2, founder of Epicurean philosophy in Athens, d. 270 B. C.
expressus, 3 (fr. exprimo, 3, to express): clear, distinct, -is, m: end, limit, purpose (tinct., 28, a
ubilibet: wherever, anywhere
rideo, 2, risi, risum: to laugh at
comparior, 3, -passum: to have sympathy, pity, 40; 79
eloquium, 2 (fr. eloquor, 3, elocutum, to speak):
speech, eloquence

TRANSLATION

your friend in Andria manifests, that "Compliancy makes friends, while truth makes enemies,"—accept also what may soothe your somewhat offended spirit: let not truth always be hateful, though we are angered by deserved reproofs and delighted with merited praise. Yea, Cicero, I say it with your kind leave, you lived as a man, spoke as an orator, and wrote as a philosopher.

2. I blame your life, not your genius nor your eloquence, since (I am one) who admires the former and is amazed at the latter. Nor do I seek in your life anything beyond consistency, and for your philosophical profession a proper recollection, then a flight from the civil wars, once liberty has been extinguished and the republic buried and deplored.

professio, -nis, f (fr. profiteor, 2, -fessum, to profess):
occupation, profession
extinguo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: to extinguish
sepelio, 4, -ivi, -pultum: to bury
comploro, 1: to bewail, deplore, lament

3. Realize how differently I treat you from the manner in which you treated Epicurus in many passages, especially in your book, "De Finibus." For you everywhere approve of his life, (while) you deride his genius. Nothing in you do I ridicule, but I pity your life; yet, as I said, I congratulate you on your genius and eloquence.

gratulor, 1: to manifest joy, congratulate (with dat.)

WITH GREETINGS TO CICERO

4. O Romani eloquii summe parens, nec solus ego, sed omnes tibi gratias agimus, quicumque Latinae linguae floribus ornatur; tuis enim prata de fontibus irrigamus, tuo ductu directos, tuis suffragiis adjutos, tuo nos lumine illustratos ingenue confitemur: tuis denique auspiciis, ut ita dicam, ad hanc, quantulacumque est, scribendi facultatem ac *propositum* pervenisse.

5. Accessit et alter poeticae viae dux; ita enim necessitas poscebat, ut esset, et quem solutis, et quem fraenatis gressibus praeuntem sequeremur, quem loquentem, quem canentem miraremur, quoniam *cum* bona venia amborum neuter ad utrumque satis erat; ille tuis aequoribus, tu illius angustiis.

6. Non ego *primus* hoc dicerem fortasse, quamvis plane sentirem; dixit hoc ante me, seu ab aliis scriptum *dixit* magnus *quidem* vir Annaeus Seneca Cordubensis, cui te, ut idem ipse conqueritur, non aetas *quidem*, sed bellorum civilium furor eripuit.

4. O Romani eloquii summe parens, nec solus ego, sed omnes tibi gratias agimus, quicumque Latinae linguae floribus ornatur; tuis enim de fontibus prata irrigamus, tuo ductu directos, tuis suffragiis adjutos, tuo nos lumine illustratos ingenue confitemur: tuis denique auspiciis, ut ita dicam, ad hanc, quantulacumque *sit*, scribendi facultatem ac *loquendi* pervenisse.

5. Accessit et alter, *sed* poeticae viae dux; ita enim necessitas poscebat, ut esset, et quem solutis, et quem fraenatis gressibus praeuntem sequeremur; *alter*, quem loquentem, et *alter*, quem canentem miraremur, quoniam bona venia amborum neuter ad utrumque satis erat; ille tuis aequoribus, tu illius angustiis.

6. Fortasse non dicerem hoc, quamvis plane sentio, *nisi dixisset* hoc ante me, seu ab aliis scriptum *fassus* esset magnus *ille* vir Annaeus Seneca Cordubensis, cui te, ut idem ipse conqueritur, non aetas, sed bellorum civilium furor eripuit.

Tullio Ciceroni Salutem.

VOCABULARY

4. parens, -ntis, c (*fr.* pario, 3, peperit, partum, *to bear*): *parent*
 orno, 1: *to equip, adorn*
 pratium, 2: *meadow*
 irrigo, 1: *to water, irrigate*
 fons, -ntis, m: *spring, well, fountain*
 suffragium, 2 (*fr.* suffragor, 1, *to vote*): *support*
 ingenuus, 3: *native, noble, frank, sincere*
 auspicium, 2 (*fr.* auspicor, 1, *to take auspices*): *control, guidance*
 quantuluscumque, 2 (*fr.* quantuscumque, 3, *however*

5. accedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: *to request, demand*
 freno, 1: *to bridle, curb*
 gressus, 4 (*fr.* gradior, 3, gressum, *to step*): *step, way*
 cano, 3, cecini, cantum: *to sing*
 neuter, 3: *neither of two, 30, k*
 uterque, 3: *both, each of two, 30, k*
 aequor, -is, n: *flat surface, sea, desert*
 angustiae, -arum, s: *narrowness, shortness, strait*

6. fortasse, fors, forsitan, forte: *perhaps*
 dicerem, dixissem, 109, c, d
 conqueror, 3, conquestum: *to complain*
 cui: *to his loss, 79 or rather 75*
 aetas, -atis, f: *age*
 furor, -is, m (*fr.* furo, 3, -, -, *to rage*): *madness, fury*
 eripio, 3, eripui, ereptum: *to snatch, pluck, tear away*

TRANSLATION

4. O you, most excellent father of Latin eloquence, not only I, but all of us thank you, we who are distinguished by the flowers of the Latin tongue, for, we water our gardens from your fountains, we confess that we are led by your guidance, aided by your support, and illumined by your light; finally, by your leadership, so to speak, I arrived at this ability (of mine) in writing and speaking, however small that may be.

great): however small, 49, p; 120, c, 2
 pervenio, 4, -veni, -ventum: *to arrive, reach*

5. There fell to our share also another master, but in poetry. For, there was necessary one whom, we might follow as a guide, with free steps, and another, whom we may follow with rhythmical strides; one to be admired for his speaking, another for his singing; for, with the kind pardon of you both, neither of you were satisfactory in both; neither he in your vast sea, nor you in his (narrow) straits.

6. Perhaps I would not say this, though I certainly think (it true), if Annaeus Seneca, that great Cordovan—to whose loss, as he himself complains, not old age, but the fury of civil wars snatched you away—had not stated this (fact) before me or had not mentioned that it had been written by others.

91. AENEAS SILVIO DE PICCOLOMINI (PIUS II)

1405-1464 A. D.

Course 77

JOURNEY NOTES

1. Tunc se divino nutu beneficioque servatum Aeneas intelligens, dissimulato habitu sub specie mercatoris, per Scotiam transivit in Angliam. Fluvius est, qui ex alto monte *diffusus* utramque terram disternat; hunc cum navigio transmeasset atque in *villam magnam* circa solis occasum declinasset, in domum *rusticanam* descendit, atque ibi cenam cum sacerdote loci et *hospite* fecit;

2. multa ibi pulmentaria et gallinae et anseres afferebantur in esum, sed neque vini neque panis quidquam aderat, et omnes feminae *utrimque villae*, quasi ad rem novam accurrerant; atque ut nostri vel Aethiopes, vel Indos mirari solent, sic Aeneam stupentes intuebantur, quaerentes ex sacerdote, cujas esset, quidnam facturum venisset, Christianamne fidem saperet.

3. Edoctus autem Aeneas itineris defectum apud monasterium quoddam panes aliquot et vini rubei metretam receperat, quibus expositis major admiratio

1. Tunc se divino nutu beneficioque servatum Aeneas intelligens, dissimulato habitu sub specie mercatoris, per Scotiam transivit in Angliam. Fluvius *ibi* ex alto monte *defluens* utramque terram disternat; hunc cum navigio transmeasset atque in *pagum magnum* circa solis occasum declinasset, in domum *rusticam* descendit, atque ibi cenam cum loci sacerdote et *patrefamilias* habuit;

2. multa ibi pulmentaria et *gallinacea* et *anserina* esum afferebantur, sed neque vini neque panis quidquam aderant, et omnes feminae *undique pagi* quasi ad rem novam accurrerunt; atque ut nostri vel Aethiopes vel Indos mirari solent, sic Aeneam stupentes intuebantur quaerentes ex sacerdote, cujas esset, quidnam facturum venisset, Christianamne fidem saperet.

3. Edoctus vero Aeneas itineris *inopiam*, apud monasterium quoddam panes aliquot et vini rubei metretam *acceperat*, quibus expositis *adhuc* major ad-

AENEAS SILVIUS (PIUS II.)

Ex Commentariis.

VOCABULARY

1. nutus, 4 (fr. nuo, 3, nui, nutum, to nod): nod, assent, will, 93, a
dissimulo, 1: to dissemble, 88
mercator, -is, m: Afr. mercor, 1, to buy): merchant [diffundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: to spread by pouring]
defluo, 2, -fluxi, -fluxum: to flow down
navigium, 2 (fr. navigo, 1, to sail): a sailing, ship, 93,
transmeo, 1: to go, pass through or across, 125, a (a [villa, 1: country house]; pagus, 2: village
occasus, 4 (fr. occido, 3, -cidi, -casum, to fall): (sun)-set, fall, death; sol, -is, m: sun
declino, 1: to bend aside, shun, avoid, decline, 125, a
rustic(an)us, 3 (fr. rus, ruris, n, country): of country

2. pulment(ari)um, 2: relish, any food stuff eaten with bread
[gallina, 1: hen, chicken]; gallinaceus, 3, of hen, 26, f [anser, -is, m: goose]; anserinus, 3: of goose, 26, f
edo, 3, edī, ēsum: to eat, 46, 116, a
panis, -is, m: bread, 22, b
femina, 1: a female, woman
[utrimque: on or from both sides]
undique: from everywhere, 67, c
accurro, 3, accurri, accursum: to run to
Aethiops, -pis: a black man
Indus, 2: a Hindoo
stupeo, 2, -pui, -: to be stunned, stupefied

3. [defectus, 4 (fr. deficio, 3, to fail): failing, ceasing]
inopia, 1: neediness, want
monasterium, 2, Greek: convent, monastery
rubeus, 3: red, reddish, 67, c
metreta, 1, Greek measure of 9 gallons: tub, cask

TRANSLATION

1. Now as Aeneas realized that he was saved by the bounty of Divine Providence, he went in disguised dress through Scotland into England as a merchant. A river flowing down from a high mountain separates these two countries. After crossing it in a boat, near sunset he approached a large village. He entered a country house and took supper there with the priest of the place and the host of the house.

descendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to step, go down
cena, 1: dinner (in the evening), supper
sacerdos, -dotis, m: priest
[hospes, -pitis, m: guest]; paterfamilias, 1: host, 19, c

2. Many courses were served at the meal, chickens and geese, but neither wine nor bread were to be had. All the women came together from every part of the village as to a novelty; and as our folks used to admire the Ethiopians and Hindoos, so they gazed amazedly at Aeneas, asking the priest whence he was, what he came to do, and whether he belonged to the Christian faith.

intueor, 2, -tuitum: to look or gaze at
cujas, -atis: of what country, whence; esset, 132
sapio, 3, -ui, -: to taste, understand, 132

3. After Aeneas experienced the needs of his journey, he obtained from a monastery some loaves and a cask of red wine; on displaying these a still greater

adhuc: still

expono, 3, -posui, -positum: to put, set out

JOURNEY NOTES

barbaros tenuit, qui neque vinum neque panem album viderant.

4. Cum in secundum noctis partem cena protrahe^{re}₇ tur, sacerdos et hospes cum liberis virisque omnibus, Aenea dimisso, abire festinantes dixerunt se ad turrim quandam longo spatio remotam metu Scotorum fugere, qui fluvio maris refluxu decrescente noctu transire praedarique solebant, neque secum Aeneam multis orantem precibus quoquo pacto adducere voluerunt neque feminarum quamquam, quamvis adulescentulae et matronae formosae complures essent.

5. Mansit ergo illic Aeneas cum duobus famulis et uno itineris duce inter centum feminas, quae corona facta medium claudentes ignem, cannabumque mundantes, noctem insomnem ducebant plurimaque cum interprete fabulabantur. Postquam autem multum noctis transierat, latrantibus canibus et anseribus strepentibus ingens clamor factus est;

6. tumque omnes feminae in diversum prolapsae,

miratio rusticos tenuit, qui neque vinum neque panem album viderant.

4. Cum in secundam noctis partem cena protracta esset, sacerdos et paterfamilias cum liberis virisque omnibus Aenea dimisso festinanter abierunt fatentes se ad turrim quandam longo spatio remotam metu Scotorum fugere, qui fluvio maris refluxu decrescente nocte transire praedarique solebant; neque secum Aeneam multis orantem precibus quoquo pacto adducere voluerunt neque feminarum quamquam, quamvis adulescentulae et matronae formosae complures essent.

5. Mansit ergo illic Aeneas cum duobus famulis et uno itineris duce inter centum feminas, quae circulum formando medium claudentes ignem, cannabumque mundantes noctem insomnem ducebant plurimaque cum interprete fabulabantur. Postquam autem multum noctis transierat, latrantibus canibus et anseribus strepentibus ingens clamor factus est;

6. tumque omnes feminae in diversum dilapsae sunt,

Ex Commentariis.

VOCABULARY

[barbarus, 3: *barbarian, uncultured*]; rusticus, 2: *peasant, rustic, countryman*

4. protraho, 3, -traxi, -tractum: *to draw forth, protract*

dimitto, 3, -misi, -issum: *to send forth, discharge*

festino, 1: *to hasten, hurry, 28, a*

fateor, 2, fassum: *to confess, say*

turris, -is, f: *tower, 22, g*

spatium, 2: *space, distance, 85*

removeo, 2, removi, remotum: *to move back, put away*

Scotus, 2: *Scot; metu, 94*

refluxus, 4 (*fr. refluxo, 3, -uxi, -uxum, to flow back*): *ebb*

decreasco, 3, decrevi, decretum: *to lessen, decrease,*

praedro, 1: *to plunder, rob, 35, f* (114, a)

(prex), precis, *in sing. not used: prayer, 93, a*

pactum, 2 (*fr. paciscor, 3, pactum, to bargain*): *pact,*

5. maneo, 2, -nsi, -nsum: *to remain, stay*

illic: *there, 51, f*

[corona, 1: *garland, wreath*]; circulus, 2: *circle*

cannabum, or cannabus, 2, or cannabis, -is, f: *hemp*

mundo, 1: *to cleanse, purify*

interpretes, -pretis, m: *translator, interpreter*

fabulor, 1: *to talk, converse, chatter*

transeo, 4: *to go, pass through, across, 42, 3*

latro, 1: *to bark, 114, a*

strepo, 3, -pui, -pitum: *to creak, rattle, rumble, clatter, 114, a*

6. diversus, 3: *turned in different direction, diverse, 26, f*

[prolabor, 3, -lapsum: *to glide, slide, slip forward,*

TRANSLATION

bewilderment seized the peasants who had seen neither wine nor white bread.

4. When the supper had been drawn out past midnight, the priest and the host, hastily left with the children and all the men, dismissing Aeneas, saying that they were fleeing to a far distant tower for fear of the Scots who were wont at night time to pass over the river lowered by the ebb of the sea, and plunder; and they by no means were willing to take along Aeneas who implored them with many prayers, nor any of the women, though there were many fair girls and ladies.

agreement, 88

adolescentulus, 3 (*fr. adolescens, -ntis, young*): *very young man or girl, 49, p*

formosus, 3: *beautifully formed, fair, beautiful*

5. Thus Aeneas remained there with his two servants and one guide for his journey, among a hundred women, who forming a circle around the fire, and cleaning hemp, spent a sleepless night; and chatted much with my interpreter. But after a great part of the night had passed, at the barking of the dogs and the crying of the geese, there arose a great clamor;

clamor, -is, m (*fr. clamo, 1, to cry*): *cry, shout*
ingens, -ntis: *vast, enormous*

6. Then all the women scattered in different directions along]: dilabor, 3: *to fall asunder, flee in different directions*

91. ENEA SILVIO DE PICCOLOMINI (PIUS II)

1405-1464 A. D.

Course 77

JOURNEY NOTES

dux quoque itineris *diffugit*, et quasi hostes adessent, omnia tumultu completa. At Aeneae potior *sententia* visa est in cubiculo, *id enim* stabulum fuit, rei eventum expectare; nec mora, reversae mulieres cum interprete nihil mali esse nuntiant, *atque* amicos, non hostes venisse.

dux quoque itineris *aufugit*, et quasi hostes adessent, omnia tumultu completa *sunt*. Aeneae quoque visum est potius in cubiculo, quod fuit stabulum, rei eventum expectare; nec *multa* mora, reversae mulieres cum interprete nihil mali *accidisse* nuntiant, *immo*, amicos et non hostes venisse.

Ex Commentariis.

VOCABULARY

[diffugio, 3, -fugi, -fugiturus: to fly in different directions]
aufugio, 3, -fugi, -fugiturus: to run off or away
tumultus, 4: noise, uproar, bustle; quasi, 120, b
compleo, 2, -plevi, -pletum: to fill up, complete
potior, 2: preferable, better, 28, f; 27, l
cubiculum, 2 (fr. cubo, 1, -bui, -bitum, to lie down):
sleeping room (stable, 49, f)
stabulum, 2 (fr. sto, 1, steti, statum, to stand): stall,
eventus, 4 (fr. evenio, 4, to come forth): issue, result,
end

TRANSLATION

tions, my guide too fled away, and all things were in an uproar as if the enemy were present. It seemed better also to Aeneas to await the results in his sleeping quarters which was a stall; then without much delay the women returning with my interpreter, reported that there was nothing wrong, nay rather, friends, and not enemies, had arrived.

revertō, 3, -rti, -rsum: transitive: to return (end)
immo, or (imo): even, yea, rather, on the contrary

92. MICHAEL TARCHANIOTA MARULLUS

Immature Young Poet, Admirer of Lucretius Carus*

Died 1500 A. D.

Course 110

HYMN TO ETERNITY

Original in hexameter

In prose

1. Ipsa mihi vocem atque adamantina suffice plectra
Dum caneris, propiorque ausis ingentibus adsis
Immensi regina aevi, quae lucida templa
Aetheris, augustosque tenes augusta recessus,
Pace tua late pollens, teque ipsa beata.

1. Dum caneris ipsa mihi vocem atque adamantinum suffice plectrum, propiorque adsis ingentibus ausis, immensi aevi regina, quae lucidum templum sublimem recessum aetheris tenes augusta, pace tua late pollens, teque ipsa beata,

2. Quam pariter flavos crines intonsa juvena
Ambit, et indomitum nitens virtus pede aeneo.

2. quam pariter ambit juvena flavos crines intonsa, sicut et virorum virtus viribus indomitibus robusta. Ista,

MARULLUS

Hymnus ad Aeternitatem.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

1. adamantinus, 3 (fr. adamas, -antis, m, diamond): of diamond
plectrum, 2: short stick or quill to strike a stringed instrument
propior, 2 (fr. prope, near): nearer, 27, g, l
audeo, 2, -, ausum: to dare, 31, d
aevum, 2: age, time, 67, d
aether, -is, m, Greek: the upper air which fills up the universe
sublimis, 2: lofty excellent; augustus, 3: majestic

1. Whilst thou art (the subject of) my song, be nigh to me in my great endeavor; grant me sufficient voice and a durable plectrum, O august queen of boundless ages, being happy by thyself with unlimited power, who dwellest in the gorgeous temple and the majestic retreat of the heavens;

2. flavus, 3: yellow, golden, fair, blond
crinis, -is, m: hair, 65
intonsus, 3 (fr. tondeo, totondi, tonsum, to shear): unshorn
juvena, 1, or juvenus, -tutis, f: youth
ambio, 4: to round, long for, 61, a

recessus, 4 (fr. recedo, 3, -cessi, -ssum, to go back): recess, quiet
polleo, 2, -, -: to be able, powerful (takes the abl.)

2. (thou art the one) for whom youth, unshorn of golden hair, aspires, as likewise does the strength of manhood, unshaken in its indomitable power. The indomitus, 3 (fr. domo, 1, to tame): untamed, wild, invincible, 84

* Cf. Page 44.

HYMN TO ETERNITY

*Altera divinis epulis assistere mensae,
Purpureaque manu juvenile infundere nectar;
Haec largas defendere opes, et pectore firmo
Tutari melior fixos in saecula fines,
Hostilesque minas regno propellere herili.*

3. *Pone* tamen, quamvis longo *pone* intervallo,
Omniferens natura subit, curvaque verendus
Falce senex, spatiisque breves aequalibus horae,
Atque idem totiens annus remeansque meansque
Lubrica servato relegens vestigia gressu.

4. *Ipsa* autem *divum* circumstipante caterva,
Regales inclusa sinus auro atque argento
Celsa sedes, solio *alte* subnixa perenni
Das leges et jura *polo*; caelestiaque aegris
Dividis et certa firmas aeterna quiete,
Aerumnis privata malis, privata *periculis*.

5. *Tum* senium totis excludis provida regnis,

ut divinis fruatur deliciis, purpuraque induta tuae as-
sistet gloriae; haec nobilior, ut largas regni defendat
opes, et pectore firmo tutetur fixos patriae in saecula
fines, hostilesque a regno paterno procul repellat im-
petus.

3. *Post* tamen quamvis longum intervallum perit
omnifera natura, sicut et falce curva senex verendus,
nec non spatiis aequalibus horae breves, atque toties
means remeansque idem annus aëria vestigia servato
relegens gressu.

4. *Ipsa* autem *diva* circumstipante caterva regalem
sinum aureis atque argenteis includens spheris sedes
celsa, ac solio alto subnixa perenni das leges juraque
mundo; caelestiaque dividis aegris et certa firmas qui-
ete aeterna, aerumnis ac malis atque periculis privata.

5. *Tum* senium totis excludis provida regnis regens

Hymnus ad Aeternitatem.

VOCABULARY

[niteo, 2, -tui, -, to shine, glitter]
[aën(e)us, 3: brazen]
purpura, 1: purple cloth, 114, b, or 93, a
induo, 3, -dui, -dutum: to put on, clothe
[epulae, -arum: banquet; nectar, -is, n: nectar]
tut(of), 1: to protect, keep
procul: far, far away, afar off
saeculum, 2: century

3. [pone: behind, at the back, 50, a]
intervallum, 2: interval, distance
quantumvis, adv. for adj. and adv.: however
omnifer, -a, -um: all bearing, 49, A
falx, -lcis, f: sickle, scythe 22, c
curvus, 3: bent, arched, crooked
spatium, 2: space, distance, 84
remeo, 1: to go, come back
aërius, 3 (fr. aër, -is, m, air): airy

4. circumstipo, 1: to press closely around, 114, a
caterva, 1: crowd, troop
includo, 3, -clusi, -clusum: to shut up, or in
sinus, 4: bosom, lap, heart
sphaera, 1, Greek: sphere, the orbit of a celestial body,
93, a
subnixus, 3 (fr. nitor, 3, nixum, to lean): supported,
resting upon; (takes the abl.)
perennis, 2: lasting, durable, perennial, 93, a
[polus, 2: the pole of the earth]
aeger, aegra, aegrum: sick, ill, unsound, 78

5. senium, (fr. senex, senis, old): old age, weakness
providus, 3 (fr. provideo, 2, -visi, -visum, to provide):
provident, 56

TRANSLATION

former, clad in purple, longs to be with you in your
glory, thus to enjoy heavenly delights; the latter,
more noble, longs that it may protect the great re-
sources of its kingdom, preserve with valiant heart
the forever fixed boundaries of the country, and avert
hostile attacks from its native land.

repello, 3, repuli, repulsum: to drive back or away,
124, a

3. After an interval, however long (it be), nature,
the parent of all passes as does also fearful death with
his curved scythe, and so too the hours, in duration
equally brief, and too, the faithfully recurring year
with its repeated turns on its aerial path.

vestigium, 2: vestige, foot step, track, trace
[lubricus, 3: slippery]

relego, 3, relegi, relectum: to collect, go over again

4. But thou, surrounded by the celestial multitude,
encircling thy regal bosom with golden and silver
spheres, sittest on high, (and) resting on thy lofty
eternal throne proclaimest the laws and duties of the
world; heavenly things thou separatest from tainted
ones, and preservest them eternal with perfect tran-
quillity, thou who art free from trials, toil, and peril.

divido, 3, -visi, -visum: to divide, separate
aerumna, 1: toil, hardship, 90

5. In thy providence thou excludest senility from
rege, 3: to rule

92. MICHAEL TARCHANIOTA MARULLUS

Died 1500 A. D.

Course 110

HYMN TO ETERNITY

Perpetuoque adamante ligas fugientia saecula,
Anfractus aevi varios venturaque lapsis
Intermixta, legens praesenti inclusa fideli
Diversosque dies obtutu colligis uno.

praesenti aeterno fideli diversosque dies obtutu colligis
uno, perpetuoque adamante ligas fugientia saecula, an-
fractus aevi varios venturaque lapsis intermixta.

6. *Ipsa eadem pars, totum eadem, sine fine sine ortu,*
Tota ortus finisque aequae; discrimine nullo
Tota teres, nullaque tui non consona parte.

6. *In te totum ac pars idem, sine ortu atque fine;*
tota initium atque finis aequae; discrimine nullo tota
teris nullaque tui parte trita.

7. Salve, magna parens, late radiantis Olympi
Magna deum, precibusque piis non dura rogari,
Aspice nos hoc tantum; et si haud indigna precamur,
Caelestique olim sancta de stirpe creati,
Adsis, O propior, cognatoque adjice caelo.

7. Salve, magna parens, late radiantis universi,
magna divinitas, precibusque piis clemens rogari, a-
spice nos; et si haud indigna precamur de caelesti
olim sancta stirpe creati, adsis, O propior, cognatoque
adjice nos caelo.

Hymnus ad Aeternitatem.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

obtutus, 4 (*fr. obtueor, 2, obtutum, to look at*): look,
gaze, 93, a
colligo, 3, -legi, -lectum: to collect, contract
[lego, 3, legi, lectum: to pick, pass through, bear]
anfractus, 4 (*fr. frango, 3, fregi, fractum, to break*):
curve, winding
labor, 3, lapsus: to glide, slide, slip, 26, f; 79

all thy realm, and reigning in the faithful present thou
unitest in one glance all days, and bindest together
with an everlasting diamond chain the passing cen-
turies, the diverse changes of ages, and the future
and the past.

6. ortus, 4 (*fr. orior, 4, ortum, to rise*): origin,
source
discrimen, -minis, n (*fr. discerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum,*
to sever): distinction, difference
tero, 3, trivi, tritum: to rub, wear away
[consonus, 3: harmonious]

intermisceo, 2, -cui, -mixtum: to mingle, 79
6. *In thee the whole and the part are one; without
beginning and without end thou art equally the be-
ginning and the end. Thou outwearest all things with-
out exception, thyself remaining unscathed.*

7. [Olympus, 2: Mount Olympus]
radio(r), 1: to gleam, glitter
salve: hail, 47
[durus, 3: rough, hard]
haud: not, by no means
precor, 1: to beg, entreat, request, pray
olim: formerly, once upon a time, in times past
stirps, -pis, f: trunk, stock, race, stem, 90
cognatus, 3 (*fr. nascor, 3, natus, to be born*): related,
akin

7. Hail, great parent of the far shining universe,
great divinity, ready in thy clemency to be addressed
in devout prayer. Look upon us we pray, and if we
ask what is not unworthy, O be still nearer to us and
bring us to a Heaven befitting our origin (for we are)
sprung from a heavenly and once holy stem.

adjicio, 3, -jeci, -jectum: to cast to, add, apply, 40;
79; 108, a

93. DESIDERIUS ERASMUS OF ROTTERDAM*

One of the Most Excellent Scholars, but Woefully Abounding in Archaisms

1467-1536 A. D.

Course 107

A FRIENDLY CHAT BY PETER, MIDAS AND JOSSE WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

MIDAS: O lepidum caput! Quid affers, mi Petre?

MIDAS: O lepidum caput! Quid affers, mi Petre?

DESIDERIUS ERASMUS ROTTERODAMUS.

Domestica Confabulatio inter Petrum, Midam et Jodocum.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

lepidus, 3: charming, neat, pretty

MIDAS: Hello, Dandy! Peter, dear, what are you
bringing?

* A priest of lax spirit, the precursor of Protestantism through the many thousand copies of his Colloquies.

A FRIENDLY CHAT BY PETER, MIDAS AND JOSSE

PETRUS: Me ipsum,
MIDAS: *Nae* tu rem haud magni pretii huc attulisti.

PETRUS: *Atqui* magno constiti patri meo.

MIDAS: Credo pluris, quam revendi possis.

PETRUS: Ceterum Jodocus estne domi?

MIDAS: Incertus sum; sed *visas*.

PETRUS: Quin tu potius *abi*, et roga ipsum, an velit nunc esse domi?

MIDAS: *Abi* tu *potius*, sisque tibi ipsi Mercurius.

PETRUS: Heus, Jodoce, num es domi?

JODOCUS: Non sum.

PETRUS. Impudens, non ego audio te loquentem?

JODOCUS: Imo tu impudentior. Nuper ancillae tuae credidi te non esse domi, et tu non credis mihi ipsi?

PETRUS: Aequum dicis, par pari relatum.

JODOCUS: Equidem, ut non omnibus dormio, ita non omnibus sum domi. Tibi posthac semper ero.

PETRUS: Me ipsum,
MIDAS: *Sane* tu rem haud magni pretii huc attulisti.

PETRUS: *Nihilominus* magno constiti patri meo.

MIDAS: Credo pluris, quam revendi possis.

PETRUS: Ceterum Jodocus estne domi?

MIDAS: Incertus sum; sed *videas*.

PETRUS: Quin *immo* tu potius *adi*, et roga ipsum, an velit nunc esse domi.

MIDAS: *Adi* tu *magis*, sisque tibi ipsi Mercurius.

PETRUS: Heus, Jodoce, num es domi?

JODOCUS: Non sum.

PETRUS. Impudens, non ego audio te loquentem?

JODOCUS: Imo tu impudentior. Nuper ancillae tuae credidi te non esse domi, et tu non credis mihi ipsi?

PETRUS: Aequum dicis, par pari relatum.

JODOCUS: Equidem, ut non omnibus dormio, ita non omnibus sum domi. Tibi posthac semper ero.

Christian and Austin at an Informal Meal

CHRISTIANUS: Salve multum, jucundissime Augustine.

AUGUSTINUS: Salve tantumdem, mi humanissime Christiane. Prosperus sit tibi hic dies. Quid tandem agitur?

CHRISTIANUS: Salve multum, jucundissime Augustine.

AUGUSTINUS: Salve tantumdem, mi humanissime Christiane. Prosperus sit tibi hic dies. Quid tandem agitur?

Domestica Confabulatio inter Petrum, Midam et Jodocum.

VOCABULARY

[*nae*, Greek; in Latin:] *sane*, utique: of course
[*atqui*, to introduce minor premise for logical conclusion]

consto, 1, -stiti, -statum: to consist, cost, 89; 79 pluris, 68

revendo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to ^{el}sell again

quin potius; quin immo: rather, better

Mercurius, 2: Mercury, the messenger of the gods

heus: hallo, ho there, 52, f

num? used when expecting a negative answer, 51, b

impudens, -ntis: shameless, not ashamed

immo or (imo): yea, yes, nay rather

par, -is: equal, alike, a mate, 79

equidem: indeed, truly, of course; omnibus, 75

posthac: henceforth

JOSSE: Nay, you are more impudent. Not long ago, I believed your maid, (when she said) that you weren't at home, and now you won't even believe me.

PETER: You're right. Tit for tat.

JOSSE: Well, just as I don't sleep for everybody, so I am not at home to everybody. But from now on I'll always be at home to you.

In Coena Quotidiana Christianus et Augustinus.

salve (: be safe), Roman greeting for any time, 47

jucundus, 3: pleasant, agreeable

tantumdem, 3: just as many, 63; COLL. 39, 1

humanus, 3: humane, kind, philanthropic

TRANSLATION

PETER: My own self.

MIDAS: Of course, you did not bring much of value.

PETER: However, I cost my dad a great deal.

MIDAS: More, I guess, than you could be sold for again.

PETER: By the way, is Josse at home?

MIDAS: I'm not sure; but (go and) see.

PETER: You had better go yourself and ask him, if he wants to be at home now.

MIDAS: (No,) you better go, and be your own errand boy.

PETER: Hey, Josse, you're not at home, are you?

JOSSE: I'm not.

PETER: You impudent fellow; don't I hear you talking?

JOSSE: Well, just as I don't sleep for everybody, so I am not at home to everybody. But from now on I'll always be at home to you.

CHRISTIAN: Good morning, most welcome Austin.

AUSTIN: The same to you, most kind Christian? Good luck to you today. What's up?

tandem: at last, after all

Christian and Austin at an Informal Meal

CHRISTIANUS: Suaviter, ut nunc res nostrae sunt. *Et cupio omnia, quae vis, at ego non nihil tibi succenseo.*

AUGUSTINUS: Quam ob rem tandem oro. Quid admisi sceleris?

CHRISTIANUS: Quod tam raro nos revisas.

AUGUSTINUS: At nihil est causae, cur succenseas. Dabis veniam occupationibus meis, per quas mihi non licet totiens, quotiens cupio te revisere.

CHRISTIANUS: Ita demum ignoscam, si hodie apud me cenēs.

AUGUSTINUS: Haud iniquas pacis leges praescribis, Christiane. Nihil hac fecero libentius.

CHRISTIANUS: Laudo tuam facilitatem, et hac in re et in ceteris omnibus.

AUGUSTINUS: Sic soleo amicis obsequi, praesertim non iniqua petentibus.

CHRISTIANUS: Vide, ne me vana spe lactes.

AUGUSTINUS: Nihil opus jure jurando. In ceteris, in aliis time perfidiam, hac in re non fallam.

CHRISTIANUS: Suaviter, ut nunc res nostrae sunt. Cupioque tibi quaecumque vis, ast non nihil a te aegre fero.

AUGUSTINUS: Quam ob rem tandem, oro? Quod scelus admisi?

CHRISTIANUS: Quod tam raro nos revisas.

AUGUSTINUS: At nulla est causa, ut hoc in malam accipias partem. Dabis certe mihi veniam prae occupationibus meis, propter quas mihi non licet toties, quoties cupio, te revisere.

CHRISTIANUS: Ita demum ignoscam, si hodie apud me cenaveris.

AUGUSTINUS: Haud iniquas pacis leges praescribis, Christiane. Nihil hoc faciam libentius.

CHRISTIANUS: Laudo tuam facilitatem, et hac in re et in ceteris omnibus.

AUGUSTINUS: Sic soleo amicis obsequi, praesertim non iniqua petentibus.

CHRISTIANUS: Vide, ne me vana spe fallas.

AUGUSTINUS: Nihil opus jure jurando. Ceteris in aliis time perfidiam; hac in re non te in fraudem inducam.

Spudus and Apitius on a Banquet of Diverse Guests

SPUDUS: Heus, heus, Apiti.

APITIUS: Non audio.

SPUDUS: Heus, heus, Apiti.

APITIUS: Non audio.

In Coena Quotidiana Christianus et Augustinus.

VOCABULARY

dulcis, 2: *sweet, fine*
 [succenseo, 2, -sui, -nsum, *archaic: to be enraged; only*] "succensus, 3, *enraged*" is used
 āgre fero, in malam partem accipio: *to take amiss*
 admitto, committo, 3, -misi, -misum: *to commit*
 scelus, -eris, n: *crime, 47, c*
 reviso, 3, -visi, -visum: *to visit, call on*
 venia, 1: *pardon*
 toties—quoties: *as many times as*
 demum: *at length, indeed*
 ignosco, 3, -novi, -notum: *to forgive*
 ceno, 1: *to dine*
 libenter (*fr. libet, it is agreeable*): *with pleasure, you're welcome*
 facilitas, -tatis, f: *facility, willingness*
 obsequor, 3, -, secutum: *to comply with, obey*
 praesertim: *especially*
 [lacto, 1: *to give suck to, nurse*]
 fallo, 3, fefelli, falsum: *to make to slip, deceive*
 fraus, -dis, f: *deceit, fraud, error*

CHRISTIAN: *See to it that you do not fool me with vain hopes.*

AUSTIN: *No need of swearing. In all other matters look out for treachery, but in this I'll not deceive you.*

TRANSLATION

CHRISTIAN: *Everything's all right with us now. And I wish you all your heart desires, but I have a complaint against you.*

AUSTIN: *What is it, please? What crime did I commit?*

CHRISTIAN: *(The crime) is that you come so rarely.*

AUSTIN: *But that's no reason for you to take it amiss. You'll surely excuse (me because of) my occupations; on account of them it is impossible for me to see you as often as I'd like.*

CHRISTIAN: *Well, I'll excuse you, if you dine with me today.*

AUSTIN: *Well, Christian, your proposition for peace is not so bad. There is nothing I would do more willingly.*

CHRISTIAN: *I appreciate your willingness in this as in all other instances.*

AUSTIN: *It is a custom of mine thus to agree with my friends, especially, when they ask things that are not so bad.*

De Dispari Convivio Spudus et Apitius.

SPUDUS: *Ho there, Apitius.*

APITIUS: *I don't hear you.*

Spudus and Apitius on a Banquet of Diverse Guests

SPUDUS: Heus, inquam, Apiti.
 APITIUS: Quis est tam molestus interpellator?
 SPUDUS: Est *seriae rei quiddam*, quod a te volo.
 APITIUS: At ego ad rem *seriam* propero.
 SPUDUS: Quoniam?
 APITIUS: Ad cenam.
 SPUDUS: Hac ipsa de re tecum *volebam* agere.
 APITIUS: Non vacat nunc actoribus operam dare,
 nec actum agam.
 SPUDUS: Nihil *feceris* dispendii: comitabor te, quo
 properas.
 APITIUS: Age dic, modo tribus verbis.
 SPUDUS: Magno studio molior convivium, in quo
nulli displiceam convivarum, placeam omnibus. *Ejus*
artis quoniam tu principatum tenes, ad te velut ad
 oraculum confugio.
 APITIUS: Responsum accipe, et quidem juxta ve-
 terum morem metricum. *Nulli* ut displiceas, *nullum*
invitare memento.
 SPUDUS: Atqui solemne est epulum; multos exci-
 piam oportet.
 APITIUS: Quo plures *invitaris hoc* pluribus dispi-
ceas oportet. Quae fuit umquam tam bene vel con-
 scripta vel acta fabula, ut toti placuerit theatro?

SPUDUS: Heus, inquam, Apiti.
 APITIUS: Quis est tam molestus interpellator?
 SPUDUS: Est *seria res quaedam*, quod a te volo.
 APITIUS: At ego ad *seriorem* rem propero.
 SPUDUS: Quoniam?
 APITIUS: Ad cenam.
 SPUDUS: Hac ipsa de re tecum *velim* agere.
 APITIUS: Non vacat nunc actoribus operam dare,
 nec actum agam.
 SPUDUS: Nihil *facies* dispendii: comitabor te, quo
 properas.
 APITIUS: Age dic, modo tribus verbis.
 SPUDUS: Magno studio molior convivium, in quo
nemini displiceam convivarum, placeamque omnibus.
Cujus artis quoniam tu principatum tenes, ad te velut
 ad oraculum confugio.
 APITIUS: Responsum accipe, et quidem juxta ve-
 terum morem *etsi non* metricum: *Nemini* ut displiceas,
neminem invitandum esse memento.
 SPUDUS: Atqui solemne est epulum; multos exci-
 piam oportet.
 APITIUS: Quo plures *invitaveris, eo* pluribus dispi-
cebis. Quae fuit umquam tam bene vel conscripta vel
 acta fabula, ut toti placeret theatro?

De Dispari Convivio Spudus et Apitius.

VOCABULARY

molestus, 3: *bothersome, irksome*
 interpellator, i-, m: *interpreter, disturber*
 serius, 3: *serious*
 propero, 1: *to hurry, hasten*
 quoniam: *whereto, 51, f*
 vaco, 1: *to be empty, free; non vacat, impers.: there*
is no time for
 operam dare alicui: *do one's best to, deal*
 dispendium, 2: *expense, loss; d. facere: to suffer loss*
 comitor, 1: *to accompany, go with*
 quo, quoniam: *where, wherever, whereto, 51, f*
 propero, 1: *to hasten*
 age, interj.: *come (on), well, good, 52, e*
 molior, 4: *to remove, cause, plan*
 conviva, c: *guest*
 principatus, 4: *first rank, championship*
 oraculum, 2: *oracle*
 confugio, 3, -fugi, -iturus: *to have recourse, 40*
 juxta: *according to, 50, a*
 metricus, 3: *metrical*
 mos, moris, m: *custom, conduct, fashion, manners*
 epulum, 2: *solemn or public banquet*
 theatrum, 2: *theater*

TRANSLATION

SPUDUS: *I say, there, Apitius.*
 APITIUS: *Who is this tiresome obtruder?*
 SPUDUS: *It is a serious matter I want (to settle)*
with you.
 APITIUS: *But I'm hurrying to a more serious one.*
 SPUDUS: *Whereto?*
 APITIUS: *To dinner.*
 SPUDUS: *This is the very thing I would like to*
discuss with you.
 APITIUS: *I've no time to deal with actors now,*
nor shall I perform any act.
 SPUDUS: *You'll not lose any time: I'll go with*
you, wherever you go.
 APITIUS: *Go on, then, and say it, but in three*
words only.
 SPUDUS: *With great care I am planning a dinner,*
at which I don't want to displease any of the guests,
but I want to please them all. Since you hold the
championship in this art, I am having recourse to you
as to an oracle.
 APITIUS: *(Well then,) have my answer according*
to the manner of the ancients, even if not in metrical
(style). Remember, "That thou may'st displease none,
thou must invite no none."

SPUDUS: *But it's a festival banquet; I must receive many (guests).*
 APITIUS: *The more you invite, the more you'll displease. Was there ever a play so well written out,*
or so well performed as to please the whole audience?

Spudus and Apitius on a Banquet of Diverse Guests

SPUDUS: Sed age, Comi delictum Apiti, subleva me tuo consilio; habebō te posthac numinis loco.

APITIUS: Ne conare, quod fieri non potest.

SPUDUS: Optimum profecto consilium. Sed qui fieri poterit, ut hilarescant omnes?

APITIUS: Id ut fiat, in te situm est.

SPUDUS: *Quinam?* . . .

SPUDUS: Sed age, Comi delictum Apiti, subleva me tuo consilio; posthac numinis loco te habebō.

APITIUS: Ne coneris, quod fieri non potest.

SPUDUS: Optimum profecto consilium. Sed quo fieri poterit *modo*, ut hilarescant omnes?

APITIUS: Id ut fiat, in te situm est.

SPUDUS: *Quonam modo?* . . .

A Banquet with Stories, Attended by Polymythus, etc.

POLYMYTHUS: Quem ad modum civitatem, ita non decet convivium bene institutum esse sine legibus ac p̄ncipe. Heus, puer affer talos. Euge, Eutrapelo favit Jupiter. Novus rex, nova lex. Statue ergo leges, o rex.

EUTRAPELUS: *Quod* felix faustumque sit huic convivio, primum edico, ne quis *heic* proferto praeter ridiculas fabulas.

Cui *deerit* fabula drachma multator; ea pecunia in vinum insumitor.

Atque in legitimis fabulis etiam ex tempore conficta habentor, modo servetur, quod verosimile et decorum est.

Si *nulli* *deerit* fabula, duo, quorum alter lepidissimam, alter frigidissimam fabulam dixerit, vini pretium pendunto.

POLYMYTHUS: Quem ad modum civitatem, ita non decet convivium bene institutum esse sine legibus ac p̄ncipe. Heus, puer affer talos. Euge, Eutrapelo favit Jupiter. Novus rex, nova lex. Statue ergo leges, o rex.

EUTRAPELUS: *Ut* felix faustumque sit huic convivio, primum edico: ne quis *hic* proferto praeter ridiculas fabulas.

Cui *defuerit* fabula, drachma multator; *eaque* pecunia in vinum insumitor.

Atque in legitimis fabulis etiam ex tempore conficta habentor, modo servetur, quod verosimile et decorum est.

Si *nemini* *defuerit* fabula, duo, quorum alter lepidissimam, alter frigidissimam fabulam dixerit, vini pretium pendunto.

De Dispari Convivio Spudus et Apitius.

TRANSLATION ↗→

Comus, 2: *deity of jollity, revelry*
sublevo, 1: *to lift, hold up, help*
numen, -minis, n: *divine will, deity*
profecto: *indeed*
(ex)hilaresco, 3, -, -: *to become cheerful*
sino, 3, si(v)i, situm: *to place, let, lay*

←← VOCABULARY

SPUDUS: *Come on, Apitius, delight of Comus, help me with your counsel; hereafter I shall regard you as a deity.*

APITIUS: *Don't try what can't be done.*

SPUDUS: *Excellent advice, indeed; but how can all be made cheerful?*

APITIUS: *That's up to you.*

SPUDUS: *How?*

Convivium Fabulosum. Participantes: Polymythus, Gelasinus, Eutrapelus, Astaeus, Philythlus, Philogelos, Euglottus, Lerochares.

quem ad modum: *as, so—as, just as*
deceat, -cuit, *impers.*: *it behooves*, 48, d
instituo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to arrange, construct*
talus, 2: *ankle, ankle bone; a die, made originally out of ankle bones of the hind feet of sheep or goats*
faveo, 2, favi, fautum: *to favor*, 80, d
statuo, 3, -tui, -tutum: *to set up, decide*, 108, a
faustus, 3: *lucky, fortunate*
edico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: *to make known, decree*
defuerit, 32, f; 109, a, 3
drachma, 1: *drachm, (Greek money)*
mul(c)tor, 1: *to punish, to fine*, 108, b
insumo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum: *to take in*, 108, b
ex tempore: *impromptu, without preparation*
verosimilis, 2: *probable, likely*
decorus, 3: *fitting, decent* (108, b)
pendo, 3, pependi, pensum: *to weigh, consider, pay,*

POLYMYTHUS: *A banquet like a well ordered community must not be without rules and a ruler.*

Hey, boy, bring the dice... Hurrah, Jupiter has favored Eutrapelus. New ruler, new rules. Ruler, state the rules.

EUTRAPELUS: *That luck and cheer may be with this banquet, first, I decree that no one shall here recite anything but funny stories. He who has none shall be fined a drachm, which money shall be used for wine.*

Then in (these) prescribed stories (something) shall also be composed impromptu, but likelihood and decency must be maintained.

If no one is without a story, two, the one who related the most charming, and the one who told the worst, shall pay for the wine.

93. DESIDERIUS ERASMUS OF ROTTERDAM

1467-1536 A. D.

Course 107

A Banquet with Stories, attended by Polymythus, etc.

Convivator a vini sumptu immunis esto. Si quid incidere controversiae, Gelasinus arbiter et iudex esto.

Haec *si* vos sciveritis, rata sunt. Qui legi parere noluerit, abito: sed tamen, ut postridie ad compotationem redire jus fasque sit.

Cenae pater a vini sumptu immunis esto. Si quid incidere controversiae, Gelasinus arbiter et iudex esto.

Haec *ubi* vos noveritis, rata sunt. Qui legi parere nolit, abito: sic tamen, ut postridie jus *ei* fasque sit ad compotationem redire.

Convivium Fabulosum.

VOCABULARY

convivator, -is, m. or cenae pater: *who gives a feast, host*
sumptus, 4 (fr. sumo, 3, -mpsi, -mptum, to take): *cost, expense*
incido, 3, -cidi, -: *to fall in, happen*, 32, f; 109, a, 3
controversia, 1: *dispute, debate*, 67, c
noverit, velit, *present actions*
ratus, 3 (fr. reor, 2, reri, -, ratum, to think, suppose):
fixed, valid, approved
pareo, 2, -rui, -riturus: *to appear, obey*
postridie: *the day after, on the following day*

TRANSLATION

The host shall be exempt from wine expenses. Should any dispute arise, let Gelasinus be the umpire and judge. As soon as you know these laws, they go into effect. Whoever won't obey the law, let him leave, but so that he may have the right and liberty to return to our drinking bout the next day.

compotatio, -nis, f: *drinking party*
fas, indecl. noun or adj.: *right, permitted*

94. MARC ANTOINE MURET*

Professor of Latin in Venice, then in Rome

1526-1586 A. D.

Course 88

A PLEA FOR GREEK AND LATIN

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Duae praecipue mihi quidem causae esse videntur, adolescentes, cur et Graecam et Latinam linguam amare et in earum utraque praecipuum studium ponere debeamus.

2. Una, quod Graece et Latine, Graece quidem et plures et praestantiores, sed tamen Latine quoque sat multi ejusmodi viri scripserunt, ut propter admirabilem quandam sapientiam, qua illi tanto supra ceteros mortales floruerunt, ut aliarum gentium homines cum

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Duae praecipue mihi quidem causae esse videntur, cur necesse et Graecam et Latinam linguam diligamus et utriusque earum studio praeprimis incumbamus.

2. Una est, quod Graece et Latine, Graece quidem et plures et praestantiores, attamen Latine quoque sat multi ejusmodi viri scripserunt, qui propter admirabilem quandam sapientiam, qua tantopere super ceteros floruerunt, ut aliarum gentium homines cum eis col-

MARCUS ANTONIUS MURETUS.

Apologia Graecae et Latinae Linguae.

VOCABULARY

1. praecipuus, 3: *peculiar, especial*
[amo, 1: *to love with affection*]; diligo, 3, *to love with esteem*
[debeo, 2, -bui, -bitum: *to owe, be indebted*]
2. floreo, 2, -rui, -: *to bloom, be flourishing*
tantopere—ut, 124, b; 99, c, 3
gens, -ntis, f: *people, tribe, nation*

mirable wisdom so excelled the rest that men of other nations when compared with them seem but dullards

TRANSLATION

1. *It seems to me that there are especially two reasons, young men, why we should highly esteem Greek and Latin, and why we should study both.*

2. *One reason is that men have written in Greek and Latin—in Greek, (it is true,) in greater number and of greater excellence, yet in Latin also a goodly number of this caliber—who on account of their admiration so excelled the rest that men of other nations when compared with them seem but dullards*

* He out-Cicero-ed Cicero by obsolete phrases of Cicero's Works and was publicly laughed at.

A PLEA FOR GREEK AND LATIN

eis collati idiotae *quidam* et agrestes *fuisse* videantur, dignissimi *sint*, ad quos intelligendos omnis ab omnibus elegantioris ingenii hominibus opera conferatur.

3. *Nam* si Platonēs, Xenophontēs, Aristoteles, Theophrastos, addo huc etiam Plutarchos, Galenos, sed quo plures nomino, eo plures occurrunt digni, qui nominentur, *si* tales etiam viros Italia *extulisset*, qui cogitationes suas *perscripsissent* eo sermone, quo vulgo Italia utitur; *non ego quidem propterea* ne *sic* quidem veteres illos sapientes patres et duces negligendos dicerem, *sed* tamen aequiore animo ferrem, si quis Graeco sermone accuratius discendo supersedere vellet.

4. Nunc accedit alia longe gravissima, quae incidere utriusque studio *debeat*. Nam, cum earum linguarum, quarum usus eruditus cum vulgo communis est, unaquaeque et certis et angustis limitibus *circumscrip*ta teneatur, harum, de quibus agimus, usus toto propemodum terrarum orbe diffusus est. Italice loquentem soli Itali intelligent: qui tantum Hispanice loquatur, inter Germanos pro muto habebitur;

lati idiotae et agrestes *viderentur*, dignissimi *sunt*, *quatenus* ad eos intelligendos omnis ab omnibus elegantioris ingenii hominibus opera conferatur.

3. *Tacerem*, si Platonēs, Xenophontēs, Aristoteles, Theophrastos, addo huc etiam Plutarchos, Galenos,—sed quo plures nomino, eo plures occurrunt digni, qui nominentur,—etiam Italia *produxisset*, qui cogitationes suas eo sermone *descripsissent*, quo vulgo Italia utitur; *sed* ne *tunc* quidem veteres illos sapientes patres ac duces negligendos dicerem, *attamen* aequiore animo ferrem, si quis Graeco sermoni accuratius *ad*-discendo supersedere vellet.

4. Nunc accedit *et* alia longe gravissima *causa*, quae nos utriusque studio *incendat*. Nam, cum earum linguarum, quarum usus eruditus cum vulgo communis est, unaquaeque et certis et angustis limitibus *coartata* teneatur, harum, de quibus agimus, usus *in* toto propemodum terrarum orbe diffusus est. Italice loquentem soli Itali intelligent; qui tantum Hispanice loquitur, inter Germanos pro muto habebitur;

Apologia Graecae et Latinae Linguae.

VOCABULARY

[quidam, 3: *some*, 30, *i*]

idiotā, 1: *an ignorant, uncultured man*

agrestis, 2 (*fr. ager*, 2, *field*): *belonging to a field*

elegans, -ntis: *choice, fine, neat, tasteful*, 67, *d*

opera, 1: *exertion, pains, effort, service*

3. vulgo: *commonly, generally, openly*

Plato, -nis, *Greek philosopher*, 429-347 B. C., *pupil of Socrates*

Xenophon, -ntis, *Greek historian*, 445-355 B. C.

Aristoteles, -lis, *pupil of Plato*, 384-322 B. C.

Theophrastus, 2, *pupil of Aristotle*, 374-286 B. C.

Plutarchus, 2, *Greek biographer*, 50-120 A. D.

Galenus, 2, *Greek physician*, 131-220 A. D.

[perscribo: *to enter in a book*; (transcribo: *to copy*); describo: *to describe, define*; (inscribo: *to give an inscription or title, or address*)

quo—*eo with comparatives: the more—the more*, 85

aequus, 3: *equal, quiet, contented*

accuratus, 3: *careful, exact*

4. accedo, 3, accessi, accessum: *to go to, assent*

incendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to set fire to, kindle*, 120, *c*, 1

erudio, 4: *to instruct, teach*, 36, *b*; 26, *f*; 78

vulgus, 2, *n*: *people, crowd, mass, the public*

limes, -mitis, *m*: *boundary, limit*, 96

angustus, 3: *narrow*; teneatur, 125, *c*

propemodum: *nearly, almost*

diffundo, 3, -fudi, -fusum: *to pour out, spread, scatter*

Italicus, 3 (*fr. Italia*, 1, *Italy*): *Italian*

mutus, 3: *dumb, mute*

TRANSLATION

and uncivilized, (men I say, who) are most deserving that every effort should be concentrated on their comprehension by all men of distinguished genius.

confero, 3, contuli, collatum: *to collect, connect, compare*, 120, *c*, 1

3. *I would keep silence, if Italy also had produced men like Plato, Xenophon, Aristotle, Theophrast; to these I add also men like Plutarch, Galenus,—but the more I mention the more come to mind worthy of mention,—men who could have expressed their thoughts in that idiom commonly used in Italy. But even then I should not say that those wise old fathers and leaders should be neglected; however, I should bear it with a rather calm mind, if some one wished to desist from learning the Greek language more accurately.*

supersedeo, 2, -sedi, -sessum: *to sit upon, refrain, desist; with the dat.*, 79; 109, *c*

4. *At the present time, there is another much more important argument to stimulate our study of both (of these languages). For, while the use of any one of the languages common to the learned and to the masses is restricted to definite and narrow boundaries, the use of the languages mentioned above, extends over almost the entire face of the earth. The Italians alone understood a man speaking Italian; one who speaks only Spanish will be taken for a dumb man among the Germans;*

A PLEA FOR GREEK AND LATIN

5. Germanus inter Italos nutu ac manibus pro lingua uti cogetur; qui Gallico sermone peritissime ac scientissime utatur, ubi e Gallia exierit, saepe ultro irridebitur; qui Graece Latineque sciat, is, quocumque terrarum venerit, non intelligetur tantum, sed apud plerosque admirationi erit. Atque haec causa vel maxima est, cur Latine scribere, quicumque id egregie praestare possunt, debeant.

5. Germanus inter Italos nutu ac manibus pro lingua uti cogetur; qui Gallico sermone peritissime ac scientissime utitur, ubi e Gallia exierit, saepe ultro irridebitur; *ast* qui Graece Latineque scit, quocumque terrarum venerit, non tantum intelligetur, sed *etiam* admirationi apud plerosque erit. *Ideo*que haec causa vel maxima est, cur Latine *scire quemcumque*, qui id egregie praestare possit, oporteat.

Apologia Graecae et Latinae Linguae.

VOCABULARY

5. nutus, 4 (*fr. annuo*, 3, -ui, -nutum, *to nod to*):
nod, signal
peritus, 3 (*with gen. or abl.*): expert, skilled
ultro: of one's own accord, spontaneously
irrideo, 2, -risi, -risum: to laugh at, ridicule
plerique, 3: very many, the majority
egregius, 3: excellent, distinguished
praesto, 1, -stiti, -titum: to stand before, do, give,
quicumque, 3: whoever, whichever (afford)

TRANSLATION

5. among the Italians a German will be forced to use signs and his hands instead of speech; one who speaks French with the utmost skill and perfection, as soon as he leaves France, will be often laughed at unintentionally; but he who knows Greek and Latin, wherever he goes, will not only be understood, but also admired by very many. Hence, this is the most weighty reason why any one who has talent should know Latin.

95. ST. ROBERT BELLARMINE

One of the Truest Representatives of Church Latin, in Whose Style the Latin of the Golden Age Shines forth without its Defects.

1576-1621 A. D.

Course 105

EXCELLENCE OF THE FATHERS OF THE CHURCH

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Quemadmodum in Deo, quem unum in Trinitate et Trinum in unitate veneramus, tria quaedam singulariter eminent: potentia, sapientia, bonitas; ita quoque auditores, singulares amicos et filios suos, Patres ac Doctores nostros Deus, ut sibi quam simillimos et gentibus omnibus suscipiendos atque admirabiles redderet, potentissimos, sapientissimos, optimos sanctissimosque esse voluit.

2. Primum ea potentia eos armavit, qua multa praeter solitum cursum ordinemque naturae in elemen-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Quemadmodum in Deo, quem unum in Trinitate et Trinum in unitate veneramus, tria quaedam singulariter eminent: potentia, sapientia, bonitas; ita quoque auditores, singulares amicos et filios suos, Patres ac Doctores nostros Deus, ut sibi quam simillimos et gentibus omnibus suscipiendos atque admirabiles redderet, potentissimos, sapientissimos, optimos sanctissimosque esse voluit.

2. Primum ea potentia eos armavit, qua multa praeter solitum cursum ordinemque naturae in elemen-

SANCTUS ROBERTUS BELLARMINUS.

Contio IX. de Probitate Doctorum Ecclesiae.

VOCABULARY

1. Trinitas, -tatis, f (*fr. tres, tria, three*): Trinity
tripus, 2 (*regularly used in pl.*): triple, threefold
unitas, -tatis, f (*fr. unus, 3, one*): unity, oneness
gens, -ntis, f: people, tribe, nation, 76
singularis, 2: single, singular, eminent, extraordinary
auditor, -is, m (*fr. audio, 4, to hear*): hearer, scholar
doctor, -is, m (*fr. doceo, 2, -cui, -ctum, to teach*):
voluit, 57, b' (teacher)

2. armo, 1: to equip, arm, provide with
elementum, 2: element

TRANSLATION

1. As in God, Whom we venerate as One in Three and Three in One, three qualities: power, wisdom, and goodness are particularly prominent; so also He wished His listeners, His special friends and sons, the Fathers and Doctors of the Church to be very powerful, very wise, very good, and very holy in order to form them most like to Himself and render them greatly acceptable and admirable to the nations.

2. First, He provided them with that power by means of which they wrought beyond the usual course

EXCELLENCE OF THE FATHERS OF THE CHURCH

tis, in arboribus, in brutis animantibus, in ipsis hominibus plane admirabilia et singularia facerent.

3. Deinde sapientia ita mentes eorum instruxit, ut non solum praesentia et praeterita cernerent, sed etiam futura multo ante praeviderent atque praedicerent. Postremo dilatavit corda eorum summa atque ardentissima caritate, tum ut ipsi magno animo opus aggrederentur; tum ut ii, qui convertendi per eos erant, non solum verbis et miraculis, sed etiam exemplis et vitae probitate moverentur.

4. Praedicatores igitur nostrae legis, tam ii, qui primi ad nos fidem detulerunt et evangelium, quam ii, quos deinde singulis saeculis Deus excitavit ad fidem eandem confirmandam vel probandam, quales fuerint, quam pii, quam justi, quam religiosi, totus mundus novit. Aspice primum Apostolos. Quid sublimius atque excellentius moribus Apostolicis?

5. Aspice deinde sanctos illos homines, quos Patres et Doctores vocamus, lumina illa clarissima, quae Deus in firmamento Ecclesiae lucere voluit, ut Irenaeum, Cyprianum, Hilarium, Athanasium, Basilium,

tis, in arboribus, in brutis animantibus, in ipsis hominibus plane admirabilia et singularia facerent.

3. Deinde sapientia ita mentes eorum instruxit, ut non solum praesentia et praeterita cernerent, sed etiam futura multo ante praeviderent atque praedicerent. Postremo dilatavit corda eorum summa atque ardentissima caritate, tum ut ipsi magno animo opus aggrederentur; tum ut ii, qui convertendi per eos erant, non solum verbis et miraculis, sed etiam exemplis et vitae probitate moverentur.

4. Praedicatores igitur nostrae legis, tam ii, qui primi ad nos fidem detulerunt et evangelium, quam ii, quos deinde singulis saeculis Deus excitavit ad fidem eandem confirmandam vel probandam, quales fuerint, quam pii, quam justi, quam religiosi, totus mundus novit. Aspice primum Apostolos. Quid sublimius atque excellentius moribus Apostolicis?

5. Aspice deinde sanctos illos homines, quos Patres et Doctores vocamus, lumina illa clarissima, quae Deus in firmamento Ecclesiae lucere voluit, ut Irenaeum, Cyprianum, Hilarium, Athanasium, Basilium,

Contio IX. de Probitate Doctorum Ecclesiae.

VOCABULARY

brutus, 3: *dull, brute*
animans, -ntis (*fr. animo, 1, to animate*): *living, 26, f*
plane: *entirely, thoroughly*

3. provideo, 2, -visi, -visum: *to foresee, see beforehand*
praedico, 3, -dixi, -dictum: *to say beforehand, 124, b*
postremo: *for the last time, finally*
dilato, 1: *to extend, enlarge, amplify*
cor, -rdis, n: *heart, 22, e*
aggredior, 2, aggressum: *to go to, begin, undertake, convert, 3, -rti, -rsum: to turn to, convert (124, a*
miraculum, 2 (*fr. miror, 1, to admire*): *miracle, 49, f*
probitas, -tatis, f (*fr. probus, 3, morally good*): *up-*

4. praedicator, -is, m (*fr. praedico, 1, to publish*): *public speaker, eulogist*
defero, 3, detuli, delatum: *to bring down*
evangelium, 2, *Greek: good tidings, gospel*
quales fuerint, novit, 45, 14; 99, c, 2; 132
saeculum, 2: *age, time, century*
excito, 1: *to arouse, raise up*
probo, 1: *to try, test, prove*
apostolus, 2, *Greek: legate, apostle*

5. quae lucere voluit, 57, b'
Irenaeus, 2, *rhetorician, then bishop of Lyons and martyr, 135-202 A. D.*
Cyprianus, 2, *bishop of Carthage and martyr, 200-258*
Hilarius, 2: *bishop of Poitiers, d. 368*
Athanasius, 2, *archbishop of Alexandria, 296-373*
Basilius, 2, *bishop of Caesarea, 329-379*

TRANSLATION

and order of nature many really admirable and outstanding wonders in the elements, in trees, in brutes, and even in men.

3. *Then, He enlightened their minds with wisdom so as to see not only the present and past, but also far into the future. Finally, He enlarged their hearts with a very lofty and most ardent charity, in order that they might undertake their work magnanimously, so that those whom they were to convert might be moved not only by words and miracles, but also by the example and uprightness of their lives.*

rightness, honesty

4. *Hence the whole world knows what the preachers of our law were, how pious, how upright, how religious—both those who first handed down to us the faith and the gospel, and those later on in each following century whom God raised up to confirm and prove the same faith. In the first place, consider the Apostles. What can be more sublime, more excelling than the apostolic virtues?*

sublimis, 2: high, lofty, exalted, sublime

5. *Take notice then of those holy men, whom we call Fathers and Doctors of the Church, those very bright lights, which God wished to shine in the firmament of His Church; such as, Irenaeus, Cyprian, Hilary, Athanasius, Basil, the two Gregories, Ambrose,*

EXCELLENCE OF THE FATHERS OF THE CHURCH

duos Gregorios, Ambrosium, Hieronymum, Augustinum, Chrysostomum, Cyrillum. Vita et mores eorum nonne in iis monumentis, quae nobis reliquerunt, quasi in speculis quibusdam elucent? Nam ex abundantia cordis os loquitur.

duos Gregorios, Ambrosium, Hieronymum, Augustinum, Chrysostomum, Cyrillum. Vita et mores eorum nonne in iis monumentis, quae nobis reliquerunt, quasi in speculis quibusdam elucent? Nam ex abundantia cordis os loquitur.

Contio IX. de Probitate Doctorum Ecclesiae.

VOCABULARY

Gregori^os Thaumaturgus, 2, *bishop of Neo-Caesarea*, 210-270
 Gregori^os Nazianzen^us, 2, *archbishop of Constantinople*, 325-390
 Ambrosius, 2, *bishop of Milan*, 340-397
 Hieronymus, 2, *cardinal*, 340-420
 Augustinus, 2, *bishop of Hippo*, 354-430
 Chrysostomus, 2, *archbishop of Constantinople*, 347-407

TRANSLATION

Jerome, Augustine, Chrysostom, Cyril. Do not their lives and virtues, as if in a mirror, shine forth from the writings which they bequeathed to us? "For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh." (Math. 12, 34)

*Cyrillus, 2, archbishop of Alexandria, d. 444
 speculum, 2 (fr. specio, 3, obsol., to look): mirror*

96. JAKOB BALDE, S. J.

JOY OF A GOOD CONSCIENCE*

Original

1. Nullo notari crimine, nil sibi
 Conscire, dis est ante diem frui,
 Potare totis plena ripis
 Gaudia, non modica phaselo.
2. Illum Syene torrida frigidis
 Obnubit umbris, et Meroe tegit
 Luco; migraturumque vernus

In prose

1. Qui nullo notatur crimine, et nullius mali sibi
 conscius est, jam ante mortem caelo fruitur,
 et potat plenum flumen
 gaudiorum, non quantum navis capere possit.
2. Etiam in oppido inferioribus Aegypti sub frigida
 se sentit umbra, et in torrida zona nonnisi
 lucum invenit semper; migraturumque per

JACOBUS BALDE, S. J.

Gaudium Bonae Mentis.

VOCABULARY

1. S. J.: Socius Jesu: *Companion of Jesus, Jesuit*,
 nullus, 3: *no, none*, 30, *k* (24, *d*)
 noto, 1: *to mark, brand*
 [conscio, 4, -scivi, -scitum, *poetical: to be conscious*]
 poto, 1: *to drink*
 flumen, -minis, *n: river, stream*
 [ripa, 1: *river bank*]
 2. [Syene, 1: *a town in Upper Egypt*]
 torridus, 3: *parched, burning, torrid*
 [obnubo, 3, -nupsi, -nuptum, *takes acc.: to cover*]
 frigidus, 3: *cold, cool*
 [Meroe, 1: *a large island in the Nile*]
 lucus, 2: *grove*
 zona, 1: *girdle, zone*
 nonnisi: *just, only*

TRANSLATION

1. He who is not branded by any crime, and is not
 conscious of any sin, enjoys Heaven before his death,
 and drinks a riverful of
 joys, and not a (mere) shipful.

[phaselus, 2, *Greek: a light skiff*]

2. Even in a town of lower Egypt he feels himself
 under a cool shade, and in the torrid zone
 he finds always but a grove, and the air of spring

migro, 1: *to depart, journey*

[Scythia, 1, *the most northern region of Roman geography of old*]

*HORATIAN ALCAIC STROPHE, two Greater Alcaic: $\cup^1 \parallel - \cup | - \cup \parallel - \cup \cup | - \cup | \cup^2$; one Trochaic dimeter: $\cup^1 \parallel - \cup | - \cup \parallel - \cup | - \cup$; one Lesser Alcaic: $- \cup \cup | - \cup \cup \parallel - \cup | - \cup$; cf. 139, 4, c.

¹ Anacrusis.

² Catalectic.

JOY OF A GOOD CONSCIENCE

Trans Scythiam comitatur aër.

3. Frons laeta semper, *puraque nubium*,
Gratique risus, et decor, et sales

Docto verecundi Falerno,

Et facili lyra tacta nervo,

4. Suadent amicum *dicere Cynthium.*

Seu fracta caeli porta tonet super

Cervice, seu subsidat orbis

Stat tamen in media ruina.

5. Mandante *Sulla, qui subit innocens*

Curvi volantis aequoris insulas,

Mutabit Aegeum Lucrino,

Jam patriae melioris hospes.

6. De pane furvo scinditur *attagen.*

glacialem polum vernus comitatur aër.

3. Frons *ejus* laeta semper, *liberaque curis*,
Gratisque risus *ejus*, et decor et sales

verecundi et jucundi,

et tenerissime melodiosi

4. suadent amicum *eum esse divinum.*

Sive fracta caeli porta strideat super

cervicem ejus, sive submergatur orbis,

stat firmus in media ruina.

5. Mandante *tyranno innocens migrat ad*

curve currentis aequoris insulas,

mutabitque Aegeum pro Italico lacu

qua patriae melioris hospes.

6. De pane furvo scindit *sibi cibum dulcissimum,*

Gaudium Bonae Mentis.

VOCABULARY

comitor, 1: *to guide, escort*

glacialis, 2 (*fr. glaciers, 5, ice*): *icy, 49, r*

polus, 2: *the pole (of the earth)*

3. nubes, -bis, f: *cloud*

[purus, 3: *clean, bright (free from, with the gen.)*]

liber, -a, -m: *free, 90*

cura, 1: *care*

gratus, 3: *grateful*

risus, 4 (*fr. rideo, 2, risi, risum, to laugh*): *laughter,*

decor, -is, m: *grace, elegance*

verecundus, 3: *bashful, modest*

sal, -is, m, or n: *salt; pl. m: wit*

4. suadeo, 2, suasi, suasum: *to recommend, suggest*

[Cynthus, 2: *Apollo (fr. Cynthus, a mountain of Delos, the birth place of Apollo), 49, v*]

[seu: *i. e.*]: *sive (fr. vel si) either, or, or if (with conditional meaning); 109, b*

frango, 3, fregi, fractum: *to break, 114, b*

[tono, 1: *to sound*]

strido, 2 (strido, 3), -di, -: *to creak, squeak*

cervix, -icis, f: *(the nape of the) neck*

[subsidio, 3, -sedi, -sessum: *to sit down, sink*]

5. mando, 1: *to order, 114, b*

[Sulla, 1, *the dictator*]

tyrannus, 2: *tyrant*

[subeo, 3, i-vi, -itum: *to go under, climb to*] 42, 3

curvus, 3: *bent, curved, curly*

[volo, 1: *to fly, move rapidly in air, on earth, or sea*]

aequor, -oris, n: *surface, sea, desert*

Aegeum, 2: *the Aegean sea*

6. furvus, 3: *dark, black*

scindo, 4, scidi scissum: *to tear, rend, cleave, break*

attagen, -ginis, m, Greek: *hazel hen (of the grouse*

TRANSLATION

escorts him when journeying over the glacial pole.

vernus, 3 (*fr. ver, -is, n, spring*): *of spring, 49, t*
aër, -is, m: *air*

3. *His countenance (is) always cheerful and free from cares, and his pleasant laughter, his stateliness and his temper modest, joyous, and gently harmonious,*

doctus, 3: *learned, (inspiring), 88*

[Falernum, 2: *Falernian wine, the best of Italy*]

[nervus, 2: *sinew, nerve, string, 86*]

[lyra, 1: *lyre (in the nom.)*]

4. *suggest him to be a divine friend.*

Whether the broken gate of the Heaven creaks above his neck, or the earth is submerging, he stands firm(ly) amidst the ruins.

submergo, 3, -mersi, -mersum: *to plunge under, sink, submerge, 109, b*

orbis, -is, m: *circle, the earth*

firmus, 3: *firm, 56*

ruina, 1: *ruin*

5. *At the order of a tyrant, he, innocent, changes his abode to the islands of the whirling ocean.*

and exchanges the Italian lake for the Aegean sea, (being ever) as a guest of a better country.

muto, 1: *to change*

[Lucrinus, 2, *a lake in Campania, Italy*]

quae, *only before nouns: as; (used also by Cicero) hospes, -pitis, c: guest, friend*

6. *From a black loaf of bread, he takes for himself family; furnishing the finest meat)*

JOY OF A GOOD CONSCIENCE

*Manant lutosus vina paludibus.
Civis sui, sorbebit exsul
Socraticas hilaris cicutas.*

*ex lutosisque paludibus aquam quasi vinum;
sui semper dominus, etsi exsul,
hafurit hilaris et calicem mortis.*

Gaudium Bonae Mentis.

VOCABULARY

lutosus, 3 (*fr. lutum, 2, mud*): muddy
palus, -ludis, f: *swamp, 23, II*
[mano, 1: *to ooze, flow*]
[sorbeo, -bui, -: *to sip, drink*]
haurio, 4, hausi, haustum: *to draw up or out, drink*
[Socraticus, 3: *Socratic*]
[cicuta, 1: *hemlock*]

TRANSLATION

*the most delicious food, and from muddy swamps,
water like wine; always master of himself, though
an exile he joyfully drinks also the chalice of death.*

calix, -icis, m: *chalice*
hilaris, 2; hilarus, 3: *cheerful, merry, jovial, 56*

97. ANONYMOUS

VII and XVII Century*

Course 13

HYMN TO THE SAVIOR**

Original

1. Creator alme siderum,
Aeterna lux credentium,
Jesu, Redemptor omnium
Intende votis supplicum.
2. Qui daemonis ne fraudibus
Periret orbis, impetu
Amoris actus languidi
Mundi medela factus es.
3. Commune qui mundi nefas
Ut expiaries, ad crucem

In prose

1. Creator alme siderum,
aeterna lux credentium,
Jesu, Redemptor omnium
intende votis supplicum.
2. Qui daemonis ne fraudibus
periret orbis, impetu
amoris coactus languidi
mundi medela factus es.
3. Qui, ut commune mundi nefas
expiaries, ad crucem

ANONYMUS.

Creator Alme Siderum.

VOCABULARY

1. Creator, -is, m: *Creator, 23, I; 49, d*
almus, 3: *nourishing, gracious, mighty, 20, b*
sidus, -deris, n: *group of stars, star, heavens*
aeternus, 3: *eternal*
credo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to believe, 36, a*
Redemptor, -is, m: *Redeemer, 23, I; 49, II*
intendo, 3, -ndi, -ntum: *to direct one's efforts, listen*
2. daemon, -is, m: *demon, devil*
fraus, -udis, f: *deceit, fraud, 23, II, 88*
pereo, 4, -ivi, -itum: *to perish, 42, 3; 124, a*
orbis, -is, m: *circle, disk, world*
impetus, 4: *impulse, attack, force, 88*
coago, 3, -ëgi, -actum: *to drive, impel, 36, b*
languidus, 3: *sick, languid*
3. communis, 2: *common*
nefas, indecl.: *sinful, crime, guilt*
expio, 1: *to expiate, 124, a*

TRANSLATION

1. *Provident Creator of the heavens
Light eternal of the faithful,
Jesus, Redeemer of all
hearken to Your supplicants' prayers.*

*to, 34, a; 79; votum, 2: vow, prayer, desire, 79
supplex, -plicis: suppliant, 26, d*

2. *Lest mankind should perish
through the devil's fraud,
You became at love's command
the sick world's remedy.*

medela, 1: *medicine, remedy, 59, B*
mundus, 2: *world*

3. *To expiate the whole world's guilt
You, a spotless Victim,*

* By the revisors of Pope Urban VIII (1632) only one original line and twelve words were retained from the early Christian hymn.

** IAMBIC DIMETER, accentual: $\cup - | \cup - | \cup - | \cup - | \cup -$; cf. 139, 4.

97. ANONYMOUS

VII and XVII Century

Course 13

HYMN TO THE SAVIOR

E Virginis sacrario
Intacta prodis victima.

4. Cujus potestas gloriae
Nomenque cum primum sonat,
Et caelites et inferi
tremente curvantur genu.

5. Te deprecamur ultimae
Magnum diei Judicem,
Armis supernae gloriae
Defende nos ab hostibus.

6. Virtus, honor, laus, gloria
Deo Patri cum Filio
Sancto simul Paraclito
In saeculorum saecula.

Amen.

e Virginis sacrario
intacta prodis victima.

4. Cujus potestas gloriae
Nomenque cum primum sonat,
et caelites et inferi
trementi curvantur genu.

5. Te deprecamur ultimae
Magnum diei Judicem,
ut armis supernae gloriae
defende nos ab hostibus.

6. Virtus, honor, laus, gloria
Deo Patri cum Filio
Sancto simul Paraclito
in saeculorum saecula.

Amen.

Creator Alme Siderum.

VOCABULARY

sacrarium, 2: *sacred place*
intactus, 3: *untouched, spotless*
prodeo, 4: *to go forth*

4. potestas, -tatis, f: *power, might, 23, II*
nomen, -minis, n: *name, 23, III*
cum primum, simulac: *as soon as, whenever, 120, c, A*
sono, 1, -nui, -nitum: *to sound, utter*
caeles, -litis: *heavenly, blessed, 26, d*
inferus, 3: *that which is below, damned*
tremo, 3, -mui, -: *to tremble, 36, a; 26, c*

5. deprecor, 1: *to pray, beseech, wish*
ultimus, 3: *last*
judex, -dicens, m: *judge*
arma, -orum, n: *tools, weapon, 93, a*
supernus, 3: *above, celestial, heavenly*
defendo, 3, -di, -nsum: *to protect, defend, 34, a*

6. virtus, -tutis, f: *virtue, power, 23, II*
honor, -is, m: *honor, 23, I*
laus, -udis, f: *praise, 23, II*
simul: *together*
in: *for, through, 50, c*
paraclitus, 2, Greek: *consoler, teacher (the epithet of the Holy Ghost)*

TRANSLATION

*from the Virgin's sacred womb
to the Cross (have) made Your way.*

4. *Whenever the power of (Your) glory
and (Your) Name is mentioned,
the blessed and the damned alike
bow down with trembling knee.*

curvo, 1: *to bend, bow, curve*
genu, 4: *knee, 88*

5. *We earnestly entreat You,
Mighty Judge of the last day,
with heaven's glorious weapons
to defend us from our foes.*

hostis, -is, m: *enemy*

6. *Power, honor, praise, and glory
to God the Father and the Son,
and also to the Holy Ghost
through ages of ages.*

Amen.

98. ANONYMOUS, S. J.

XIX Century

Course 27

HYMN TO THE SUFFERING SAVIOR*

Original

1. Ecquis binas columbinas

In prose

1. Ecquis binas columbinas

ANONYMUS, S. J.

Ecquis Binas.

VOCABULARY

1. ecquis, 2: *who? what? 30, h*
bini, -ae, -a: *two by two, a pair, two, 29, c*
columbinus, 3 (fr. columba, 1, dove): *of dove, 49, z*

VOCABULARY TRANSL.

1. *Who will give to my soul*

* TROCHAIC DIMETER, (tetrapody), accentual: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | — ∪; every second verse catalectic:
— ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | ∪; 139, 4, c.

HYMN TO THE SUFFERING SAVIOR

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Alas dabit animae,
 Ut in almam crucis palmam
 Evolet citissime?
 In qua Jesus totus laesus
 Orbis desiderium
 Et immensus est suspensus
 Factus <i>improperium</i>.</p> <p>2. O mi Deus, amor meus
 Tu-ne pro me pateris?
 Proque indigno crucis ligno,
 Jesu, <i>me</i>, suffigeris?
 Pro latrone, Jesu bone,
 Tu in crucem tolleris?
 Pro peccatis meis gratis,
 Vita mea, moreris?</p> <p>3. Non sum tanti, Jesu, quanti
 Amor tuus aestimat.
 Heu, cur ego vitam dego,
 Si cor Te non redamat?</p> | <p>alas dabit animae,
 ut in almam crucis palmam
 evolet citissime?
 In qua Jesus totus laesus
 orbis desiderium
 et immensus <i>et</i> suspensus
 factus est <i>opprobrium</i>.</p> <p>2. O mi Deus, amor meus
 Tu-ne pro me pateris?
 Pro <i>me</i> indigno crucis ligno,
 Jesu <i>mi</i>, suffigeris?
 Pro latrone, Jesu bone,
 Tu in crucem tolleris?
 Pro peccatis meis gratis,
 Vita mea, moreris?</p> <p>3. Non sum tanti, Jesu, quanti
 amor tuus aestimat.
 Heu, cur ego vitam dego,
 si cor Te non redamat?</p> |
|--|---|

Ecquis Binas.

VOCABULARY

- ala, 1: *wing*
 almus, 3: *nourishing, gracious, blissful*
 crux, crucis, f: *cross*
 palma, 1: *palm, palm-tree*
 evolo, 1: *to fly out, or forth*, 124, a
 citus, 3: *quick, speedy*, 28, a
 totus, 3: *whole, entire, full*, 56
 laedo, 3, laedi, laesum: *to hurt, injure, wound*, 36, b
 orbis, -is, m: *circle, disk, world*
 desiderium, 2: *desire, wish, joy*, 49, f
 immensus, 3 (*fr. metior*, 4, mensum, *to measure*): *immeasurable, infinite*
 fio, -, factum: *to become*, 43, 7
2. O mi: *vocative of meus*, 20, b
 amor, -is, m: *fr. amo*, 1, *to love*): *love*, 49, a
 -ne, *quest. part. translatable only by inverted word order*, 51, c
 patior, 3, passum: *to suffer*, 40
 pro: *for*, 50, b
 [-que, *enclitic: and*, 13, b; 140, a]; me, 140, a
 indignus, 3: *unworthy*,
 lignum, 2: *wood*, 79
 suffigo, 3, -fixi, -fixum: *to fasten on, affix, fix beneath*,
 latro, -nis, m: *soldier, robber, bandit, thief* (79)
 in: *into, on*, 50, c
 tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum: *to lift up, raise, take away*
3. tantus, 3—quantus, 3: *so much—as*, 68, a
 aestimo, 1: *to appraise, esteem, deem*
 heu, 52, c
 cur: *why?*
 dego, 3, degi, -: *to pass time, live*

TRANSLATION

- the two wings of a dove?
 that it may fly most quickly
 to the gracious three of the cross,
 upon which Jesus, wholly wounded,
 the desire of the world,
 the infinite one was suspended,
 having become an outcast.*
- opprobrium, 2 (*fr. probrum*, 2, *sham*): *reproach, scandal*, 49, f
 [improperium, 2 (*fr. propero*, 1, *to hasten*), yet used even by Petronius for opprobrium]
2. O my God, my love, are you
 suffering this for me?
 Are you, my Jesus, fixed to the cross
 for unworthy me?
 Are you raised on the cross,
 O good Jesus, for a thief?
 Are you willingly dying,
 O my Life, for my sins?
- peccatum, 2 (*fr. pecco*, 1, *to sin*): *sin, crime, offence, fault*, 26, f
 gratis: *for nothing, gratis, willingly*
 vita, 1: *life*
 morior, 3, mortuum: *to die*, 40
3. O Jesus, I am not worth as much
 as Your love values me.
 Alas! Why do I live, if my heart
 does not love You in return?
- redamo, 1: *to love in return*

HYMN TO THE SUFFERING SAVIOR

Benedictus sit invictus
 Amor vincens omnia;
 Amor fortis tela mortis
 Reputans ut somnia.

4. Iste fecit, et refecit
 Amor Jesu perditum.
 O insignis amor, ignis,
 Cor accende frigidum!
 O fac vere cor ardere,
 Fac me Te diligere,
 Da conjungi, da defungi
 Tecum, Jesu, et vivere.

Benedictus sit invictus
 amor vincens omnia;
 amor fortis tela mortis
 reputans ut somnia.

4. Iste amor Jesu fecit,
 et refecit perditum.
 O insignis amor, ignis,
 cor accende frigidum!
 O fac vere cor ardere;
 fac me Te diligere;
 da conjungi, da defungi
 Tecum, Jesu, et vivere.

Ecquis Binas.

VOCABULARY

benedico, 3, -dixi, -ctum: to praise
 invictus, 3 (fr. vinco, 3, vici, victum, to conquer): un-
 defeated
 fortis, 2: strong, brave, mighty
 telum: missile, dart, weapon
 mors, -rtis, f: death, 22, c; 23, II
 reputo, 1: to reckon, count, consider, take

4. iste, 3: this, 30, f
 facio, 3, feci, factum: to make, create
 reficio, -feci, -fectum: to make afresh, reestablish, re-
 perdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to lose, 36, b (deem)
 insignis, 2: distinguished
 ignis, -is, m: fire
 cor, cordis, n: heart
 accendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: to set on fire, 34, a
 frigidus, 3 (fr. frigus, -goris, n, coldness): cold, 49, t
 verus, 3: true, real, 28, a
 ardeo, 2, arsi, arsum: to burn, glow, 35, g
 diligo, 3, -lexi, -ctum: to love, praise

TRANSLATION

Blessed be Your unconquered love
 conquering all;
 Your mighty love esteems the darts
 of death as mere dreams.

ut, uti, sicuti: as
 somnium, 2 (fr. somnio, 1, to dream): dream, 49, f

4. This love, O Jesus, has created
 and redeemed the fallen one;
 O transcending love, O fire,
 set on fire my cold heart.
 O make my heart burn truly,
 make me love You,
 grant me union with You, make me
 live and die with You.

conjungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum: to join, 35, g
 defungor, 3, -nctum: to finish, discharge, die, 35, g
 et, bears elision, 140, a

99. P. J. AERNOUTH, AMERICAN JESUIT

1811-1846 A. D.

Course 60

FOLLOWING OF THE SACRED HEART

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. VOX JESU: Herodes viso me gavisus est valde;
 erat enim cupiens ex multo tempore videre me, eo quod
 audierat multa de me et sperabat signum aliquod vi-
 dere a me fieri.

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. VOX JESU: Herodes videns me gavisus est val-
 de; erat enim cupidus ex multo tempore videndi me,
 eo quod audierat multa de me et sperabat signum
 videre a me patratum.

PETRUS JOANNES AERNOUDT, S. J.

Imitatio Sacri Cordis Jesu.

VOCABULARY

1. vox, vocis, f: voice
 Jesus, Hebrew: Savior, 24, d
 Herodes, -dis, Greek, governor of Galilee
 valde: very, greatly, exceedingly
 eo quod: on that account, since
 patro, 1: to perform, accomplish, 36, b

TRANSLATION

1. JESUS: Herod was overjoyed when He saw Me.
 For a long time now he had been wanting to see Me,
 because he had heard much of Me and was expecting
 to see some miracle performed by Me.

FOLLOWING OF THE SACRED HEART

2. Carnalis autem homo, cum non intelligeret, quare non defenderem meipsum, quare *suum* favorem non quaererem, meam agendi rationem stupiditati attribuit et fatuitati.

3. Itaque sprevit me cum exercitu suo; et illusit indutum veste alba et remisit ad Pilatum; me velut stultum exponens urbi et orbi.

4. VOX DISCIPULI: O Domine Deus! Te-ne stultum haberi et fatuum? Domine, parce dignitati divinae personae tuae. Cur sacrilegos non destruis fulmine, ne vilitas hominum divinae Majestati ita insultet?

5. VOX JESU: O fili, neque tuum cor neque Cor meum novisti. Tantum enim remedium requirebat cordis tui superbia.

6. Profundum mysterium, fili, *ut* Deus ipse inter homines appareret stultus! Mysterium, quod solus amor per excessum operatus est, et de quo solus amor rationem dare potest.

2. Carnalis autem homo, cum non intelligeret, quare non defenderem meipsum, quare *ejus* favorem non quaererem, meam agendi rationem stupiditati attribuit et fatuitati.

3. Itaque sprevit me cum exercitu suo; et illusit indutum veste alba et remisit ad Pilatum; me velut stultum exponens urbi et orbi.

4. VOX DISCIPULI: O Domine Deus! Te-ne stultum haberi et fatuum? Domine, parce dignitati divinae personae tuae. Cur sacrilegos non destruis fulmine, ne vilitas hominum divinae Majestati ita insultet?

5. VOX JESU: O fili, neque tuum cor neque Cor meum novisti. Tantum enim remedium requirebat cordis tui superbia.

6. Profundum mysterium, fili, *quod* Deus ipse inter homines apparuerit stultus! Mysterium, quod solus amor per excessum operatus est, et de quo solus amor rationem dare potest.

Imitatio Sacri Cordis Jesu.

VOCABULARY

2. carnalis, 2 (*fr.* caro, carnis, *f.* flesh): *bodily*,
defendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to defend*, 132 (*sensual*)
favor, -is, m (*fr.* faveo, 2, favi, fautum, *to favor*):
favor

quaero, 3, quaesivi, ^{quae}quisitum: *to seek, search*, 132
stupiditas, -tatis, f (*fr.* stupidus, 3, *stupid*): *stupidity*

3. sperno, 3, sprevi, spretum: *to despise, spurn*
illudo, 3, -lusi, -lusum: *to mock at, ridicule, deceive*;
(*acc. or dat.*)
stultus, 3: *silly, fool*
urbs, -bis, f: *city*; orbis, -is, m: *circle (of the world)*

4. dignitas, -tatis, f (*fr.* dignus, 3, *worthy*): *worthiness*
parco, 3, peperci, parsum: *to spare, refrain*, 80, j
sacrilegus, 3: *profaning, impious, sacrilegious*
fulmen, -minis, n (*fr.* fulgeo, 2, -lsi, -, *to shine*): *flash, thunderbolt*
(*meanness*)
vilitas, -tatis, f (*fr.* vilis, 2, *cheap*): *worthlessness*,

5. novi, -visse, notum: *to be acquainted with*, 45, 14
remedium, 2 (*fr.* medior, 2, -, *to heal*): *remedy, medicine*
superbia, 1 (*fr.* superbus, 3, *proud*): *pride* (*vine*)

6. profundus, 3: *deep*
mysterium, 2, *Greek: mystery*
appareo, 2, -rui, -riturus: *to appear, be manifest*, 131;
99, 2
excessus, 4 (*fr.* excedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum, *to go out*):
excess

TRANSLATION

2. *However, since he, being a worldly man, did not understand why I did not defend Myself, why I did not seek His favor, attributed My way of acting to stupidity and folly.*

fatuitas, (*fr.* fatuus, 3, *foolish*): *folly, silliness*

3. *Consequently he, together with his guards despised Me; and he mocked Me, clad in a white garment,* and sent Me back to Pilate, proclaiming Me a fool to the city and the world.*

4. DISCIPLE: *O Lord, that You should be thought stupid and foolish! O Lord, save the dignity of Your Divine Person. Why do You not destroy sacrilegious persons with a thunderbolt, that the villainy of men may not insult Your Divine Majesty.*

destruo, 3, -uxi, -uctum: *to destroy*
insulto, 1: *to scoff at, insult*, 79, 124, a

5. JESUS: *My son, you know neither your own heart nor Mine. The pride of your heart asked for such a remedy.*

6. *It is a great mystery, son, that God should appear as a fool among men! (This is) a mystery that love alone has wrought by (its) excess, and for which love alone can render an account.*

* *It was a large sack used in transporting raw wool.*

FOLLOWING OF THE SACRED HEART

7. Si quis diligit me, sermonem meum servabit. Non est discipulus super magistrum: perfectus autem omnis erit, si *sit* sicut magister ejus.

8. Tu autem, fili, si vere me diligis, non recusabis sustinere mecum nomen malesani aut stulti, quando-cunque te simili nomine insigniri permiserō.

9. Etenim vita non nomine sed re interior et devota sectoribus mundanorum placitorum nonnisi stultitia quaedam videtur.

10. Eja, fili mi, confortare, et corde magno et animo volenti sustine mecum omnia.

11. Accusatus, reprehensus, irrisus tacebis mecum; et idcirco quasi stolidus reputaberis ab iis, qui nesciunt supereminentem sapientiam Cordis mei.

12. Tolera patienter, si gaudenter nondum vales. Ista est altissima sapientia, (nam nihil mali tibi invito accidet unquam, nisi amantissime permissum a Divina Providentia ad tuum emolumentum.) (*Lib. III. 13*)

7. Si quis diligit me, sermonem meum servabit. Non est discipulus super magistrum: perfectus autem omnis erit, si *fuerit* sicut magister ejus.

8. Tu autem, fili, si vere me diligis, non recusabis sustinere mecum nomen malesani aut stulti, quando-cunque te simili nomine insigniri permiserō.

9. Etenim vita non nomine sed re interior et devota sectoribus mundanorum placitorum nonnisi stultitia quaedam videtur.

10. Eja, fili mi, confortare, et corde magno et animo volenti sustine mecum omnia.

11. Accusatus, reprehensus, irrisus tacebis mecum; et idcirco quasi stolidus reputaberis ab iis, qui nesciunt supereminentem sapientiam Cordis mei.

12. Tolera patienter, si gaudenter nondum vales. Ista est altissima sapientia, (nam nihil mali tibi invito accidet unquam, nisi amantissime permissum a Divina Providentia ad tuum emolumentum.)

Imitatio Sacri Cordis Jesu.

VOCABULARY

7. sermo, -monis, m: *speech, sermon*
servo, 1: *to keep, save, preserve*
perfectus, 3 (*fr. perficio, 3, -feci, -fectum, to complete*): *perfect*

8. recuso, 1: *to refuse, 122, a*
sustineo, 2, -nui, -tentum: *to sustain, bear*
malesanus, or insanus, 3: *insane, mad*
quandocumque: *whenever, as often as*
insignio, 4: *to put a mark, sign*

9. devoteo, -vovi, -votum: *to devote*
sector, -is, m (*fr. sector, 1, to follow eagerly*): *follower, 49, d*
mundanus, 3 (*fr. mundus, 2, world*): *worldly*
placitum, 2 (*fr. placeo, 2, -cui, -citum, to please*):

10. eja: *well then, yea*
conforto, 1: *to strengthen, encourage, 34, a*

11. accuso, 1: *to accuse; tacebis, 108, c*
reprehendo, 3, -ndi, -nsum: *to blame, censure, reprove*
irrideo, 2, -risi, -risum: *to laugh at, ridicule; (dat. or reputo, 1: to reckon, consider (acc.)*
superemineo, 2, -nui, -: *to overtop, excel*

12. tolero, 1: *to bear, endure, 34, a*
patior, 3, passum: *to suffer, be patient, 28, a*
gaudeo, 2, -, gavisum: *to rejoice, 31, d, 28, a*
nondum: *not yet*
valeo, 2, -lui, -liturus: *to be strong, healthy, able*
altus, 3: *high, deep*

TRANSLATION

7. If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word. The disciple is not above his master; however, every one will be perfect, if he becomes like his master.

8. Therefore, my son, if you love Me truly, you will not refuse to bear the name, insane or fool, whenever I permit you to be called by such a name.

permitto, 3, -misi, -misum: *to permit, allow, 109, a, 3*

9. For, a life that is interior and devout, not in name only but in reality, is regarded as nothing but folly by the devotees of worldly pleasure.

pleasure

10. Yea, my son, strengthen yourself and with Me bear every thing courageously and generously.

11. And when accused, rebuked, derided, be silent with Me; and as a result you will be deemed a fool by those who do not know the surpassing wisdom of My heart.

12. Suffer with patience if you are not yet able to do so with joy. This is the greatest wisdom, (for no evil will ever happen to you against your will, unless lovingly admitted for your benefit by Divine Providence.)

accido, 3, accidi, -: *to happen, 109, a, 3*

HYMN AFTER HOLY COMMUNION*

Original

1. Ad quem diu suspiravi,
Jesum tandem habeo.
Hunc amplector, quem optavi,
quem optavi, teneo.
Omnes meae exsultate
facultates animae.
Exultate, triumphate
et ingresso plaudite.
2. Quis non tuam admiretur
bonitatem, Domine,
si, quod facis, meditetur
serio examine?
Ad te ruo, ad me ruis,
atque sinis protinus
immisceri meos tuis
Amplexus amplexibus.
3. Nihil eram: me creasti
ex obscuro nihilo;
divinaeque me donasti

In prose

1. Ad quem diu suspiravi,
Jesum tandem habeo.
Hunc amplector, quem optavi,
quem optavi, teneo.
Omnes meae exsultate
Facultates animae.
Exultate, triumphate
Et ingresso plaudite.
2. Quis non tuam admiretur
Bonitatem, Domine,
Si, quod facis, meditetur
Serio examine?
Ad te ruo, ad me ruis,
Et me sinis protinus
Immisceri meos tuis
Amplexus amplexibus.
3. Nihil eram: me creasti
ex obscuro nihilo;
Divinaeque me donasti

PRINCEPS ALEXANDER HOHENLOHE, S. J.
Ad Quem Diu Suspiravi.

VOCABULARY

1. suspiro, 1, ad: *to long for*
diu: *long, so long*
tandem: *at last*
amplector, 3, -exum: *to embrace*
opto, 1: *to desire*
teneo, 2, -nui, -ntum: *to hold, keep, possess*
exsulto, 1: *to leap often, rejoice, 34*
facultas, -tatis, f: *ability, power, sense*
anima, 1: *soul, spirit*
triumpho, 1: *to triumph, 34*
2. admiror, 1: *to admire, 109, b*
bonitas, -tatis, f: *bounty, beneficence, 49, u*
dominus, 2: *lord, sir*
facio, 3, feci, factum: *to do, 40*
meditor, 1: *to think over, consider, ponder, 109, b*
serius, 3: *serious*
examen, -minis, n: *swarm, test, research, 88*
ad, prep.: *to, 50, a*
ruo, 3, -ui, uiturus: *to rush*
sino, 3, -sivi, -situm: *to place, allow, let, 117, a*
protinus: *further, on the spot, at once, immediately, in that moment*
3. nil, nihil, with prep. nihilum (acc.) n: *nothing*
creo, 1: *to create*
obscurus, 3: *dark, obscure*
divinus, 3: *divine*

TRANSLATION

1. At last I hold my Jesus
for Whom I sighed so long.
I embrace Him Whom I desired,
I possess Him for Whom I yearned.
All ye faculties of my soul
rejoice, exult;
joyfully applaud (Him
Who has just) entered.
- ingredior, 3, -gressum: *to enter, 40; 36, c*
plaudo, 3, -usi, -usum: *to clap, applaud, 34, a*
2. O Lord, Who would not admire
Thy beneficence,
if, in serious reflection he ponders
on what Thou dost?
I rush to Thee and Thou to me;
and Thou allowest, in that moment,
my embraces to be mingled
with Thine own.
- immisceo, 2, -scui, -stum or -xtum: *to mix in, mingle with, 77*
amplexus, 4 (fr. amplector, 3, -xum, to embrace): *embrace, hug*
3. I was nothing; Thou madest me
out of obscure nothing,
and has enriched me with a ray
- dono, 1: *to grant, 82*

* TROCHAEÏ DIMETER, (tetrapody), accentual: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | — ∪; every second verse
catalectic: — ∪ | — ∪ || — ∪ | ∪; 139, 4, c.

HYMN AFTER HOLY COMMUNION

Rationis radio.
 Pro me nasci voluisti
 In deserto stabulo,
 Et finire morte tristi
 Vitam in patibulo.

4. Oriente sole mane,
 Occidente vespera,
 Bone Jesu, mecum mane,
 Mecum semper habita.
 Nil *abs* te, nec mors nec vita,
 Nil *abs* te me separet;
 Unio sit infinita,
 Quam vis nulla terminet.

rationis radio.
 Pro me nasci voluisti
 in deserto stabulo,
 et finire morte tristi
 vitam in patibulo.

4. Oriente sole mane,
 occidente vespera,
 Bone Jesu, mecum mane,
 mecum semper habita.
 Nil *a* te, nec mors nec vita,
 nil *a* te me separet;
 unio sit infinita,
 quam vis nulla terminet.

Ad Quem Diu Suspiravi.

VOCABULARY

ratio, -nis, f: *reason, intellect*
 radius, 2: *ray, 93, a*
 pro, *prep.*: *for, 50, b*
 nascor, 3, natum: *to be born*
 volo, velle, volui, -, : *to wish, will, 42, 4; 117, a*
 desero, 3, -rui, -rtum: *to desert, forsake*
 stabulum, 2 (*fr. sto, 1, to stand*): *den, stable, inn, 49, f*
 finio, 4: *to finish*
 mors, -rtis, f: *death, 22, c; 23, II; 88*

4. orior, 4, -, ortum: *to rise, 114, a*
 mane, *indecl.*: *morning, in the morning, 16, c*
 vespera, 1: *evening, 95*
 Jesus, 4: *Jesus, 24, d*
 maneo, 2, -nsi, -nsum: *to remain, stay, 34*
 mecum: *with me, 50, b'*
 semper: *always*
 habito, 1: *to dwell, reside, 34*
 a (*before cons.*), ab (*before vowels*), abs (*before c. g. t.*): *from*
 separo, 1: *to disjoin, sever, separate, remove, 106*
 unio, -nis, f: *union, 49, b*
 infinitus, 3: *endless, without end*

TRANSLATION

of (Thy) divine intellect.
For me, Thou didst will to be born
in a deserted stable
and to end Thy life
on a gibbet with a sorrowful death.

tristis, 2: *sad, sorrowful*
 vita, 1: *life*
 patibulum, 2: *gibbet, cross, 49, f*

4. *In the morning, at the rising of the sun.*
in the evening, at its setting,
O good Jesus, stay with me;
always dwell with me.
Let nothing separate me from Thee,
nothing, neither death nor life,
Let this union be without end,
which no force can terminate.

qui, 3: *that, which, 30, g*
 vis, f: *force power, violence, 22, g*
 termino, 1: *to limit, end, 34*

101. PIUS IX

1854 A. D.

Course 113

EXCERPT FROM THE BULL OF THE IMMACULATE CONCEPTION
A Specimen of Church Latin

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Ab antiquis temporibus Sacrorum antistites, ecclesiastici viri, regulares ordines ac vel ipsi imperato-

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Ab antiquis temporibus Sacrorum antistites, ecclesiastici viri, regulares ordines ac vel ipsi imperato-

PIUS IX.

EX BULLA IMMACULATAE CONCEPTIONIS.

VOCABULARY

1. antistes, -titis, m (*fr. antesto, 1, to stand before*): *president, chief*
 sacrum 2 (*fr. sacer, 3, sacred*): *sacrifice, worship, 26, f*
 ecclesiasticus, 3 (*fr. ecclesia, 1, Church*): *ecclesiastical*

TRANSLATION

1. *From ancient times, bishops, ecclesiastics, religious families, even by sovereigns and the faithful/*

regularis ordo: *religious order or society; vel, see below*

EXCERPT FROM THE BULL OF THE IMMACULATE CONCEPTION

res et reges ab hac apostolica Sede enixe efflagitarunt, ut immaculata sanctissimae Dei Genitricis Conceptio veluti catholicae fidei dogma definiretur.

2. Quae postulationes hac nostra quoque aetate iteratae fuerunt, ac potissimum felicitis recordationis Gregorio decimo sexto praedecessori nostro ac nobis ipsis oblatae sunt tum ab episcopis, tum a clero saeculari, tum a religiosis familiis ac summis principibus et fidelibus populis.

3. Nos itaque singulari animi nostri gaudio haec omnia probe noscentes ac serio considerantes, vix dum, licet immeriti, arcanae divinae providentiae consilio ad hanc sublimem Petri Cathedram evecti, totius Ecclesiae gubernacula tractanda suscepimus,

4. nihil certe antiquius habuimus, quam pro summa nostra vel a teneris annis erga sanctissimam Dei Genitricem Mariam veneratione, pietate et affectu ea omnia peragere, quae adhuc in Ecclesiae votis esse

res et reges ab hac apostolica Sede enixe efflagitarunt, ut immaculata sanctissimae Dei Genitricis Conceptio veluti catholicae fidei dogma definiretur.

2. Quae postulationes hac nostra quoque aetate iteratae fuerunt, ac potissimum felicitis recordationis Gregorio decimo sexto praedecessori nostro ac nobis ipsis oblatae sunt tum ab episcopis, tum a clero saeculari, tum a religiosis familiis ac summis principibus et fidelibus populis.

3. Nos itaque singulari animi nostri gaudio haec omnia probe noscentes ac serio considerantes, vix dum, licet immeriti, arcanae divinae providentiae consilio ad hanc sublimem Petri Cathedram evecti gubernacula totius Ecclesiae tractanda suscepimus,

4. nihil certe antiquius habuimus, quam pro summa nostra a vel tenerrimis annis erga sanctissimam Dei Genitricem Mariam veneratione, pietate et affectu ea omnia peragere, quae adhuc in Ecclesiae votis esse

EX BULLA IMMACULATAE CONCEPTIONIS.

VOCABULARY

enixe (fr. enitor, 3, -nixum, to strive): strenuously
efflagito, 1: to demand, entreat earnestly
Catholicus, 3, Greek: universal
dogma, -atis, n, Greek: doctrine, dogma (its
definitio, 4: to define, determine, fix, confine within limits)

2. postulatio, -nis, f (fr. postulo, 1, to demand): request

itero, 1: to repeat

potissimum (fr. potius, rather): chiefly, above all, 28, f
recordatio, -nis, f (fr. recordor, 1, to remember): remembrance, 67, d

(prae)decessor, -is, m (fr. decedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum, to go, leave on the expiration of one's term): predecessor

3. singularis, 2: single, singular, eminent, 88
probe: well, rightly, fitly

nosco, 3, novi, notum, seldom used: to be acquainted
vix, vixdum: with effort, scarcely (with
immeritus, 3 (fr. mereo(r), 1, to merit): unmerited, not deserving, 36, c

arcanus, 3: secret, 88

cathedra, 1, Greek: chair, professor's chair

4. antiquus, 3: old, ancient, important, desired, 27, a; nihil antiquius habere: to hold nothing more at heart

tener, -a, -um: tender, youthful, young, 27, k;

vel was used in early Latin in several vague meanings, as: et, etiam, veluti, praeprimis, but we must not use it in archaic meanings, even if Cicero so used it, 27, k

genitrix, -icis, f (fr. gigno, 3, genui, genitum, to beget, bear): mother, 49, d

TRANSLATION

eagerly petitioned the Apostolic See, that the Immaculate Conception of the Mother of God might be defined as a dogma of the Catholic faith.

2. These requests have been repeated also in Our own time, and especially addressed to our predecessor of blessed memory, Gregory XVI, and also to Ourselves by bishops, then both by the secular clergy and religious families, even by Sovereigns and the faithful.

clerus, 2, Greek: the sort or lot (of the Lord), clergy
saecularis, 2: secular

3. Knowing this full well, to the great joy of Our soul, and taking it into serious consideration as soon as We were raised, though unworthy, to the lofty chair of Peter, to undertake the government of the whole Church,

gubernaculum, 2 (fr. gubernare, 1, to steer): rudder, government, 118

4. in harmony with the veneration, devotion, and affection from Our most tender childhood for the most Blessed Virgin Mary, Mother of God, We have certainly held nothing more at heart than to do all that could be done, according to the wish of the Church, that the honor of the Blessed Virgin be increased and

affectus, 4 (fr. afficio, 3, -feci, -fectum, to affect): affection, 88

votum, 2: vow, wish, desire; in votis esse or habere: to desire

101. PIUS IX

1854 A. D.

Course 113

EXCERPT FROM THE BULL OF THE IMMACULATE CONCEPTION

poterant, ut beatissimae Virginis honor augetur, ejusque praerogativae uberiore luce niterent.

poterant, ut beatissimae Virginis honor augetur, ejusque praerogativae uberiore luce niterent.

5. Quare auctoritate Domini nostri Jesu Christi, beatorum Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, ac nostra declaramus, pronuntiamus et definimus: doctrinam, quae tenet beatissimam Virginem Mariam in primo instanti Conceptionis fuisse singulari omnipotentis Dei gratia et privilegio, intuitu meritorum Christi Jesu, Salvatoris humani generis, ab omni originalis culpa labe praeservatam immunem, esse a Deo revēlatam, atque idcirco ab omnibus fidelibus firmiter constanterque credendam.

5. Quare auctoritate Domini nostri Jesu Christi, beatorum Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, ac nostra declaramus, pronuntiamus et definimus: doctrinam, quae tenet beatissimam Virginem Mariam in primo instanti Conceptionis fuisse singulari omnipotentis Dei gratia et privilegio, intuitu meritorum Christi Jesu, Salvatoris humani generis, ab omni originalis culpa labe praeservatam immunem, esse a Deo revēlatam, atque idcirco ab omnibus fidelibus firmiter constanterque credendam.

6. Quapropter, si qui, secus ac a nobis definitum est, praesumpserint corde sentire, ii noverint ac porro sciant se proprio judicio condemnatos, naufragium circa fidem passos esse, et ab unitate Ecclesiae defecisse.

6. Quapropter, si qui, secus ac a nobis definitum est, praesumpserint corde sentire, ii noverint ac porro sciant se proprio judicio condemnatos, naufragium circa fidem passos esse, et ab unitate Ecclesiae defecisse.

EX BULLA IMMACULATAE CONCEPTIONIS.

VOCABULARY

augeo, 2, auxi, auctum: *to increase, augment*
uber, -is: *rich, abundant*, 88
niteo, 2, -tui, -: *to shine, glitter*

5. instans, -ntis, n: *immediate present, instance*, 95
privilegium, 2: *privilege*, 88
intuitus, 4 (fr. intueor, 2, -tuitum, *to look at*): *look*,
culpa, 1: *fault, error, sin* (view, 94
labes, -bis, f (fr. labor, 3, lapsus, *to fall*): *ruin, spot*,
praeservo, 1: *to preserve* (stain, 90
immunis, 2: *free, exempt, immune*
idcirco: *on that account, for that reason*
firmus, 3: *firm, strong, stout*, 28, e
constans, -ntis, (fr. consto, -stiti, staturum, *to stand*
still): *steady, unchanging*

6. secus: *otherwise*
praesumo, 3, -mpsi, -sumptum: *to take beforehand*,
presume, 109, a, 3
condemno, 1: *to condemn, sentence*
naufragium, 2 (fr. navis and frango): *shipwreck*
deficio, 3, -feci, -defectum: *to fail, go out*

TRANSLATION

that her prerogatives might shine forth with still greater brilliance.

praerogativa, 1: *previous choice, prerogative*

5. Wherefore, by the authority of Our Lord Jesus Christ, of the blessed Apostles Peter and Paul, and by Our own authority, We declare, pronounce, and define, that the doctrine which holds—that the most Blessed Virgin Mary was preserved in the first instant of her Conception, by a singular grace and privilege of Almighty God, and in view of the merits of Jesus Christ the Savior of mankind, from every stain of original sin,—has been revealed by God, and hence must be believed firmly and constantly by all the faithful.

6. Wherefore, if any presume to feel in their hearts otherwise than We have defined, let them know and be fully aware that, condemned by their own judgment, they have suffered shipwreck in their faith, and have fallen off from the unity of the Church.

102. LEO XIII

1810-1903 A. D.

103
Course 82

THE HOLY FAMILY*

In prose →

← Original

1. Sacra jam splendet decorata lychnis

1. Sacrum jam splendet templum decoratum

LEO XIII.

De Familia Sancta.

VOCABULARY

1. splendeo, 2: *to shine, glitter*
lychnus, 2, Greek: *to shine, glitter, lamp*

TRANSLATION

1. Now the sacred temple is resplendent with lamps,

* LESSER SAPPHIC: — ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪, and ADONIC: — ∪ ∪ | — ∪; quantitative, 139, 4, c.

THE HOLY FAMILY

Templa, jam sertis redimitur ara
Et pio fumant redolentque acerrae
Thuris odore.

2. Num juvet Summo Geniti Parente
Regios ortus celebrare cantu?
Num domus David, decora et vetustae
Nomina gentis?

3. Gratius nobis memorare parvum
Nazarae tectum, tenuemque cultum,
Gratius Jesu tacitam referre
Carmine vitam.

4. Nili ab extremis peregrinus oris
Angeli ductu prope remigrat
Multa perpressus Puer et paterno
Limine sospes

5. Arte, qua Joseph, humili excolendus
Abdito Jesus juvenescit aevo,
Seque fabrilis socium laboris
Adjicit ultro.

lychnis, ac sertis redimitur ara
et pio fumat thuris odore
redoletque acerra.

2. Num juvet cantu celebrare regios
ortus Geniti Summo Parente,
nec non et decora nomina vetustae gentis
in domo David?

3. Gratius est nobis parvam memorare domum
in Nazareth et tenuem in ea
cultum, tacitamque carmine referre
vitam Jesu.

4. Angeli ductu peregrinus a remota
Nili ripa prope remigrat
multa perpressus Puer at domo
sospes paterna.

5. Qua utitur Joseph, arte humili excolendus
abdita aetate juvenescit Jesus,
seque fabrilis laboris socium
ultro adjungit.

De Familia Sancta.

VOCABULARY

sertum, 2 orserta, 1: garland of flowers, 88
redimio, 4: to bind round, crown
fumo, 1: to smoke
thus, -uris, n: incense, frankincense
redoleo, 2, -lui, -: to emit, diffuse an odor

2. juvat, 1, impers.: to delight, please, 48, d, 103
regius, 3 (fr. rex, regis, m, king): royal (91)
ortus, 4 (fr. orior, ortum, to rise): rising, origin, birth,
genitus, 2 (fr. gigno, 3, genui, genitum, to be born):
son
decorus, 3 (fr. decor, -is, m, grace): beautiful, deco-
rous

3. gratus, 3: pleasing, charming, agreeable
memoro(r), 1: to mention, call to mind
[tectum, 2 (fr. tego, 3, texi, tectum, to cover): roof]
tenuis, 2: thin, small, slight, narrow, feeble, poor,
carmen, -minis, n: song, poem (needy)

4. ductus, 4 (fr. duco, 3, duxi, ductum, to draw):
leadership
peregrinus, 3: foreign, strange
[ora, 1: edge, border, rim, seashore]
ripa, 1: bank of a river
properus, 3: rapid, hasty, bustling

5. excolo, 3, -lui, -ultum: to cultivate carefully
abdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: to put away, hide, 36, b
juvenesco, 3, -nui, -: to grow up to youth
fabrilis, 2 (fr. faber, 2, mechanic): of mechanical art
adjungo, 3, -junxi, -junctum: to join to

TRANSLATION

and the altar is surrounded with garlands; and the
censer pouring out smoke is redolent with the fragrant
odor of incense.

acerra, 1: box, censer

2. Should it not be pleasing to celebrate in song
the royal origin of the Son of the Most High Father,
and in the house of David the illustrious names of
(that) ancient family?

vetustus, 3 (fr. vetus, -teris, old): old, ancient
David, indecl., the second king of the Jews

3. No! To us, it is more pleasing to call to mind,
the little house in Nazareth and the simple manner of
life (lived) therein, and to relate in song the hidden
life of Jesus.

refero, 3, retuli, relatum: to bring back, relate, 43, 8

4. As a wanderer, under the guidance of an angel,
from the distant bank of the Nile, the Child returns
in haste, suffering much, but safe in his father's home.

remigro, 1: to wander back
perpetior, 3, -pessum: to suffer steadily, 36, c
sospes, -pitis: safe, unhurt

5. During His hidden life Jesus grows up to be
trained in the humble art, practiced by Joseph, and
of His own accord applies Himself as a fellow laborer
in the carpenter's trade.

ultro: of one's own accord

THE HOLY FAMILY

6. Assidet Nato pia Mater almo,
Assidet Sponso bona nupta felix,
Si potest curas revelare fessis
Munere amico.

7. O neque expertes, operae et laboris
Nec mali ignari, miseros juvate,
Quos *reluctantes* per *acuta* rerum
Urget egestas.

8. Demite his fastus, quibus *ampla* splendet
Faustitas, mentem date rebus aequam:
Quotquot implorant *columen*, benigno
Cernite vultu.

6. Mater pia almo assidet Nato,
assidet *et* Sponso; bona nupta
felix, si potest fessis munere amico
revelare curas.

7. *Jesus, Maria et Joseph*, non expertes operae
et laboris, nec mali ignari,
miseros juvate, quos per *ardua* rerum *luctantes*
urget egestas.

8. Demite his *fastum*, quibus *amplae* splendet
opes; mentem date rebus aequam:
quotquot implorant *praesidium vestrum*,
benigno cernite vultu.

De Familia Sancta.

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

6. *almus*, 3 (*fr. alo*, 3, *alui*, *al(i)tum*, to nourish):
nourishing, gracious
assideo, 2, *-sedi*, *-sessum*: to sit near, devote oneself, 79
natus, 2 (*fr. nascor*, *natum*, to be born): son
nupta, 1 (*fr. nubo*, 3, *nupsi*, *nuptum*, to marry a
man): wife, 36, b
fessus, 3: weary, tired, exhausted, 26, f

7. *expers*, *-rtis*: not sharing in, 66, b
ignarus, 3: ignorant of, inexperienced in, 66, b
miser, 3: wretched, unhappy, 26, f
luctor, 1: to wrestle
[*reluctor*, 1: to strive against]
arduus, 3: steep, difficult, hard, 26, f
urgeo, 2, *ursi*, -: to urge, press

8. *dēmo*, 3, *dēmpsi*, *dēmpum*: to take away
fastus, 4: haughtiness
[*faustitas*, *-tatis*, f (*fr. faustus*, 3, *fortunate*): prosperity]
aequus, 3: equal, fit
quotquot, *indecl.*: however many, as many soever as
imploro, 1: to beseech, implore
[*columen*, *-minis*, n: top, summit, pillar]

6. The loving Mother devotes herself to her Divine
Son; the good bride gives comfort also to her spouse,
happy if she can alleviate the labors of the weary,
with affectionate kindness.

munus, *-eris*, n: office, service
relevo, 1: to lift up, lighten, relieve

7. *Jesus, Mary, Joseph*, having endured pains and
toil, and not unacquainted with distress, help the poor
whom dire poverty oppresses as they struggle
(through) the difficult (times).

egestas, *-tatis*, f (*fr. egeo*, 2, to be in need): extreme
poverty

8. Banish pride from those upon whom abundance
shines; grant (to all) for everything a peaceful mind;
look with benign countenance upon all those who in-
voke Your aid.

praesidium, 2 (*fr. praesideo*, 2, *-sedi*, *-sessum*, to
guard): protection
cerno, 3, *crevi*, *cretum*: to separate, decide, look at

103. PIUS XI

1925 A. D.

Course 82

EXCERPT FROM THE ENCYCLICAL LETTER "QUAS PRIMAS."
A Specimen of Church Latin

WITH

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

WITHOUT

archaisms and mistakes of copyists

1. Cum annus sacer non unam ad illustrandum
Christi regnum habuerit opportunitatem, videmur
rem facturi apostolico ^{numeri} in primis consentaneam,

1. Cum annus sacer non unam ad illustrandum
Christi regnum habuerit opportunitatem, videmur
rem facturi apostolico ^{numeri} in primis consentaneam,

PIUS XI.

Ex Litteris Encyclicis "Quas Primas."

VOCABULARY

TRANSLATION

1. *annus sacer*: the year of the ordinary jubilee in
every 25th year
habuerit, 125, b
consentaneus, 3 (*fr. consentio*, 4, to agree): fit, suit-
able

1. Whereas the Holy Year has had more than one
opportunity to render illustrious the Kingdom of
Christ, it seems We shall do a work particularly suit-
illustro, 1: to enlighten, elucidate

EXCERPT FROM THE ENCYCLICAL LETTER "QUAS PRIMAS."

si plurimorum patrum precibus cardinalium, episcoporum fideliumque ad nos aut singillatim aut communiter delatis cedentes hunc ipsum annum peculiari festo Domini nostri Jesu Christi Regis in ecclesiasticam liturgiam inducendo clausurimus.

2. Ut translata verbi significatione Rex appellatur Christus ob summam excellentiae gradum, quo inter omnes res creatas praestat atque eminet, jam diu communiterque usu venit. Ita enim fit, ut regnare is 'in mentibus hominum' dicatur, 'in voluntatibus' item 'hominum.'

3. "Cordium" deique "Rex" Christus agnoscitur ob ejus "supereminentem scientiae caritatem" et mansuetudinem benignitatemque animos allicientem: nec enim quemquam usque adeo ab universitate gentium, ut Christum Jesum, aut amari aliquando contigit, aut amatum iri in posterum continget.

4. Quo autem haec Domini nostri dignitas et potestas fundamento consistat, apte Cyrillus Alexandrinus animadvertit: "Omnium, ut verbo dicam, creaturarum dominatum obtinet non per vim extortum, nec aliunde

si plurimorum patrum cardinalium, episcoporum, fideliumque precibus ad nos aut singillatim aut communiter delatis cedentes hunc ipsum annum peculiari festo Domini nostri Jesu Christi Regis in ecclesiasticam liturgiam inducendo claudamus.

2. Ut translata verbi significatione Rex appellatur Christus ob summam excellentiae gradum, quo inter omnes res creatas praestat atque eminet, jam diu communiterque usu venit. Ita enim fit, ut regnare is 'in mentibus hominum' dicatur, 'in voluntatibus' item 'hominum.'

3. "Cordium" deique "Rex" Christus agnoscitur ob ejus "caritatem scientiae supereminentem" et mansuetudinem benignitatemque animos allicientem: nec enim quemquam usque adeo ab universitate gentium, ut Christum Jesum, aut amari aliquando contigit, aut amatum iri in posterum continget.

4. Quo autem haec Domini nostri dignitas et potestas fundamento consistat, apte Cyrillus Alexandrinus animadvertit: "Omnium, ut verbo dicam, creaturarum dominatum obtinet non per vim extortum, nec aliunde

Ex Litteris Encyclicis "Quas Primas."

VOCABULARY

cardinalis, -is, m (fr. *cardo*, -dinis, m, *hinge*, main circumstance upon which many other things depend): cardinal

singillatim: singly, one by one

defero, 3, detuli, delatum: to bring down, report

concedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum: to yield, give in to

liturgia, 1, Greek: public worship, liturgy, rite

induco, 3, induxi, inductum: to introduce, 117, e

2. transfero, 3, -tuli, -latum: to transfer, use metaphorically (ing, 88)

significatio, -nis f (fr. *significo*, 1, to indicate): meaning

praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum: to stand before, afford, give

emineo, 2, -nuī, -: to excel, be remarkable wish

voluntas, -tatis, f (fr. *volo*, 3, to wish): will, desire,

3. cor, -rdis, n: heart, 22, e

agnosco, -3, -novi, -notum: to acknowledge

superemineo, 2, -nuī, -: to overtop, surpass, 79 (79)

scientia, 1 (fr. *scio*, 4, to know): science, theory, art,

mansuetudo, -dinis, f (fr. *mansuetus*, 3, meek): meekness

benignitas, -tatis, f (fr. *benignus*, 3, generous): kindness

allicio, 3, -lexi, -lectum: to allure, entice, 40 (ness

4. fundamentum, 2 (fr. *fundo*, 1, to found): foundation, base, 88

consisto, 3, -stiti, -: to stand, consist

aptus, 3: suitable, appropriate, fitting

Cyrillus, 2, archbishop of Alexandria, (d. 444)

dominatus, 4 (fr. *dominor*, 1, to be lord): absolute power

TRANSLATION

able to Our Apostolic charge, if, yielding to the requests made to Us by the cardinals, bishops, and the faithful, singly and collectively, We close this year with a special feast of CHRIST THE KING, and introduce it into the ecclesiastical cult.

claudio, 3, clausi, clausum: to close, 135, a; clausurimus would be the subj. perfect, and not the ind. future past, cf. 32, f

2. It is customary to call Christ a King in the metaphorical meaning, in recognition of the supreme degree of His excellency, by which He precedes and excels all created beings. That is why He is said to reign in the minds of men and likewise in their hearts. usu venire: to be customary

3. Moreover, He is acknowledged as the King of hearts on account of "His charity surpassing (all) knowledge" (Eph. 3, 19), (on account too, of His meekness, and benignity which entice souls. For there is nobody up to now so much loved, and will not so much be loved by the universality of nations, as Jesus Christ. (ture

in posterum (fr. *posterus*, 3, subsequent): for the fu-

4. Cyril of Alexandria aptly proposes as the foundation upon which the dignity and power of Our Lord rests, "He obtains—to express myself in a word—the dominion over all creatures, not extorted by force,

extorqueo, 2, -rsi, -rtum: to extort, 36, b

aliunde: from elsewhere

KING OF KINGS

Praefers notatum sanguine
In veste: "Princeps principum
Regumque Rex Altissimus."

3. Te saeculorum Principem,
Te Christe, Regem gentium,
Te mentium, Te cordium
Unum fatemur arbitrum.

4. Scelesti turba clamitat:
Regnare Christum nolumus:
Te nos ovantes omnium
Regem supremum dicimus.

5. Non *Ille* regna cladibus,
Non vi metuque subdidit:
Alto levato stipite
Amore traxit omnia.

6. Jesu Tibi sit gloria,
Qui sceptri mundi temperas,
Cum Patre et Almo Spiritu
In sempiterna saecula.

Amen.

fers in veste *scriptum*
sanguine: "Princeps principum
regumque Rex Altissimus." (*Apoc.* 19, 16)

3. Te saeculorum Principem, (*Luc.* 1, 32)
Te Christe, Regem gentium, (*Psalms* 2, 8)
Te mentium, Te cordium (*Eph.* 3, 9)
unum fatemur arbitrum. (*John* 5, 22)

4. Scelesti turba clamitat:
regnare Christum nolumus: (*John* 19, 15)
Te nos ovantes omnium
Regem supremum dicimus.

5. Non *Ipsa* regna cladibus,
non vi metuque subdidit:
alto levatus stipite (*Psalms* 95, 10)
amore traxit omnia. (*John* 12, 32)

6. Jesu Tibi sit gloria,
qui sceptri mundi temperas, (*Psalms* 2, 9)
cum Patre et Almo Spiritu
in sempiterna saecula.

Amen.

Rex Regum.

VOCABULARY

[*praefero*, -tuli, -latum: *to bear before, wear in front,*
[*noto*, 1: *to note, sign*], 36, b; 26, f (43, 8]
principis, -cipis: *prince*, 26, d

3. *saeculum*, 2: *age, century*
gens, -ntis, f: *clan, nation, gentile*
mens, -ntis, f: *mind*, 23, II
cor, -rdis, n: *heart*, 22, e
fateor, 2, *fassum*: *to confess, avow*
arbiter, -tri, m: *judge*, 59, A

4. *scelestus*, 3: *wicked, impious*
turba, 1: *tumult, mob, swarm, crowd*
clamito, 1 (*fr. clamo*, 1, *cry*): *to shout violently, cry,*
vociferate, 49, j
regno, 1: *to rule, reign*
nolo, nolui, -: *to be not willing*, 42, 4; 57, b'

5. *clades*, -dis, f: *disaster, harm*, 23, II; 93, a
vis, f: *force, violence*, 93, a
metus, 4: *fear, dread*, 93, a
subdo, 3, -didi, -ditum: *to set under, subject, subdue*
stipes, -pitis, m: *log, trunk of a tree*, 93, a

6. *gloria*, 1: *fame, renown, glory*
sceptrum, 2: *sceptre, dominion*
tempero, 1: *to temperate, control, refrain*
almus, 3: *nourishing, fair, gracious, holy*
sempiternus, 3: *continual, everlasting*

TRANSLATION

You wear inscribed in blood upon your robes
(the title,) "Lord of Lords,
and King of Kings, the Highest."

3. *You, O Prince of ages,*
You, O Christ, the King of nations,
we avow You to be the only Judge
of our minds and of our hearts.

unus, 3: *one, only, alone, exclusively*

4. *The wicked crowd cries out,*
"We will not that Christ should reign."
but we triumphantly proclaim,
"You are the mightiest King of all."

ovo, 1: *to rejoice, exult, celebrate, ovation*
supremus, 3: *highest*, 27, f, 59, A

5. *He did not subdue His peoples*
by harm, or fear, or violence:
but lifted high upon His Cross,
by love He drew all to Himself.

traho, 3, *traxi, tractum*: *to draw, gain, appropriate*

6. *O Jesus, be all glory Yours,*
Who control all earthly sceptres,
with the Father and the Holy Spirit,
for everlasting ages.

Amen.

A. M. D. G.